



Messenger Bot

Messenger Bot Workflow Guide

Contents

- [Messenger Bot Workflow Guide](#)
- [Scope](#)
- [Introduction](#)
- [Requirements](#)
- [Accessing Messenger Bot](#)
- [UI Overview](#)
- [Dashboard](#)
- [Import Account](#)
- [Visual Flow Builder](#)
- [Comment Automation \(Automations\)](#)
- [Subscriber Manager](#)
- [Messenger Bot](#)
- [Broadcasting](#)
- [Social Posting](#)
- [Search Tools](#)
- [Support Desk \(Customer support\)](#)
- [Logout](#)



Scope

This document provides the user with a detailed walk-through of the various workflows of the Messenger Bot web application. The primary focus is to demonstrate step by step processes involved in managing and monitoring the Messenger Bot for marketing, sales, and support.

Introduction

Messenger Bot is a software application that provides an Artificial Intelligence-based service to users to control different customer services, sales, and marketing features. It allows software-based control to revolutionize conventional ways to conduct businesses. It provides an automated comment feature, automated messenger tools for better customer service, and a posting feature.

Messenger Bot consists of a dashboard to help users monitor different statistics of the collected information. The dashboard helps users to visualize the various aspects of the application thus providing better solutions. It comes with search tools, to help its users analyze their website. The Messenger Bot is a user end application used to optimize the social interactions and providing a direct line of communication between the customer and their problem.

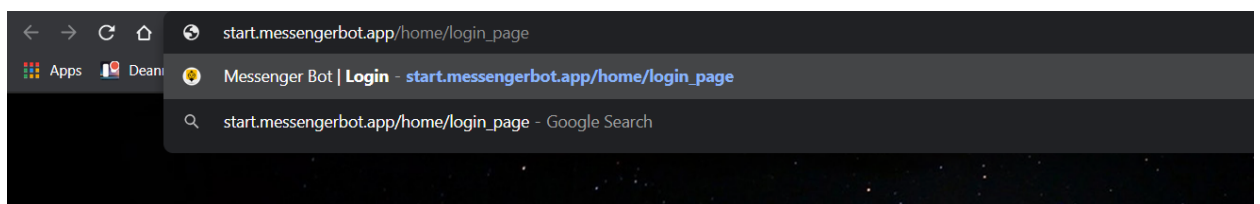
Requirements

- **Internet Connectivity:** Required
- **Recommended Browser:** Google Chrome, Safari, Firefox.

Accessing Messenger Bot

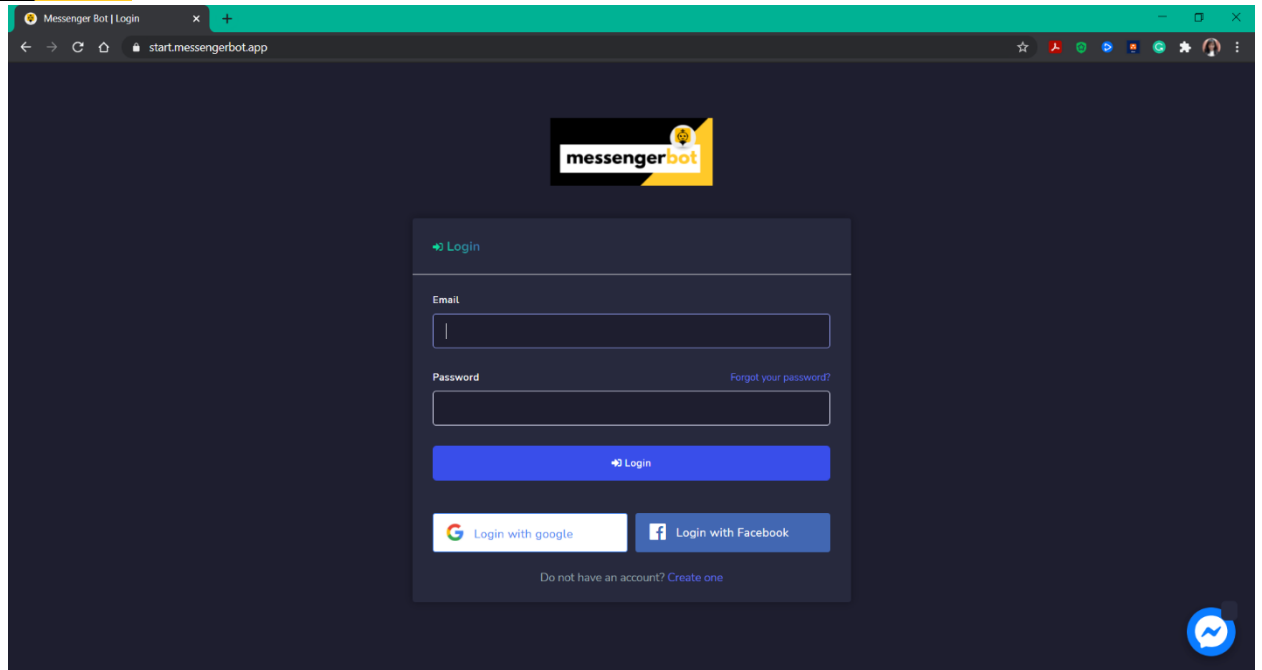
The initial steps for accessing the UI and using Messenger Bot are explained in this section.

1. Enter the https://start.Messenger Bot.app/home/login_page in your Browser.



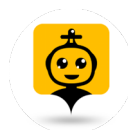
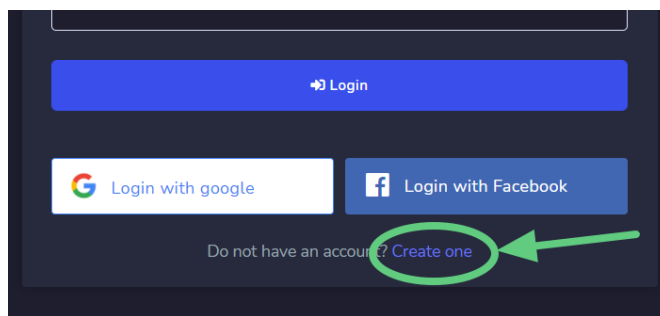
2. The login page of the Messenger Bot will appear on the screen.
3. Enter your credentials to begin.





Note

- If the account doesn't already exist, the user needs to enter the required information after selecting **Create one** option from the login page.





Then fill in every required information for your account.

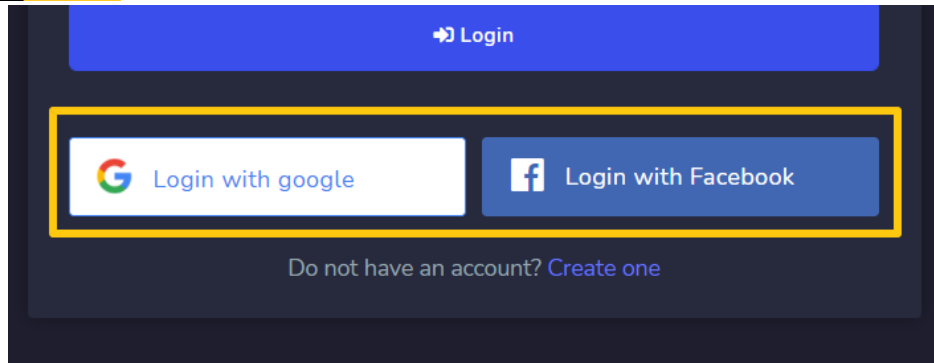
The image shows a 'Sign up' form for messengerbot. The form is titled 'Sign up' and includes the following fields: Name *, Email *, Password *, Confirm password *, Package (dropdown menu), Card number, MM / YY CVC, and Coupon code. A yellow box highlights the Name, Email, Password, and Confirm password fields. A yellow arrow points to the Password field with the number 1 in a circle.

Be sure to check the terms and conditions, then click "Send" when done.

The image shows the same 'Sign up' form as above, but with additional fields and annotations. The fields include: Name *, Email *, Password *, Confirm password *, Package (dropdown menu), Card number, MM / YY CVC, Coupon code, and a Captcha field. A yellow box highlights the Name, Email, Password, and Confirm password fields. A yellow arrow points to the Password field with the number 1 in a circle. A yellow arrow points to the Coupon code field with the number 2 in a circle. A yellow arrow points to the 'I agree with the terms and conditions' checkbox with the number 3 in a circle. The 'Send' button is also highlighted with a yellow box.

- For login, users can also use **Login with Google** or **Login with Facebook** options from the login page.

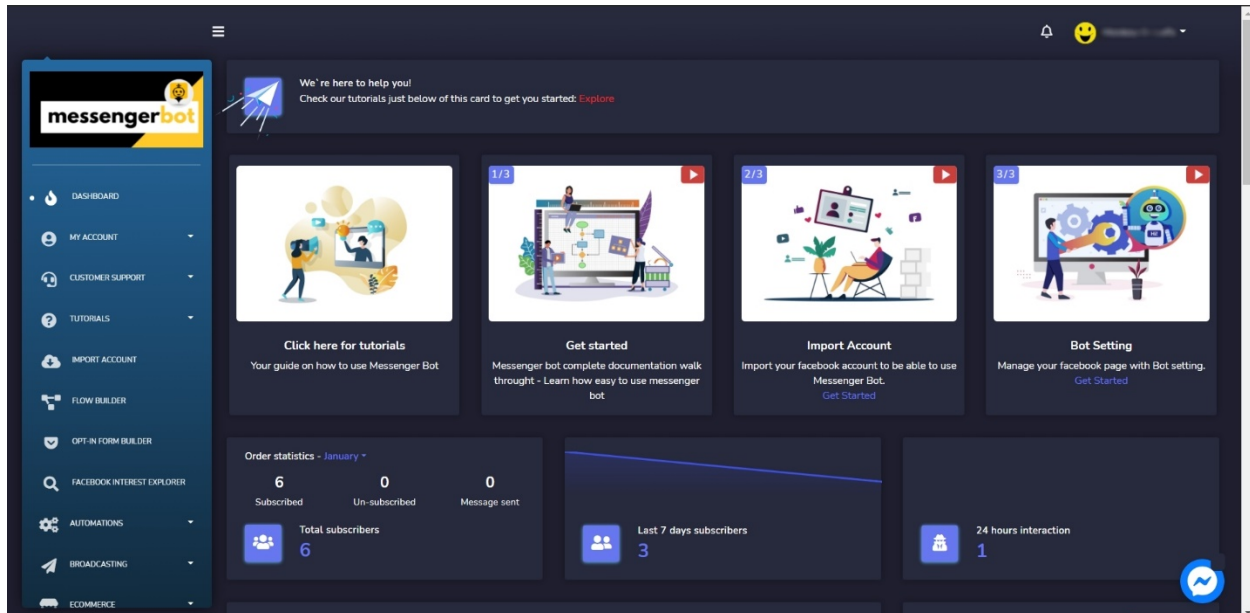




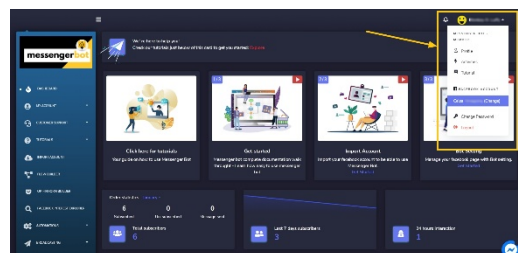


UI Overview

This is the default view of the UI that appears on the screen after user login activity once the account is (required only the first time).

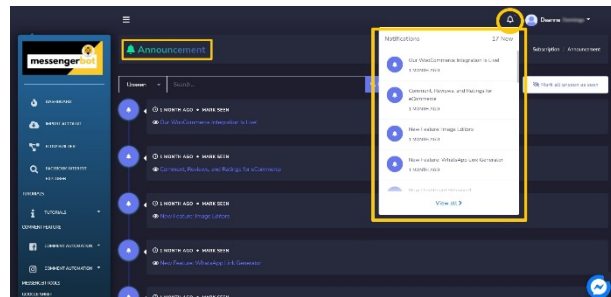


Field Name	Description
Active Profile	<p>It is located at the top left corner of the UI next to Current Profile. It displays the name of the active profile. User can access the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Profile: Change the profile settings • Activities: View your calendar • Tutorial • Short cut to Facebook profile • Change password • Logout




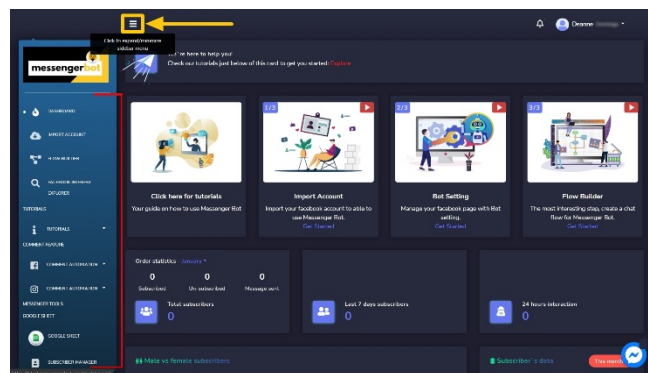


The alarm icon beside the active profile displays all the latest notifications that are either new or unread by a user.



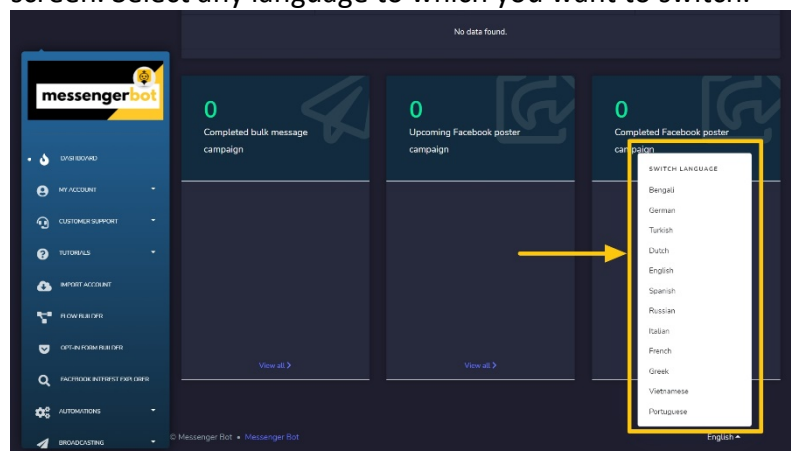
Navigation Sidebar (Hamburger Menu)

It is located in the top left corner of the UI. Click on the hamburger menu icon  to expand/minimize it. It allows the user to switch between various views provided by Messenger Bot's UI.



Switch Language

It is located at the bottom right of the UI. Click on the already selected language, a list of available languages will appear on the screen. Select any language to which you want to switch.

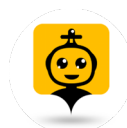
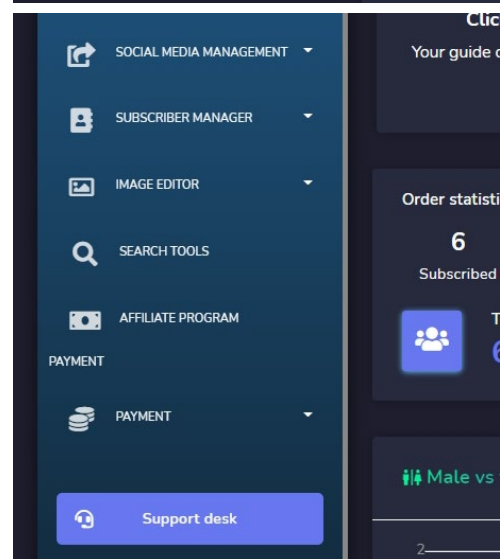
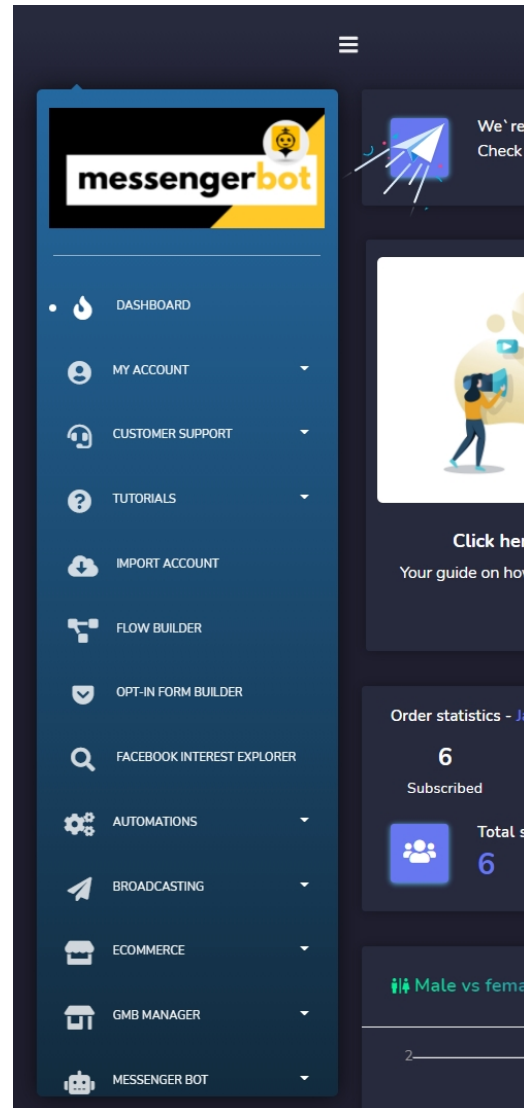


To have a detailed overview for each, click on the respective section name from the list of various views shared below:





- Dashboard
- My Account
- Customer Support
- Tutorials
- Import Account
- Flow Builder
- Opt-in Form Builder
- Facebook Interest Explorer
- Automation
- Broadcasting
- Ecommerce
- GMB Manager
- Messenger Bot
- Social Media Management
- Subscriber Manager
- Image Editor
- Search Tools
- Affiliate Program
- Payment
- Support Desk

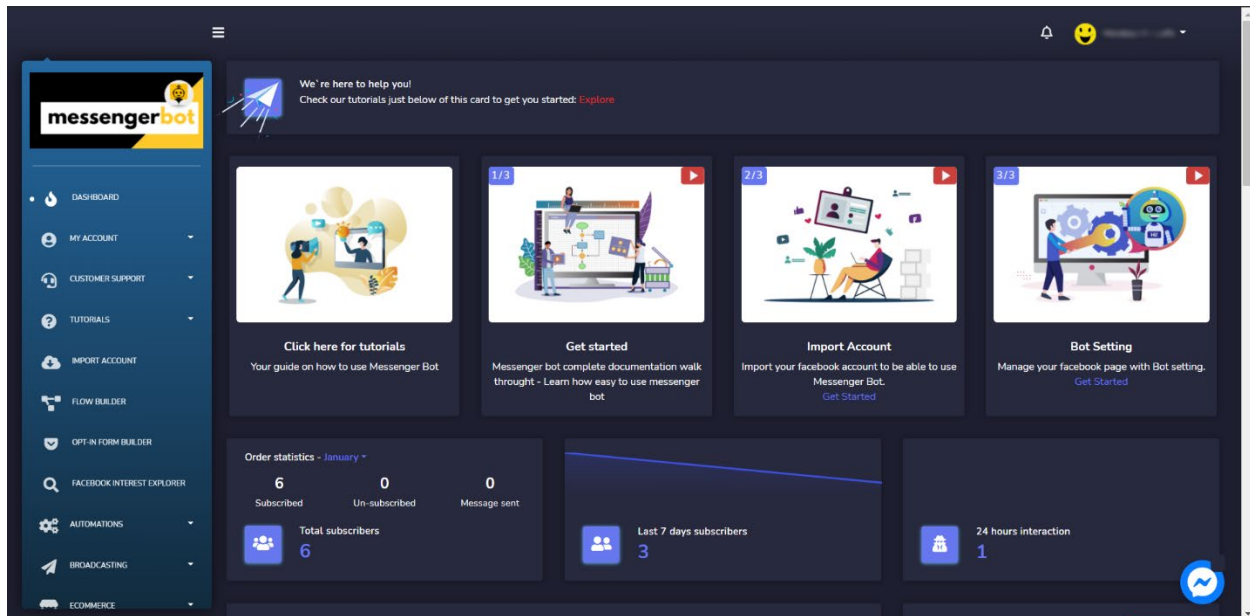




Dashboard

Messenger Bot's dashboard collects user traffic-specific information and helps the user to visualize the various aspects of Messenger Bot in the form of graphs. This dashboard is also the default view of the Messenger Bot application

However, to view the dashboard select the **Dashboard** option from the navigation sidebar. The following screen will appear on the application window:



It is further divided into 15 widgets:

- [Startup Overview](#)
- [Order Statistics](#)
- [Last 7 days subscribers](#)
- [24 hours interaction](#)
- [Male vs female subscribers](#)
- [Subscriber's data](#)
- [Latest subscribers](#)
- [Subscribers from different sources](#)
- [Last auto reply](#)
- [Completed bulk message](#)
- [Upcoming Facebook poster campaign](#)
- [Completed Facebook poster campaign](#)

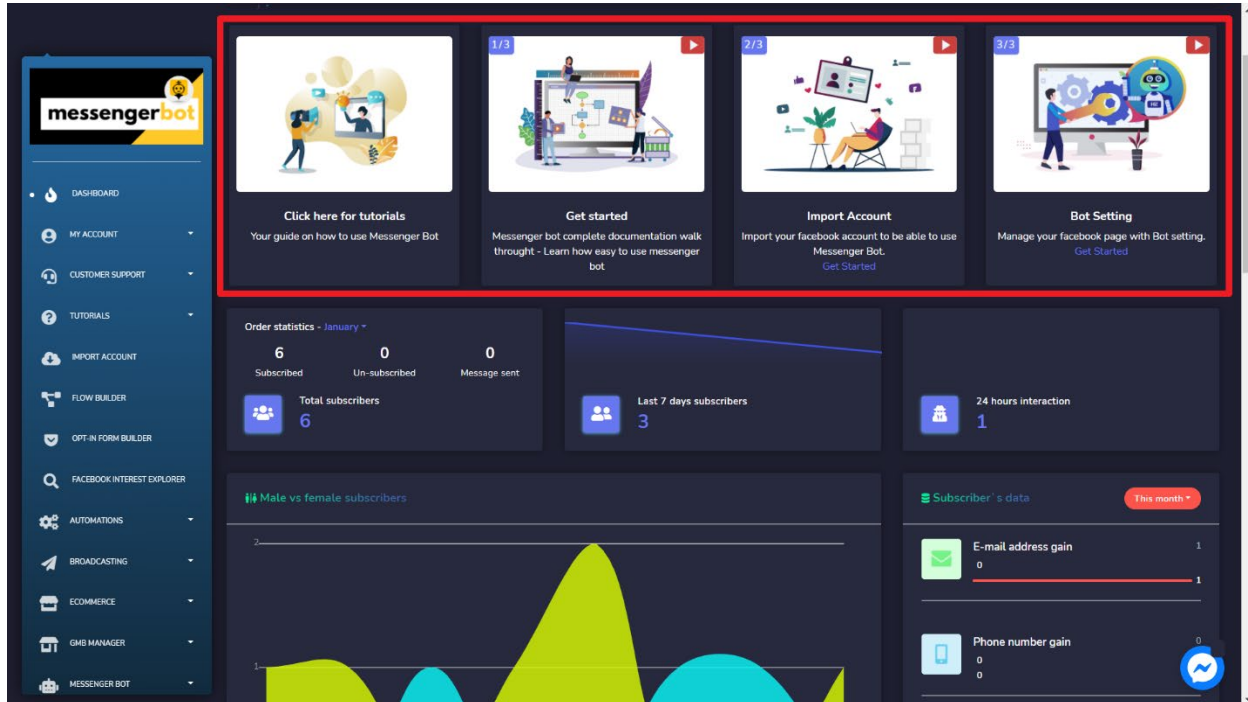




A brief description of each widget is also shared in the section below.

Startup Overview

This is located in the upper row part of the dashboard, the 4 widgets. These are the basics of Messenger Bot that new user needs and most common things a user will use such as Tutorials, Import Account, Bot Settings, and Flow Builder.

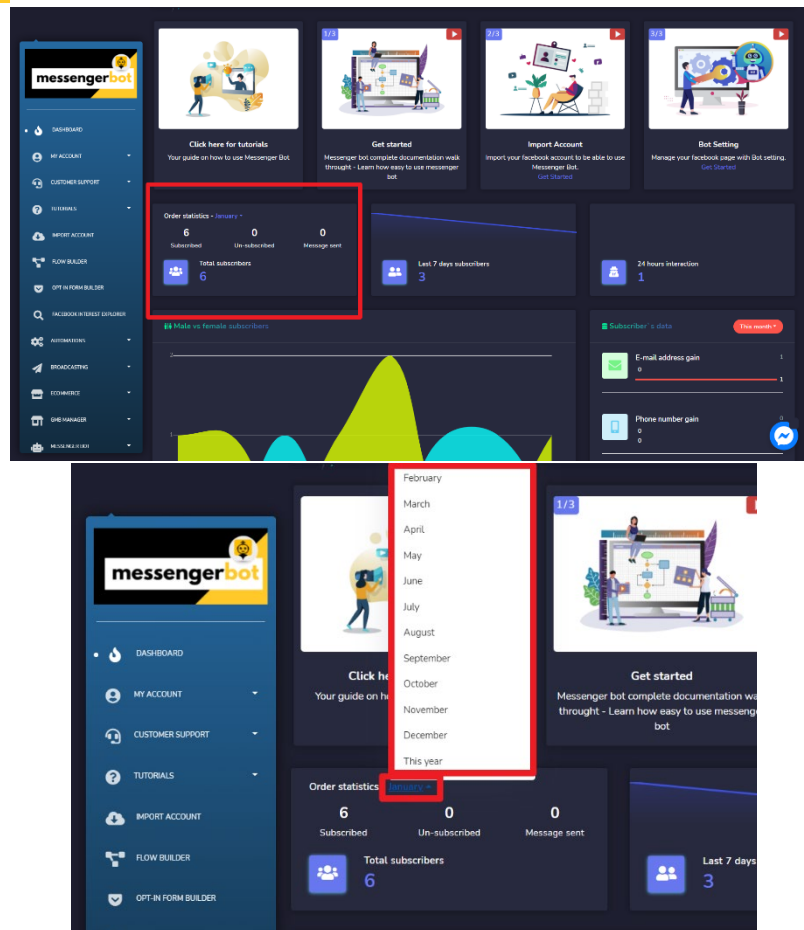


Order Statistics

This widget displays stats based on the number of subscribers the integrated Facebook page has and categorizes them month-wise.

- To view the stats of different months, select the already selected month. A dropdown menu will appear on the screen, select a different month this time.

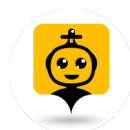
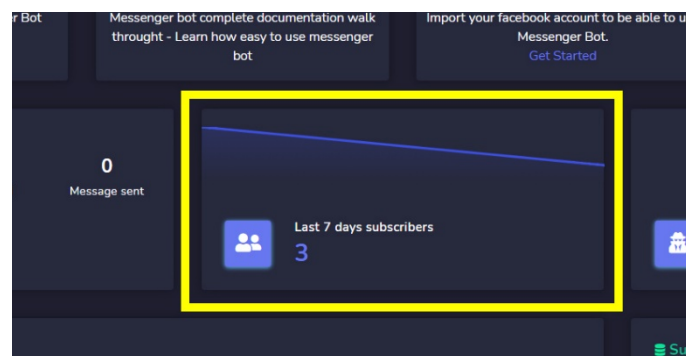


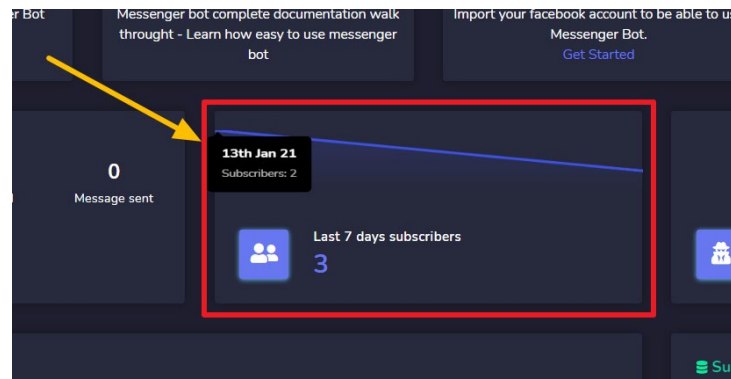


Last 7 days subscribers

This widget displays the total number of subscribers, the integrated Facebook page has in the past 7 days.

- To view the date-wise number of subscriptions, click on this widget.

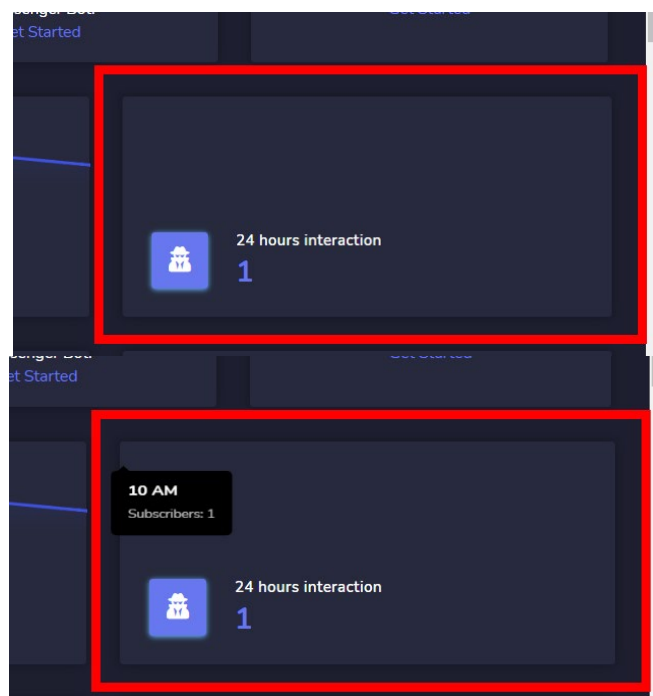




24 Hour Interaction

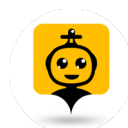
This modal view displays the interaction made in the past 24 hours. It classifies the number of subscribers based on the time they subscribed to the Facebook page. The widget uses a graph to display this interaction.

1. Hover over the graph to view the number of subscribers per hour.



Male vs female subscribers

This view displays the graphical representation of the existing male subscribers' ratio versus the female subscribers. A gender-wise classification based on the number can be observed by respective dates on hovering the parts of the graph.



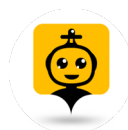


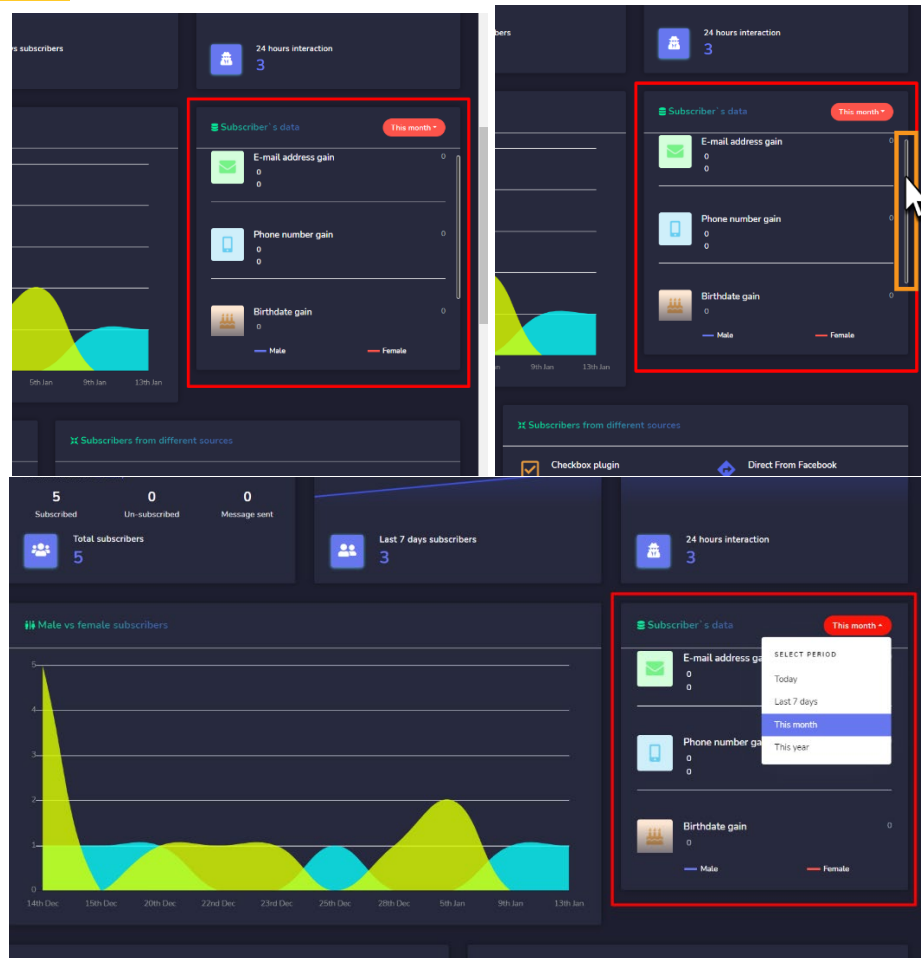
Subscriber's Data

This widget displays a summary of all the subscribers. It provides the following information about the subscribers:

- Email-address gain
- Phone number gain
- Birthdate gain

You can scroll down to access the remaining fields. You can select the time period to narrow down the search.





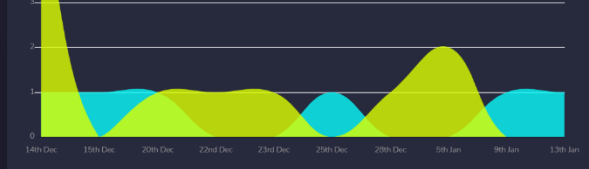
The widget classifies male data in purple color while female subscriber's data in red color.

Latest subscribers

This section displays a link to all the latest subscribers. You can reach out to them by selecting **Go to inbox**.

This widget also provides a shortcut to the Facebook page to which the subscribers are associated. Click on the page name, as shown **"Demo"** page as an example below:





Birthdate gain

0


Male Female

Latest subscribers




Messenger Bot Demo Restaurant
16 Days Ago

Go to Inbox



Ivan
19 Days Ago

Go to Inbox



Arvin
20 Hours Ago

Go to Inbox

Subscribers from different sources

Checkbox plugin
0

Sent to Messenger Plugin
0

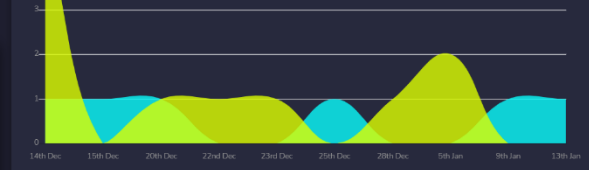
Customer chat plugin
0

Direct From Facebook
37


Comment Private Reply
0

M.me link
0

Last auto reply


Reply to	Reply time	Comment ID	Comment
			

Latest subscribers




Ivan
19 Days Ago

Go to Inbox



Arvin
20 Hours Ago

Go to Inbox



Messenger Bot Demo Restaurant
4 Days Ago

Go to Inbox

Subscribers from different sources

Checkbox plugin
0

Sent to Messenger Plugin
0

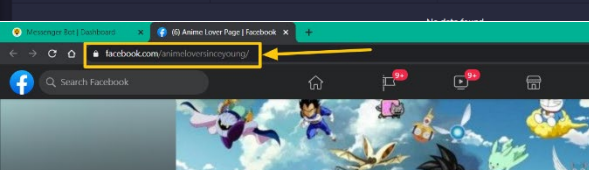
Customer chat plugin
0

Direct From Facebook
37

Comment Private Reply
0

M.me link
0


Last auto reply

Reply to	Reply time	Comment ID	Comment
			

Messenger Bot | Downloads

Facebook | Anime Lover Page | Facebook

facebook.com/anime loversinceyoung/



Anime Lover Page
@animeloversinceyoung · Arts & Entertainment

Send Message

Home Groups Reviews Videos More

About

It's all about anime update

Create Post

Photo/Video Check in Tag friends

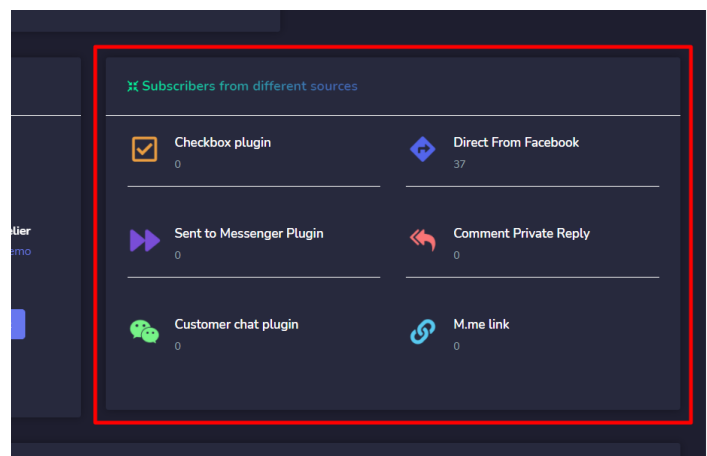




Subscribers from different sources

You can also visualize a summarized view of total number of subscribers from different sources. It displays statistics of subscribers from following sources:

- Checkbox plugin
- Direct from Facebook
- Sent to Messenger Plugin
- Comment Private Reply
- Customer chat plugin
- M.me link

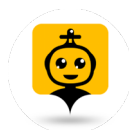


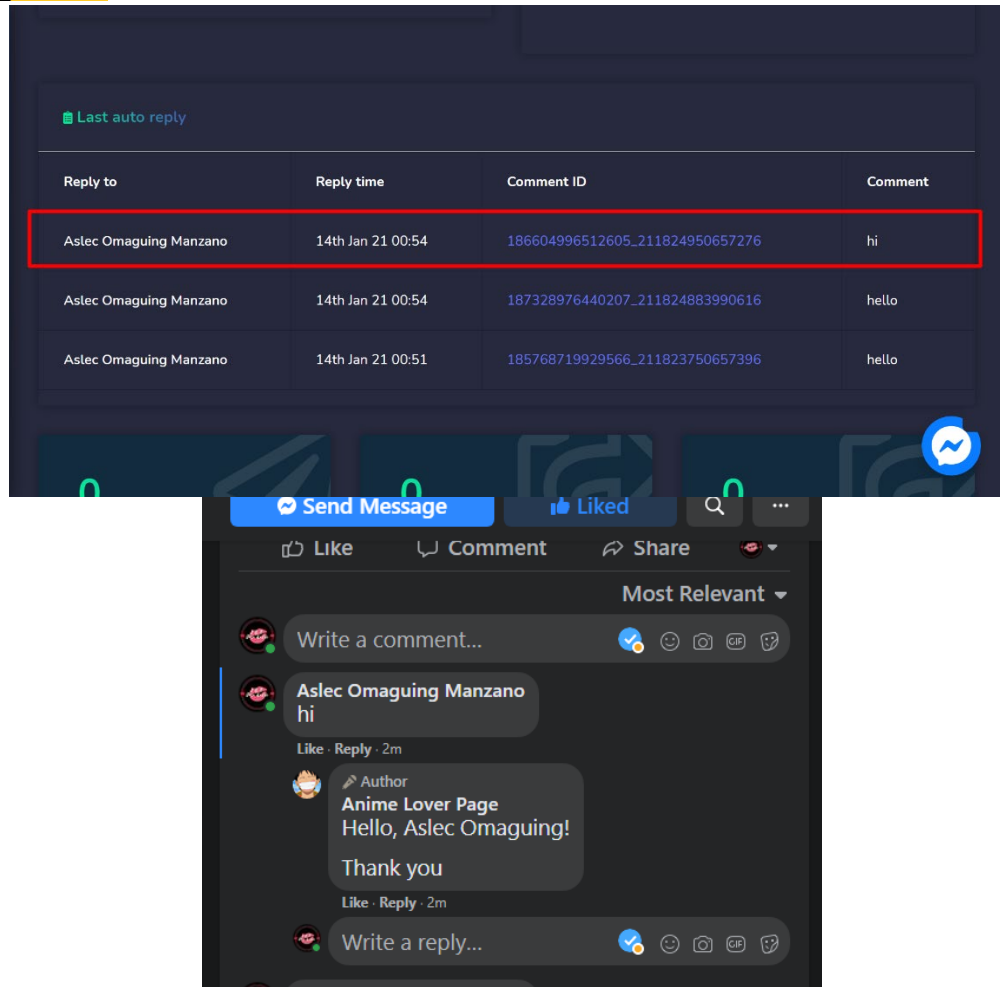
Last auto reply

This section displays a summary of the auto reply feature. It displays the details like:

- Reply was sent to whom
- Reply time
- Comment ID
- Comment

You can click on **Comment ID** to redirect to the comment which was auto-replied on your page.

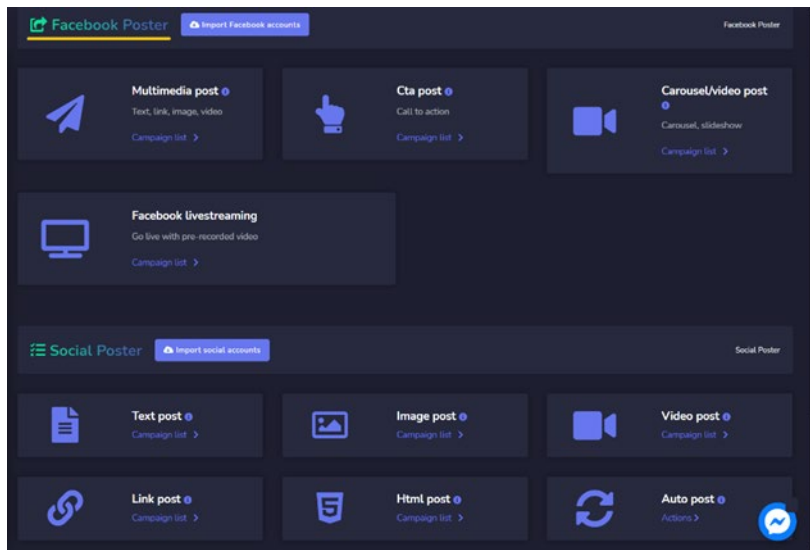
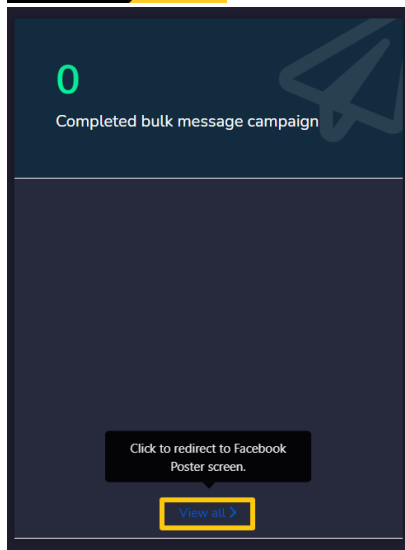




Completed bulk message

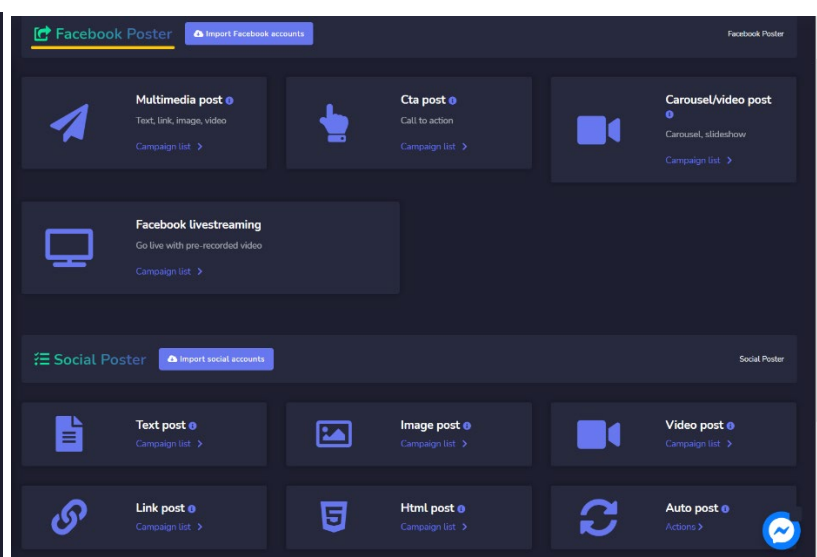
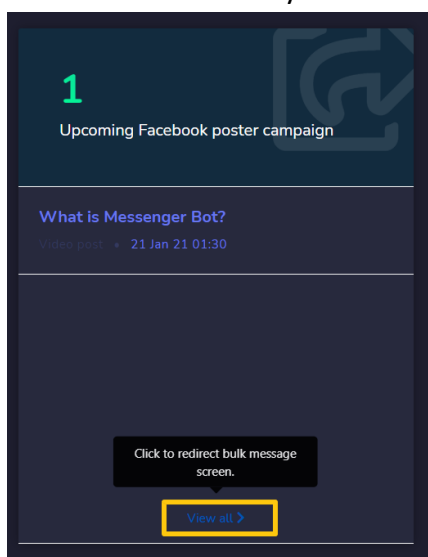
You can view the statistics and exacts the number of the completed bulk messages. Click on **View all** to redirect the bulk message screen to the Facebook Poster screen.





Upcoming Facebook poster campaign

You can view the statistics and exacts the number of upcoming Facebook poster campaigns. Click on **View all** and you will be redirected to the Facebook Poster screen.



Completed Facebook poster campaign

You can view the statistics and exacts the number of completed Facebook poster campaigns. Click on **View all** and you will be redirected to the Facebook Poster screen.





1

Completed Facebook poster campaign

What is Messenger Bot?

Video post • 14 Jan 21 01:35

View all >

Facebook Poster

Import Facebook accounts

Facebook Poster

Multimedia post •
Text, link, image, video
Campaign list >

Cta post •
Call to action
Campaign list >

Carousel/video post •
Carousel, slideshow
Campaign list >

Facebook livestreaming
Go live with pre-recorded video
Campaign list >

Social Poster

Import social accounts

Social Poster

Text post •
Campaign list >

Image post •
Campaign list >

Video post •
Campaign list >

Link post •
Campaign list >

Html post •
Campaign list >

Auto post •
Actions >

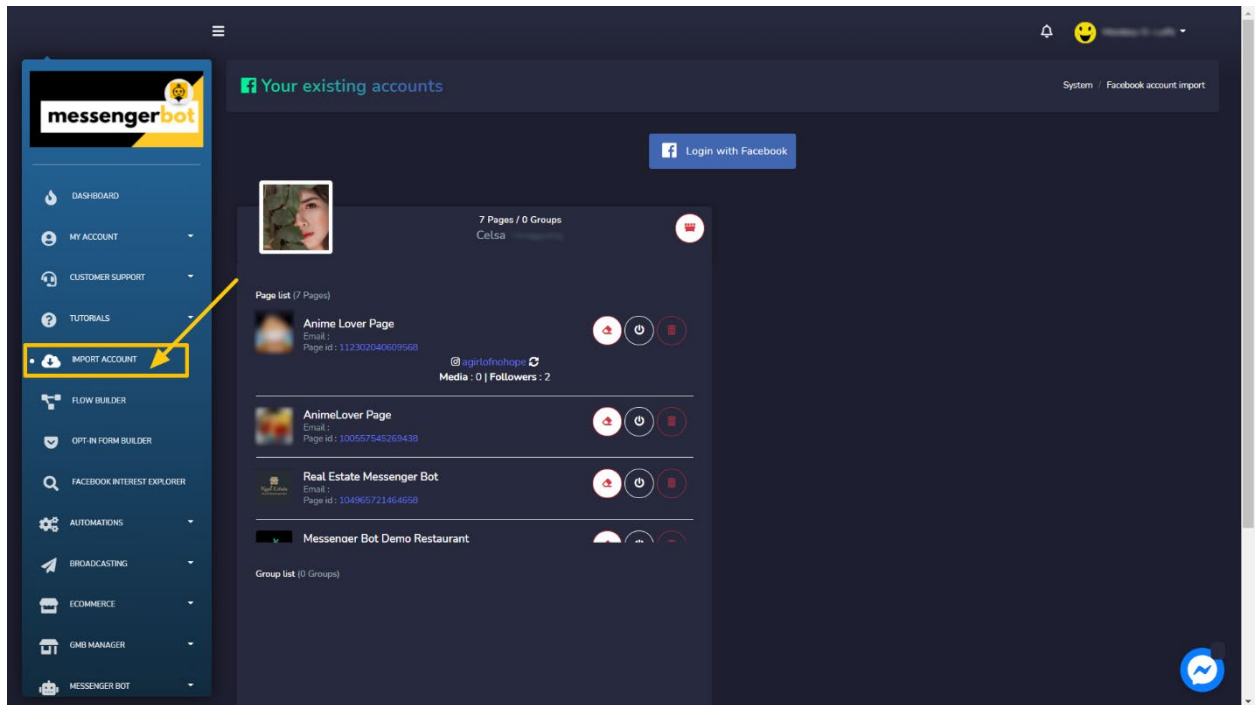
A circular icon featuring the messengerbot logo, which is a yellow speech bubble with a black outline and a small black robot head icon inside.



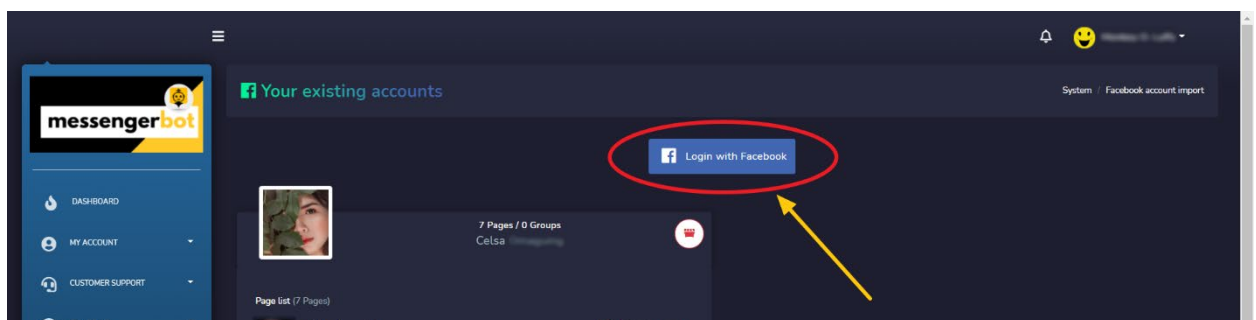
Import Account

To make Messenger Bot application function, you need to import your account to it. You can import your Facebook account by selecting the Import Account option from the side navigation bar.

1. Select the **Import Account** option from the navigation sidebar. A screen containing **Login with Facebook** will appear.

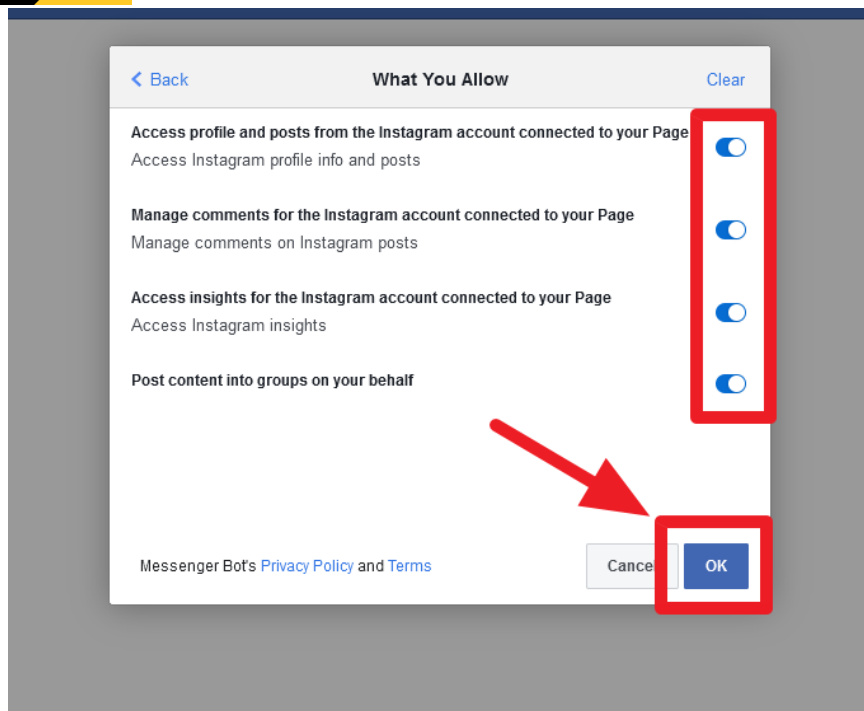


2. Select **Login in with Facebook** option.
3. Continue with your Facebook user profile.



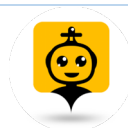
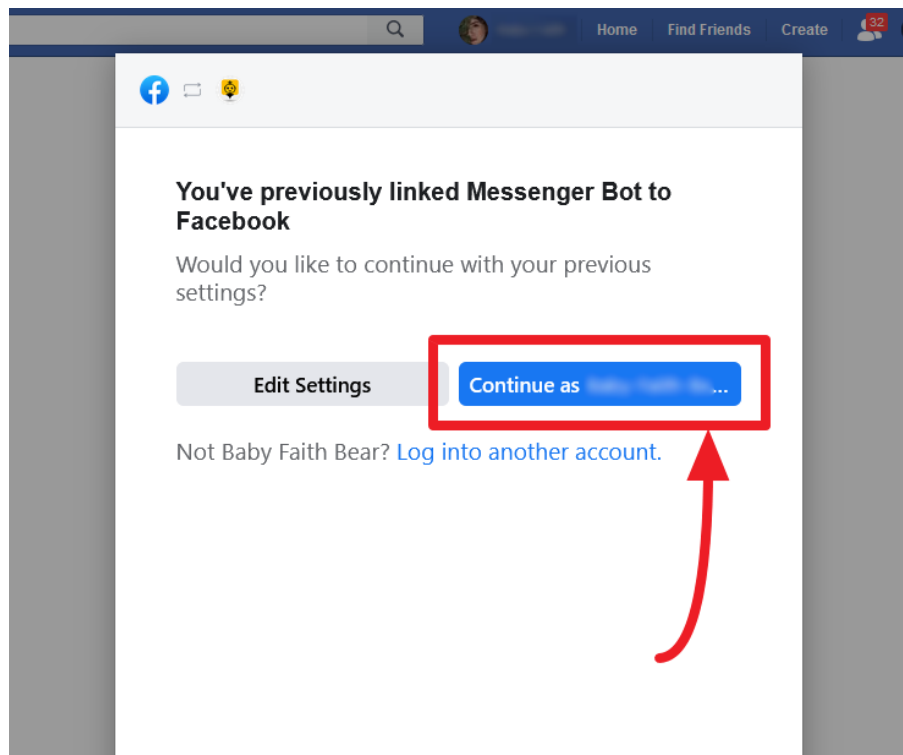
Allow all the things that you need then click "OK".





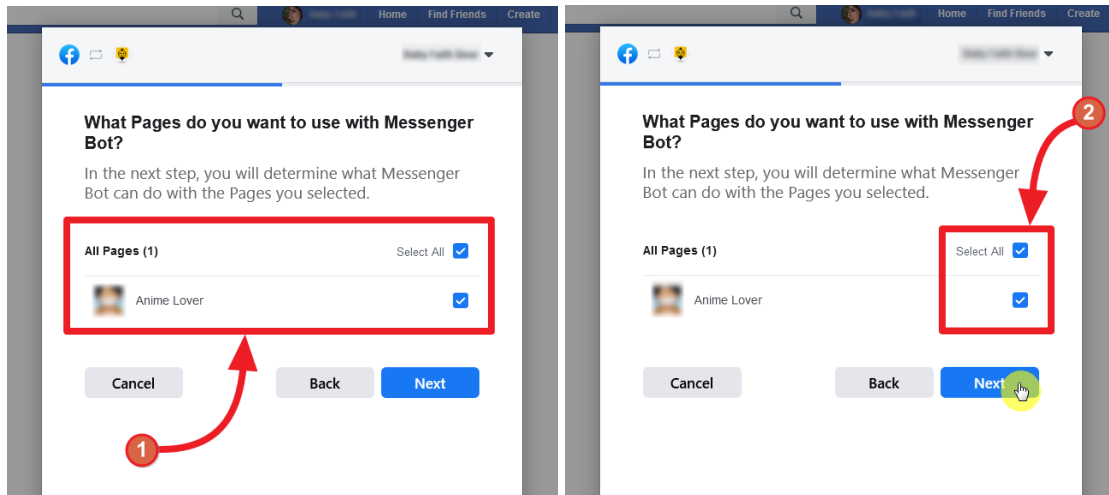
Note

- If you are not logged in, then you need to login to your Facebook account to continue.





- Once logged in, a list of pages will appear that are associated with your imported Facebook account. Select the pages you want to import by clicking on the square checkboxes next to the names of available pages. Select **Next**.

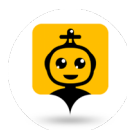


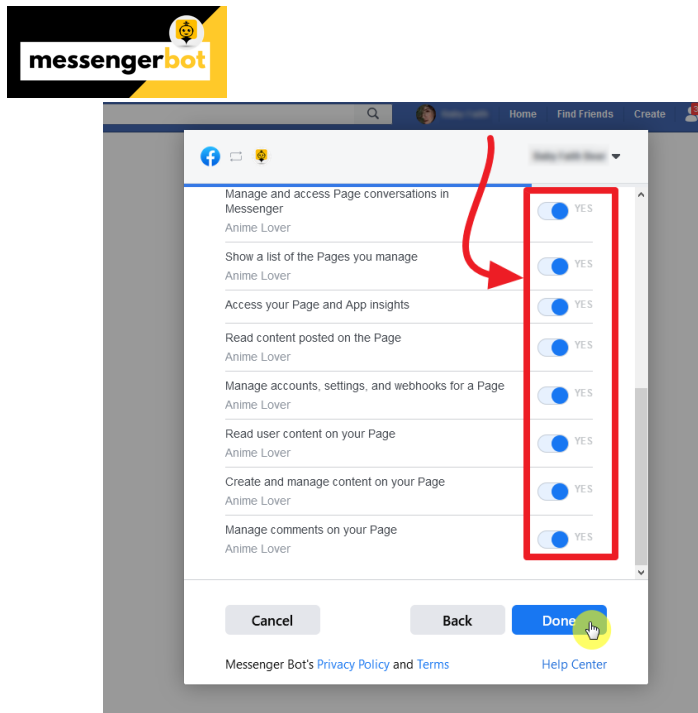
- Turn on the slider button against the options you want to allow the Messenger Bot Application to perform actions to. The options include, receive your email address, manage your pages, and other management-related permissions.

Note

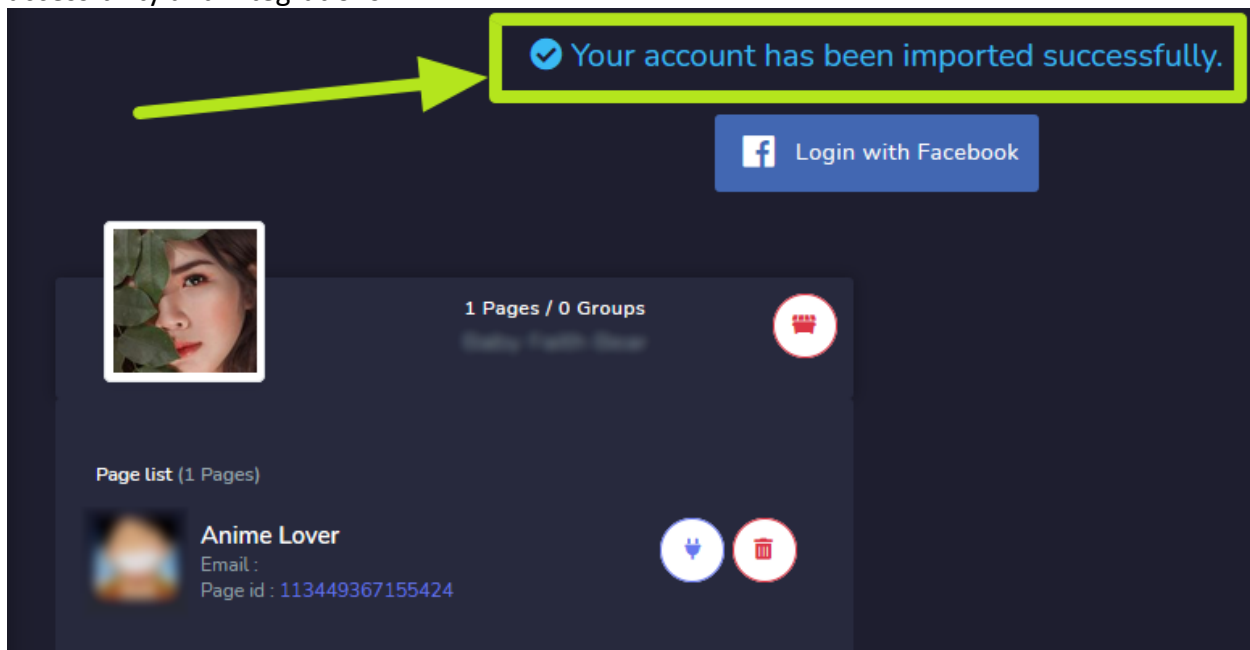
- To make the Messenger Bot application perform most adequately, allow all management permissions.

- Once given the application all permissions, select **Done**.





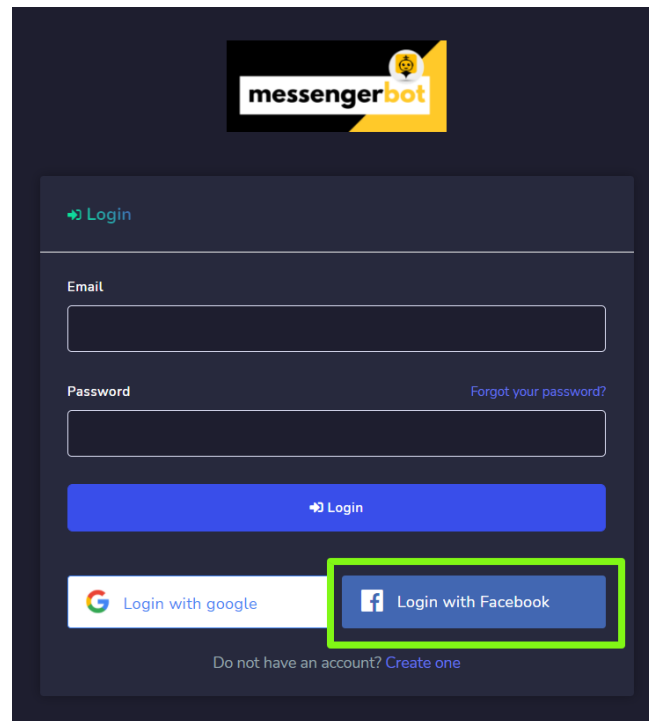
Your existing Facebook account will be imported to Messenger Bot along with different rights of accessibility and integrations.



Login with Facebook

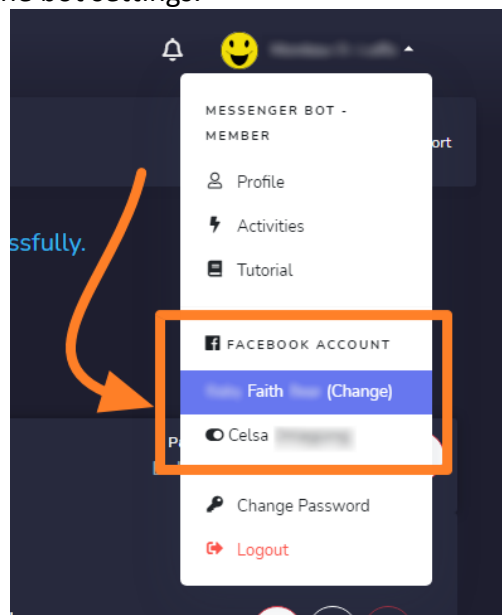
As mentioned in [Accessing Messenger Bot](#) section, one way to access the Messenger Bot application is to login with your Facebook account.





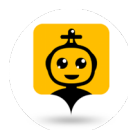
Switch accounts

Once logged in with Facebook, you can manage multiple accounts as well. Select your account profile from the top right of the screen. A dropdown menu will appear containing multiple accounts that are logged in already. You can select any of your accounts based on your requirements and manage the bot settings.




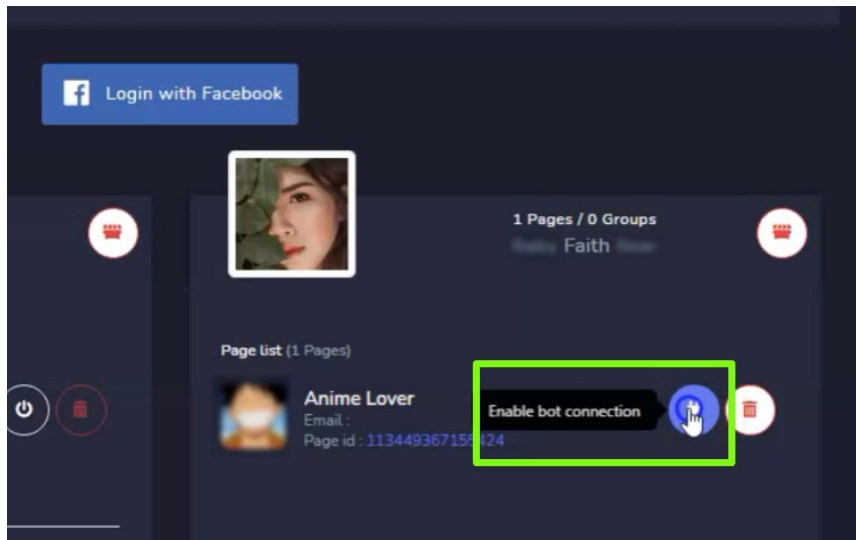
Enable Messenger Bot

Once the account is imported, you need to enable the Messenger Bot application.

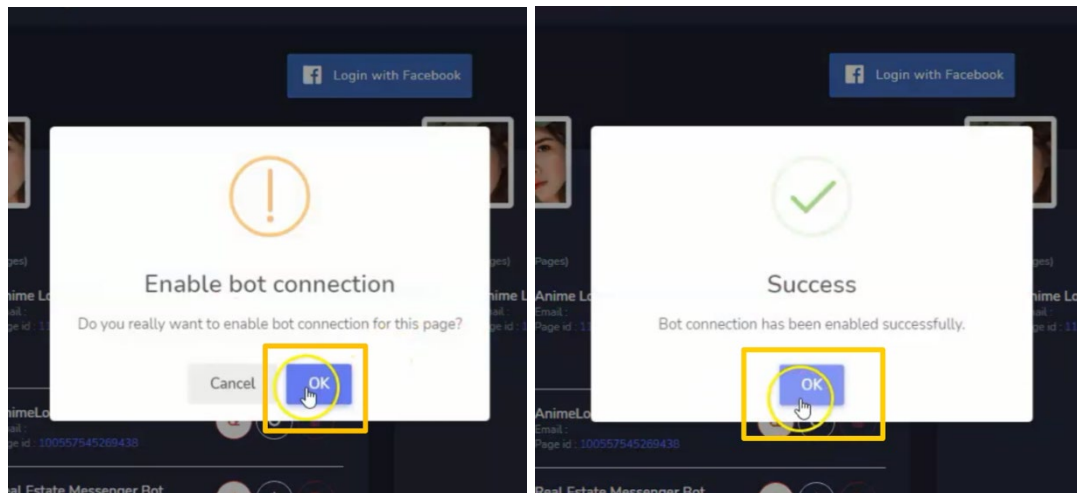




- 1) Select the  icon next to the page name.




- 2) A dialogue box will appear, then select **OK** to proceed.

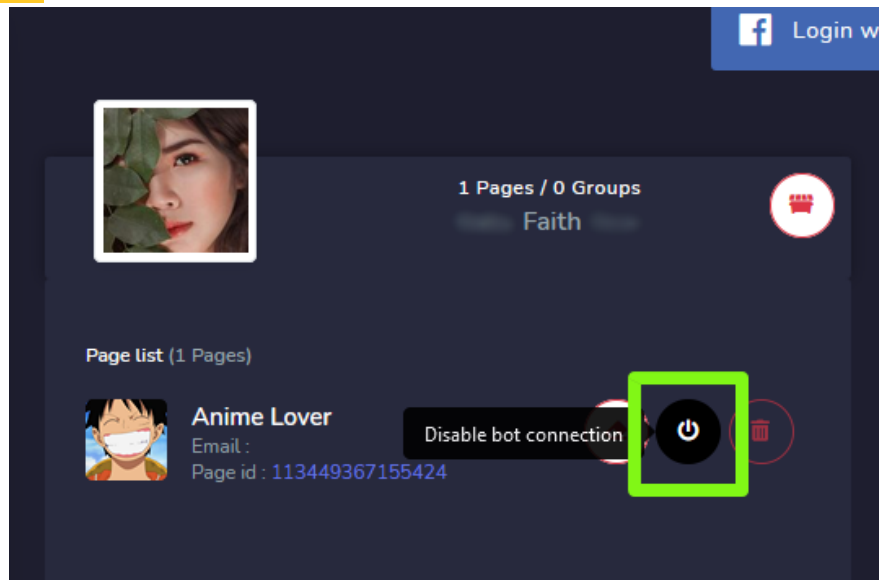


Bot connection will now be enabled.

Disable bot connection


To disable the bot connection, you need to select  icon next to the name of your Facebook page.

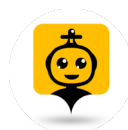
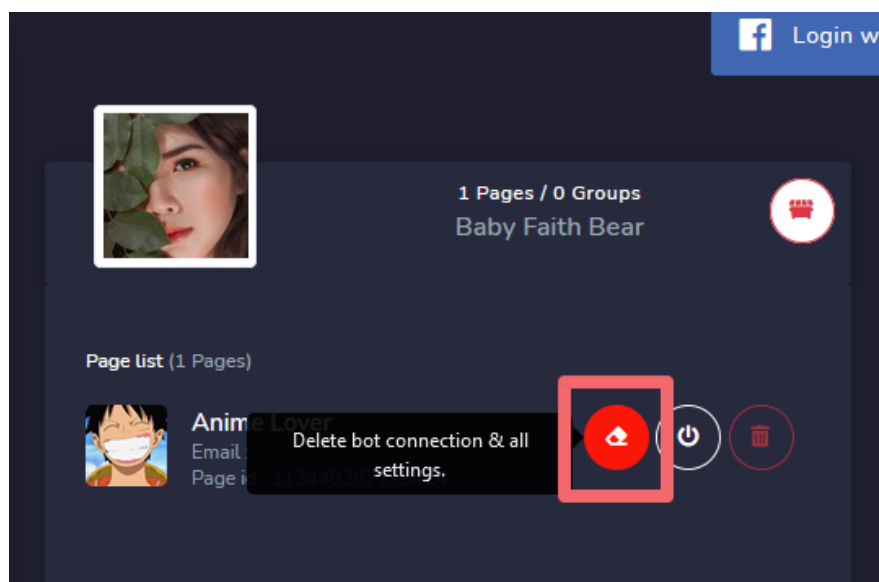




Bot connection will be disabled.


Delete bot connection

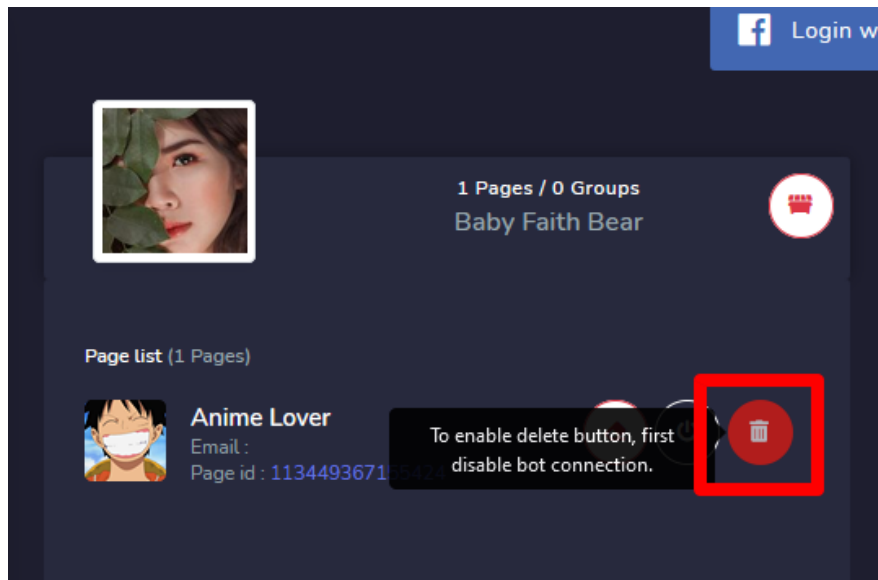
You can delete all bot connections and reset the settings once again by selecting the  icon next to the name of your Facebook page.






Delete Facebook Page

You can delete your page from the database by select  icon against the page name in the page list.



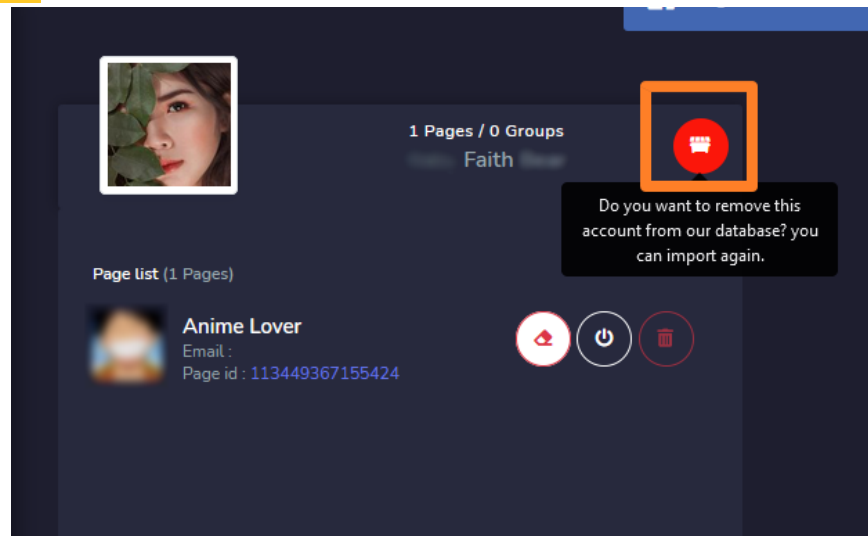
Note

- To delete any page you need to enable the delete button you need to disable the bot connection by selecting  icon.

Delete Facebook account

To delete the Facebook account, select the  icon, next to the account's user name. Deleting the user account will also remove the pages associated with that account.






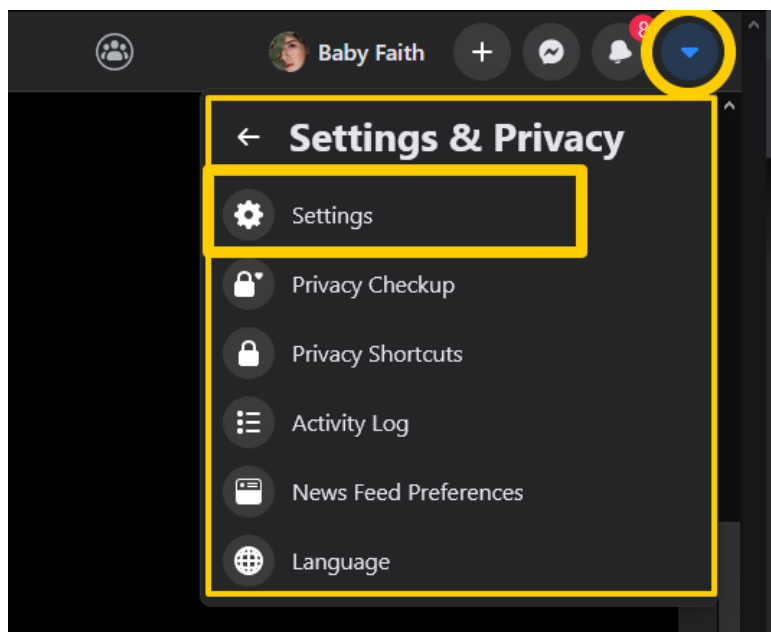
Note

- Once deleted, you can still import your account once again and reconfigure it.

Messenger Bot Integration from Facebook

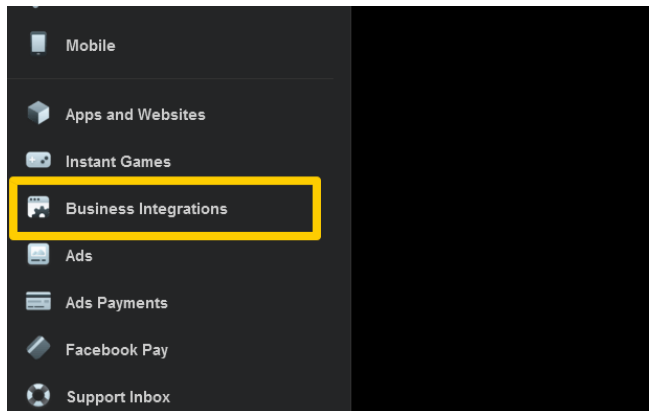
To integrate the Facebook account and manage Messenger Bot permissions from the Facebook platform, follow the steps given below:

1. Log into Facebook and click  in the top right of Facebook.
2. Click **Settings**.

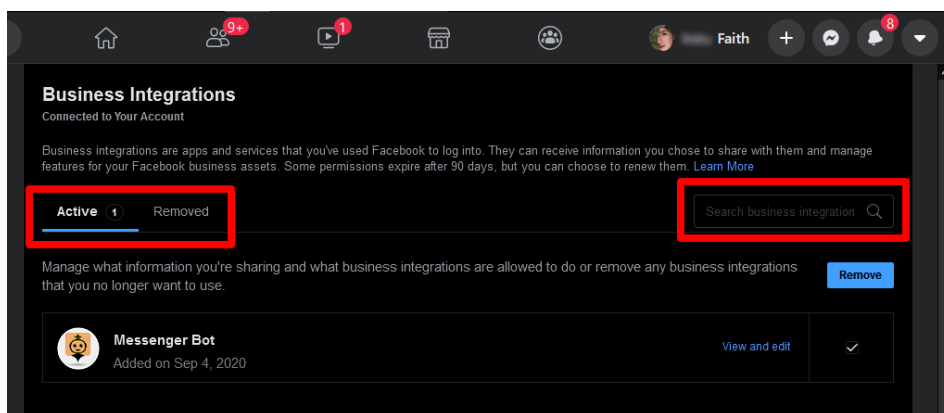




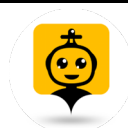
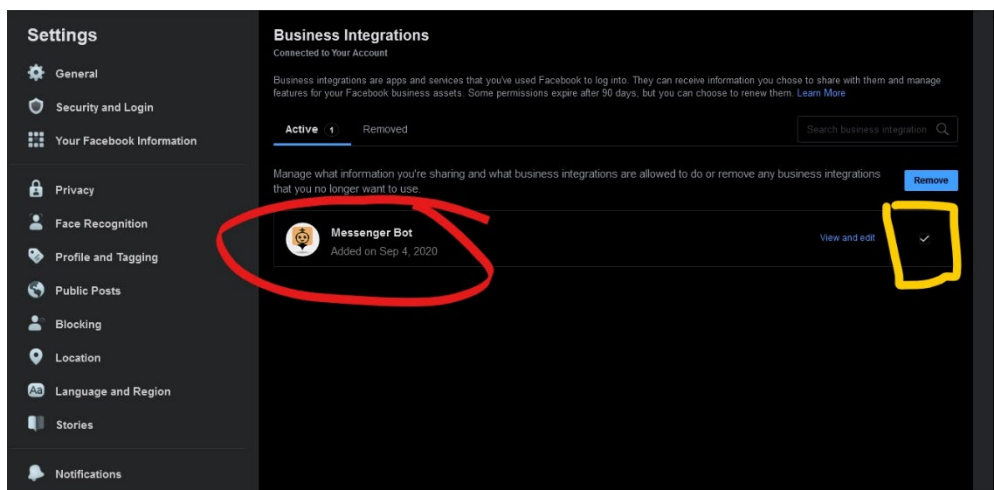
3. Click **Apps and Websites** on the left.
4. Click **Business Integrations** on the left side.



5. Filter between **Active** or **Removed** at the top, or search for Messenger Bot business integration using the search bar to the right.

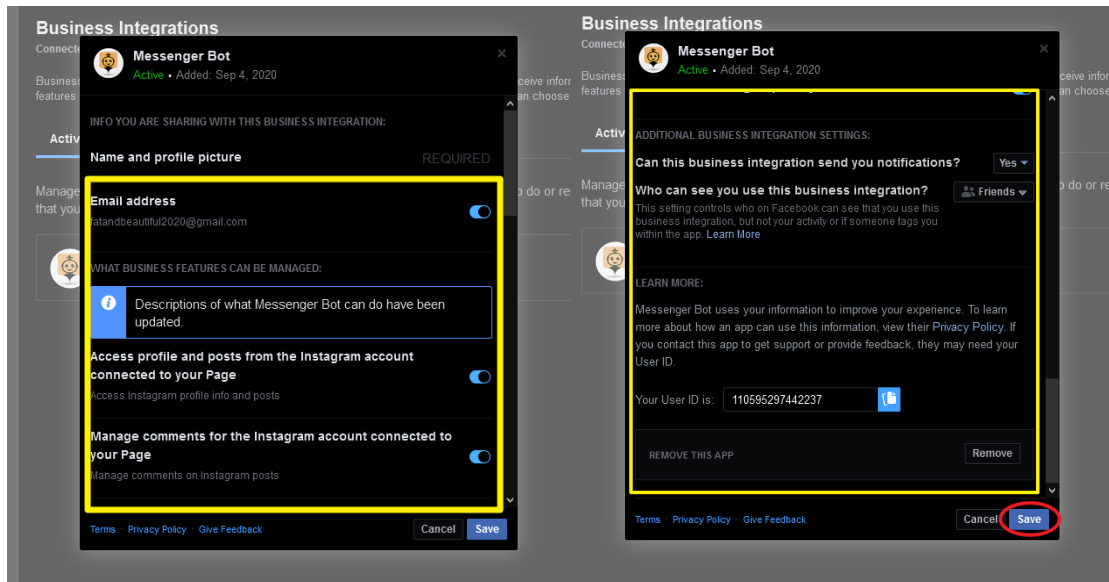


6. Click **View and Edit** next to the Messenger Bot business integration to control the info it has access to.





Adjust your settings by checking or unchecking the boxes next to your information or using the dropdown menus, and then click **Save**.

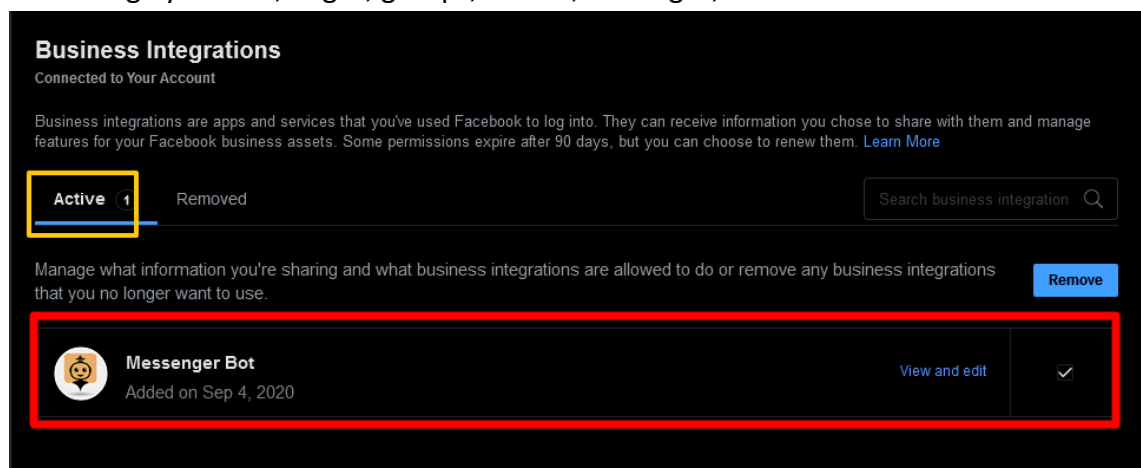


Remove Messenger Bot integration

To remove Messenger Bot integration, select Messenger Bot then click **Remove** > **Remove**.

If a business integration is:

- **Active:** You've connected Messenger Bot integration to your account. Messenger Bot can manage your ads, Pages, groups, events, messages, or other business info.



- **Removed:** You've disconnected Messenger Bot integration from your account. It can no longer manage your ads, Pages, groups, events, messages, or other business info. It'll





also no longer be able to request private info about you, but it may have the info you've previously shared.

Business Integrations

Connected to Your Account


Business integrations are apps and services that you've used Facebook to log into. They can receive information you chose to share with them and manage features for your Facebook business assets. Some permissions expire after 90 days, but you can choose to renew them. [Learn More](#)

Active 1

Removed

Search business integration

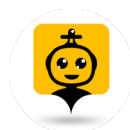
Manage what information you're sharing and what business integrations are allowed to do or remove any business integrations that you no longer want to use.



Messenger Bot
Added on Sep 4, 2020

[View and edit](#)

Remove





Visual Flow Builder

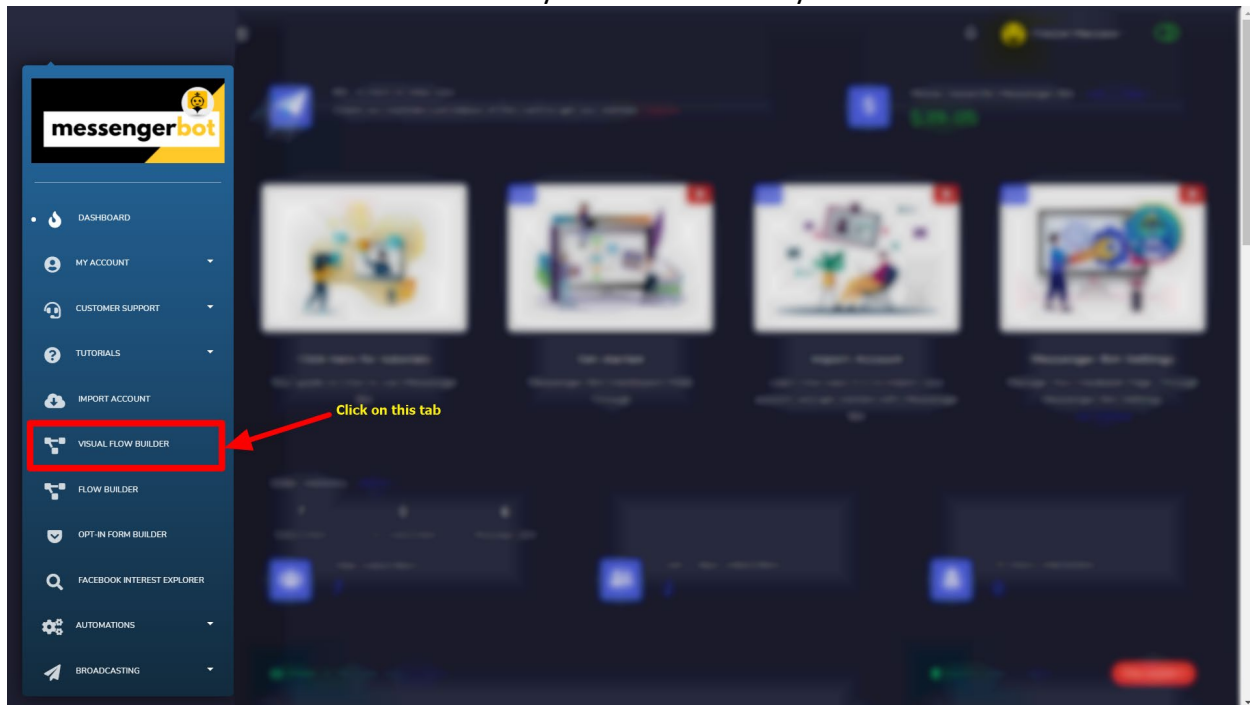
INTRODUCTION: Getting Started is Easy!

Welcome to Messenger Bots Flow Builder. This documentation guide you that how you can effectively use the Flow Builder feature.

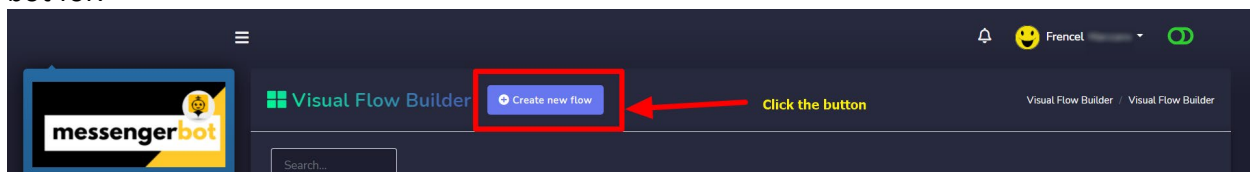
Get Started

In this section, we will be introduced to the features that come with **Messenger Bot Flow Builder**. So let's start.

Click on the **Visual Flow Builder** menu in your dashboard on your left.



Click again on the **Create new flow** button and select the Facebook page you want to create a bot for.

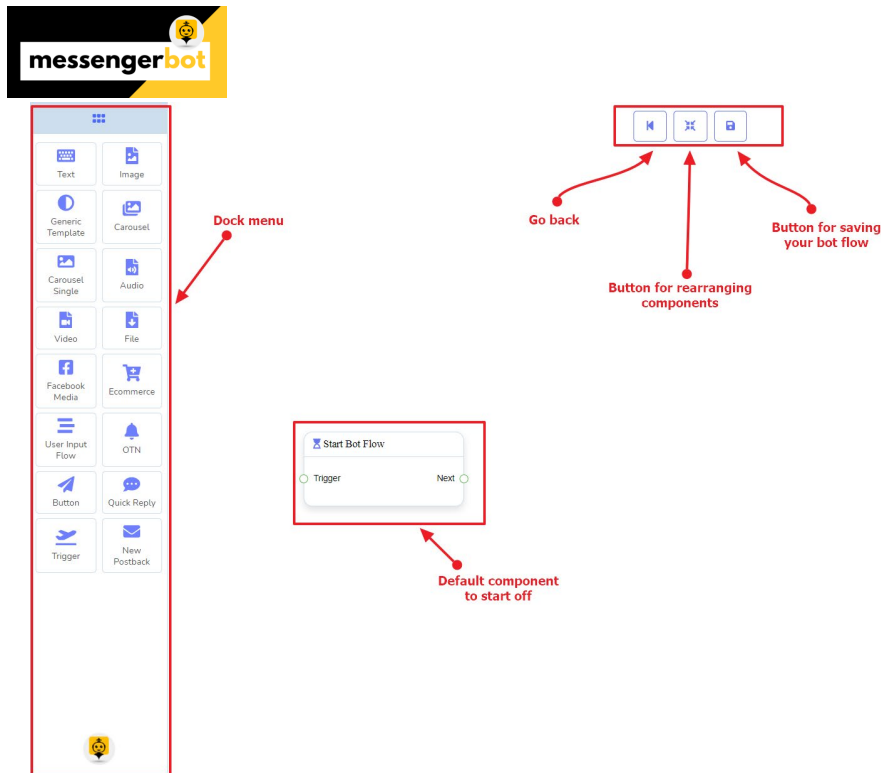


Now, click on the **Ok** button.



It will then take you to the **visual flow builder interface** like the screenshot below:





Now you can see the **dock menu** marked in a red box. From this dock menu, you can **drag** the **Text** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

Dock Menu contains **components**. You can use them arbitrarily to create your bot flow. No matter how long the bot flow is. So, you can reuse those components again and again.

The **dock menu** comes with the following **components**:

1. **Text**
2. **Image**
3. **Generic Template**
4. **Carousel**
5. **Carousel Single**
6. **Audio**
7. **Video**
8. **File**
9. **Facebook Media**
10. **Ecommerce**
11. **User Input Flow**
12. **OTN**





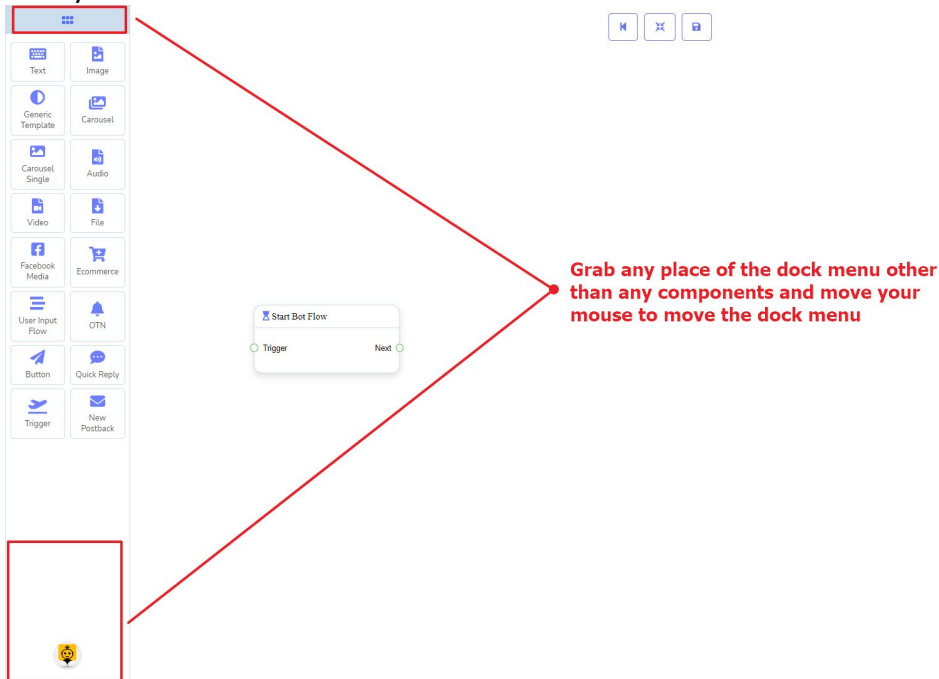
13. Button

14. Quick Reply

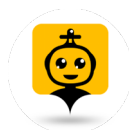
15. Trigger

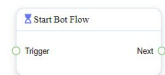
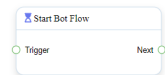
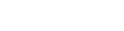
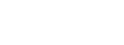
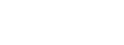
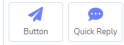
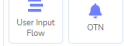
16. New Postback

The can be **moved over** to the editor. **Grab the dock menu's header** by the mouse pointer or **any position** with the components and try to move the **mouse position**. Thus you can put it where you like to.



To **minimize** the dock menu, **click twice on its header**. You will see a tiny red box after minimizing the dock menu. **Click twice on it to reopen** the dock menu again.







Trigger Component

Introduction

The Trigger component will allow you to get started with the bot. All you need to connect it to a **Start Bot Flow** or **New Postback**. It has only **1 output** socket.

- Output: **Next**

Connections

Next may be connected to one of the following components:

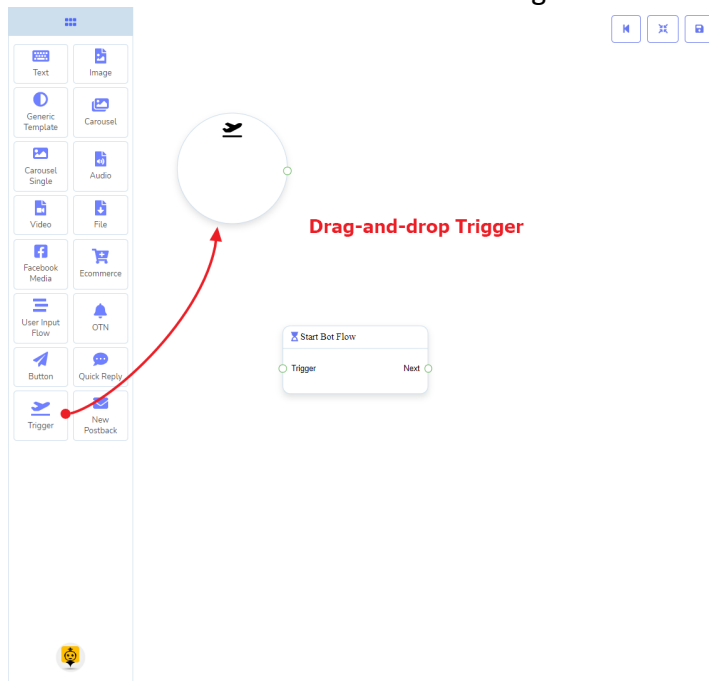
- **Start Bot Flow**, and **New Postback**

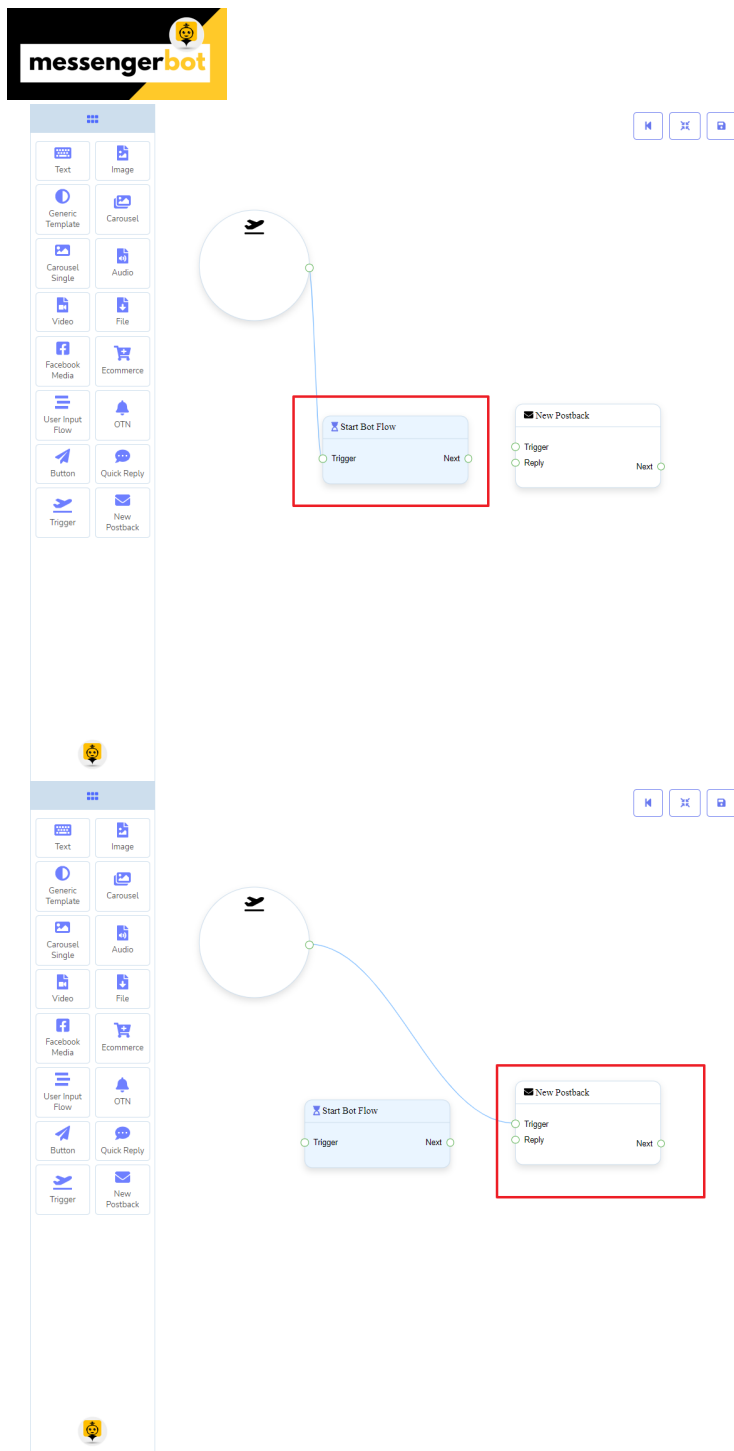
How to create Trigger component

Let us see how we can get started a bot.

Dragging and Dropping

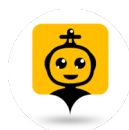
From the dock menu, **drag** the **Trigger** component and **drop** it on the editor and connect to either **Start Bot Flow** or **New Postback** component. Once you're done with making the bot. **Save** the bot flow and start with a messenger.

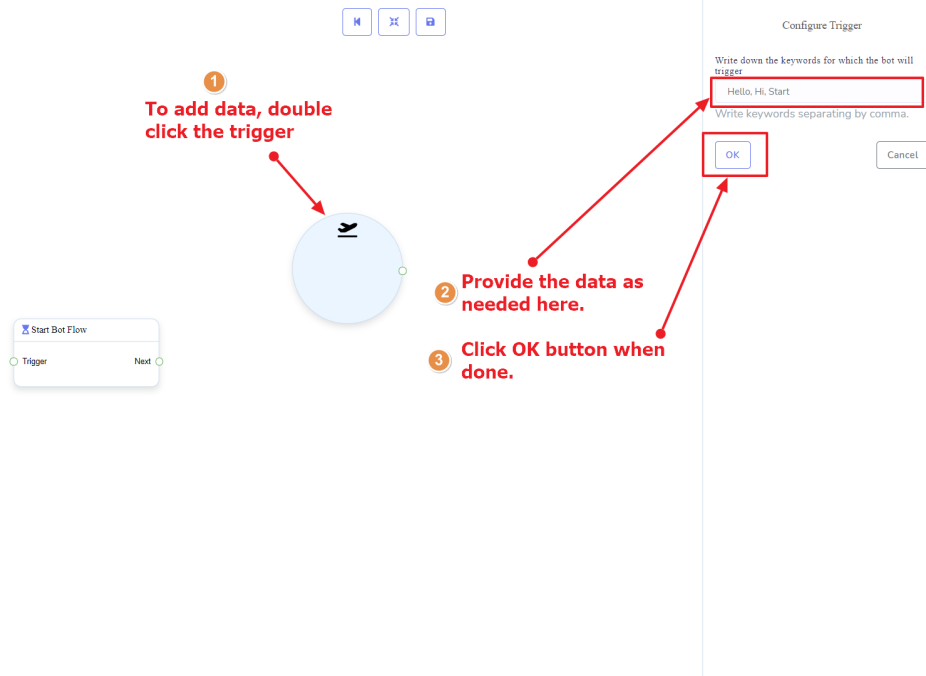
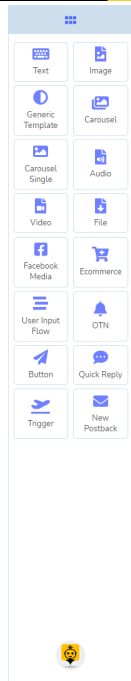




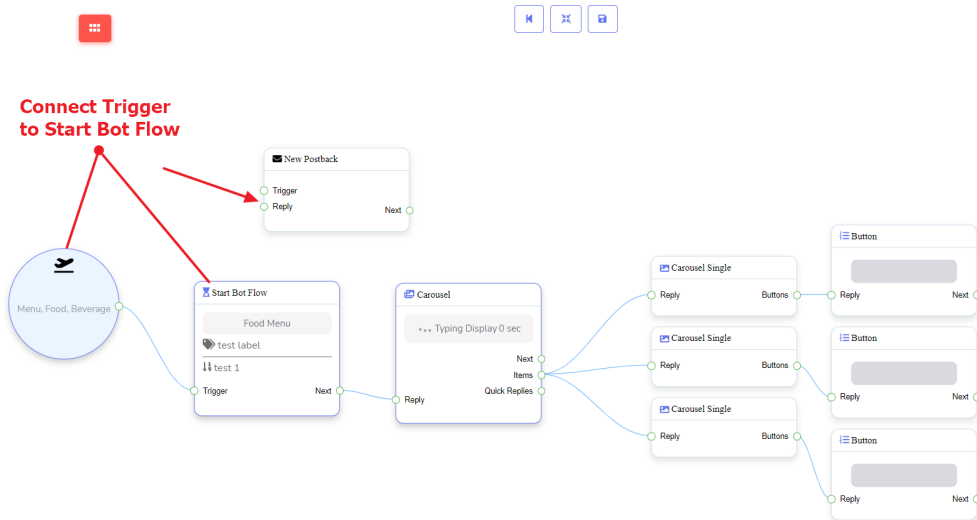
Adding Data

To add data to the **Trigger** component, click twice on the body of the **Trigger** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. Now provide some keywords there separating by a comma. In our case, we're providing single keyword **products**. Now click on the **OK** button.





Then connect it to either **Start Bot Flow** or **New Postback** component.





New Postback Component

Introduction

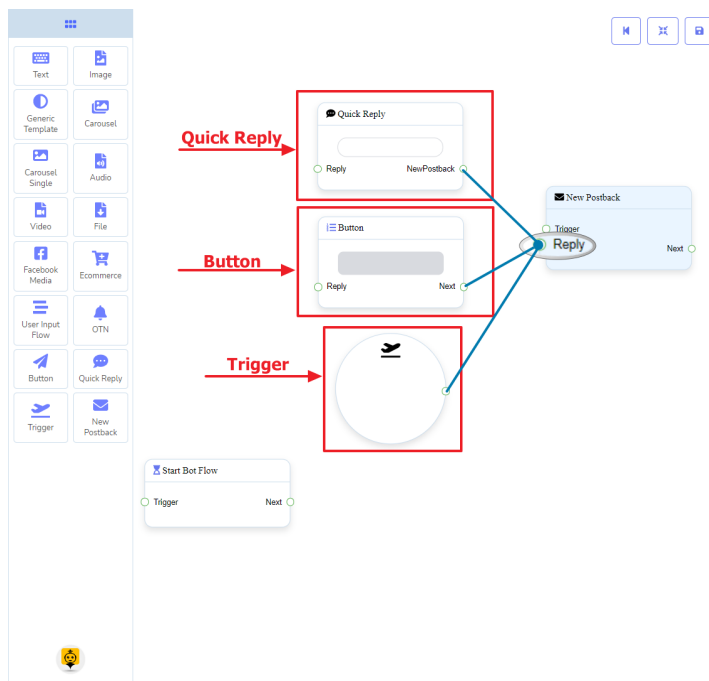
The New Postback component will allow you to make multiple postbacks through a single bot flow. Each postback will be stored as a standalone postback under the hood. So, you may trigger them later via trigger components if you want. It has **1 input** socket and **1 output** socket.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next**

Connection

The **Reply** may get a connection from one of the following components:

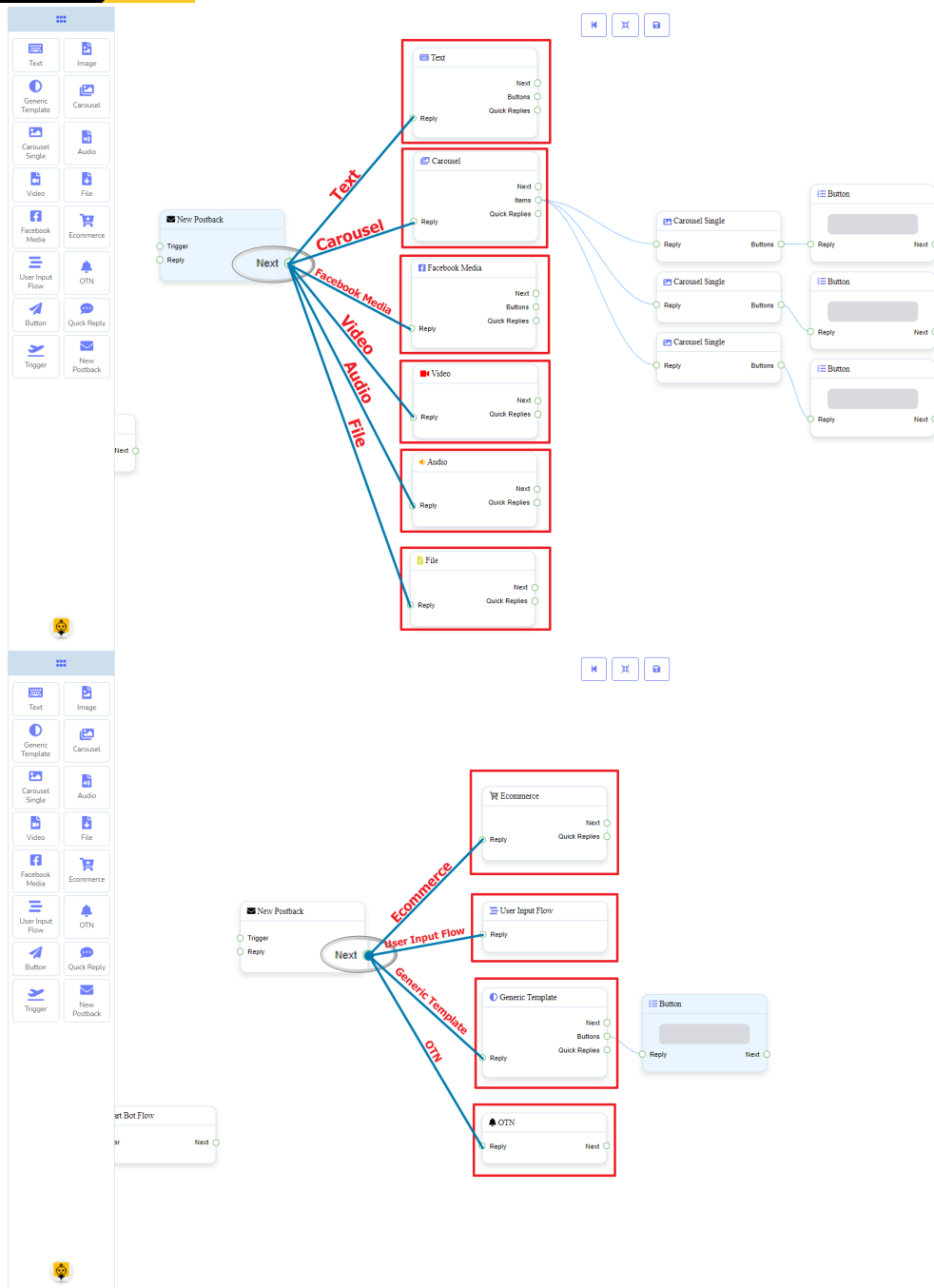
- **Quick Reply, Button, and Trigger**



The **Next** may be connected to the following component:

- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, User Input Flow, Generic Template, and OTN**





How to create a New Postback component

Let us see how we can create a new postback component.

Dragging and Dropping

From the dock menu, **drag** the **New Postback** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

Adding Data

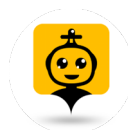




To add data to the **New Postback** component, click twice on the body of the **New Postback** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. Give it a name. You may choose a label(s) or sequence if you need.

Once done, click on the **OK** button.

The image shows two screenshots of the Messengerbot interface. The top screenshot illustrates the initial step: a red arrow points from the 'New Postback' component in the left sidebar to a 'New Postback' component on the canvas. A red text label 'Drag-and-drop New PostBack' is placed above the arrow. The bottom screenshot shows the 'Configure New Postback' sidebar on the right. A red arrow points from the 'New Postback' component on the canvas to the sidebar. A red text label 'Double-click on New Postback' is placed above the arrow. The sidebar contains fields for 'Title', 'Choose label(s)', and 'Choose sequence' (with a dropdown menu). A red text label 'Provide the data needed here' points to these fields. Another red text label 'Click the OK button when done' points to the 'OK' button at the bottom of the sidebar. The 'OK' button is highlighted with a red box.



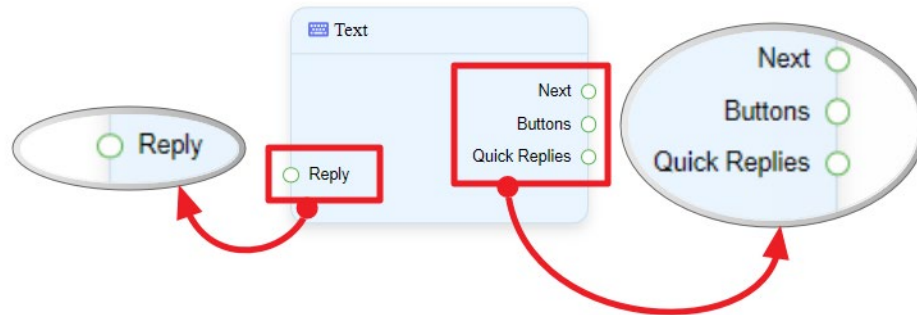


Text Component

Introduction

The Text component will allow you to reply with text content only. It has **1 input** socket and **3 output** sockets.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next**, **Buttons**, and **Quick Replies**



Note: Next to Quick Replies!?

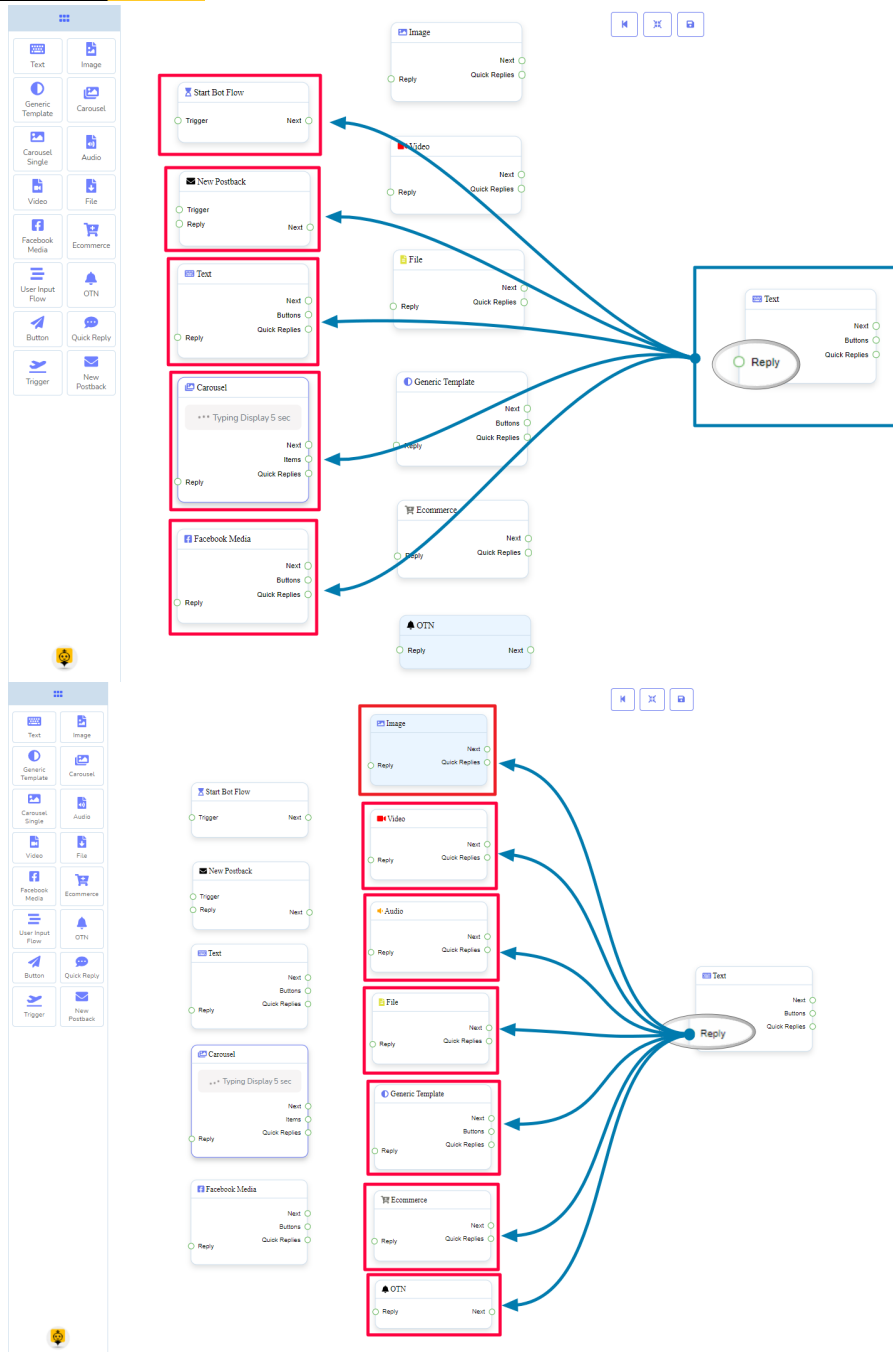
There is a condition between Next and Quick Replies. Using either Next or Quick Replies, you can connect to other components. But you can't connect to others from both.

Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:

- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Generic Template, Ecommerce, and OTN**

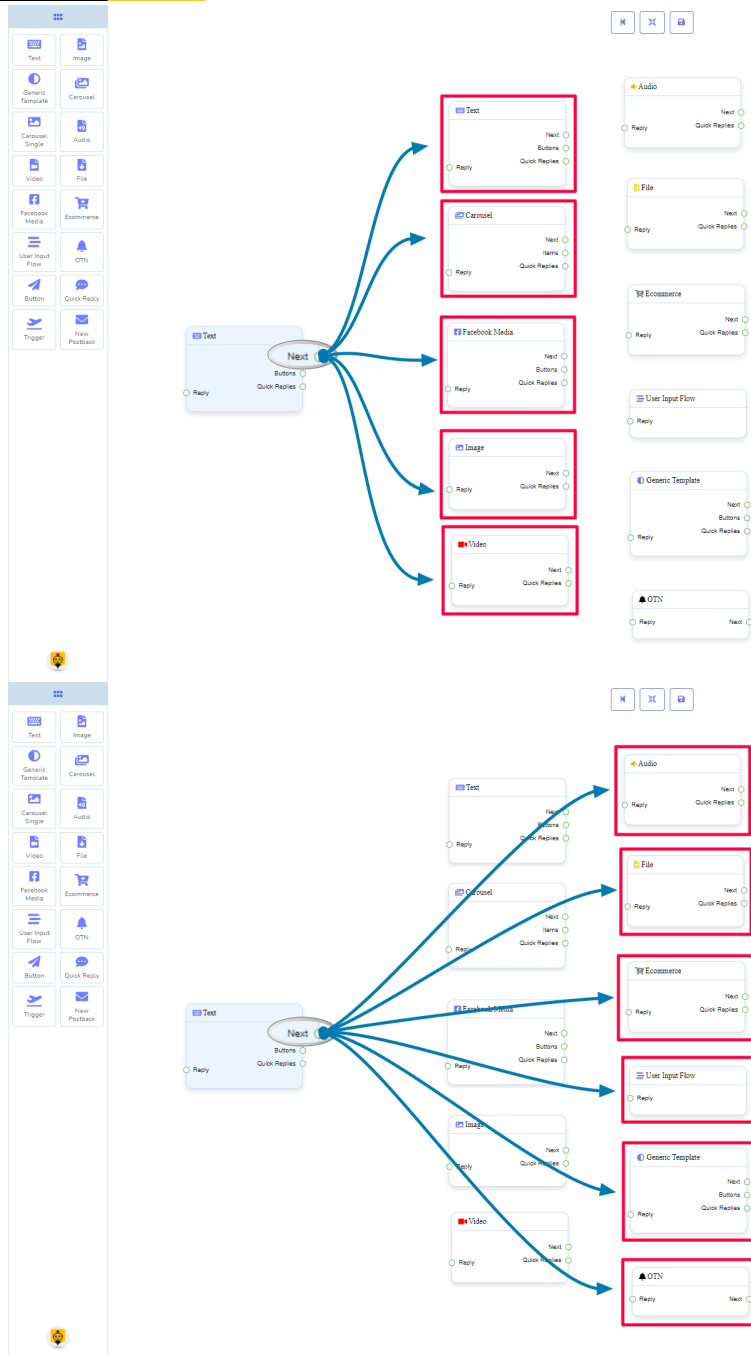




Next may be connected to one of the following components:

- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, User Input Flow, Generic Template, Ecommerce, and OTN.**

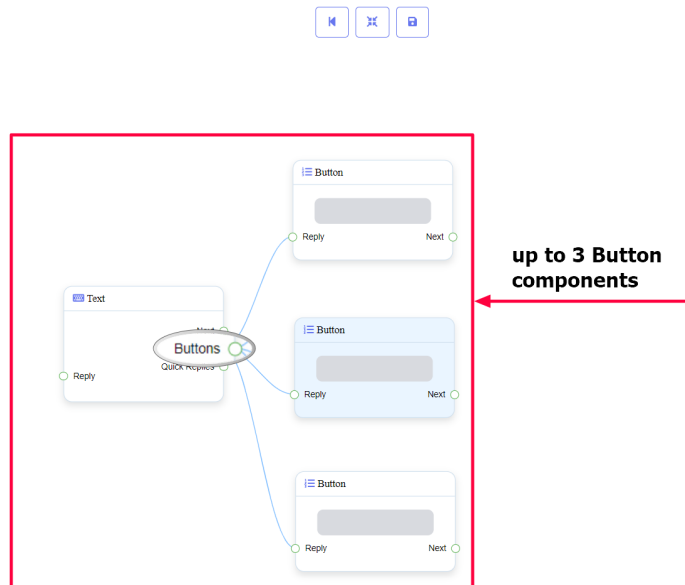
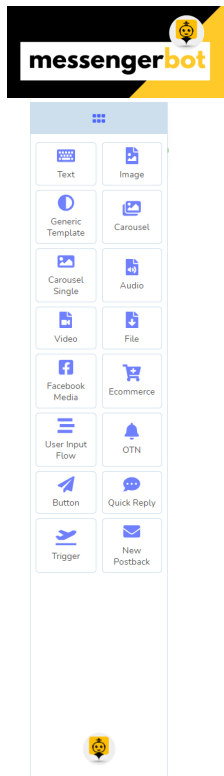




Buttons may be connected to the following component:

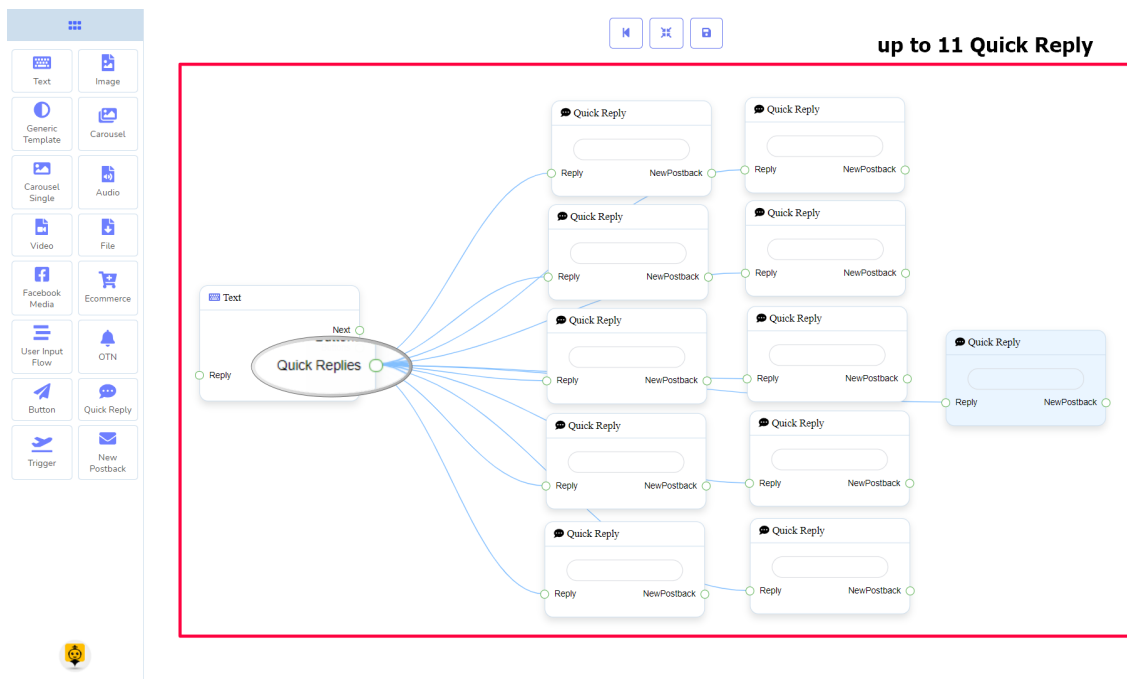
- **Button** - you may connect up to **3 Button** components to the **Text** component.





Quick Replies may be connected to the following component:

- **Quick Reply** - you may connect up to **11 Quick Reply** components to the **Text** component.



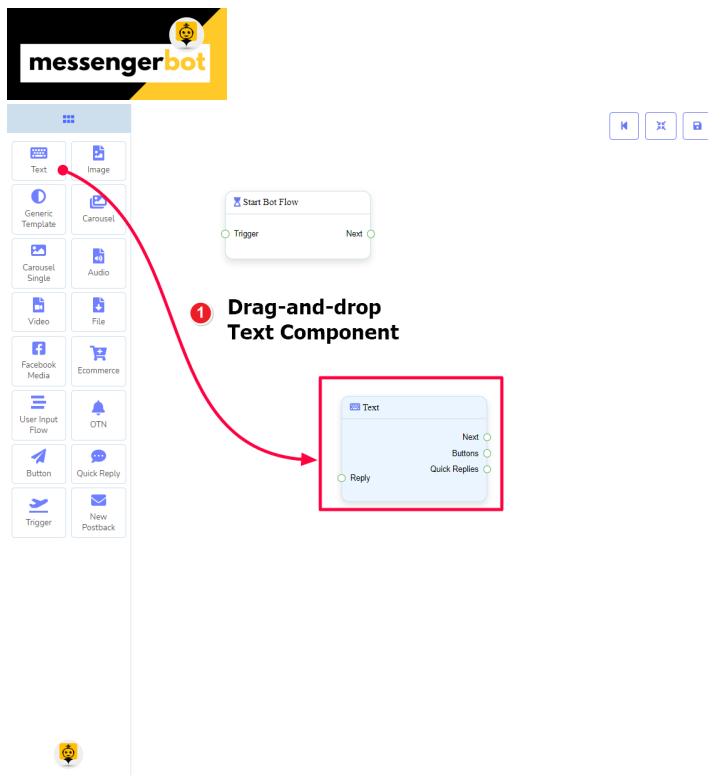
How to create a Text component

Let us see how we can create a reply with text.

Dragging and Dropping

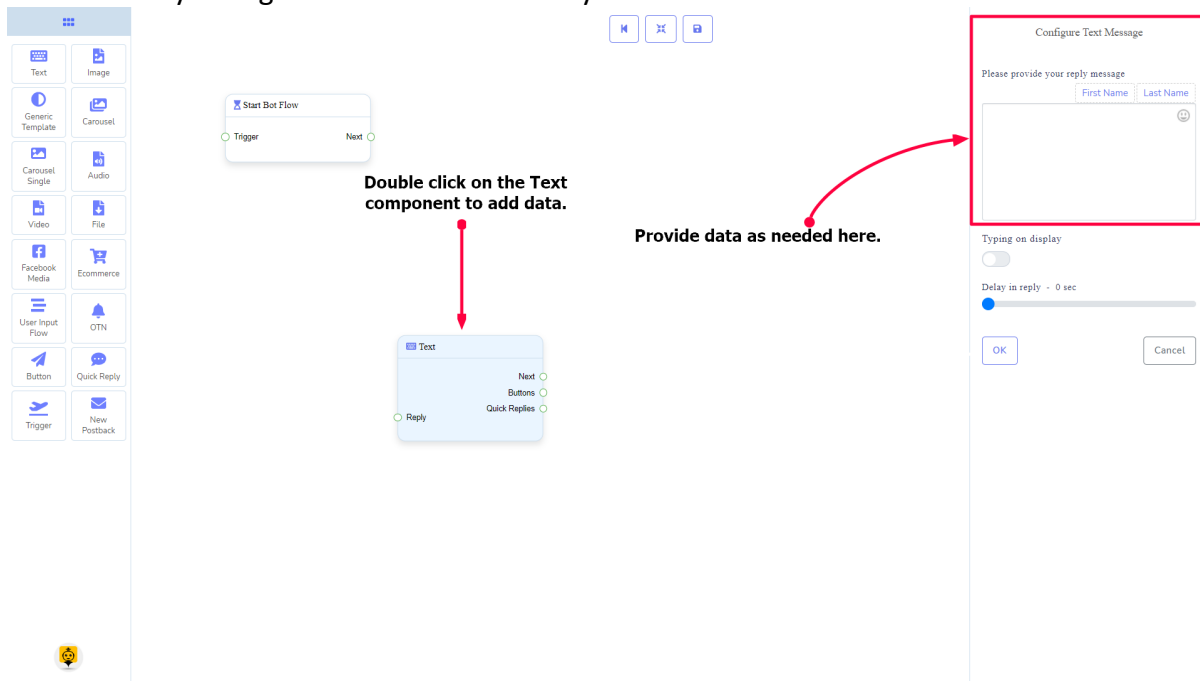
From the dock menu, **drag** the **Text** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.





Adding Data

To add data to the **Text** component, click twice on the body of the **Text** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. Fill in the fields that you need.



Delay in Reply

If you want to show the typing state on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.



Text

Image

Generic Template

Carousel

Carousel Single

Audio

Video

File

Facebook Media

Ecommerce

User Input Flow

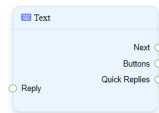
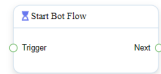
OTN

Button

Quick Reply

Trigger

New Postback



On/Off Typing display
and set the seconds on
your delay in reply.

Click OK button when done.

Configure Text Message

Please provide your reply message

First NameLast Name

Typing on display

☐

Delay in reply - 0 sec

OK

Cancel



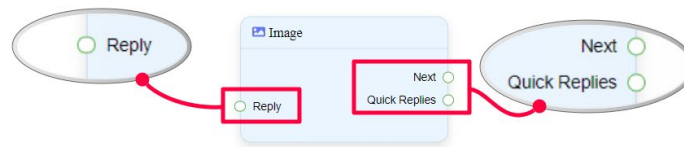


Image Component

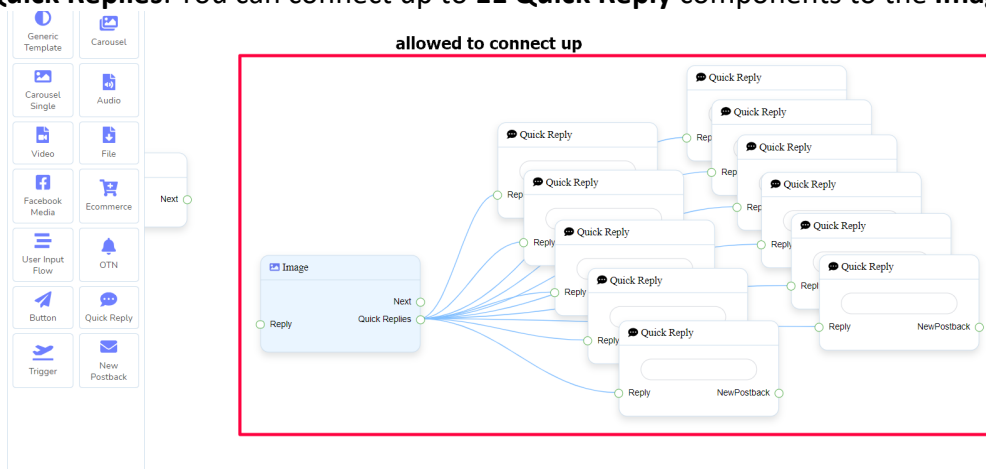
Introduction

The Image component will allow you to reply with an image. It has **1 input** socket and **2 output** sockets.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next**, and **Quick Replies**



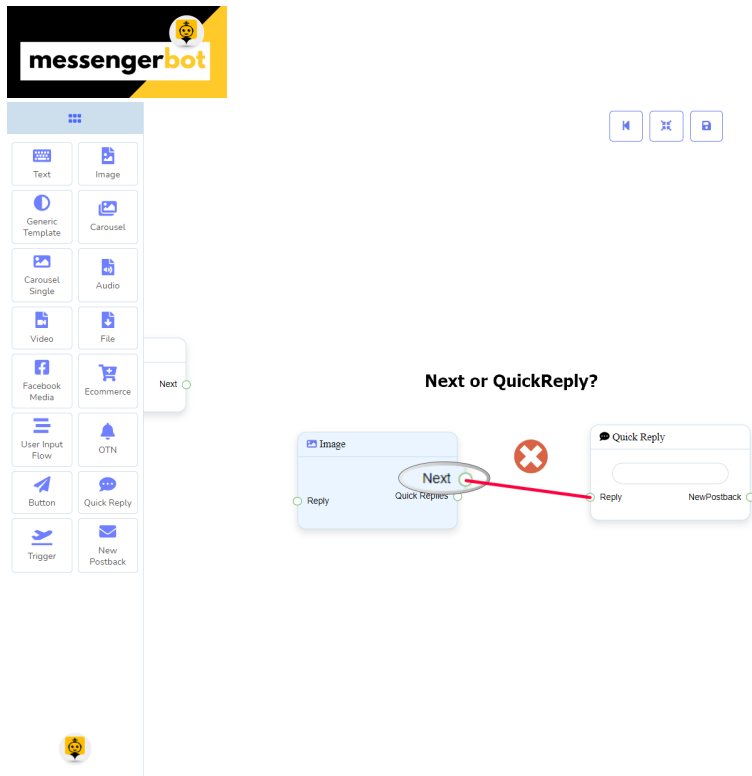
Quick Replies: You can connect up to **11 Quick Reply** components to the **Image** component.



Note: Next to Quick Replies!?

There is a condition between Next and Quick Replies. Using either Next or Quick Replies, you can connect to other components. But you can't connect to others from both.

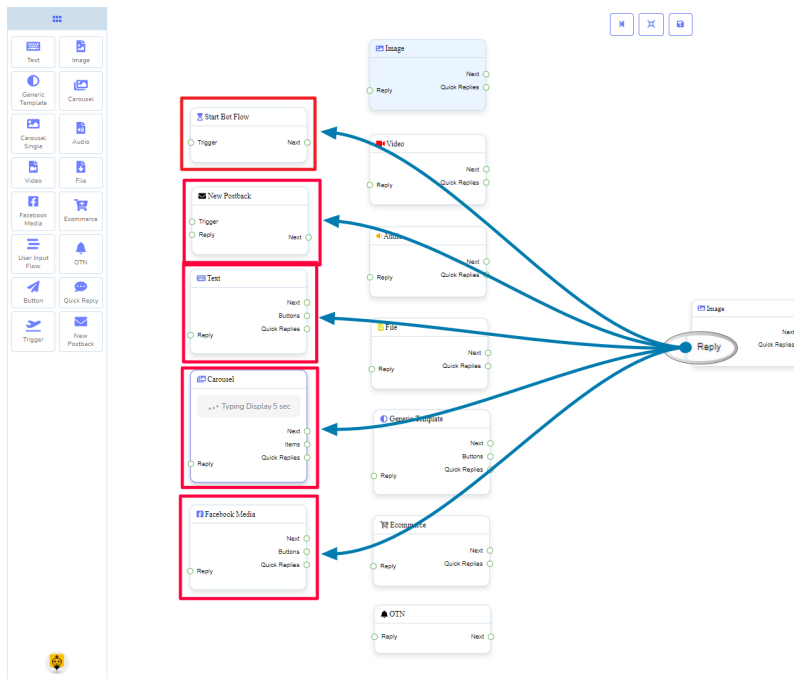


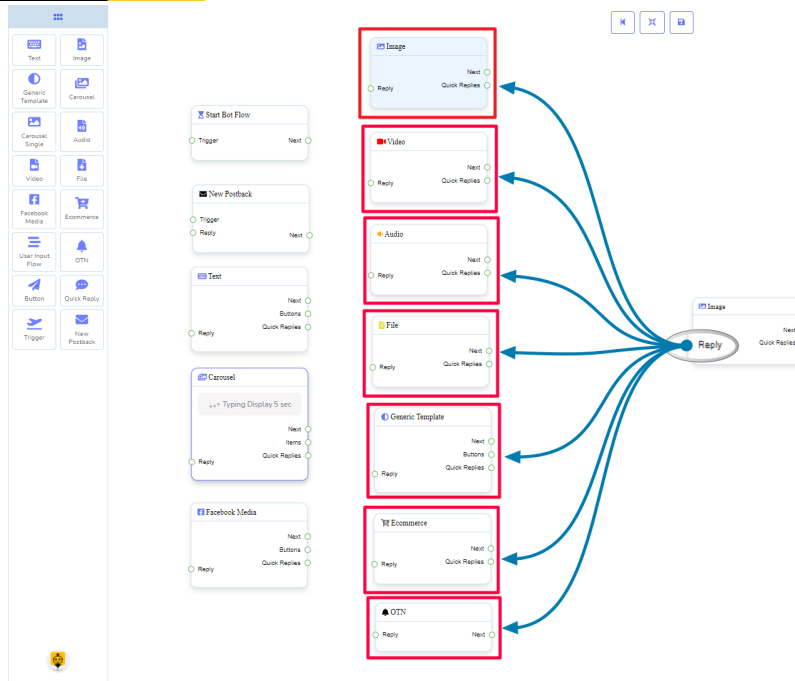


Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:

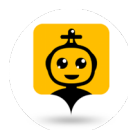
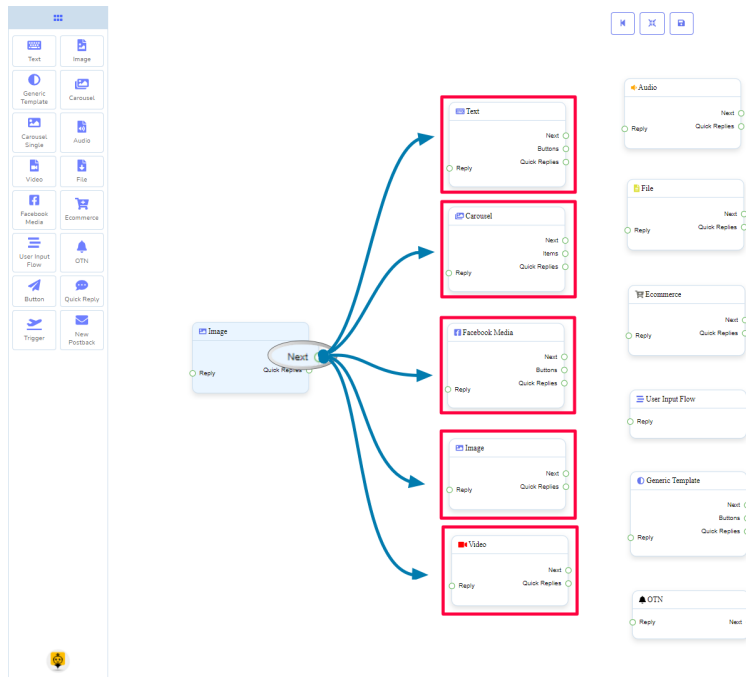
- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Generic Template, Ecommerce, and OTN**

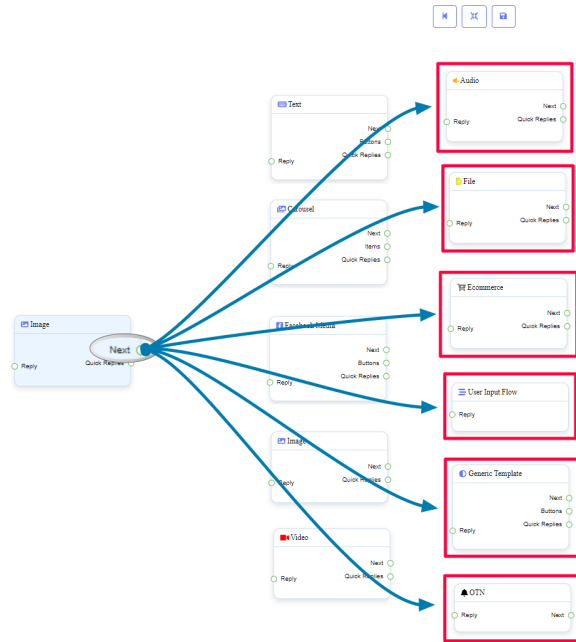
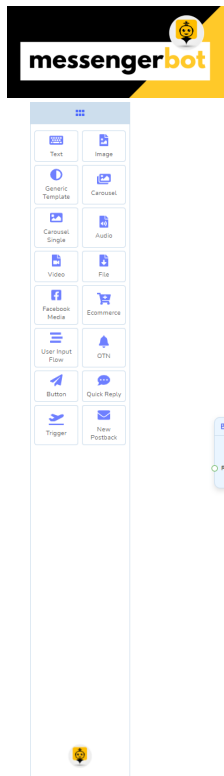




Next may be connected to one of the following components:

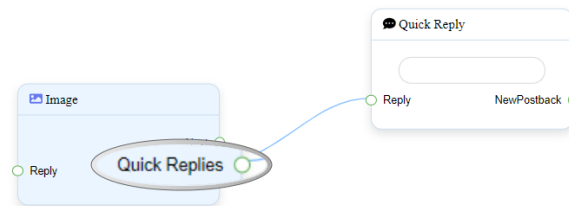
- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, User Input Flow, Generic Template, and OTN.**





Quick Replies may be connected to the following component:

- Quick Reply



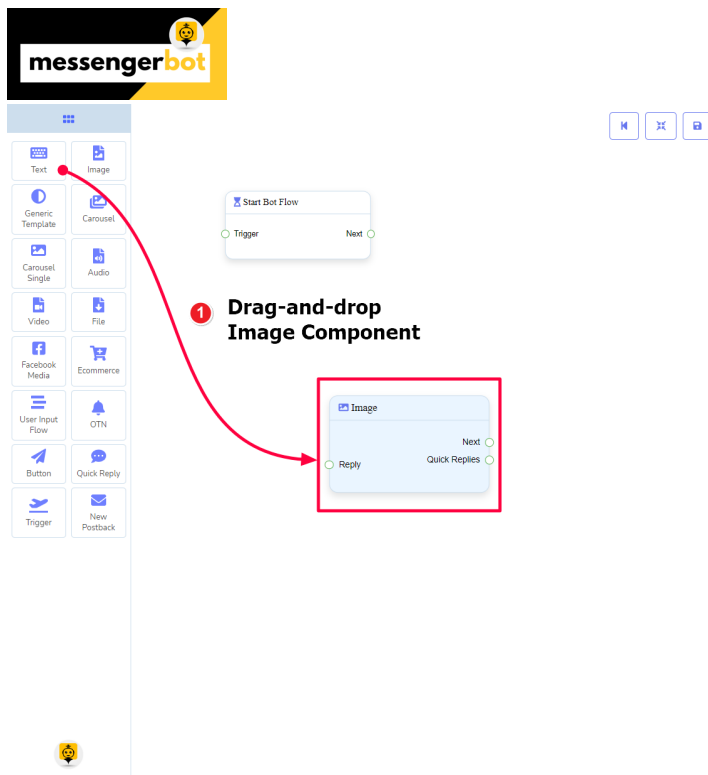
How to create an Image component

Let us see how we can create a reply with an image.

Dragging and Dropping

From the dock menu, **drag** the **Image** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.



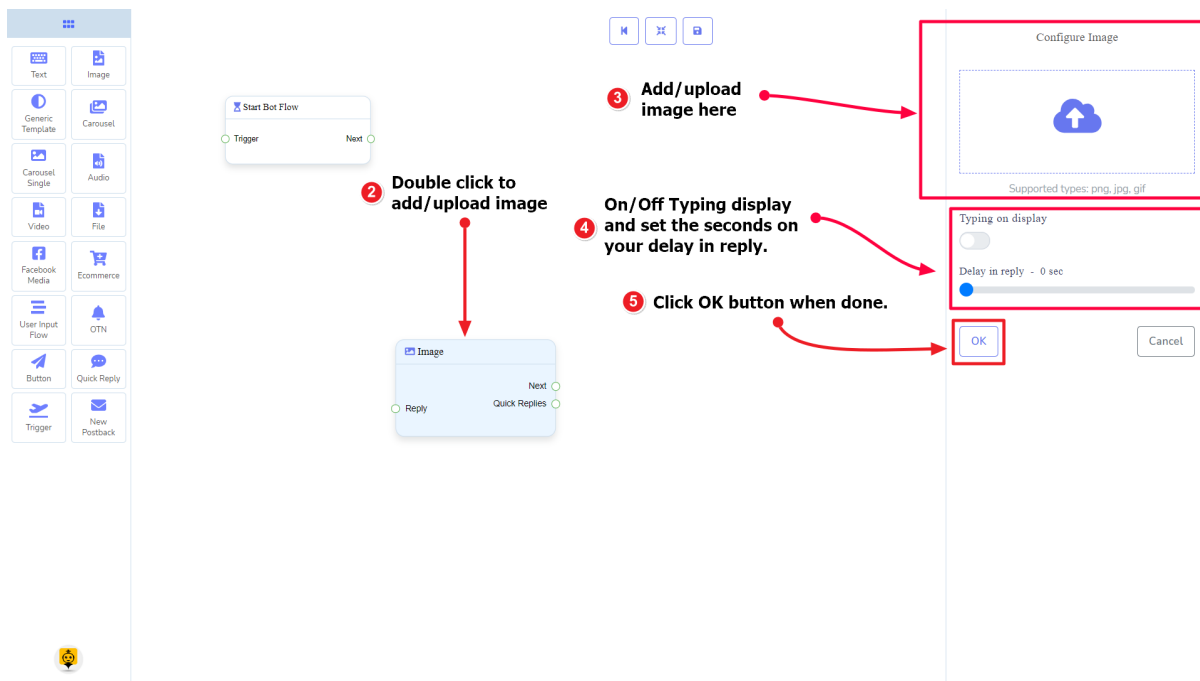


Adding Data

To add data to the **Image** component, click twice on the body of the **Image** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. **Fill in** the fields that you need.

Delay in Reply

If you want to show the typing state on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.



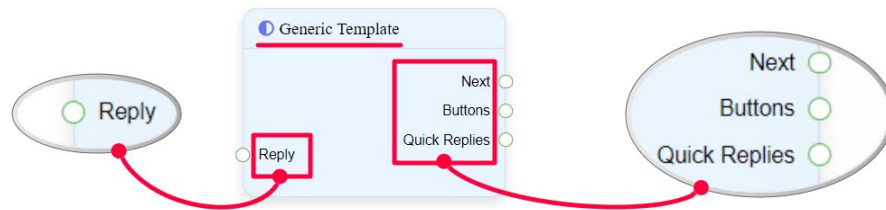


Generic Template Component

Introduction

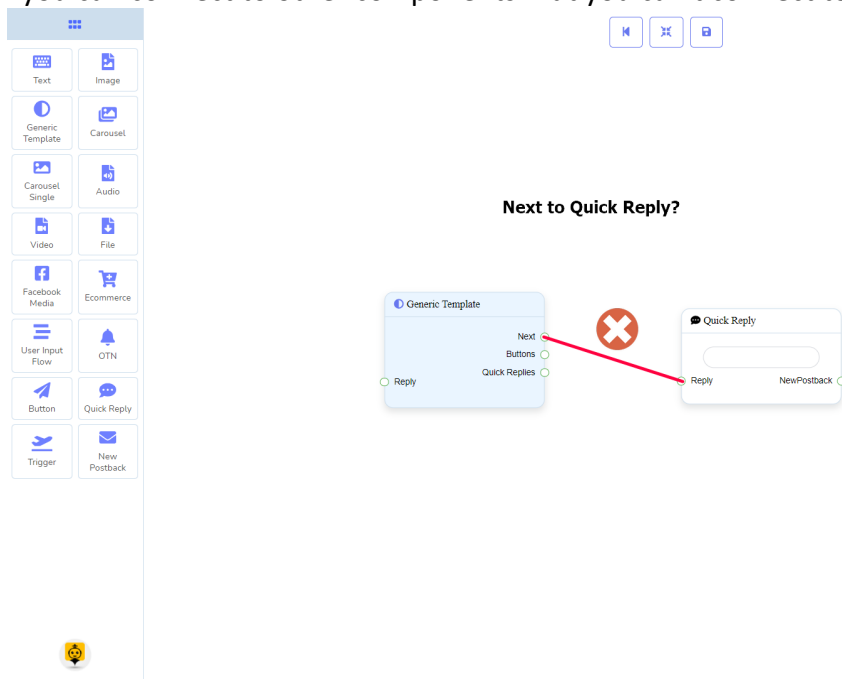
The Generic Template component will allow you to reply with an image, or title and subtitle, or all. It has **1 input socket** and **3 output sockets**.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next, Buttons, and Quick Replies**



Note: Next to Quick Replies!?

There is a condition between Next and Quick Replies. Using either Next or Quick Replies, you can connect to other components. But you can't connect to others from both.



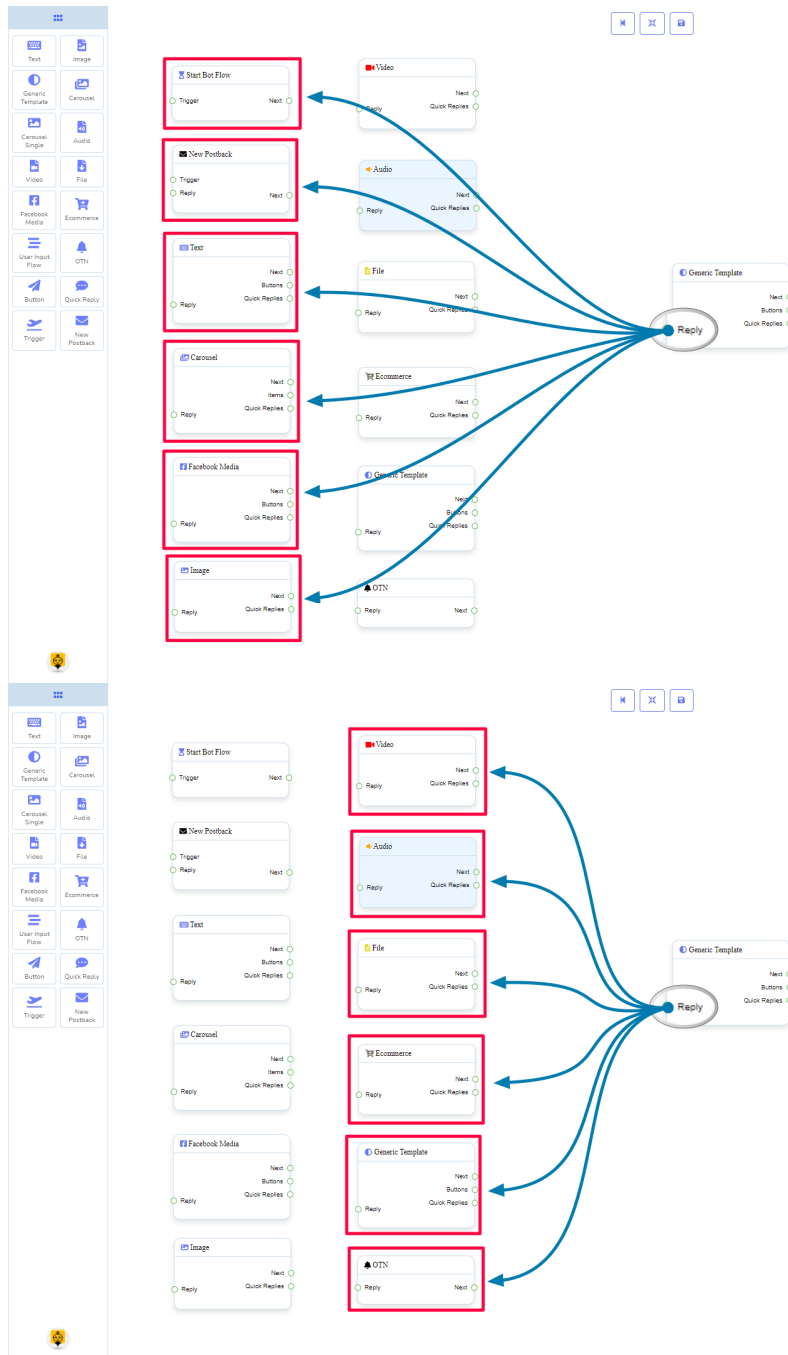
Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:





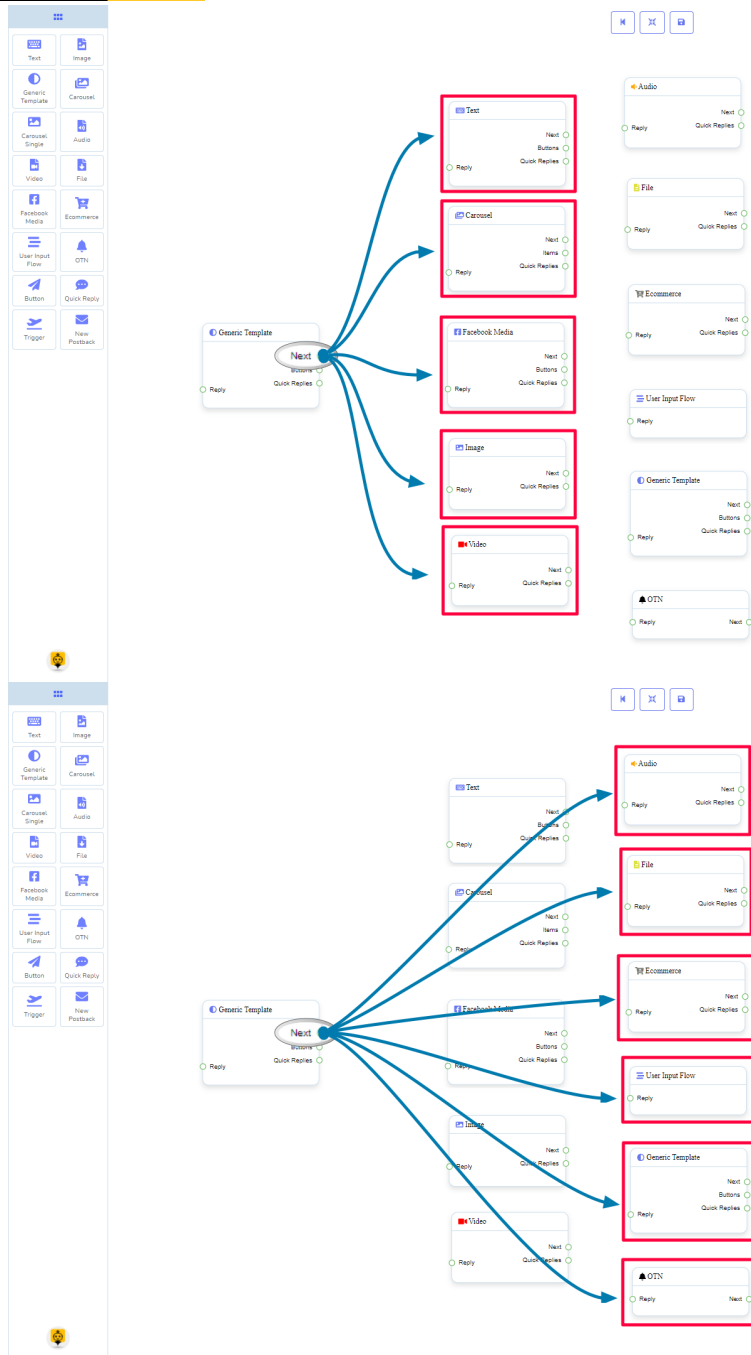
- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, Generic Template, and OTN**



Next may be connected to one of the following components:

- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, User Input Flow, Generic Template, and OTN**

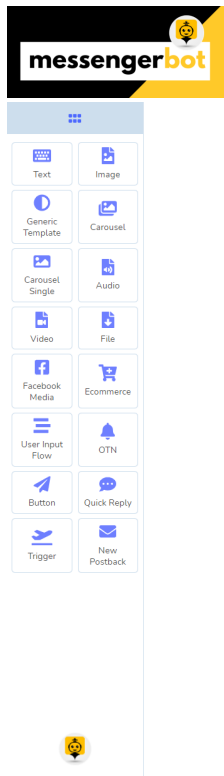




Buttons may be connected to the following component:

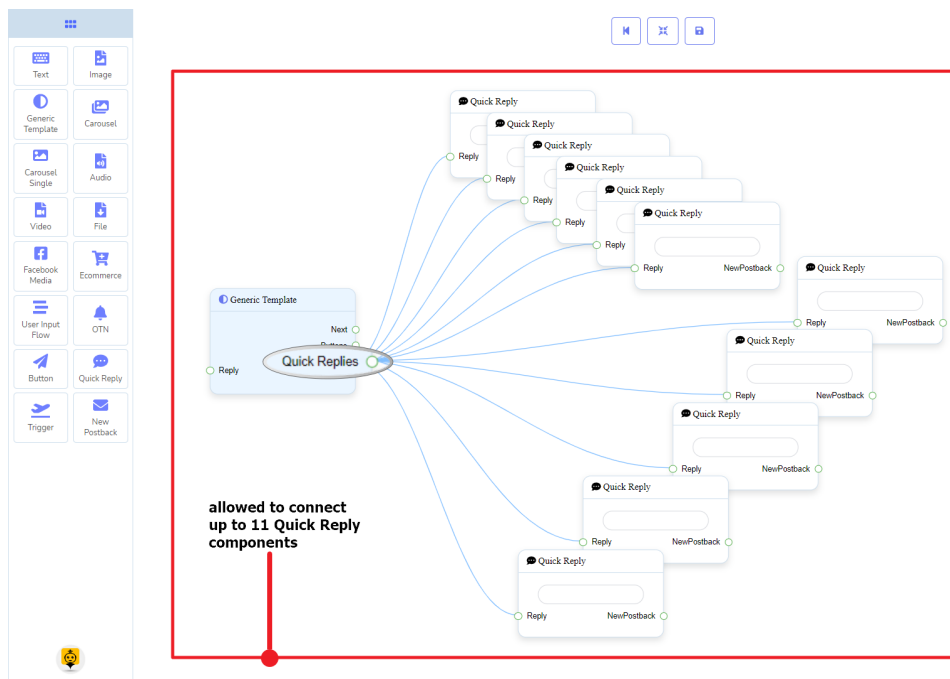
- **Button** - you may connect up to **3 Buttons** to the **Generic Template** component.





Quick Replies may be connected to the following component:

- **Quick Reply** - you may connect up to **11 Quick Replies** to the **Generic Template** component.



How to create a Generic Template component

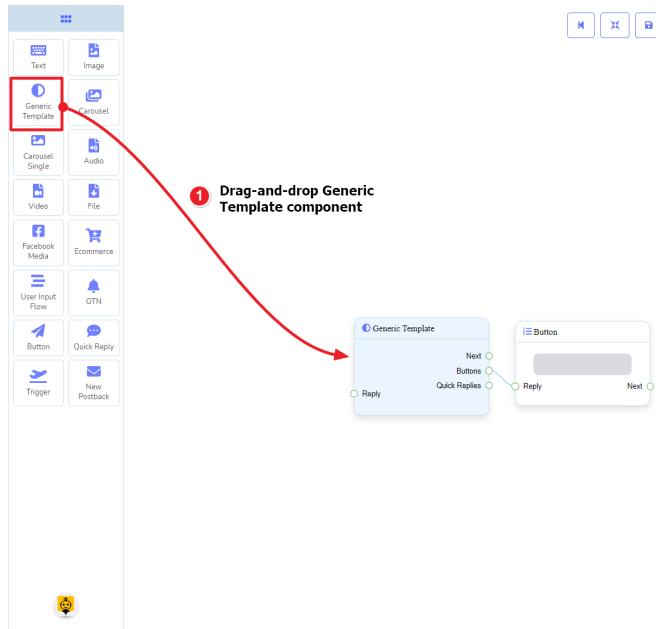
Let us see how we can create a reply with a generic-template.

Dragging and Dropping





From the dock menu, **drag** the **Generic Template** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

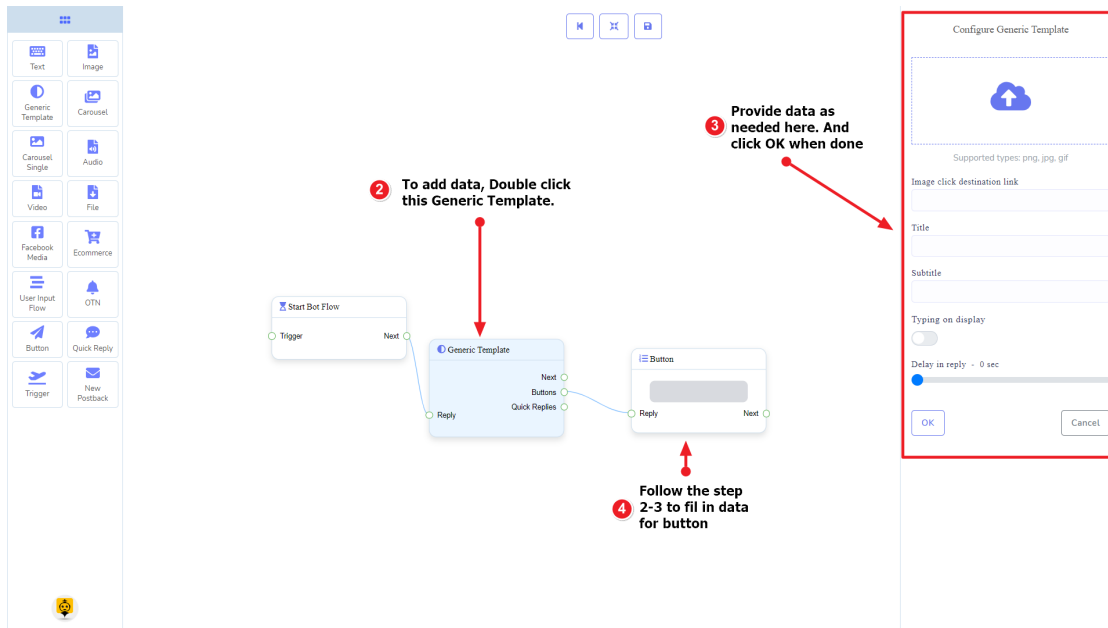


Adding Data

To add data to the **Generic Template** component, click twice on the body of the **Generic Template** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. Fill in the fields that you need.

Delay in Reply

If you want to show the typing gif image on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.



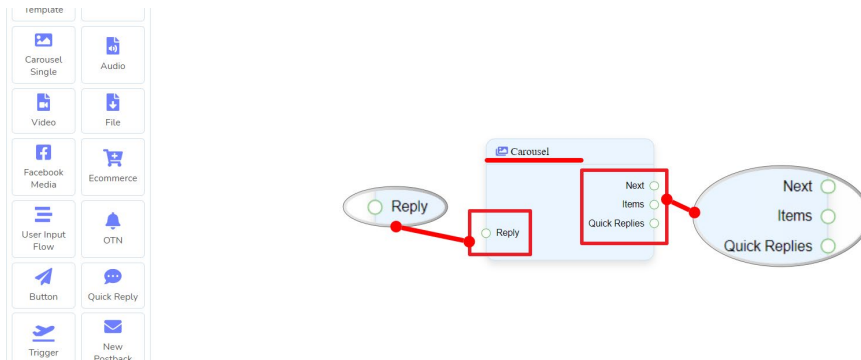


Carousel Component

Introduction

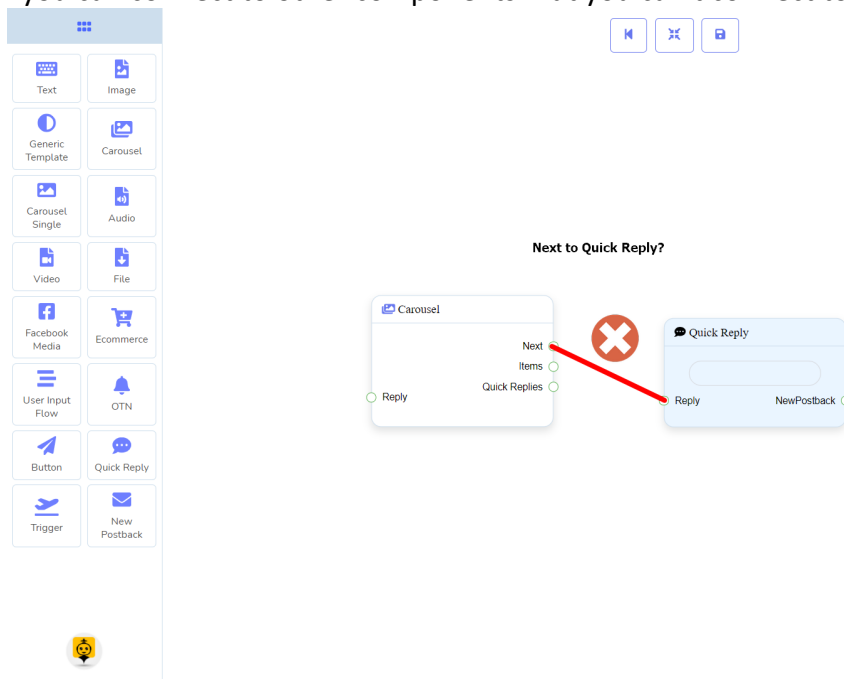
The Carousel component will allow you to reply with a carousel. It has **1 input** socket and **3 output** sockets.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next, Items, and Quick Replies**



Note: Next to Quick Replies!?

There is a condition between Next and Quick Replies. Using either Next or Quick Replies, you can connect to other components. But you can't connect to others from both.



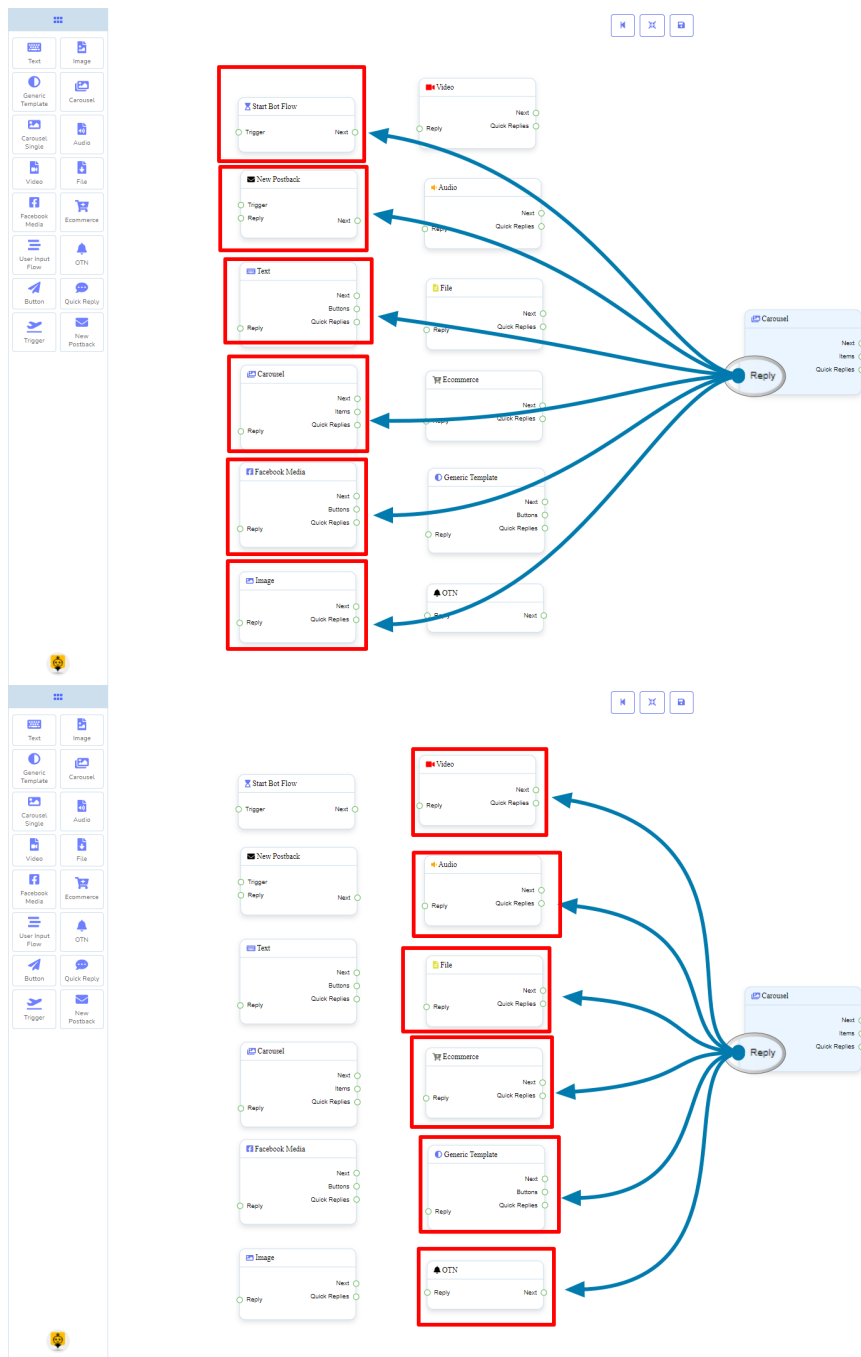
Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:



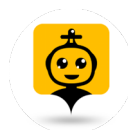


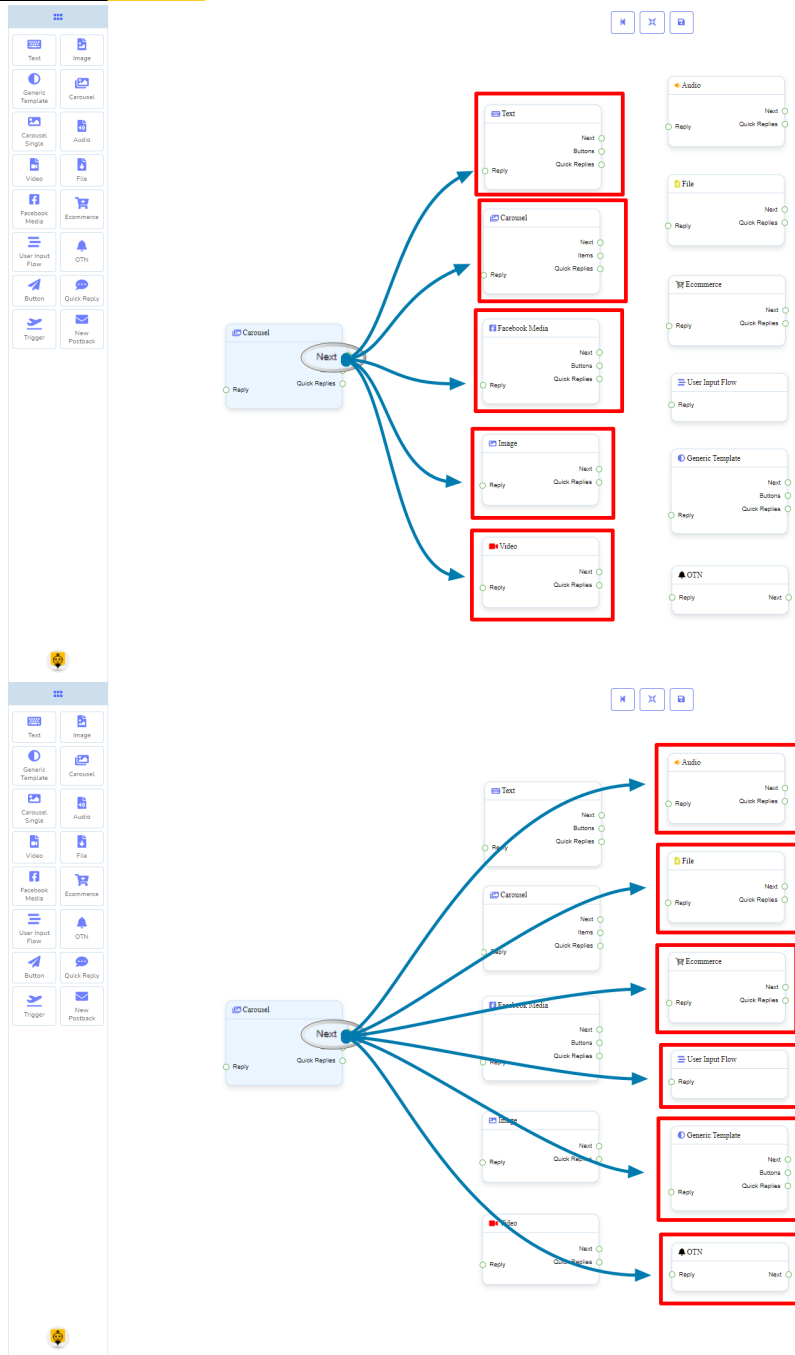
- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, Generic Template, and OTN**



Next may be connected to one of the following components:

- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, User Input Flow, Generic Template, and OTN.**

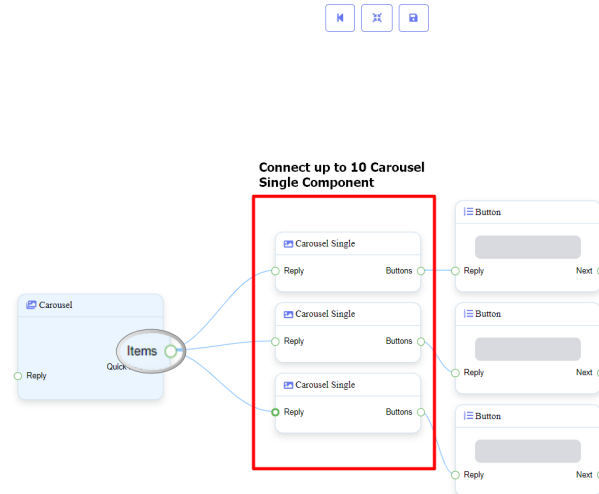
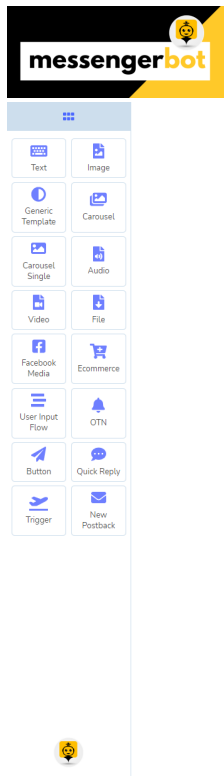




Items may be connected to the following component:

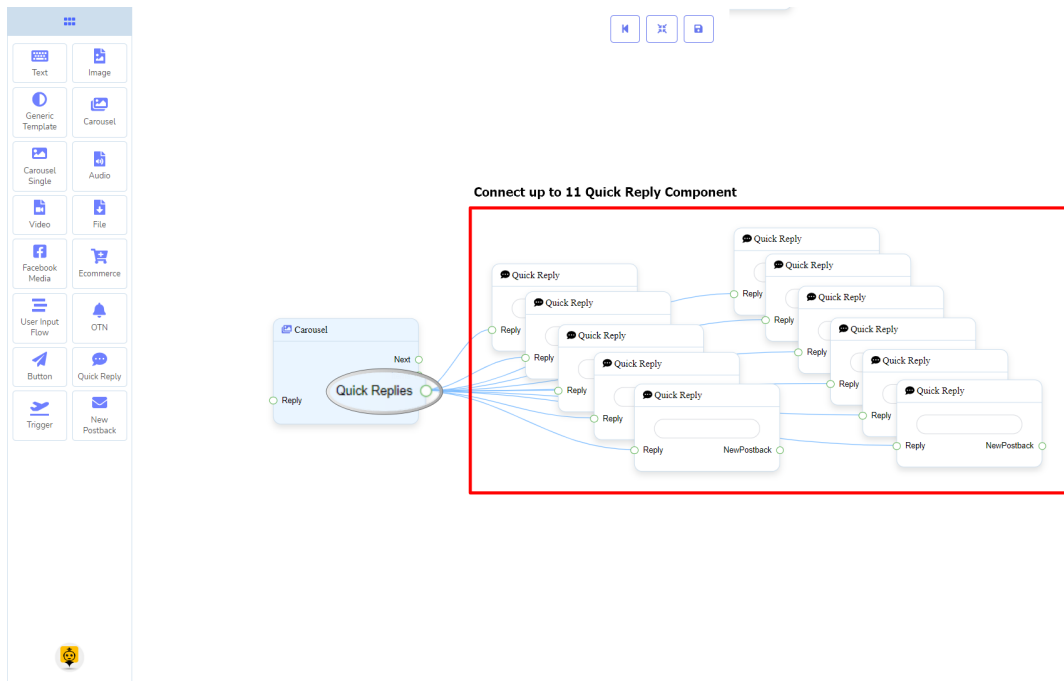
- **Carousel Single** - you may connect up to **10 Carousel Single** components to the **Carousel** components.





Quick Replies may be connected to the following component:

- **Quick Reply** - you may connect up to 11 Quick Replies to the **Carousel** component.



How to create a Carousel component

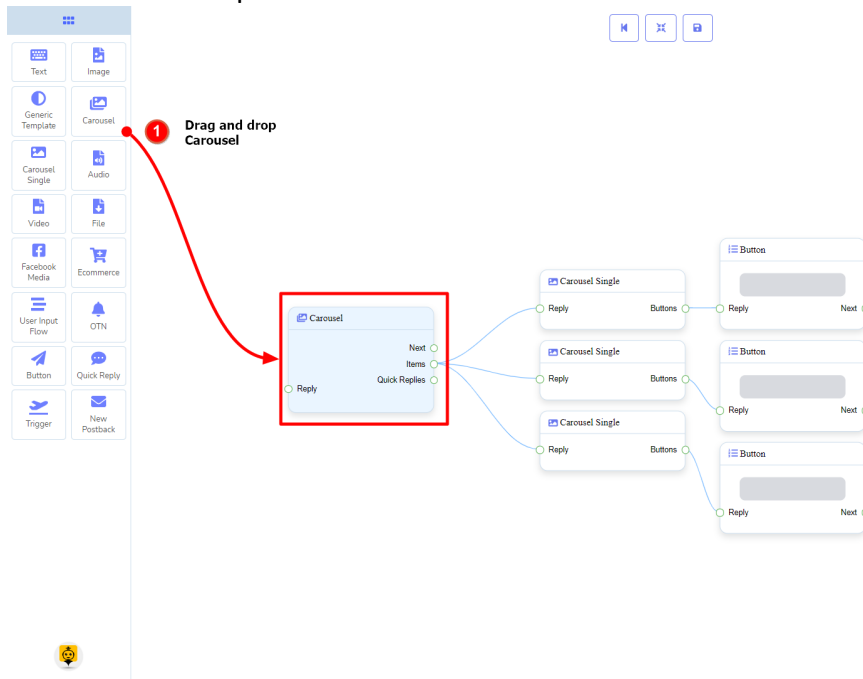
Let us see how we can create a reply with carousel

Dragging and Dropping





From the dock menu, **drag** the **Carousel** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place. Next, you see **3 Carousel Single** components and **3 Button** components have been created with the **Carousel** component.



Adding Data

To add data to the **Carousel** component, click twice on the body of the **Carousel** component. It will open a sidebar on your right with only fields asking reply-delay and type-state. Interact with them if you need.

By default, we provided 3 carousel single items. You can add more if you wish. Now it's time to prepare a carousel single component. Make double-click on each of them to provide data as you need.

Having done with filling in carousel single, you may go for button component to be provided with your carousel. Make double-click on the button component to fill in data as you need.



Text

Image

Generic Template

Carousel

Carousel Single

Audio

Video

File

Facebook Media

Ecommerce

User Input Flow

OTN

Button

Quick Reply

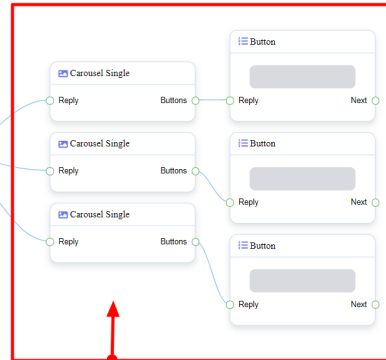
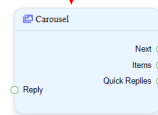
Trigger

New Postback



3 Provide the data as needed here. Click OK when done.

2 Double click Carousel component.



4 Follow step 2-3 to add data for Carousel Single and Button

Configure Carousel

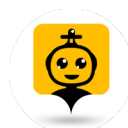
Typing on display

☐

Delay in reply - 0 sec

OK

Cancel





Carousel Single Component

Introduction

Carousel Single component will allow you to reply with an image, or title and subtitle, or all. It has **1 input** socket and **1 output** socket.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Buttons**



Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from the following component:

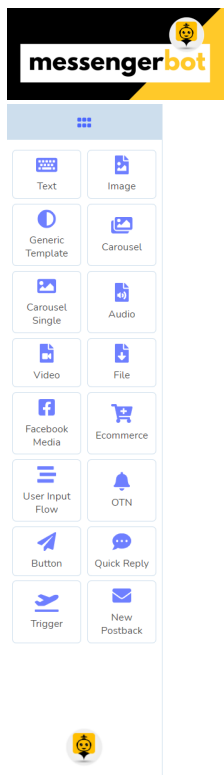
- **Carousel**



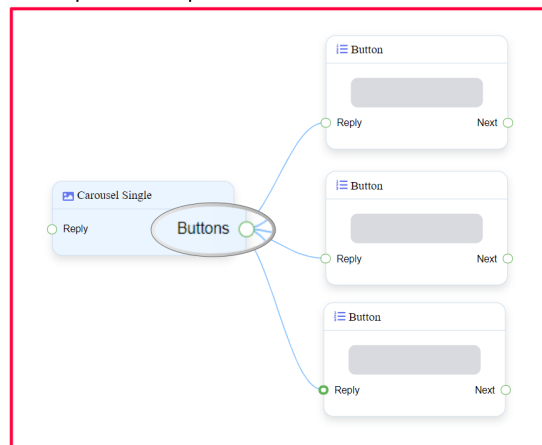
The **Buttons** may be connected to the following component:

- **Button** - you may connect up to **3 Button** components to the **Carousel Single** component.





Connect up to 3 Button components



How to create a Carousel Single component

Carousel Single is dependent on the **Carousel** component. So we make it prepare to be connected to the **Carousel** component.

Dragging and Dropping

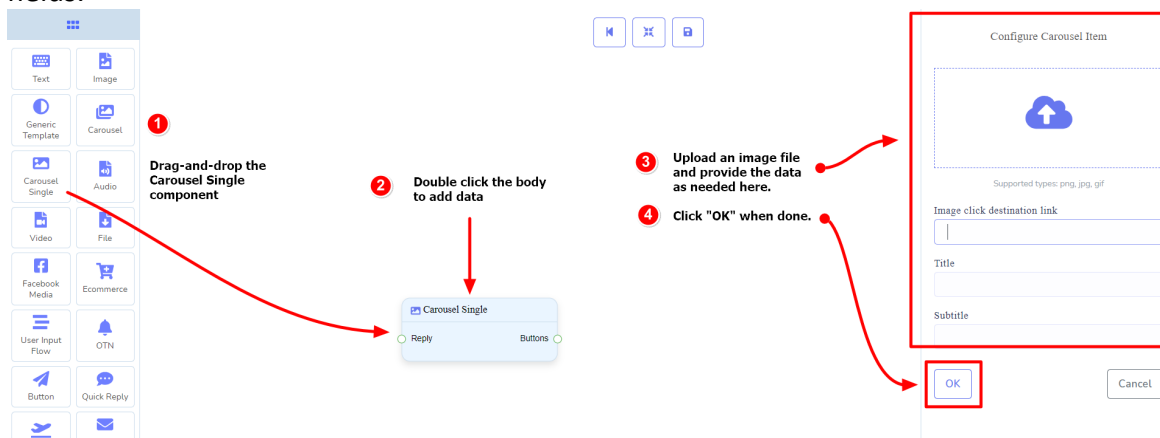
From the dock menu, **drag** the **Carousel Single** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

Adding Data

To add data to the **Carousel Single** component, click twice on the body of the **Carousel Single** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. Fill in the fields as you need.

Delay in Reply

If you want to show the typing gif image on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.



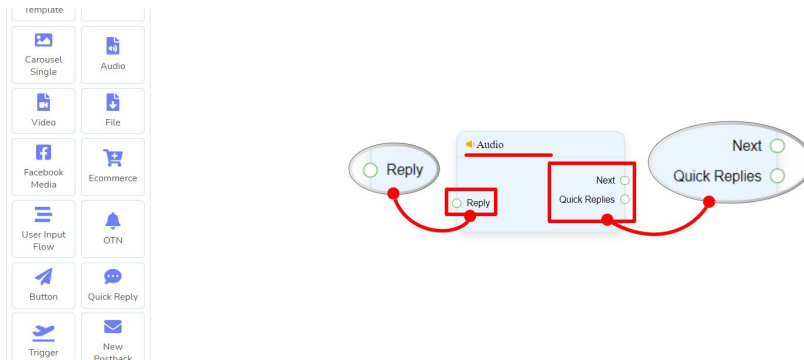


Audio Component

Introduction

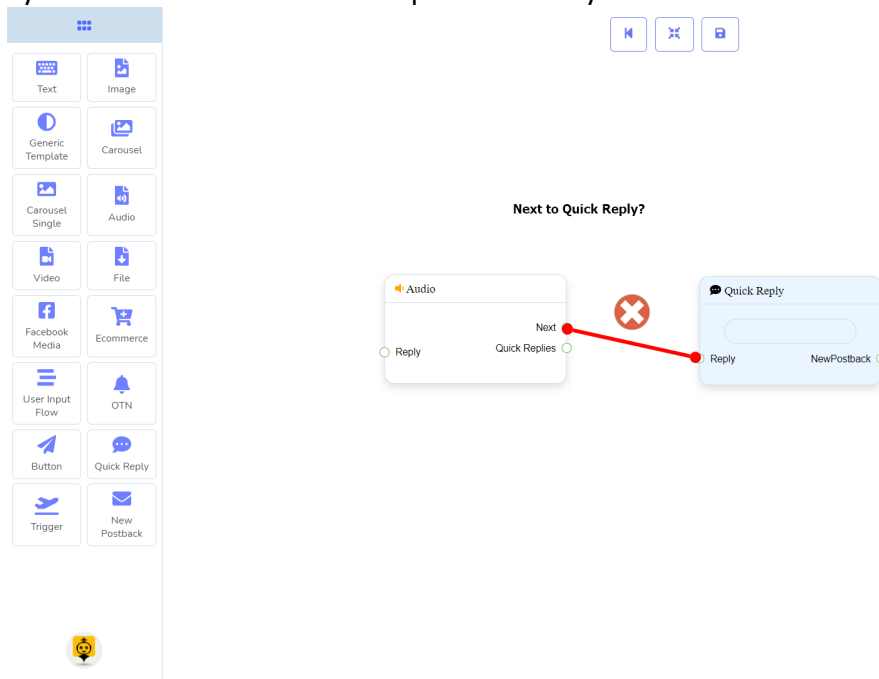
The Audio component will allow you to reply with an audio file. It has **1 input** socket and **2 output** sockets.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next**, and **Quick Replies**



Note: Next to Quick Replies!?

There is a condition between Next and Quick Replies. Using either Next or Quick Replies, you can connect to other components. But you can't connect to others from both.

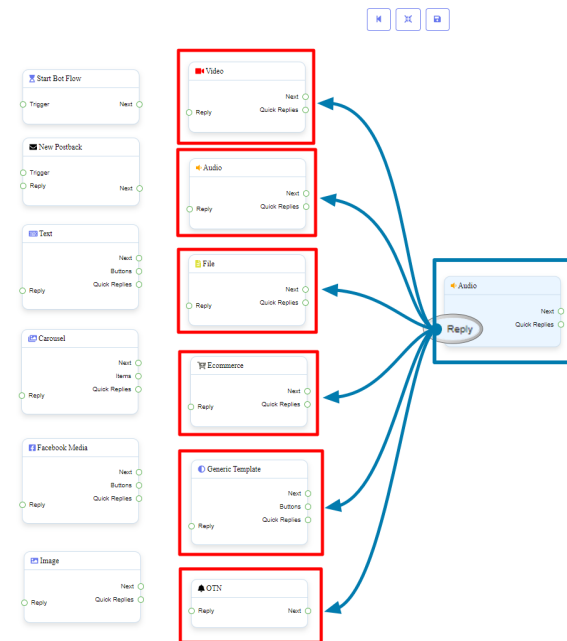
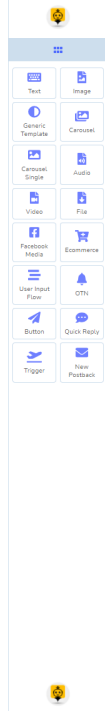
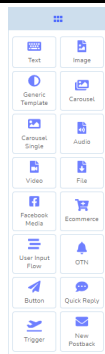


Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:

- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, Generic Template, and OTN.**

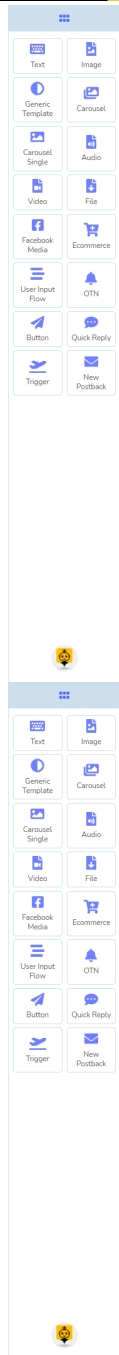




Next may be connected to one of the following components:

- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, User Input Flow, Generic Template, and OTN.**

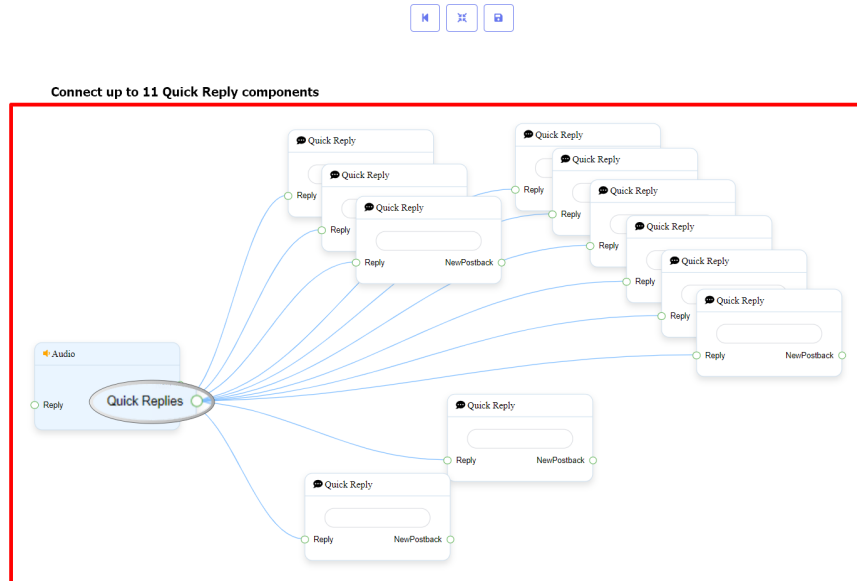
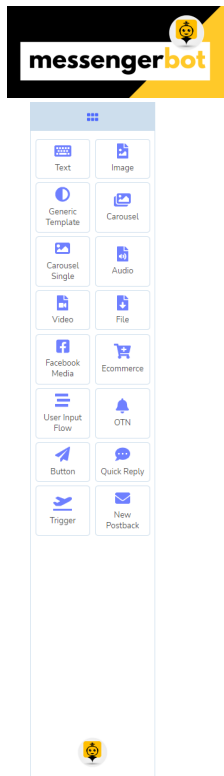




Quick Replies may be connected to the following component:

- **Quick Reply** - you may connect up to **11 Quick Replies** to the **Audio** component.





How to create an Audio component

Let us see how we can create a reply with an audio component.

Dragging and Dropping

From the dock menu, **drag** the **Audio** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

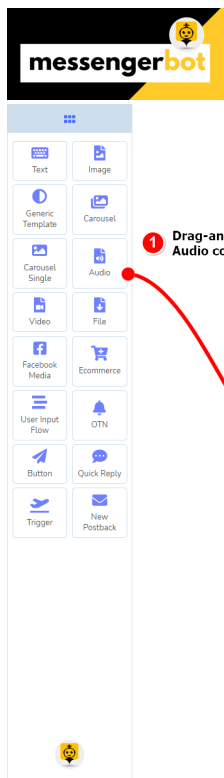
Adding Data

To add data to the **Audio** component, click twice on the body of the **Audio** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. **Fill in** the fields that you need.

Delay in Reply

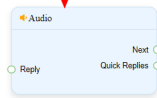
If you want to show the typing state on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.





1 Drag-and-drop the Audio component here.

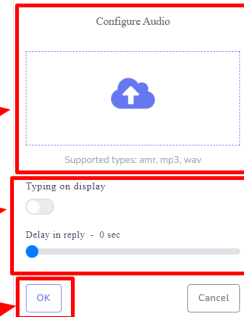
2 To add data, double click the component.



3 Add/upload audio file here.

4 On/Off typing display and set seconds on delay in reply as desired.

5 Click OK button when done.



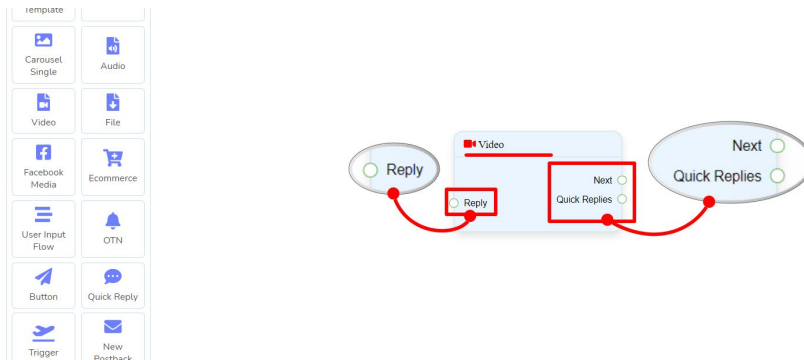


Video Component

Introduction

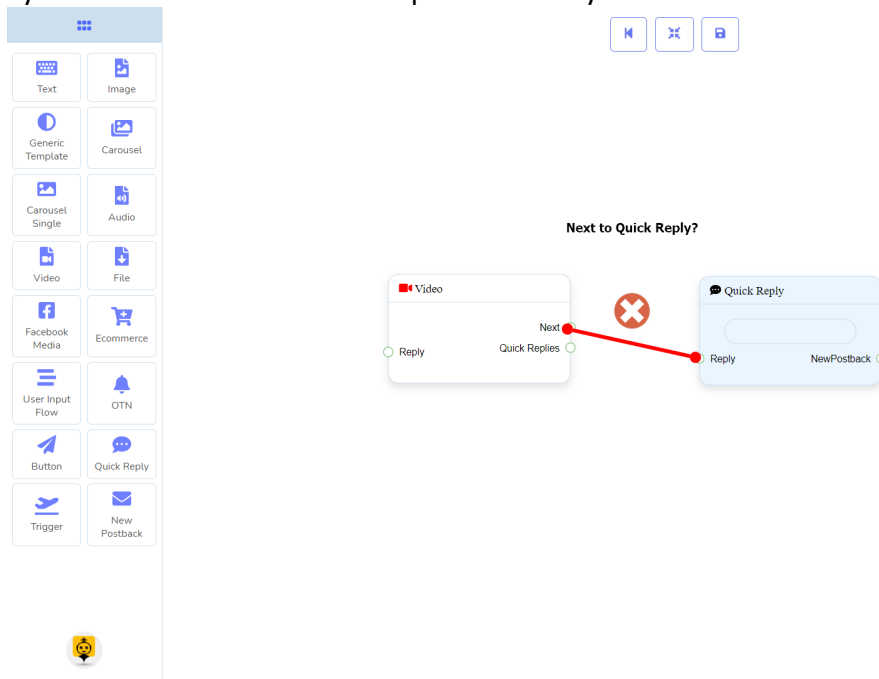
The Video component will allow you to reply with a video file. It has **1 input** socket and **2 output** sockets.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next**, and **Quick Replies**



Note: Next to Quick Replies!?

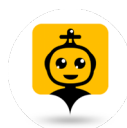
There is a condition between Next and Quick Replies. Using either Next or Quick Replies, you can connect to other components. But you can't connect to others from both.

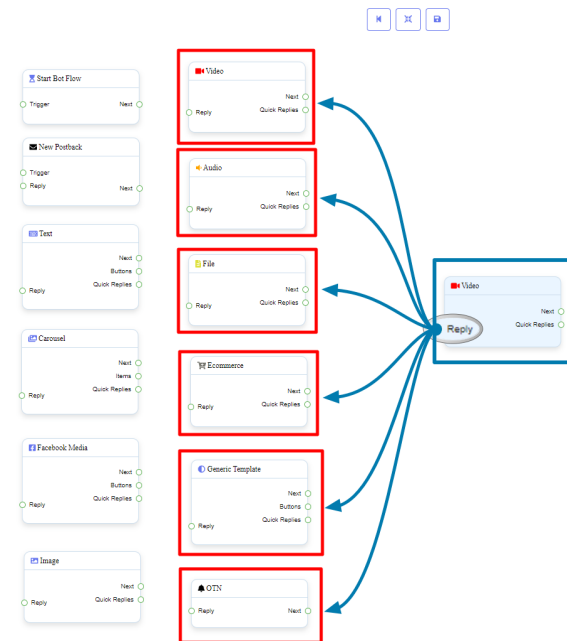
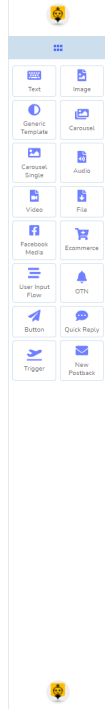
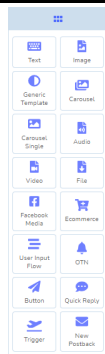


Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:

- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, Generic Template, and OTN.**

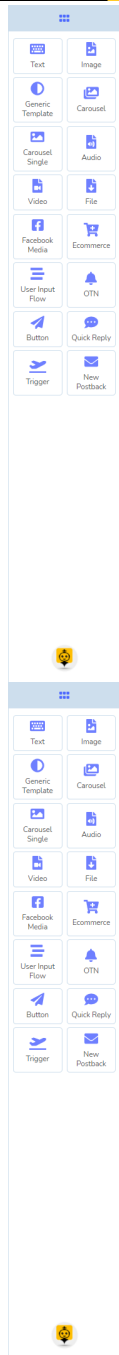




Next may be connected to one of the following components:

- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, User Input Flow, Generic Template, and OTN.**

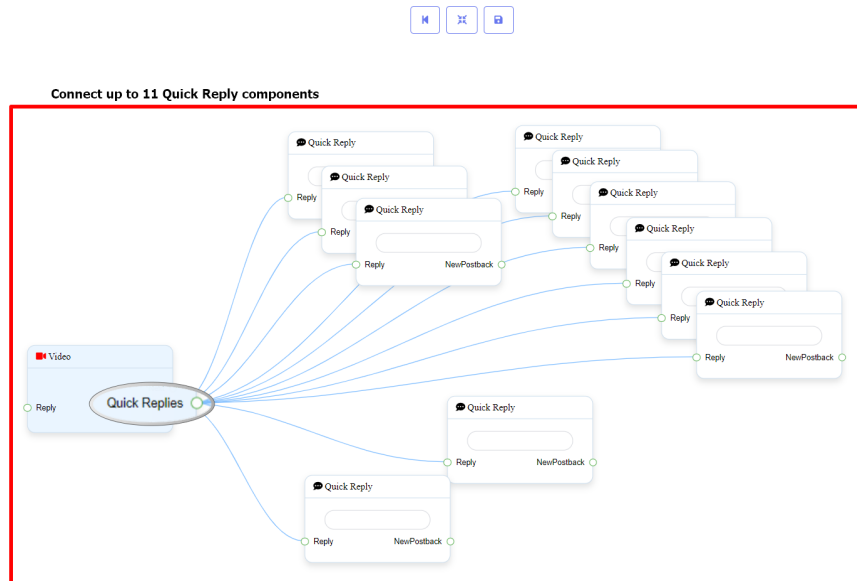
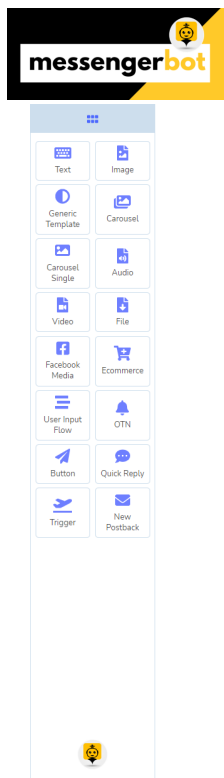




Quick Replies may be connected to the following component:

- **Quick Reply** - you may connect up to **11 Quick Replies** to the **Video** component.





How to create a Video component

Let us see how we can create a reply with a video component.

Dragging and Dropping

From the dock menu, **drag** the **Video** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

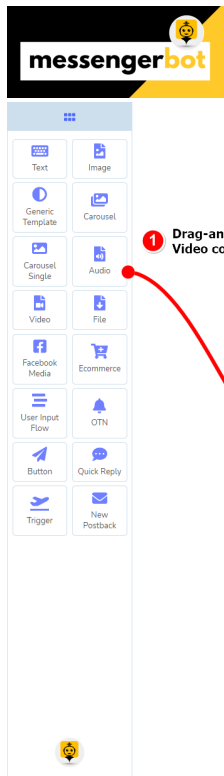
Adding Data

To add data to the **Video** component, click twice on the body of the **Video** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. **Fill in** the fields that you need.

Delay in Reply

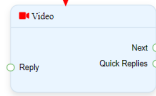
If you want to show the typing state on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.





1 Drag-and-drop the Video component here.

2 To add data, double click the component.



3 Add/upload video file here.

4 On/Off typing display and set seconds on delay in reply as desired.

5 Click OK button when done.



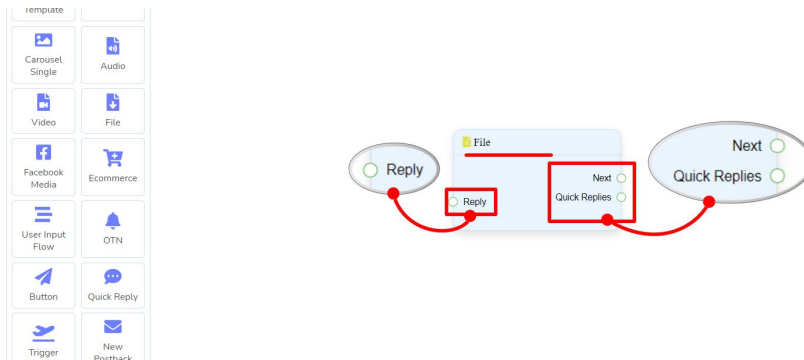


File Component

Introduction

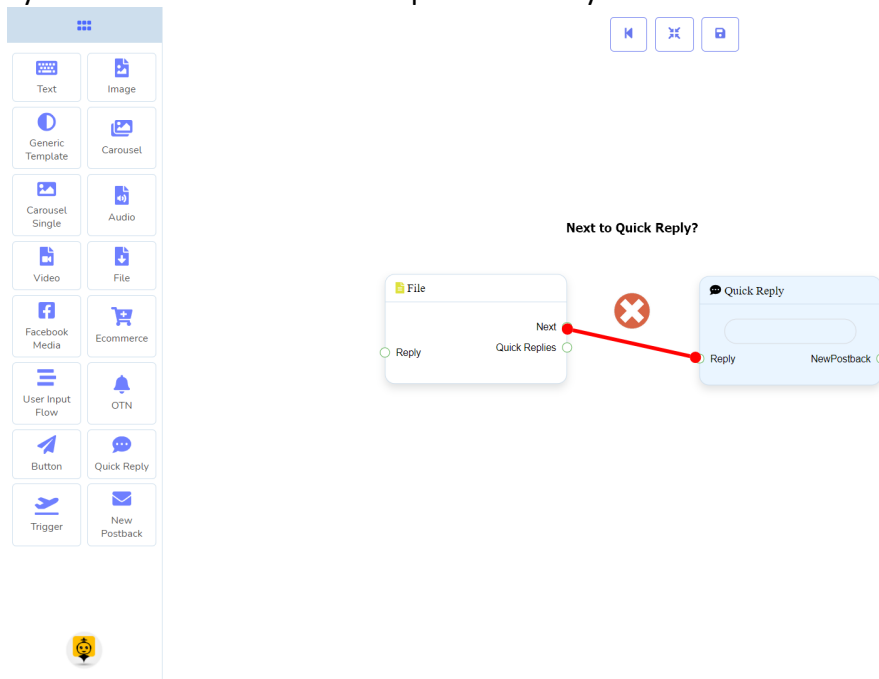
The File component will allow you to reply with a file. It has **1 input** socket and **2 output** sockets.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next**, and **Quick Replies**



Note: Next to Quick Replies!?

There is a condition between Next and Quick Replies. Using either Next or Quick Replies, you can connect to other components. But you can't connect to others from both.

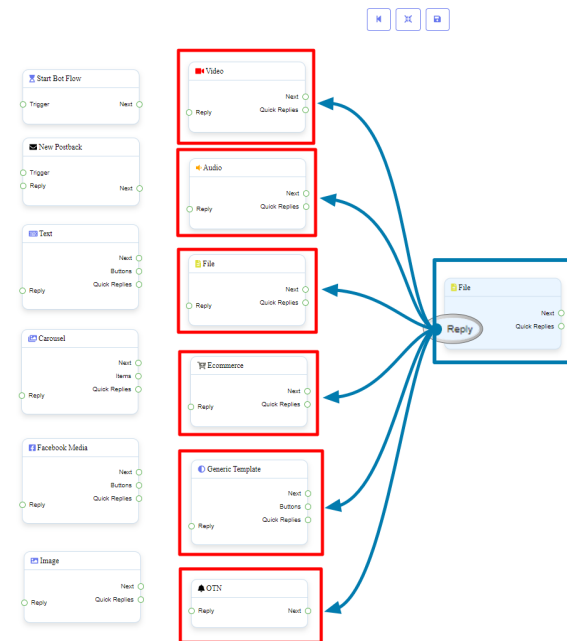
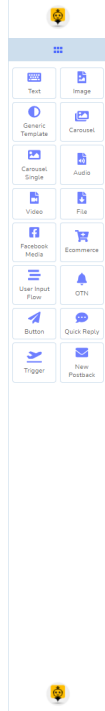
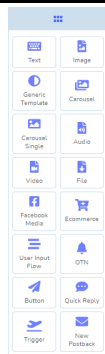


Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:

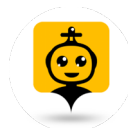
- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, Generic Template, and OTN.**

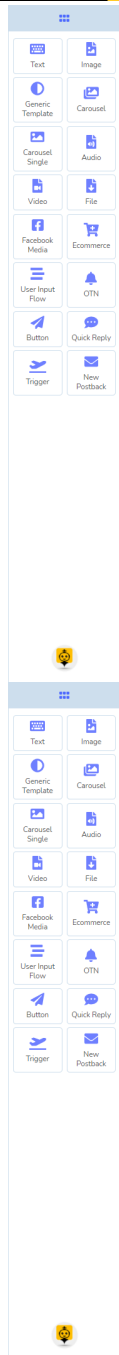




Next may be connected to one of the following components:

- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, User Input Flow, Generic Template, and OTN.**

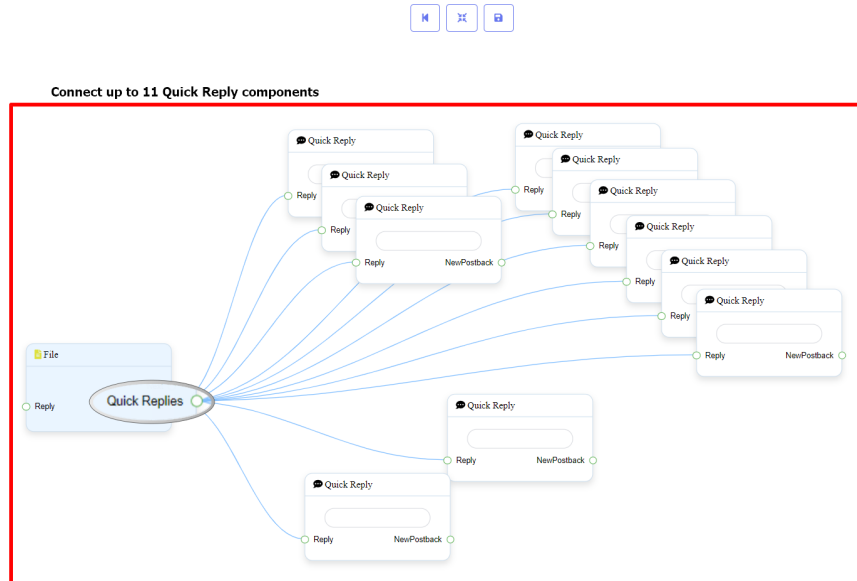
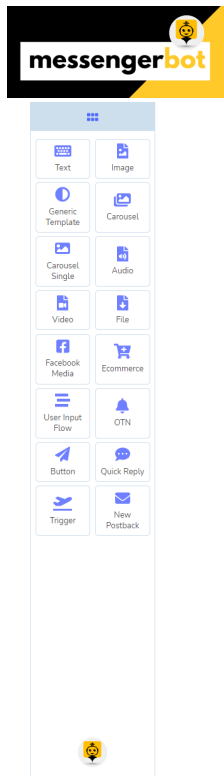




Quick Replies may be connected to the following component:

- **Quick Reply** - you may connect up to **11 Quick Replies** to the **File** component.





How to create a File component

Let us see how we can create a reply with a file component.

Dragging and Dropping

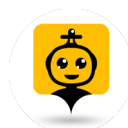
From the dock menu, **drag** the **File** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

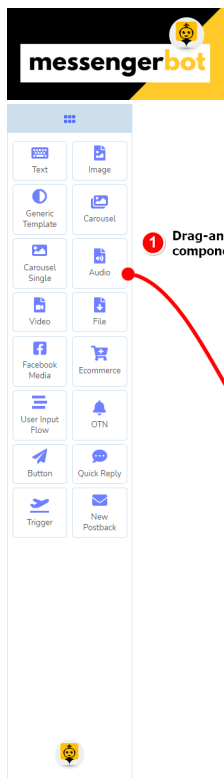
Adding Data

To add data to the **File** component, click twice on the body of the **File** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. **Fill in** the fields that you need.

Delay in Reply

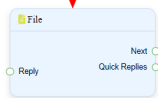
If you want to show the typing state on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.





1 Drag-and-drop the File component here.

2 To add data, double click the component.



3 Add/upload file here.

Configure File

Supported types: doc, docx, pdf, txt, ppt, pptx, xls, xlsx

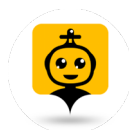
Typing on display

Delay in reply - 0 sec

OK Cancel

4 On/Off typing display and set seconds on delay in reply as desired.

5 Click OK button when done.



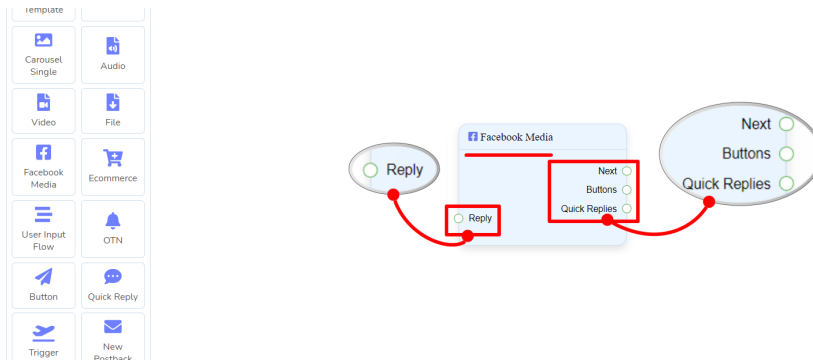


Facebook Media Component

Introduction

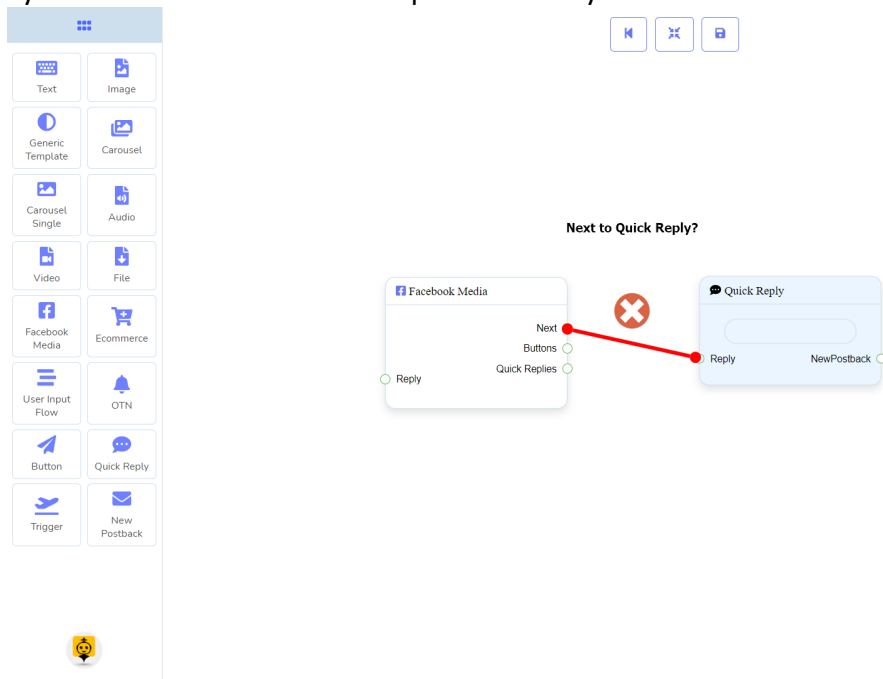
Facebook Media component will allow you to reply by referring to a Facebook page. It has **1 input** socket and **3 output** sockets.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next, Buttons, and Quick Replies**



Note: Next to Quick Replies!?

There is a condition between Next and Quick Replies. Using either Next or Quick Replies, you can connect to other components. But you can't connect to others from both.

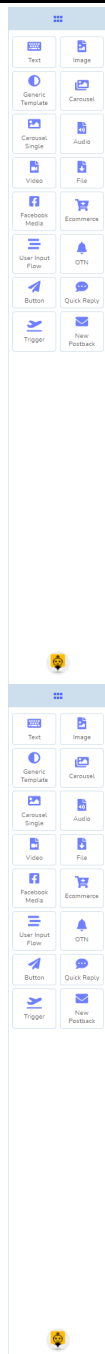


Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:

- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, Generic Template, and OTN.**

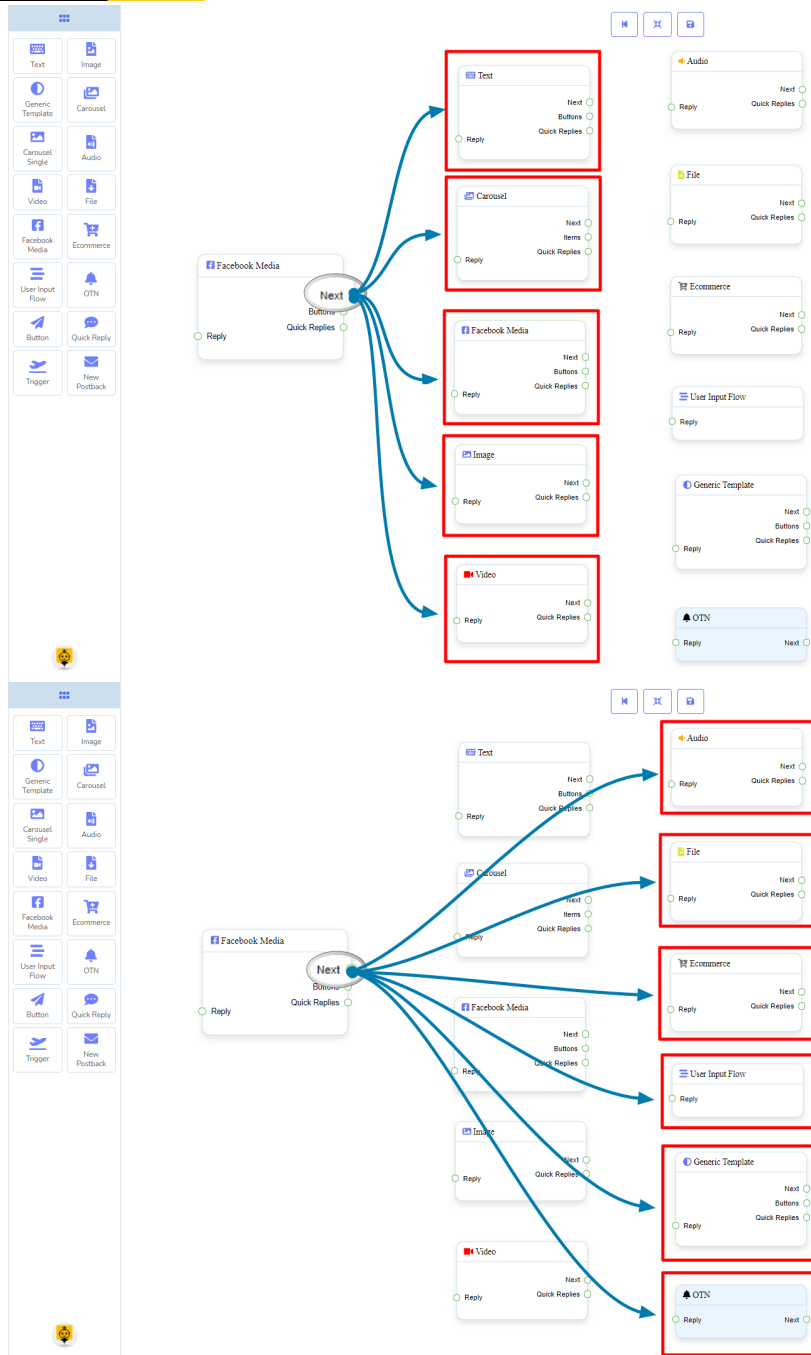




Next may be connected to one of the following components:

- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, User Input Flow, Generic Template, and OTN.**

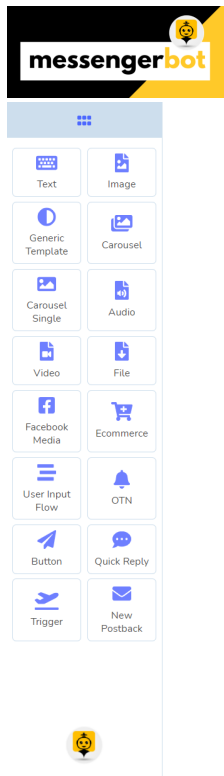




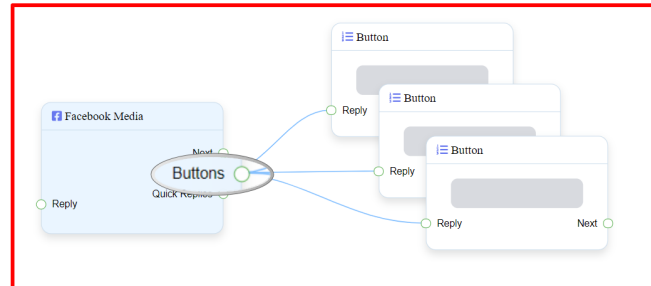
Buttons may be connected to the following component:

- **Button** - you may connect up to **3 Button** components to the **Facebook Media** component.



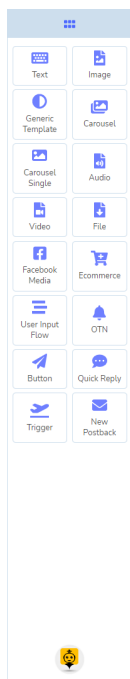


Connect up to 3 Button components

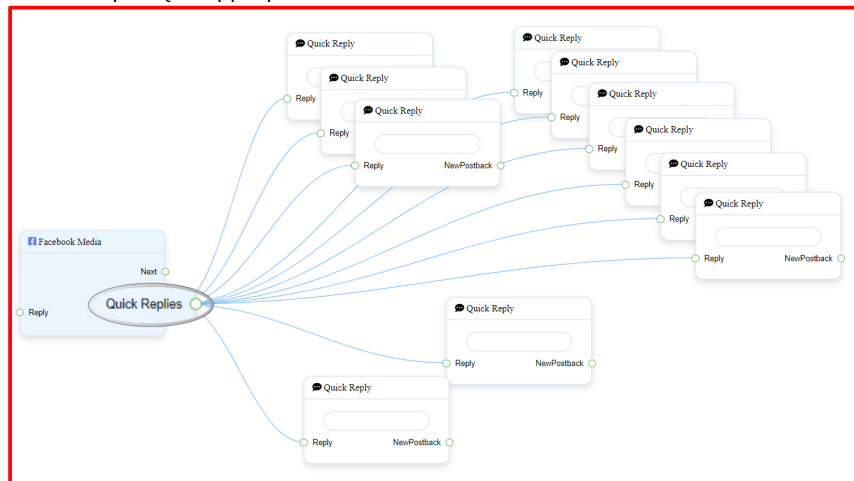


Quick Replies may be connected to the following component:

- **Quick Reply** - you may connect up to **11 Quick Replies** to the **Facebook Media** component.



Connect up to 11 Quick Reply components



How to create a Facebook Media component

Let us see how we can create a reply with a Facebook page.

Dragging and Dropping





From the dock menu, **drag** the **Facebook Media** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

Adding Data

To add data to the **Facebook Media** component, click twice on the body of the **Facebook Media** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. Fill in the fields that you need.

Delay in Reply

If you want to show the typing gif image on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.

The image shows a two-part interface for configuring a bot component. On the left, a dock menu contains various component icons. A red arrow labeled '1' points from the 'Facebook Media' icon to a 'Facebook Media' component placed in the editor. A second red arrow labeled '2' points to the component, indicating it should be double-clicked. On the right, a configuration sidebar for the 'Facebook Media' component is shown. It contains a text field for 'Facebook Media URL' with an example URL, a toggle for 'Typing on display', a slider for 'Delay in reply' set to 0 seconds, and 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons. Red arrows and numbers 3 through 5 provide step-by-step instructions for filling the URL, toggling the typing display, setting the delay, and clicking OK.

- 1 Drag-and-drop the Facebook Media
- 2 To add data, double click the component.
- 3 Paste your Facebook Media URL here.
- 4 On/Off typing display and set seconds on delay in reply as desired.
- 5 Click OK button when done.





Ecommerce Component

Introduction

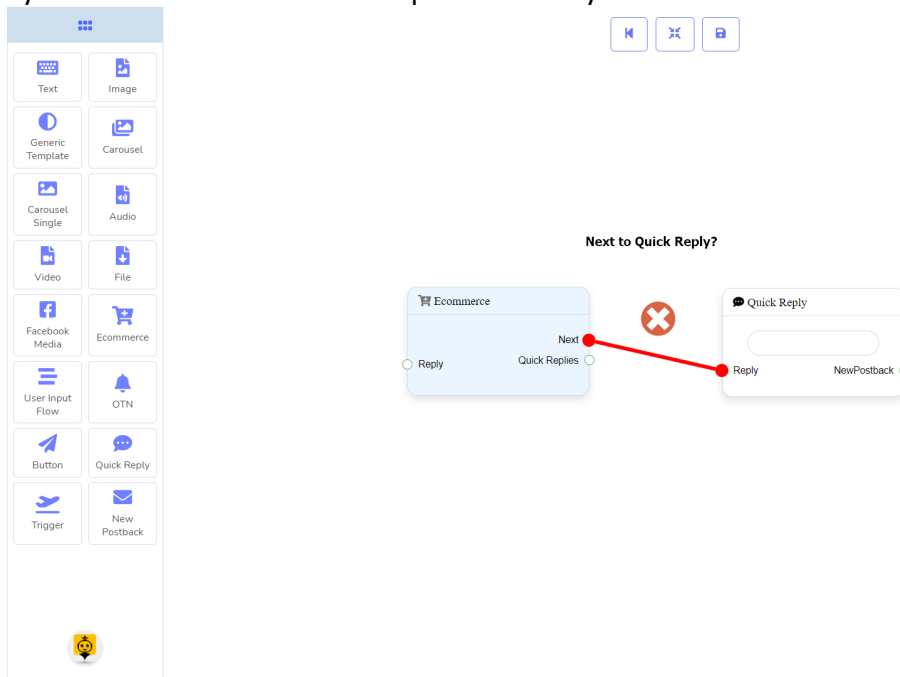
Ecommerce component will allow you to reply by referring to an ecommerce shop and its products as a carousel or generic reply. It has **1 input** socket and **2 output** sockets.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next**, and **Quick Replies**



Note: Next to Quick Replies!?

There is a condition between Next and Quick Replies. Using either Next or Quick Replies, you can connect to other components. But you can't connect to others from both.

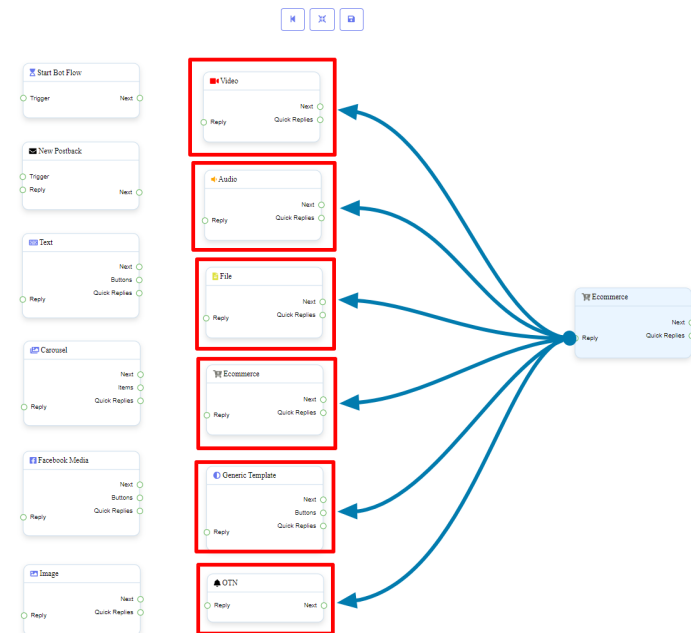
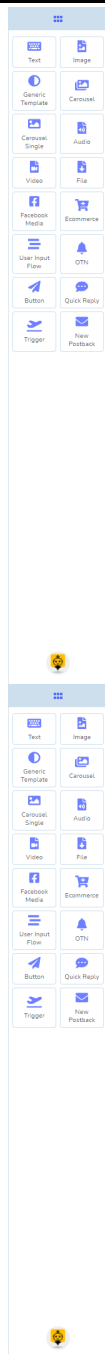


Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:

- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, Generic Template, and OTN.**

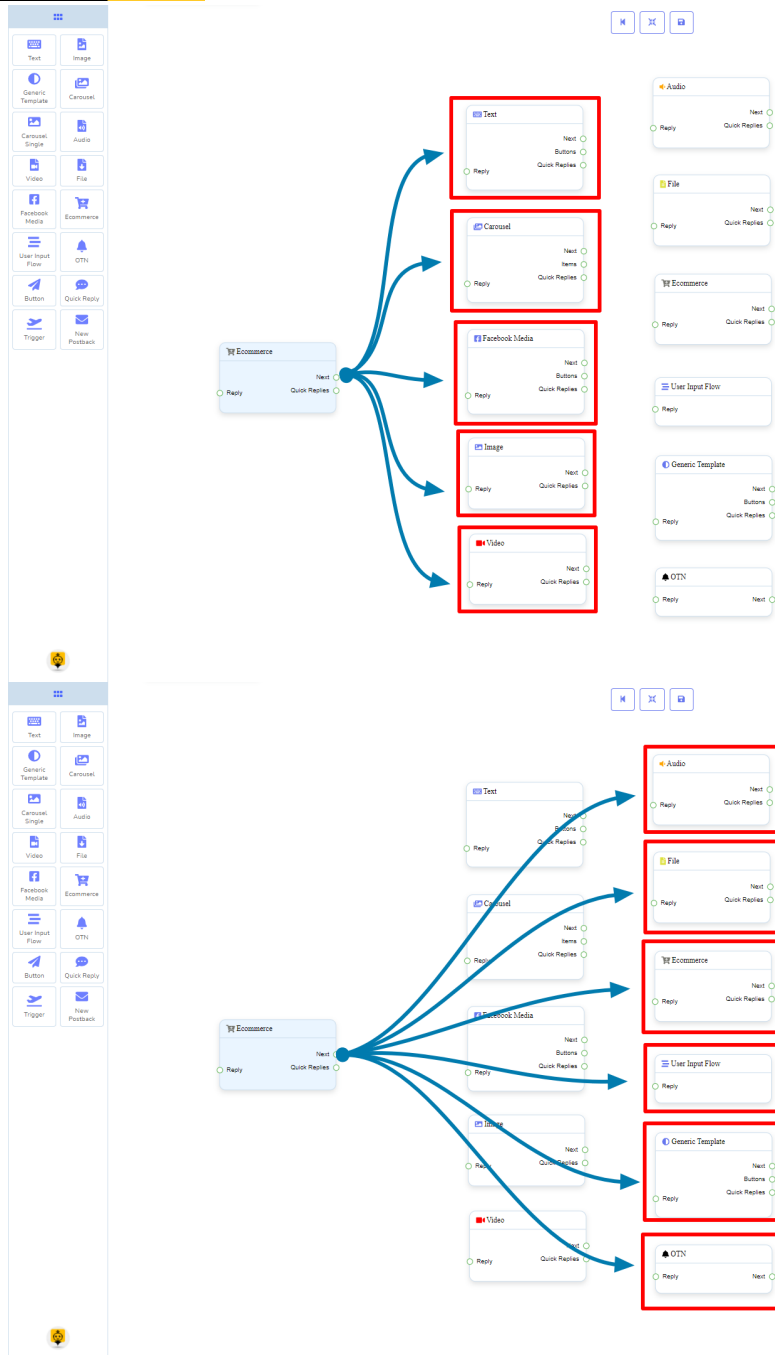




Next may be connected to one of the following components:

- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, User Input Flow, Generic Template, and OTN.**

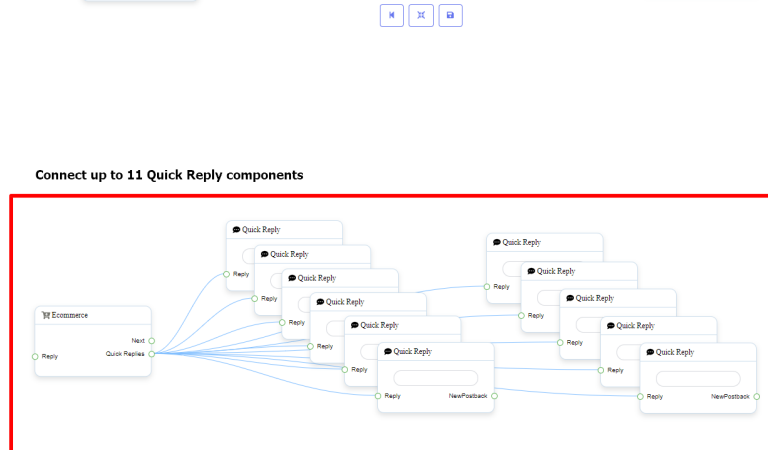
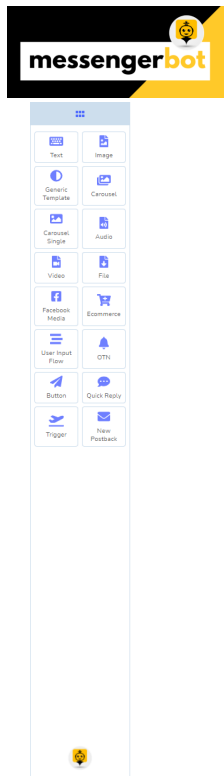




Quick Replies may be connected to the following component:

- **Quick Reply** - you may connect up to **11 Quick Replies** to the **Ecommerce** component.





How to create an Ecommerce component

Let us see how we can create an ecommerce.

Dragging and Dropping

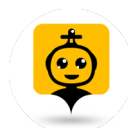
From the dock menu, **drag** the **Ecommerce** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

Adding Data

To add data to the **Ecommerce** component, click twice on the body of the **Ecommerce** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. Fill in the fields that you need.

Delay in Reply

If you want to show the typing gif image on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.



messengerbot

Text

Image

Generic Template

Carousel

Carousel Single

Audio

Video

File

Facebook Media

Ecommerce

User Input Flow

OTN

Button

Quick Reply

Trigger

New Postback

1 Drag-and-drop the Ecommerce component

2 Double click the component to add data

Ecommerce

Reply

Next

Quick Replies



3 Provide the data as needed here

4 On/Off typing display and set the seconds of Delay in reply

5 Click OK button when done

Configure Ecommerce

Select your ecommerce store

Select a store

Select products for carousel/generic reply

Buy now button text

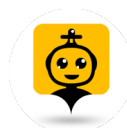
Typing on display

☐

Delay in reply - 0 sec

OK

Cancel





User Input Flow Component

Introduction

User Input Flow component will allow you to reply with a user input flow. It has only **1 input socket**.

- **Input: Reply**

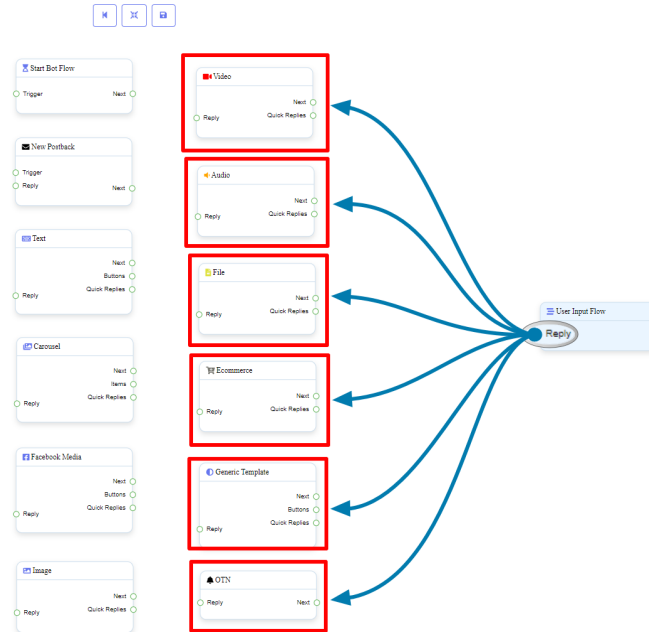
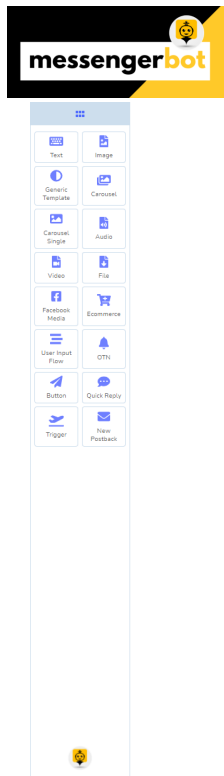


Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:

- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, Generic Template, and OTN.**





How to create a User Input Flow component

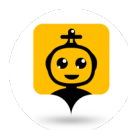
Let us see how we can create a reply using the user-input-flow component.

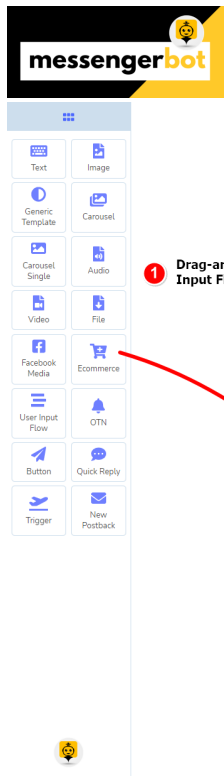
Dragging and Dropping

From the dock menu, **drag** the **User Input Flow** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

Adding Data

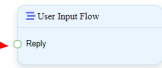
To add data to the **User Input Flow** component, click twice on the body of the **User Input Flow** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. Fill in the fields that you need.





1 Drag-and-drop the User Input Flow component

2 Double click the component to add data



3 Provide the data as needed here

4 On/Off typing display and set the seconds of Delay in reply

5 Click OK button when done

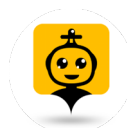
Configure User-Input-Flow

User input flow
Select flow campaign

Typing on display
☐

Delay in reply - 0 sec

OK Cancel



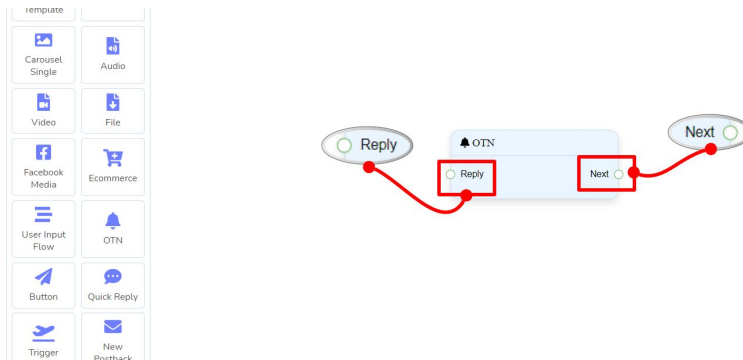


OTN Component

Introduction

The OTN component will allow you to reply with **One Time Notification**. It has **1 input** socket and **1 output** socket.

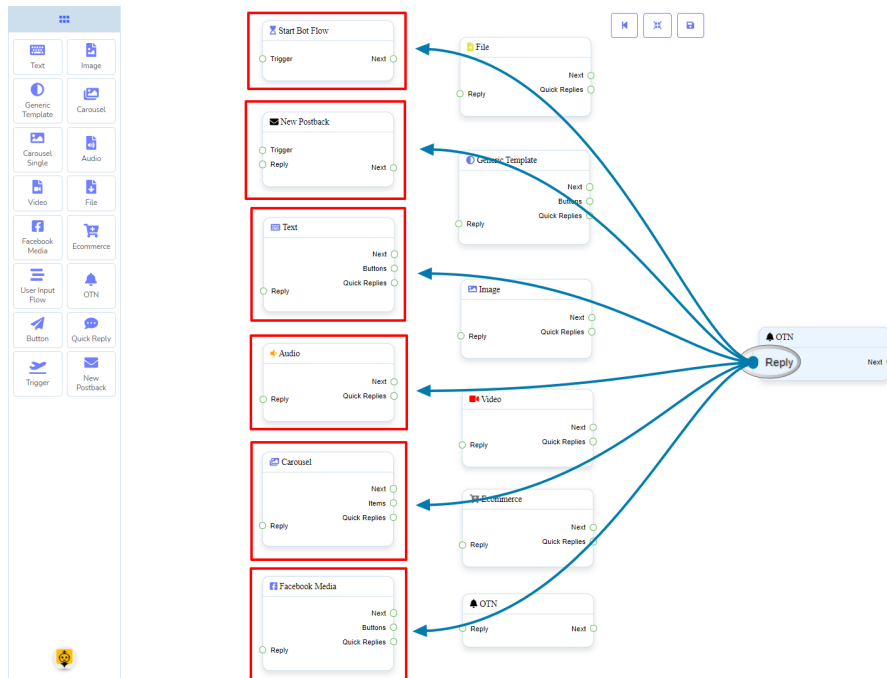
- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next**

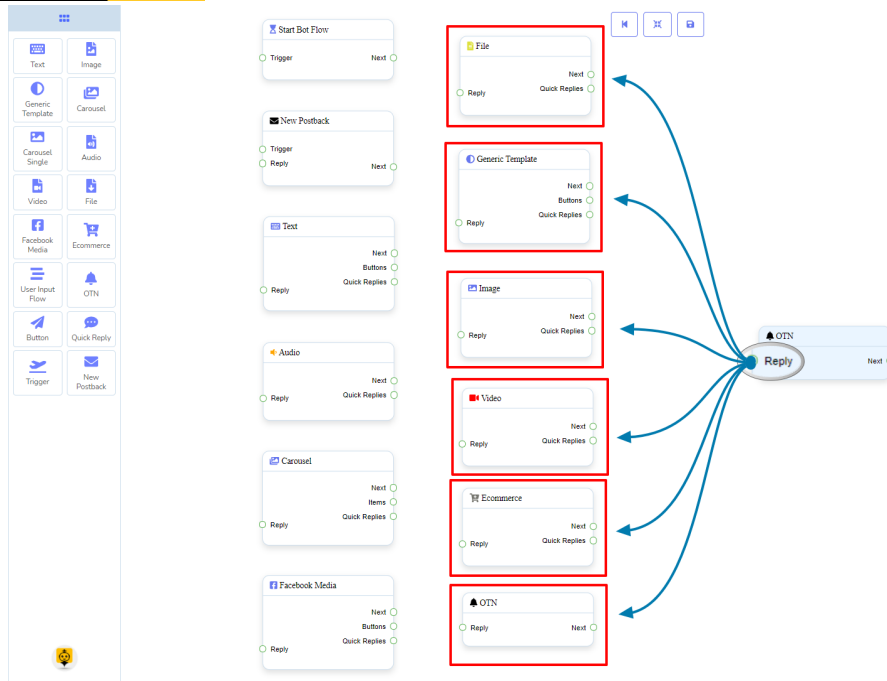


Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:

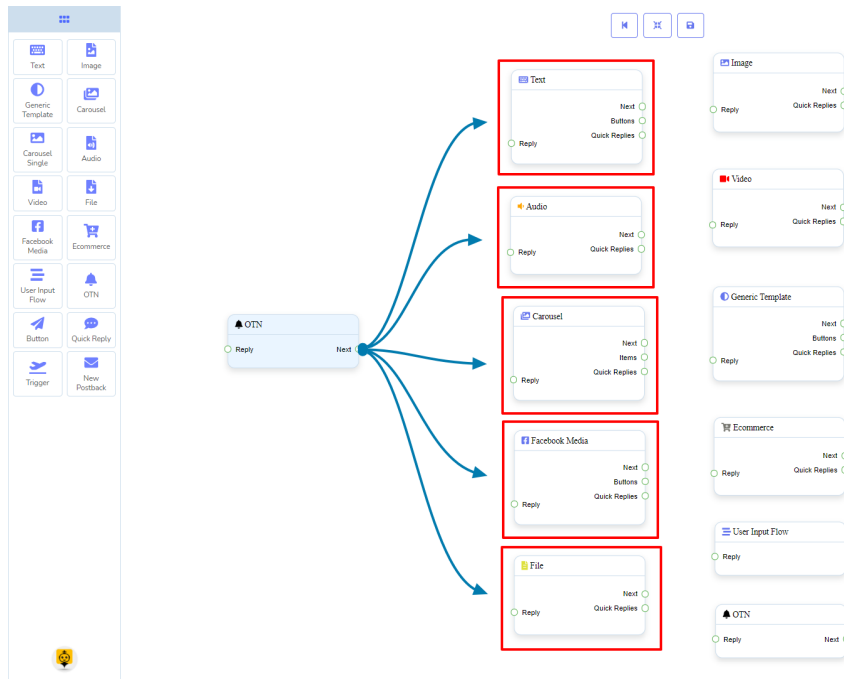
- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, Generic Template, and OTN.**

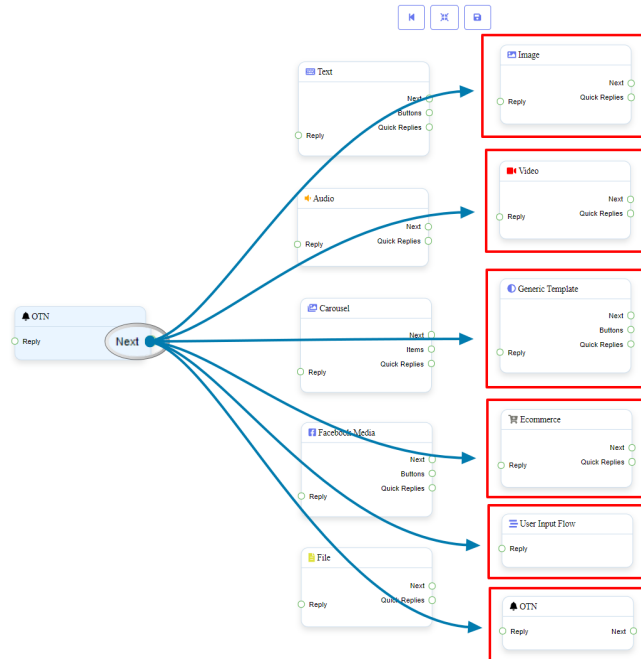
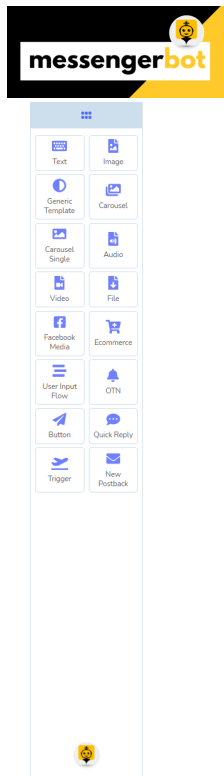




Next may be connected to one of the following components:

- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, User Input Flow, Generic Template, and OTN.**





How to create an OTN component

Let us see how we can create a reply with one-time-notification.

Dragging and Dropping

From the dock menu, **drag** the **OTN** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

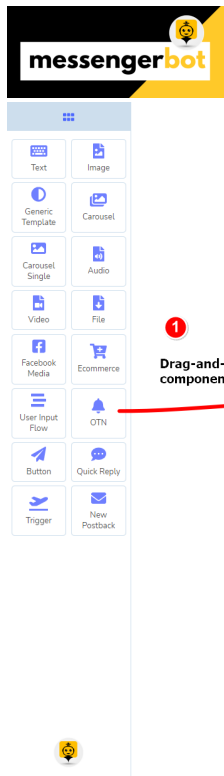
Adding Data

To add data to the **OTN** component, click twice on the body of the **OTN** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. **Fill in** the fields that you need.

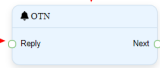
Delay in Reply

If you want to show the typing state on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.





2 To add data, double click the component



3 Provide the data as needed here

Configure One Time Notification

Title

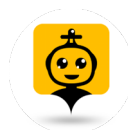
OTN postback ID
 Select ▼

4 On/Off typing display and set the seconds of Delay in reply

Typing on display
 ☐

Delay in reply - 0 sec

5 Click OK button when done



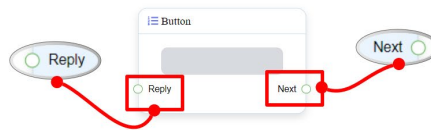
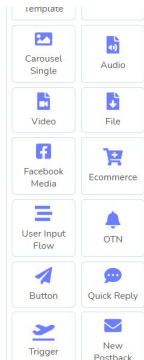


Button Component

Introduction

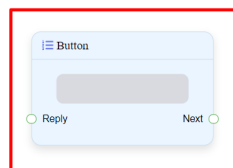
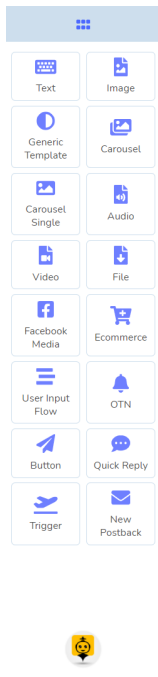
The Button component will allow you to reply with a button. It has only **1 input** and **1 output**.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next**



Note: Button Type Clarification

If the button type is something other than **New Postback**, then you can NOT connect this **Button** component to other components via its **Next** output socket. Because it only allows the **New Postback** component to be connected. See the connections section.

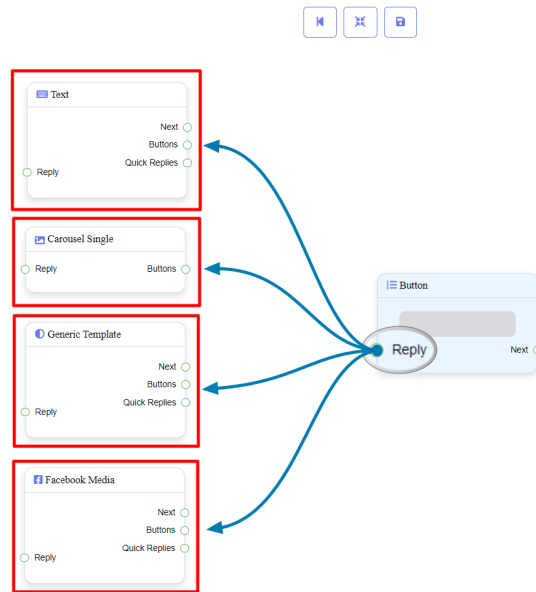
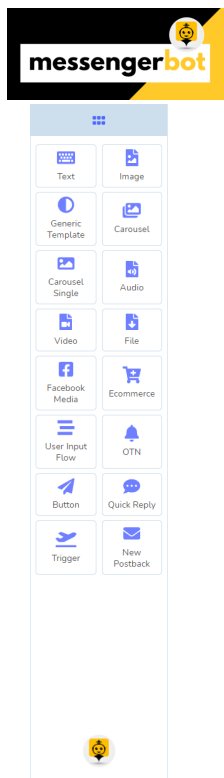


Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:

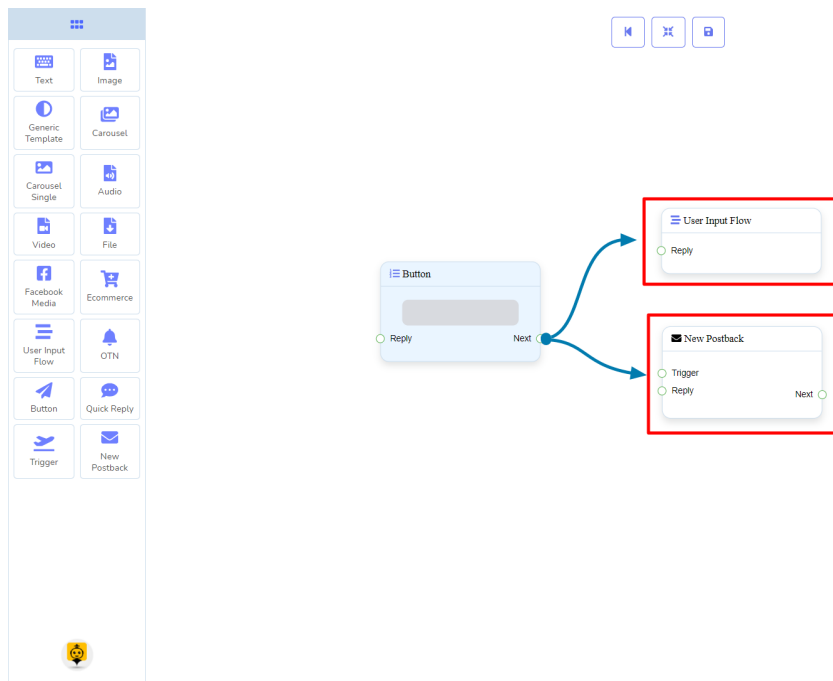
- **Text, Carousel Single, Generic Template, and Facebook Media Button**





Next may be connected to one of the following components:

- **User Input Flow and New Postback.**



How to create a Button component

Let us see how we can create a reply with the help of the button component.

Dragging and Dropping

From the dock menu, **drag** the **Button** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.





Adding Data

To add data to the **Button** component, click twice on the body of the **Button** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. Fill in the fields that you need.

Delay in Reply

If you want to show the typing state on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.

The screenshot illustrates the process of adding data to a Button component in the Messengerbot interface. It is divided into four numbered steps:

- 1 Drag-and-drop Button component**: A red arrow points from the 'Button' component in the left sidebar to the main workspace.
- 2 To add data, double click the component**: A red arrow points to the 'Button' component in the workspace, which has a 'Reply' label below it.
- 3 Provide the data as needed here**: A red arrow points to the 'Configure Button' sidebar on the right. This sidebar contains fields for 'Button text', 'Button type' (with a dropdown menu), and an 'OK' button.
- 4 Click OK button when done**: A red arrow points to the 'OK' button in the 'Configure Button' sidebar.

The 'Configure Button' sidebar is highlighted with a red border. The 'OK' button is also highlighted with a red border. The 'Button' component in the workspace is highlighted with a red border.



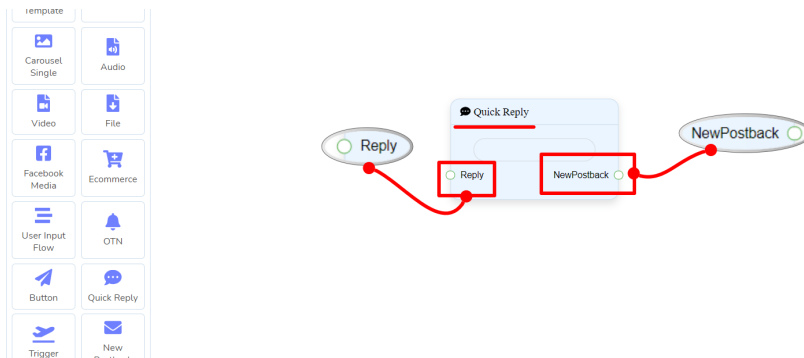


Quick Reply Component

Introduction

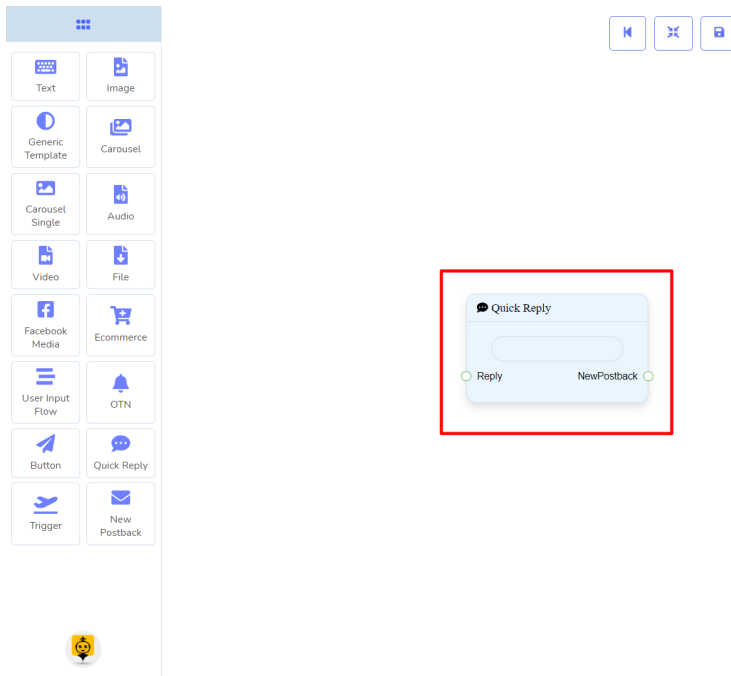
The Quick Reply component will allow you to reply quickly creating a **New Postback**, using an existing **Postback**, using your Facebook page's **Phone** number or **Email** address. It has only **1 input socket** and **1 output socket**.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **NewPostback**



Note: Quick Reply Type Clarification

If your quick-reply type is something other than **New Postback**, then you can NOT connect this **Quick Reply** component to other components via its **New Postback** output socket. Because it only allows the **New Postback** component to be connected. See the connections section.



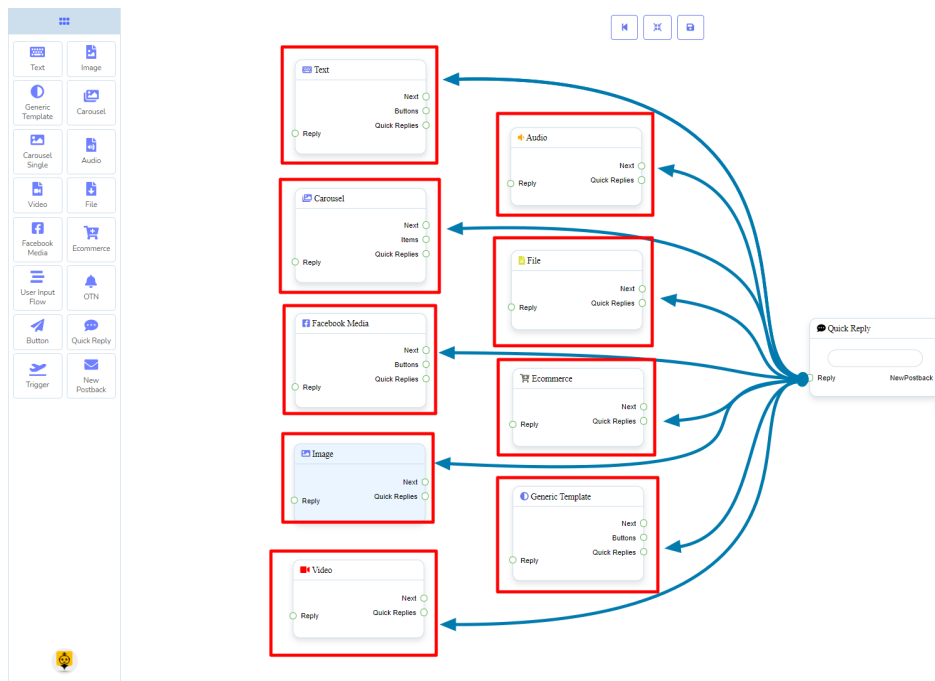
Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:



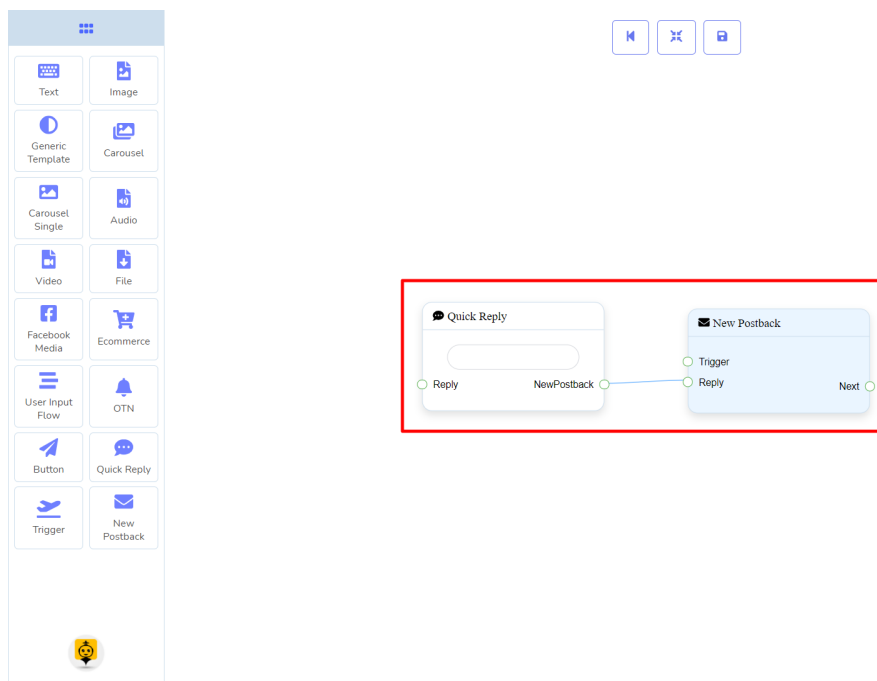


- Text, Carousel, Facebook Media Button, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, and Generic Template,



Next may be connected to the following components:

- **New Postback.**





How to create a Quick Reply component
Let us see how we can create a quick reply.

Dragging and Dropping

From the dock menu, **drag** the **Quick Reply** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

Adding Data

To add data to the **Quick Reply** component, click twice on the body of the **Quick Reply** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. Fill in the fields that you need.

The image shows the Messenger Bot editor interface. On the left is a dock menu with various components. A red arrow labeled '1' points from the 'Quick Reply' component in the dock to the 'Quick Reply' component in the editor. A red arrow labeled '2' points to the 'Quick Reply' component in the editor, with the text 'To add data, double click the component'. A red arrow labeled '3' points from the 'Quick Reply' component to the 'Configure Button' sidebar. A red arrow labeled '4' points from the 'OK' button in the sidebar to the text 'Click OK button when done'. The 'Configure Button' sidebar has fields for 'Button text', 'Button type', and a dropdown menu labeled 'Select a button type'. There are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom of the sidebar.

1 Drag-and-drop Button component

2 To add data, double click the component

3 Provide the data as needed here

4 Click OK button when done



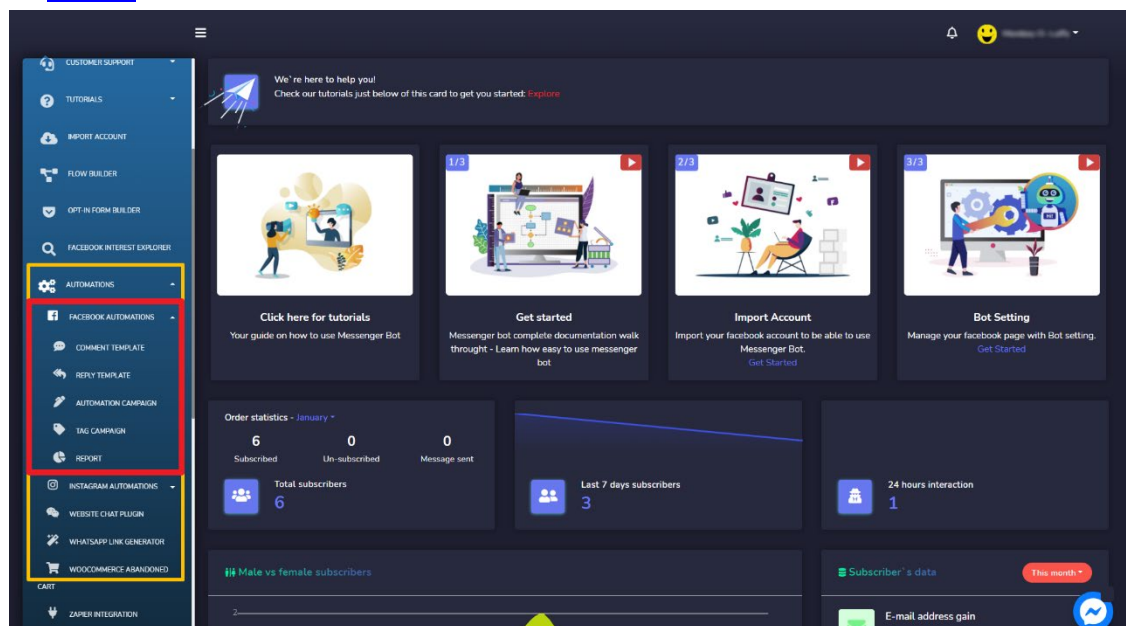


Comment Automation (Automations)

Comment Automation allows a user to create, edit and delete comment and reply templates. This view gives full control of comment automation and tagging. It gives a summarized report of existing campaigns and templates. For this tutorial, we will use Facebook Automations as a demo.

To view this section, navigate to the navigation menu located at the left under the Automations section. Tab on Facebook Automations. The following options will appear in the sub-menu:

- [Comment Template](#)
- [Reply Template](#)
- [Automation Campaign](#)
- [Tag Campaign](#)
- [Report](#)



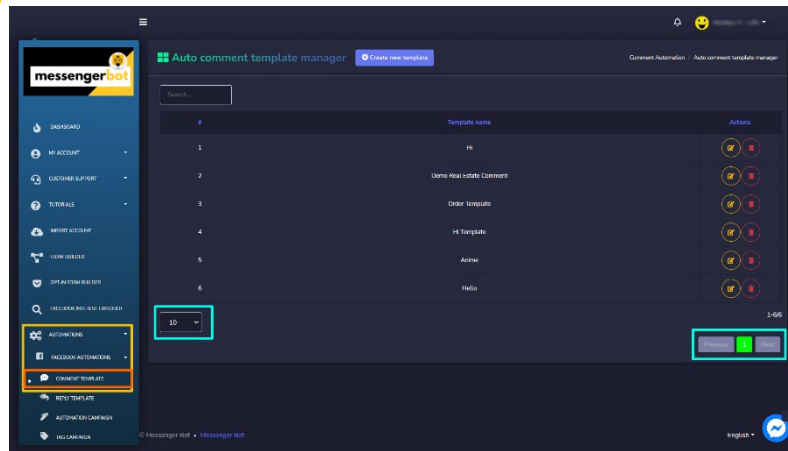
A brief description of these views is shared in their relevant sections, below.

Comment Template

First, Comment Template. To view this section, navigate to **Automations > Facebook Automations** from the navigation menu located on the left side and select **Comment Template** as shown.

The **Auto comment template manager** view consists of multiple templates. You can select the number of templates to be viewed per page. You can also search for a particular template by using the search bar.

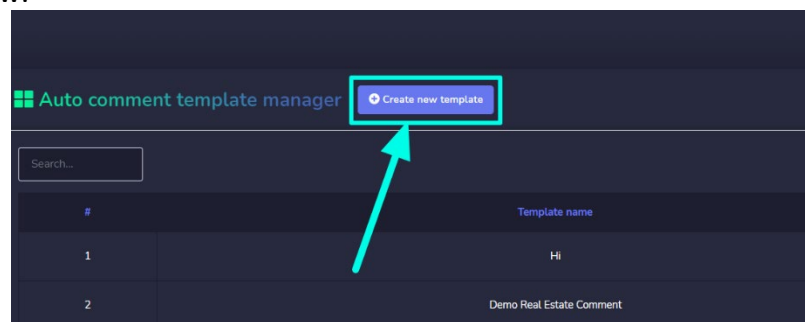




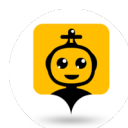
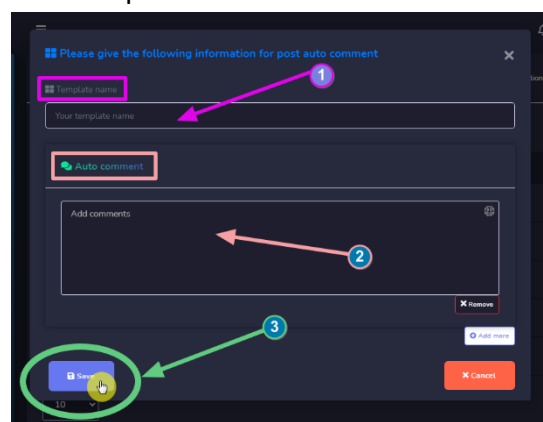
Create new template

To create a new template, follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select **Create a new template** option located at the top of the Auto comment template manager view.




- 2) Provide the information for post auto comment, that includes:
 - Template name: Name of your template
 - Auto comment: The automatic reply to a comment.
- 3) Select **Save** to create a new template.

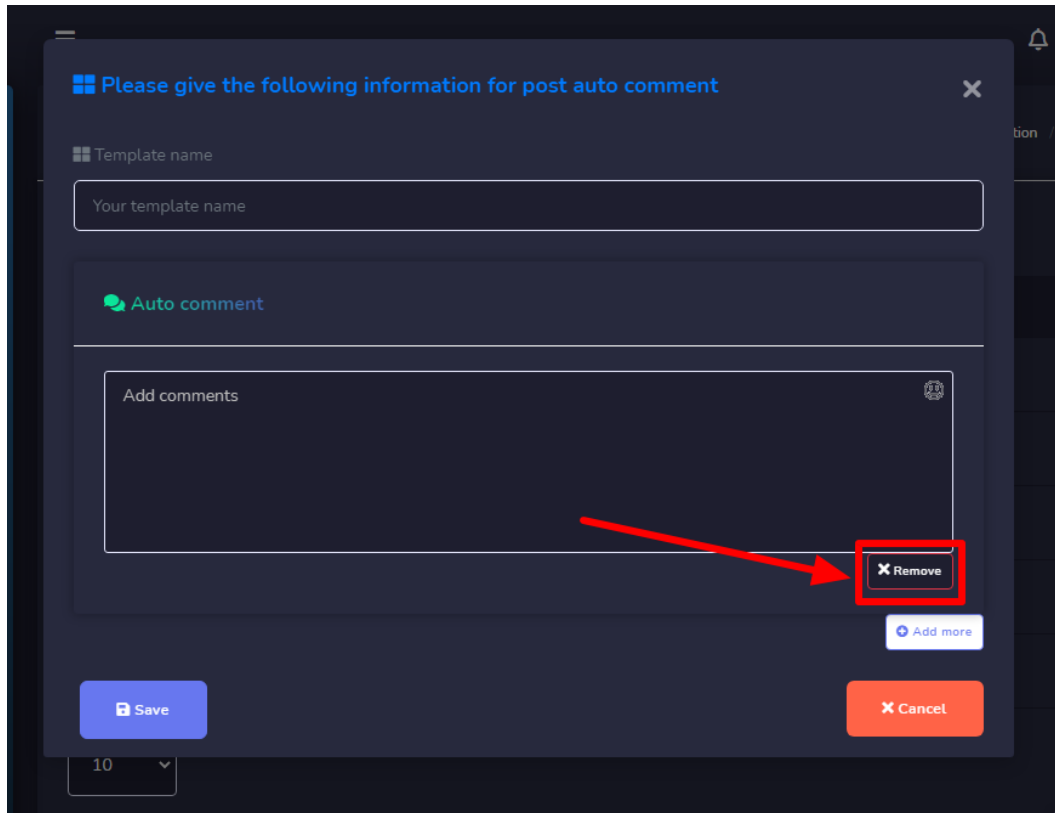




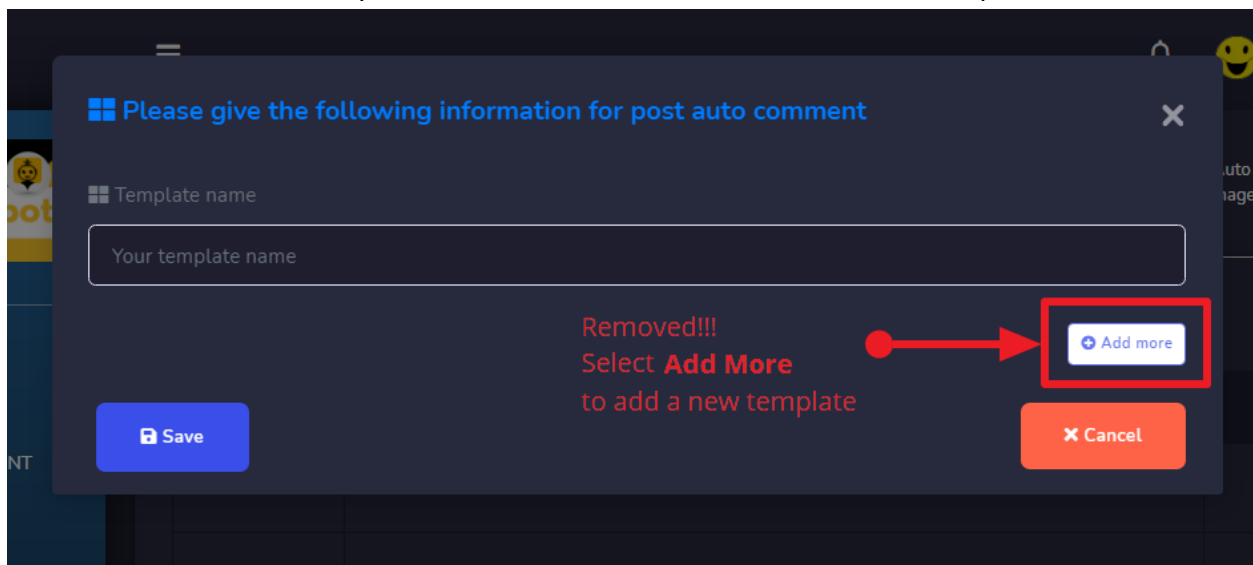
Comment Template Options

You can perform the following actions on the Auto comment template manager screen:


Remove the comment: You can remove the comment from the information providing screen by selecting  button at the bottom.

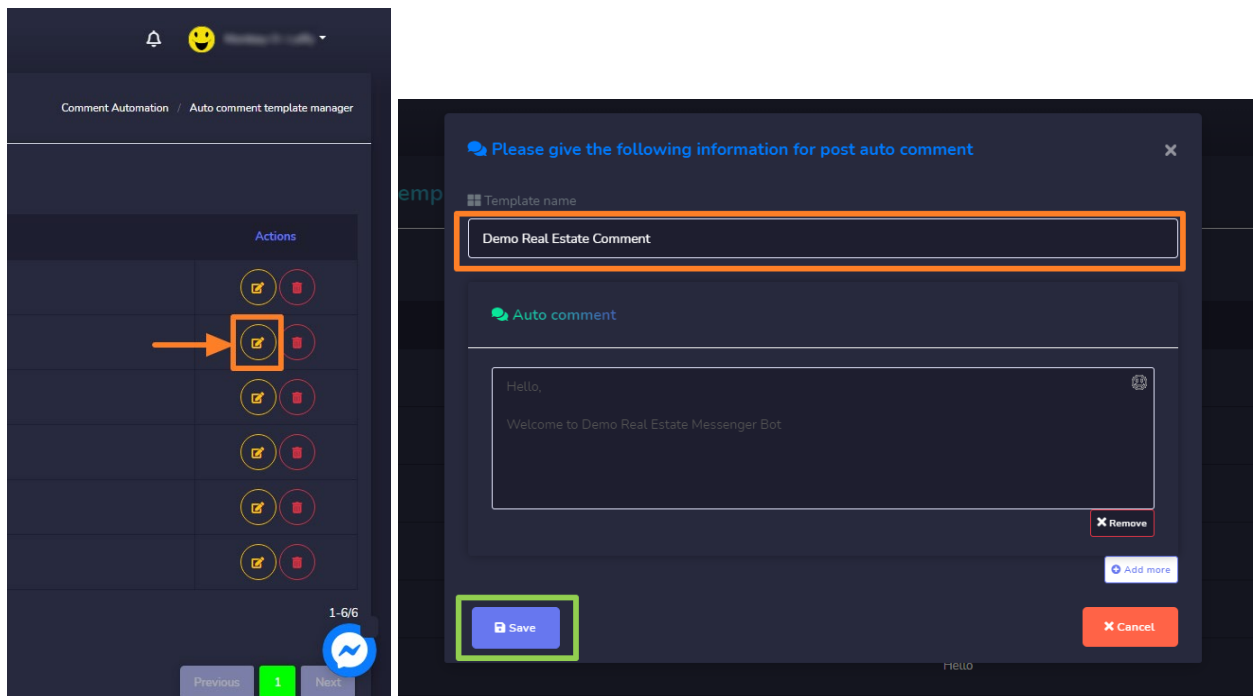



Now it has been removed, you can now select **Add more** to add a new template.

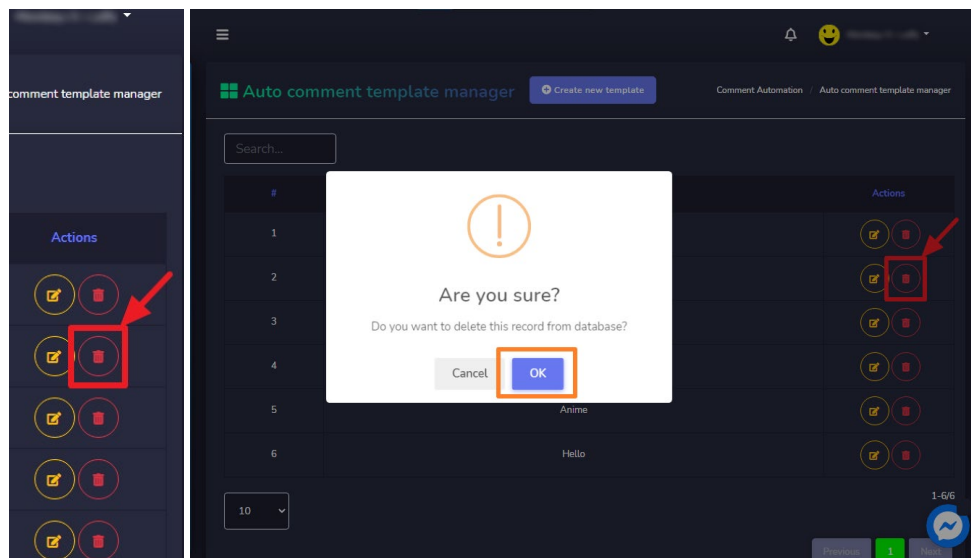




Edit the template: You can edit the template by selecting the  icon against the template to be edited. Perform changes you wanted to do here, then Save when done.



Delete the template: You can delete the template by selecting the  icon against the template to be deleted.

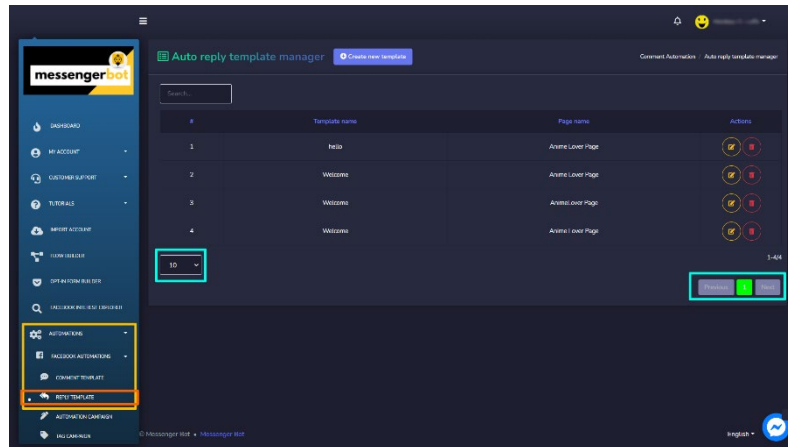




Reply Template

To view this section, navigate to **Automations > Facebook Automations** from the navigation menu located on the left side and select **Reply Template**.

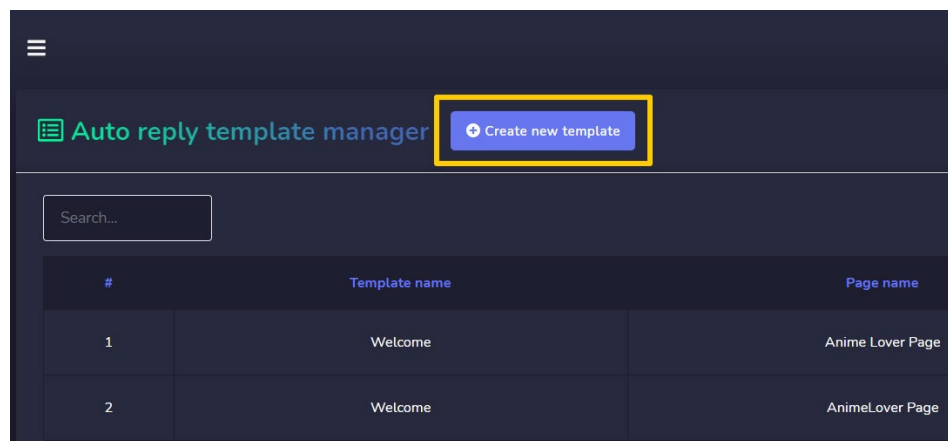
The **Auto reply template manager** view consists of multiple reply templates. You can select the number of templates to be viewed per page. You can also search for a template using the search bar.



Create new template

To create a new template, follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select **Create a new template** option located at the top of Auto reply template manager view.



- 2) Select the page for which you want to apply auto-reply.



Please give the following information for post auto reply

Please select a page for auto-reply

What do you want about offensive comments?

Write down the offensive keywords in comma separated

Type keywords here in comma separated (keyword1,keyword2)....keep it blank for no keywords

Do you want to send reply message to a user multiple times?

Do you want to enable comment reply?

Do you want to like on comment by page?

Do you want to hide comments after comment reply?

Generic message for all

Send message by filtering word/sentence

Auto reply campaign name

Select a page

Celsa Omaguig

AnimeLover Page

Flower Shop Estore

3) Add the offensive remarks in inverted commas and select the action corresponding to those remarks.

Please give the following information for post auto reply

Please select a page for auto-reply

What do you want about offensive comments?

Write down the offensive keywords in comma separated

Poor

Select a message template for private reply after deleting offensive comment

Please select a message template

Add Message Template

Refresh List

Do you want to send reply message to a user multiple times?

Do you want to enable comment reply?

Do you want to like on comment by page?

Do you want to hide comments after comment reply?

Generic message for all

Send message by filtering word/sentence





- 4) Select a message template you want to reply to the person with. Or you can also add a template by selecting "Add Message Template".

Please give the following information for post auto reply

Please select a page for auto-reply: AnimeLover Page

What do you want about offensive comments? ☒ Hide ☐ Delete

Write down the offensive keywords in comma separated: Poor

Select a message template for private reply after deleting offensive comment: Please select a message template. Add Message Template Refresh List

Do you want to send reply message to a user multiple times? ☒ Yes

Do you want to enable comment reply? ☒ Yes

Do you want to like on comment by page? ☒ Yes

Do you want to hide comments after comment reply? ☐ Yes

☒ Generic message for all

☐ Send message by filtering word/sentence

Fill up everything needed for your template, then select "Submit".

Add template

Template name: [Text Input]

Click the below button to see variable list: Variables

Postback type: ☒ Parent ☐ Child

Postback id: [Text Input]

Choose labels: [Text Input] Create label

Choose sequence campaigns: Select

Reply 1

Select reply type: Text

Enable: ☐ Delay in reply: 0 Sec

Please provide your reply message: [Text Input]

Submit

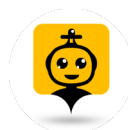
Close & refresh list





5) Select all options based on your choice by selecting the toggle button to either Yes/No.


6) Provide a name for your auto-reply campaign, then select **Save**.

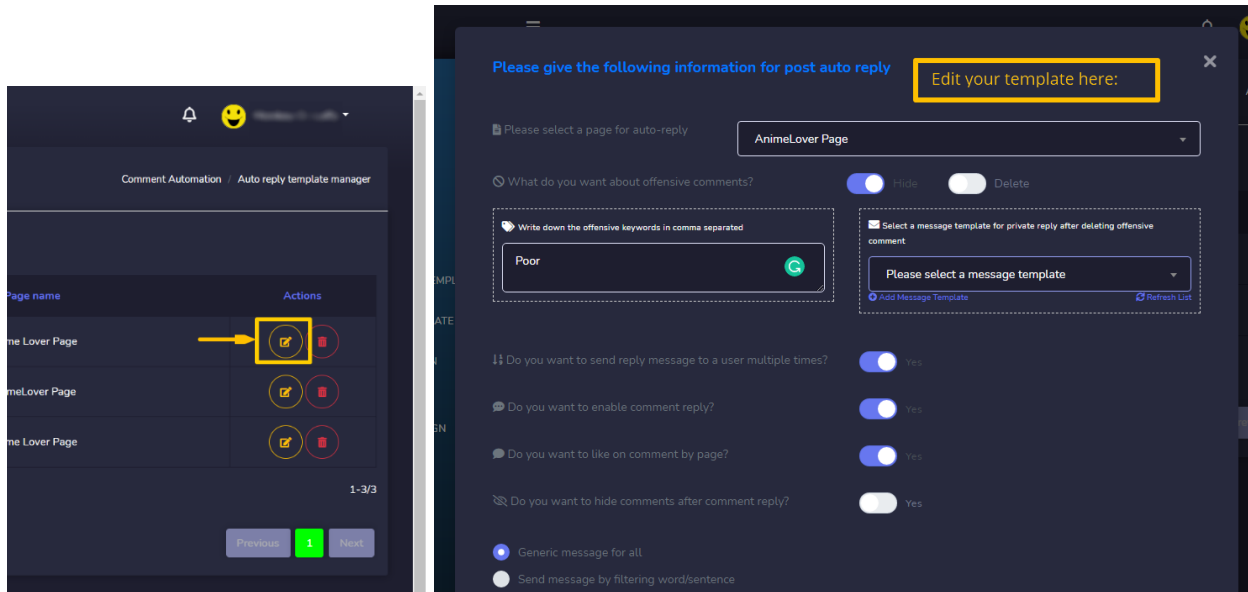





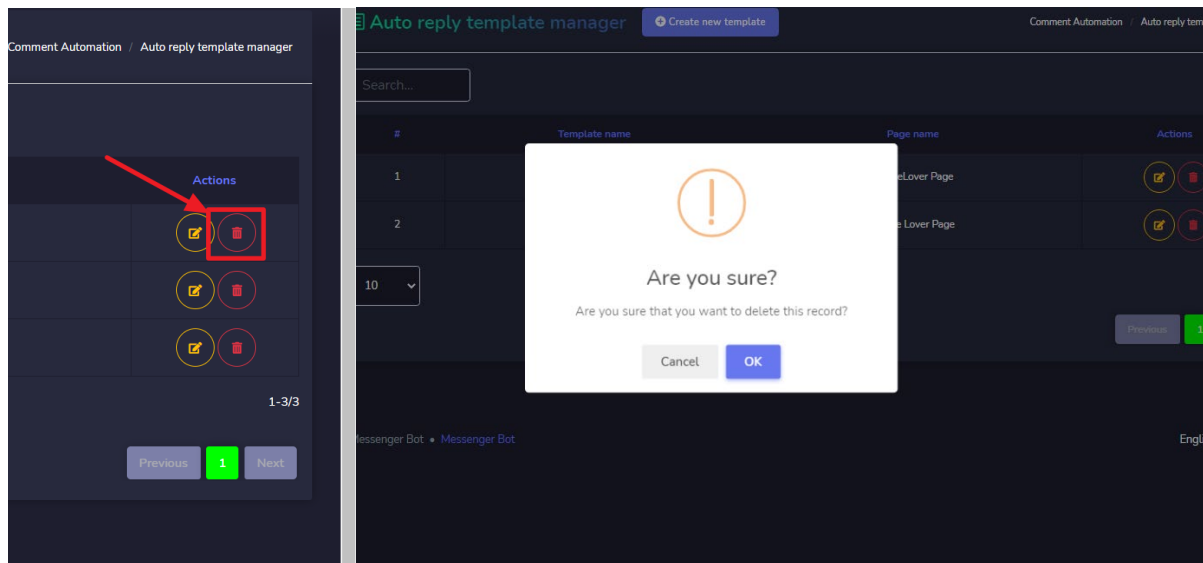
Reply Template Options

You can perform following actions on Auto reply template manager screen:

Edit the template: You can edit the template by selecting the  icon against the template to be edited.

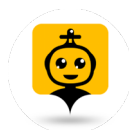


Delete the template: You can delete the template by selecting the  icon against the template to be deleted.



Automation Campaign

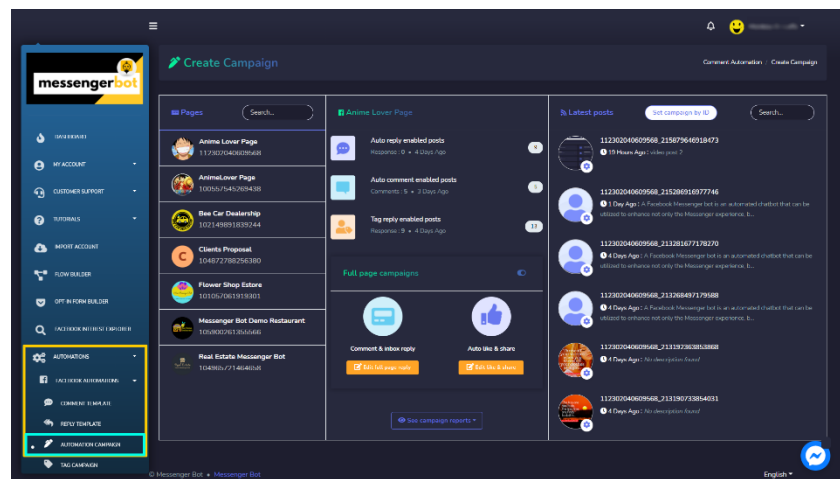
To view this section, navigate to **Automations > Facebook Automations** from the navigation menu located on the left side and select **Automation Campaign**.





The **Create Campaign** view consists of multiple options. This view is divided into two sections. The left side allows user to run **Full page campaigns**. The right side is used for **setting the campaigns by ID**.

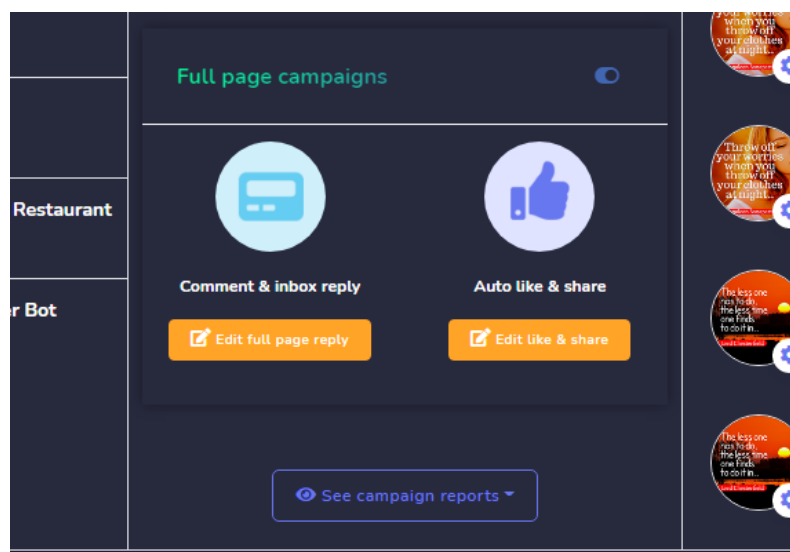
A summarized view of numbers of how many total **Auto comments**, **Auto replies** and **Auto campaigns** created can be found in the left section. You can create different campaigns, enable auto replies and comments on several posts from this view.



Full page campaigns

Campaigns can be set for Facebook pages. This helps a user to run an overall campaign for their page. The settings apply throughout the Facebook page and for all posts. To set a full page campaign, a user has two methods:

- Comment & inbox reply
- Auto like & share

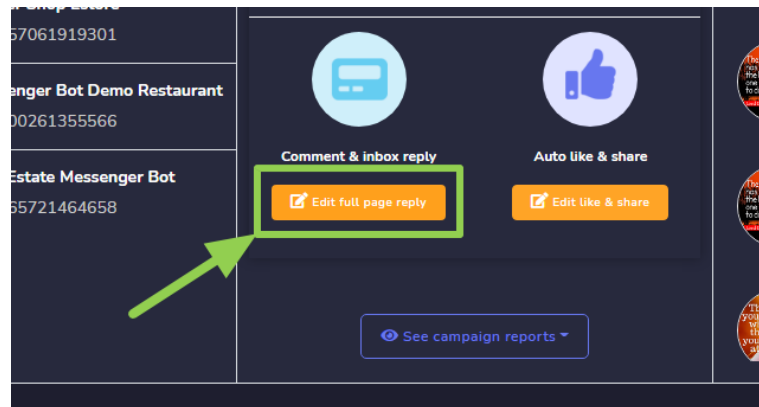




Comment & inbox reply

To comment & give inbox reply, follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select the **Edit Full page reply** option from **Full page campaigns** section.



- 2) Now edit your information for **page response**, and make updates.

- 3) Select **Save**, your information will be updated.



Thank you

Message for comment reply * ⓘ

First name Last name Tag user

Hello, #LEAD_USER_FIRST_NAME#!

Thank you

Image for comment reply Video for comment reply [mp4 Preferred] ⓘ

Upload Upload

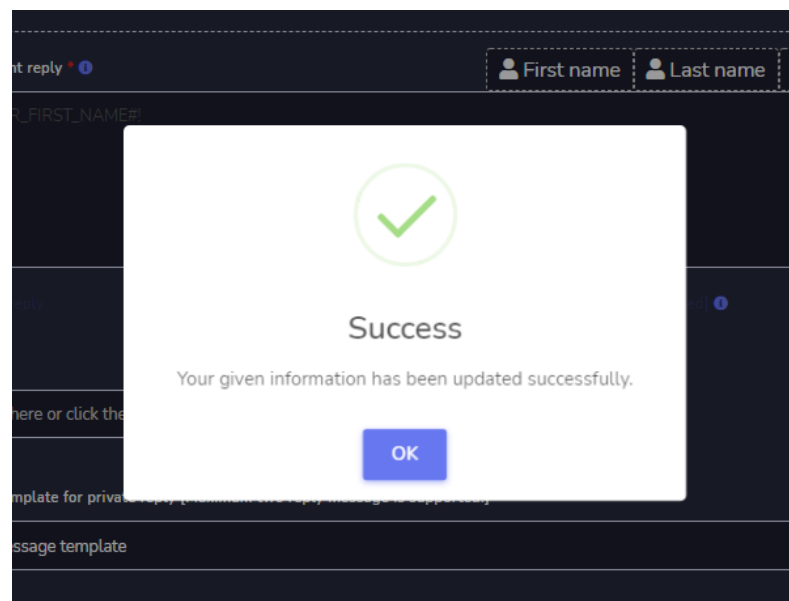
Put your image url here or click the above upload button

Select a message template for private reply [Maximum two reply message is supported.]

'Get Started' [GetStarted_CIBRMT]

Add Message Template Refresh List

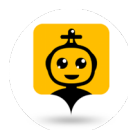
Save Cancel

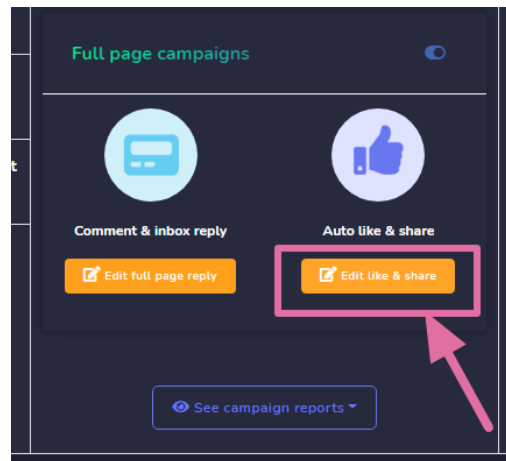


Auto like & share

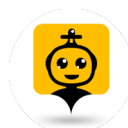
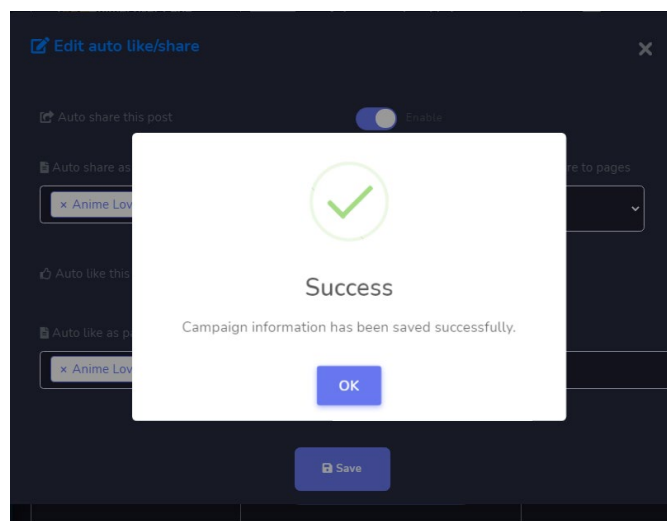
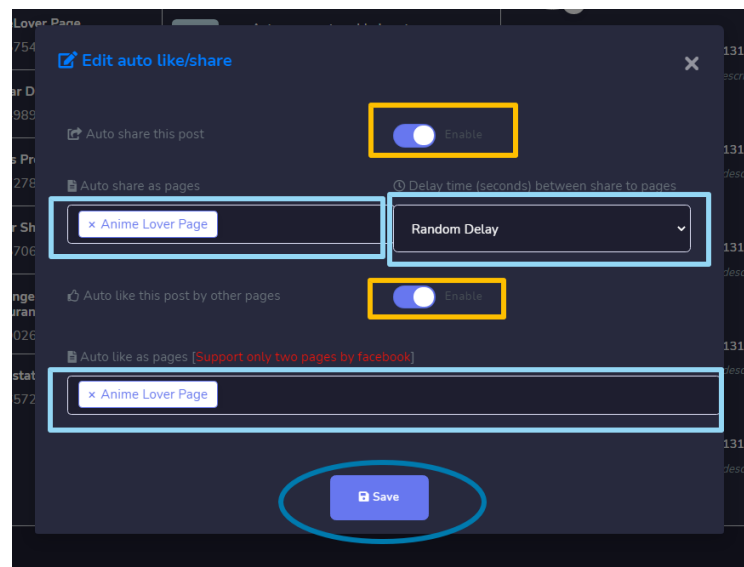
To auto like & share the page, follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select the **Edit like & share** option from **Full page campaigns** section.





- 2) Now edit the fields available on the **Auto like and share** screen, and make updates.
- 3) Select **Save**, your information will be updated.



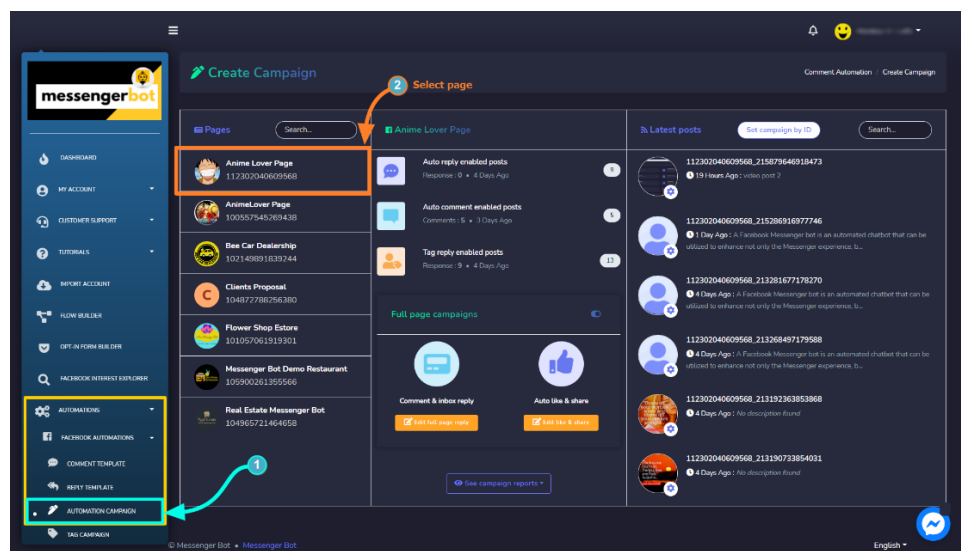
Note

- Auto like as page option, supports only two pages at a time.

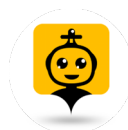
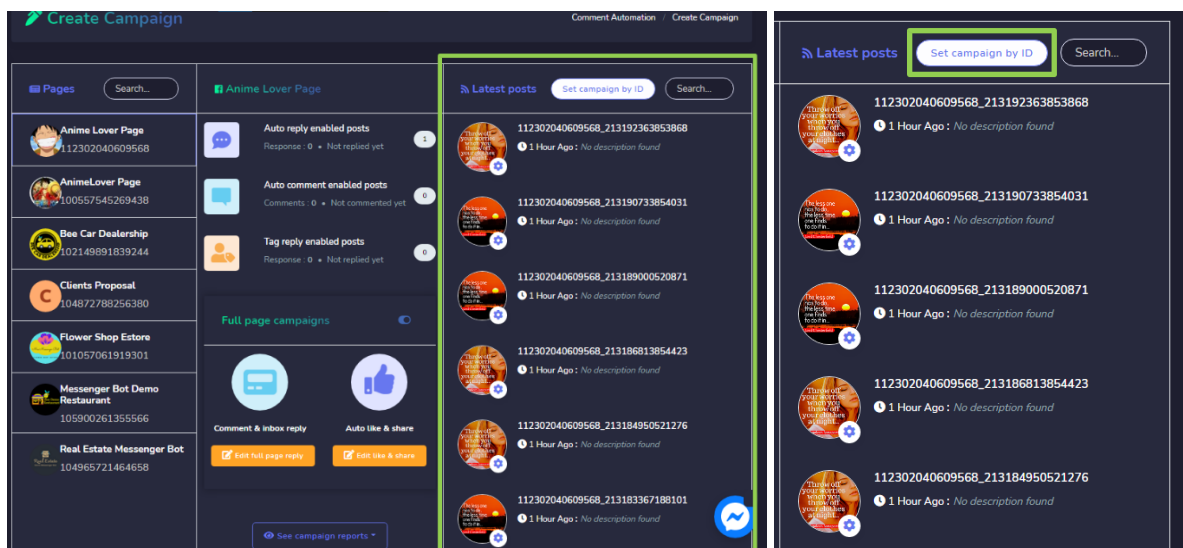
Set campaign by ID

You can also set a campaign for a particular post by using its ID. Just follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select the Facebook page for which you want to create this campaign.



- 2) Select the **Set campaign by ID** option available on the right section of the screen.





3) Enter the **Post ID** of the post for which you want to set the campaign.

Enable reply by post ID (Bee Car Dealership Demo)

Disclaimer

Facebook ads post that you have created from facebook ads manager, if you have ever edited/modified your ads after creating, then this technique of 'set campaign by id' may not work as facebook creates different variation of your post for each time you edit. preview post for that ads may have different id, which leads to a wrong id actually sometimes. In this case we suggest to use 'full page campaigns' feature.

Post id: Please give a post id

✓ Check existence

4) Enable the options you want to be available for your campaign.

Enable reply by post ID (Anime Lover Page)

Disclaimer

Facebook ads post that you have created from facebook ads manager, if you have ever edited/modified your ads after creating, then this technique of 'set campaign by id' may not work as facebook creates different variation of your post for each time you edit. preview post for that ads may have different id, which leads to a wrong id actually sometimes. In this case we suggest to use 'full page campaigns' feature.

Post id: 112302040609568_213190733854031

☒ Enable auto reply ☐ Enable auto comment ☐ Enable & fetch commenter

5) Provide further information based on your selection from Step 4, then select **Submit**.

Please give the following information for post auto reply

Do you want to use saved template? ☒ Yes

Choose labels:

Create label:

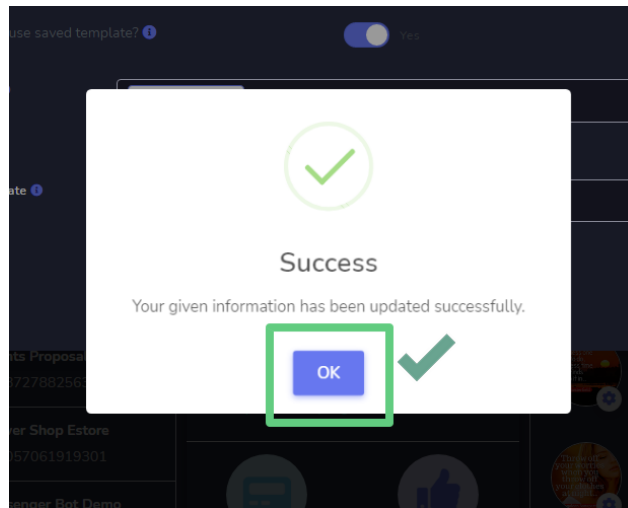
Auto reply template: Please select a template


Submit




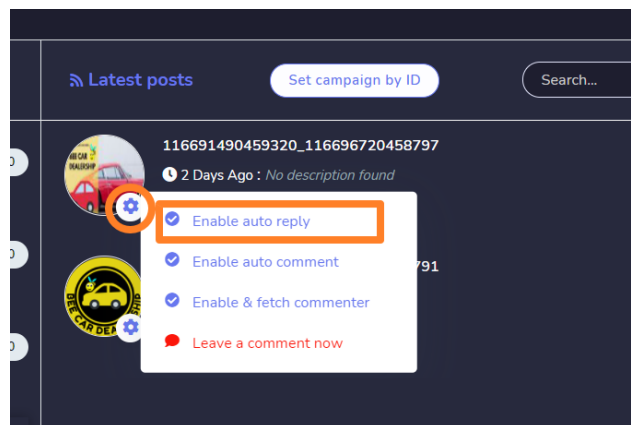


A new campaign will be created.



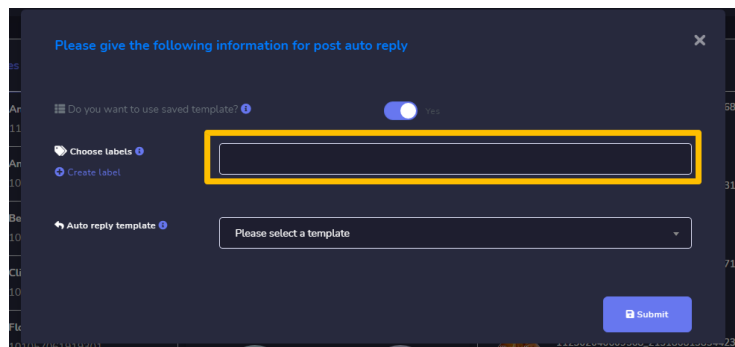
On selecting the , users can perform the following actions:

- **Enable auto reply:** You can enable the auto comment feature by selecting  icon. A dropdown menu will appear, now select the **Enable auto reply** option.



Provide the following information for **post auto reply**:

- Choose the labels you created from [Labels](#) section.





- Select the template you want to choose.

Please give the following information for post auto reply

Do you want to use saved template? ☒ Yes

Choose labels

Create label

What do you want about offensive comments? ☒ Delete ☐ Delete

Write down the offensive keywords in comma separated
Type keywords here in comma separated (keyword1,keyword2)...keep it blank for no actions

Select a message template for private reply after deleting offensive comment
Motorcycle [Motorcycle_JUSB1]

Do you want to send reply message to a user multiple times? ☐ Yes

Do you want to enable comment reply? ☒ Yes

Do you want to like on comment by page? ☐ Yes

Do you want to hide comments after comment reply? ☐ Yes

Generic message for all
Send message by filtering word/sentence

Auto reply campaign name
Write your auto reply campaign name here

Submit & save as template Submit

If you want to choose an already created one, turn the slider button **YES**.

Please give the following information for post auto reply

Do you want to use saved template? ☒ Yes

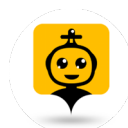
Choose labels

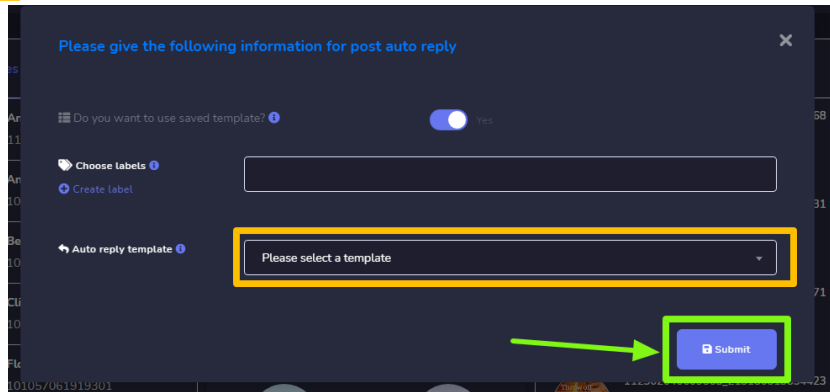
Create label

Auto reply template

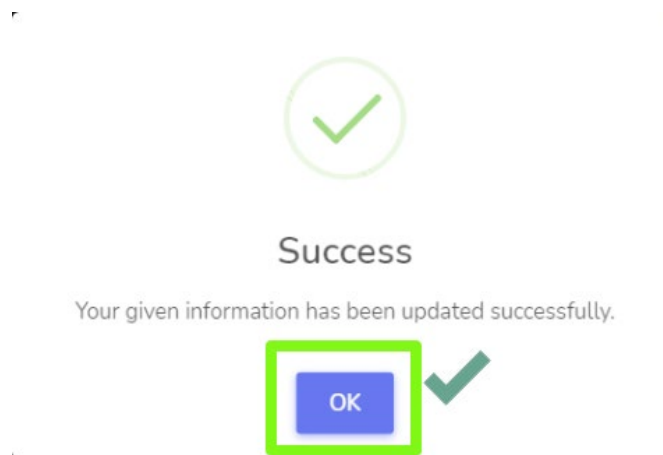
Submit


- Select the auto reply template from the dropdown menu.
- Select **Submit**.

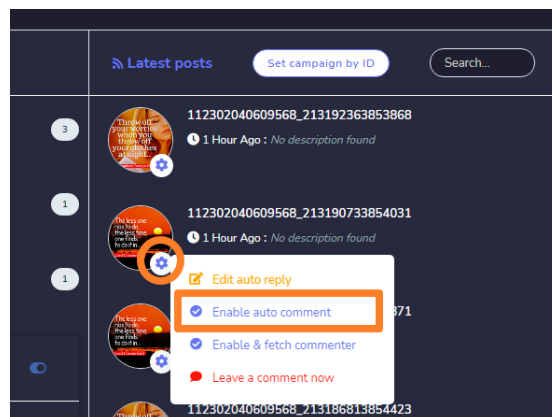




Your auto reply will be enabled.



- **Enable auto comment:** You can enable the auto comment feature by selecting  icon. A dropdown menu will appear, now select the **Enable auto comment** option.



Provide the following information for **post auto comment**:

- Auto comment campaign name



Please give the following information for post auto comment

Auto comment campaign name *

Write your campaign name here

Auto comment template *

Please select a template

Schedule type *

☒ One time ☐ Periodic

- Select an Auto comment template

Please give the following information for post auto comment

Auto comment campaign name *

Test reply

Auto comment template *

Hello

Please select a template

Hello

Anime

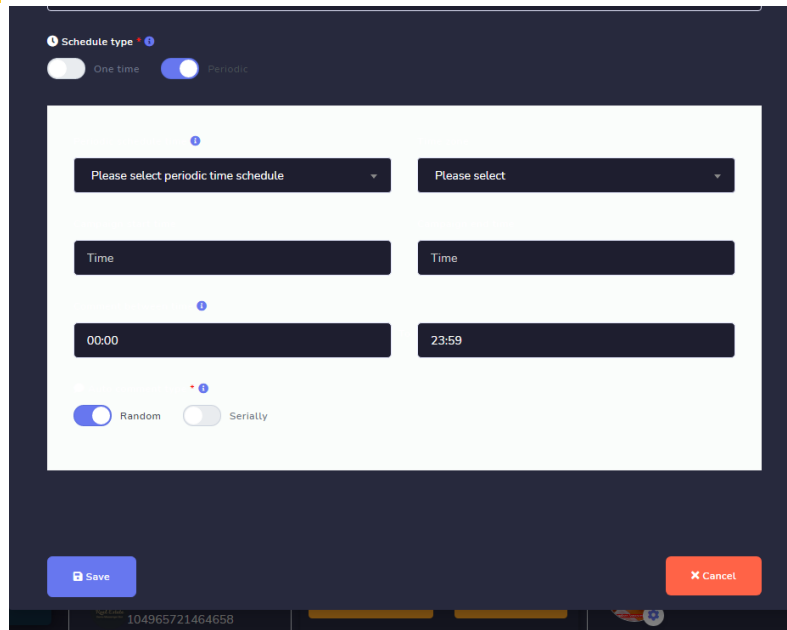
Hi Template

Save

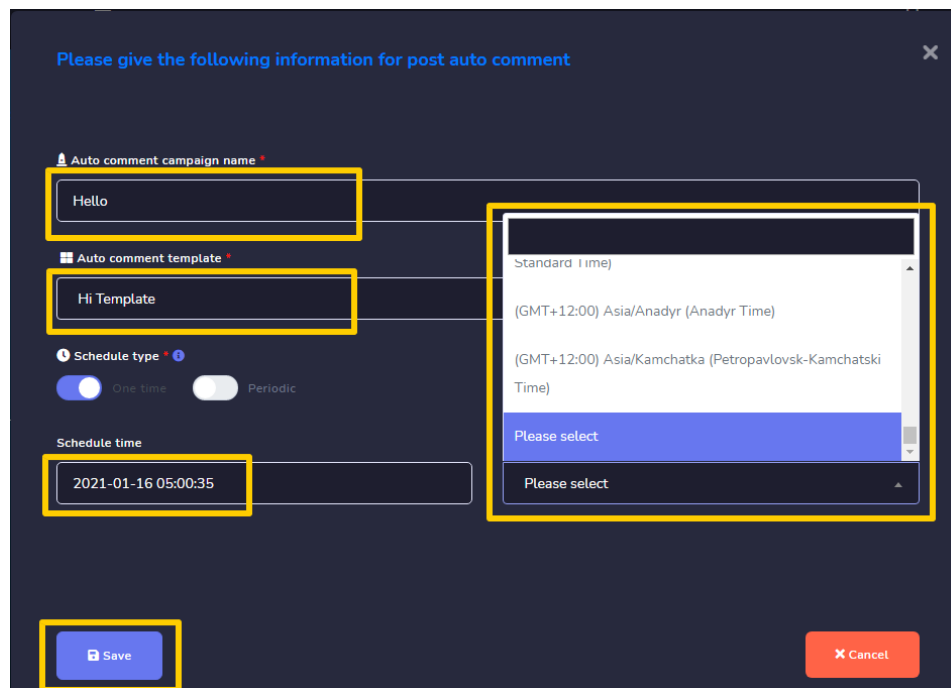
Cancel

- Schedule a type for your post auto comment.

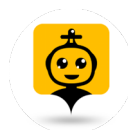


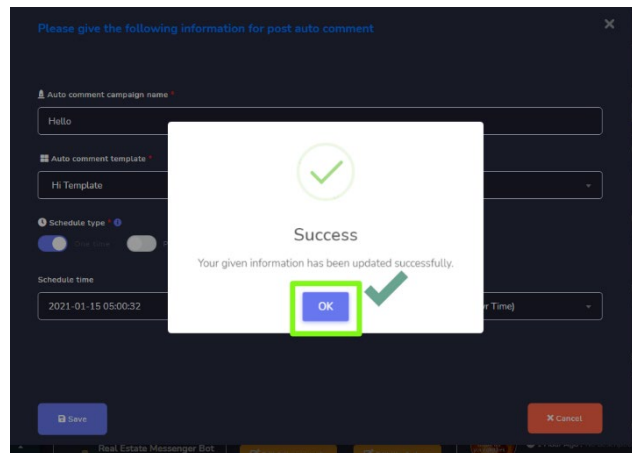



- Schedule a time for the post
- Select your time zone based on your location.
- Click **Save**.

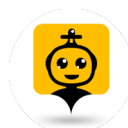
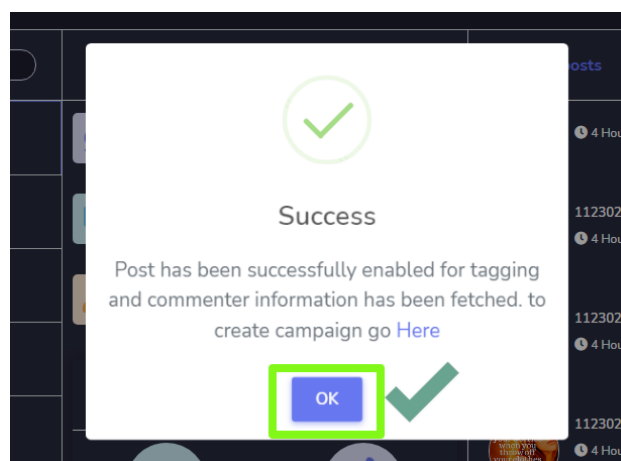
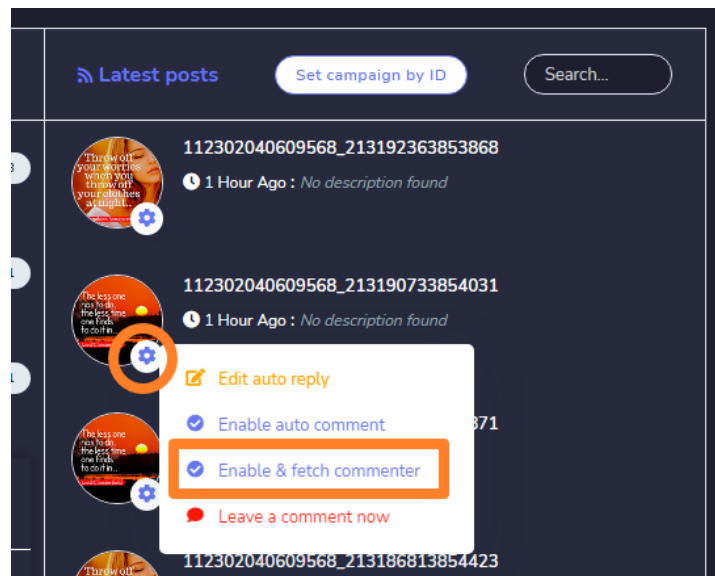


Your auto comment will be enabled.



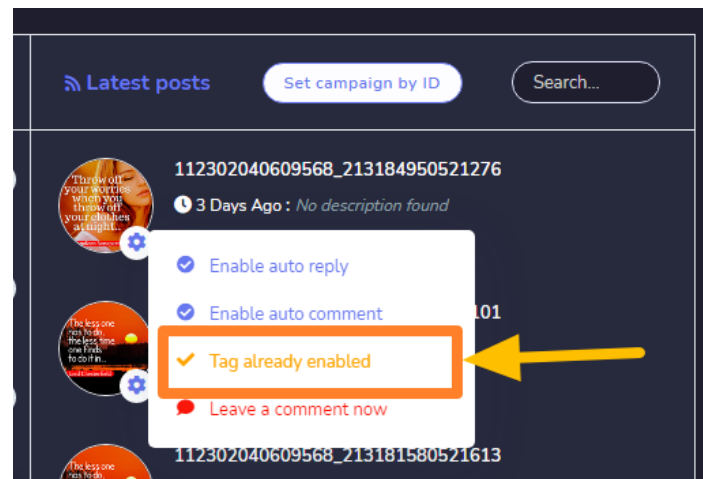


- **Enable and fetch commenter:** You can enable the auto tag feature by selecting  icon. A dropdown menu will appear, now select the **Enable and fetch commenter** option.



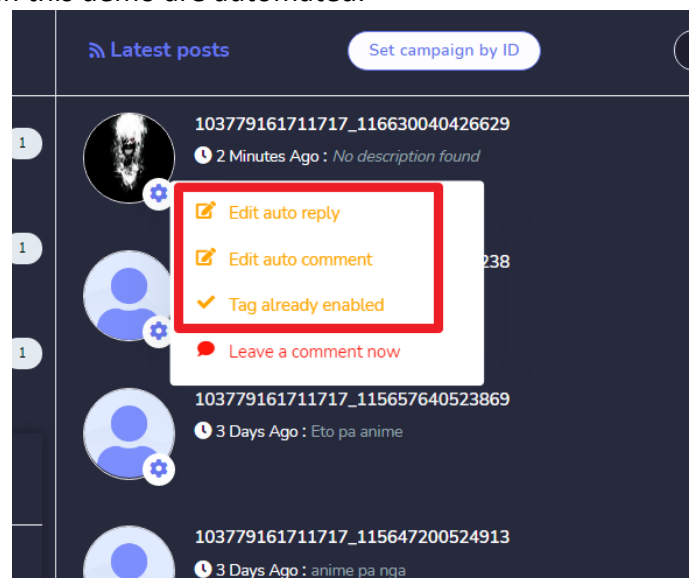


Your auto tag feature will be enabled.

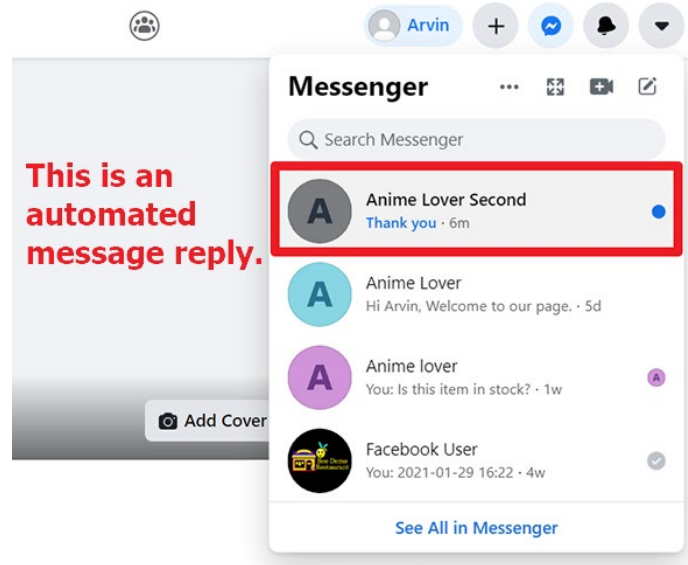


Automation campaign output

You can see the comment of the user is liked, replied and the message is redirected to the inbox. The end user is notified as well about the reply from the admin side. The admin's comment and reply in this demo are automated.

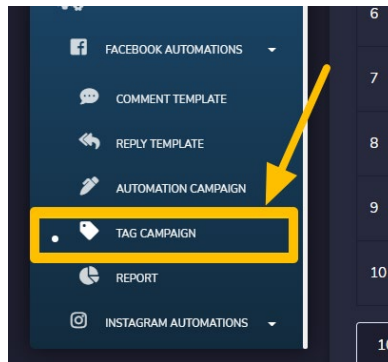




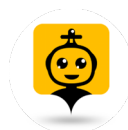


Tag campaign

To view this section, navigate to **Automations > Facebook Automations** from the navigation menu located at the left side and select **Tag campaign**.



The **Create campaign** view consists of a campaign list. You can select the number of campaigns to be viewed per page. You can also choose the date range for which you want to view the list. In order to access the hidden fields of the table, move the bottom slider towards the right side. You can also search for a particular campaign using the Post ID in the search bar.





#	Avatar	Page name	Post id	Comment & bulk tag	Bulk comment reply	Re-scan	Comments	Commenters	Last Interval	Post created
1		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_2113186873856417							16th Jan 21 02:46
2		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211318367198101							16th Jan 21 02:46
3		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_2113142063858038							16th Jan 21 02:29
4		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211317409522362							16th Jan 21 02:32
5		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_2113281677178270							16th Jan 21 02:33
6		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211318496521276							16th Jan 21 02:33
7		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_2113186813854423							16th Jan 21 02:26
8		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211318883896279							16th Jan 21 02:17
9		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211328687179588							16th Jan 21 02:24
10		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211315410524361							16th Jan 21 02:20

#	Avatar	Page name	Post id	Comment & bulk tag	Bulk comment reply	Re-scan	Comments	Commenters
1		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_2113145063858038					
2		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211317409522362					
3		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_2113281677178270					
4		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211318496521276					
5		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_2113186813854423					
6		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211318883896279					
7		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211328687179588					

Create Campaigns

Users can perform following actions from create campaign screen:

- **Create campaign for comment & bulk tag:** For the posts with multiple comments, you can bulk tag the subscribers. Just follow the steps given below:
 - Select the icon against the ID for which the campaign is to be created.



⋮

🔔 🧑🏻

➕ Create Campaign Tag campaign

Page name Post id 🔍 Search 📅 Choose date

#	Avatar	Page name	Post id	Comment & bulk tag	Bulk comment reply	Re-scan	Comments	Comme
1		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213184950521276			Re-scan	0	
2		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213186813854423			Re-scan	1	
3		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213168653856239			Re-scan	0	
4		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213268497179588			Re-scan	0	
5		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213154100524361			Re-scan	3	
6		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213189000520871			Re-scan	1	

- A modal will pop up, Enter the **campaign name**, select the **range of commenters** from the drop-down menu. Provide the **content to bulk tag** the commentators.
- You can restrict the tags for some people.
- Select the **schedule** for your campaign.
- After adding all information, select **Create Campaign**.

🔔 Comment & bulk tag campaign

Campaign name *

Select commenter range *

Tag content *

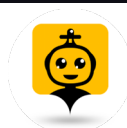
Content to bulk tag commenters.


Do not tag these commenters

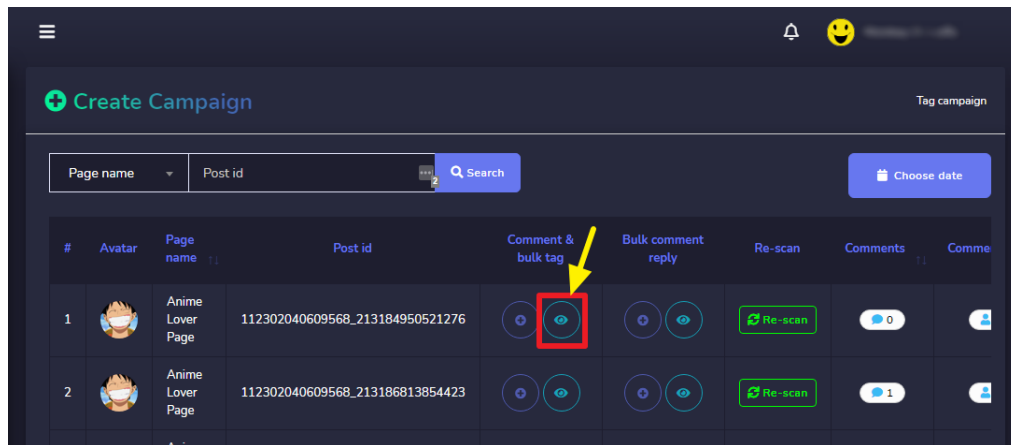
Start typing commenter names you want to exclude from tag list


Image/video upload

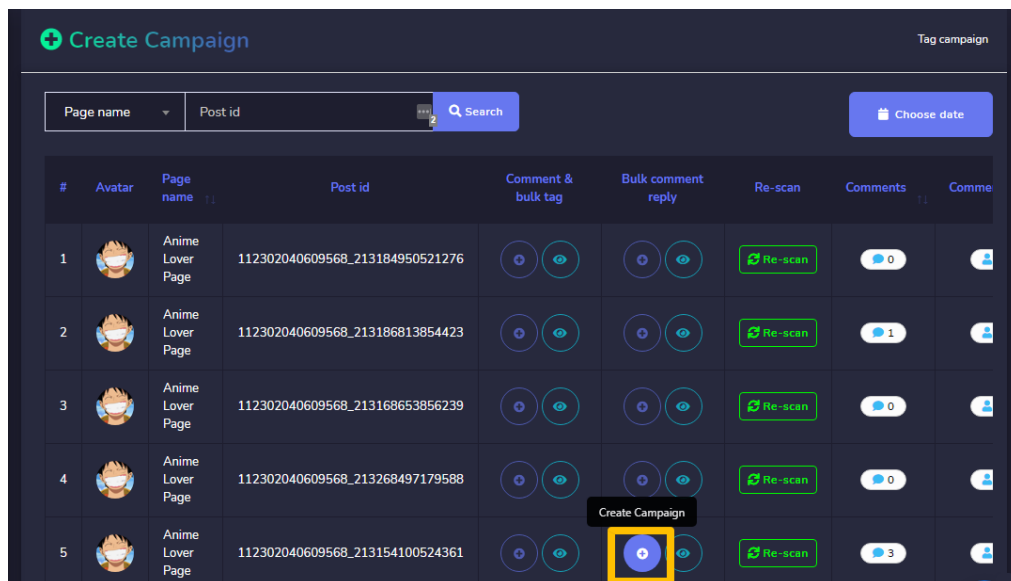
Upload



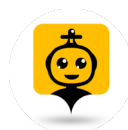
- **View report for comment & bulk tag:** By selecting the  icon against the ID for which the report is to be viewed as shown in the [comment bulk tag report](#) section.



- **Create campaign for bulk comment reply:** For comment replies in a bulk, follow the steps given below:
 - Select the  icon against the ID for which the campaign is to be created.

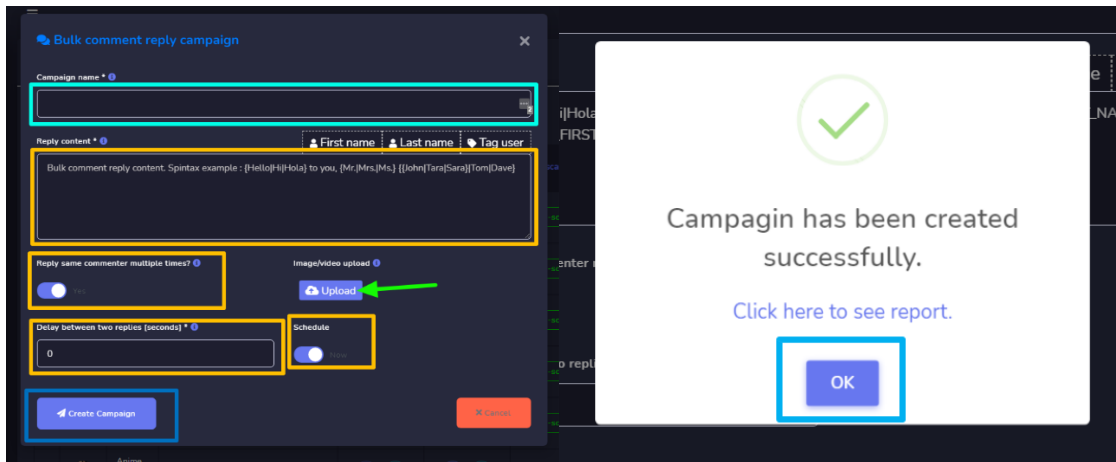



- A modal will pop up, enter the **campaign name**.
- Provide the **reply content** in reply content field.
- To enable the same reply multiple times, turn **ON** the slider button.
- You can schedule the campaign right now or sometime later.
- You can add delay between the replies as well.

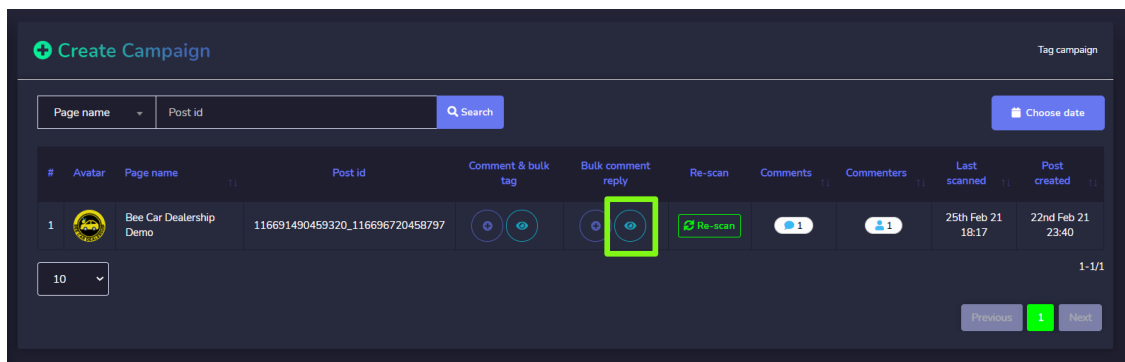




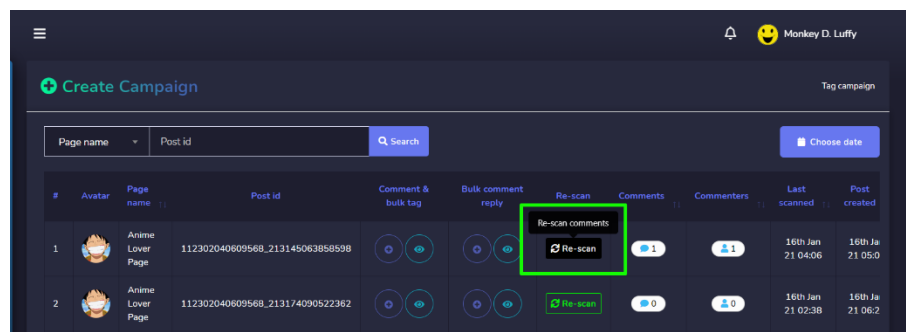
- After adding all information, select **Create Campaign**.



- **View report for bulk comment reply:** By selecting the  icon against the ID for which the report is to be viewed as shown in [bulk comment reply report](#) section.



- **Rescan the existing comments:** By selecting the **Rescan** option against the **Post ID** whose comments are needed to be scanned. A dialogue box will appear for confirmation.



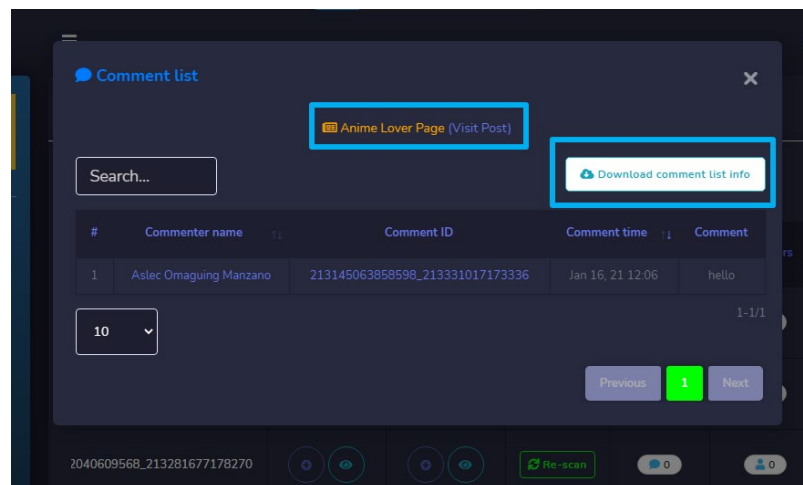


- **View the comments:** By selecting the **number of comments**,

#	Avatar	Page name	Post id	Comment & bulk tag	Bulk comment reply	Re-scan	Comments	Commenters	Last scanned	Post created
1		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213145063858598				1	1	16th Jan 21 04:06	16th Jan 21 05:01
2		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213174090522362				0	0	16th Jan 21 02:38	16th Jan 21 06:20
3		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213281677178270				0	0	16th Jan 21 02:34	16th Jan 21 10:25

a modal will appear which allows you to:

- You can visit the Facebook page.
- You can go the post by selecting the **Visit Post** option.
- You can also download the comment list in .CSV file.



- **View the commenters:** by selecting the **number of commenters**, a modal will appear which allows you to:

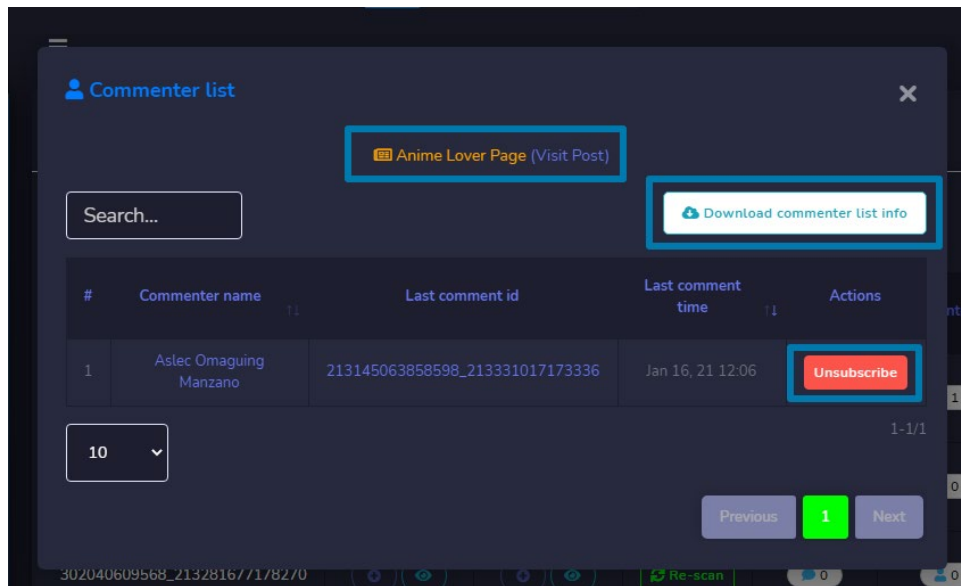
#	Avatar	Page name	Post id	Comment & bulk tag	Bulk comment reply	Re-scan	Comments	Commenters	Last scanned	Post created
1		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213145063858598				1	1	16th Jan 21 04:06	16th Jan 21 05:01
2		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213174090522362				0	0	16th Jan 21 02:38	16th Jan 21 06:20
3		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213281677178270				0	0	16th Jan 21 02:34	16th Jan 21 10:25

- You can visit the Facebook page.
- You can go the post by selecting the **Visit Post** option.



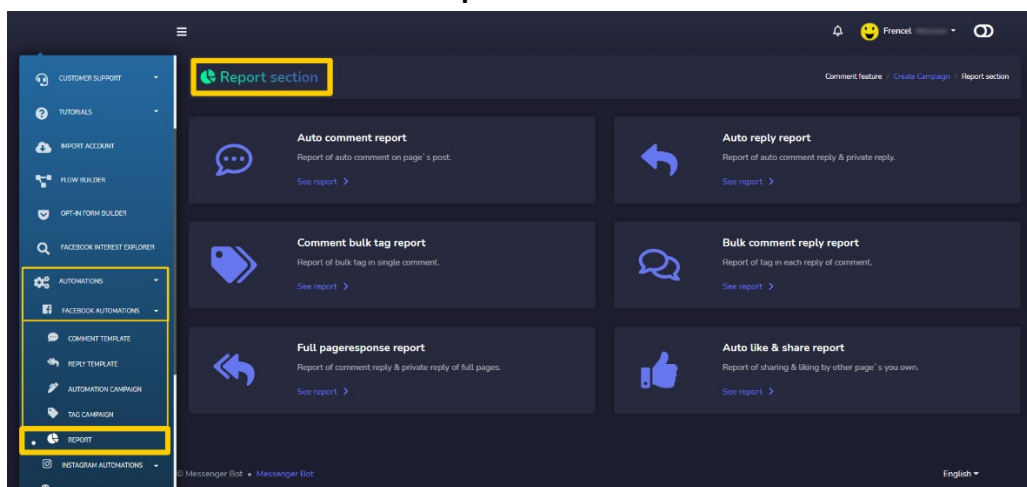


- You can also download the commenters list in .CSV file.
- You can also unsubscribe the commentator by selecting **Unsubscribe** option.



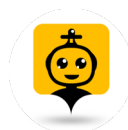
Report

To view this section, navigate to **Automations > Facebook Automations** from the navigation menu located on the left side and select **Report**.



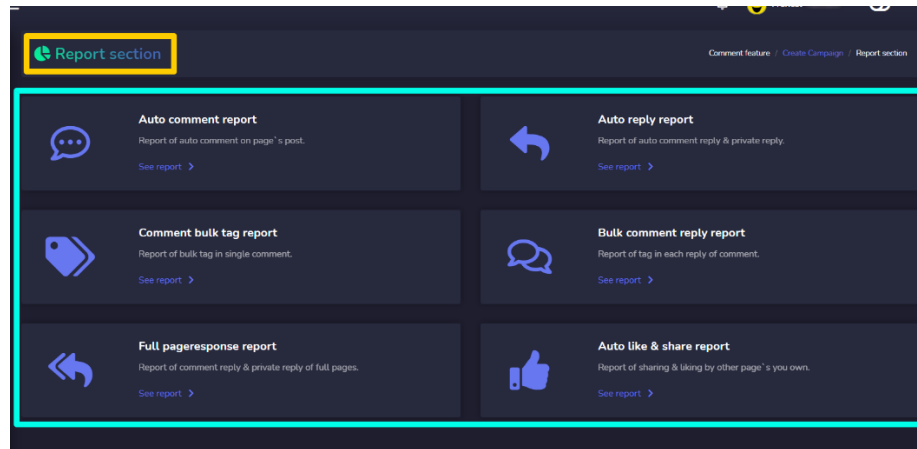
The Reports view allows the user to view the different report categories that can be viewed, edited, and exported. This section displays the following six types of reports:

- Auto comment report
- Auto reply report
- Comment bulk tag report
- Bulk comment reply report





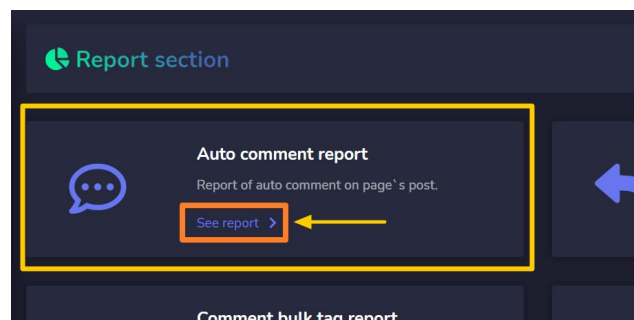
- Full page response report
- Auto like & share report




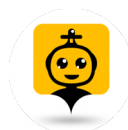
Auto comment report

To access, the auto comment report and perform different actions follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select **See report** option from the **Auto comment report** modal.



- 2) An **All auto comment report** view will appear on the screen containing a list of posts. Users can search for a particular post by using the search bar.
- 3) Select  option against the page you want to perform actions on.



☰

🔔 😊

All auto comment report

Comment Autoamtion / Report / All auto comment report

Page name Search...


Search

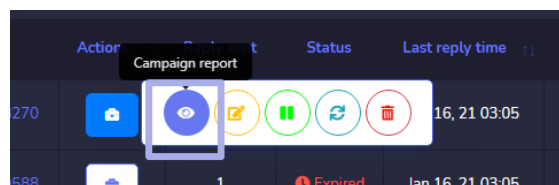
#	Avatar	Name	Page name	Post id	Actions	Reply sent	Status	Last reply time	Error message
1		Hi	Anime Lover Page	213281677178270		1	🟢 Live	Jan 16, 21 03:05	
2		Hello	Anime Lover Page	213268497179588		1	🔴 Expired	Jan 16, 21 03:05	
3		Hello	Anime Lover Page	213154100524361		1	🔴 Expired	Jan 16, 21 02:15	
4		Hello	Anime Lover Page	213190733854031		1	🔴 Expired	Jan 16, 21 02:15	
5		Hello	Anime Lover Page	213192363853868		1	🔴 Expired	Jan 16, 21 22:15	


10

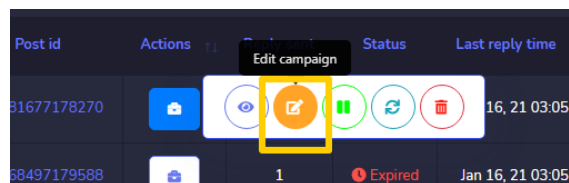
1-5/5

Previous 1 Next

4) Select the  icon to create the campaign report.



5) Select  icon to edit the campaign and make relevant updates.



Please give the following information for post auto comment

Edit information then click "Save".

Auto comment campaign name *

Auto comment template *

Schedule type *

☒ One time
 ☐ Periodic

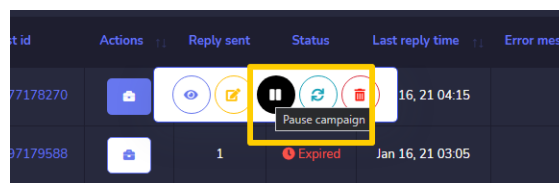
Schedule time

Time zone

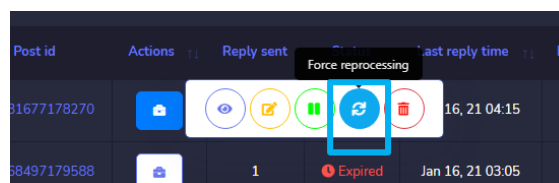
Save


Cancel

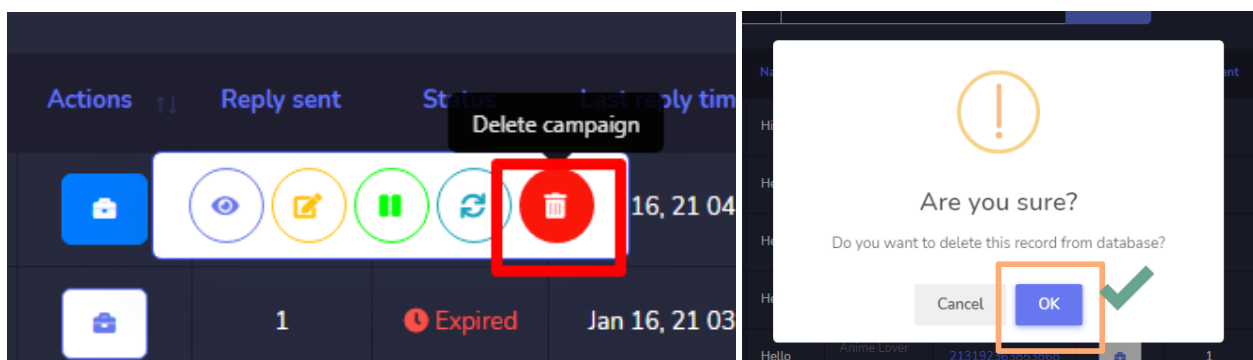
6) In order to pause the campaign, select  icon against the selected campaign.



7) For force reprocessing, select  icon against the selected campaign.



8) Select  to permanently delete a particular campaign.

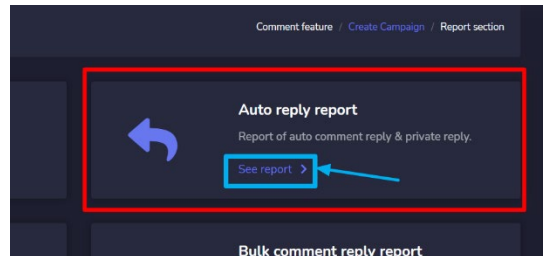




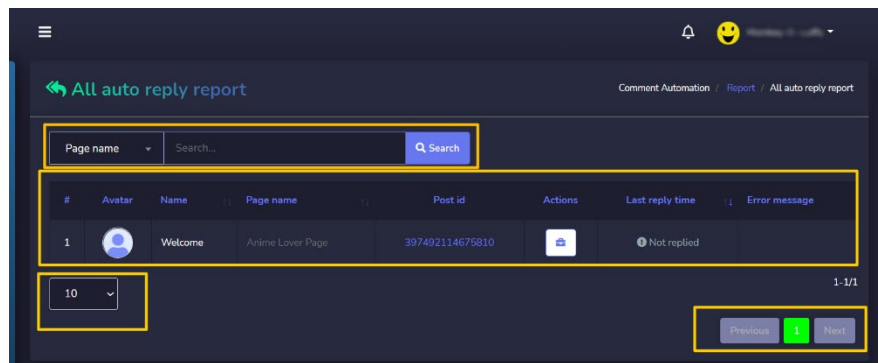
Auto reply report






To access, the auto comment report and perform different actions follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select **See report** option from the **Auto reply report** modal.

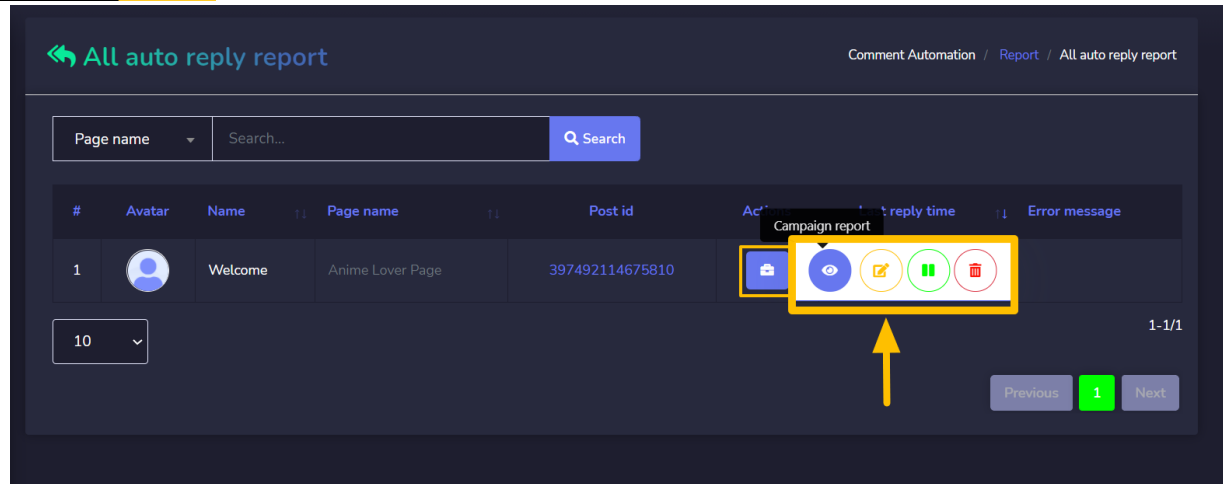


- 2) An **All auto reply report** view will appear on the screen containing a list of posts. User can search for a particular post by using the search bar.



- 3) Select  option against the page you want to perform actions on.
- 4) Select the  icon to view the campaign report.
- 5) Select  icon to edit the campaign and make relevant updates.
- 6) In order to pause the campaign, select  icon against the selected campaign.
- 7) Select  to permanently delete a particular campaign.

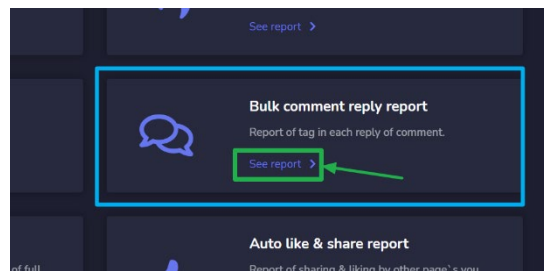




Bulk comment reply report

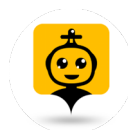
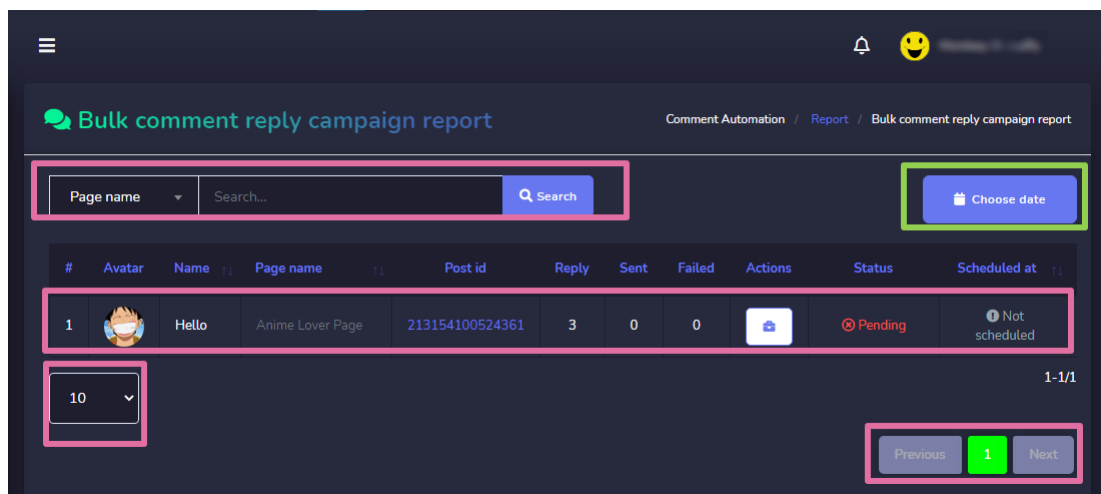
To access, the bulk comment reply report and perform different actions follow the steps given below:

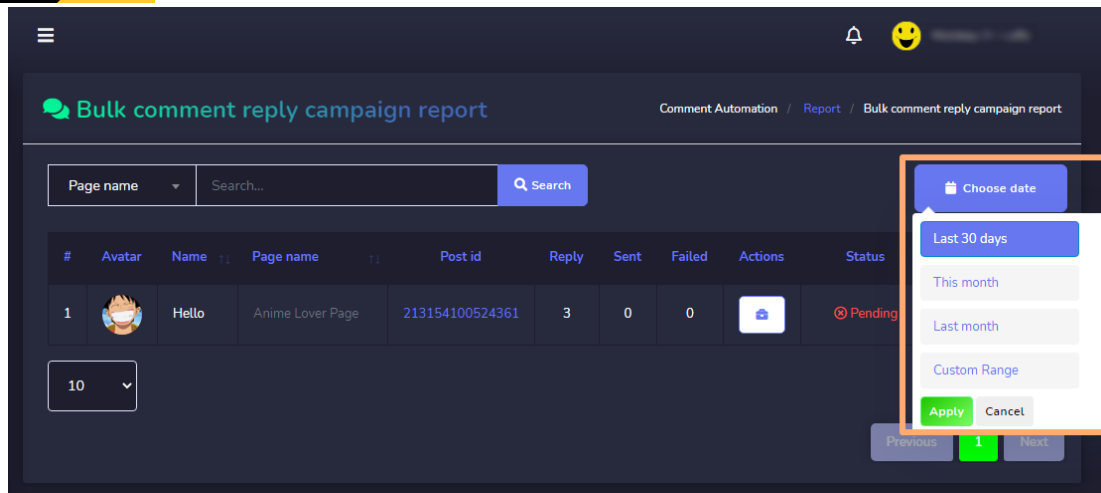
- 1) Select **See report** option from the **Bulk comment reply report** modal.



- 2) A **Bulk comment reply campaign report** view will appear on the screen containing a list of posts.

Users can search for a particular post by using the search bar. Users can choose and narrow down the search by selecting the dates for which the posts are to be viewed.





Bulk comment reply campaign report

Comment Automation / Report / Bulk comment reply campaign report

Page name Search...

Choose date


- Last 30 days
- This month
- Last month
- Custom Range


Apply Cancel

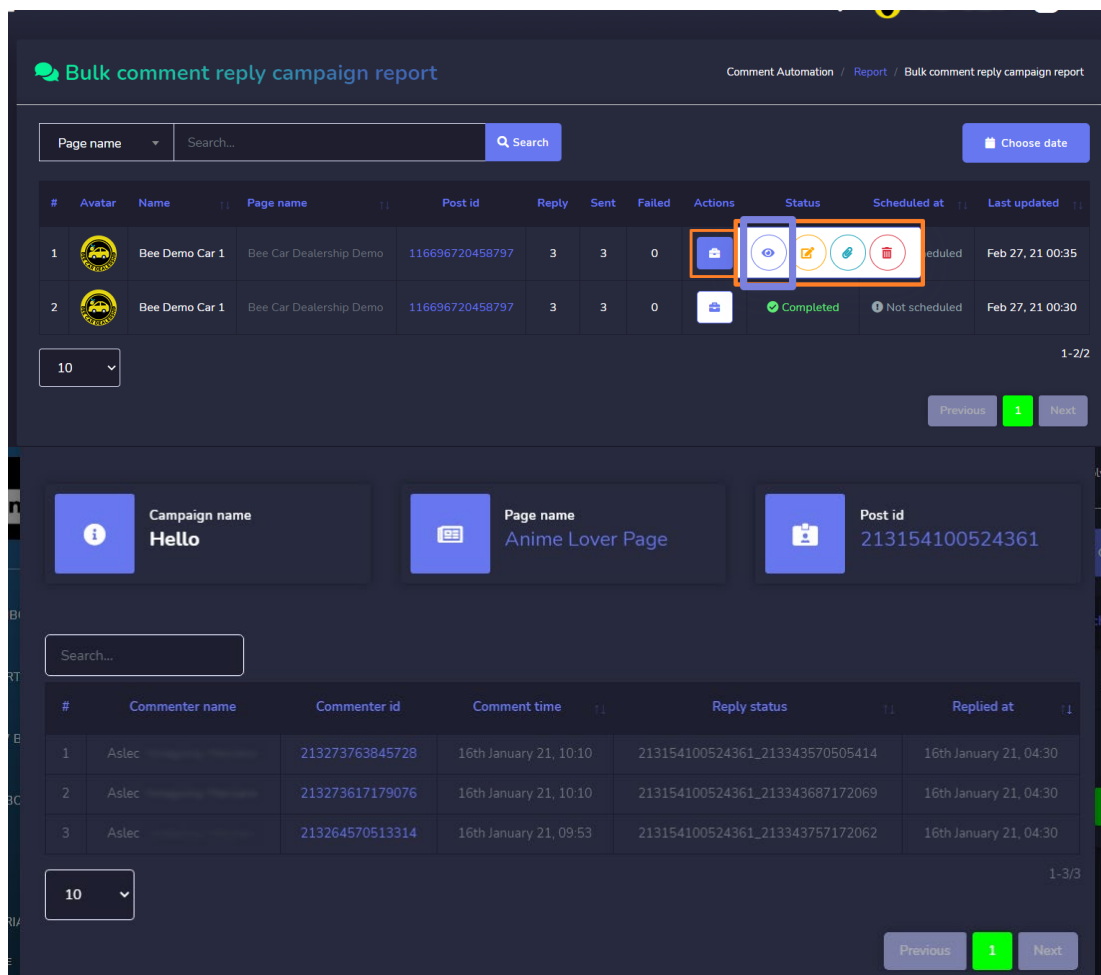
#	Avatar	Name	Page name	Post id	Reply	Sent	Failed	Actions	Status
1		Hello	Anime Lover Page	213154100524361	3	0	0		Pending

10

Previous 1 Next

3) Select  option against the page you want to perform actions on.

4) Select the  icon to view the campaign report.



Bulk comment reply campaign report

Comment Automation / Report / Bulk comment reply campaign report

Page name Search...

Choose date

#	Avatar	Name	Page name	Post id	Reply	Sent	Failed	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Last updated
1		Bee Demo Car 1	Bee Car Dealership Demo	116696720458797	3	3	0			Scheduled	Feb 27, 21 00:35
2		Bee Demo Car 1	Bee Car Dealership Demo	116696720458797	3	3	0		Completed	Not scheduled	Feb 27, 21 00:30

10

1-2/2

Previous 1 Next

Campaign name
Hello

Page name
Anime Lover Page

Post id
213154100524361

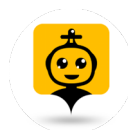
Search...

#	Commenter name	Commenter id	Comment time	Reply status	Replied at
1	Aslec	213273763845728	16th January 21, 10:10	213154100524361_213343570505414	16th January 21, 04:30
2	Aslec	213273617179076	16th January 21, 10:10	213154100524361_213343687172069	16th January 21, 04:30
3	Aslec	213264570513314	16th January 21, 09:53	213154100524361_213343757172062	16th January 21, 04:30


10

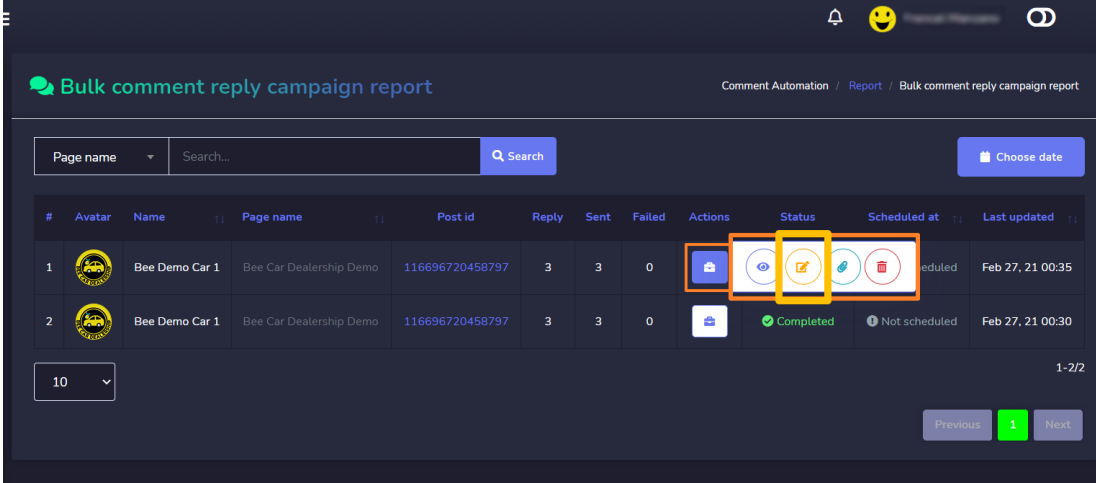
1-3/3

Previous 1 Next











- 5) Select  icon to edit the campaign and make relevant updates.



Bulk comment reply campaign report

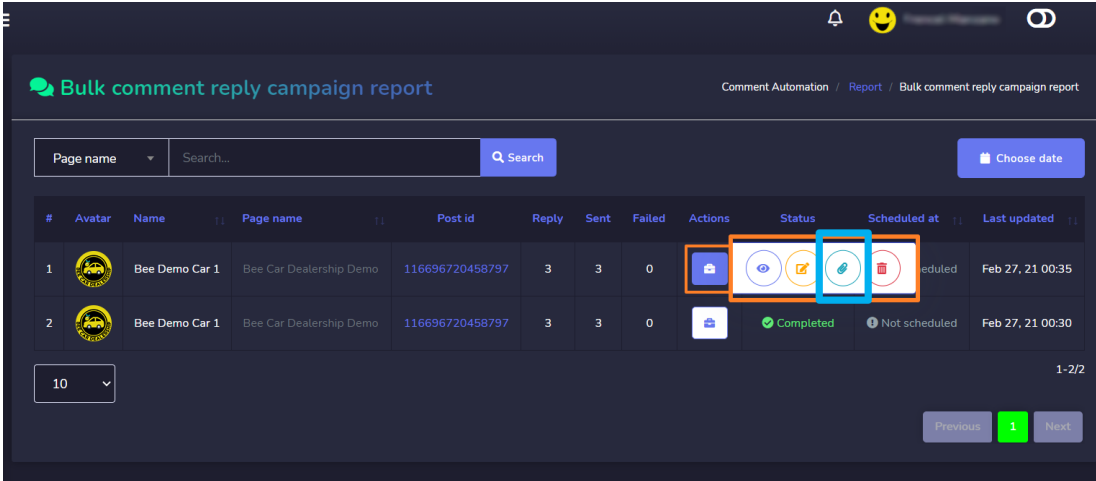
Comment Automation / Report / Bulk comment reply campaign report

Page name Search... Search Choose date

#	Avatar	Name	Page name	Post id	Reply	Sent	Failed	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Last updated
1		Bee Demo Car 1	Bee Car Dealership Demo	116696720458797	3	3	0				Feb 27, 21 00:35
2		Bee Demo Car 1	Bee Car Dealership Demo	116696720458797	3	3	0		Completed	Not scheduled	Feb 27, 21 00:30

10 Previous 1 Next







- 6) Select  icon to see the attachment added to the campaign.




Bulk comment reply campaign report

Comment Automation / Report / Bulk comment reply campaign report

Page name Search... Search Choose date

#	Avatar	Name	Page name	Post id	Reply	Sent	Failed	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Last updated
1		Bee Demo Car 1	Bee Car Dealership Demo	116696720458797	3	3	0				Feb 27, 21 00:35
2		Bee Demo Car 1	Bee Car Dealership Demo	116696720458797	3	3	0		Completed	Not scheduled	Feb 27, 21 00:30

10 Previous 1 Next

- 7) Select  icon to permanently delete a particular campaign.





Bulk comment reply campaign report Comment Automation / Report / Bulk comment reply campaign report

Page name Search Choose date

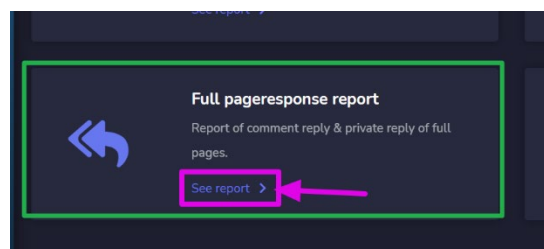
#	Avatar	Name	Page name	Post id	Reply	Sent	Failed	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Last updated
1		Bee Demo Car 1	Bee Car Dealership Demo	116696720458797	3	3	0			Scheduled	Feb 27, 21 00:35
2		Bee Demo Car 1	Bee Car Dealership Demo	116696720458797	3	3	0		Completed	Not scheduled	Feb 27, 21 00:30

10 1-2/2 Previous 1 Next

Full page response report

To access, the full page response report and perform different actions follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select **See report** option from the **Full page response report** modal.



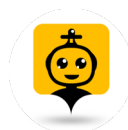
- 2) A **Full page response - report** view will appear on the screen containing a list of posts. Users can search for a particular post by using the search bar. Users can choose and narrow down the search by selecting the dates for which the posts are to be viewed.

Full page response - report Comment Automation / Report / Full page response - report


Page Post id Search

#	Page name	Post id	Actions	Last replied	Error
1	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_212898833883221		16th January 21, 01:02	
2	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_186604996512605		14th January 21, 00:54	
3	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_187328976440207		14th January 21, 00:54	
4	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_185768719929566		14th January 21, 00:51	

10 1-4/4 Previous 1 Next









- 3) Select the  icon to view the **page response report**.

Full page response - report Comment Automation / Report / Full page response - report

Page Post id

#	Page name	Post id	Actions	Last replied	Error
1	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_212898833883221		16th January 21, 01:02	
2	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_186604996512605		14th January 21, 00:54	
3	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_187328976440207		14th January 21, 00:54	
4	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_185768719929566		14th January 21, 00:51	

10 1-4/4

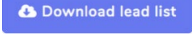
Page response report (Details data shows for last: 7 Days)

Private reply sent : 0 Comment reply sent : 3 Comment deleted : 0 Comment hidden : 0

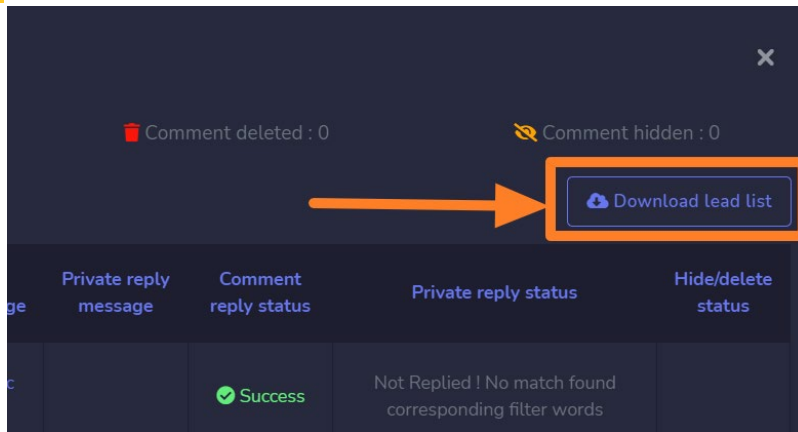
Search...

#	Comment	Name	Comment time	Reply time	Comment reply message	Private reply message	Comment reply status	Private reply status	Hide/delete status
1	How to avail it?	Aslec	16th January 21, 01:02	16th January 21, 01:02	Hello, Aslec		Success	Not Replied ! No match found corresponding filter words	
2	hi	Aslec	16th January 21, 00:56	16th January 21, 00:56	Hello, Aslec		Success	Not Replied ! No match found corresponding filter words	
3	hello	Aslec	16th January 21, 00:54	16th January 21, 00:54	Hello, Aslec		Success	Not Replied ! No match found corresponding filter words	

10 1-3/3

- 4) You can also download the lead list in .CSV file by selecting  button from the page response report screen.

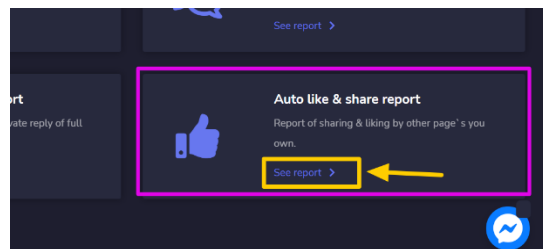




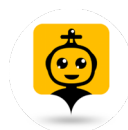
Auto like & share report

To access, the auto like & share report and perform different actions follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select **See report** option from the **Auto like & share report** modal.



- 2) An **Auto like/share - report** view will appear on the screen containing a list of posts. Users can search for a particular post by using the **search bar**. Users can choose and narrow down the search by selecting the dates for which the posts are to be viewed.





Auto like/share - report

Comment Automation / Report / Auto like/share - report

Post id Page name Search

#	<input type="checkbox"/>	Page name	Post id	Auto like	Auto share	Actions	Last share try	Last like try
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213192363853868	1	0		0000-00-00 00:00:00	2021-01-15 23:30:08
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213190733854031	1	0		0000-00-00 00:00:00	2021-01-15 23:25:05
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213189000520871	1	0		0000-00-00 00:00:00	2021-01-15 23:20:05
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213186813854423	1	0		0000-00-00 00:00:00	2021-01-15 23:15:06
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211828703990234	1	1		2021-01-14 01:10:06	2021-01-14 01:10:10
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211828747323563	1	1		2021-01-14 01:15:10	2021-01-14 01:15:13
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211830833990021	1	1		2021-01-14 01:20:12	2021-01-14 01:20:10
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211832460656525	1	1		2021-01-14 01:25:13	2021-01-14 01:25:09
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211834413989663	1	1		2021-01-14 01:30:12	2021-01-14 01:30:14
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211834450656326	1	1		2021-01-14 01:35:06	2021-01-14 01:35:10

10 1-10/557

Previous 1 2 3 4 5 56 Next

3) Mark the checkboxes individually or perform bulk action by selecting them from the header of the table.

Auto like/share - report


Comment Automation / Report / Auto like/share - report

Post id Page name Search

#	<input type="checkbox"/>	Page name	Post id	Auto like	Auto share	Actions	Last share try	Last like try
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213192363853868	1	0		0000-00-00 00:00:00	2021-01-15 23:30:08
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213190733854031	1	0		0000-00-00 00:00:00	2021-01-15 23:25:05
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213189000520871	1	0		0000-00-00 00:00:00	2021-01-15 23:20:05
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213186813854423	1	0		0000-00-00 00:00:00	2021-01-15 23:15:06
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211828703990234	1	1		2021-01-14 01:10:06	2021-01-14 01:10:10
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211828747323563	1	1		2021-01-14 01:15:10	2021-01-14 01:15:13
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211830833990021	1	1		2021-01-14 01:20:12	2021-01-14 01:20:10
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211832460656525	1	1		2021-01-14 01:25:13	2021-01-14 01:25:09
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211834413989663	1	1		2021-01-14 01:30:12	2021-01-14 01:30:14
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211834450656326	1	1		2021-01-14 01:35:06	2021-01-14 01:35:10

10 1-10/557

Previous 1 2 3 4 5 56 Next

4) Select the  icon to view the auto like/share report.





#	Page name	Post id	Auto like	Auto share	Actions
1	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213192363853868	1	0	
2	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213190733854031	1	0	

Page name
Anime Lover Page

Post id
112302040609568_213192363853868

Auto like
Status: N/A
Auto like report: 1. Anime Lover Page : Success

Auto share
Status: N/A
Auto share as pages

Instagram Auto Comment Reply With Messenger Bot

At this time, Instagram is one of the most popular social media among all social media and it has also become more popular day by day. So as a popular media, Instagram has given some opportunities for third-party app developers to integrate through Instagram API. Messenger Bot has integrated these features. So to get the Instagram features with Messenger Bot, you've to first integrate your Instagram business account with Messenger Bot.

This is written to provide instruction on how you can integrate Instagram business account and how you can use Auto Comment Reply feature with Messenger Bot.

As Instagram is associated with Facebook, so at the very first stage you've to connect your Instagram business account with your Facebook page.

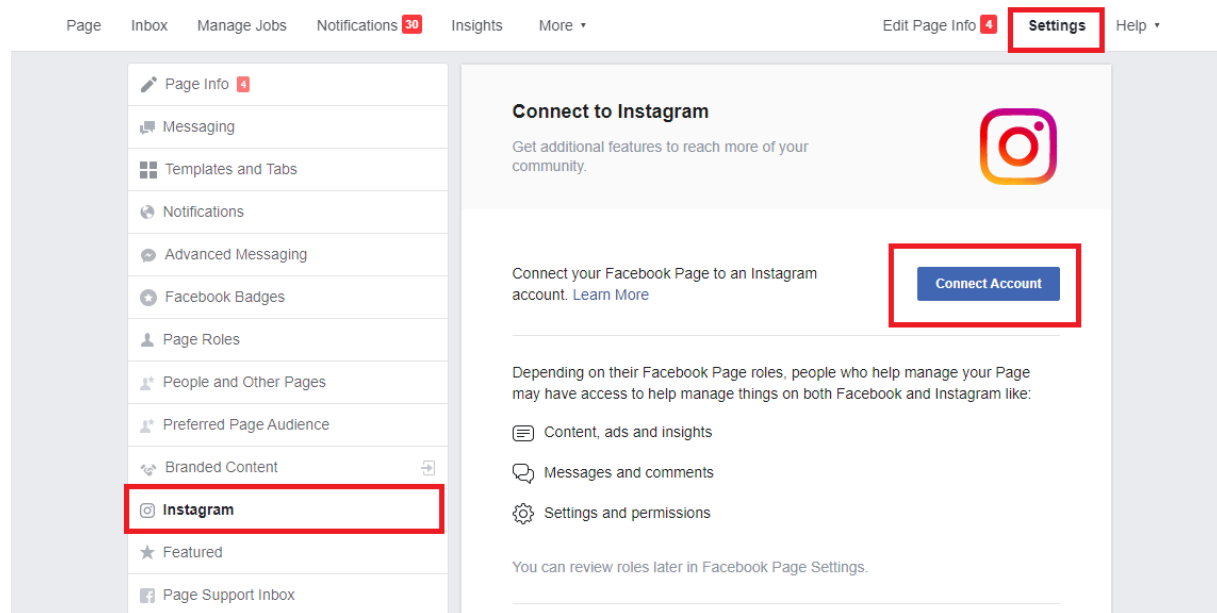
Connect Instagram Business account with Facebook Page:

>>> First of all go to the **Settings** of your Facebook page.

>>> Now go to **Instagram** menu from left-sided menus.

>>> Click on the **Connect Account** button to get started off adding Instagram account. Provide all information and connect your Instagram business account with your Facebook page.

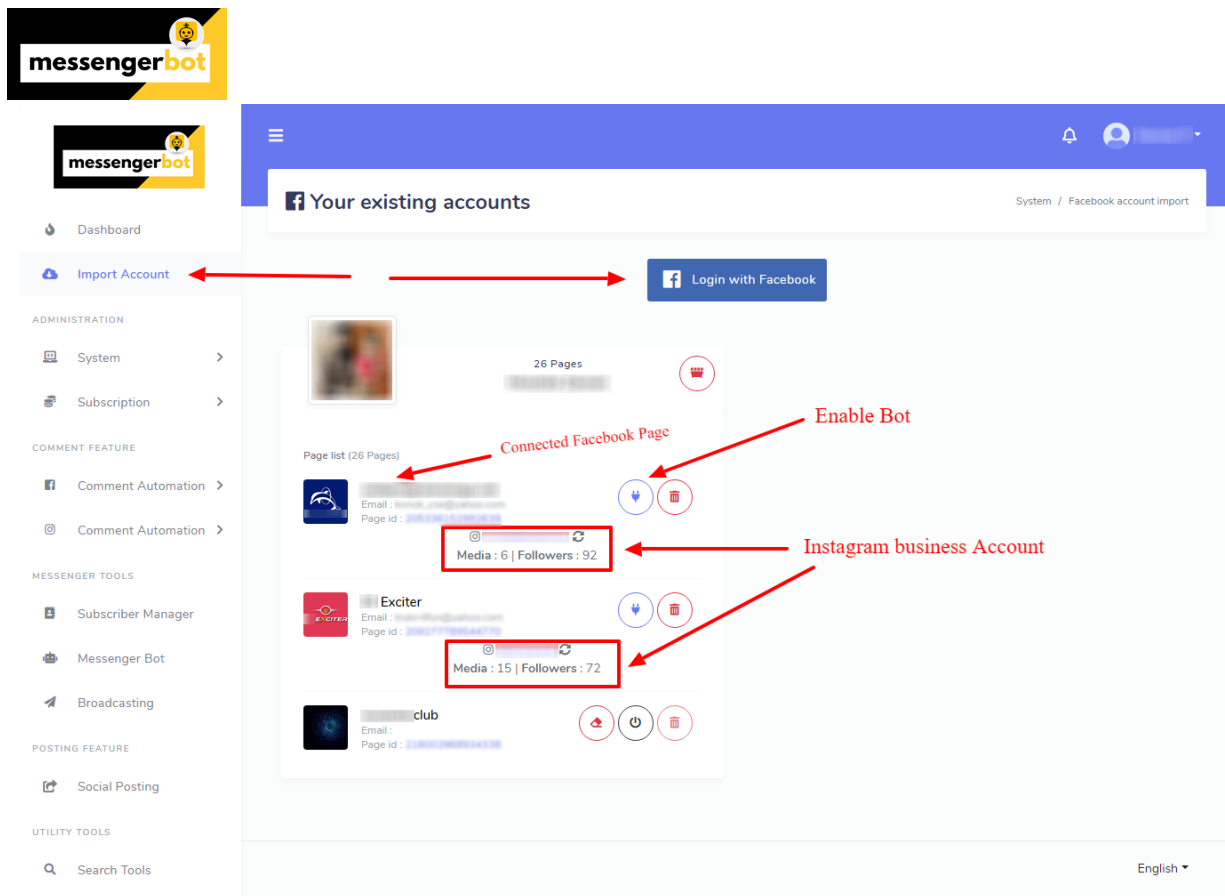




Import Instagram business account with Messenger Bot:

After connecting your Instagram account with your Facebook page, now go to the **Import Account** menu of your Messenger Bot application and import your facebook account again by click on **Login with Facebook** button. After that, you'll see your Instagram business account under connected Facebook page.

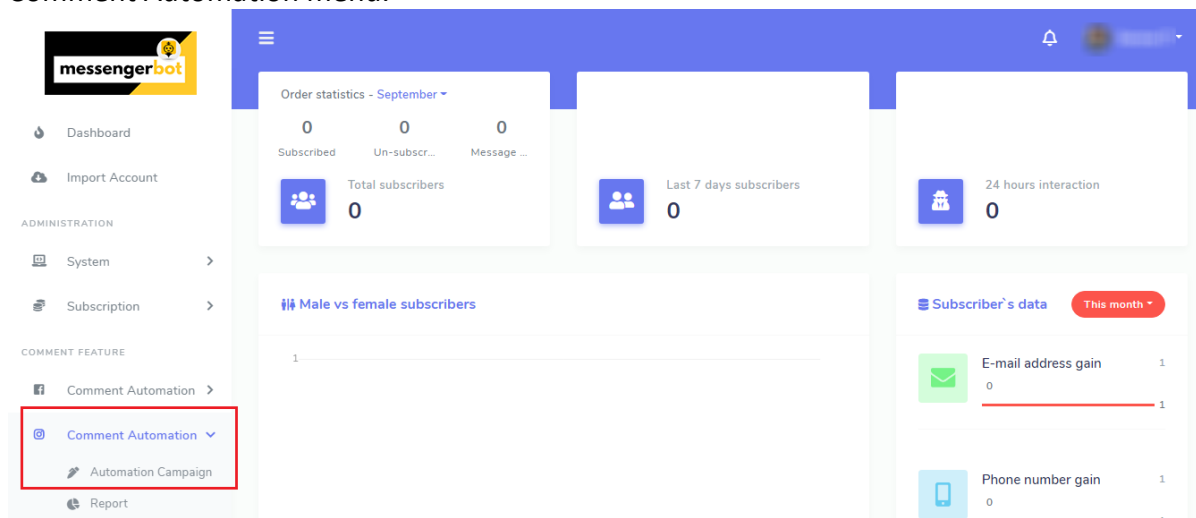




Now **Enable Bot Connection** by click on the enable bot connection button if it's not enabled before. Without enabling, you won't see your instagram account in instagram features section of Messenger Bot.

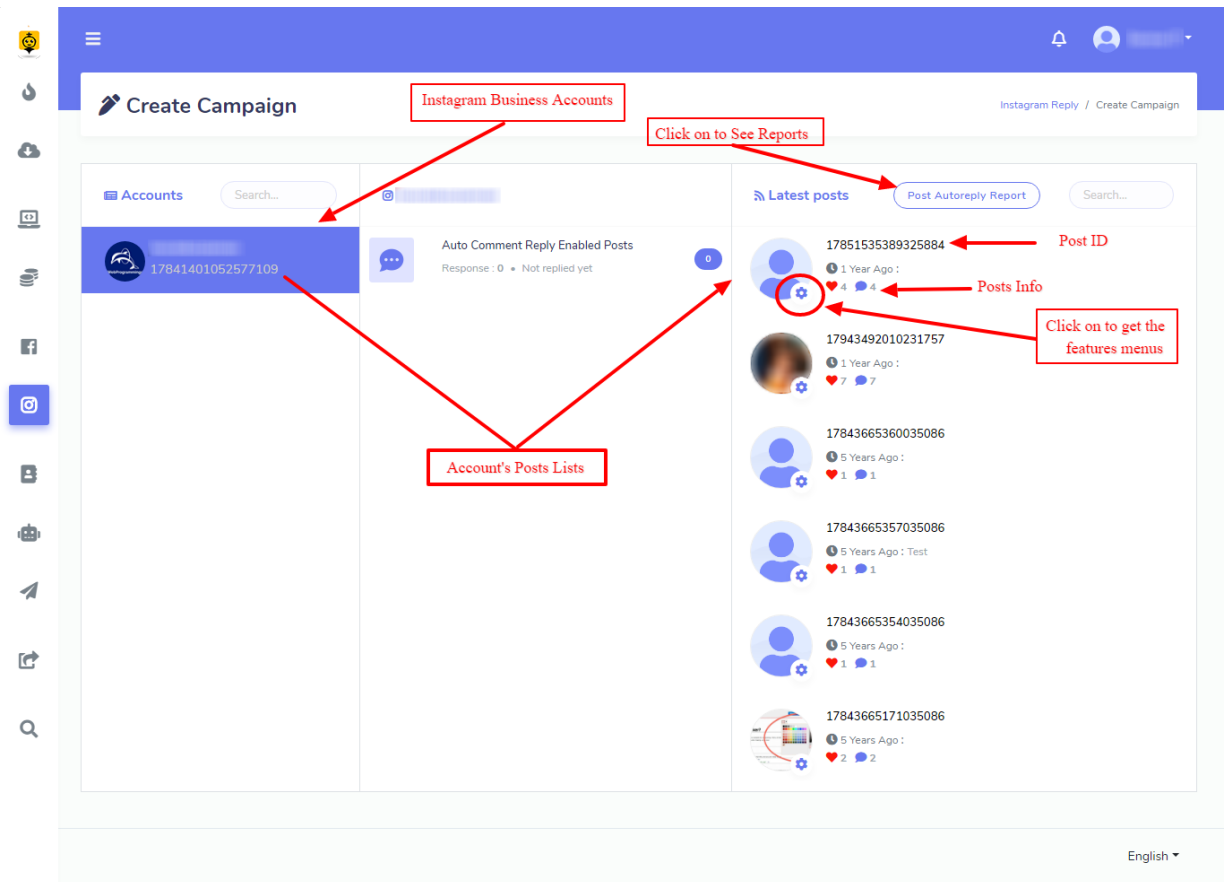
Auto Comment Reply with Messenger Bot:

There is also a menu available called **Comment Automation** for instagram under facebook Comment Automation menu.





Go to **Comment Automation -> Automation Campaign** menu and you'll see your instagram business accounts here with the latest posts of corresponding business account. You can also see how many posts are enabled for auto comment reply from the middle column. At the right column, you can see the posts lists with posted time with posts description and also posts reaction, comments.



To enable Auto Comment Reply for Posts, click on the mini icon with the post's thumbnail, you'll see the dropdown, click on **Enable Auto Comment Reply**.



Latest posts
Post Autoreply Report
Search...

17851535389325884
1 Year Ago :

Enable auto comment reply

Leave a comment now

Analytics

Click on to get Auto comment Reply form

For Instant Comment on Instagram

Posts Analytics

17843665360035086
5 Years Ago :
1 1

17843665357035086
5 Years Ago : Test
1 1

A modal with form will appear, fill up the information to complete the enabling auto comment reply for the post.

Please give the following information for post auto reply

Do you want to reply comments of a user multiple times?
Yes

Generic comment reply for all

Send comment reply by filtering word/sentence

Select for Generic Reply On Comment

Select for Filter based Comment Reply

Auto comment reply campaign name *

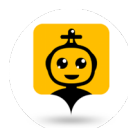
Write your auto comment reply campaign name here

Comment reply text *

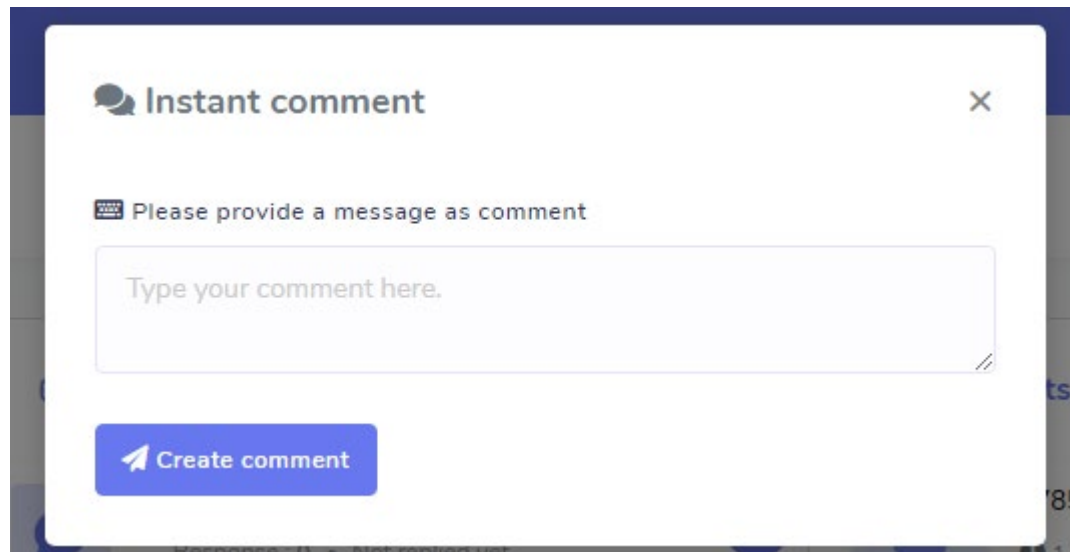
Username
Mention user

Type your comment reply here...

Submit
Cancel

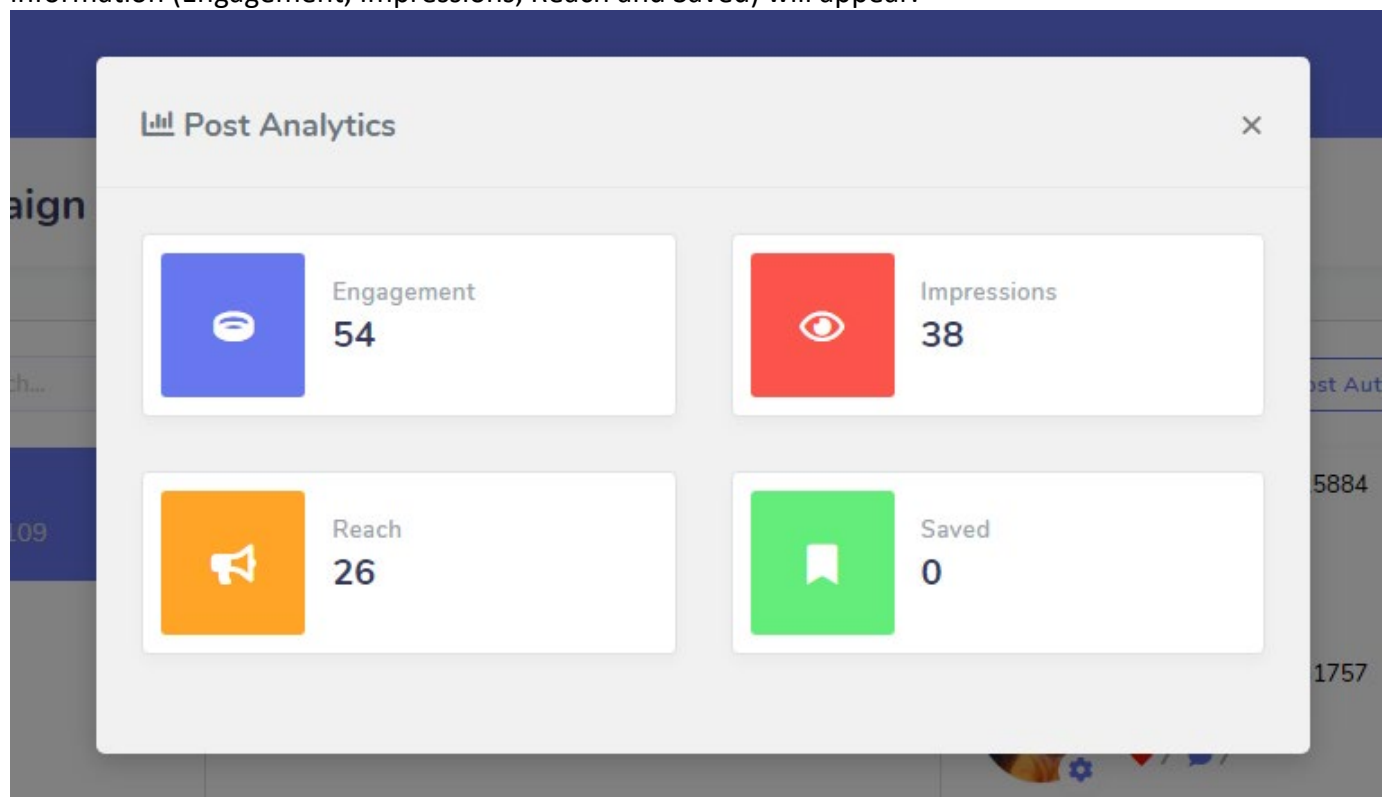


You can comment instantly on a post by **Leave a comment now** option from the dropdown.



A modal window titled "Instant comment" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. Below the title is a text prompt: "Please provide a message as comment". Underneath is a large text input field with the placeholder text "Type your comment here.". At the bottom left of the modal is a blue button with a white paper plane icon and the text "Create comment".

To see the post's analytics, click on **Analytics** option and a modal with Post's analytical information (Engagement, Impressions, Reach and Saved) will appear.



Reports: Click on **Post Autoreply Report** Button at the top of the right column to see the auto comment reply reports for the corresponding business account's posts.





To see all business accounts reports in one place, then go to **Comment Automation -> Report** from the left sided menu and go to **Auto Comment reply reports** section to see all reports.

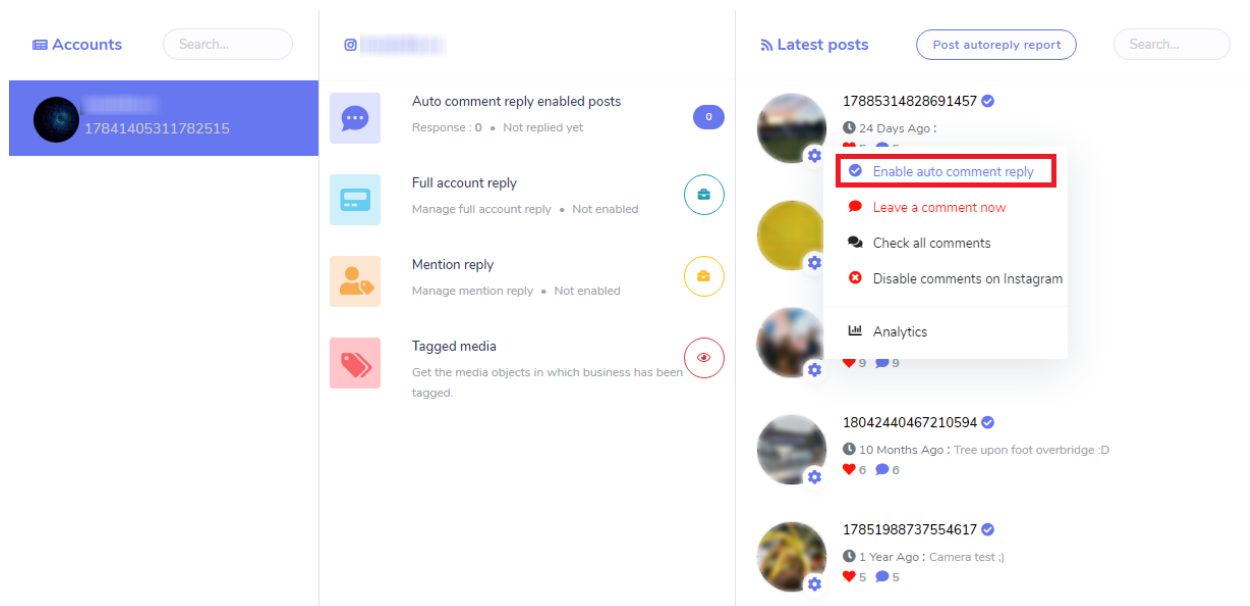
Instagram Reply Enhancers

Instagram is one of the most popular social media among all social media and it has also become more popular day by day. So as a popular media, Instagram has given some opportunities for third-party app developers to integrate through Instagram API. Messenger Bot has integrated these features. Messenger Bot has provided some features with main application and now it has integrated some exciting features as an add-on.

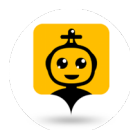
Hide/delete Comments

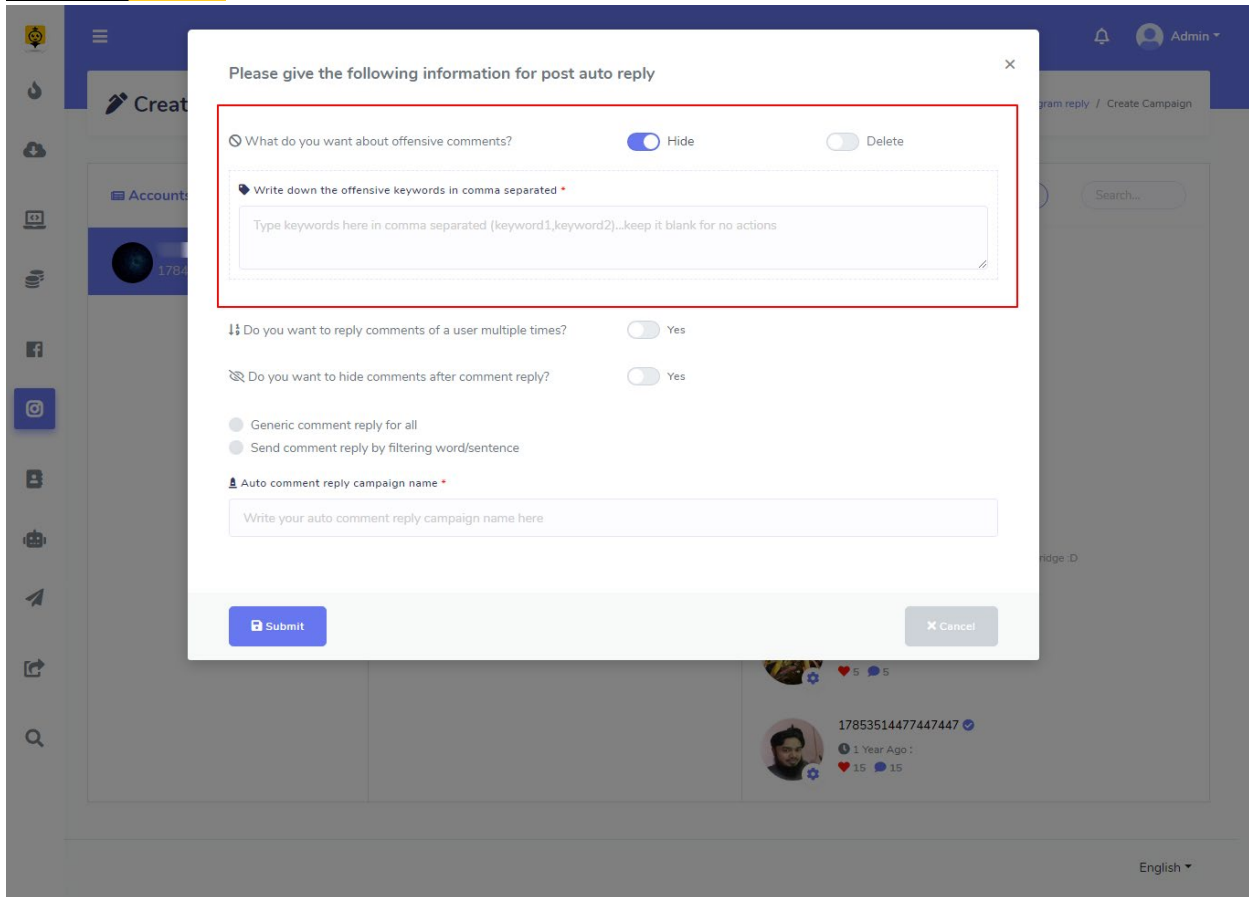
After Installing Instagram Reply Enhancers Add-on, you'll see of Choosing field for what do you want to do with offensive comments - hide or delete and also you'll be able to provide keywords as comma separated for hiding or deleting comments that matches with these keywords.

Click on the icon under posts thumbnail to get the option called **Enable Auto Comment Reply**, now click on the option.



A modal of auto reply to comments will appear including this hide/delete for offensive comments. By default, the hide option is selected but you may toggle the options. Under this option, you've to provide the keywords with whom you want to perform hide/delete actions.





Please give the following information for post auto reply

What do you want about offensive comments? ☒ Hide ☐ Delete

Write down the offensive keywords in comma separated *

Type keywords here in comma separated (keyword1,keyword2)...keep it blank for no actions

Do you want to reply comments of a user multiple times? ☐ Yes

Do you want to hide comments after comment reply? ☐ Yes

Generic comment reply for all

Send comment reply by filtering word/sentence

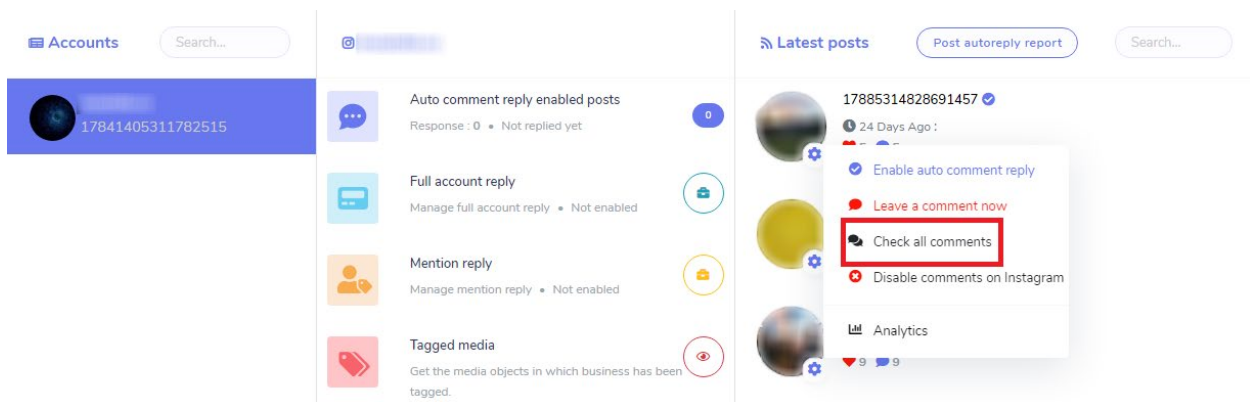
Auto comment reply campaign name *

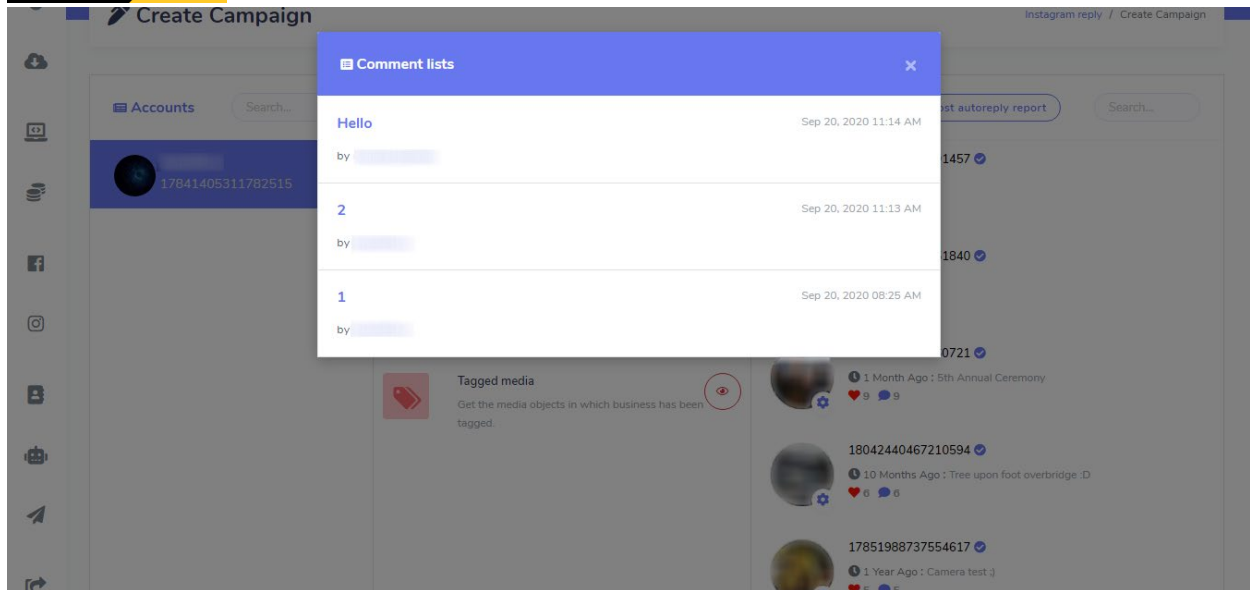
Write your auto comment reply campaign name here

Submit Cancel

Check All Comments

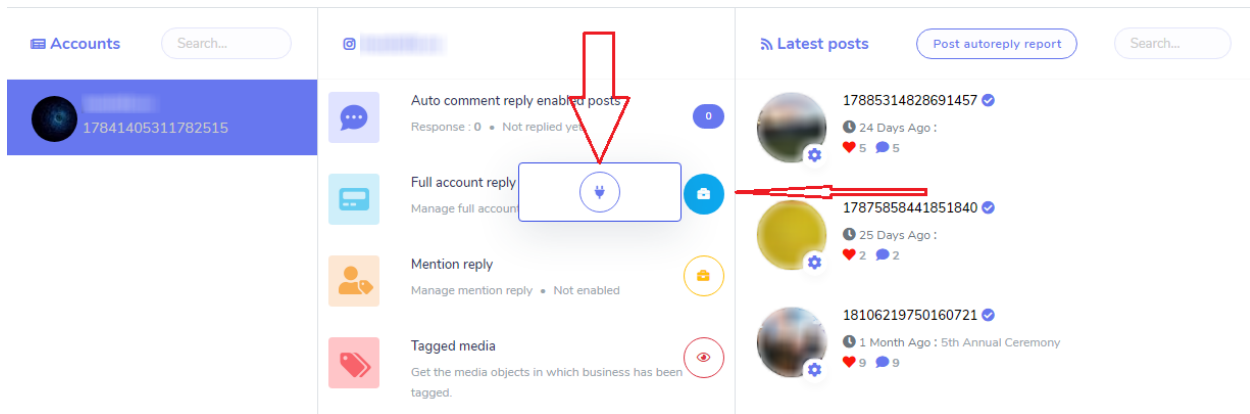
As the above description, you'll also be able to see an option called **Check All Comments**, which is for getting all comments of a post in one place. Click on the option and you'll see all the comments of that post.





Full Account Reply Settings

Besides enabling Auto reply to Comments of Single post's, now Messenger Bot has integrated Full Account Reply. You can now enable full account reply for your all posts of instagram business account. To enable it, you'll need to just fill up the auto reply form. Click on the icon and then click on **Enable** icon.



A modal for full account reply information will appear and you've to provide all necessary information. After enabling Full Account reply for your Instagram business account, system will send replies to comments whenever new comment comes for any of the posts of your corresponding Instagram business account. You can set Generic or keyword filter-based settings for full account reply.





Please give the following information for full account reply



🕒 What do you want about offensive comments?

☒ Hide

☐ Delete

📝 Write down the offensive keywords in comma separated

Type keywords here in comma separated (keyword1,keyword2)...keep it blank for no actions

⚡ Do you want to send reply message to a user multiple times?

☐ Yes

🔍 Do you want to hide comments after comment reply?

☐ Yes

☐ Generic message for all

☐ Send message by filtering word/sentence

👤 Auto reply campaign name *

Write your auto reply campaign name here

Submit

Cancel

After enabling full account reply, you'll able to see the list of actions button for full account reply settings. You can see Report, edit, pause/play and also delete the reply settings button.

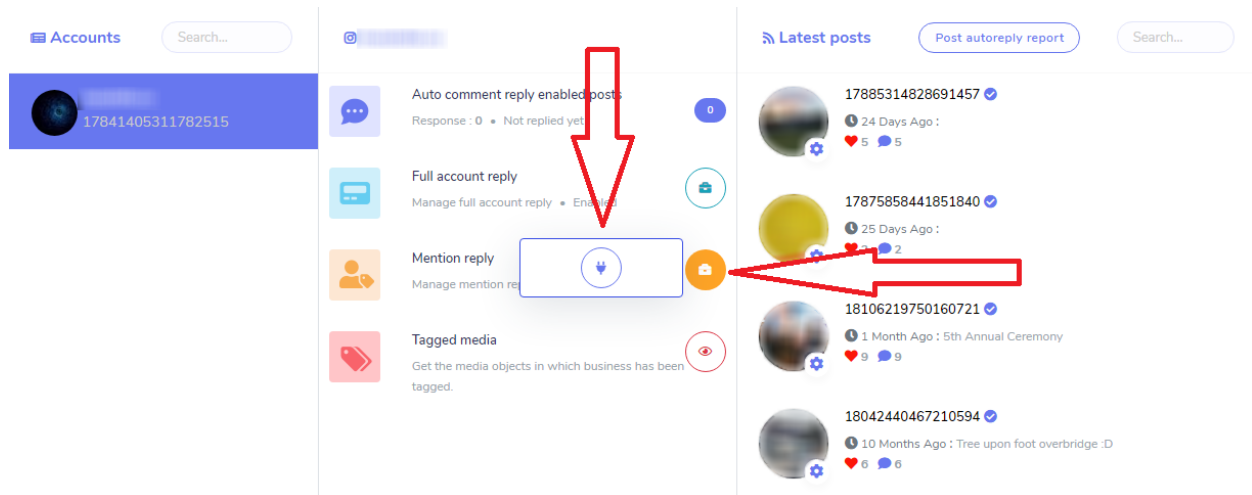
The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot dashboard with three main sections: Accounts, Settings, and Latest posts. In the Accounts section, the account 17841405311782515 is selected. In the Settings section, the 'Full account reply' setting is highlighted, and a red arrow points to its action buttons: Report, Edit, Pause/Play, and Delete. The 'Latest posts' section shows a list of posts with their respective IDs, timestamps, and engagement metrics.

Mention Reply Settings

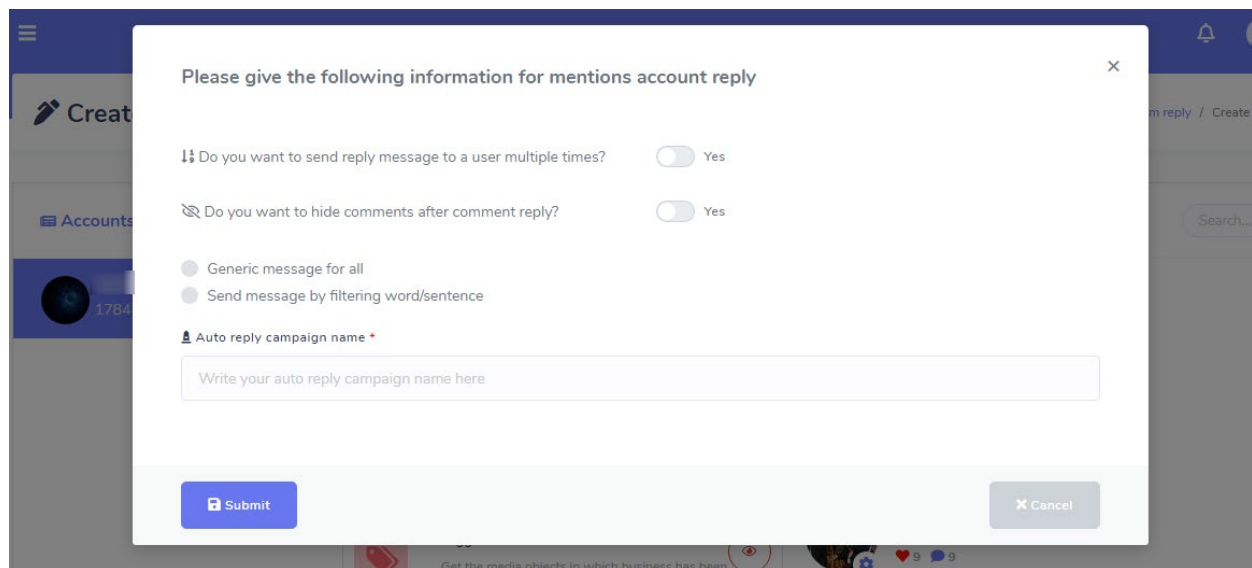




Beside full account reply, you can also be able to set mention reply for your instagram business account. As full account reply click on the icon beside mention reply and click on the enable mention reply button to get the mention reply form.

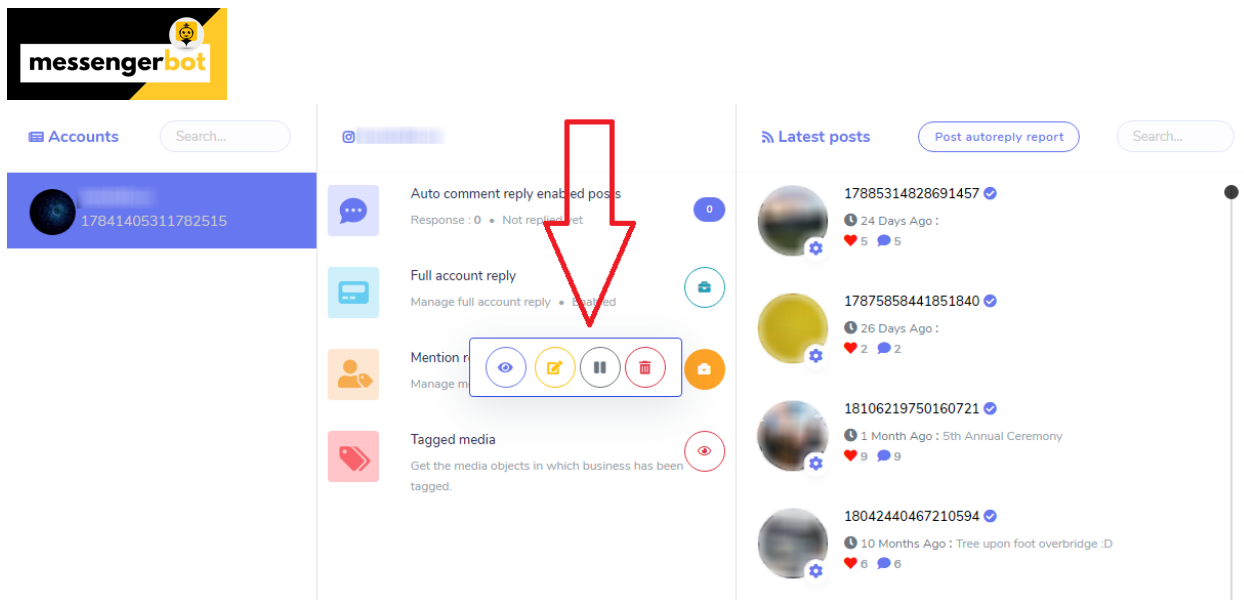


Fill up the information and hit **Submit** button. If you enable mention reply settings for your Instagram business account, whenever you get mentioned in any comments of any posts of Instagram account by any user, then system will send reply to the mentioned comments.



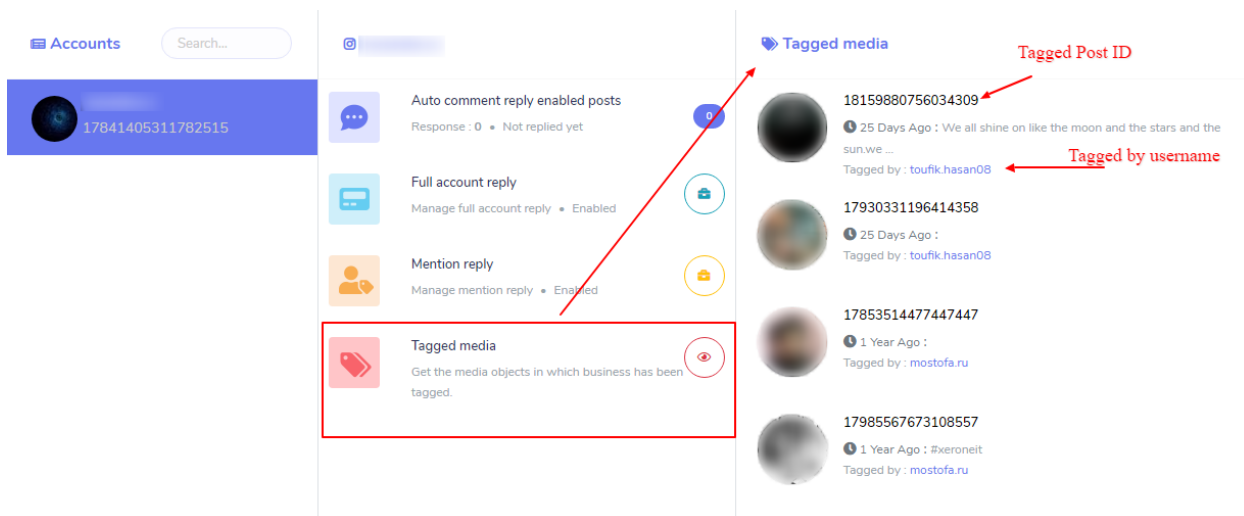
After enabling full account reply, you'll able to see the list of actions button for mention reply settings. You can see Report, edit, pause/play and also delete the reply settings button.





Tagged Media

Tagged Media features refers to the posts that you're tagged/mentioned by instagram users. Click on the **Tagged Media** part or on the **Icon** to get the tagged posts lists, lists will be shown at the right-sided column. See the below image please.



Reports

You can see the reports of full and mention reply settings from two sides. If you want to see the individual account reports then you've to go to report section from Campaign Create section for full and mention reply settings.





Accounts Search...

17841405311782515

Auto comment reply enabled posts
Response : 0 • Not replied yet

Full account reply
Manage full account reply

Mention reply
Manage mention reply • Not enabled

Tagged media
Get the media objects in which business has been tagged.

Latest posts Post autoreply report Search...

17885314828691457
24 Days Ago :
5 5

17875858441851840
25 Days Ago :
2 2

18106219750160721
1 Month Ago : 5th Annual Ceremony
9 9

Full Autoreply report

Instagram reply / Create Campaign / Full Autoreply report

Individual account

Search... Search

#	Thumbnail	Post id	Actions	Last replied at
1		18042440467210594		27, 2020 09:02 AM
2		17885314828691457		Sep 27, 2020 09:03 AM

10

1-2/2

Accounts Search...

17841405311782515

Auto comment reply enabled posts
Response : 0 • Not replied yet

Full account reply
Manage full account reply • Enabled

Mention reply
Manage mention reply

Tagged media
Get the media objects in which business has been tagged.

Latest posts Post autoreply report Search...

17885314828691457
24 Days Ago :
5 5

17875858441851840
26 Days Ago :
2 2

18106219750160721
1 Month Ago : 5th Annual Ceremony
9 9

18042440467210594
10 Months Ago : Tree upon foot overbridge :D
6 6





Full Autoreply report

Instagram reply / Create Campaign / Full Autoreply report

Individual account

Search...

Search

Details Report

Post's Analytics

Delete Report

#	Thumbnail	Post id	Actions	Last replied at
1		18042440467210594		27, 2020 09:02 AM
2		17885314828691457		Sep 27, 2020 09:03 AM

10

1-2/2

Previous 1 Next

You may also visit to the reports pages to see all of your Instagram business accounts full and mention reply reports in one place. Go to Comment Automation > Reports section and then visit Full or mention reply reports to see all accounts report.

Dashboard

Import Account

ADMINISTRATION

- System
- Subscription

COMMENT FEATURE

- Comment Automation
- Comment Automation
- Automation Campaign
- Report

MESSANGER TOOLS

Report section

Instagram reply / Report section

Auto comment reply report

Report of auto comment on Instagram accounts's post.

[See report >](#)

Full account reply reports

Report of posts comment reply of Instagram full account.

[See report >](#)

Mention reply report

Report of mention of Instagram accounts's post.








[See report >](#)





Full Reply report

[Instagram reply](#) / [Create Campaign](#) / [Full Autoreply report](#)

Instagram accounts ▾ Search... Search				
#	Thumbnail	Post id	Actions	Last replied at
1		18042440467210594	   	27, 2020 09:02 AM
2		17885314828691457		Sep 27, 2020 09:03 AM








10 ▾

1-2/2

[Previous](#) [1](#) [Next](#)

Mention Reply report

[Instagram reply](#) / [Create Campaign](#) / [Mention Autoreply report](#)

Instagram accounts ▾ Search... Search				
#	Thumbnail	Post id	Actions	Last replied at
1		17889350893615836	   	27, 2020 09:04 AM
2		18114940318095355		Sep 27, 2020 09:04 AM

10 ▾

1-2/2

[Previous](#) [1](#) [Next](#)

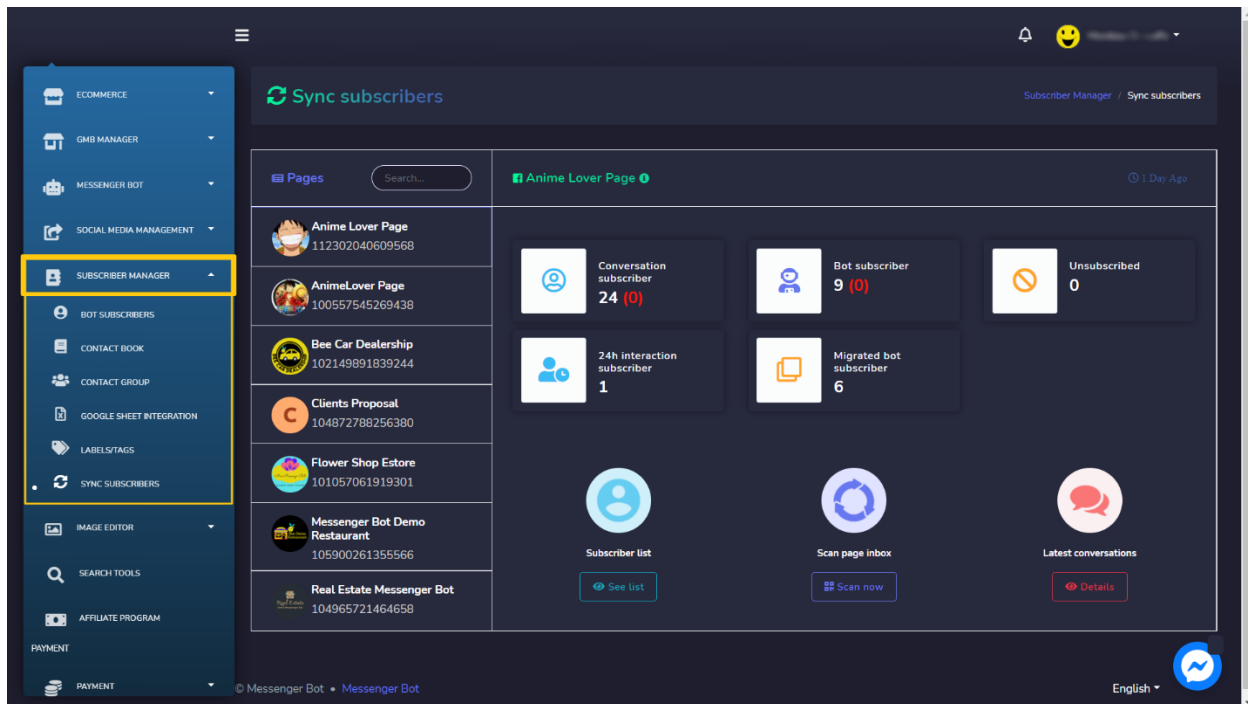




Subscriber Manager

Subscriber Manager allows you to get the synchronization of subscribers, view bot subscribers, view labels, and manage the messaging/emailing activities in different contact groups. This view gives a full control messenger subscriber. It allows you to create new contacts and contact groups.

To view this section, navigate to **Subscriber Manager** from the navigation menu located at the left under **Social Media Management** section. Tab on **Subscriber Manager**.



Under Subscriber Manager, we have:

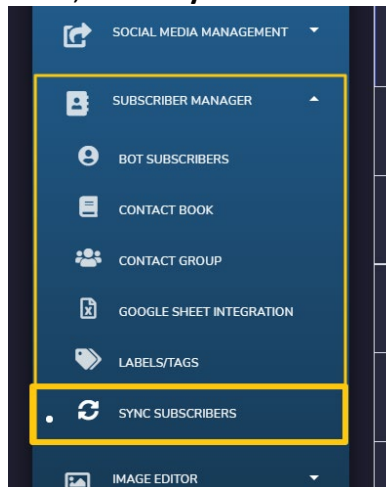
- Bot Subscribers
- Contact Book
- Contact Group
- Google Sheet Integration
- Labels/Tags
- Sync Subscribers





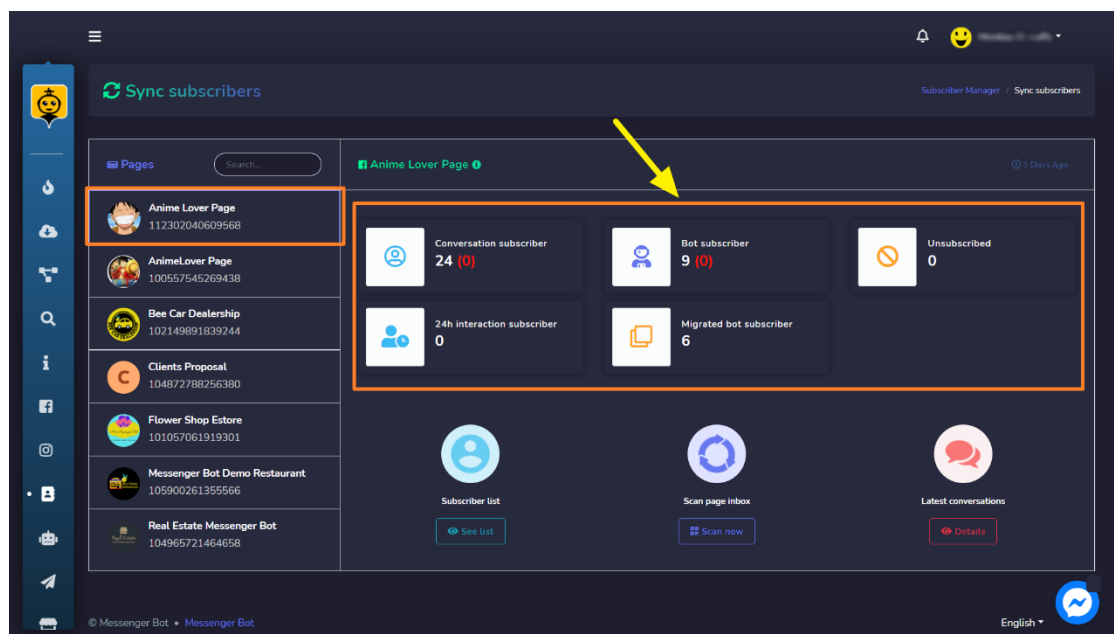
Sync subscribers

To access the sync subscribers section, select **Sync subscribers** as shown below.



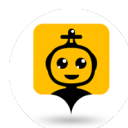
A dashboard will appear containing a number of each of the following subscribers:

- Conversation subscriber
- Bot subscriber
- Unsubscribed
- 24h interaction subscriber
- Migrated bot subscriber



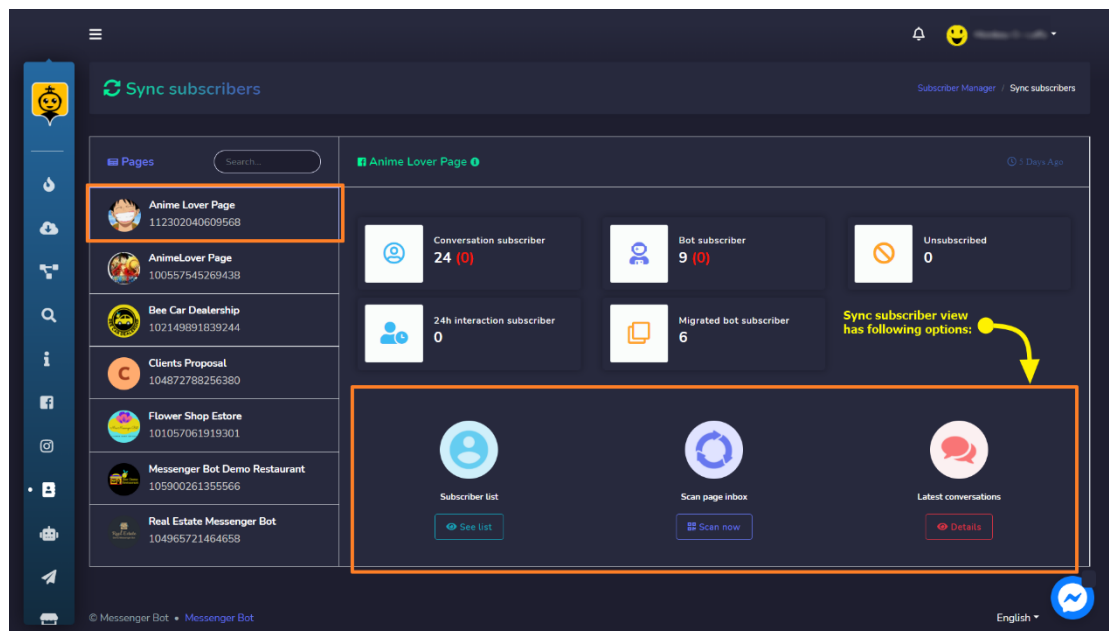
The **Sync subscriber** view has the following options:

- Subscriber list





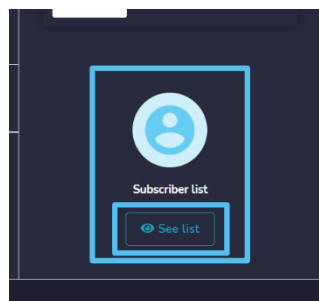
- Scan page inbox
- Latest conversation



Subscriber list

You can view the subscriber by following the steps given below:

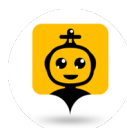
- 1) Select **See list** option from the **Subscriber List**.




- 2) A modal containing a list of all subscriber's names and IDs will appear on the screen.

Users can search for a particular subscriber by using the **search bar**. Users can also bulk select the subscribers to perform different actions like **Assign label**, **Download list**, etc.

Users can also search for a particular label for a narrow search.






Subscriber list


Label

Label
Anime Lover
Campaign
Hello

#	<input type="checkbox"/>	Subscriber id	Subscriber name	Label/tag	Actions	Synced at
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	5095209677170742	Ivan Labadan			25th Dec 20 07:41
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3142781255826076	Maxcel Tan			23rd Dec 20 06:27
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4746030942134600	Fredison Facun			20th Dec 20 19:51
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	3661754080556114	Saratao Faith			20th Dec 20 19:51
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	3753590747994237	Kervin Iglesia			20th Dec 20 19:51
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	4099866536697403	JO EY			20th Dec 20 19:51
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	4575558409186252	Malou Omaguing			20th Dec 20 19:51
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	5259950587364537	Noe Bordy			20th Dec 20 19:51
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	5381824245176514	Marjay Dela Cruz			20th Dec 20 19:51
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	4669928556382193	Julyanina Tadeo			20th Dec 20 19:51

10


3) To visit the comment, select  against the subscriber whose comment you want to view.



Subscriber list

Label

#	<input type="checkbox"/>	Subscriber id	Subscriber name	Label/tag	Actions	Synced at
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	5095209677170742	Ivan Labadan			25th Dec 20 07:41
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	3142781255826076	Maxcel Tan			23rd Dec 20 06:27
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	4746030942134600	Fredison Facun			20th Dec 20 19:51
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	3661754080556114	Saratao Faith			20th Dec 20 19:51
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	3753590747994237	Kervin Iglesia			20th Dec 20 19:51









4) To unsubscribe the subscriber, select  against the subscriber you want to unsubscribe. A toast message will appear at the right bottom of your screen.





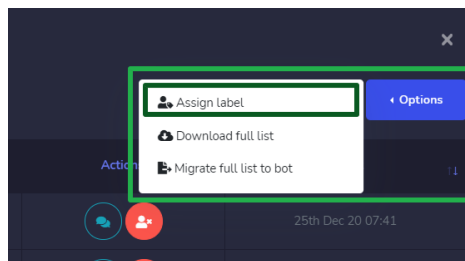
Subscriber list

Search... Label Search Options

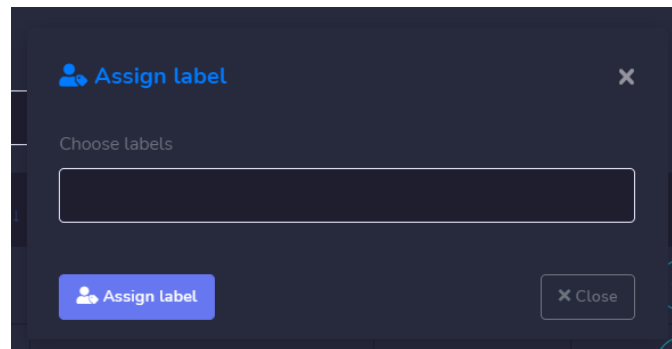
#	Subscriber id	Subscriber name	Label/tag	Actions	Synced at
1	5095209677170742	Ivan Labadan		 	25th Dec 20 07:41
2	3142781255826076	Maxcel Tan		 	23rd Dec 20 06:27
3	4746030942134600	Fredison Facun		 	20th Dec 20 19:51
4	3661754080556114	Saratao Faith		 	20th Dec 20 19:51

✓ Subscriber has been unsubscribed successfully. ✕

- 5) To perform different actions on subscriber list, you can either bulk select or select separately the subscribers and perform following actions by selecting **Options** button:

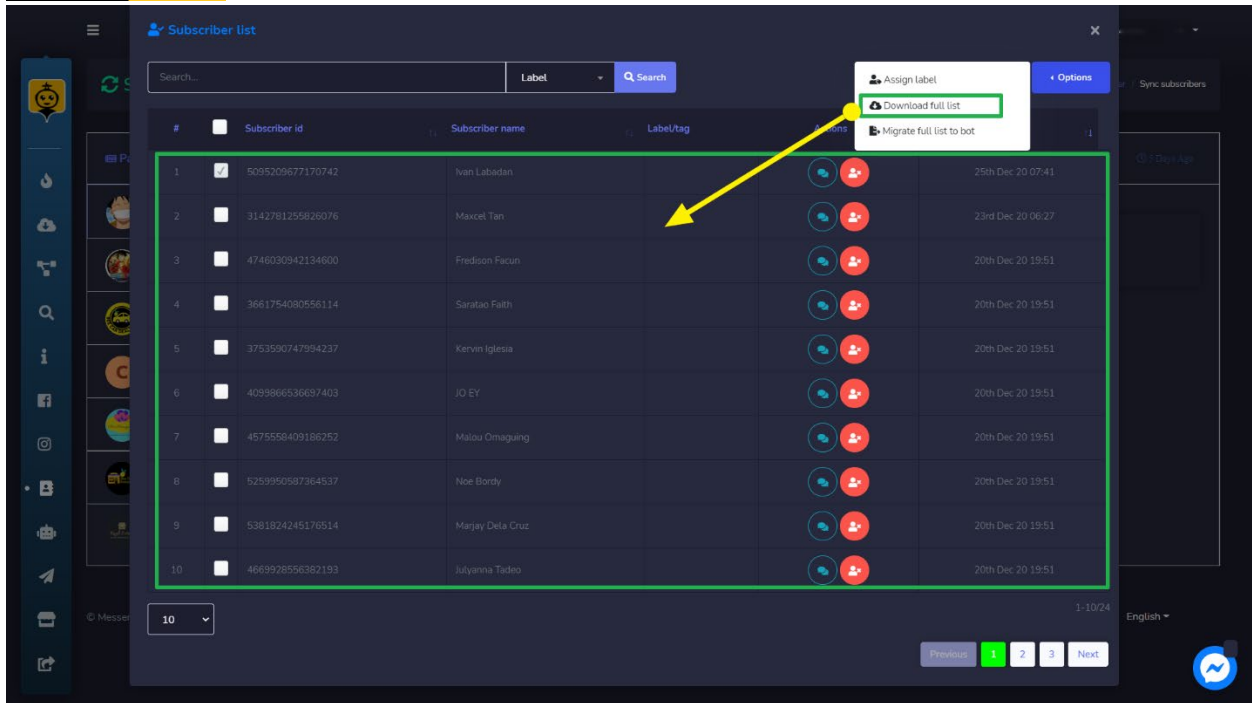


- **Assign label:** You can select individually or bulk select the subscribers and then assign the label to selected subscribers.



- **Download full list:** You download the .CSV file version of the list of subscribers using this option.





Subscriber list

Search... Label Search

Options

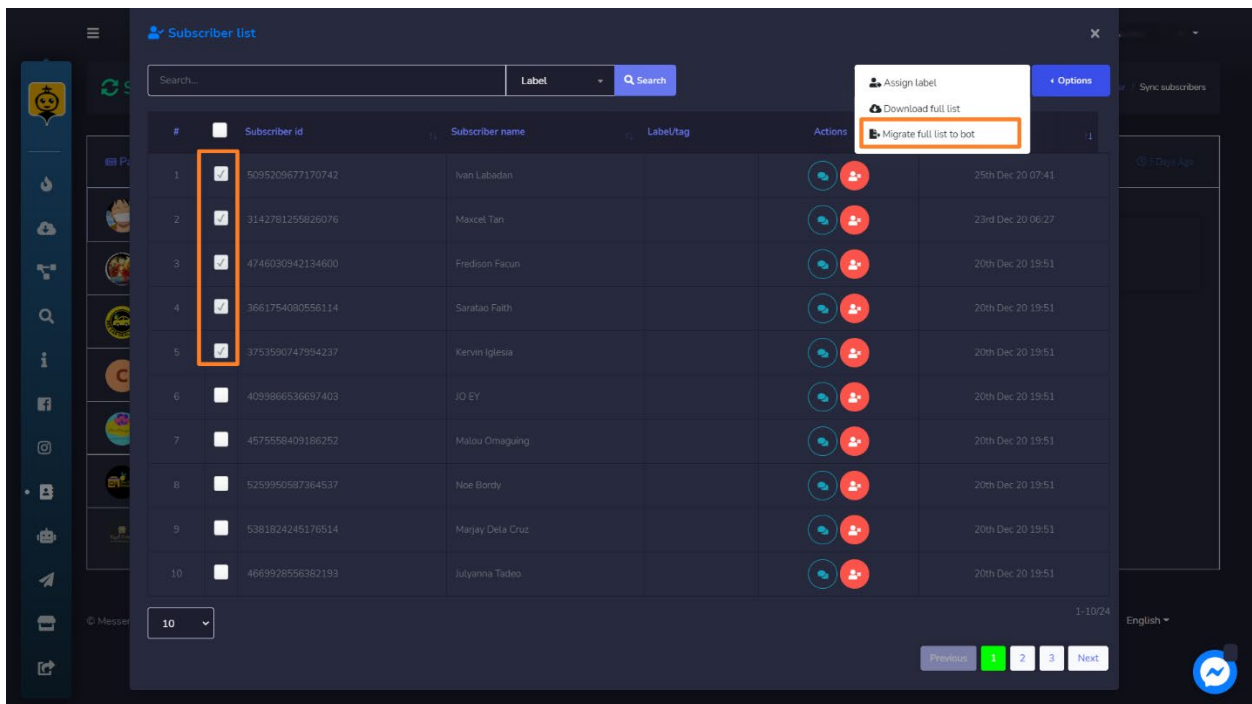
Assign label
Download full list
Migrate full list to bot

#	Subscriber id	Subscriber name	Label/tag	Actions	Time
1	5095209677170742	Ivan Labadan			25th Dec 20 07:41
2	3142781255826076	Maxcel Tan			23rd Dec 20 06:27
3	4746030942134600	Fredson Facun			20th Dec 20 19:51
4	3661754080556114	Saratoo Faith			20th Dec 20 19:51
5	3753590747994237	Kervin Iglesia			20th Dec 20 19:51
6	4099866536697403	JO EY			20th Dec 20 19:51
7	4575558409186252	Malou Omaguang			20th Dec 20 19:51
8	5259950587364537	Noe Borden			20th Dec 20 19:51
9	5381824245176514	Marjay Dela Cruz			20th Dec 20 19:51
10	4669978556382193	Julyanna Tadeo			20th Dec 20 19:51

1-10/24

Previous 1 2 3 Next

- **Migrate full list to bot:** You can select individually or bulk select the subscribers and then migrate the list to bot subscribers list.



Subscriber list

Search... Label Search

Options

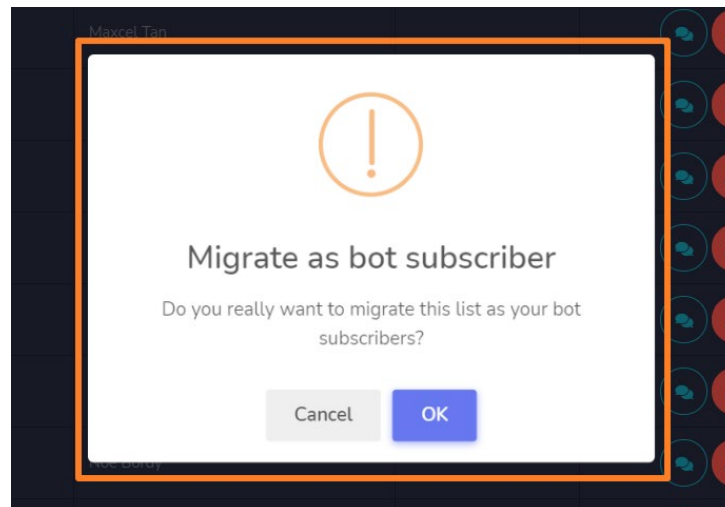
Assign label
Download full list
Migrate full list to bot

#	Subscriber id	Subscriber name	Label/tag	Actions	Time
1	5095209677170742	Ivan Labadan			25th Dec 20 07:41
2	3142781255826076	Maxcel Tan			23rd Dec 20 06:27
3	4746030942134600	Fredson Facun			20th Dec 20 19:51
4	3661754080556114	Saratoo Faith			20th Dec 20 19:51
5	3753590747994237	Kervin Iglesia			20th Dec 20 19:51
6	4099866536697403	JO EY			20th Dec 20 19:51
7	4575558409186252	Malou Omaguang			20th Dec 20 19:51
8	5259950587364537	Noe Borden			20th Dec 20 19:51
9	5381824245176514	Marjay Dela Cruz			20th Dec 20 19:51
10	4669978556382193	Julyanna Tadeo			20th Dec 20 19:51

1-10/24

Previous 1 2 3 Next





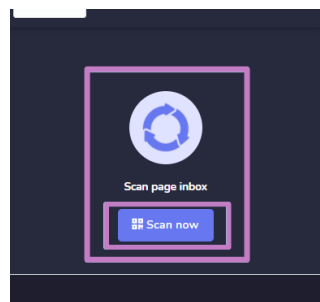
Note

- In case if you don't have selected any subscriber then it will not assign any label or migrate list to bot

Scan page inbox

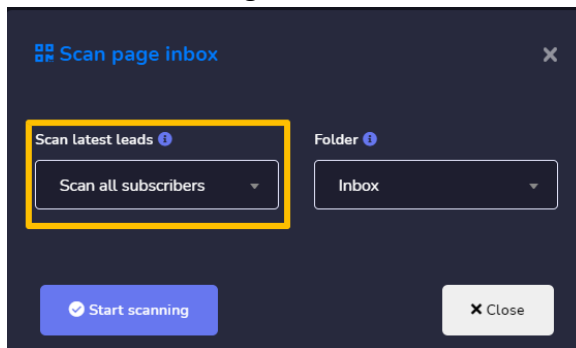
You can import the subscribers and scan the page inbox by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select **Scan now** option from the **Scan page inbox**.

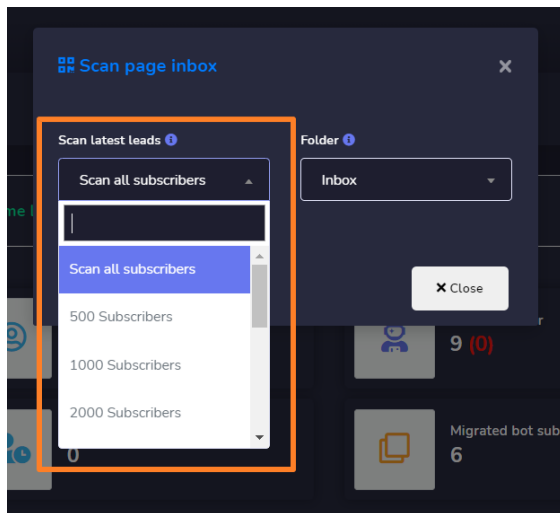




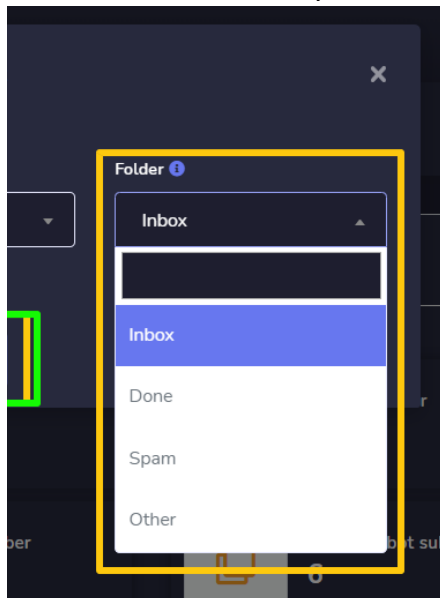
2) A modal containing **Scan latest leads** and **Folder** options will appear.



Select the number of subscribers in **Scan latest leads** field from the dropdown menu.

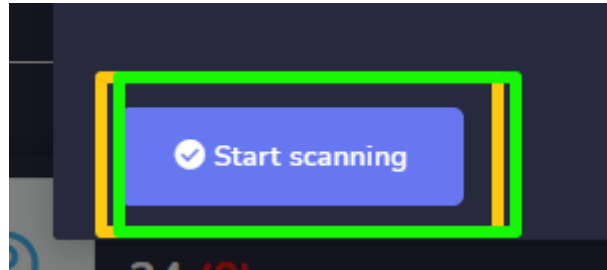


Select the folder which you want to scan from the **Folder** dropdown menu.

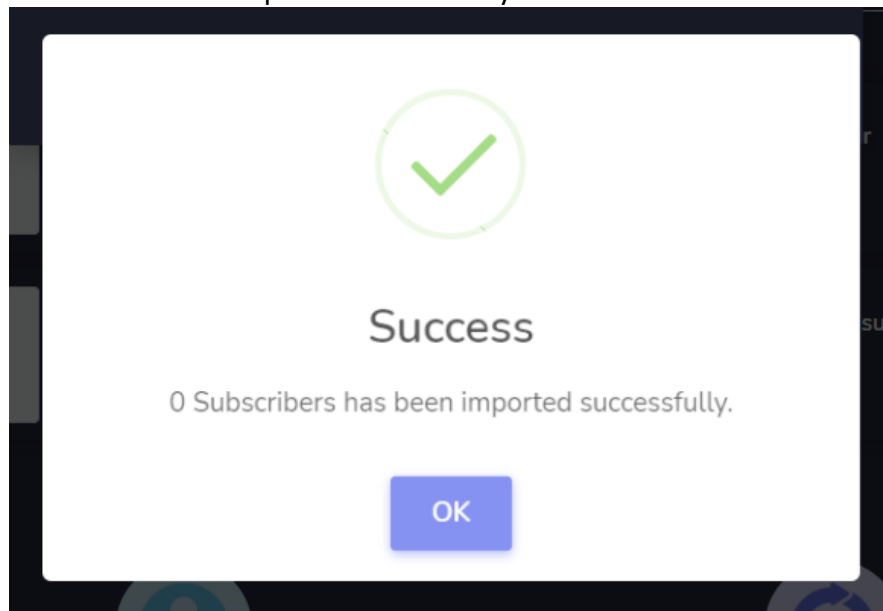




3) Select **Start scanning**.



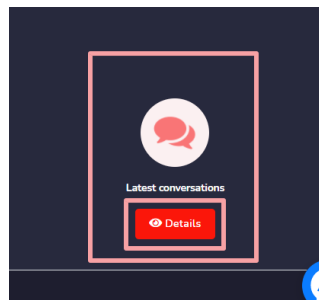
All selected subscribers will be imported successfully.



Latest Conversations

You can access the latest conversations by following the steps given below:


1) Select **Details** option from **Latest Conversations** section.

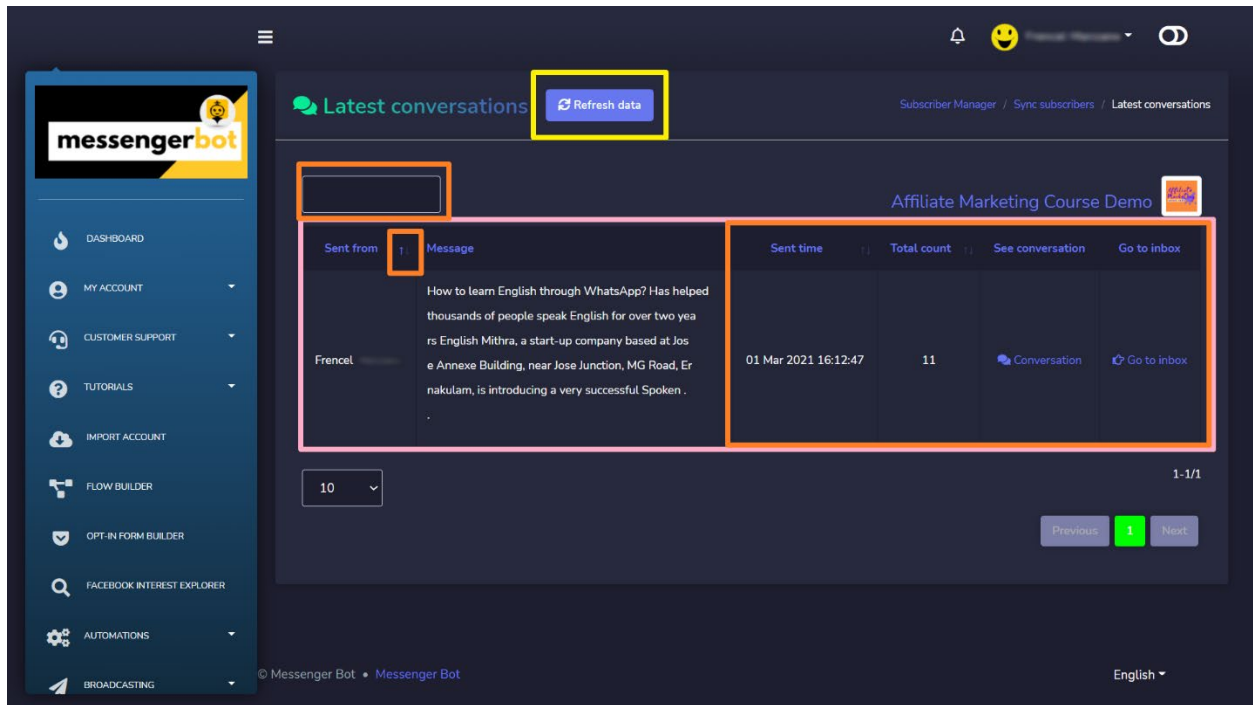


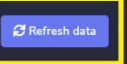
2) A modal will appear containing a list of messages from different subscribers. You can order the list by selecting the arrows in ascending or descending order. You can refresh the list by







selecting  option. You can search for a particular message using the **search bar**. The table provides a **total count** of the message along with the summary of **time**, when it was sent, and the **conversation link**.



Latest conversations 

Subscriber Manager / Sync subscribers / Latest conversations

Search bar

Sent from	Message	Sent time	Total count	See conversation	Go to inbox
Frencel	How to learn English through WhatsApp? Has helped thousands of people speak English for over two years English Mithra, a start-up company based at Jos e Annexe Building, near Jose Junction, MG Road, Er nakulam, is introducing a very successful Spoken .	01 Mar 2021 16:12:47	11	 Conversation	 Go to inbox

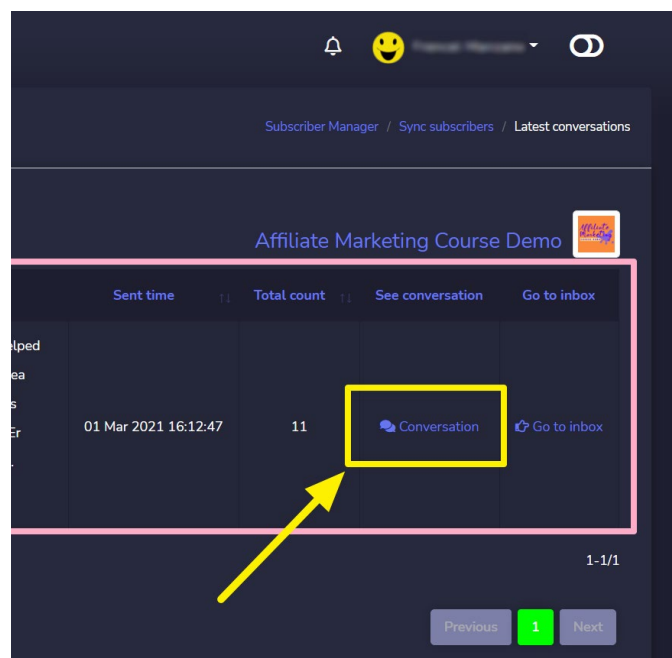
10

1-1/1

Previous 1 Next



© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot English

- 3) You can access the conversation by selecting the **conversation option** against the comment you want to view.



Subscriber Manager / Sync subscribers / Latest conversations

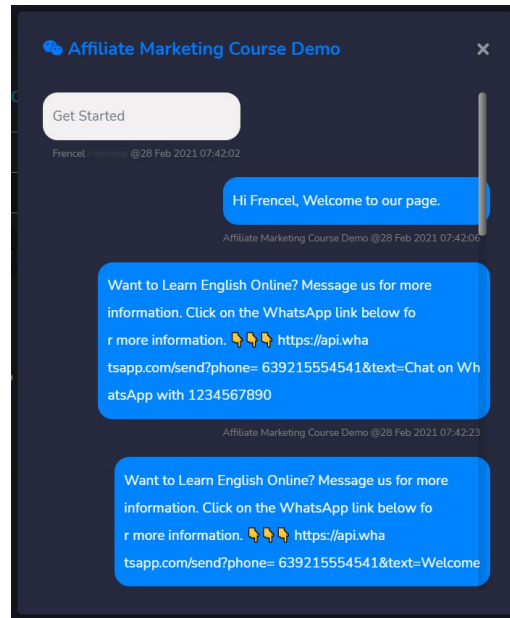
Affiliate Marketing Course Demo

Sent time	Total count	See conversation	Go to inbox
01 Mar 2021 16:12:47	11	 Conversation	 Go to inbox

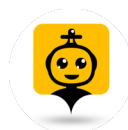
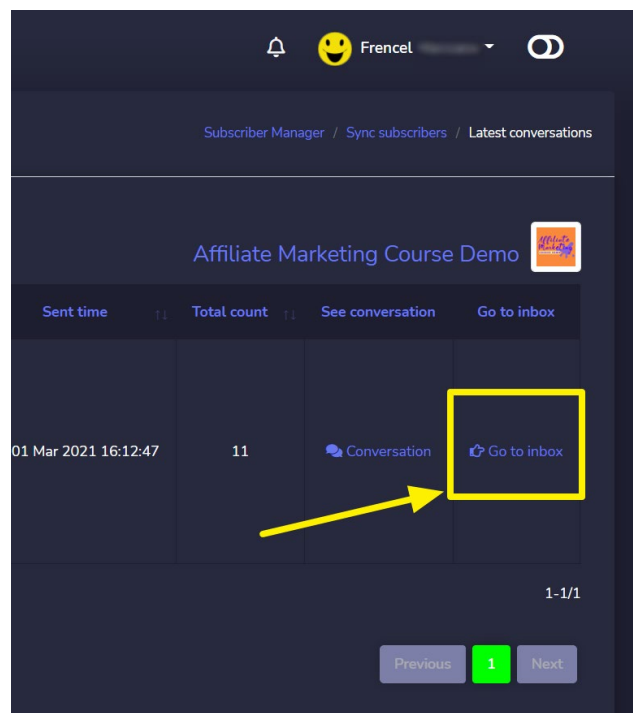
1-1/1

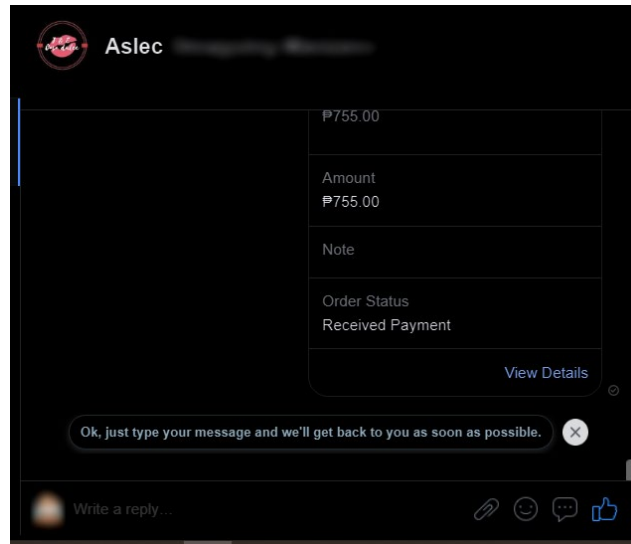
Previous 1 Next





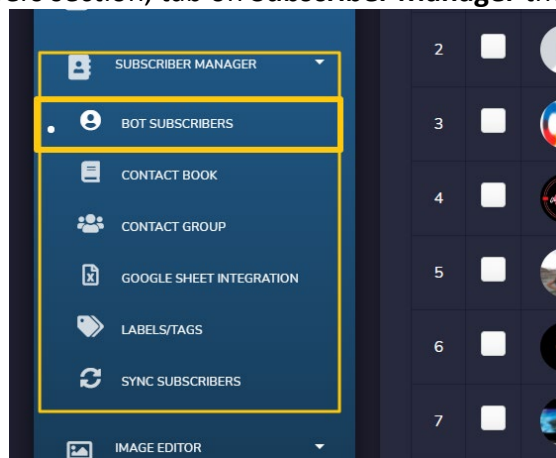
- 4) You can access the conversation and redirect to the inbox as well from this modal by selecting **Go to inbox** option against the comment you want to view.





Bot subscribers

To access the bot subscribers section, tab on **Subscriber Manager** then select **Bot Subscribers**.



A list of bot subscribers will appear on your screen. It will provide information of your bot subscribers, which includes the avatar, first & last name of the bots, and the time they synced. You can arrange the list in **ascending** or **descending** order by selecting the arrows from the table header. You can search for a particular bot by using the **search bar**. You can **limit the number of bots** you want to **view per page**.



Bot subscribers
Subscriber Manager / Bot subscribers

Page
Gender
Search...
Search
Options

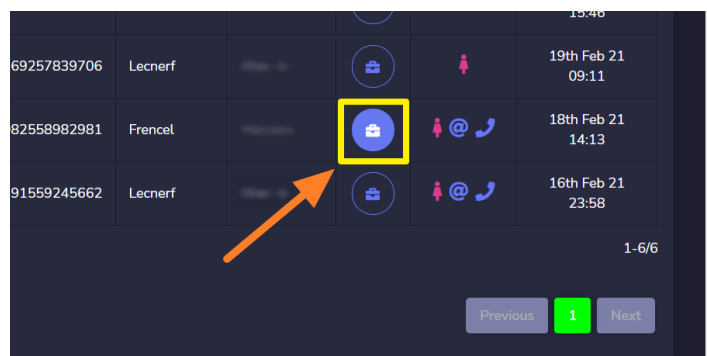
#	Avatar	Page	Subscriber id	First name	Last name	Actions	Quick info	Synced at
1		Affiliate Marketing Course Demo	5092077037500998	Frencel				28th Feb 21 07:42
2		Clients Portal Demo	3730845146952261	Frencel				25th Feb 21 13:18
3		Bee Car Dealership Demo	3605320326252772	Frencel				22nd Feb 21 15:46
4		Messenger Bot Fashion Demo	3489369257839706	Lecnerf				19th Feb 21 09:11
5		Bee Demo Restaurant	2578082558982981	Frencel				18th Feb 21 14:13
6		Bee Demo Restaurant	3941191559245662	Lecnerf				16th Feb 21 23:58

10
1-6/6
Previous 1 Next

Subscriber Actions

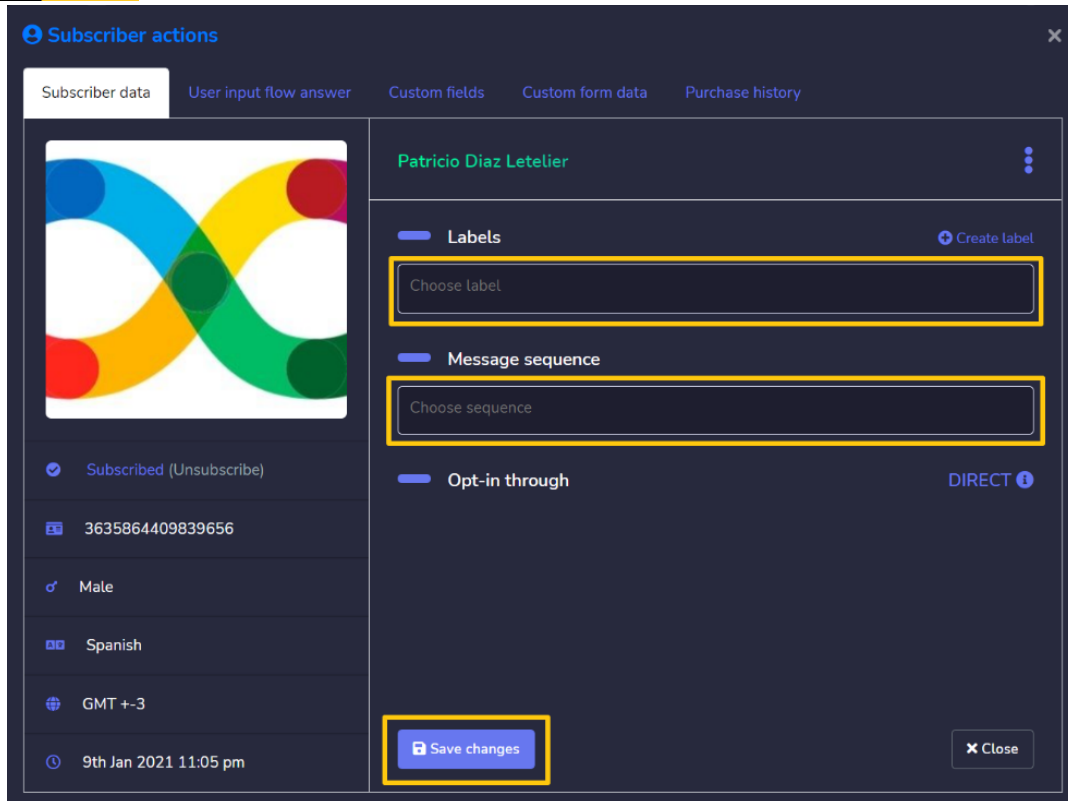
To perform different bot subscriber actions, follow the steps given below:


- 1) Click on icon to perform different subscriber actions.

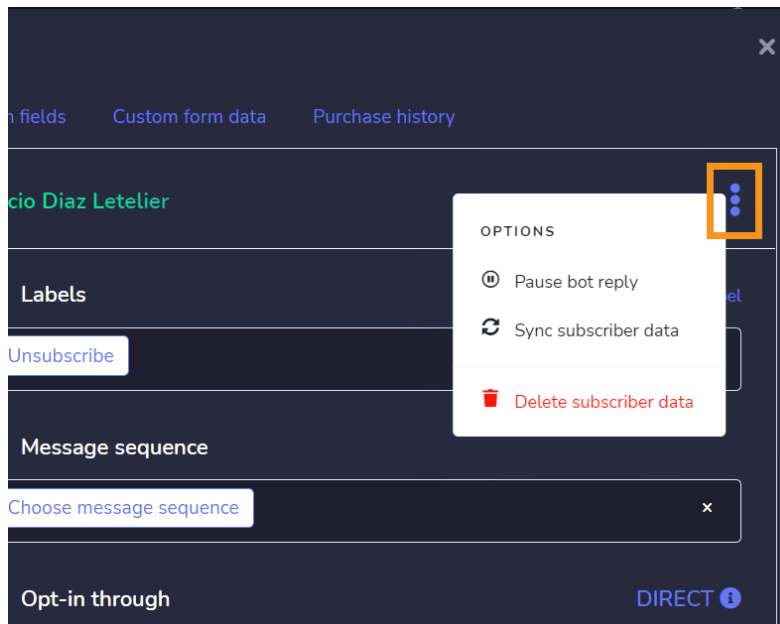



- 2) A subscribers actions window will appear. Enter the subscribers data in **Labels** field. You can also create a new label by selecting **create label**.
- 3) Choose a sequence for **Message sequence** field from the dropdown menu.



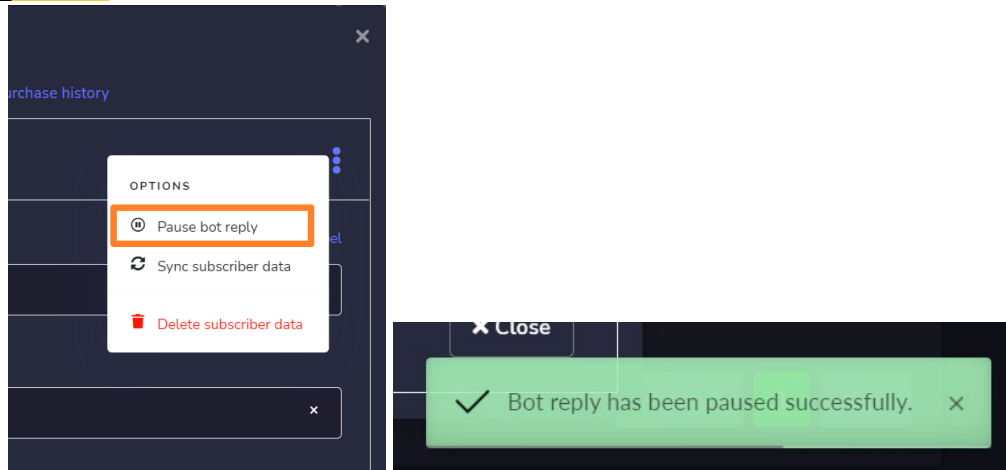


- 4) To perform further actions, select  icon against the name of the subscriber. It has three options:

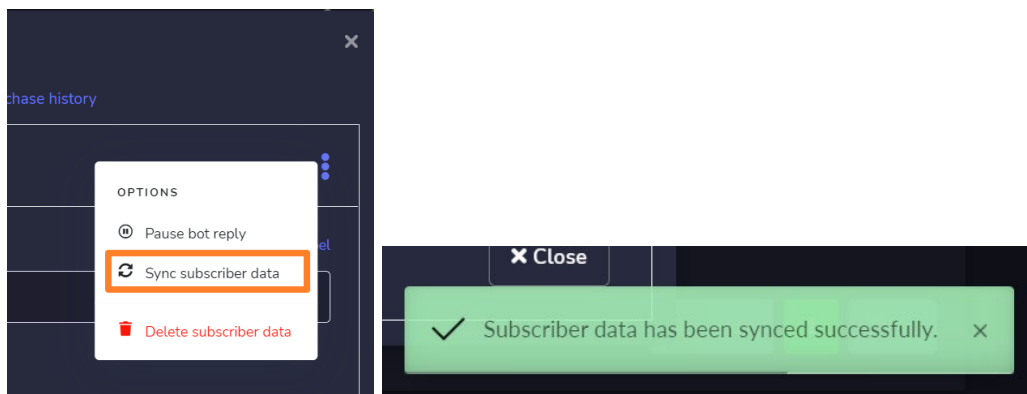



- i. **Pause bot reply:** You can pause the bot reply by selecting  **Pause bot reply** option from the dropdown menu.

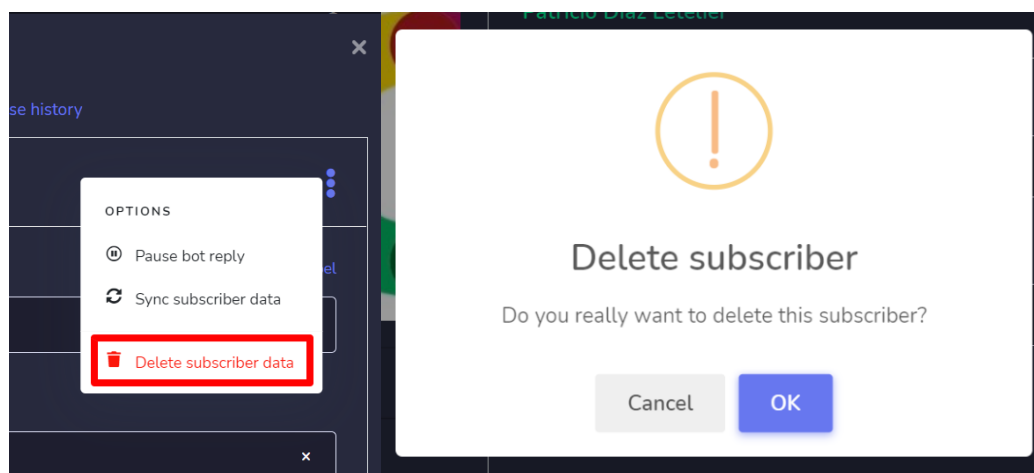




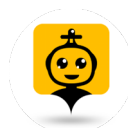
- ii. **Sync subscriber data:** You can synchronize the data of your subscriber by using **Sync subscriber data** option from the dropdown menu.

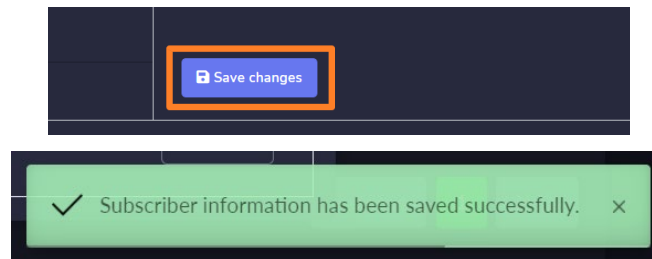


- iii. **Delete subscriber data:** You are also allowed to permanently delete the subscriber from the database by selecting  **Delete subscriber data** option from the dropdown menu.



- 5) Select **Save changes** option to save your actions in **Subscriber data**.

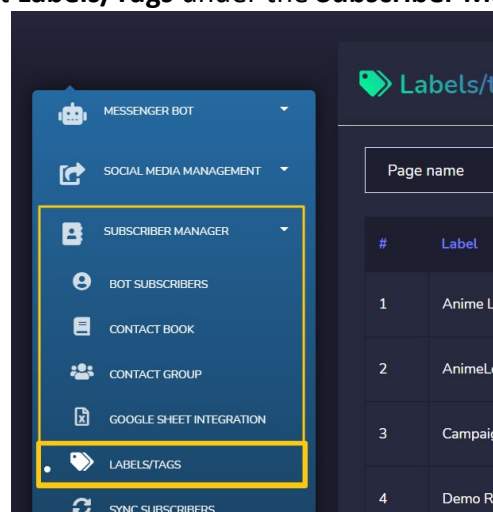




Labels/tags

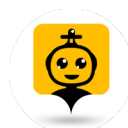
You can create new labels/tags and use them in your posts and comment. Each label has a specific ID. These labels can be used throughout multiple features of the Messenger Bot application.

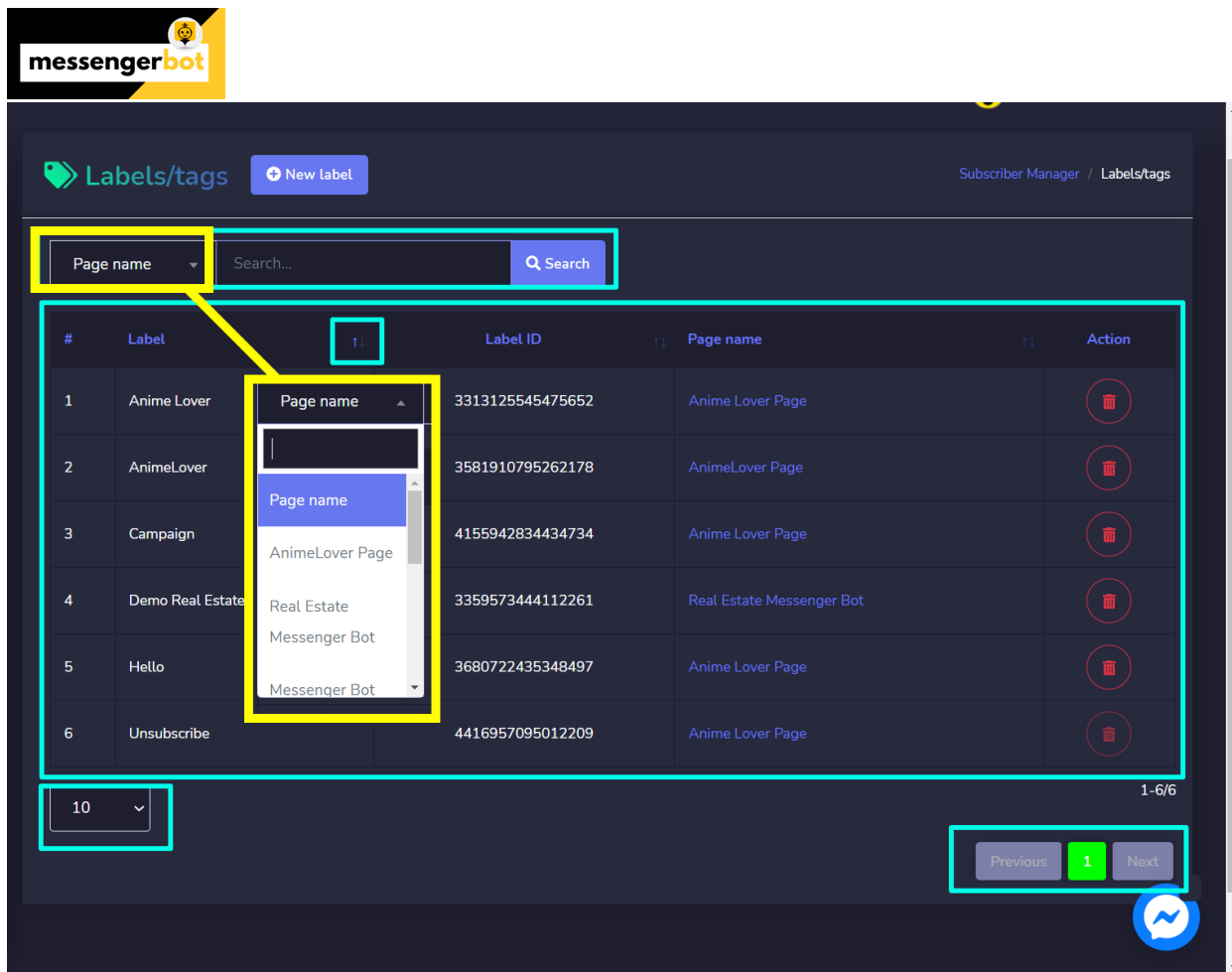
To access this section, select **Labels/Tags** under the **Subscriber Manager** tab on the left menu.



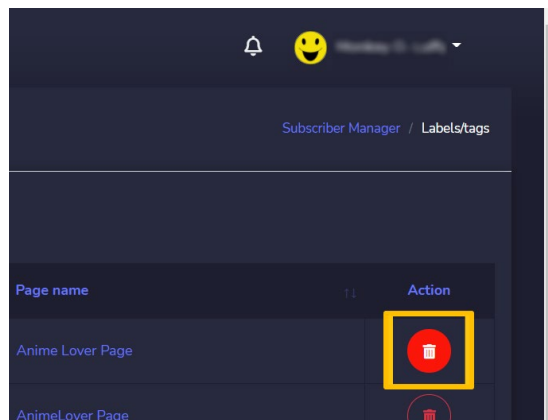
A list of labels/tags will appear on your screen. It will provide information about your created labels along with their IDs.

You can arrange the list in **ascending** or **descending** order by selecting the arrows from the table header. You can search for a **particular label** by using the **search bar**. You can limit the **number of labels** you want to view **per page**. You can **select the page** for which you want to view the labels.





You can **delete** the label by selecting the  icon against the label you want to delete.

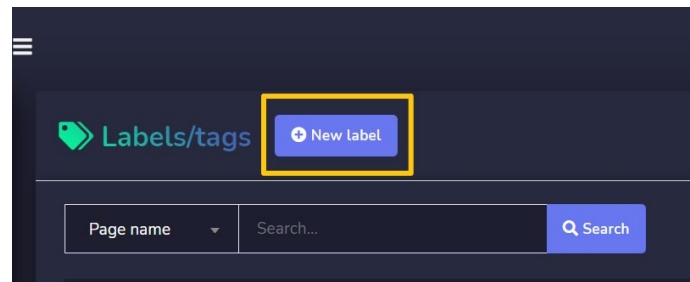


Create New Label

You can create a new label from the **Labels/tags** screen. Just follow the steps given below:

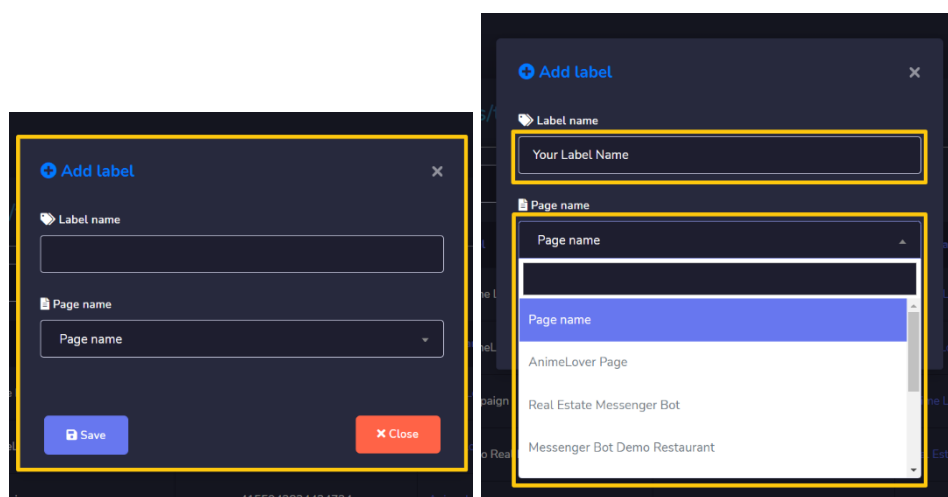
- 1) Select **New label** from the top of the Labels/tags screen.



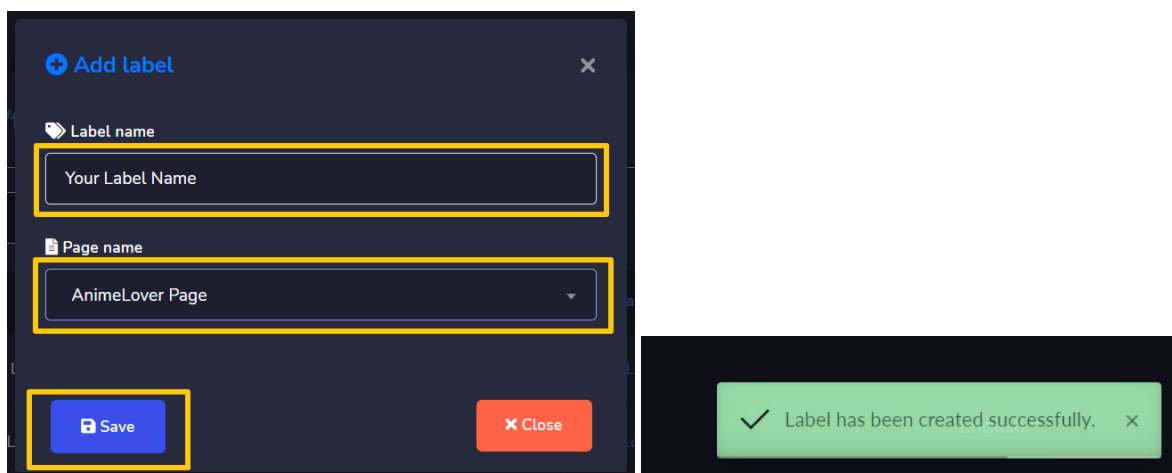


2) A modal Add label will appear on the screen. You need to provide:

- **Label name:** a new label name
- **Page name:** for which you want to make this label



3) Select **Save**, your new label will be created successfully.



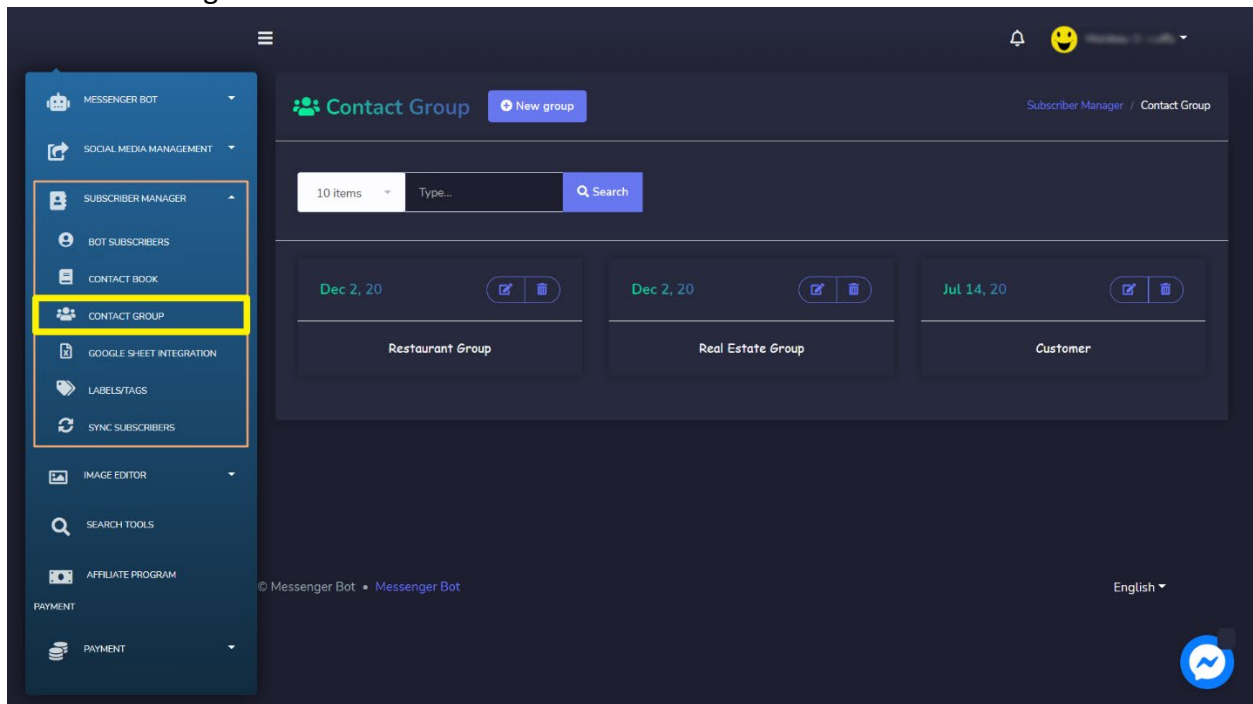
Contact Group

You can create a contact group to perform different bulk actions and manage the SMS/emails group wise. Each group will have multiple contacts.



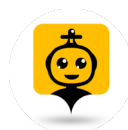
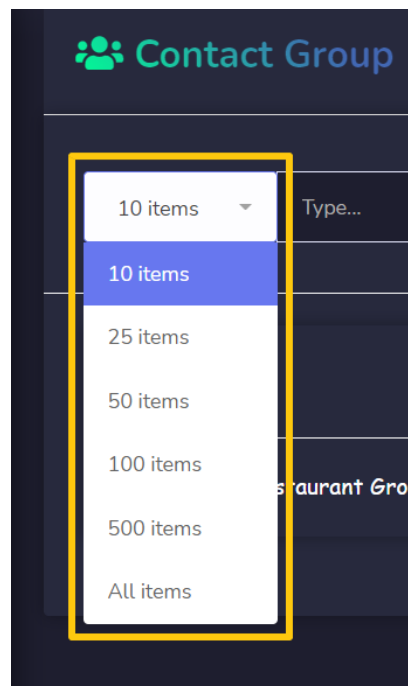



To access the contact group section, select **Contact Group** under **Subscriber Manager** located on the left navigation.

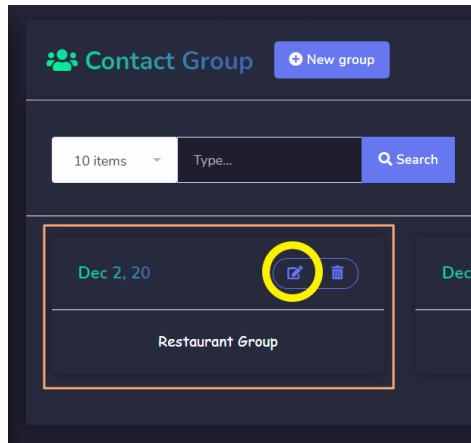



All existing groups will appear on your screen. It will provide information on your existing groups.

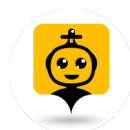
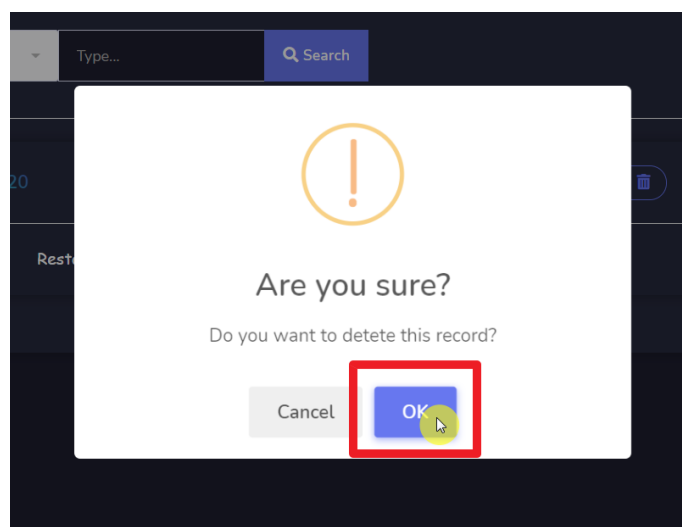
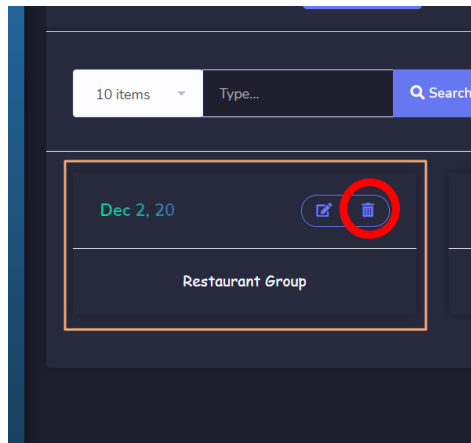
- You can adjust the number of groups to be viewed at a time.



- You can edit the group by selecting the  icon for a particular contact group.



- You can delete the group by selecting the  icon for a particular contact group.

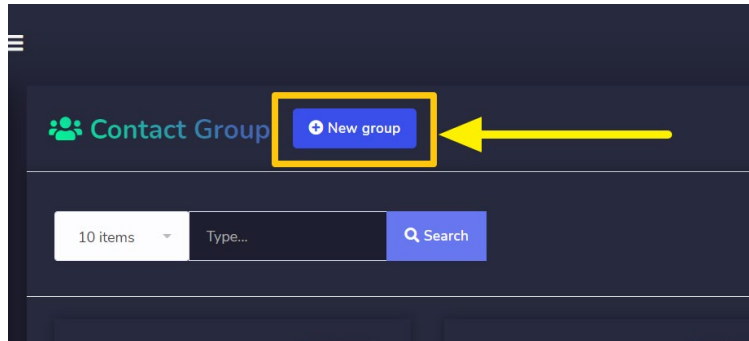




Create New Group

You can create a new group from the **Contact Group** screen. Just follow the steps given below:

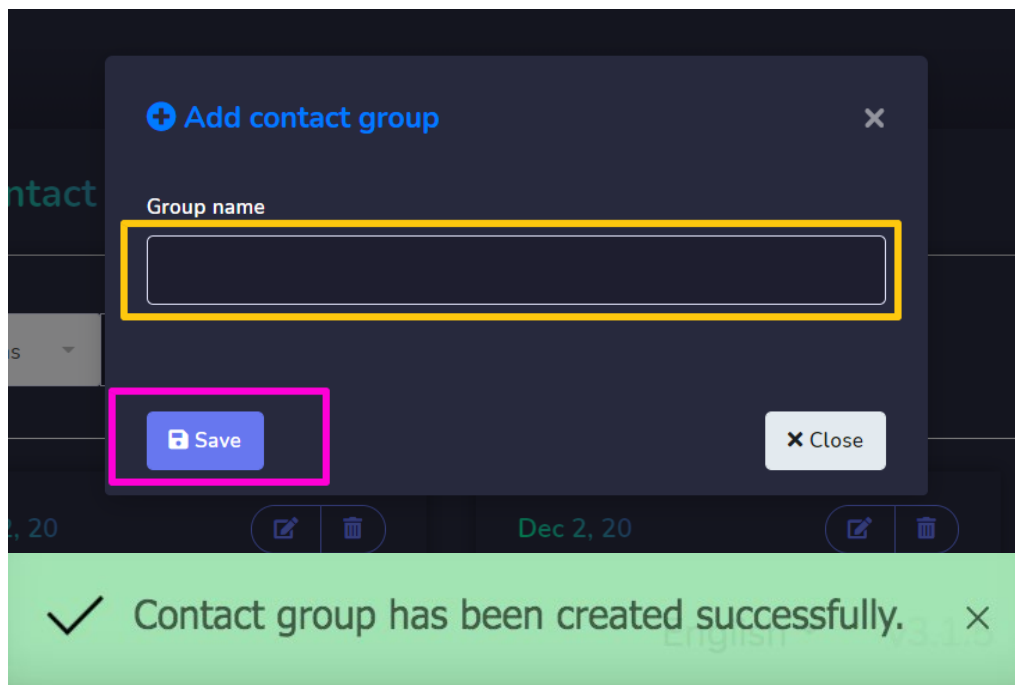
- 1) Select **New group** from the top of the Labels/tags screen.



- 2) A modal Add label will appear on the screen. You need to provide in **Add contact group** screen:

- **Group name:** a new name of the group

- 3) Select **Save**, your new group will be created successfully.



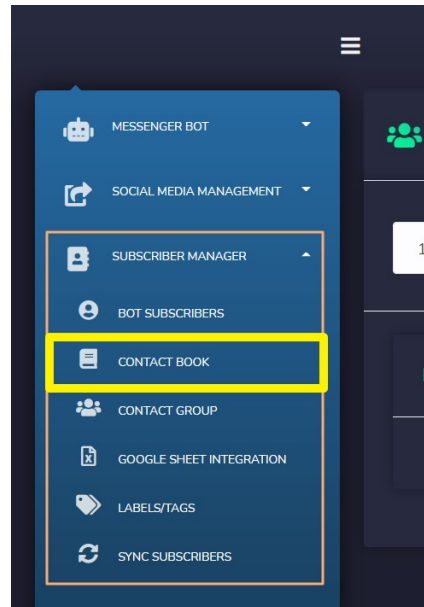
Contact Book

You can create a contact list to perform different bulk actions and manage the SMS/emails group wise. Each contact is made a part of a group.

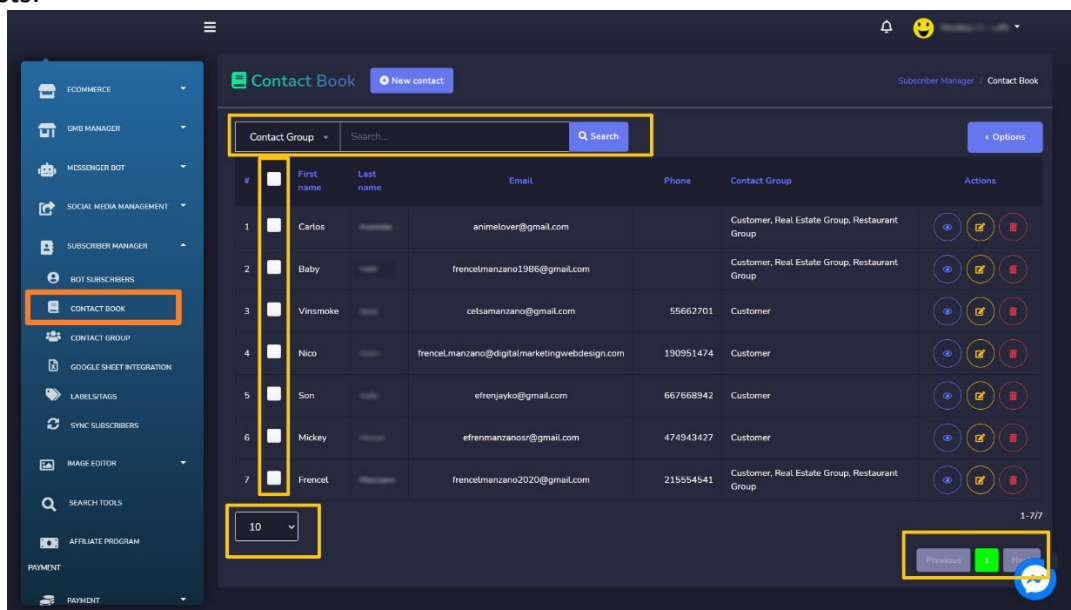




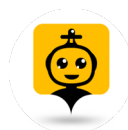
To access the contact group section, select **Contact Book** under **Subscriber Manager** located on the left navigation.

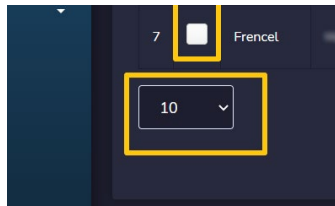


All existing contact will appear on your screen. It will provide information about your existing contacts.

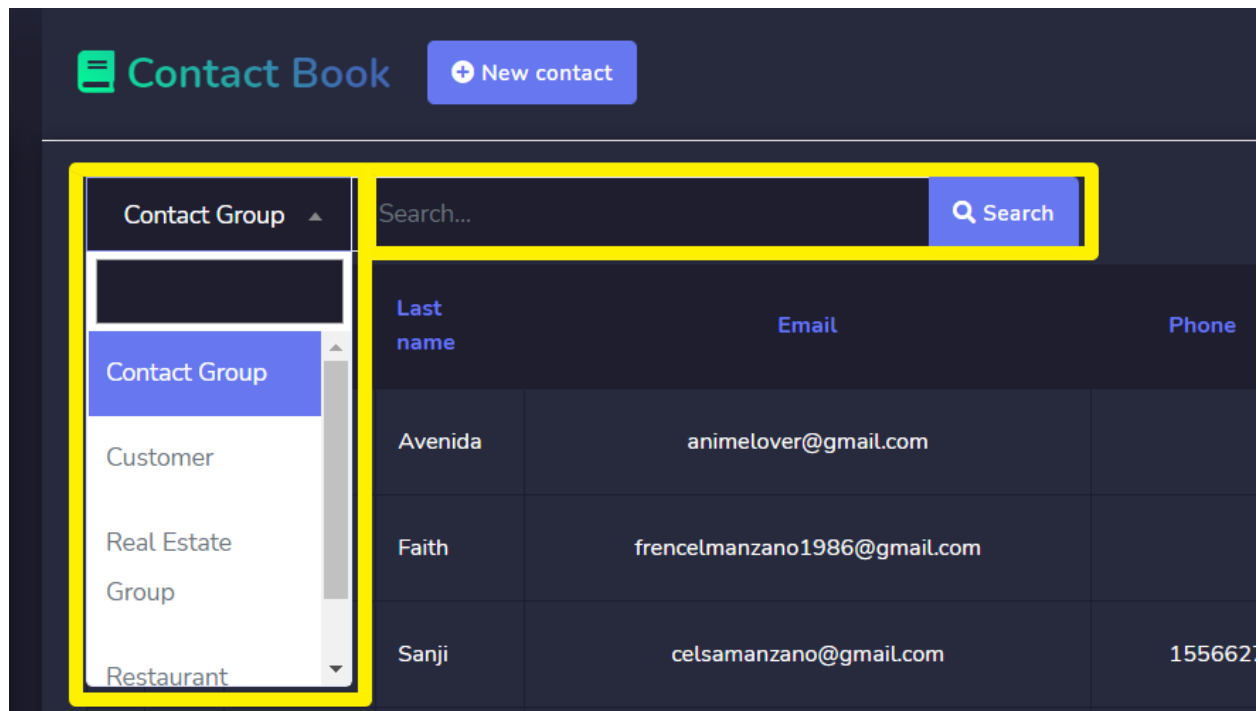


- You can adjust the number of contacts to be viewed at a time.

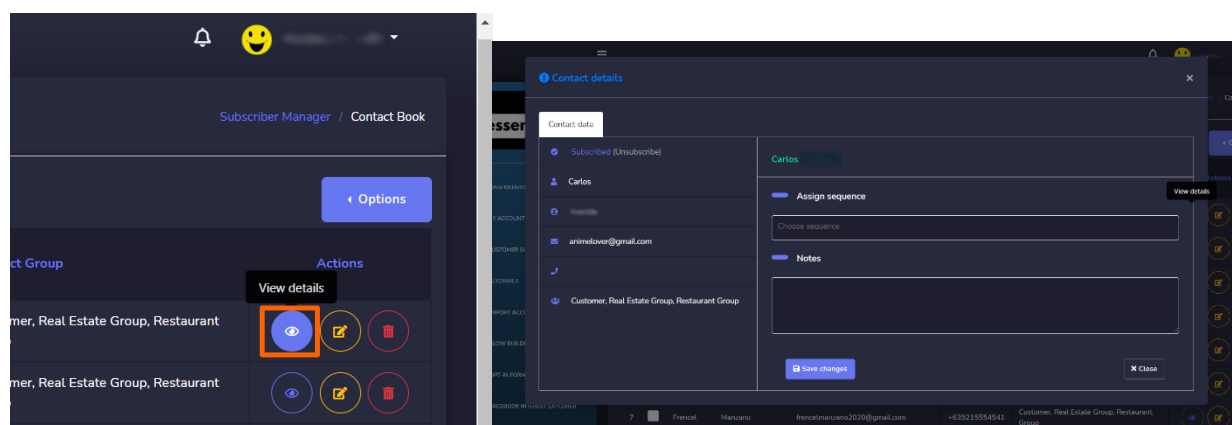




- You can search for a particular contact and contact group by using the search bar.

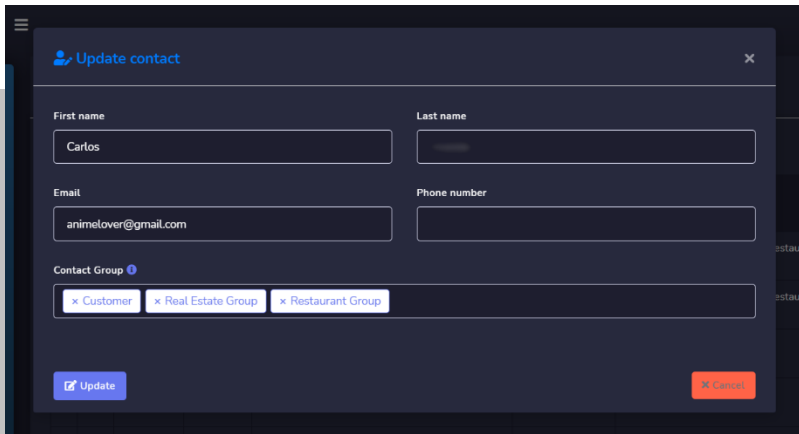
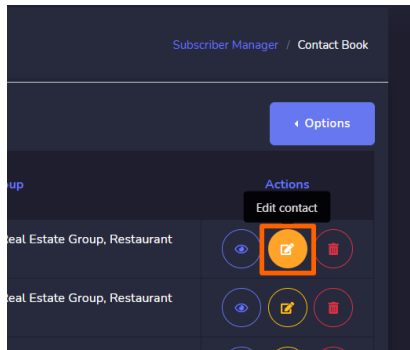


- You are able to view the contacts by selecting the  icon for a particular contact.

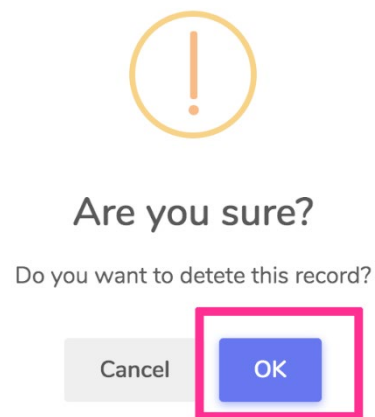
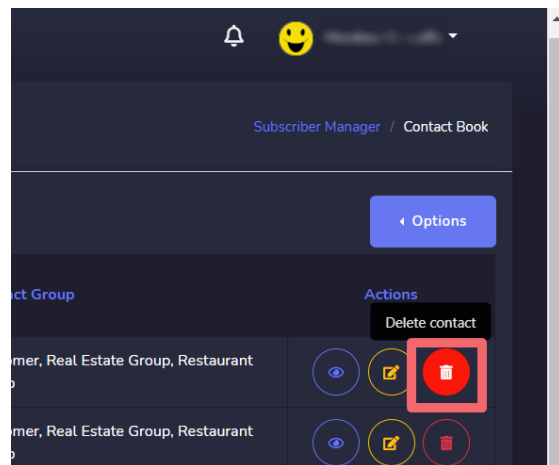


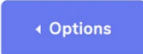
- You can edit the contacts by selecting the  icon for a particular contact.

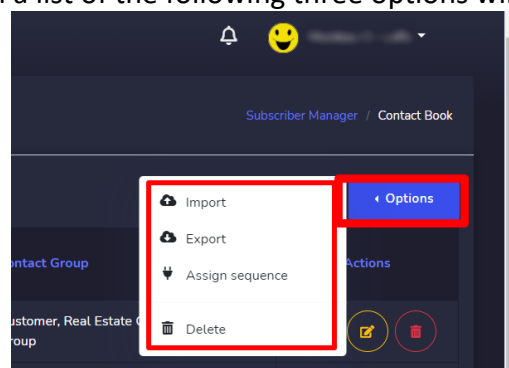




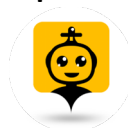
- You can delete the contacts by selecting the  icon for a particular contact.

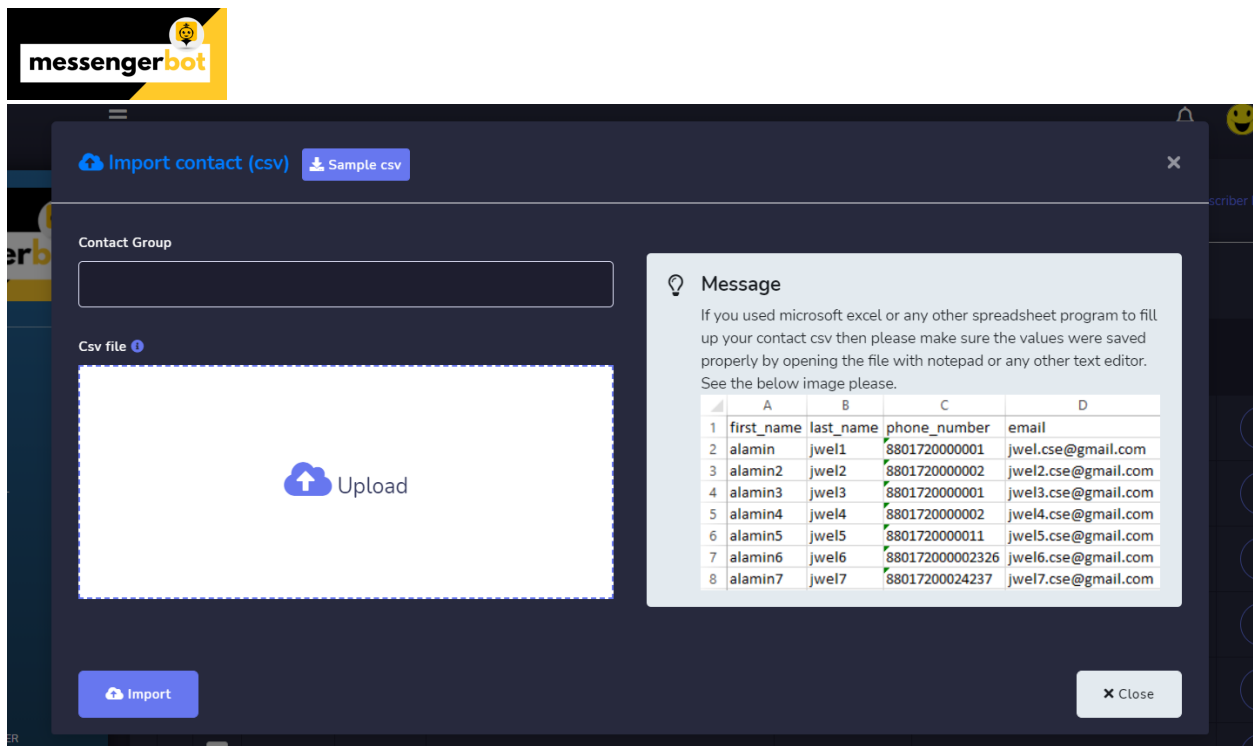


Click on  button a list of the following three options will appear:

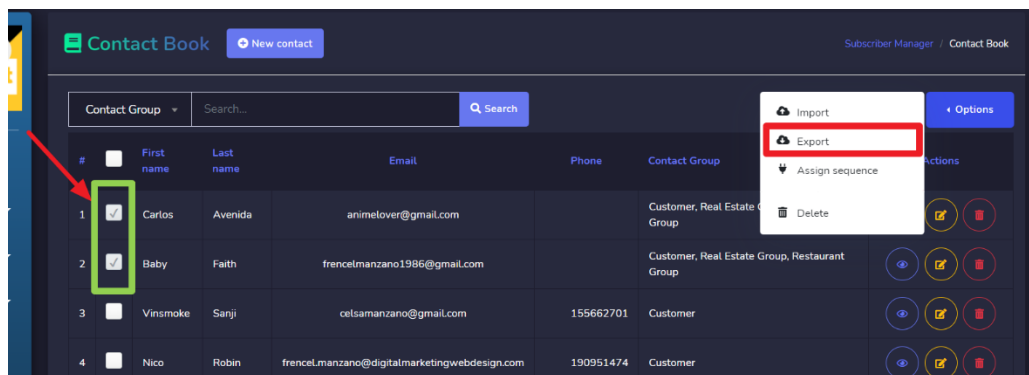


- Import**-You can import the .CSV file to import a set of contacts in application database. Provide the name of the **Contact group** and import the file into it.



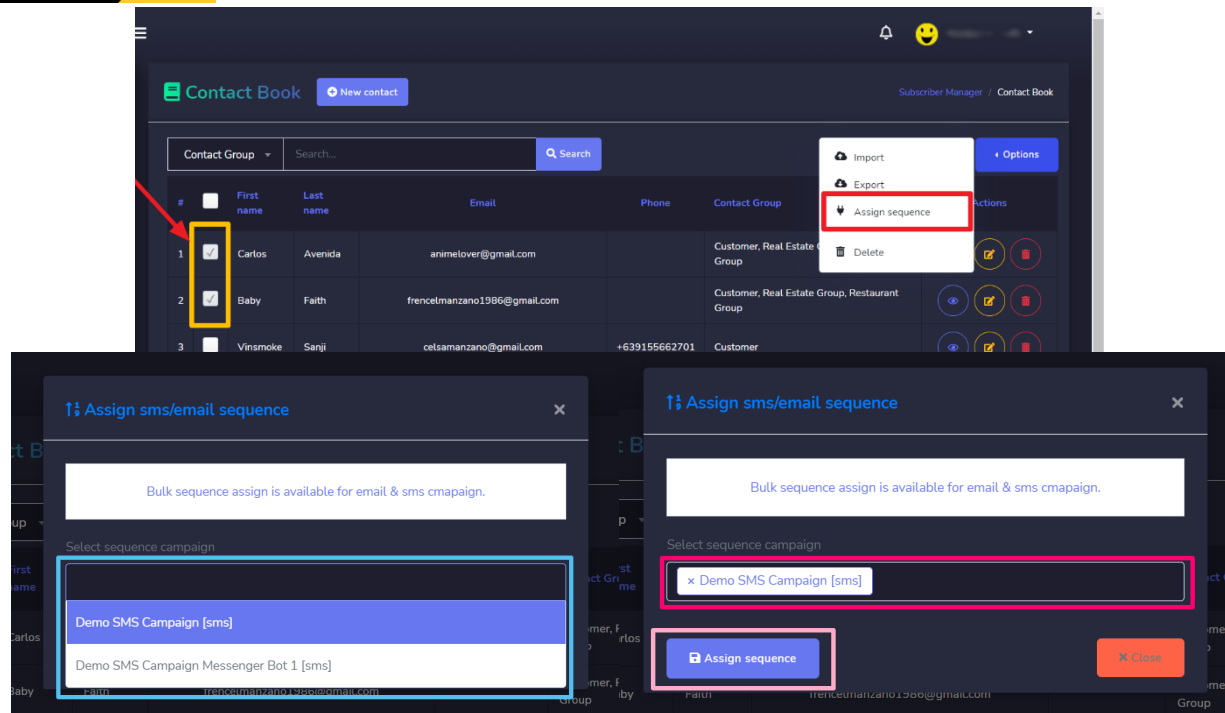


- **Export-** You can also export the .CSV file by selecting the names which you want to export. Mark the checkboxes against the contacts you plan to export.

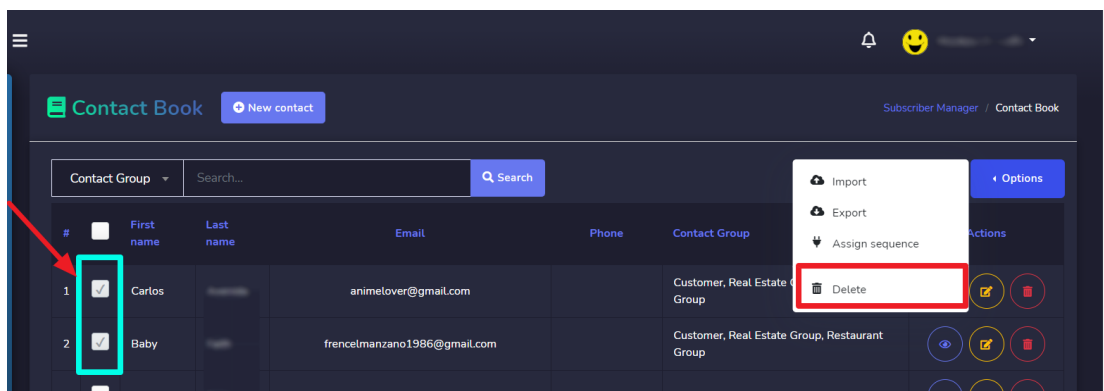


- **Assign Sequence-** You can assign the sequence to a contact by selecting the contact(s) you want to assign then click Assign sequence. Now select your sequence campaign like this as shown below, then select Assign sequence button when done.





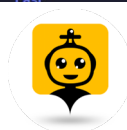
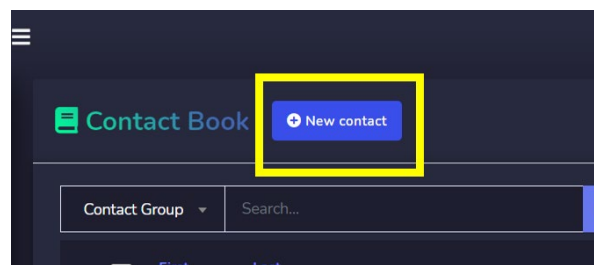
- **Delete**- You can also delete the contact by selecting the names which you want to delete. Mark the checkboxes against the contacts you want to delete.



Create New Contact

You can create a new group from the **Contact Book** screen. Just follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select **New contact** from the top of the Labels/tags screen.





2) A modal Add label will appear on the screen. You need to provide in **Add contact group** screen:

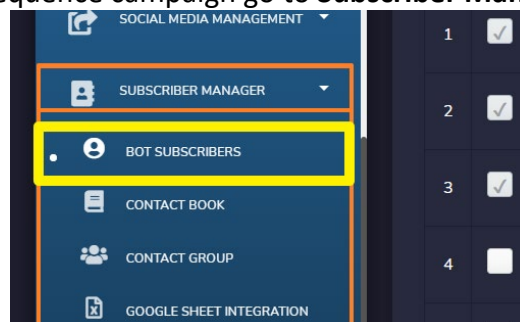
- **First name**
- **Last name**
- **Email**
- **Phone number**
- **Contact group:** to which the contact will be added

3) Select **Save**, your new contact will be created successfully.

A screenshot of a mobile application interface showing a "New contact" modal. The modal has a dark blue background with white text and input fields. It contains four input fields: "First name", "Last name", "Email", and "Phone number", each with a pink border. Below these is a "Contact Group" field with a blue information icon. At the bottom left is a blue "Save" button with a white floppy disk icon, and at the bottom right is a red "Cancel" button with a white 'X' icon. Below the modal, a "Contact Group" section is visible with a blue information icon and a white input field. At the bottom of this section, a blue "Save" button with a white floppy disk icon is highlighted with a red rectangle.

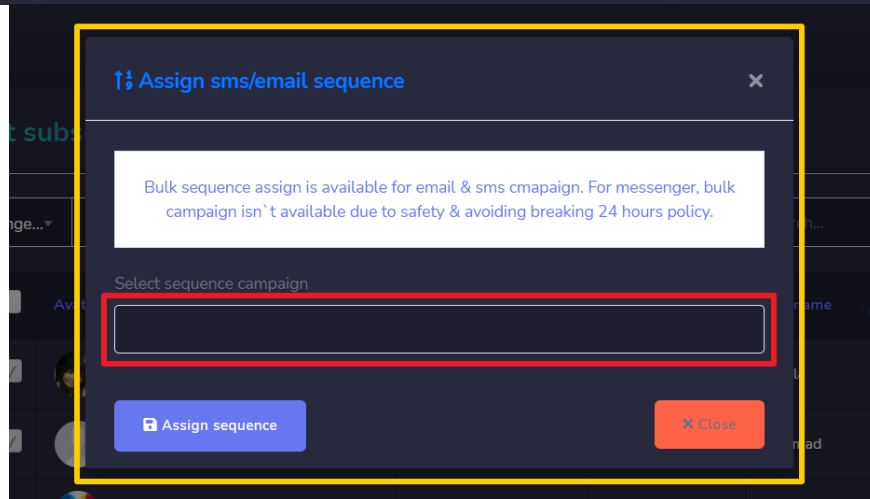
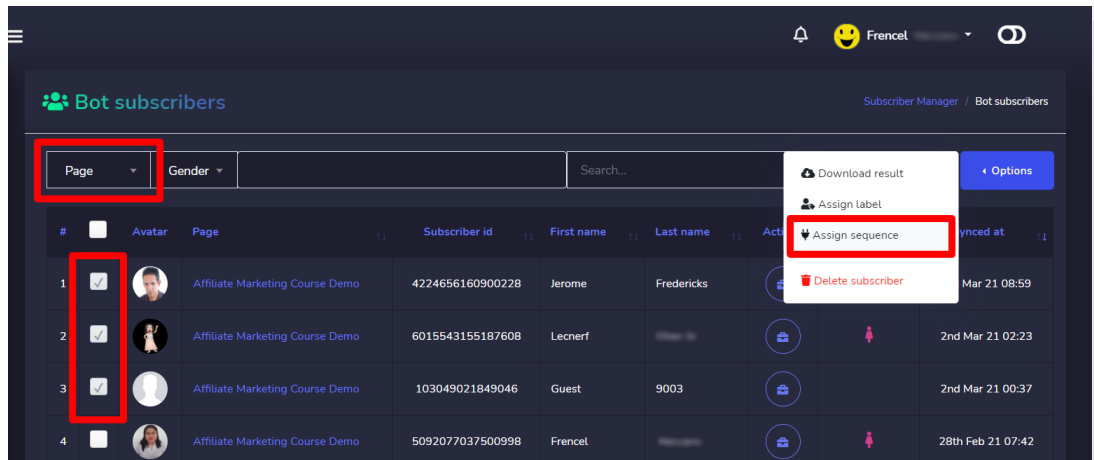
Bulk Assign Email SMS Sequence Campaign

To assign bulk email/sms sequence campaign go to **Subscriber Manager -> Bot Subscribers**,

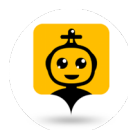
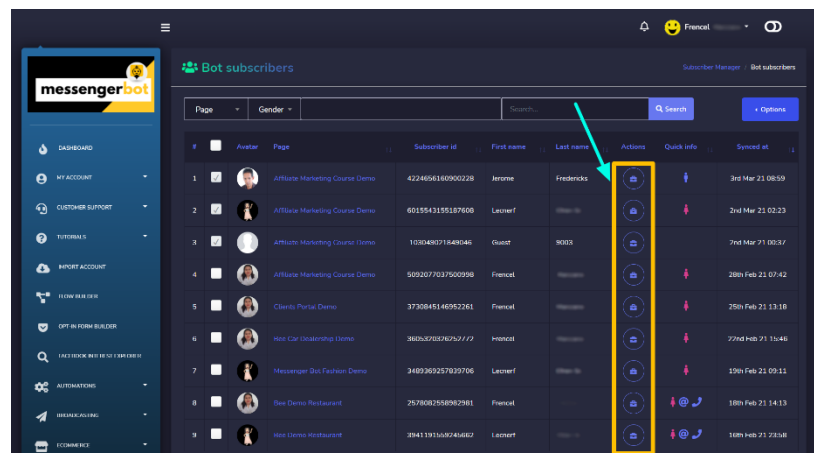




select your **page** and select your **bot subscriber(s)**, either 1 or more. Then choose **Assign Sequence** from the Option button. Select **sequence campaigns** and hit **Assign Sequence** button to save.

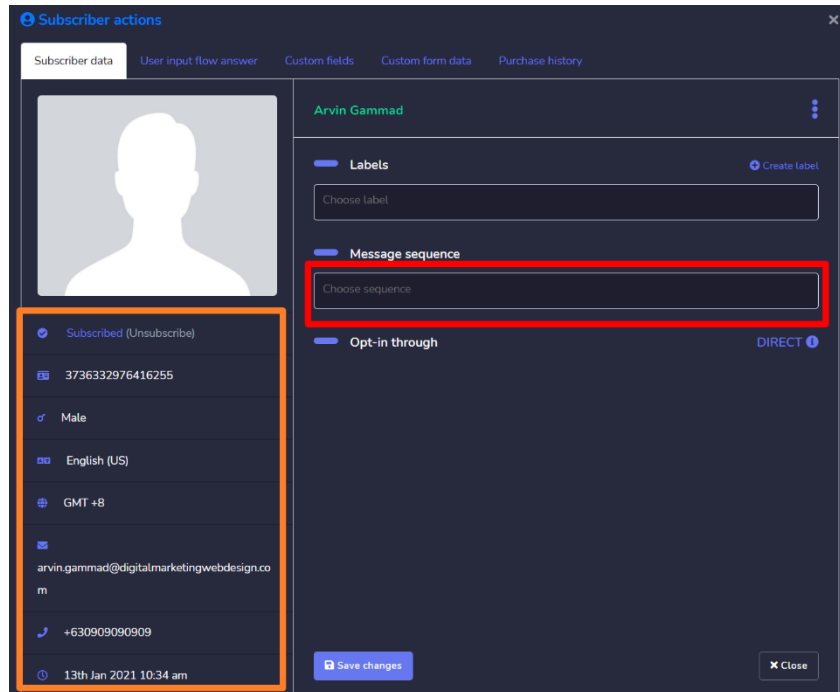


See the assigned sequence on the subscriber's details modal by click on the subscriber's action button.





You can also assign sequence campaigns manually to subscribers by click on the individual Subscribers action button.

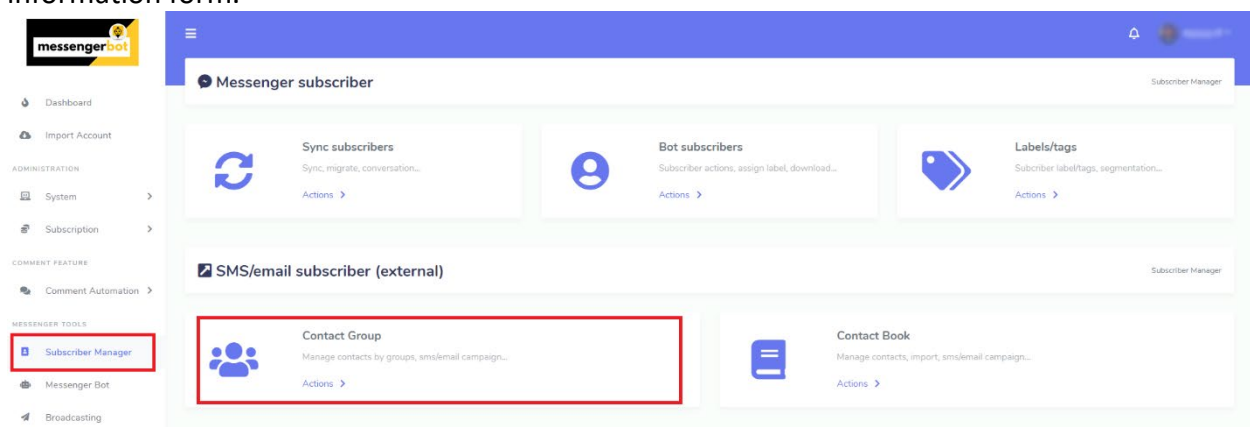


How to Import External Email SMS contact in Messenger Bot.App:

You can add contact (Email, Phone Number) in Messenger Bot.App in two ways.

1. Manual Contact Add
2. Contact Import From CSV File Upload

For both, you must have contact group. So please, first of all, go to Subscriber Manager -> Contact Group menu and add your contact groups. Groups will be shown in the contact information form.





Contact Group

New group

Subscriber Manager / Contact Group

10 items Type... Search

Jan 15, 20		
SFSFSF		
Nov 5, 19		
Boss		
Nov 5, 19		
dddd'fdfd		

Manual Contact Add:

To add email contact manually, go to **Subscriber Manage** -> **Contact Book** menu and click on the **New Contact** button add your contact by providing the required information.

Contact Book

New contact

Subscriber Manager / Contact Book

Contact Group ▾

Search...

Search

Options

#	<input type="checkbox"/>	First name	Last name	Email	Phone	Contact Group	Actions
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	66			323	Group 2	<div><div></div><div></div></div>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	fffd	fdfdf	fdffd@gmail.com		Group 2, Group 3	<div><div></div><div></div></div>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	dddd	sdsdsf	ddd@gmail.com	132	Group 3, Group 4	<div><div></div><div></div></div>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	test	user	test@gmail.com		Group 2	<div><div></div><div></div></div>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	sfg	gs	gs@ff.com	eg	Group 2	<div><div></div><div></div></div>

+ Add contact group



Group name

Save

Close

Contact Import From CSV File Upload:

You can upload a huge number of email contact by uploading CSV with Messenger Bot.App. First of all go to **Subscriber Manager** -> **Contact List** menu and click on option dropdown, select **Import**. A modal form will appear for CSV file upload. Messenger Bot.App has a format of csv





file. So you've to upload contact csv file with that format. Please download the sample csv file and create your csv file as the sample.

Contact Book [New contact](#) Subscriber Manager / Contact Book

Contact Group ▾ Search... [Search](#)

#	<input type="checkbox"/>	First name	Last name	Email	Phone	Contact Group
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	66			323	Group 2

[Import](#) [Export](#) [Delete](#) [Options](#)

[Import contact \(csv\)](#) [Sample csv](#)

Contact Group

Csv file [?](#)

[Upload](#)

Message

If you used microsoft excel or any other spreadsheet program to fill up your contact csv then please make sure the values were saved properly by opening the file with notepad or any other text editor. See the below image please.

	A	B	C	D
1	first_name	last_name	phone_number	email
2	a	1	8801720000001	.cse@gmail.com
3	a	2	8801720000002	2.cse@gmail.com
4	a	3	8801720000001	3.cse@gmail.com
5	a	4	8801720000002	4.cse@gmail.com
6	a	5	8801720000011	5.cse@gmail.com
7	a	6	880172000002326	5.cse@gmail.com
8	a	7	88017200024237	7.cse@gmail.com

[Import](#) [Close](#)

Email Phone Opt-in Form Builder

Getting Subscribers through an opt-in form from an external site is very common. But the most exciting part of this add-on is beside collecting subscribers through an opt-in form, it's providing the freedom of making opt-in forms by drag & drop the fields. The form will generate an embedded URL which you can use your site or any site from where you want to collect email/phone subscribers into your Messenger Bot application.

Manage Opt-in Form

To use an opt-in form, first of all, you've to create the form first. So to get the opt-in form section, please go to **Subscriber Manager -> Email/Phone Opt-in Form** section.



Dashboard
Import Account
ADMINISTRATION
System
Subscription
COMMENT FEATURE
Comment Automation
Comment Automation
MESSENGER TOOLS
Subscriber Manager
Messenger Bot

SMS/email subscriber (external)

Subscriber Manager

Contact Group
Manage contacts by groups, sms/email campaign...
Actions

Contact Book
Manage contacts, import, sms/email campaign...
Actions

Opt-in Form Builder
Custom Subscribers opt-in Form builder.
Actions

Build Opt-in Form

Email/Phone Opt-in section will allow you to build, view, update, and also will be able to delete the form in the very easiest way from the actions section of the Form Lists table. press on **Create Opt-in Form** button and a form will appear with some required information fields and drag & drop form builder.

★ Email/Phone Opt-in Form Builder

[+ Create opt-in form](#)

Subscriber Manager / Email/Phone Opt-in Form Builder

Search...

Name	Embedded code	Form position	Interval time(sec)	Contact Groups	Created at	Actions
Form 4		Direct	0	10th Bari Shop Campaign	Oct 1, 2020 12:35 PM	View Form Edit Delete
Form 3		Fixed	0	Boss, Hello	Oct 1, 2020 12:34 PM	
Form 2		Bottom-right	1 sec	Group 6, Group 7	Oct 1, 2020 12:22 PM	
Form 1		Center	0.5 sec	Group 1, Group 4, Group 3	Oct 1, 2020 06:19 AM	

10

1-4/4

[Previous](#)
[1](#)
[Next](#)

In the form you'll have to fill up some required information with form builder options. A short description on form's field are given below.



+ Create Email/Phone Opt-in Form

[Subscriber Manager](#) / [Email/Phone Opt-in Form Builder](#) / [Create opt-in form](#)

Form name ⓘ

Contact Group ⓘ [Create group](#)

Email sequence ⓘ

Select email sequence

Sms sequence ⓘ

Select sms sequence

Form position ⓘ

Select form position

Background image (Max 1MB) ⓘ

Upload

H Header

First Name

Last Name

Email

Phone number

Subscribe button

Paragraph

☒ Agreement Text

First Name *

Enter your first name

Last Name *

Enter your Last name

Email *

Enter your Email

I agree to receive your newsletters and accept the [data privacy statement](#)

Button

Clear

Save

Form Name:

This is the form name that will only for displaying in the application's form table.

Contact Group:

In this field contact groups that had been created at the **Subscriber Manager > Contact Groups** section will be shown here. This field is a required field because subscribers who will come through the opt-in form will be added as external subscribers lists. So when a new subscriber comes by Opt-in form, he/she will be assigned to those contact groups which has been selected during form creation. You can select multiple groups, subscribers will also be assigned to multiple groups.

Anyway, you can also create a group from here too by click on **Create Group** on the right side of this field.





Email Sequence:

This field will show the email sequence campaign lists that had been created at **Broadcasting > Sequence Campaign (External Contacts)**. This section will only be available if you have an Email & SMS Sequence Campaigner: A Messenger Bot Add-On.

However this field is not required, you may select or not. If you select any email sequence campaign, then subscribers come through that form will be assigned to these sequence campaign automatically. You can see the output of what's said from the **Subscriber Manager -> Contact Book** section and click on the view icon, you'll see the assigned sequences in modal.

SMS Sequence:

As Email Sequence field this field will show the SMS sequence campaign lists that had been created at **Broadcasting > Sequence Campaign (External Contacts)**. This section will only be available if you have an Email & SMS Sequence Campaigner: A Messenger Bot Add-On.

However this field is not required, you may select or not. If you select any SMS sequence campaign, then subscribers come through that form will be assigned to these sequence campaign automatically. You can see the output of what's said from the **Subscriber Manager > Contact Book** section and click on the view icon, you'll see the assigned sequences in modal.

Form Position:

This field is a required field. Besides building a form, you will also have the facilities of selecting at which position you want to make visible your form. Anyway, there are four types of positions which are :

1. Bottom-right: If you select the Bottom-right position, then your form will be visible at the bottom-right position of the site where you put this embedded form.
2. Center Position: If you select Center position, then your form will be visible at the Center position of the site where you put this embedded form.
3. Fixed Position: If you select the Bottom-right position, then your form will be visible at the fixed position of the site where you put this embedded form.
4. Direct URL: This is not a position type. It's different from the above three positions. If you select this position, then you'll get a URL, through this URL you or your user can directly access the created form. Copy the URL and paste it into your browser and you'll see your created form.





⊕ Create Email/Phone Opt-in Form

[Subscriber Manager](#) / [Email/Phone Opt-in Form Builder](#) / [Create opt-in form](#)

Form name ⓘ <input type="text"/>	Contact Group ⓘ <input type="text"/> + Create group
Email sequence ⓘ <input type="text" value="Select email sequence"/>	Sms sequence ⓘ <input type="text" value="Select sms sequence"/>
Form position ⓘ <input type="text" value="Bottom-Right"/>	Background image (Max 1MB) ⓘ <input type="button" value="Upload"/>
Interval time ⓘ <input type="text"/>	

Time Interval:

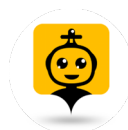
Time interval refers to after how much time your form will be visible and it will work as a second, for example, if you put 1 in the field then the form will be visible after 1 second. At the initial stage of the form, this field won't be shown. Time interval is required for Bottom-right and Center position.

Background Image: This field is optional. If you upload an image, then this image will be used as the background image of the form body.

Form Builder

Build your Opt-in Form with the beautiful drag & drop form builder. There are two sections in the builder body, one is a sidebar with draggable & droppable options at left and another is for the options field at right.

H Header	First Name * <input type="text" value="Enter your first name"/>
First Name	Last Name * <input type="text" value="Enter your Last name"/>
Last Name	Email * <input type="text" value="Enter your Email"/>
Email	I agree to receive your newsletters and accept the data privacy statement
Phone number	<input type="button" value="Button"/>
Subscribe button	
Paragraph	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Agreement Text	
<input type="button" value="Clear"/> <input type="button" value="Save"/>	





Drag & Drop Options:

As it's called Email Phone Opt-in form builder, so there are several options are available to build a standard form for subscriber's email or phone collection.

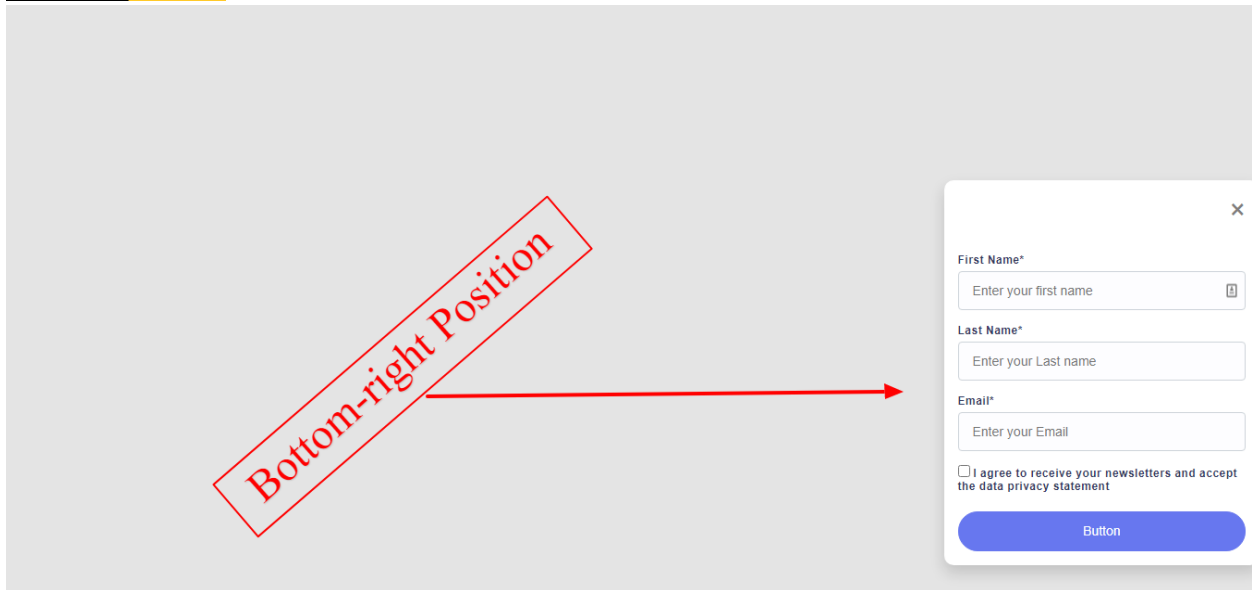
- Header: Drag & drop header option for Form header. You can choose different header types.
- Paragraph: Drag & Drop paragraph as a text field to set short information for the form.
- First Name: Drag & Drop First Name option to set and get the first name of the Subscriber. You can make it required or not by editing the field.
- Last Name: Drag & Drop last Name option to set and get the last name of the Subscriber. You can make it required or not by editing the field.
- Email: Drag & Drop email option to set and get the email address of the Subscriber. You can make it required or not by editing the field.
- Phone Number: Drag & Drop Phone Number option to set and get the phone number of the Subscriber. You can make it required or not by editing the field.
- Agreement Text: Drag & Drop this field to make the subscribers agreed with your terms & conditions or any other agreement, so before check they can't submit the form.
- Subscriber Button: After all, now the form needs a submit button, so drag & drop the Subscribe Button and update the button name by editing the button option. You can choose different types of button colors.

The screenshot displays the 'messengerbot' form builder interface. On the left, a sidebar lists available components: Header, First Name, Last Name, Email, Phone number, Subscribe button, Paragraph, and Agreement Text. Each component has a red circle and an arrow pointing to its corresponding element in the form preview on the right. The form preview is titled 'Welcome to Our Site' and includes a subtitle 'Subscribe to our newsletter to get regular updates on our products and upcoming updates.' The form fields are: First Name (with a red asterisk), Last Name (with a red asterisk), Email (with a red asterisk), and Phone number (with a red asterisk). Below these fields is an agreement text: 'I agree to receive your newsletters and accept the [data privacy statement](#)'. At the bottom is a blue 'Subscribe' button. A red box labeled 'Field Actions Button' is located in the top right corner of the form preview, containing icons for delete, edit, and duplicate.

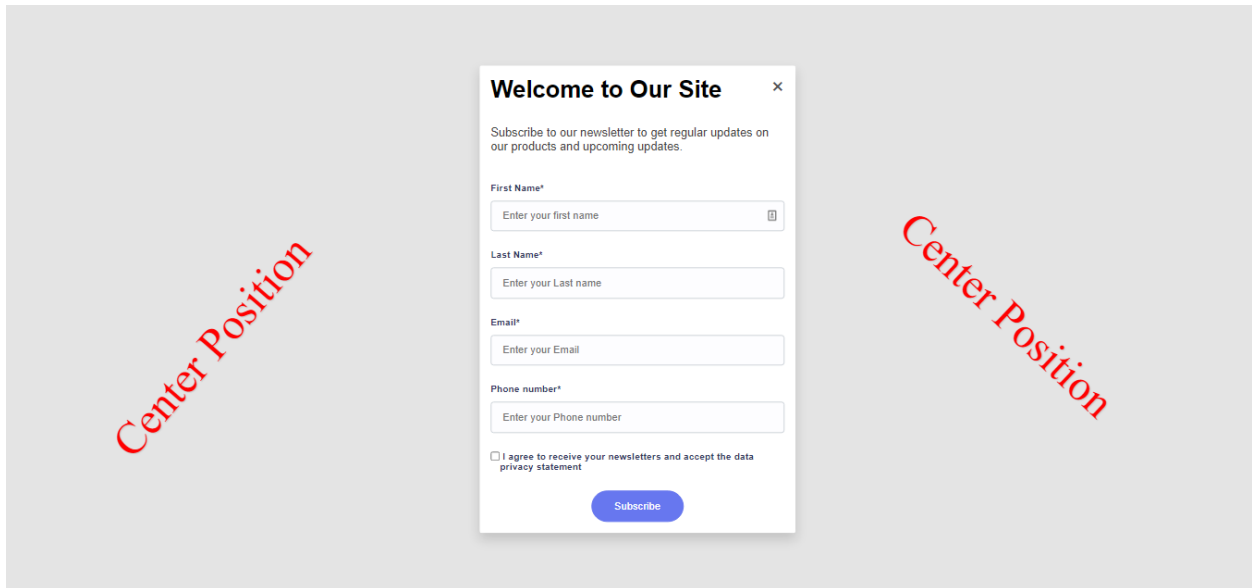
Form Examples

1. Bottom-right Position






2. Center Position



3. Fixed Position



A screenshot of a newsletter subscription form. At the top right is a close button (X). Below it is a label "Email*" followed by a text input field containing the placeholder text "Enter your Email". Below the input field is a checkbox with the text "I agree to receive your newsletters and accept the data privacy statement". At the bottom is a red button labeled "Subscribe".

✕

Email*

Enter your Email

☐ I agree to receive your newsletters and accept the data privacy statement

Subscribe

Fixed Position

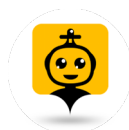
4. Direct URL

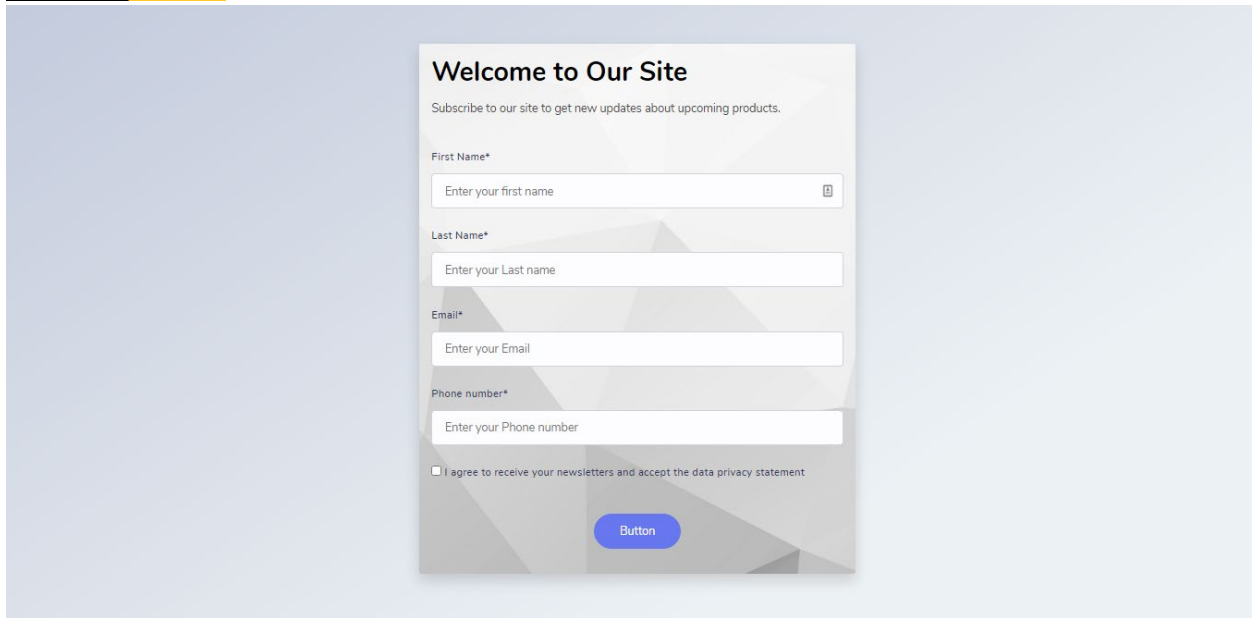
The screenshot shows a web browser window. The address bar at the top contains 'example.com', which is highlighted with a red rectangular box. A large red arrow points from the text 'Direct URL' below to this box. The main content area displays a 'Welcome to Our Site' form. A red arrow points from the text 'Rendered Form' on the right to the form itself. The form includes fields for 'First Name*', 'Last Name*', 'Email*', and 'Phone number*', each with a placeholder text 'Enter your...'. There is also a checkbox for 'I agree to receive your newsletters and accept the data privacy statement' and a blue 'Subscribe' button at the bottom.

Direct URL

Rendered Form

5. Form With Background Image





Welcome to Our Site

Subscribe to our site to get new updates about upcoming products.

First Name*

Enter your first name

Last Name*

Enter your Last name

Email*

Enter your Email

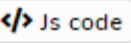
Phone number*

Enter your Phone number

☐ I agree to receive your newsletters and accept the data privacy statement

Button

How to Use Embedded URL & Direct URL

After Build a form, click on the  from the embedded Column, a modal will appear with the embedded URL. Now copy the embedded URL and then paste it into your website where you want to show this form.

Note: If you copy the direct positioned URL, then you've to copy it and then paste it into your browser to get the form.

Name	Embedded code	Form position	Interval time(sec)	Contact Groups	Created at	Actions
example 3		Fixed	0	dasdsad	Oct 4, 2020 10:48 AM	  
Exmapple 2		Bottom-right	1 sec	Updated Contact Group	Oct 4, 2020 09:29 AM	  
example 1		Center	1 sec	Group 1	Oct 4, 2020 09:22 AM	  
Form 4		Direct	0	10th Shop Campaign	Oct 1, 2020 12:35 PM	  
Form 3		Fixed	0	Boss, Hello	Oct 1, 2020 12:34 PM	  
Form 2		Bottom-right	1 sec	Group 6, Group 7	Oct 1, 2020 12:22 PM	  
Form 1		Center	0.5 sec	Group 1, Group 4, Group 3	Oct 1, 2020 06:19 AM	  





Get embed code

Copy the code below and paste inside the html element of your webpage where you want to display this plugin.

```
<div class="bg-modal" id="demo"></div><script type="text/javascript" src="https://example.com/"></script>
```

Copy this URL

Close

Form	Js code	Position	Delay	Groups	Date	Actions
Form 2	</div><script type="text/javascript" src="https://example.com/"></script>	Bottom-right	1 sec	Group 6, Group 7	Oct 1, 2020 12:22 PM	View Edit Delete
Form 1	</div><script type="text/javascript" src="https://example.com/"></script>	Center	0.5 sec	Group 1, Group 4, Group 3	Oct 1, 2020 06:19 AM	View Edit Delete

1-7/7

Previous 1 Next

Get embed code

Copy the below URL and paste it into your browser tab to get your Page.

https://example.com

Direct URL

Close

Form	Js code	Position	Delay	Groups	Date	Actions
Form 2	</div><script type="text/javascript" src="https://example.com/"></script>	Bottom-right	1 sec	Group 6, Group 7	Oct 1, 2020 12:22 PM	View Edit Delete
Form 1	</div><script type="text/javascript" src="https://example.com/"></script>	Center	0.5 sec	Group 1, Group 4, Group 3	Oct 1, 2020 06:19 AM	View Edit Delete



1-7/7

Previous 1 Next

Opt-in Form Subscribers


As they are subscribed from external source, so they will be stored as external subscriber's inside the application. You can see your opt-in form subscribers lists at **Subscriber Manager > Contact Book** Section.









Dashboard
Import Account
ADMINISTRATION
System
Subscription
COMMENT FEATURE
Comment Automation
Comment Automation
MESSENGER TOOLS
Subscriber Manager
Messenger Bot

SMS/email subscriber (external)
Subscriber Manager


Contact Group
Manage contacts by groups, sms/email campaign...
Actions


Contact Book
Manage contacts, import, sms/email campaign...
Actions


Email/Phone Opt-in Form Builder
Custom Subscribers opt-in Form builder.
Actions


Contact Book
New contact

Subscriber Manager / Contact Book

Contact Group
Search...
Search
Options

#	<input type="checkbox"/>	First name	Last name	Email	Phone	Contact Group	Actions
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	John	Doe		88 2421 32152415	10th Shop Campaign	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Michael	Bolton		0172224816054	Group 6, Group 7	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Test	User		880172556568	Updated Contact Group	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	Moti	Mia		0171839535	Updated Contact Group	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	uncle			0123456789	Group 1	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>

10
1-5/5

Now you can use these subscribers for sending Bulk Email/SMS or you can assign them manually to Email/SMS sequence campaign.





How To Pause & Resume A Messenger BOT For a Specific Subscriber

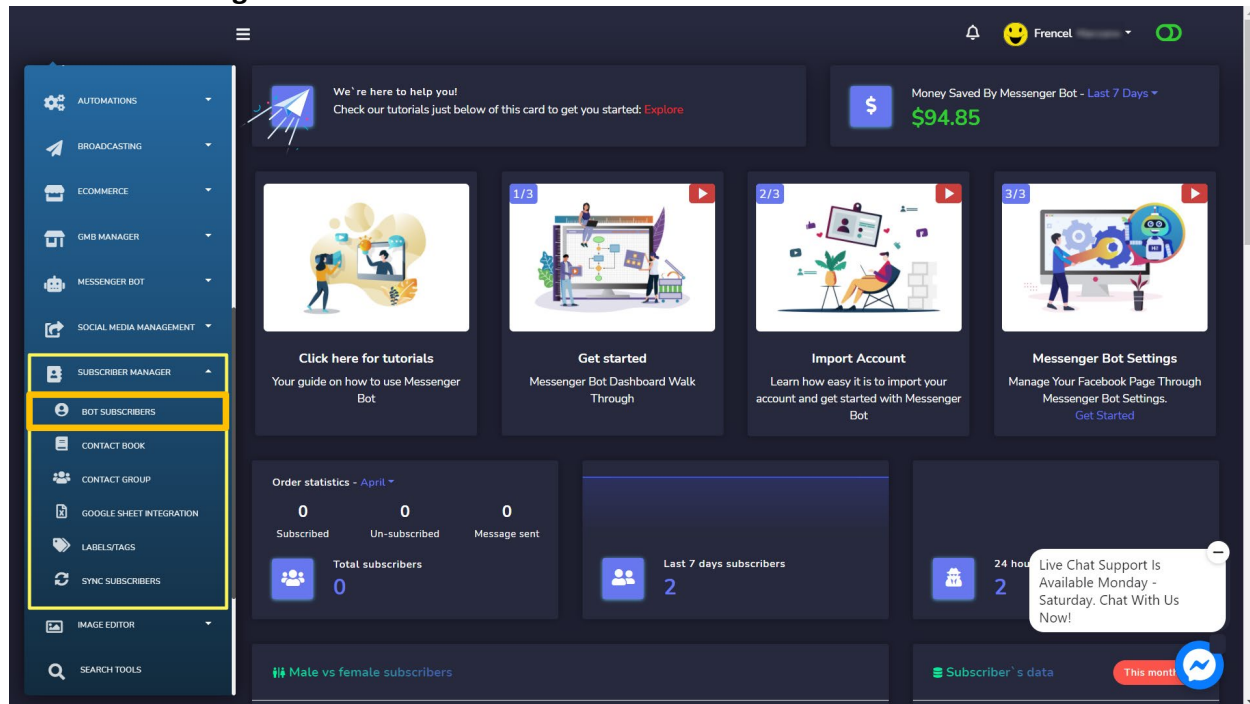
Once in a while, you may want to stop the Messenger Bot for a specific subscriber and take control over the chat. You can not just stop the Bot, if you stop the bot then the bot will stop working for everyone. There are two ways, you can pause and resume the bot for a specific person or subscriber.

You can do it from the Subscriber Manager and the Messenger Bot settings.

From Subscriber Manager:

First, go to the dashboard of Messenger Bot, in the left navigation menu you will find the **Subscriber Manager** option, click on that, & the Subscriber Manager interface will appear, click on the **Bot Subscriber**.

Subscriber Manager > Bot Subscriber.



As soon as you click on **Bot Subscriber** you can see a list of subscribers. From the list, you can **select a specific subscriber to pause or resume the bot for**. **Select the subscriber and click on the action button** to pause or resume the bot for that specific subscriber



Bot subscribers

Subscriber Manager / Bot subscribers

Page Gender Search... Search Options

#	Avatar	Page	Subscriber id	First name	Last name	Actions	Quick Info	Synced at
1		Real Estate Messenger Bot	3983449368368183	Lecnerf	Efren Sr.			31st Mar 21 15:48
2		Bee Car Dealership Demo	5311643532210189	Lecnerf	Efren Sr.			26th Mar 21 09:09
3		Affiliate Marketing Course Demo	3913587402038063	Subin	Babu			11th Mar 21 19:39
4		Real Estate Messenger Bot	3810492959029640	Frencel	Manzano			11th Mar 21 08:19
5		Hire Us - Cleaning 4 U	3826512604101094	Frencel	Manzano			6th Mar 21 03:49
6		Affiliate Marketing Course Demo	358703554755584	Arvin	Gammad			3rd Mar 21 21:08
7		Affiliate Marketing Course Demo	4224656160900228	Jerome	Fredericks			3rd Mar 21 08:59
8		Affiliate Marketing Course Demo	6015543155187608	Lecnerf	Efren Sr.			2nd Mar 21 02:23
9		Affiliate Marketing Course Demo	103049021849046	Guest	9003			2nd Mar 21 00:37
10		Affiliate Marketing Course Demo	5092077037500998	Frencel	Manzano			28th Feb 21 07:42

https://start.messengerbot.app/subscriber_manager/bot_subscribers

When you click on the **action button**, a page will appear with all the **details of the subscriber**.

Subscriber actions

Click here to see options

Subscriber data User input flow answer Custom fields Custom form data Purchase history

Lecnerf Efren Sr.

Labels Create label

Choose label

Message sequence

Choose sequence

Opt-in through DIRECT

Save changes Close

Subscribed (Unsubscribe)

3983449368368183

Female

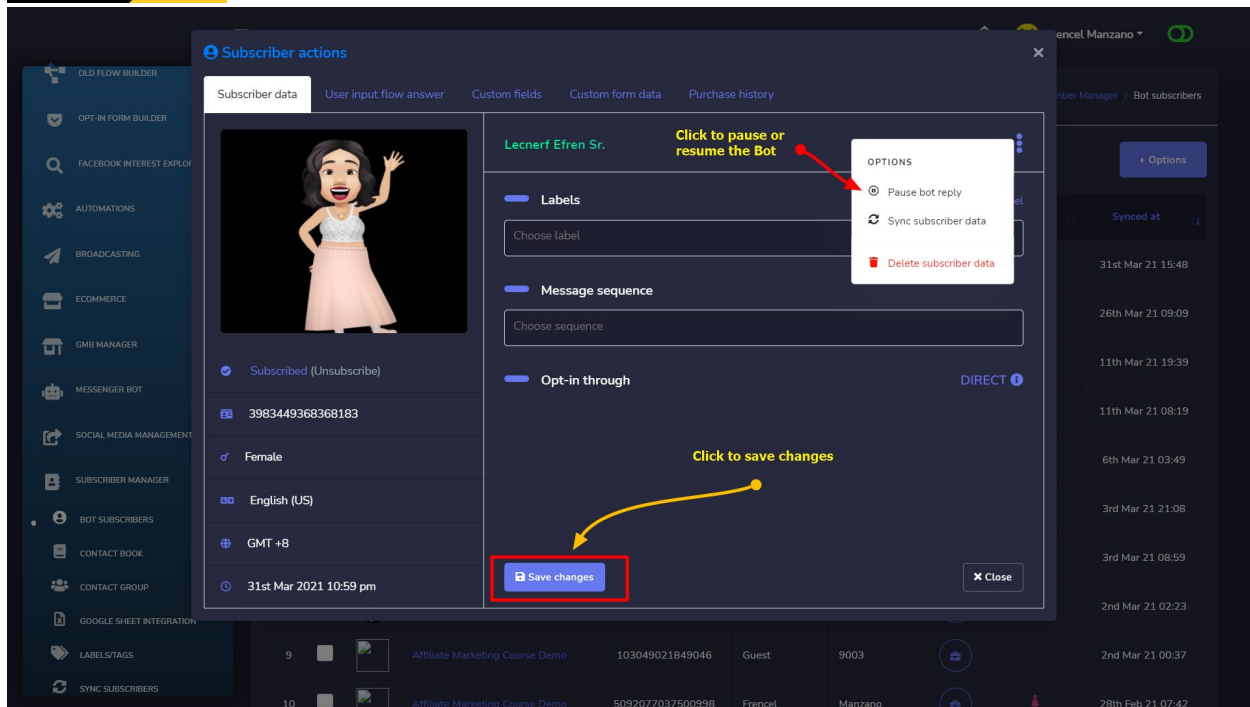
English (US)

GMT +8

31st Mar 2021 10:59 pm

On the **right side** of the Subscriber's name there is a **3 dot button**, click on that **button** to get the options to pause and resume the bot for this specific subscriber. You can **pause and resume the bot for this subscriber** from here.

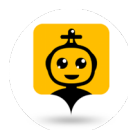
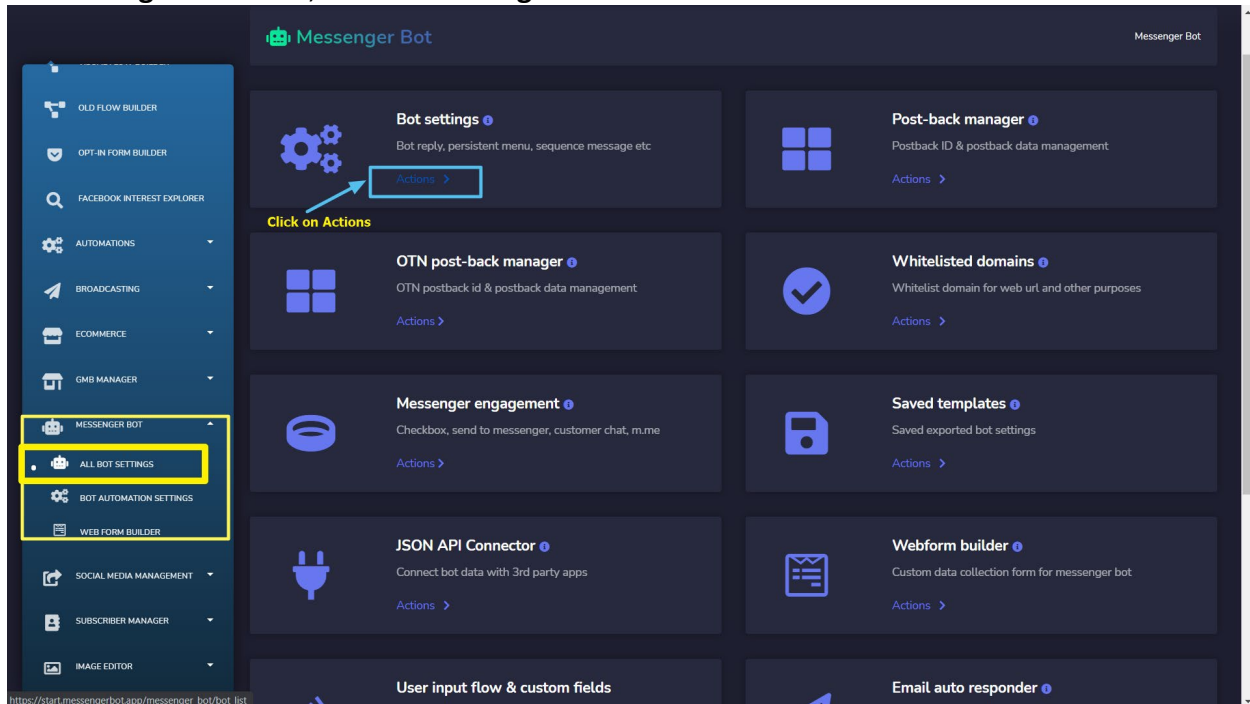




Now from Messenger Bot:

You can pause and resume the bot from Postback template, Keyword-based template, and get started template.

From the **left navigation menu of Messenger Bot's dashboard**, click on **Messenger Bot** then **All Bot Settings**. After that, click **Bot settings' Action**.





it could be your keyword-based bot or Get started bot. For keyword-based bot click on the **action button** and then **click on edit bot reply**.

Bot settings

Pages

Search...

Bee Car Dealership Demo

Bot reply settings

Variables

Options

Click to edit your bot

Add bot reply

Sl	Bot name	Keywords	Status	Type	Actions
1	Car Dealership 1	Car, Car Rental, Deale...	Live	Flow builder	

10

Previous 1 Next

For Get started template click on **Action Button Settings** and then go to **Get started template** to edit the bot reply.

Bot settings

Pages

Search...

Bee Car Dealership Demo

Bot reply settings

Variables

Options

Click to edit the Bot

Add bot reply

Sl	Bot name	Keywords	Status	Type	Actions
1	Car Dealership 1	Car, Car Rental, Deale...	Live	Flow builder	

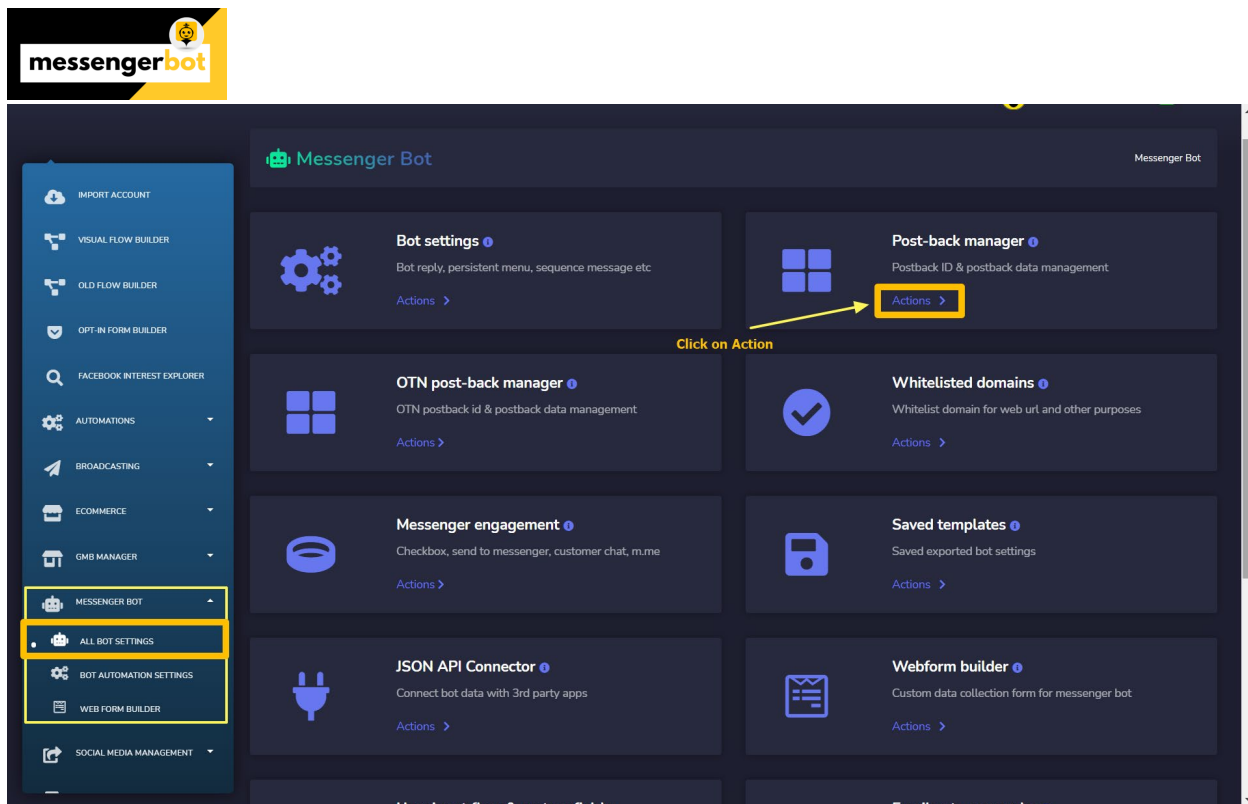
10

Previous 1 Next

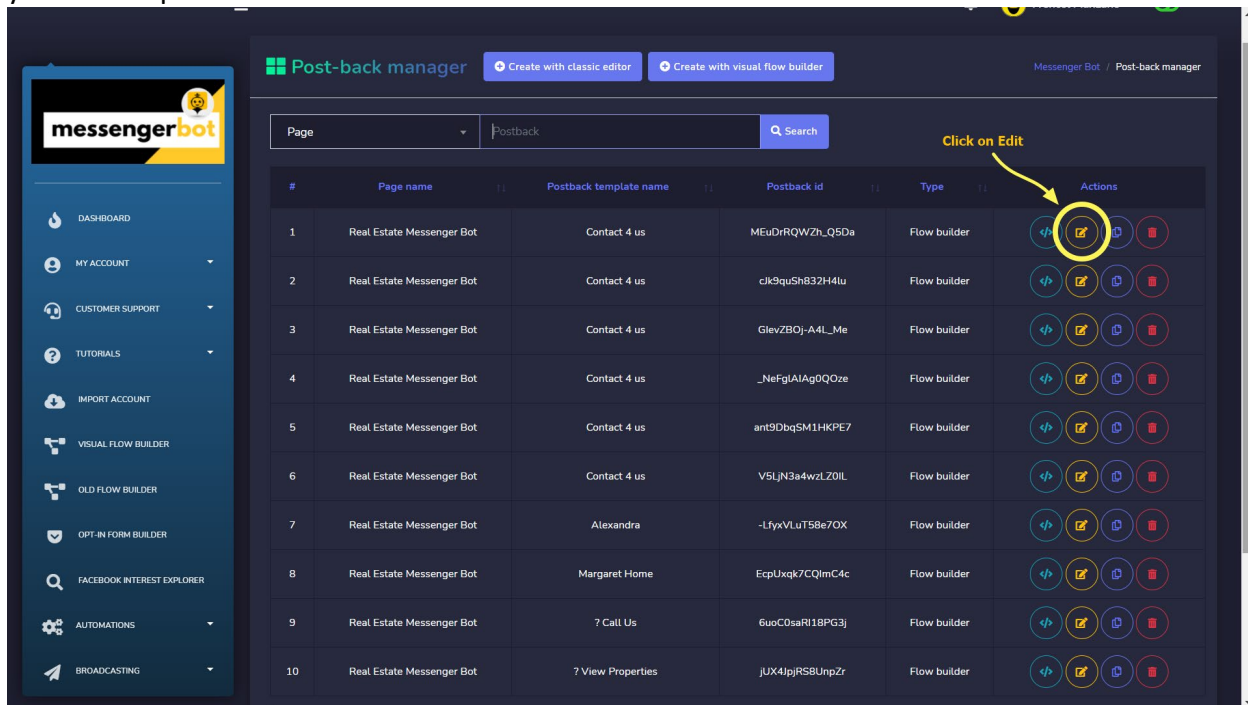
- Get-started template
- No match template
- Un-subscribe template
- Re-subscribe template
- Email quick reply template
- Phone quick reply template
- Location quick reply template
- Birthday quick reply template
- Chat with human template
- Chat with robot template

For the Postback template go to **Messenger Bot>Post-back manager** by clicking on its **Action**.



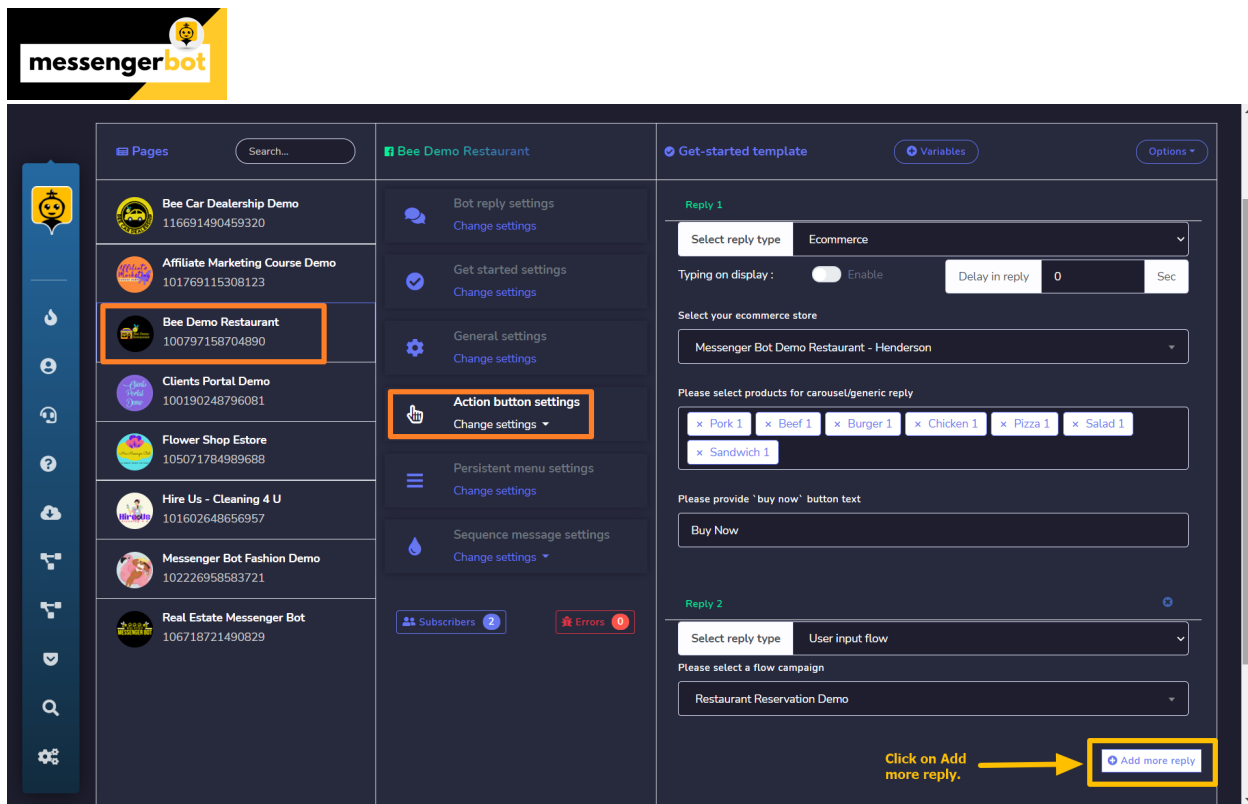


A list of Postback templates will appear, **click on Edit under actions** for the template you want your bot to pause and resume.

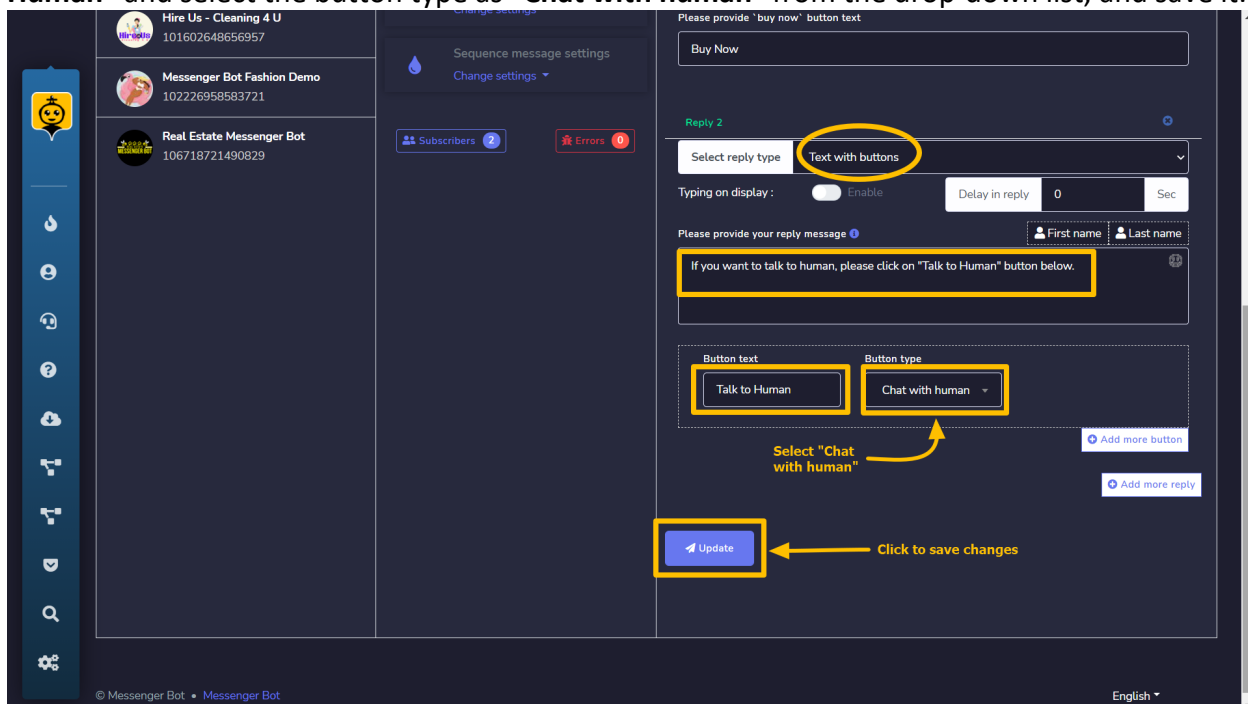


From a reply template, it could be a **Postback template**, **keyword-based**, or **get started template**, where you want to take control over the chatbot, add a new reply by **clicking** on the “Add more reply” button.





Select the Reply type to **“Text with the button”**. Type a **message on the message box**, after that you can see there is a **Button text** and **Button type** field. Name the button as **“Talk to Human”** and select the button type as **“Chat with human”** from the drop-down list, and save it.





When your subscriber will click on this button, they will get a predefined message by the Messenger Bot system, that is **“Chat with human template”**. You can **check or edit** this template from **Action Button settings**.

The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot dashboard. On the left, a list of bots is displayed, including 'Bee Demo Restaurant'. The 'Action button settings' menu is open, showing various templates. The 'Chat with human template' is highlighted with a red box. The right panel shows the configuration for this template, including a list of products (Pork, Beef, Burger, Chicken, Pizza, Salad, Sandwich) and a 'Buy Now' button. The 'Reply 2' section shows a message template with a 'Talk to Human' button.

In this **Reply template**, there is a **button to start with the Bot** again. So, this will **resume the bot** again for that particular subscriber.

The screenshot shows the 'Bot settings' page for 'Bee Demo Restaurant'. The 'Chat with human template' is selected. The 'Reply 1' section shows a message template with a 'Resume Chat with Bot' button highlighted by a yellow box. The 'Button type' dropdown is set to 'Chat with robot'. The 'Update' button at the bottom is also highlighted with a yellow box.





And these are the two ways you have learned, you can stop and resume the chatbot for a particular customer or subscriber.



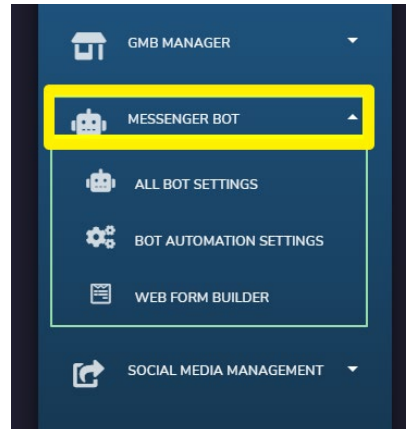


Messenger Bot

Messenger Bot to manage different bot activities, post back data, enlist the whitelisted domains, do messenger engagement, view the already created templates. This view also helps you to connect the bot data with 3rd party applications, helps you generate web forms, and integrates with auto email responders. Messenger Bot helps you run your E-commerce and WooCommerce business through this platform.

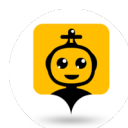
To view this section, navigate to **Messenger Bot** from the navigation menu located at the left. Tab on it and under this it has another 3 parts. Here we have:

- ALL BOT SETTINGS
- BOT AUTOMATION SETTINGS
- WEB FORM BUILDER



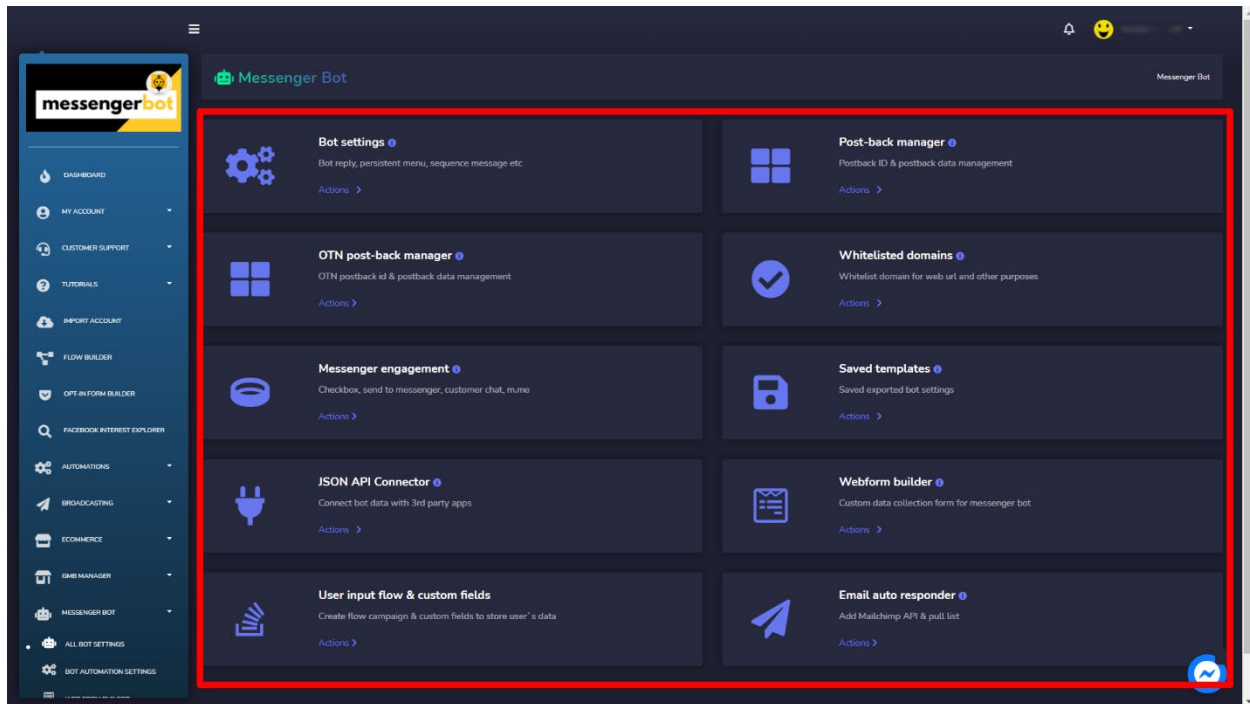
. First, let's go through All Bot Settings. A screen containing the following two sections will appear:

- [Bot settings](#)
- [Post-back manger](#)
- [OTN post back manager...](#)
- [Whitelisted domains](#)
- [Messenger engagement](#)
- [Saved templates](#)
- [JSON API connector](#)
- [Webform builder](#)





- [User input flow & custom fields...](#)
- [Email auto responder](#)

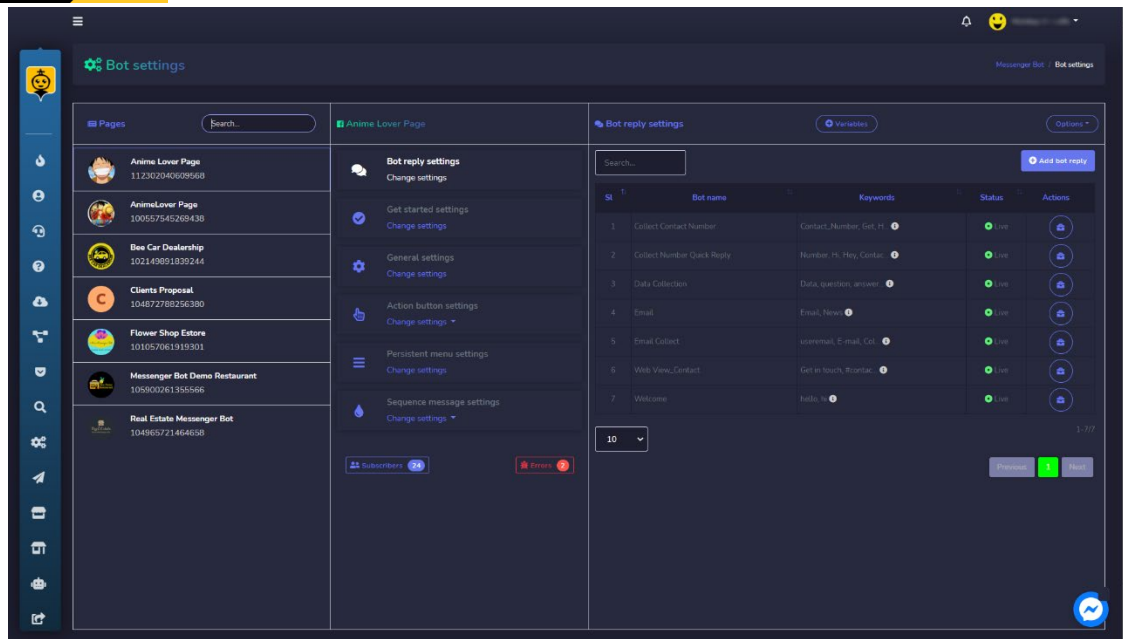


A brief description of these views is shared in their relevant sections, below.

Bot settings

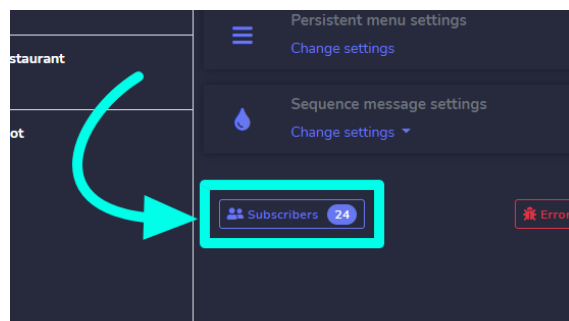
To access the bot settings section, select **Bot settings**, then select **Actions** from **Messenger Bot** screen. The following screen will appear.





This view allows you to perform following actions:

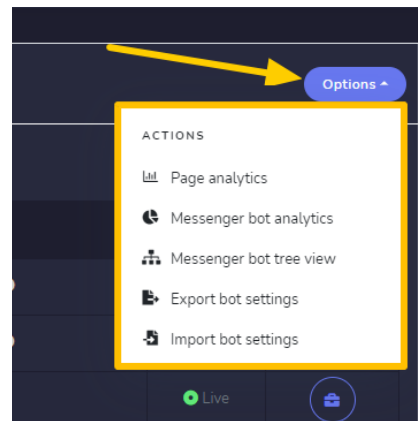
- 1) Select [Subscribers](#) from the bottom of the settings menu. This option will redirect you to [Bot Subscribers](#) workflow.



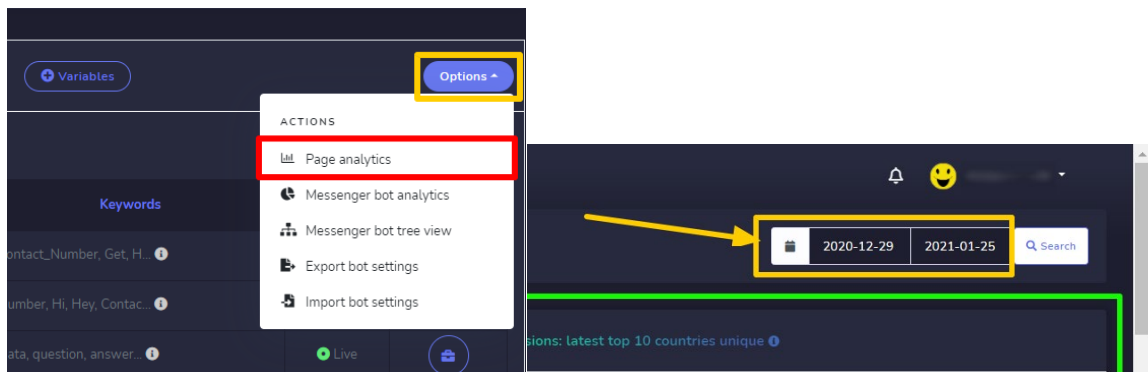


2) Select **Options** from the right side of **Bot settings** screen. A list of the following options will appear:

- Page analytics
- Messenger bot analytics
- Messenger bot tree view
- Export bot settings
- Import bot settings



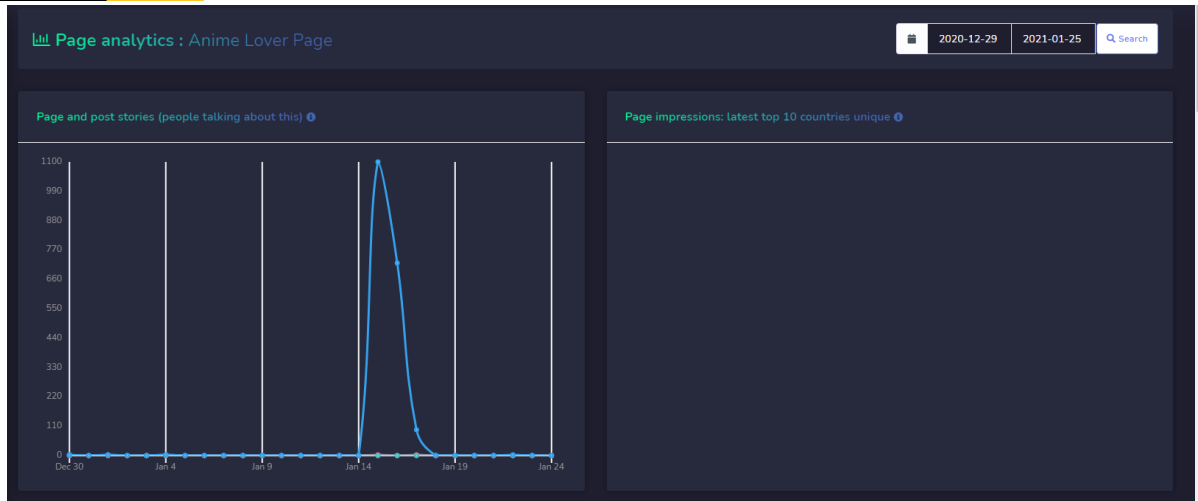
3) Select **Page analytics** option, you will be redirected to the analytics of your page based on different parameters. You can adjust the date as per your requirement.



Following are the different graphs that can be demonstrated:

- Page and post stories (people talking about this)
- Page impressions: latest top 10 countries unique

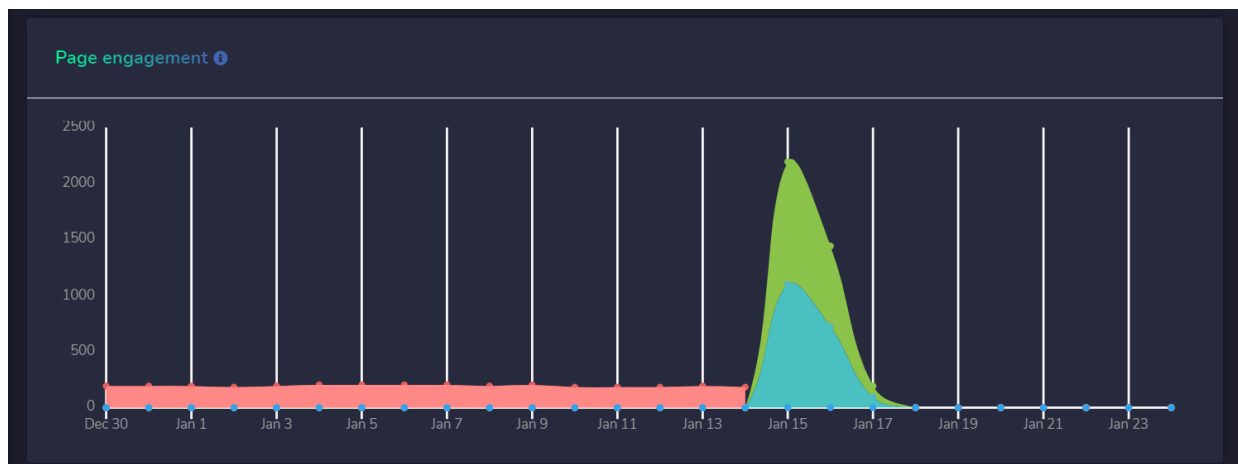




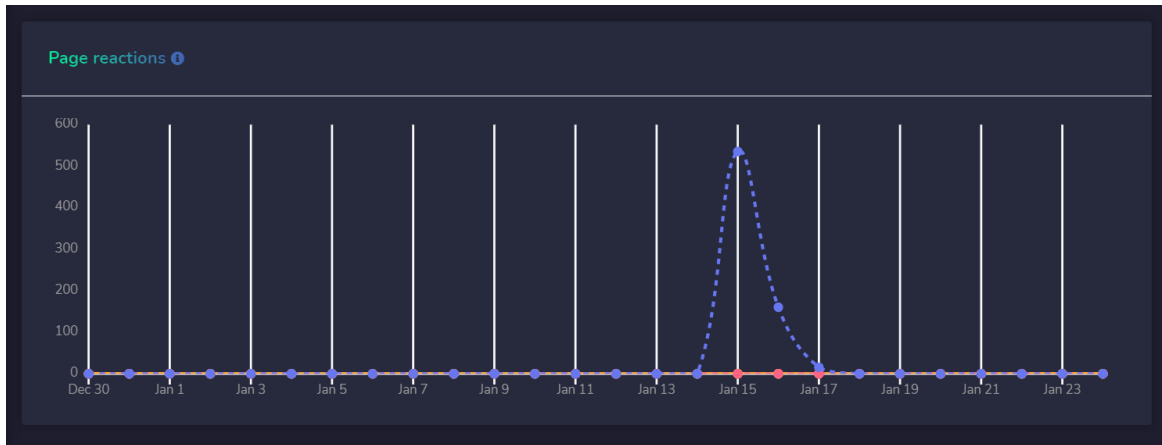
- Page impressions
- Page impressions: paid vs unpaid



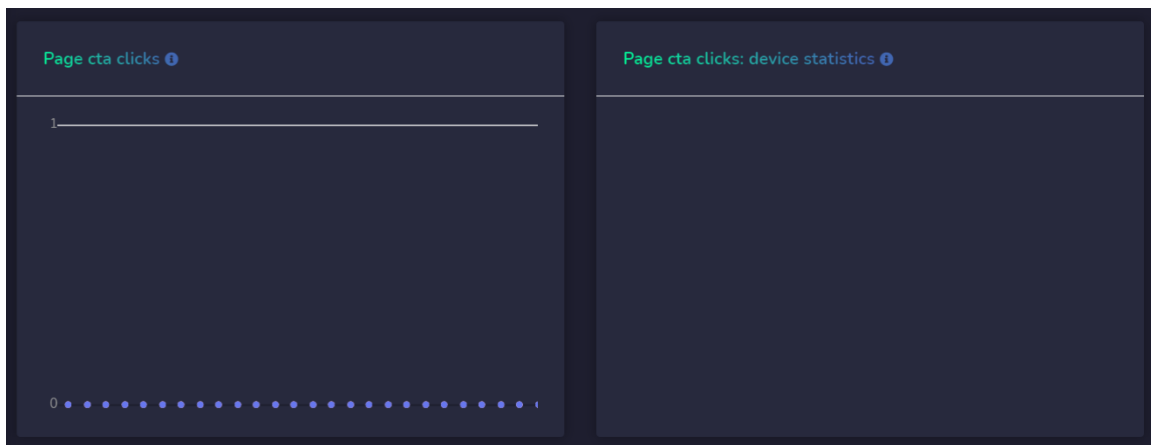
- Page engagement



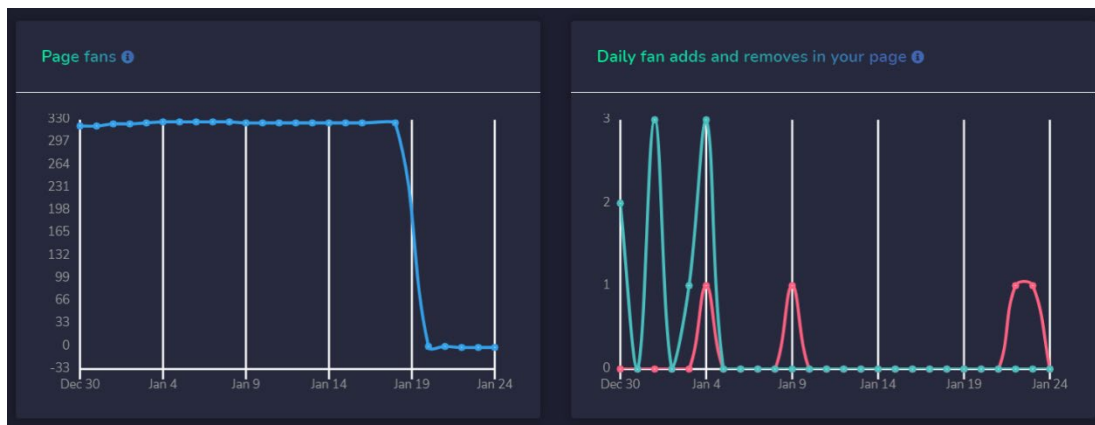
- Page reactions



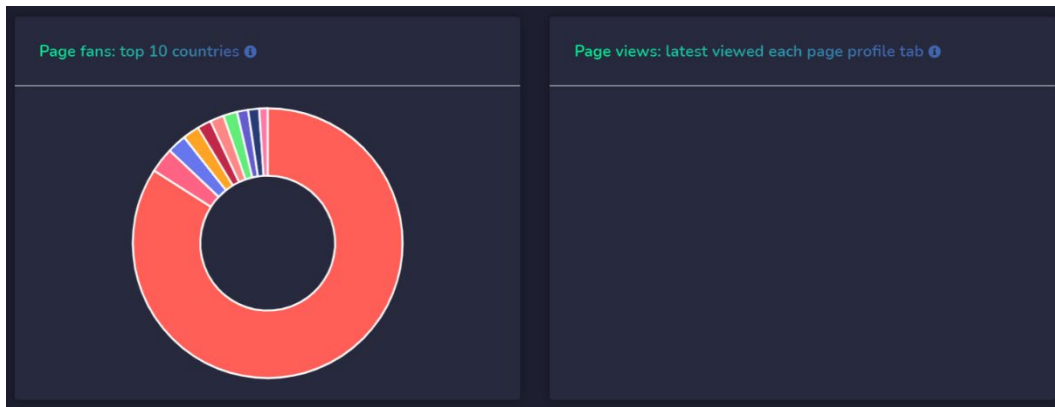
- Page cta clicks
- Page cta clicks: device statistics



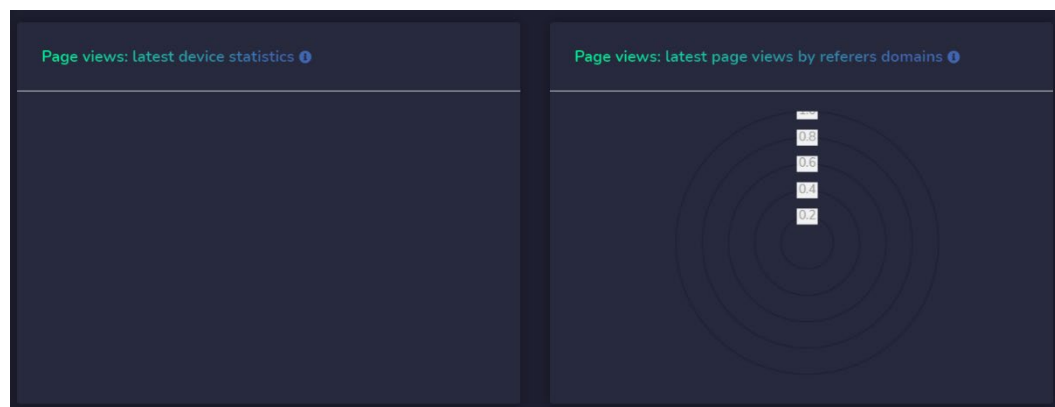
- Page fans
- Daily fan adds and removes in your page



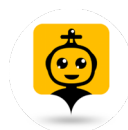
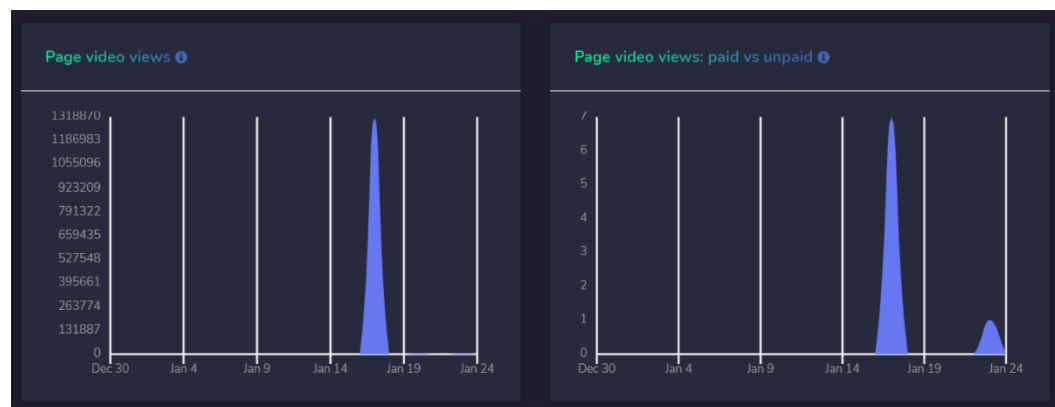
- Page fans: top 10 countries
- Page views: latest viewed each page profile tab



- Page views: latest device statistics
- Page views: latest page views by referrers domains



- Page video views
- Page video views: paid vs unpaid



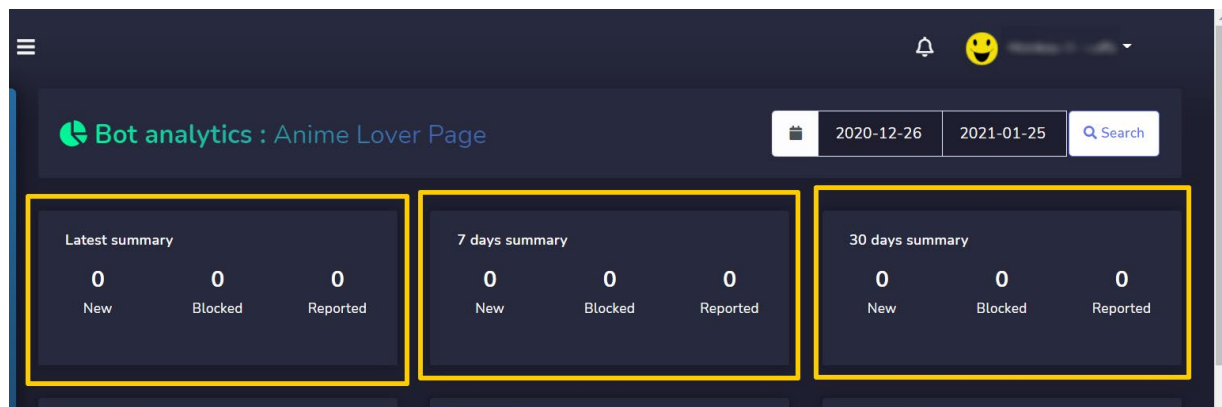
- Page post impressions: viral vs nonviral
- Page post impressions: paid vs unpaid



You can select  against each graphical view to know more about it.

4) Select the **Messenger bot analytics** option, you will be redirected to the bot analytics of your page based on different parameters. You can view the following details:

- Latest summary
- 7 days summary
- 30 days summary

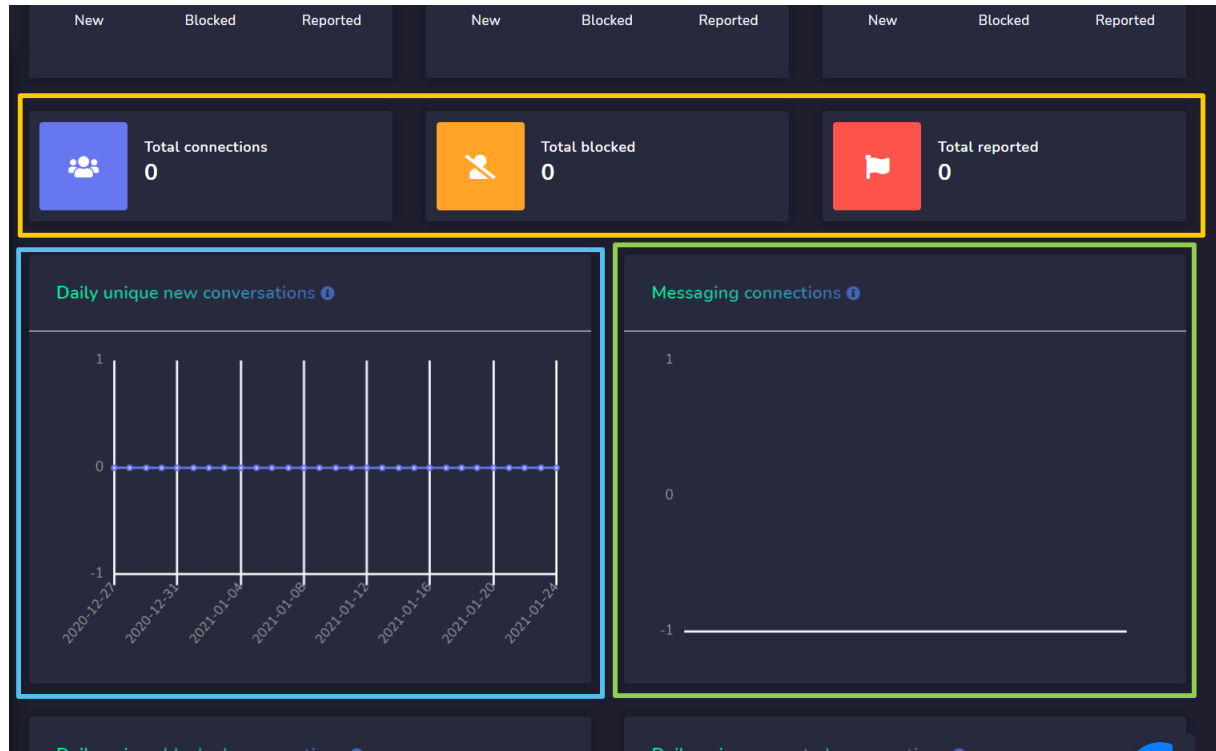


- Total connections
- Total blocked
- Total reported
- Daily unique new conversations

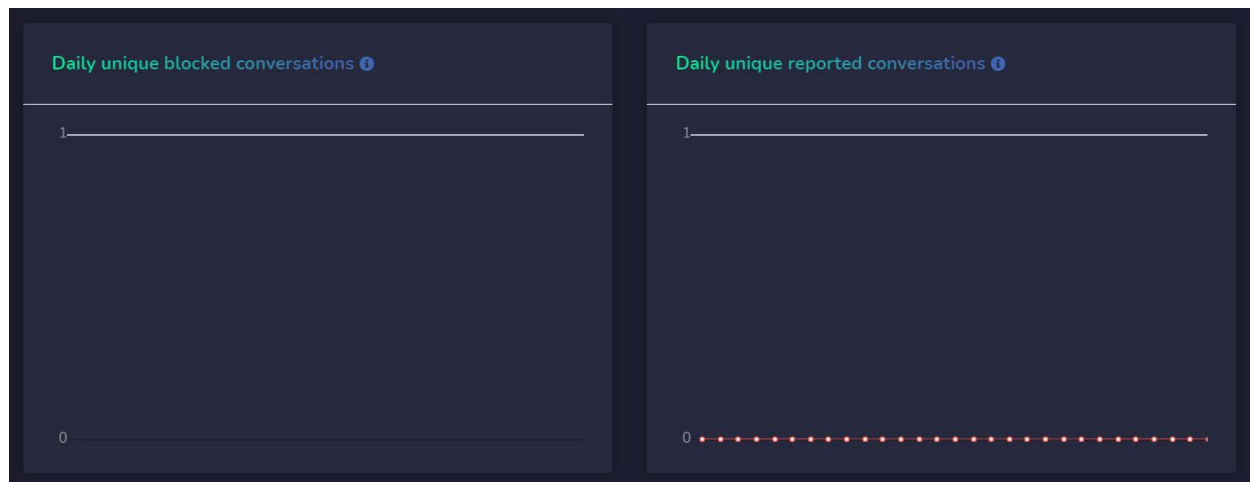




- Messaging connections



- Daily unique blocked conversations
- Daily unique reported conversations



- Daily unique reported vs blocked conversations

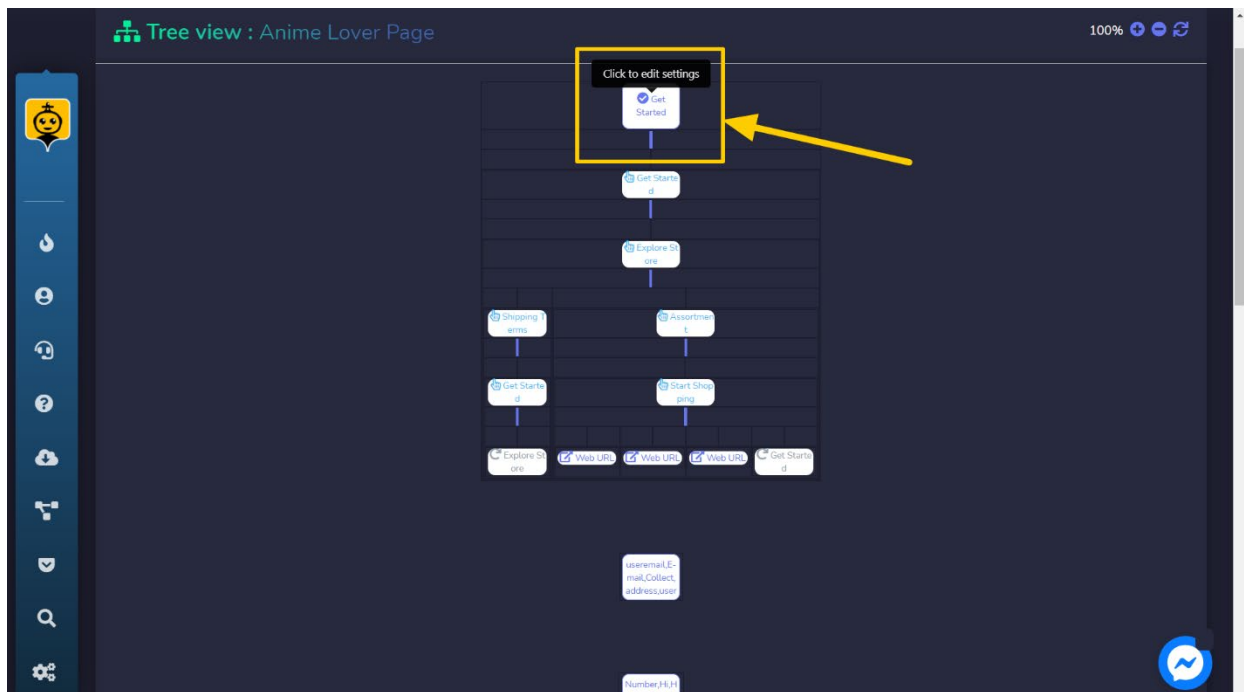




You can select ⓘ against each graphical view to know more about it.

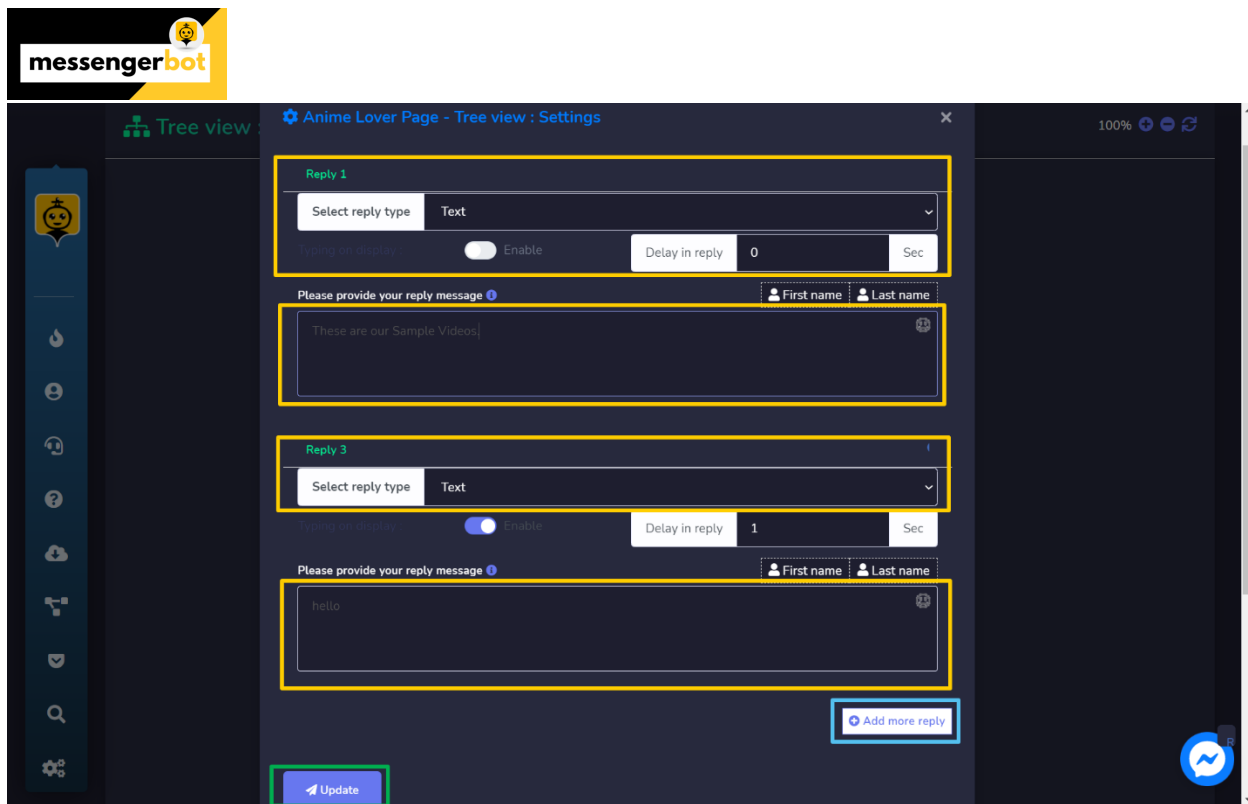
5) Select **Messenger bot tree** view option, you will be redirected to a bot tree view of all existing bots. You can click on each bot to make the edits.

- Select the bot you want to edit, **Tree view: Settings** screen will appear.

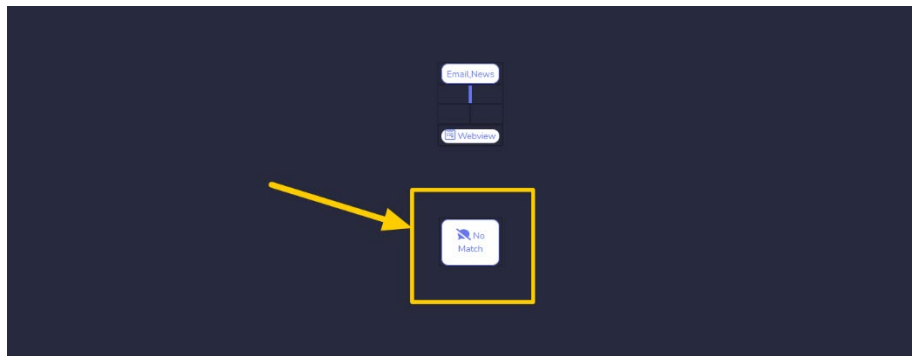


- Once updated, select the **Update** button, your bot settings will be updated.



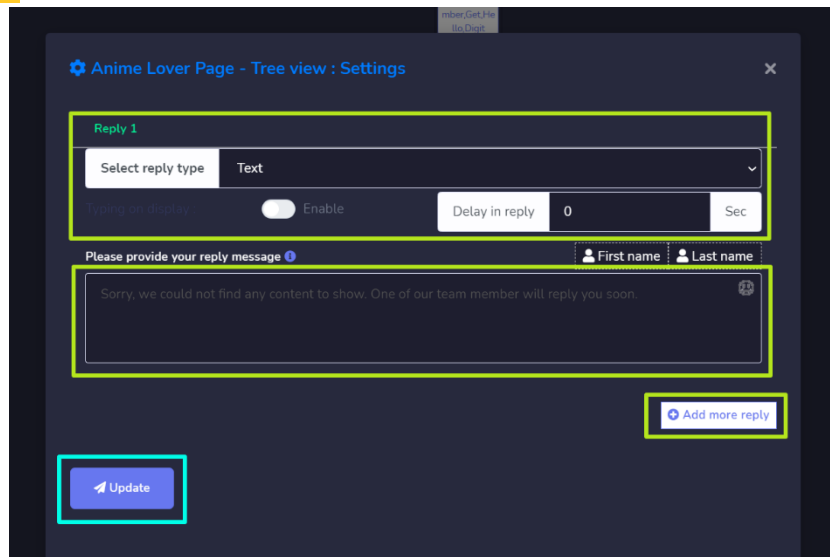


- This demo "No Match" would be your second bot option.



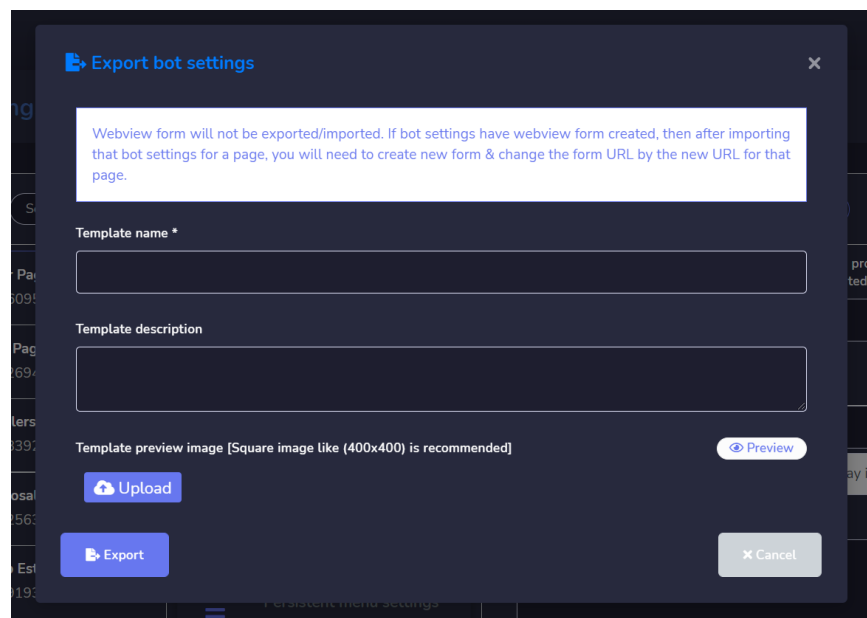
- Update your bot reply message for no match here then click **Update** when done.

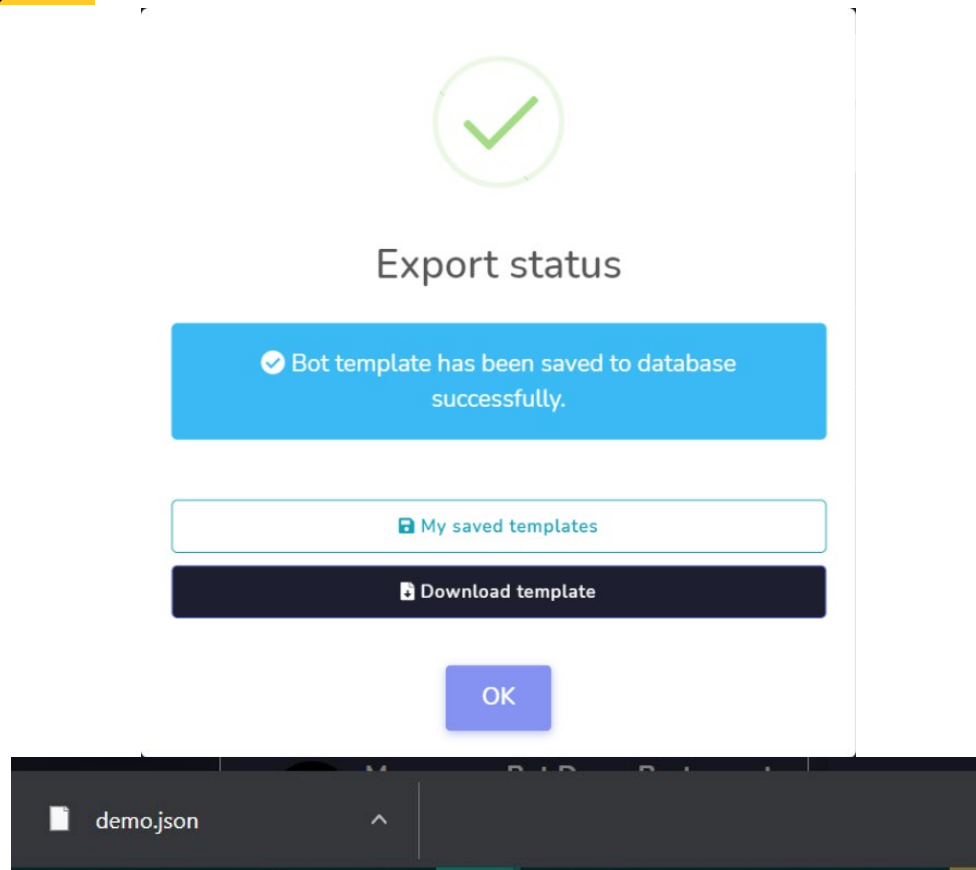




6) Select **Export bot settings** option, a modal will appear on your screen.

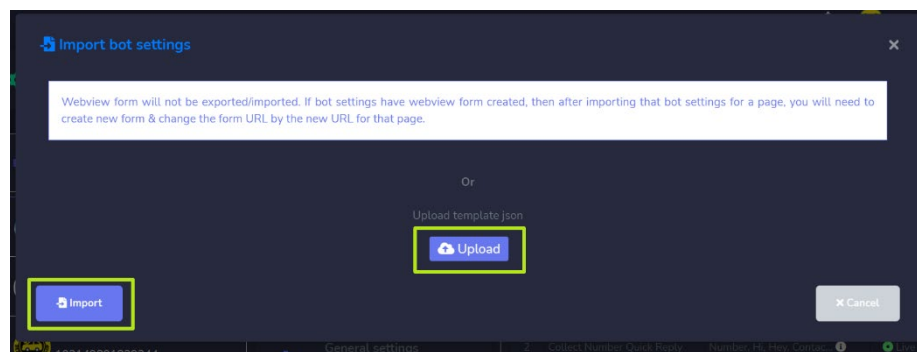
- Edit your **template name** and **template description**.
- Select **Export** to export the bot settings.

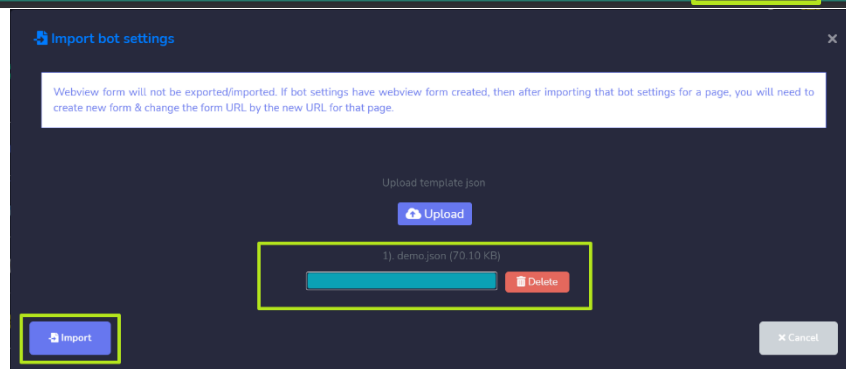
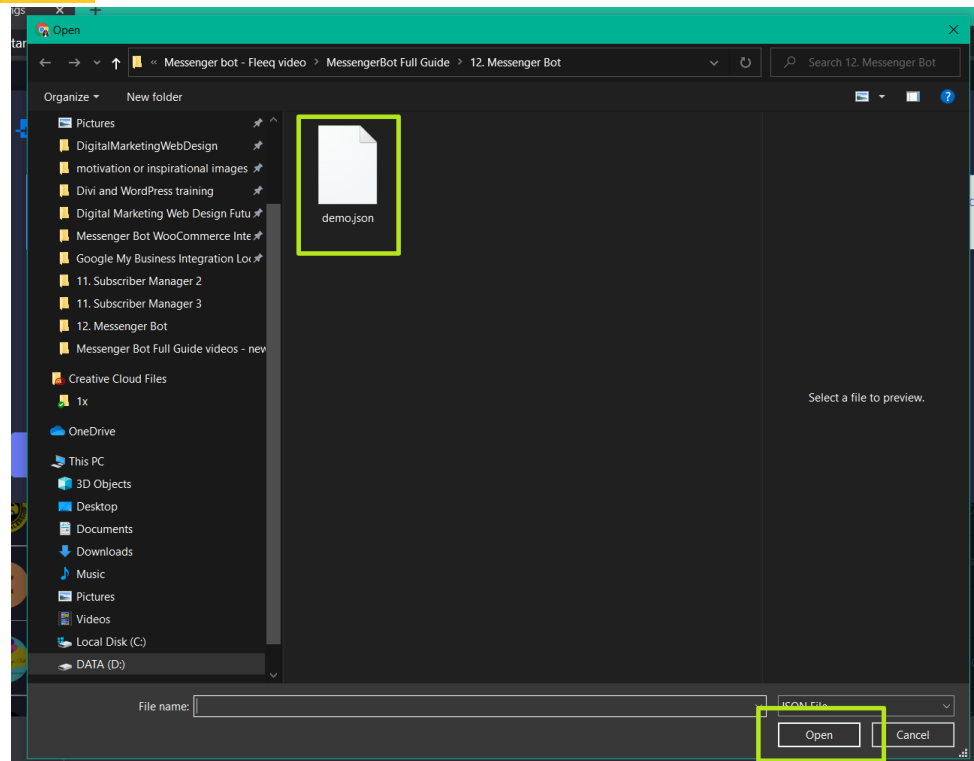


7) Select **Import bot settings** option, a modal will appear on your screen.

- Select **Upload** option, and attach the file to be uploaded.
- Select **Import** to import your bot settings.

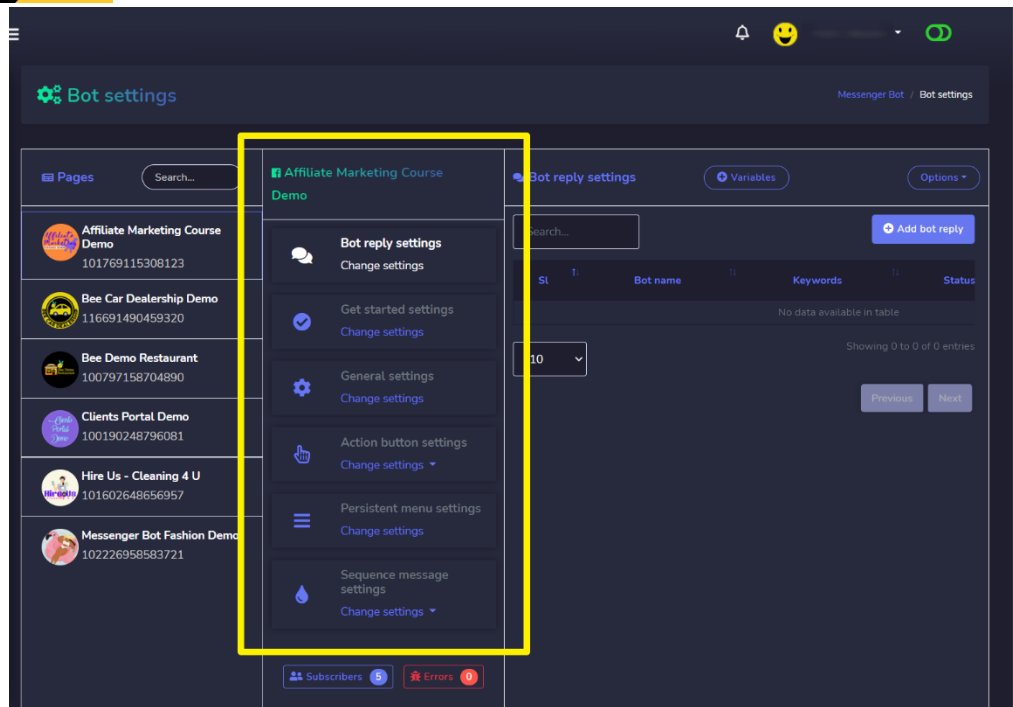




You can adjust the following Bot settings:


- Bot reply settings
- Get started settings
- General settings
- Action button settings
- Persistent menu settings
- Sequence message settings

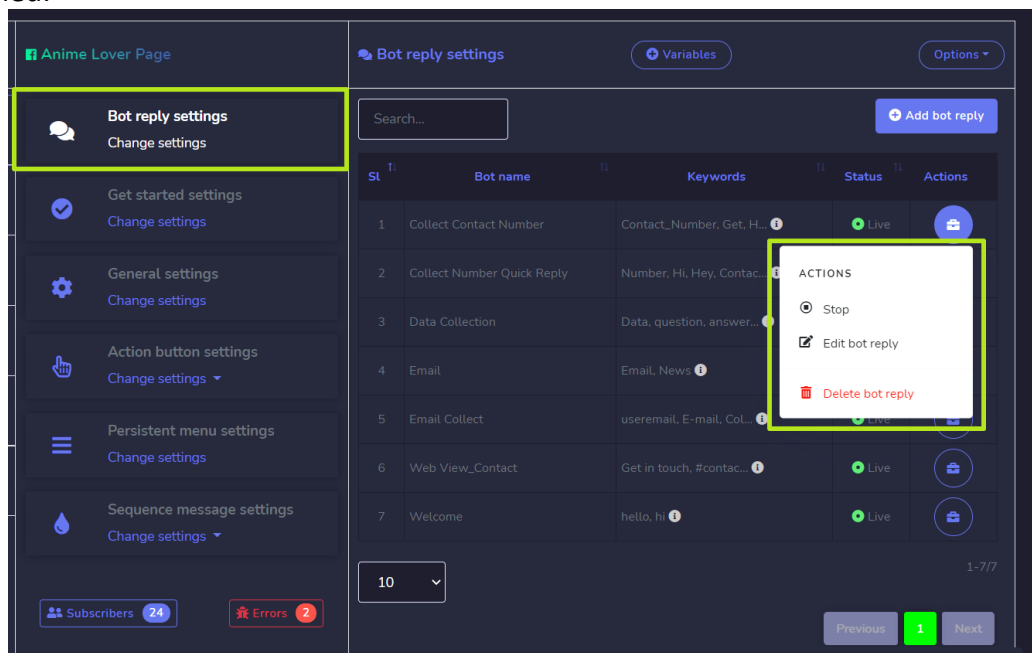




A detail of these settings can be found in next headings.

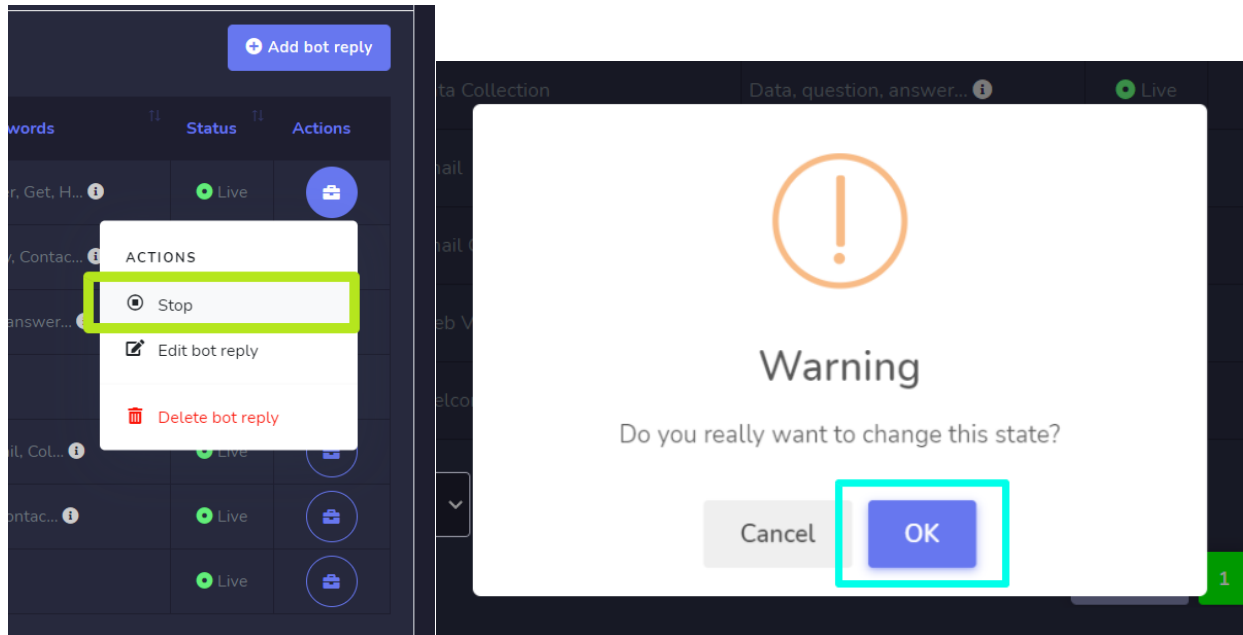
Bot reply settings

Select **Bot reply settings** option from the menu, then select **change settings**. A list of bot replies will appear on the screen. To perform different actions on a bot reply, select  option against the reply you want to perform actions on. The following are the actions that can be performed:

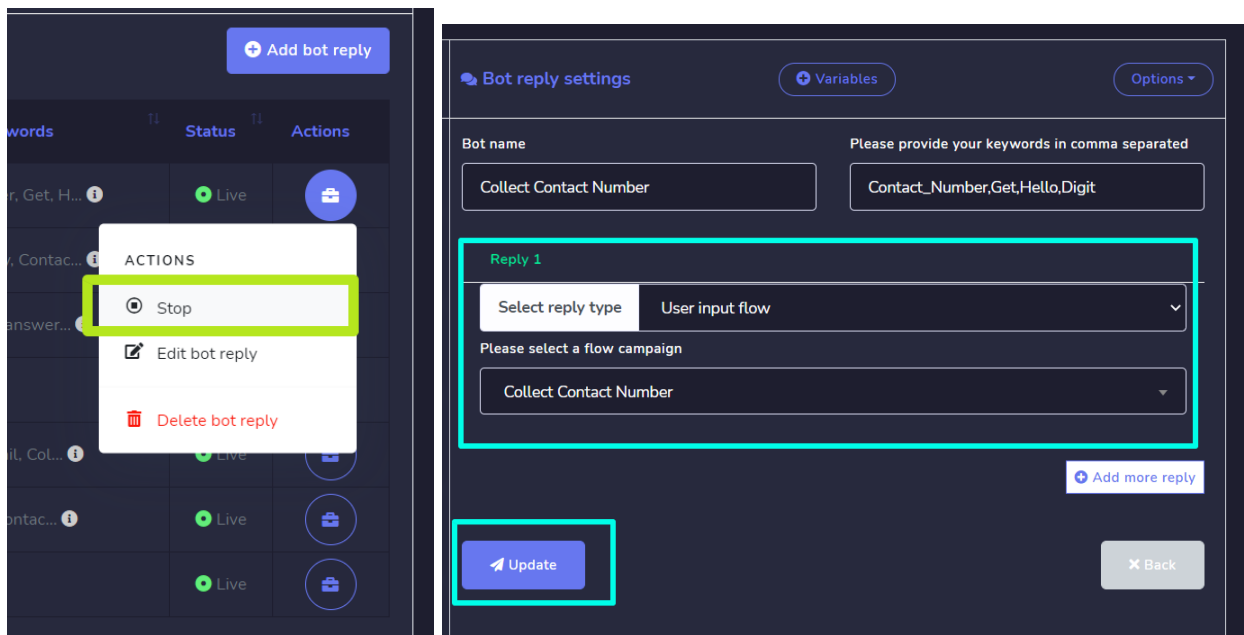




- **Stop:** change the state.

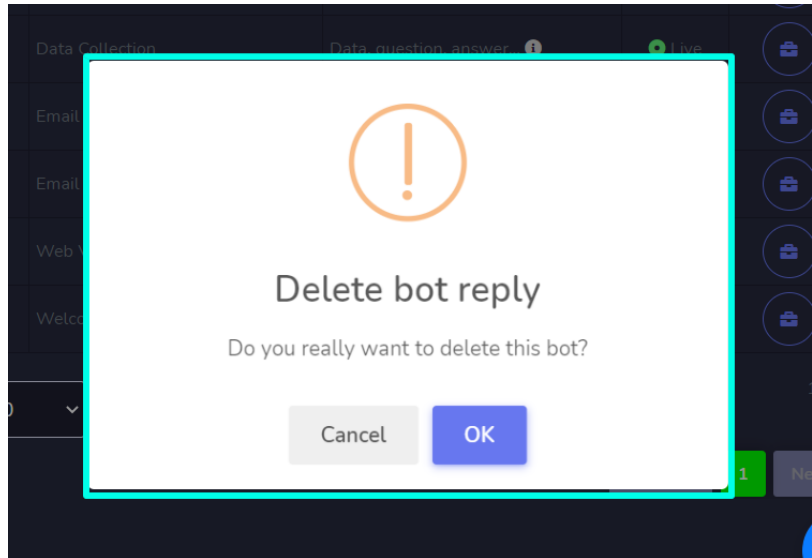
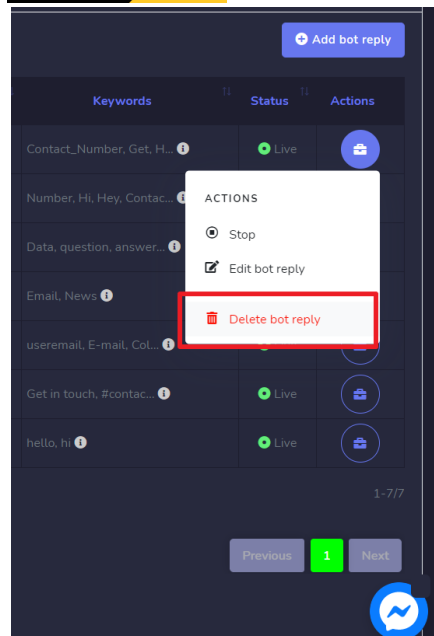


- **Edit bot reply:** make changes in the bot reply then select Update



- **Delete bot reply**

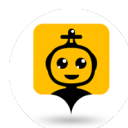
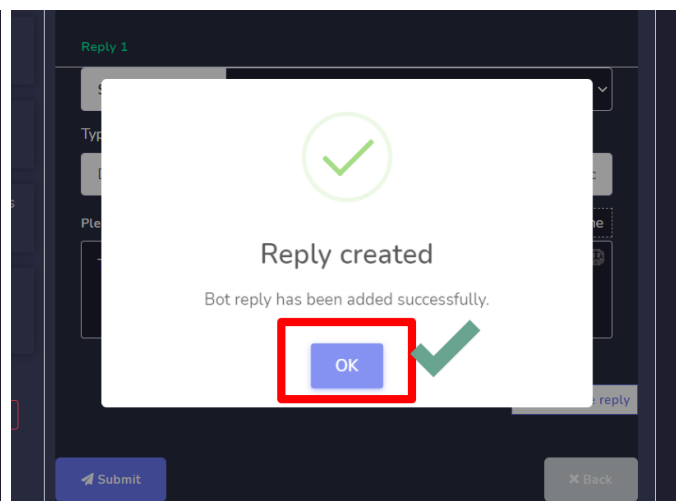
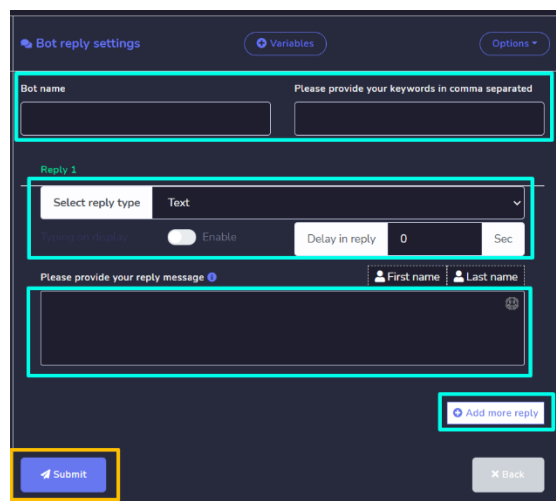
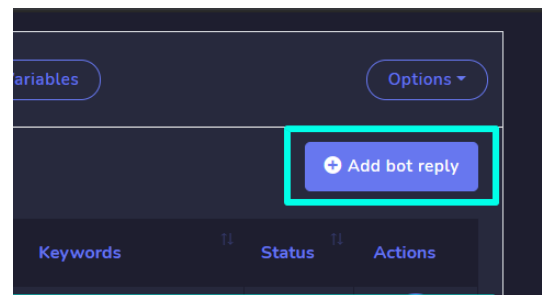




Add a bot reply

You can add a bot reply by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select **Add bot reply** from the top right of the screen.
- 2) Enter **Bot name**, provide your **keywords**.
- 3) Provide a reply in **Reply** field, first select the **type** then enter your reply.
- 4) Select **Submit** to save your bot reply.





Types of bot reply

Bot replies are of the following different types:

Text

For the bot reply to be a text type, you need to provide the following information.

- 1) Provide a **Bot name**.
- 2) Provide your **keywords**, separated by commas.
- 3) Provide the **reply message** in the field provided.
- 4) You can enter a **delay time** as well in seconds.
- 5) Hit **Submit**.

A screenshot of the "Bot reply settings" interface. The form is dark-themed with light blue and yellow accents. At the top, there's a header bar with "Bot reply settings", "Variables", and "Options" buttons. Below this, there are two input fields: "Bot name" and "Please provide your keywords in comma separated". The "Reply 1" section contains a "Select reply type" dropdown set to "Text", a "Typing on display" toggle switch set to "Enable", a "Delay in reply" input field set to "0" with a "Sec" unit, and a large text area for "Please provide your reply message". There are also "First name" and "Last name" labels above the text area. At the bottom right, there's an "Add more reply" button. At the bottom left, there's a "Submit" button with a yellow border, and a "Back" button at the bottom right.

Image

For the bot reply to be an image type, you need to provide the following information.

- 1) Provide a **Bot name**.
- 2) Provide your **keywords**, separated by commas.
- 3) Provide and upload the **image**.
- 4) You can enter a **delay time** as well in seconds.
- 5) Hit **Submit**.





Bot reply settings

Bot name

Please provide your keywords in comma separated

Reply 1

Select reply type: Image

Typing on display: ☐ Enable

Delay in reply: 0 Sec

Please provide your reply image

Put your image url here or click the upload button.

Upload

Submit

Add more reply

Back

Messenger Bot / Bot settings

Bot reply settings

Variables

Options

Bot name

Please provide your keywords in comma separated

Reply 1

Select reply type: Image

Typing on display: ☐ Enable

Delay in reply: 0 Sec

Please provide your reply image

https://start.messengerbot.app/upload/image/372/image_372_1611646034605032.png

Upload

1). messengerbot favicon.png (58.60 KB)

Delete

Submit

Add more reply

Back

Audio

For the bot reply to be a audio type, you need to provide following information.

- 1) Provide a **Bot name**.
- 2) Provide your **keywords**, separated by commas.
- 3) Provide and upload the **audio**.
- 4) You can enter a **delay time** as well in seconds.
- 5) Hit **Submit**.



A screenshot of the "Bot reply settings" form. The form has a dark blue background with white text and yellow highlights around the input fields. At the top, there are tabs for "Variables" and "Options". The main section is titled "Bot reply settings". It contains two input fields: "Bot name" and "Please provide your keywords in comma separated". Below these is a section for "Reply 1" with a dropdown menu for "Select reply type" set to "Audio". There is a toggle for "Enable" and a "Delay in reply" field set to "0" seconds. Below this is a section for "Please provide your reply audio" with an "Upload" button, a progress bar, and a "Delete" button. At the bottom, there is a "Submit" button and a "Back" button.

Video

For the bot reply to be a video type, you need to provide the following information.

- 1) Provide a **Bot name**.
- 2) Provide your **keywords**, separated by commas.
- 3) Provide and upload the **video**.
- 4) You can enter a **delay time** as well in seconds.
- 5) Hit **Submit**.

A screenshot of the "Bot reply settings" form, similar to the one above but for a video reply. The "Select reply type" dropdown is now set to "Video". The "Please provide your reply video" section has an "Upload" button, a progress bar, and an "Abort" button. The "Submit" button is highlighted with a yellow box.



File

For the bot reply to be a file type, you need to provide the following information.

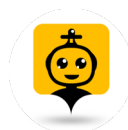
- 1) Provide a **Bot name**.
- 2) Provide your **keywords**, separated by commas.
- 3) Provide and upload the **file**.
- 4) You can enter a **delay time** as well in seconds.
- 5) Hit **Submit**.

The screenshot shows the 'Bot reply settings' interface. At the top, there are tabs for 'Variables' and 'Options'. The main form is divided into sections. The first section has two input fields: 'Bot name' and 'Please provide your keywords in comma separated'. The second section, labeled 'Reply 1', has a 'Select reply type' dropdown menu set to 'File'. Below this is a toggle for 'Using on display' and a 'Delay in reply' field set to '0' seconds. The third section, 'Please provide your reply file', contains an 'Upload' button, a list of files (e.g., '1). Messenger Bot Documentation Updated 01072021.docx (94.78 MB)'), and an 'Abort' button. At the bottom, there is a 'Submit' button and an 'Add more reply' button. A 'Back' button is also visible in the bottom right corner.

Quick Reply

For the reply to be quick reply, you need to provide following information.

- 1) Provide a **Bot name**.
- 2) Provide your **keywords**, separated by commas.
- 3) Provide your **reply message** in available field.
- 4) Provide a text for the **button** and choose the type of the button based on your requirements.
- 5) You can enter a **delay time** as well in seconds.





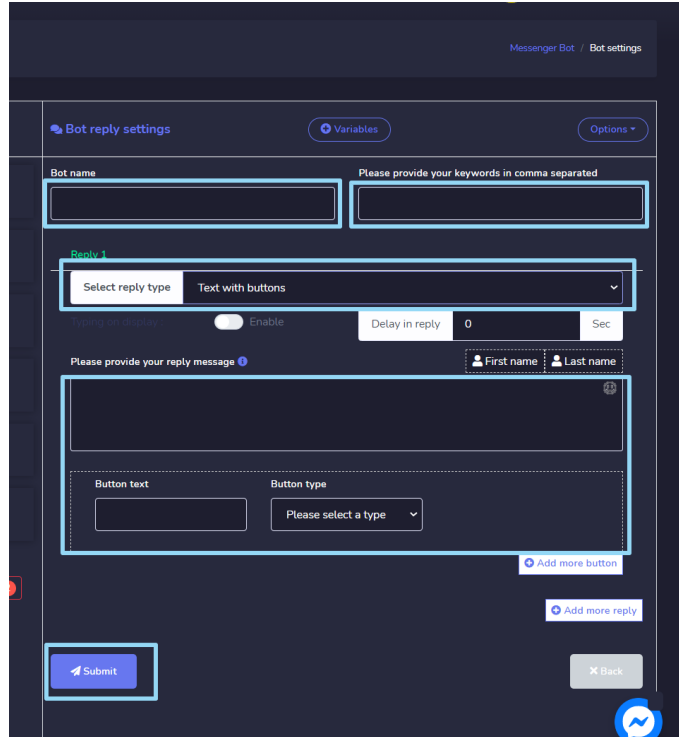
6) Hit **Submit**.

Text with buttons

For the reply to be a text with buttons, you need to provide following information.

- 1) Provide a **Bot name**.
- 2) Provide your **keywords**, separated by commas.
- 3) Provide your **reply message** in available field.
- 4) Provide a text for the **button** and choose the type of the button based on your requirements.
- 5) You can enter a **delay time** as well in seconds.
- 6) Hit **Submit**.



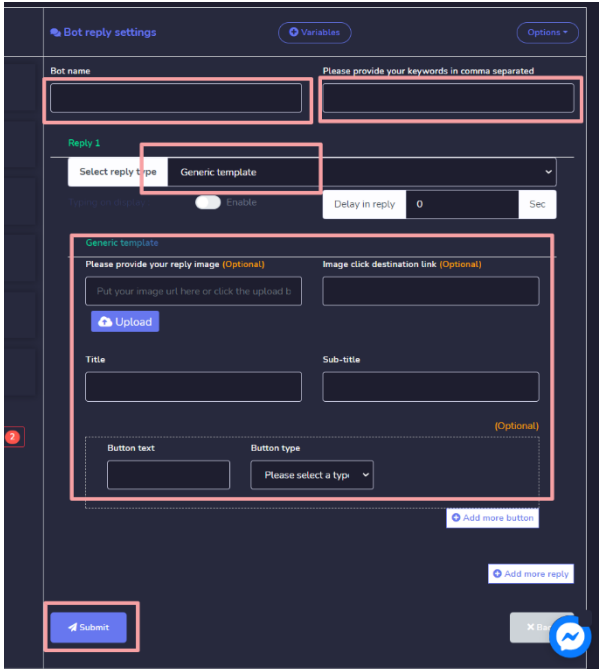


Generic template

For the reply to be a generic template, you need to provide following information.

- 1) Provide a **Bot name**.
- 2) Provide your **keywords**, separated by commas.
- 3) If needed, provide **image click destination link**.
- 4) If needed, provide your **reply image**.
- 5) Provide a **title** and a **sub-title** to your template.
- 6) Provide a text for the **button** and choose the type of the button based on your requirements.
- 7) You can enter a **delay time** as well in seconds.
- 8) Hit **Submit**.





Bot reply settings

Bot name

Please provide your keywords in comma separated

Reply 1

Select reply type: Generic template

Enable

Delay in reply: 0 Sec

Generic template

Please provide your reply image (Optional)

Image click destination link (Optional)

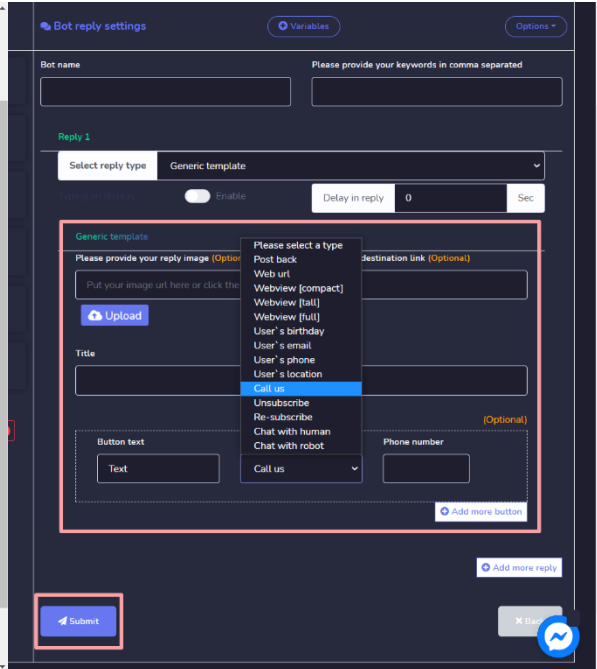
Title

Sub-title

Button text

Button type: Please select a type

Submit



Bot reply settings

Bot name

Please provide your keywords in comma separated

Reply 1

Select reply type: Generic template

Enable

Delay in reply: 0 Sec

Generic template

Please provide your reply image (Optional)

Image click destination link (Optional)

Title

Sub-title

Button text

Button type: Please select a type

Submit

Carousel

For the reply to be a carousel, you need to provide following information.

- 1) Provide a **Bot name**.
- 2) Provide your **keywords**, separated by commas.
- 3) If needed, provide **image click destination link**.
- 4) If needed, provide your **reply image**.
- 5) Provide a **title** and a **sub-title** to your template.
- 6) Provide a text for the **button** and choose the type of the button based on your requirements.
- 7) You can enter a **delay time** as well in seconds.
- 8) Hit **Submit**.





The image displays the Messenger Bot configuration interface, divided into three main sections:

- Bot reply settings:** This section allows users to configure the bot's name, keywords, and reply settings. It includes a "Select reply type" dropdown (set to "Carousel"), an "Enable" toggle, and a "Delay in reply" field (set to 0 seconds).
- Carousel template 1:** This section is for configuring the first carousel template. It includes fields for "Please provide your reply image (Optional)", "Image click destination link (Optional)", "Title", "Sub-title", "Button text", and "Button type" (with a dropdown menu). There are also "Add more template" and "Add more reply" buttons.
- Bot List:** A sidebar on the left shows a list of bots, including "AnimeLove Page", "Bee Car Dealership", "Clients Proposal", "Flower Shop Estore", "Messenger Bot Demo Restaurant", and "Real Estate Messenger Bot".

The "Button type" dropdown menu is open, showing options like "Post back", "Web url", "Webview [compact]", "Webview [full]", "User's birthday", "User's email", "User's phone", "User's location", "Call us", "Unsubscribe", "Re-subscribe", "Chat with human", and "Chat with robot".

Media

For the reply to be media, you need to provide following information.

- 1) Provide a **Bot name**.
- 2) Provide your **keywords**, separated by commas.
- 3) If needed, provide your **Media URL**.
- 4) Provide a text for the **button** and choose the type of the button based on your requirements.





- 5) You can enter a **delay time** as well in seconds.
- 6) Hit **Submit**.

A screenshot of the "Bot Reply Settings" interface for a Messenger bot. The interface is dark-themed. At the top, there are tabs for "Bot reply settings", "Variables", and "Options". Below the tabs, there's a section for "Bot name" with a text input field and a placeholder "Please provide your keywords in comma separated". Underneath, there's a "Reply 1" section. It includes a "Select reply type" dropdown menu set to "Media". Below this is a "Delay in reply" field set to "0" seconds. A "Please provide your media url" section contains a text input field with the URL "https://www.youtube.com/channel/UCB6toACGxDdAZb9L4pAOPxg". Below the URL field, there's a "Button text" field with "Submit" and a "Button type" dropdown menu set to "User's birthday". At the bottom left, there's a blue "Submit" button. At the bottom right, there's a grey "X Back" button. There are also links for "Add more button" and "Add more reply".

Assign Email SMS Sequence Campaign during Opt-in

After Creating SMS/Email Sequence campaign, now you need to know how you can assign it for subscribers during collecting email or phone numbers inside messenger through quick reply and webview.

In Bot Reply Settings, set a bot reply to collect the user's email or phone number through quick reply.



A screenshot of the "Bot reply settings" interface. The interface is dark-themed with various input fields and buttons. At the top, there are tabs for "Bot reply settings", "Variables", and "Options". Below these, there are fields for "Bot name" and "Please provide your keywords in comma separated". The main section is titled "Reply 1" and contains a "Select reply type" dropdown menu with "Quick reply" selected. Below this is a "Delay in reply" field set to "0" seconds. There is a "Please provide your reply message" field with a "First name" and "Last name" label. At the bottom, there is a "Button text" field and a "Button type" dropdown menu with "User phone number" selected. There are also "Add more button" and "Add more reply" buttons. A "Submit" button is at the bottom left, and a "Back" button is at the bottom right. A Messenger logo is in the bottom right corner.

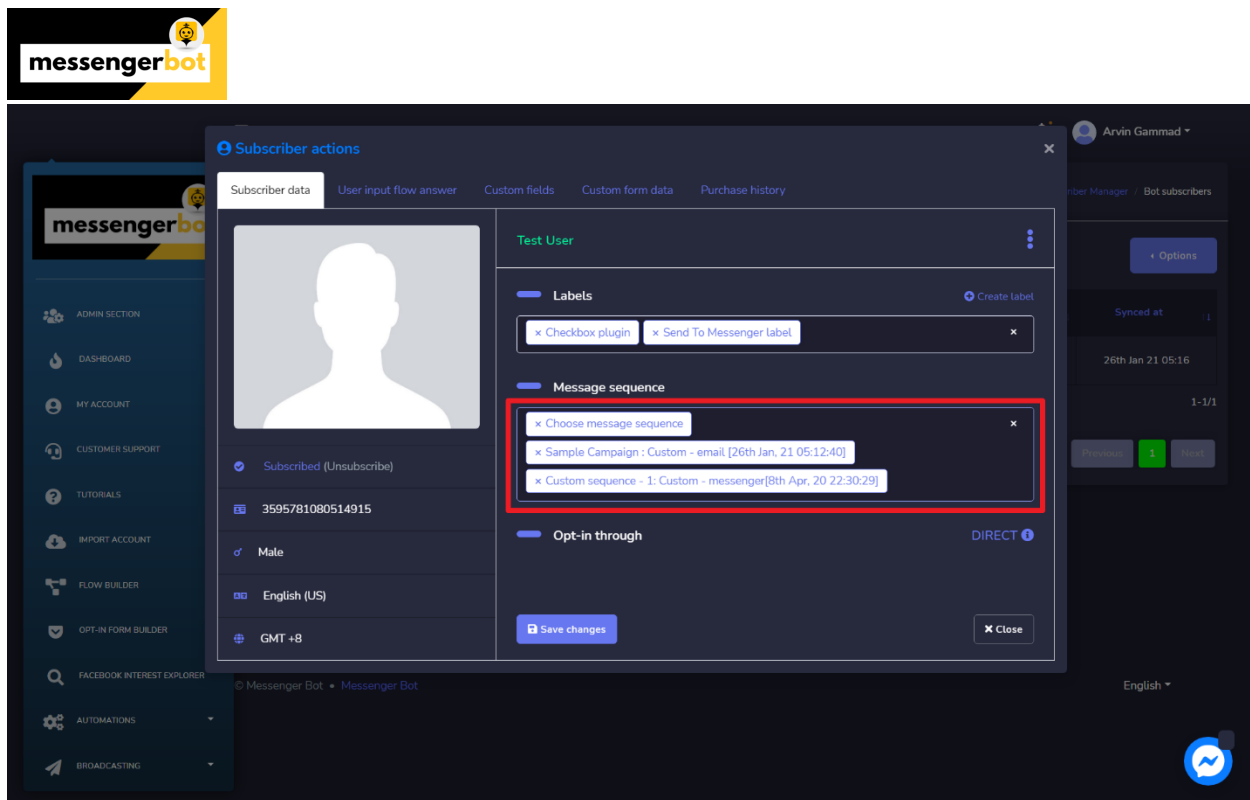
Now go to **General Settings** of Bot settings section and you'll find **SMS sequence** integration (Set SMS sequence campaign for users, who provide phone number address through quick reply or post-back button) and **Email Sequence integration** (Set email sequence campaign for users, who provide email address through quick reply or post-back button).

Now, select **SMS/Email API** first. Then select **SMS/Email Sequence campaign** for the corresponding reply and hit **Save** button. Now whenever your page gets the subscriber's email or phone number through quick reply, then those subscribers will automatically assign to your selected sequence campaigns.

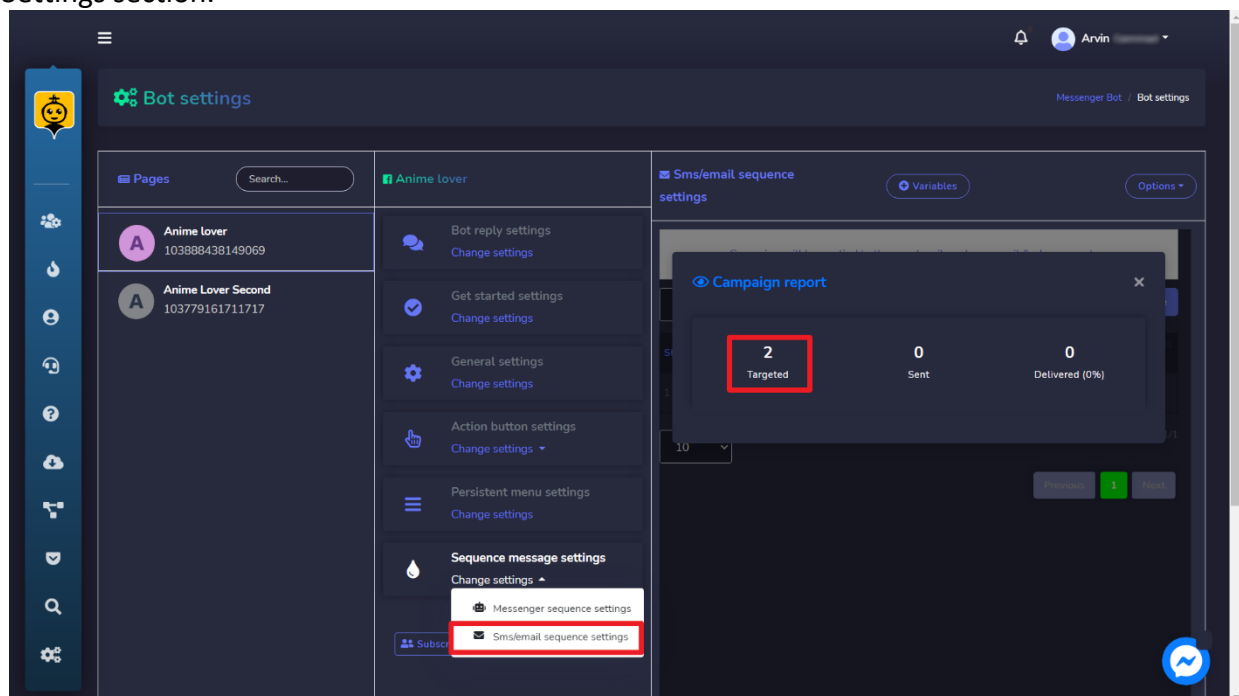


Check the result from **Subscriber Manager -> Bot Subscribers -> Subscribers Action** (see below image)





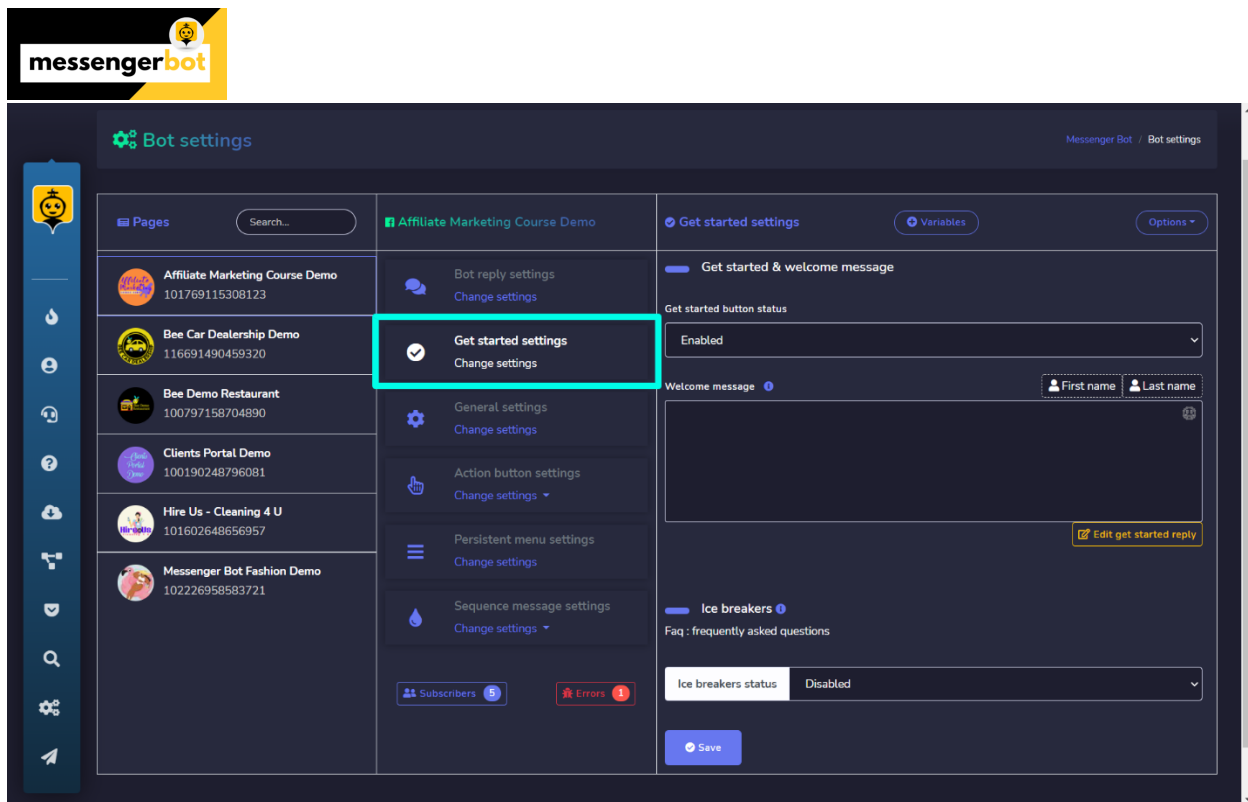
You can see the targeted subscribers of the sequence campaign also in the report at SMS/Email Settings section.



Get started settings

Select **Get started settings** option from the menu then select **change settings**.





A Get started settings screen will appear, you can perform the following steps to enable your settings:

- 1) Select your **get started button status**.





- 2) Provide a **Welcome message**. You can edit your get started message reply by selecting the **Edit get started message reply** button from the bottom of the message field.

Messenger Bot / Bot settings

Get started settings Variables Options

Get started & welcome message

Get started button status

Enabled

Welcome message First name Last name

Edit get started reply

Ice breakers

Faq : frequently asked questions

Ice breakers status Disabled

Save

- 3) You can provide a frequently asked question as well in the **Ice breakers** section. At first, you change its **status**.

Edit get started reply

Ice breakers

Faq : frequently asked questions

Ice breakers status Disabled

Save

- 4) Once enabled, type a question along with a reply in the **Question block**.
- 5) Select **Save** to proceed.



Ice breakers ⓘ
Faq : frequently asked questions

Ice breakers status: Enabled

Question block

Type your question: Can I see your menu?

Reply message template: 'Explore Store' [ExploreStore_GQRHCT]

Save

Ice breakers has been enabled successfully.

Get started button has been enabled successfully.

General settings

Select **General settings** option from the menu then select **change settings**.

Anime lover

General settings

Mark as seen status: Disabled

Chat with human email

Reply if no match found

Mailchimp integration

A General settings screen will appear, you can perform the following steps to enable your settings:

- 1) Select your mark as seen **status**.





- 2) Select the **respective integration** based on your requirements.
- 3) Once you select an integration e.g. **SMS integration** a dropdown menu will appear, select the option you want to choose.

- 4) You can also add a new API by selecting the **New API** option against each integration's settings.



Mailchimp integration [Add Mailchimp API](#)

Send collected email from quick reply to your Mailchimp account list. Page name will be added as tag name in your Mailchimp list.

Select Mailchimp list 🔗 Api log

Frencel

Messenger Bot

Select Sendinblue list 🔗 Api log

ActiveCampaign integration [Add ActiveCampaign API](#)

Select ActiveCampaign list where email will be sent when user signup.

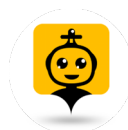
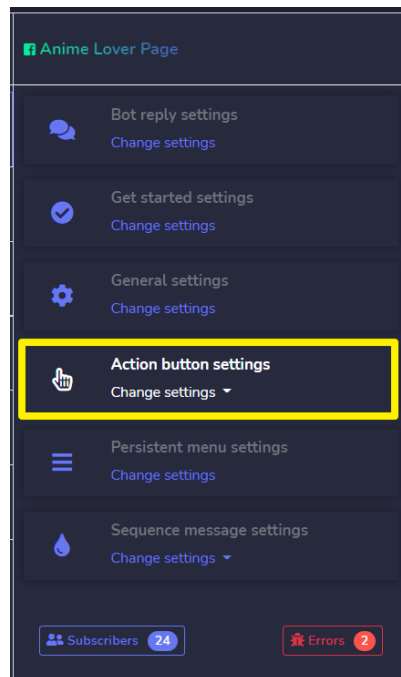
Select ActiveCampaign list 🔗 Api log

5) Select **Save** to proceed.



Action button settings

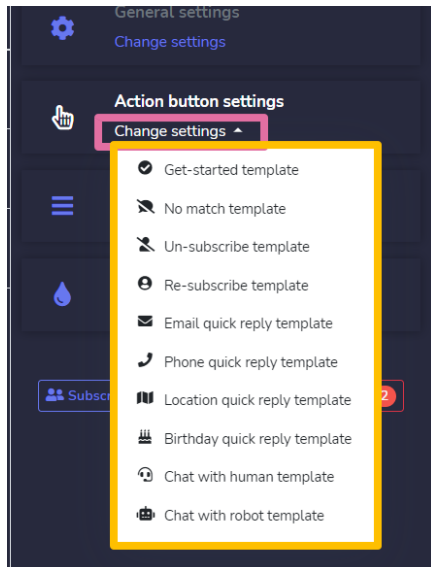
Select **Action button settings** option from the menu then select **change settings**.



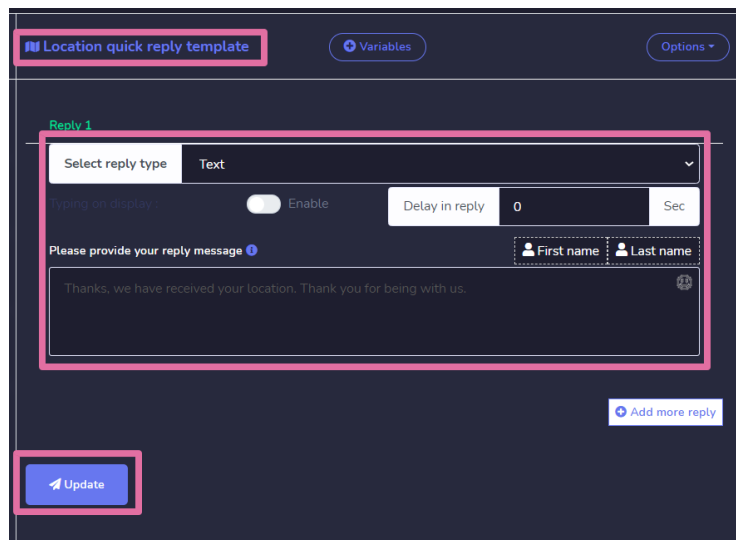


A list of different template options will appear. Select the template you want to choose then adjust its settings by providing:

- 1) The **type** of the reply.



- 2) Provide your **message**.
- 3) If there exists, provide a **reply delay** option as well.



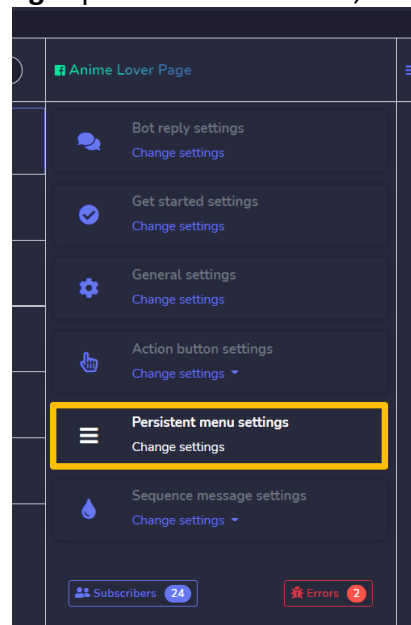
- 4) If there exists, a typing on display then turn it to **ON** or **OFF** based on your requirement.
- 5) If there exists a **button**, then adjust its text and type as well.



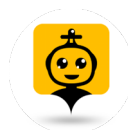
This screenshot shows the configuration interface for a chatbot template. At the top, there's a header with "Chat with robot template", "Variables", and "Options" buttons. Below this, a "Reply 1" section contains a "Select reply type" dropdown set to "Text with buttons". There are checkboxes for "Typing on display" and "Enable", and a "Delay in reply" field set to "0" seconds. A text input area contains the message: "I am glad to have you back. I will try my best to answer all questions. If you want to start chat with human again you can simply click the button below." Below the text area, there are two buttons: "Chat with human" and "Chat with human" (with a dropdown arrow). At the bottom left, there is an "Update" button. At the bottom right, there are "Add more button" and "Add more reply" buttons.

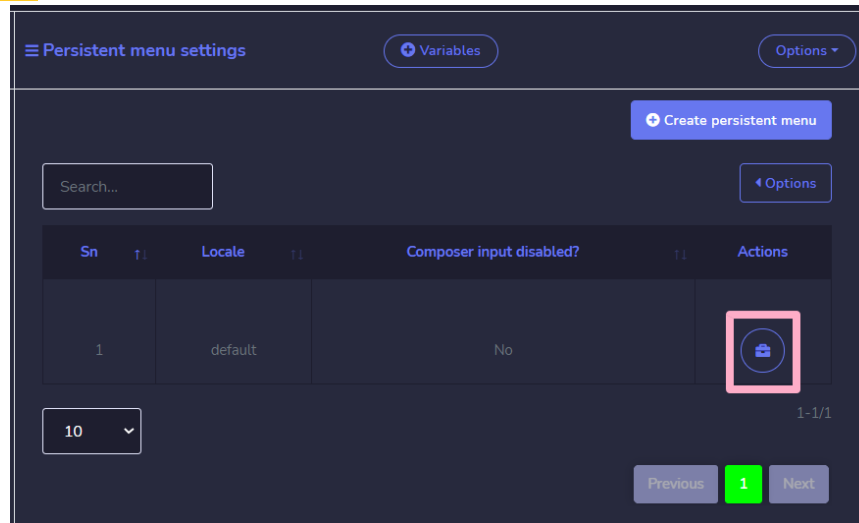
Persistent menu settings

Select the **Persistent menu settings** option from the menu, then select **change settings**.



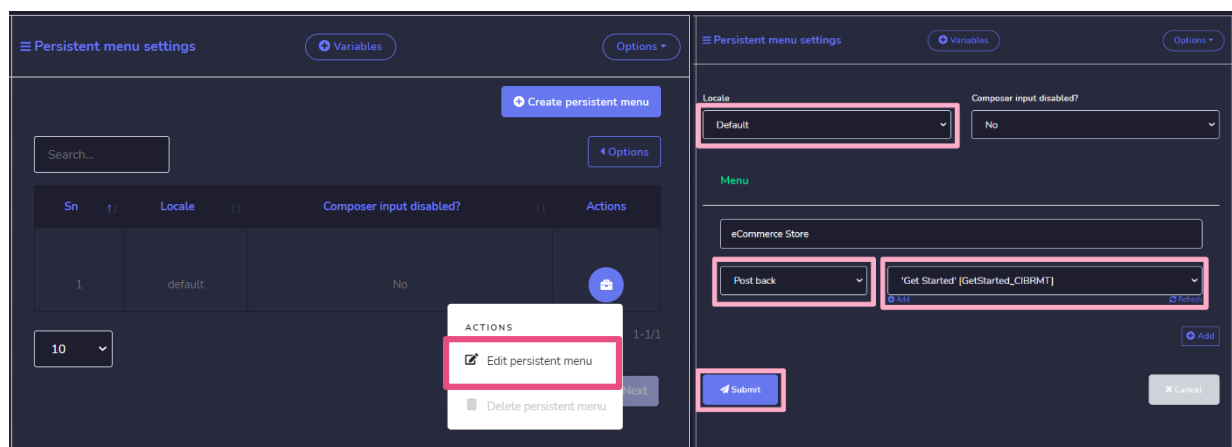
A list of locales will appear on the screen. To perform different actions on a locale, select option against the locale you want to perform actions on.



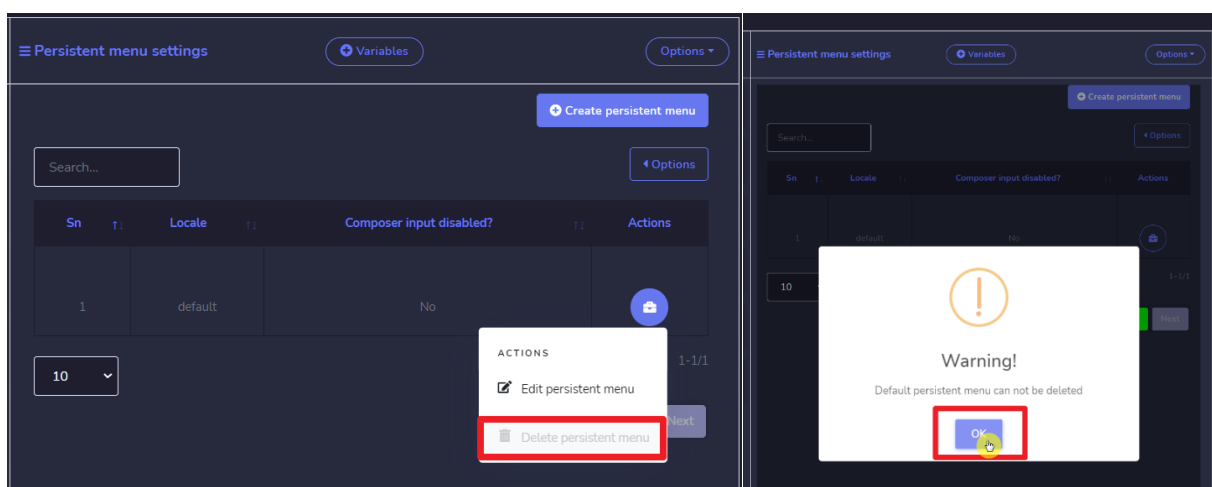


The following are the actions that can be performed:

- **Edit persistent menu:** make changes in the persistent menu settings



- **Delete persistent menu**

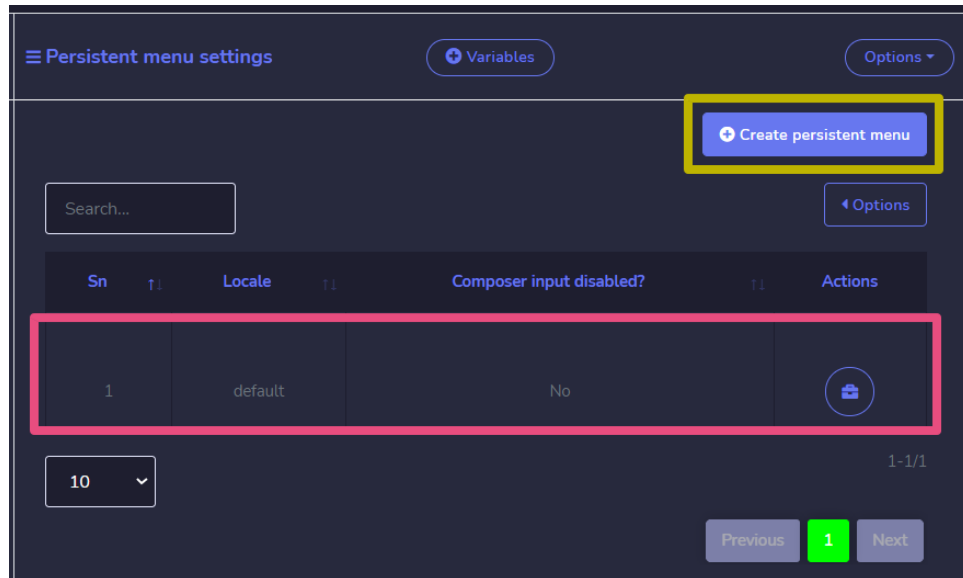




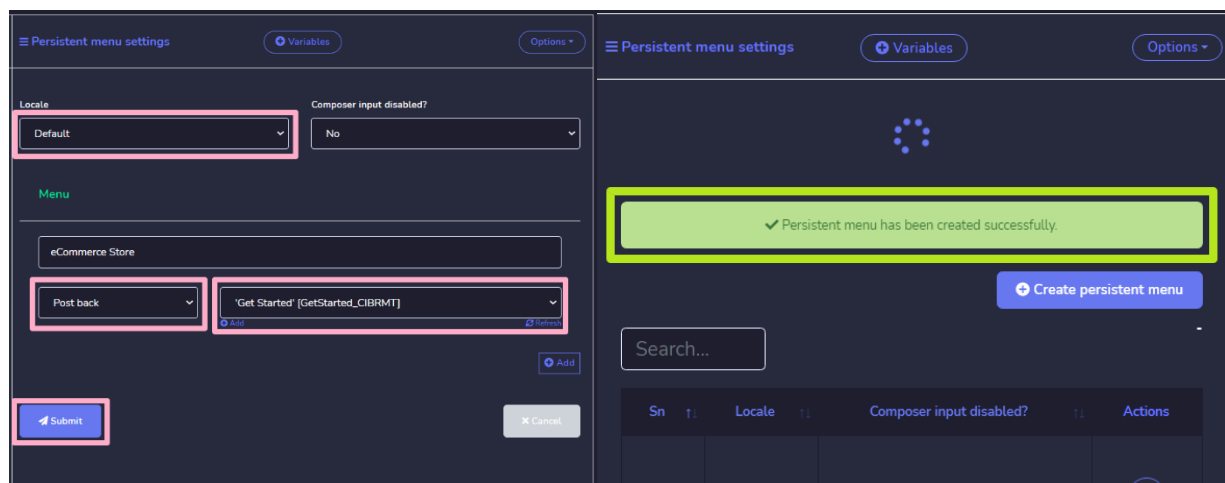
Create persistent menu

You can create a persistent menu by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select **Create persistent menu** from the top right of the screen.



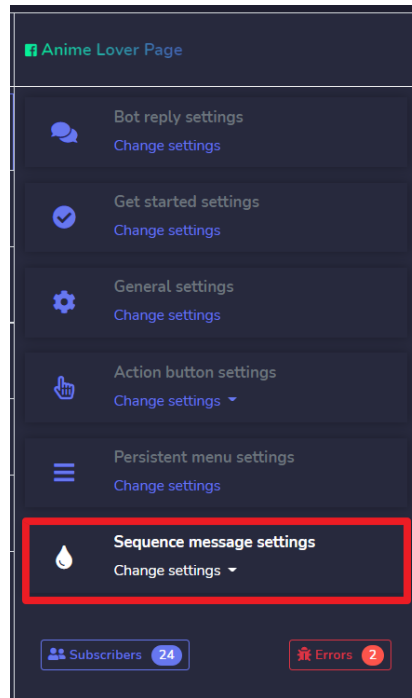
- 2) Provide **Locale** information.
- 3) Provide the status of **composer input**.
- 4) Provide **Menu title** and **web URL**.
- 5) Select **Submit** to create your persistent menu.



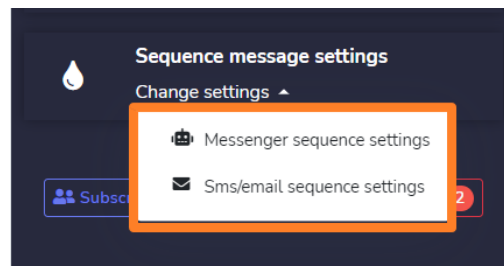
Sequence message settings


Select **Sequence message settings** option from the menu, then select **change settings**.

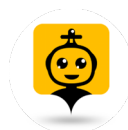
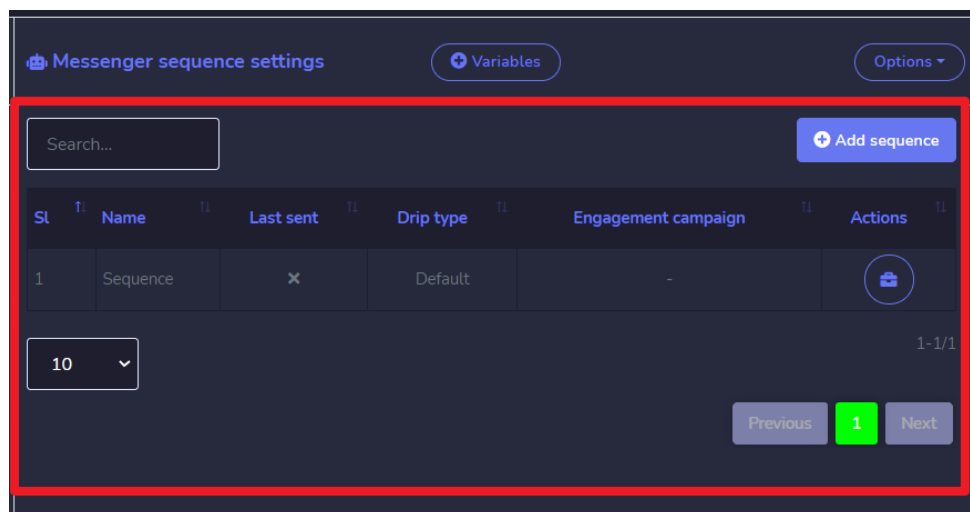




You can choose either **Messenger sequence settings** or **SMS/email sequence settings**.



First, **Messenger sequence settings**. A list of sequence messages will appear on the screen. To perform different actions on them, select  option against the message you want to perform actions on.





The following are the actions that can be performed:

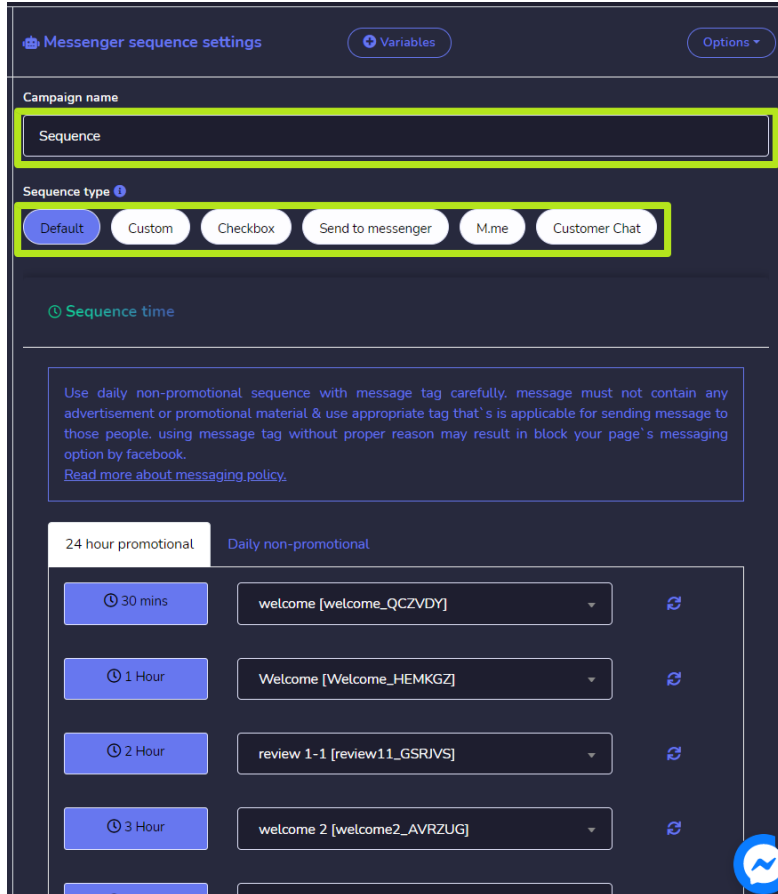
- **24h promo report:** A report on targeted, sent and delivered messages.

The screenshot displays the 'Messenger sequence settings' interface. At the top, there are tabs for 'Variables' and 'Options'. Below these is a search bar and an 'Add sequence' button. A table lists sequences with columns: 'Sl', 'Name', 'Last sent', 'Drip type', 'Engagement campaign', and 'Actions'. The first row shows a sequence named 'Sequence' with a status of 'x' and a drip type of 'Default'. An orange box highlights the 'Actions' column for this sequence, which contains three options: '24h promo report' (with a clock icon), 'Edit sequence' (with a pencil icon), and 'Delete sequence' (with a trash icon). Below the table, a dropdown menu is set to '10'. A modal window titled 'Campaign report' is open, showing three metrics: '0 Targeted', '0 Sent', and '0 Delivered (0%)'. The modal has a close button and navigation buttons 'Previous', '1', and 'Next'.

- **Edit sequence:** You can edit and update the sequence message.

This screenshot is identical to the one above, showing the 'Messenger sequence settings' interface. The orange box highlights the 'Actions' column for the 'Sequence' row, which contains the same three options: '24h promo report', 'Edit sequence', and 'Delete sequence'. The 'Campaign report' modal is not visible in this view.





Campaign name

Sequence

Sequence type

Default Custom Checkbox Send to messenger M.me Customer Chat

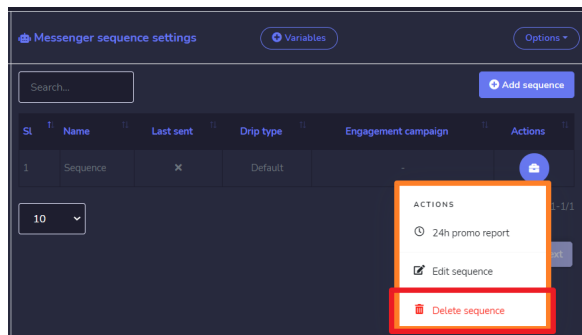
Sequence time

Use daily non-promotional sequence with message tag carefully. message must not contain any advertisement or promotional material & use appropriate tag that's applicable for sending message to those people. using message tag without proper reason may result in block your page's messaging option by facebook.
[Read more about messaging policy.](#)

24 hour promotional Daily non-promotional

Time	Message	Tag
30 mins	welcome [welcome_QCZVDY]	
1 Hour	Welcome [Welcome_HEMKGZ]	
2 Hour	review 1-1 [review11_GSRJVS]	
3 Hour	welcome 2 [welcome2_AVRZUG]	

- Delete sequence



Messenger sequence settings

Search...

+ Add sequence

Sl	Name	Last sent	Drip type	Engagement campaign	Actions
1	Sequence	x	Default		<div> <div>10</div> <div> <div>24h promo report</div> <div>Edit sequence</div> <div>Delete sequence</div> </div> </div>



Delete campaign

Do you really want to delete this campaign?

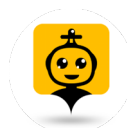
Cancel

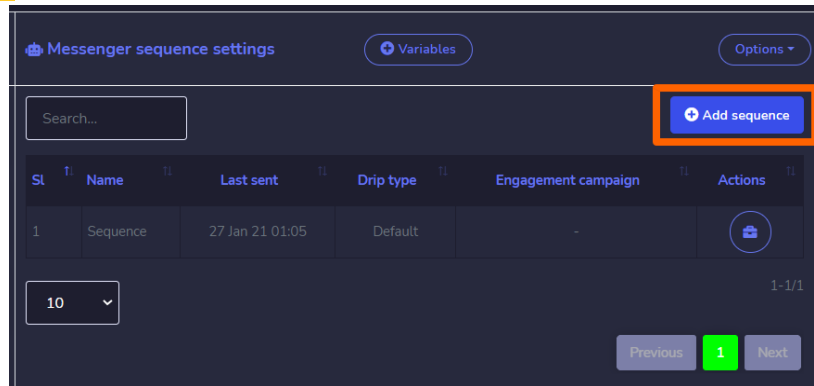
OK

Add sequence

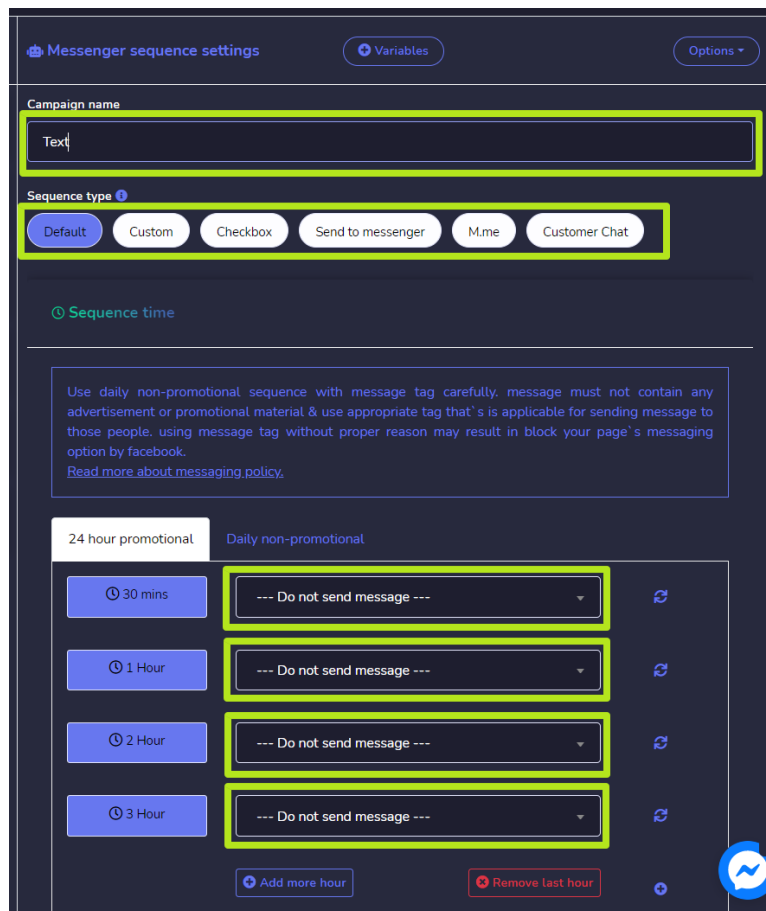
You can add sequence by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select **+ Add sequence** from the top right of the screen.



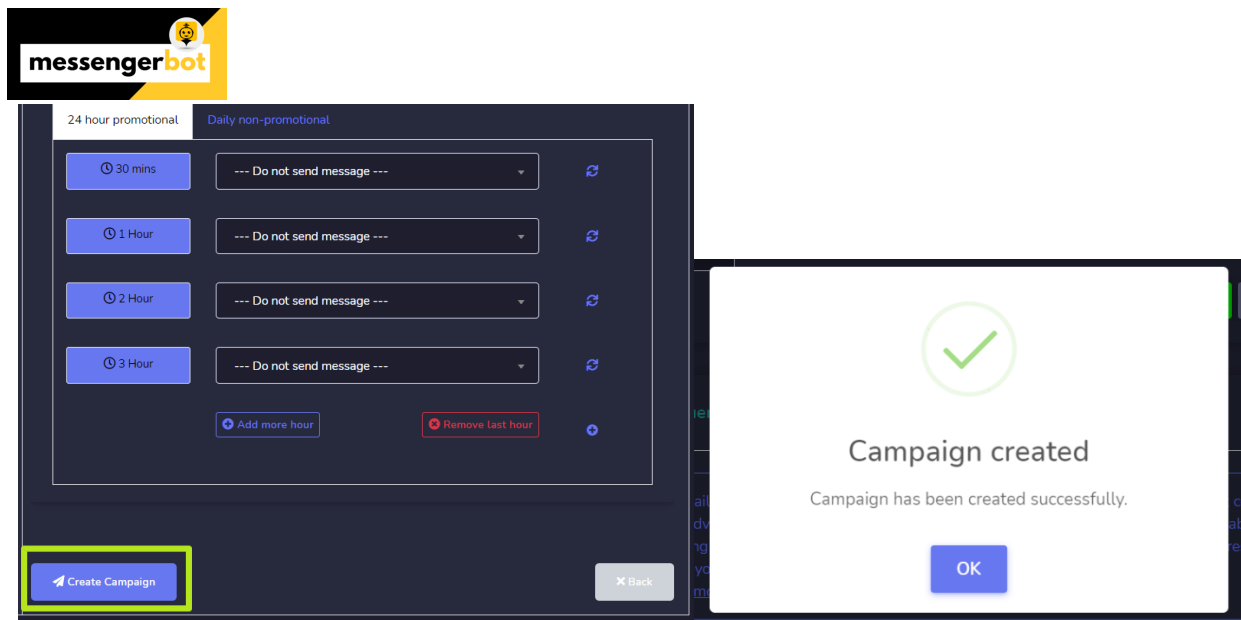


- 2) Provide **Campaign name** and **sequence type**.
- 3) Select the timer settings.



- 4) Select the pages for which you want to apply sequence settings.
- 5) Select **Create campaign**.





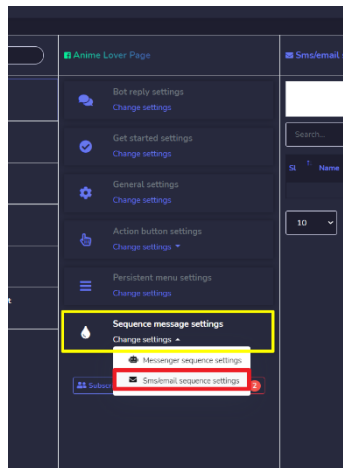
For **SMS/email sequence settings**, things work the same as **Messenger sequence settings**. This is how it differs when you create **SMS/Email sequence settings**.

This is a screenshot of the 'Sms/email sequence settings' form, which has a dark theme. At the top, there are tabs for 'Variables' and 'Options'. The form includes a 'Campaign name' text input field. Below it, the 'Sequence type' is set to 'Email' (with 'Sms' as an alternative). A section titled 'Sequence time' contains two tabs: '24 hour' (selected) and 'Daily'. Under the '24 hour' tab, there is a list of time intervals: '30 mins', '1 Hour', '2 Hour', and '3 Hour'. Each interval has a dropdown menu set to '--- Do not send message ---'. At the bottom of this list are buttons for 'Add more hour' and 'Remove last hour'. At the bottom of the form, there is a 'Create Campaign' button and a 'Back' button with a Messenger icon.

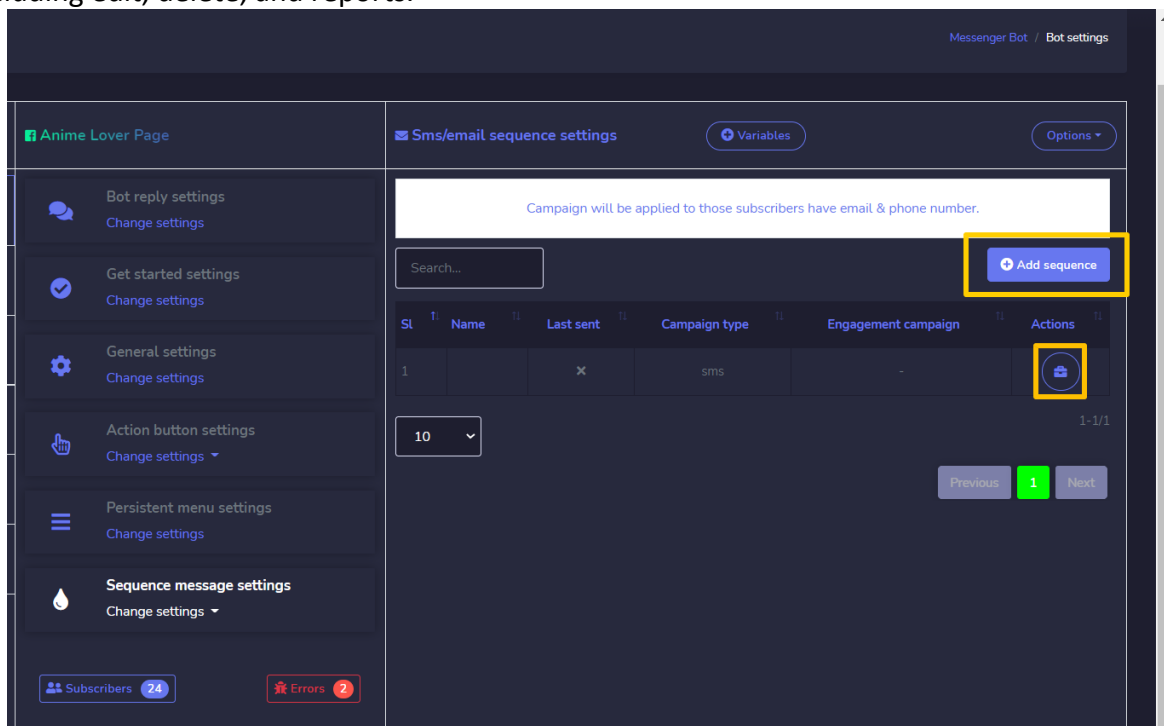


Create Email & SMS Sequence Campaign

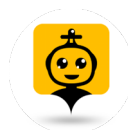
To create Email & SMS Sequence Campaign, go to SMS/Email Sequence Settings from the dropdown menu.



You'll find existing campaigns on the table. You'll find existing campaigns on the table. The list will also show a briefcase icon beside every sequence settings that will expand action buttons including edit, delete, and reports.



Now Click on the Add Sequence button to add a new sequence. In the form, you can choose SMS or Email Sequence type. You can set 24H hoURLy and Daily SMS or Email Sequence campaigns by selecting templates.



Sms/email sequence settings Variables Options

Campaign name

Sequence type

Email ☒ Sms

Sequence time

24 hour ☒ Daily

30 mins	--- Do not send message ---	
1 Hour	--- Do not send message ---	
2 Hour	--- Do not send message ---	
3 Hour	--- Do not send message ---	
Add more hour		Remove last hour

[Create Campaign](#) [Back](#)

You can add SMS/Email Templates by click on icon at the bottom right corner and then click on icon to get the added template.

Sms/email sequence settings Variables Options

Campaign name

Sequence type

Email ☒ Sms

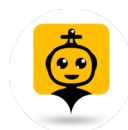
Sequence time

24 hour ☒ Daily

30 mins	--- Do not send message ---	
1 Hour	--- Do not send message ---	
2 Hour	--- Do not send message ---	
3 Hour	--- Do not send message ---	
Add more hour		Remove last hour

[Add new template](#)

[Create Campaign](#) [Back](#)

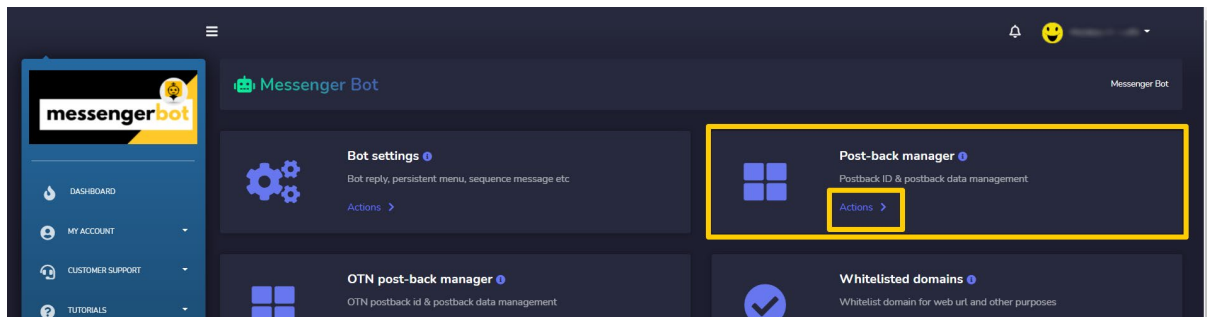




You can also add or remove more hour or days by click on Add more / remove last hour button.

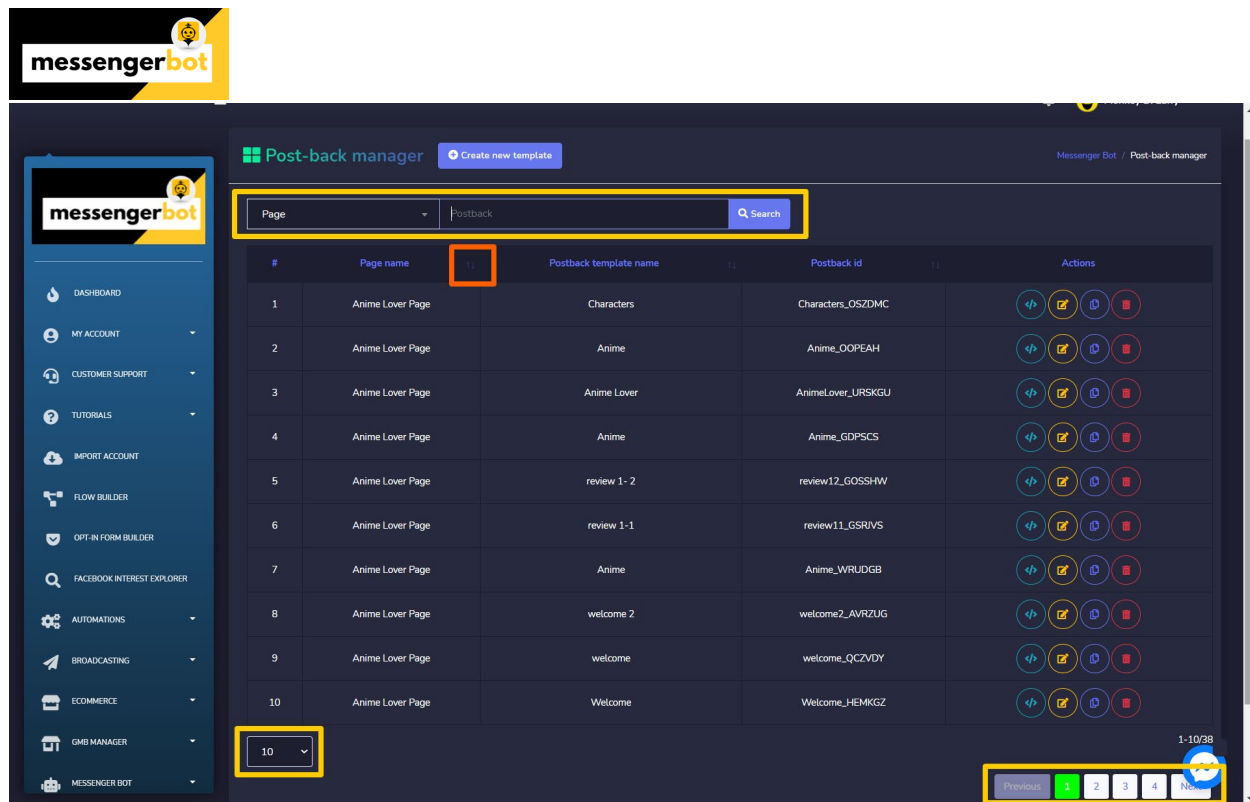
Post-back manager

To access the post-back manager section, select **Post-back manager settings**, then select **Actions** from **Messenger Bot** screen.




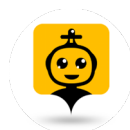
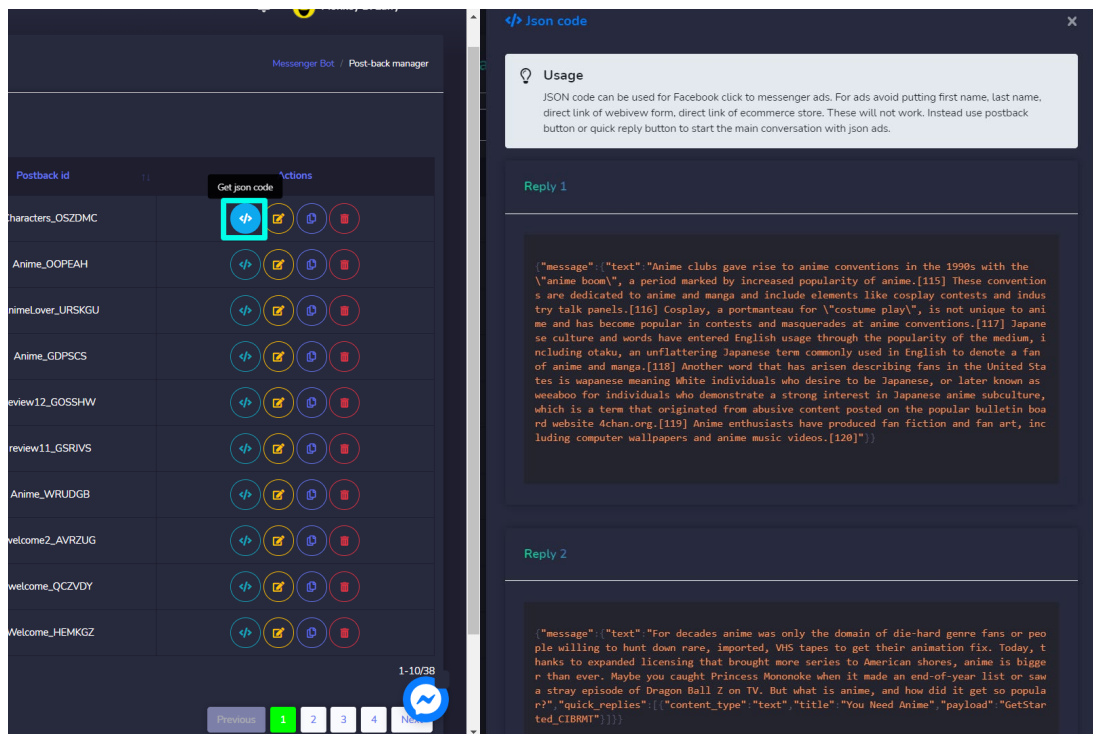
Post-back manager screen consists of a list of templates, you can search for a specific template by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of templates to be **viewed per page**. You can also **arrange** them in either **ascending or descending** order by selecting the **arrows** from the header.





The following are the actions that can be performed:


- **Copy post-back template:** Select  to copy the json code which can be used in Messenger or Facebook ads.



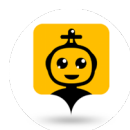


- **Edit template:** You can edit and update the template

The screenshot shows the 'Edit postback template' interface in the Messenger Bot Post-back manager. The interface is divided into two main sections: a table of templates on the left and a detailed edit form on the right. The table lists various templates with their IDs and names. The edit form allows users to modify the template's name, selected page, postback ID, labels, and sequence campaigns. It also includes fields for defining replies, such as the reply type, delay, and message content. A preview of the bot's response is shown on the right side of the form.

- **Clone post-back template:** Select  to clone the post back template. Select the template name, postback type, postback id, sequence campaign. Provide a reply and your reply message, then select **Clone**.

The screenshot shows the 'Clone postback template' interface in the Messenger Bot Post-back manager. The interface is divided into two main sections: a table of templates on the left and a detailed clone form on the right. The table lists various templates with their IDs and names. The clone form allows users to select a template to clone and then modify its details, including the template name, selected page, postback ID, labels, and sequence campaigns. It also includes fields for defining replies, such as the reply type, delay, and message content. A preview of the bot's response is shown on the right side of the form.





Parent ☒ Child ☐

Choose labels [Create Label](#) Choose sequence campaigns [Select](#)

Reply 1

Select reply type **Text**

Typing on display ☒ Enable Delay in reply **3** Sec

Please provide your reply message [First name](#) [Last name](#)

Anime clubs gave rise to anime conventions in the 1990s with the "anime boom", a period marked by increased popularity of anime.[115] These conventions are dedicated to anime and manga and include elements like cosplay contests and industry talk panels.[116] Cosplay, a portmanteau for "costume play", is not unique to anime and has become popular in contests and masquerades at anime conventions.[117] Japanese culture and words have entered English usage through the popularity of the medium, including otaku, an unfattering Japanese

Reply 2

Select reply type **Text**

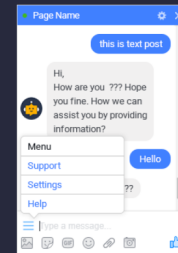
Typing on display ☐ Enable Delay in reply **0** Sec

Please provide your reply message [First name](#) [Last name](#)

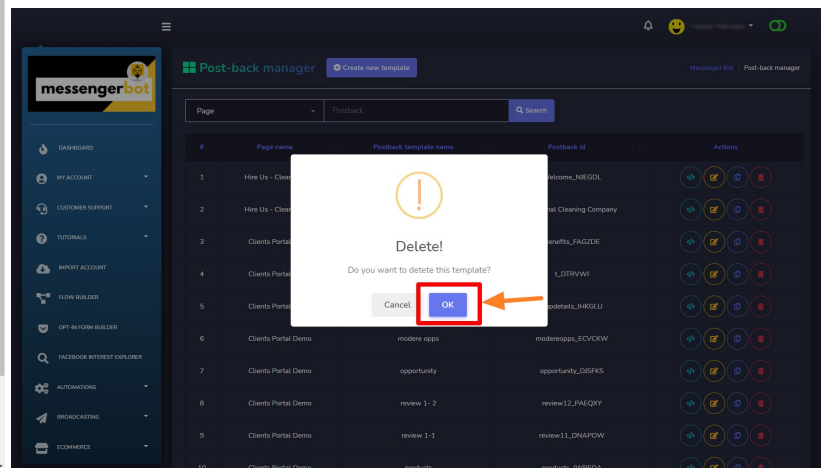
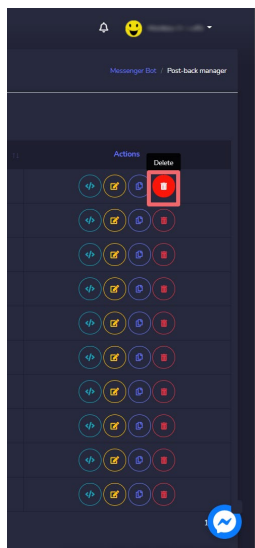
For decades anime was only the domain of die-hard genre fans or people willing to hunt down rare, imported, VHS tapes to get their animation fix. Today, thanks to expanded licensing that brought more series to American shores, anime is bigger than ever. Maybe you caught Princess Mononoke when it made an end-of-year list or saw a stray episode of Dragon Ball Z on TV. But what is anime, and how did it get so popular?

[Add more reply](#) [Back](#)

[Clone](#)



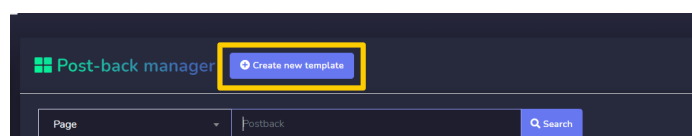
• Delete the template



Create new template

You can create new template by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select [+ Create new template](#) from the top right of the screen.



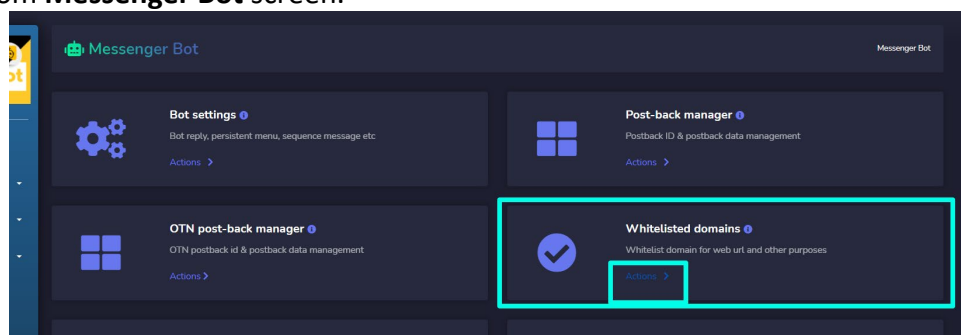


- 2) Provide **Template name**.
- 3) Select a **page** for which you want to create a template.
- 4) Select the **type of postback**, and turn on the **toggle button** for that option.
- 5) Provide a **Postback id**.
- 6) Select a **reply type** and provide your **message**.
- 7) Select **Submit**.

The screenshot shows the 'Add a postback template' form. Key elements include: a 'Template name' input field; a 'Choose a page' dropdown menu; a 'Postback type' section with 'Parent' and 'Child' radio buttons; a 'Postback id' input field; a 'Reply 1' section with a 'Select reply type' dropdown (set to 'Text'), an 'Enable' toggle, and a 'Delay in reply' input (set to 0 seconds); a large text area for the message; and a 'Submit' button. A preview of the bot's response is shown on the right.

Whitelisted domains


To access the post-back manager settings section, select **Whitelisted domains**, then select **Actions** from **Messenger Bot** screen.




Whitelisted domain screen consists of a list of domains that are added in the white list, you can search for a specific domain by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number of templates** to be **viewed per page**. You can also **arrange** them in either **ascending or descending** order by selecting the **arrows** from the header.

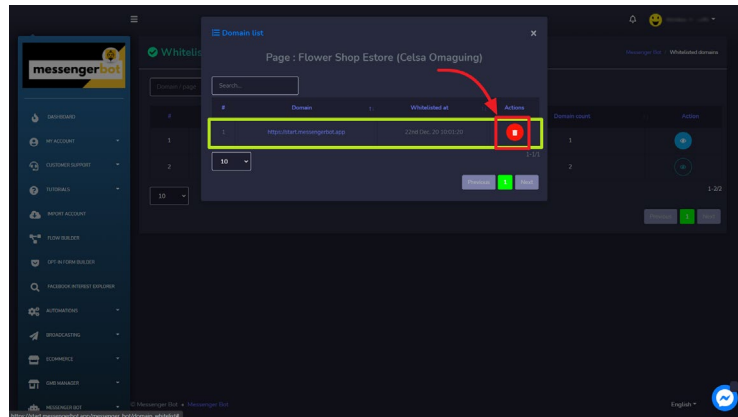




To perform different actions on the templates, select  option against the domain you want to perform actions on.


A modal will appear containing the domain list. This displays the time at which the domain was added and the domain name. You can delete the domain by selecting the  icon.

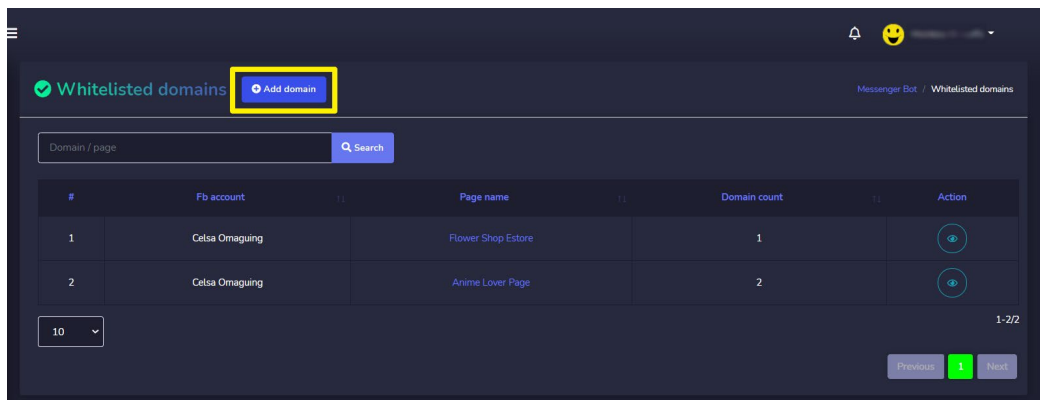




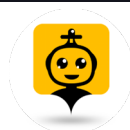
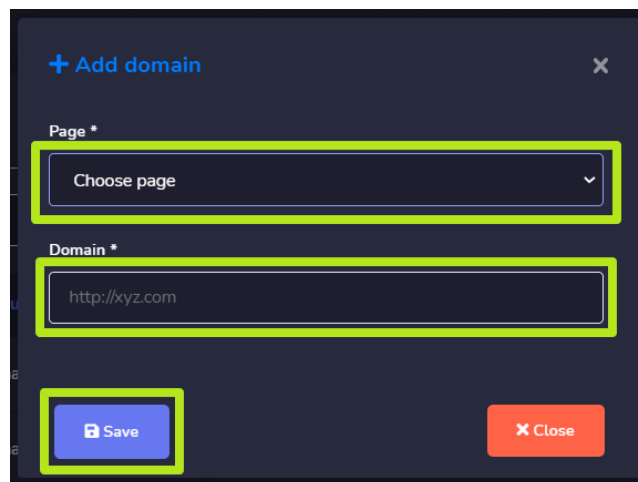
Add domain

You can add a new domain in your whitelisted category. Follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select  from the top of the whitelisted domain screen.



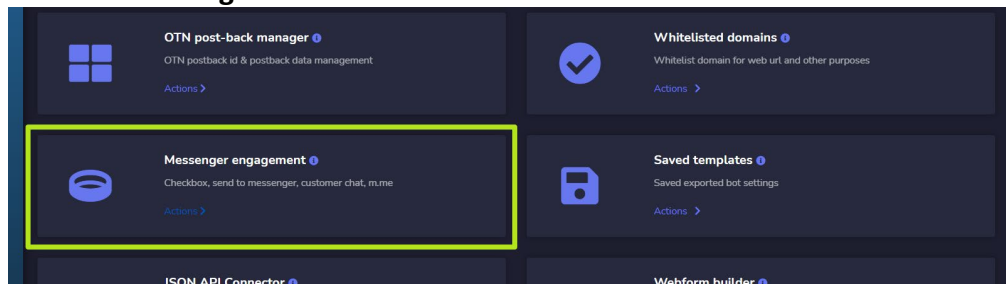
- 2) A modal will appear. Select the **page** for which you want to add a new domain.
- 3) Provide the **domain** which is to be added in whitelisted list.
- 4) Select **Save** to make changes.





Messenger engagement

To access the messenger engagement section, select **Messenger engagement**, then select **Actions** from the **Messenger Bot** screen.

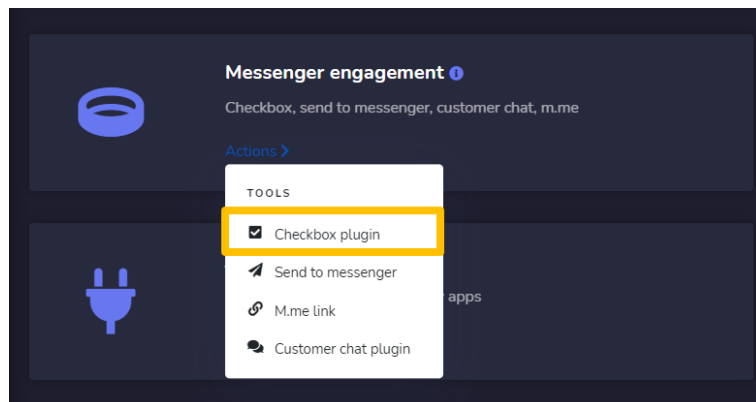


A dropdown menu containing the following options:

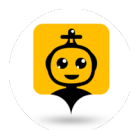
- Checkbox plugin
- Send to messenger
- M.me link
- Customer chat plugin

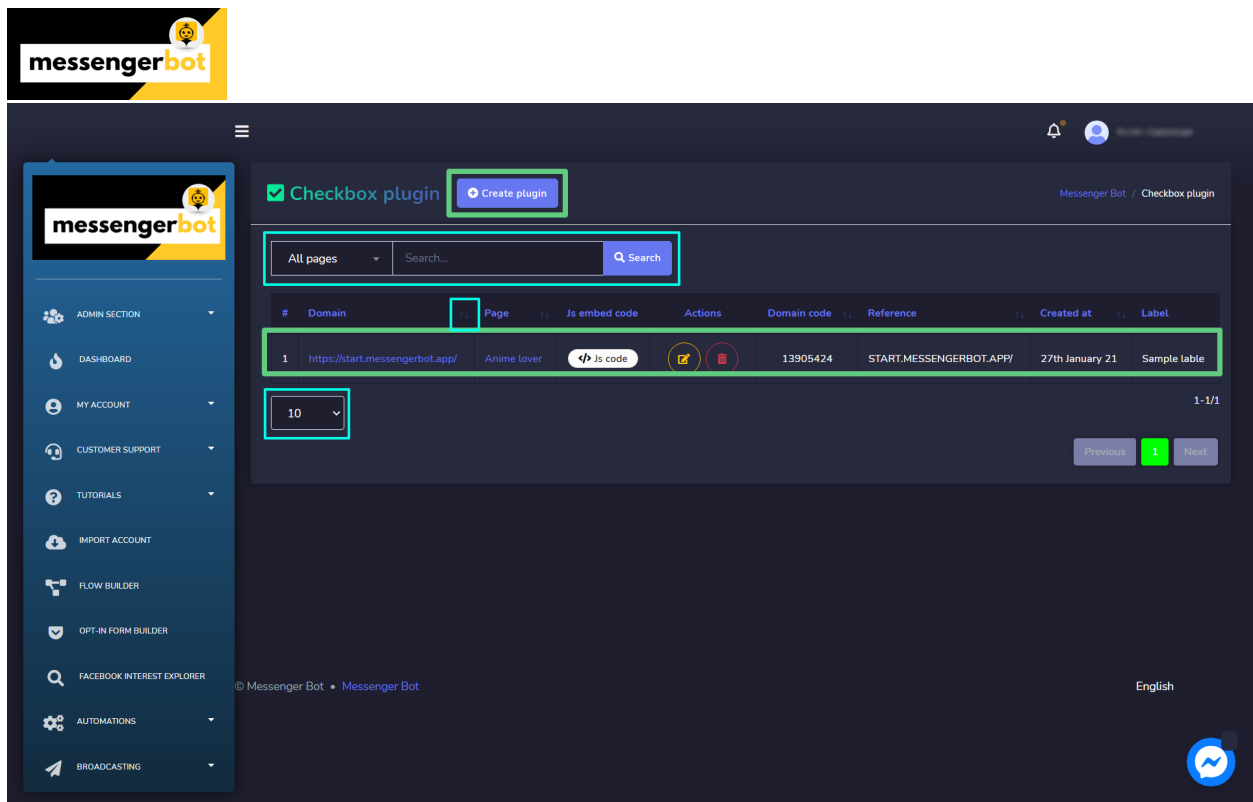
A detail of these settings can be found in the next headings.

Checkbox plugin



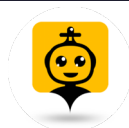
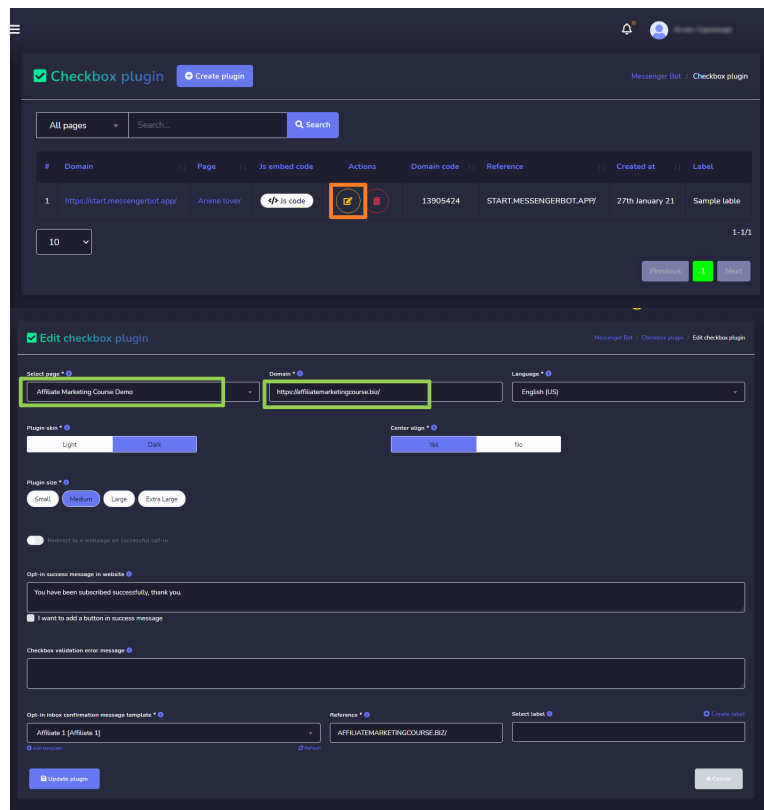
Checkbox plugin screen consists of a list of domains, you can search for a specific domain by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number of domains** to be **viewed per page**. You can also **arrange** them in **either ascending or descending** order by selecting the **arrows** from the header.





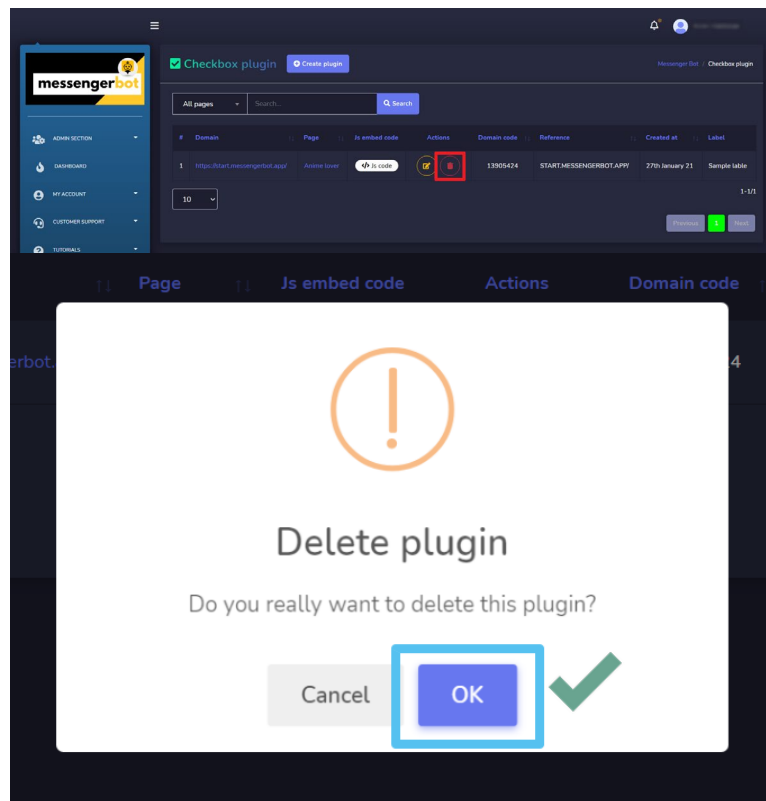
Following actions can be performed from the checkbox plugin view:

- **Edit the plugin:** Edit checkbox plugin and select **Update plugin**.






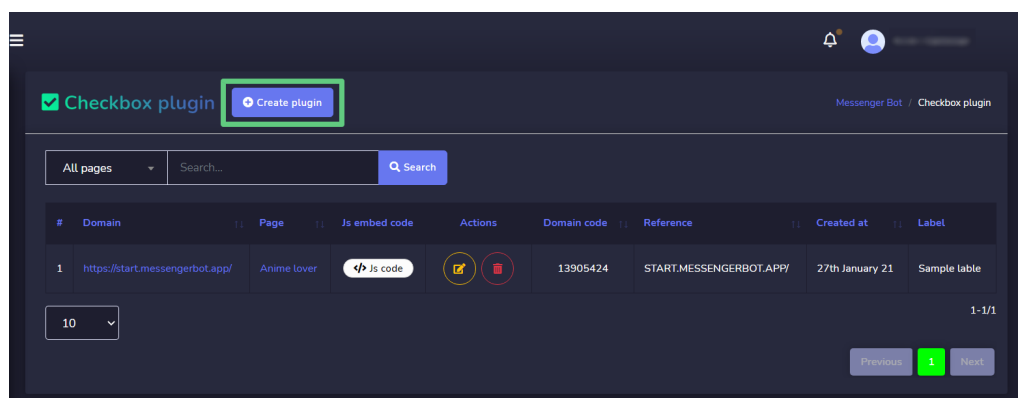
- Delete the plugin



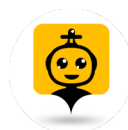
Create plugin

You can create a plugin by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select  from the top right of the screen.



- 2) Select the **page** for which you want to add the plugin.
- 3) Provide the **domain**.
- 4) Select the **language**.





- 5) Select the **Plugin skin**, turn it to either light or dark and **center align** option.
- 6) Select the **Plugin size**.
- 7) Write an **Opt-in success message in website** and a **Checkbox validation error message**.
- 8) Select an **opt-in inbox confirmation message template**, **reference**, and **label**.
- 9) Select **Generate embed code** option to create the send to messenger plugin.

✓ Add checkbox plugin

Select page * Domain * Language *

Plugin skin * Center align * Plugin size *

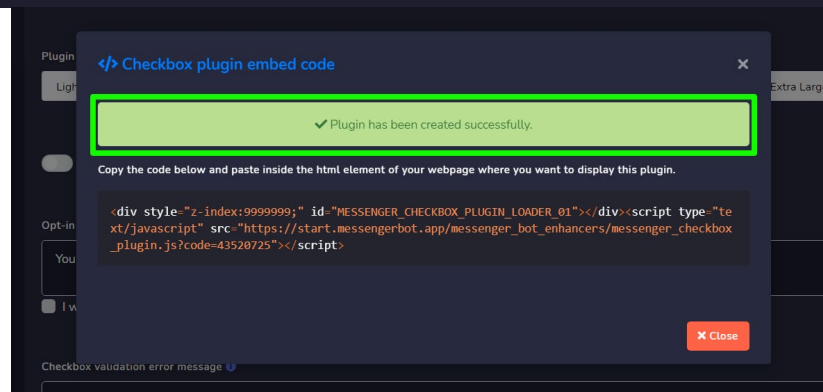
☐ Redirect to a webpage on successful opt-in

Opt-in success message in website

☐ I want to add a button in success message

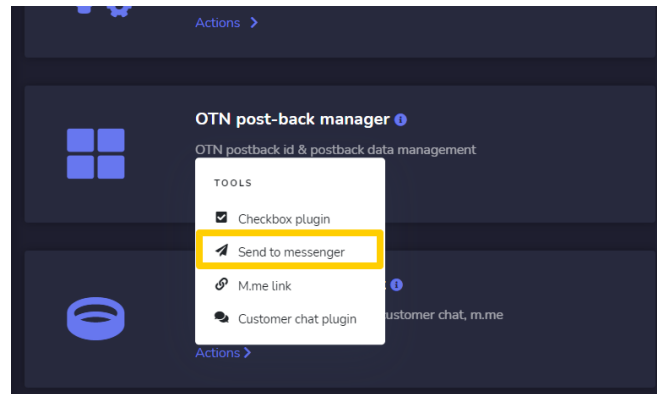
Checkbox validation error message

Opt-in inbox confirmation message template * Reference * Select label

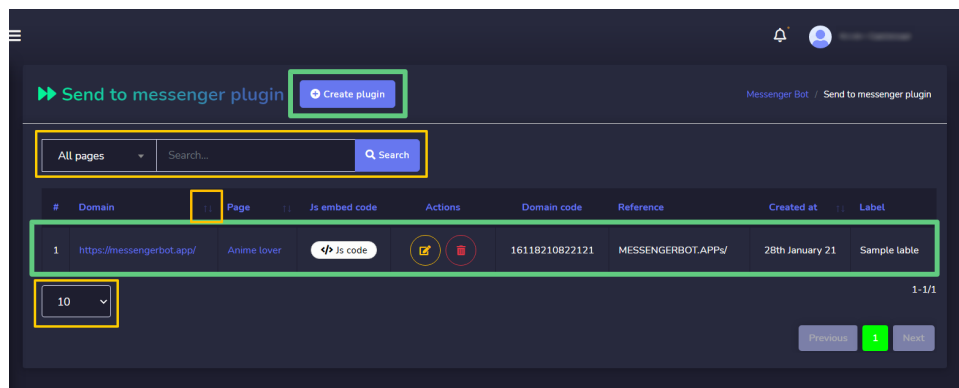




Send to messenger

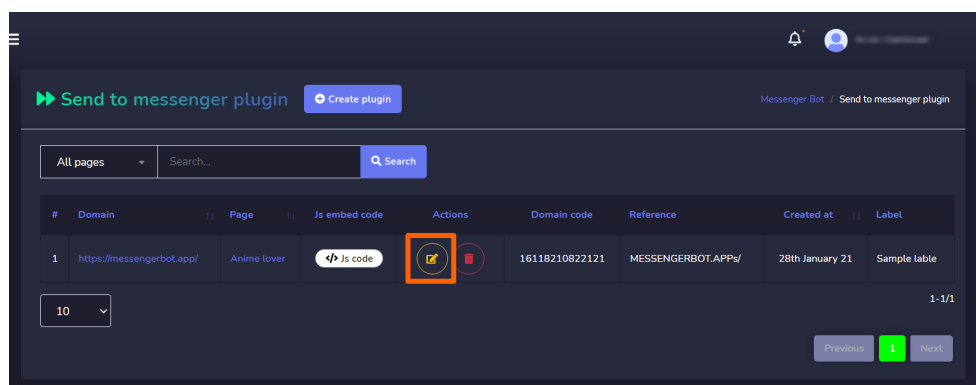


Send to messenger plugin screen consists of a list of domains, you can search for a specific domain by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of domains to be **viewed per page**. You can also arrange them in either **ascending or descending order by selecting the arrows** from the header.



Following actions can be performed from the send to messenger plugin view:

- **Edit the plugin:** Edit messenger plugin and select **Update plugin**.





Edit send to messenger plugin

Messenger Bot / Send to messenger plugin / Edit send to messenger plugin

Select page * Domain * Language * Cta button text *

Plugin skin * ☐ White ☒ Blue

Plugin size * ☒ Standard ☐ Large ☐ Extra Large

☐ Redirect to a webpage on successful opt-in

Opt-in success message in website *

☐ I want to add a button in success message

Opt-in inbox confirmation message template * Reference * Select Label *

- Delete the plugin

Send to messenger plugin

All pages Search...

#	Domain	Page	Js embed code	Actions	Domain code	Reference	Created at	Label
1	https://messengerbot.app/	Anime lover			16118210822121	MESSENGERBOT.APPS/	28th January 21	Sample label

10 1-1/1

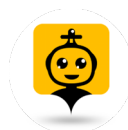
Delete plugin

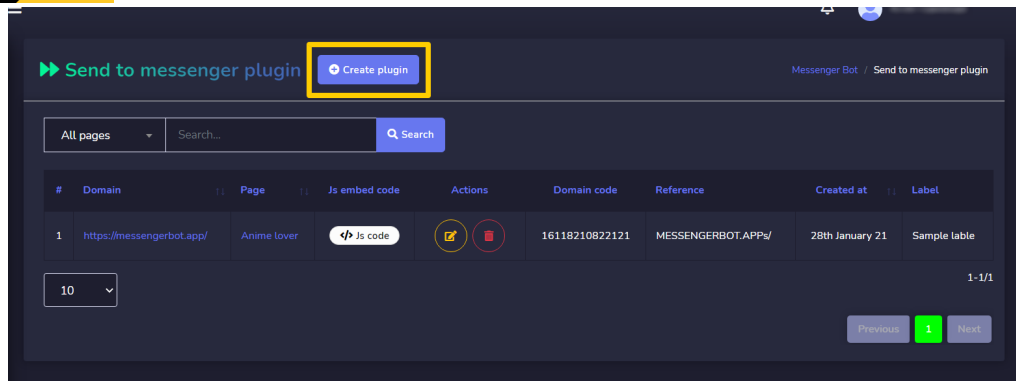
Do you really want to delete this plugin?

Create plugin

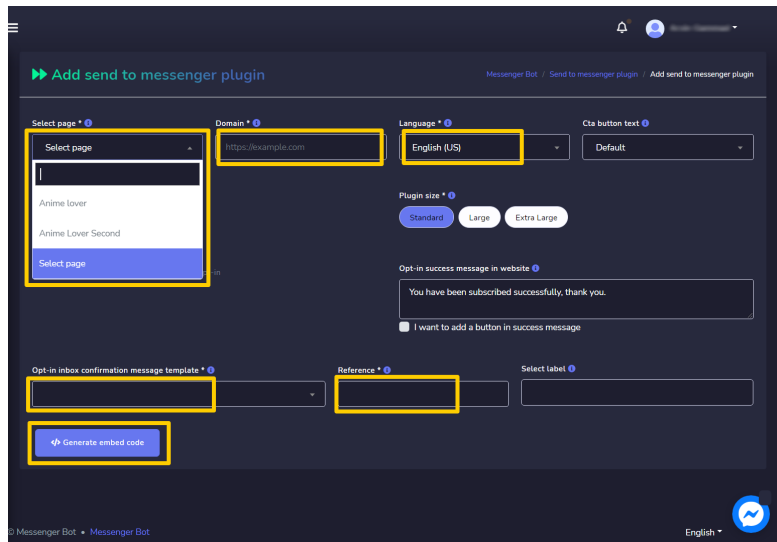
You can create a plugin by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select from the top right of the screen.

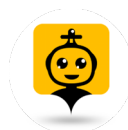


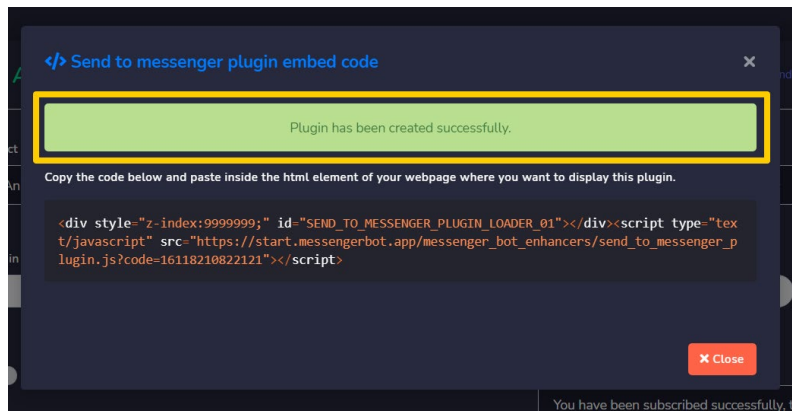


- 2) Select the **page** for which you want to add the plugin.
- 3) Provide the **domain**.
- 4) Select the **language** and **Cta button text option**.
- 5) Select the **Plugin skin**, turn it to either **white** or **blue**.
- 6) Select the **Plugin size**.
- 7) Select an **opt-in inbox confirmation message template**, **reference**, and **label**.
- 8) Select **Generate embed code** option to create the send to messenger plugin.

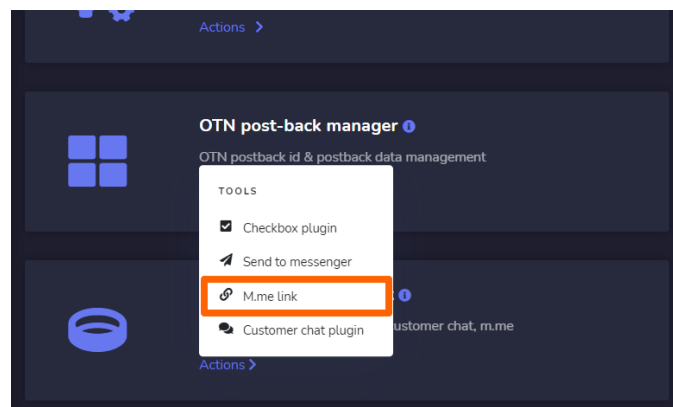


The screenshot shows the 'Add send to messenger plugin' form. Fields highlighted with yellow boxes include: 'Select page' dropdown, 'Domain' text input, 'Language' dropdown, 'Cta button text' dropdown, 'Plugin size' buttons (Standard, Large, Extra Large), 'Opt-in success message in website' text area, 'Opt-in inbox confirmation message template' dropdown, 'Reference' text input, 'Select label' text input, and the 'Generate embed code' button.

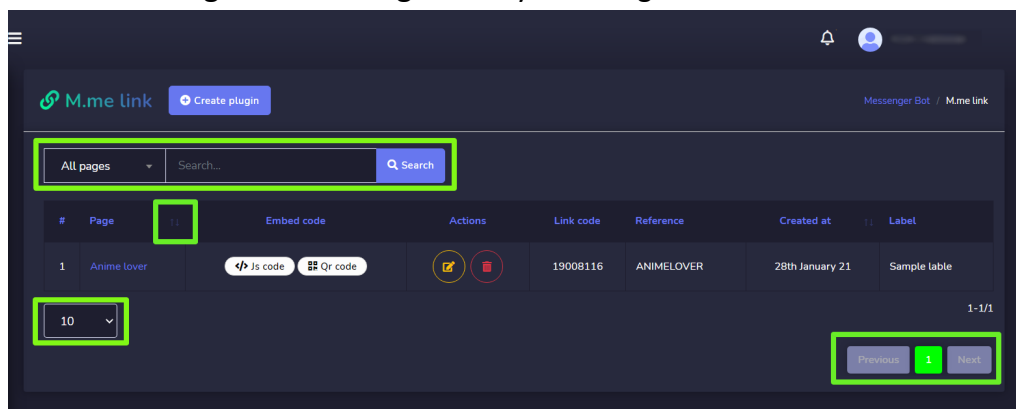




M.me link



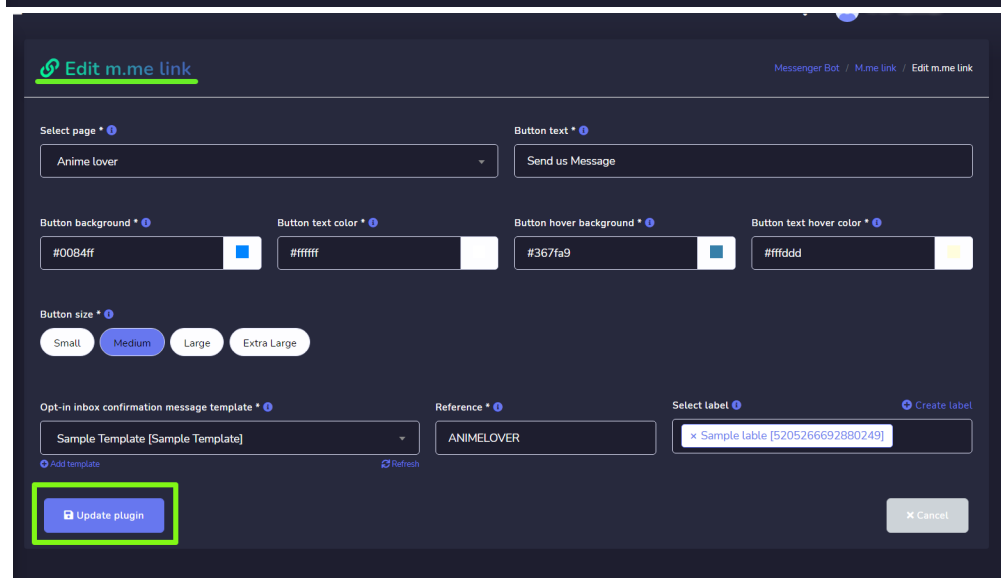
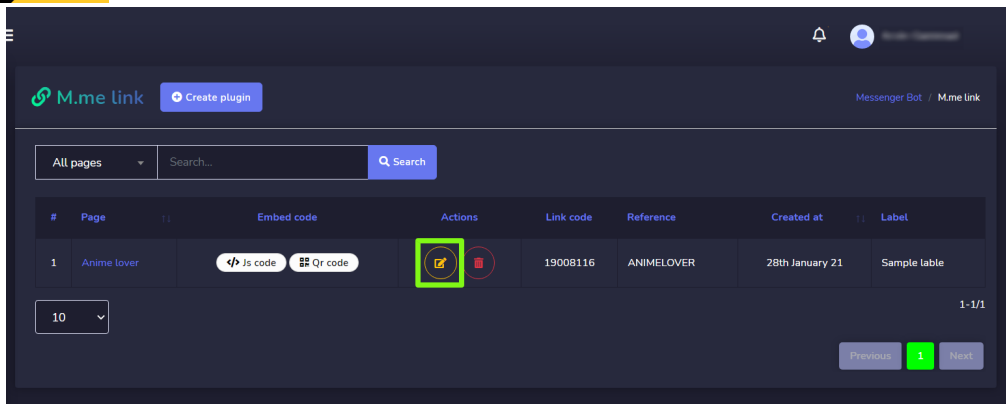
M.me link screen consists of a list of pages you can search for a specific page by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number of pages** to be **viewed per view**. You can also arrange them in either **ascending or descending** order by selecting the **arrows** from the header.



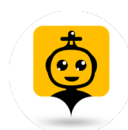
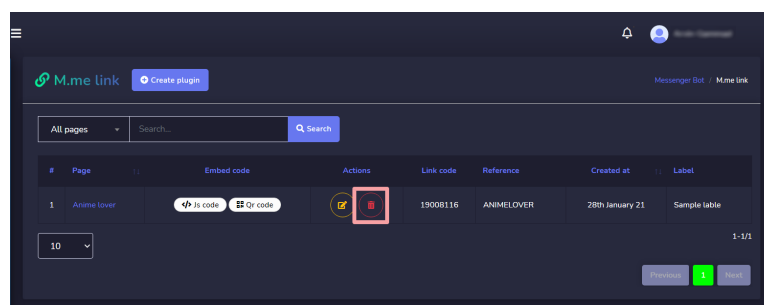
Following actions can be performed from the M.me link view:

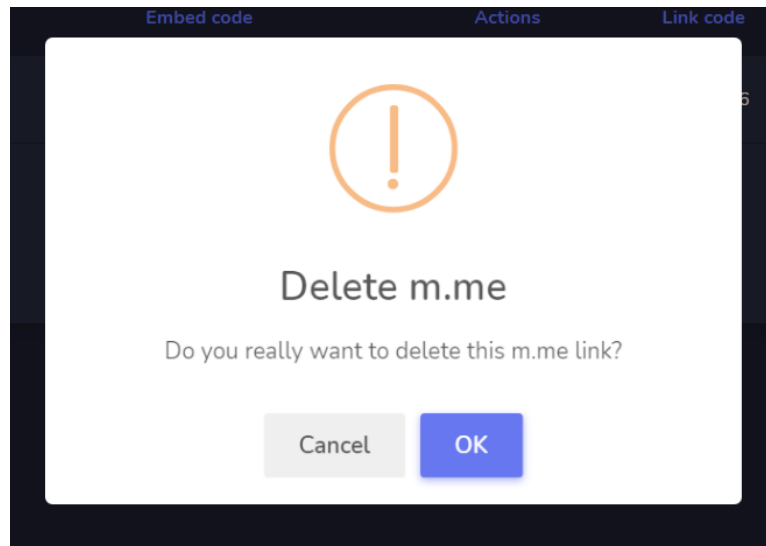
- **Edit the plugin:** Edit M.me link and select **Update plugin**.





- Delete the plugin

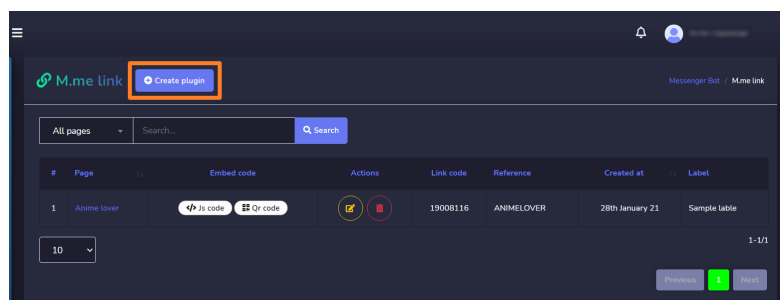




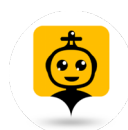
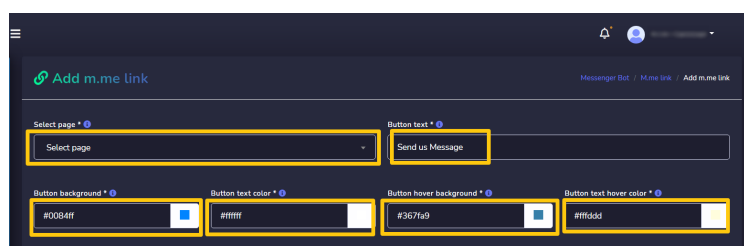
Create plugin

You can create a plugin by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select  from the top right of the screen.



- 2) Select the **page** for which you want to add the plugin.
- 3) Provide the **Button text**.
- 4) Provide the **Button background, text color, hover over color**.
- 5) Select the **Button size**.
- 6) Select an **opt-in inbox confirmation message template, reference, and label**.
- 7) Select **Generate embed code** option to create the send to messenger plugin.





Button size * ⓘ

Small Medium Large Extra Large

Opt-in inbox confirmation message template * ⓘ

Reference * ⓘ

Select label ⓘ

Generate embed code

M.me plugin embed code

✓ Plugin has been created successfully.

Copy the code below and paste inside the html element of your webpage where you want to display this plugin.

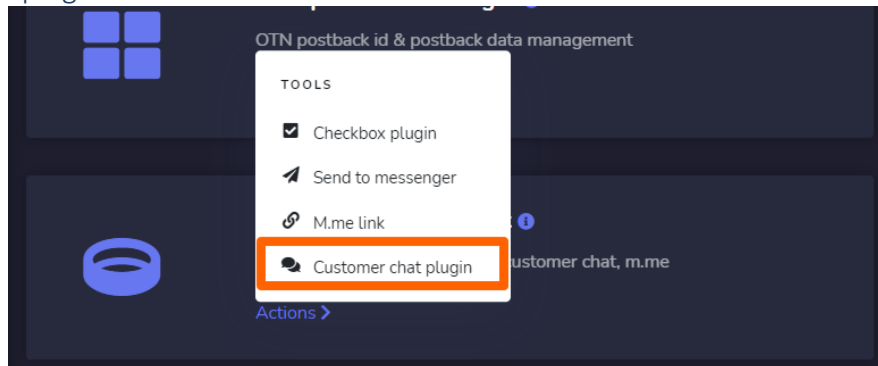
```
<div style="z-index:999999;" id="MME_LINK_LOADER_01"></div><script type="text/javascript" src="https://start.messengerbot.app/messenger_bot_enhancers/mme_link.js?code=19008116"></script>
```

M.me link

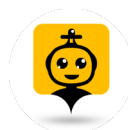
https://m.me/103888438149069?ref=ANIMELOVER

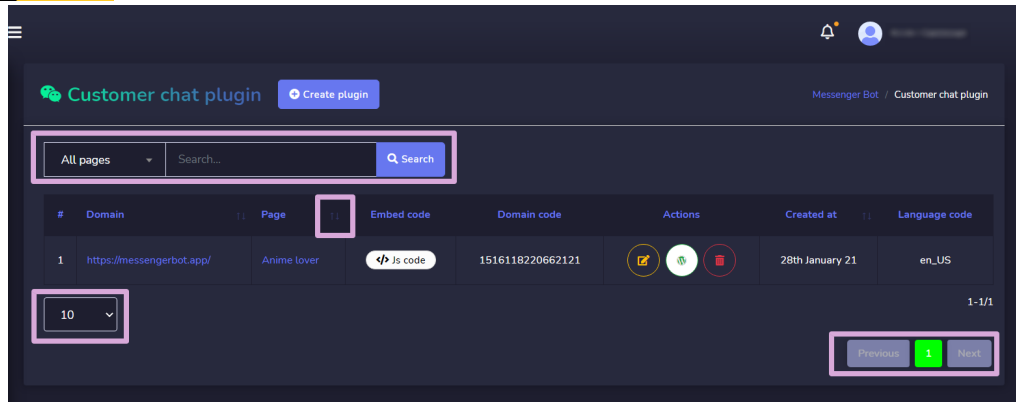
Close

Customer chat plugin



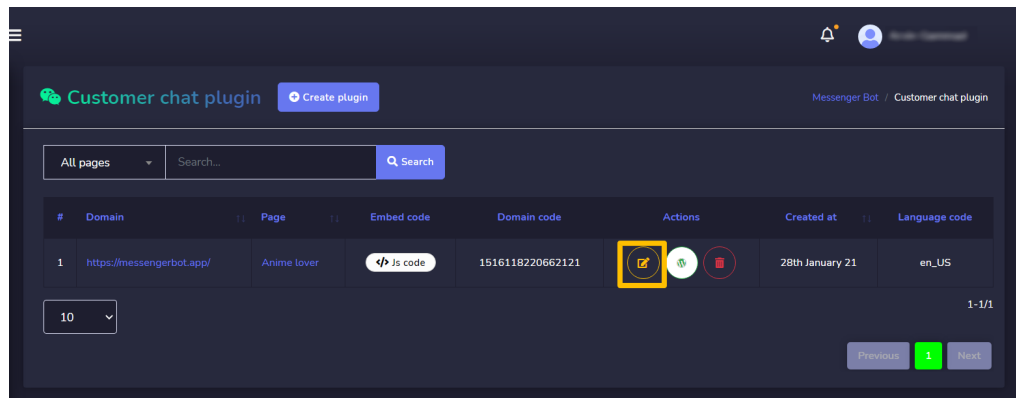
The customer chat plugin screen consists of a list of domains, you can search for a specific domain by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number of domains to be viewed per page**. You can also **arrange** them in either **ascending or descending order** by selecting the **arrows** from the header.






Following actions can be performed from the Customer chat plugin view:

- **Edit the plugin:** Edit customer chat plugin and select **Update plugin**.



- **Download WordPress plugin:** Download the WordPress plugin by selecting  .



messengerbot

ADMIN SECTION

DASHBOARD

MY ACCOUNT

CUSTOMER SUPPORT

TUTORIALS

IMPORT ACCOUNT

FLOW BUILDER

OPT-IN FORM BUILDER

FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER

AUTOMATIONS

Customer chat plugin

Create plugin

Messenger Bot / Customer chat plugin

All pages

Search...

Search

#	Domain	Page	Embed code	Domain code	Actions	Created at	Language code
1	https://messengerbot.app/	Anime lover		1516118220662121		28th January 21	en_US

10

Previous1Next

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot

English

EasyEmbedChat-21....zip

Show all

- Delete the plugin

Customer chat plugin

Create plugin

Messenger Bot / Customer chat plugin

All pages

Search...

Search

#	Domain	Page	Embed code	Domain code	Actions	Created at	Language code
1	https://messengerbot.app/	Anime lover		1516118220662121		28th January 21	en_US

10

Previous1Next

Page

Embed code

Domain code

Delete 2-way chat plugin

Do you really want to delete this 2-way chat plugin?

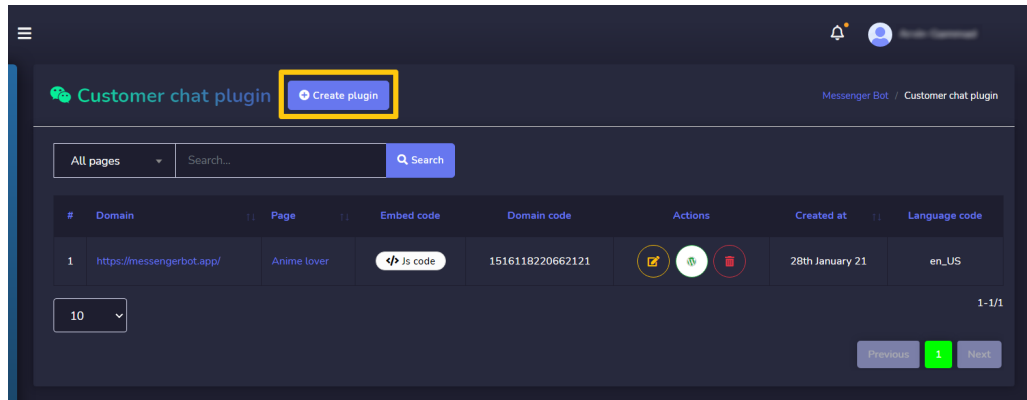
CancelOK



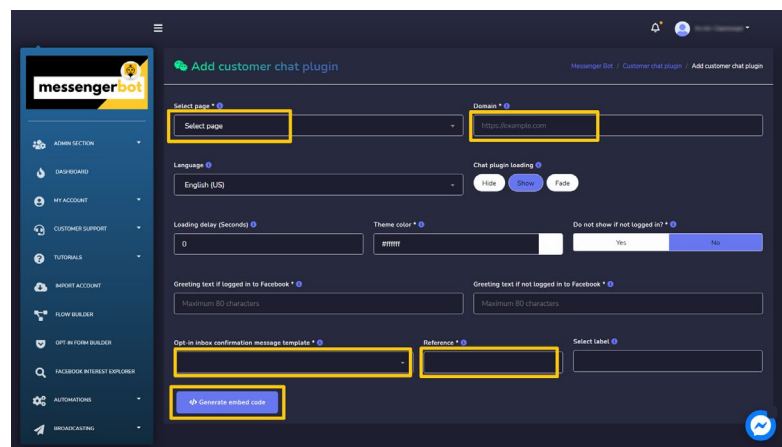
Create plugin

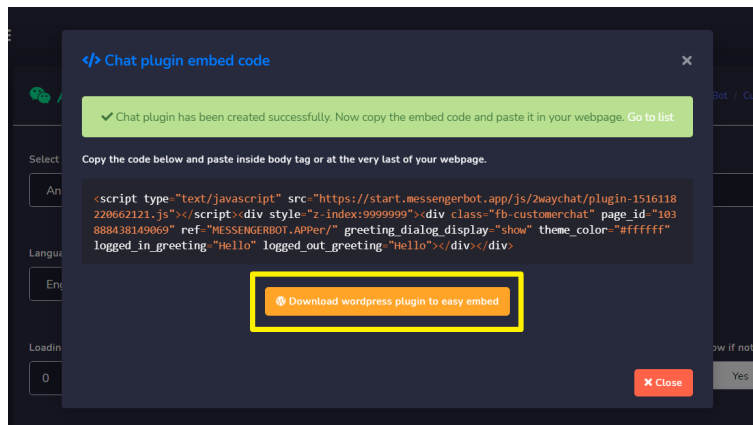
You can create a plugin by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select **Create plugin** from the top right of the screen.



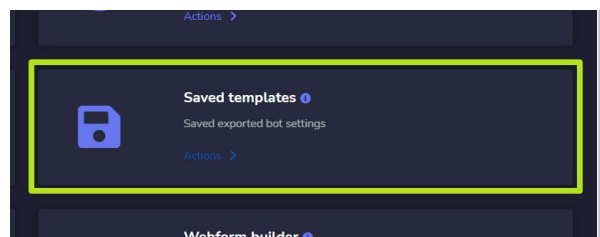
- 2) Select the **page** for which you want to add the plugin.
- 3) Enter the domain to be added in the **domain** field.
- 4) Select the **language** and **chat plugin loading** option.
- 5) Provide the **Delay**.
- 6) Provide the **theme color**.
- 7) Select an **opt-in inbox confirmation message template, reference, and label**.
- 8) Select **Generate embed code** option to create the customer chat plugin.



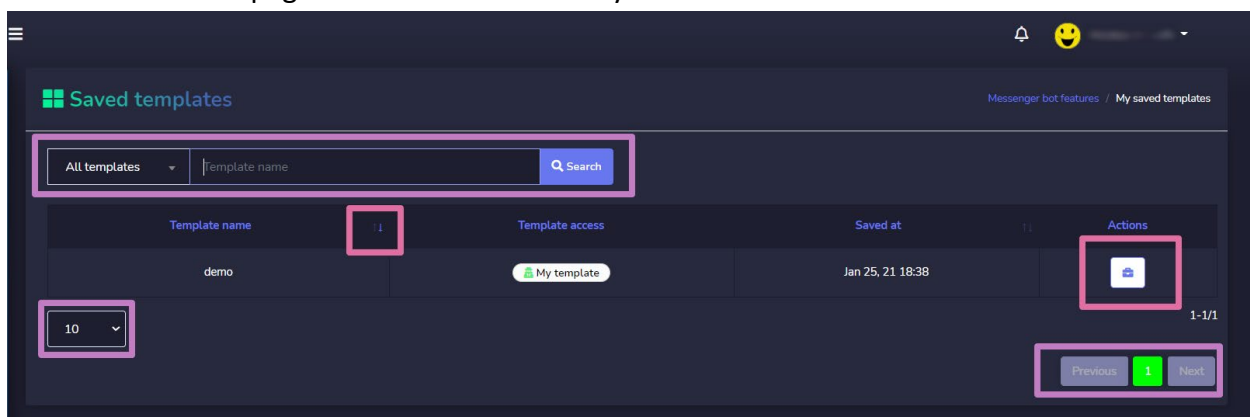



Saved templates

To access the post-back manager settings section, select **Saved templates**, then select **Actions** from **Messenger Bot** screen.

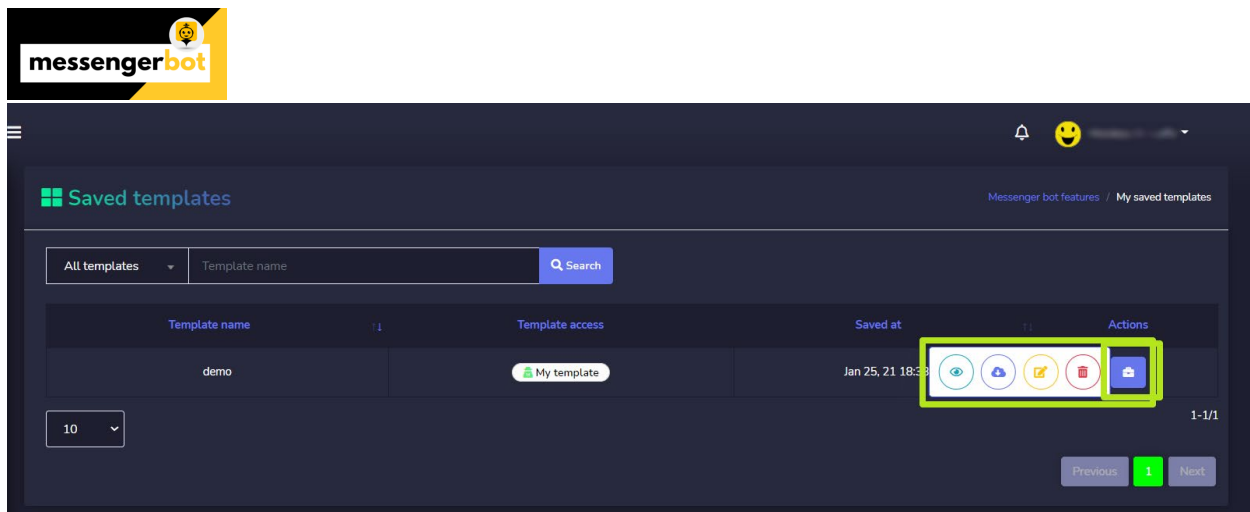


Saved templates screen consists of a list of templates, you can search for a specific template by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number of templates** to be **viewed per page**. You can also **arrange** them in either **ascending or descending** order by selecting the **arrows** from the header. Select the page filter to **narrow down** your search.



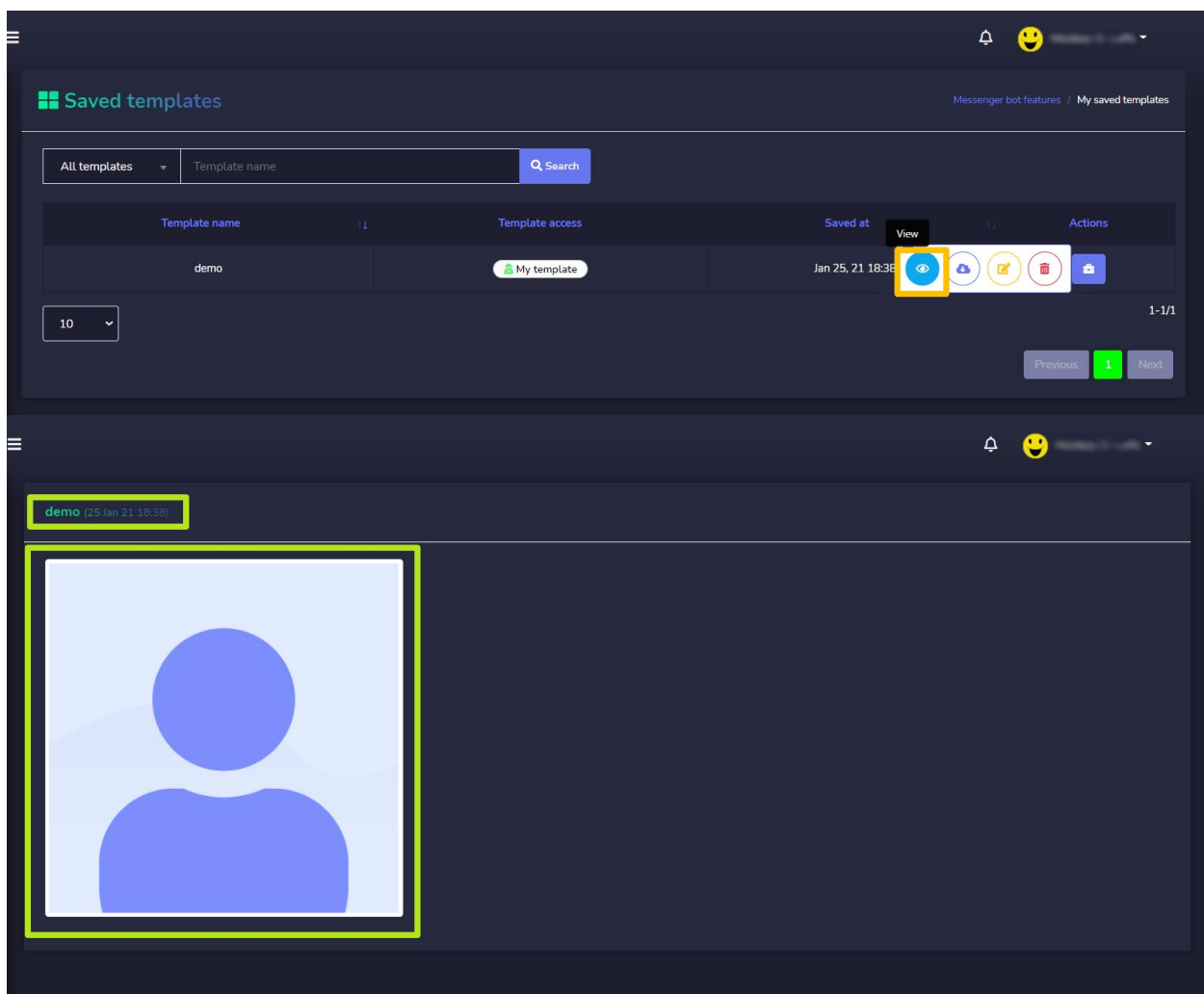
To perform different **actions** on the templates, select  option against the template you want to perform actions on.





The following are the actions that can be performed:

- **View** the template by selecting .



- **Download** the template files by selecting .



Saved templates Messenger bot features / My saved templates

All templates

Template name	Template access	Saved at	Download	Actions
demo		Jan 25, 21 18:38		

10 1-1/1

Previous 1 Next

demo.json

- Edit the template

Saved templates Messenger bot features / My saved templates

All templates

Template name	Template access	Saved at	Edit this template	Actions
demo		Jan 25, 21 18:38		

10 1-1/1

Previous 1 Next

Edit saved template ✕

Template name *

Template description

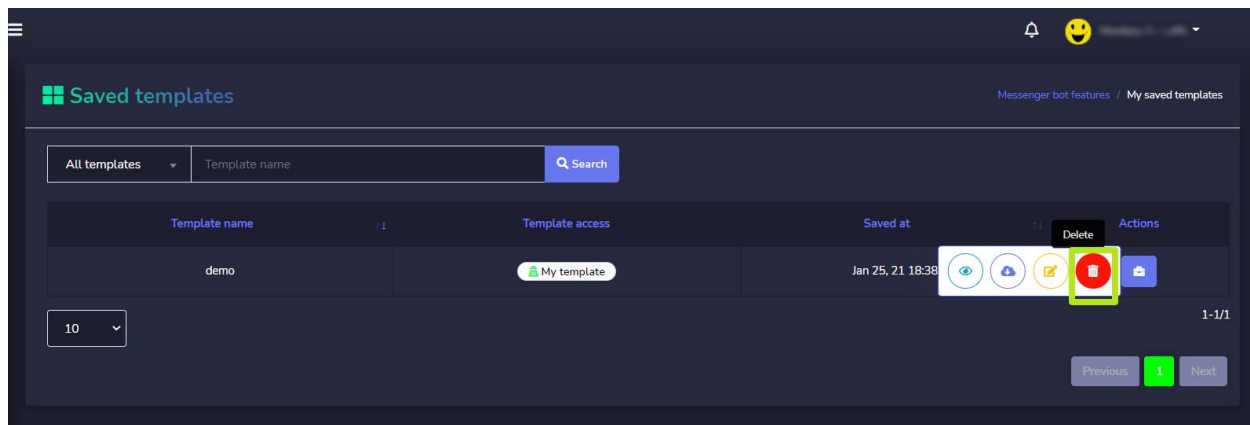
Template preview image [Square image like (400x400) is recommended]

Preview



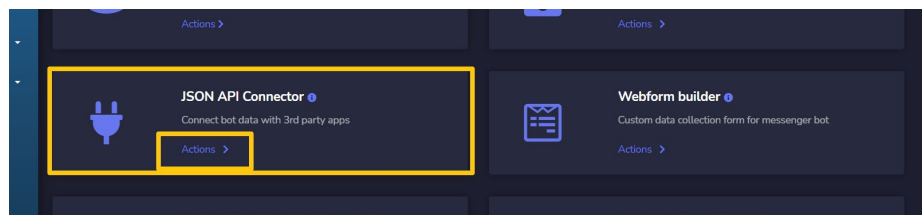


- Delete the template

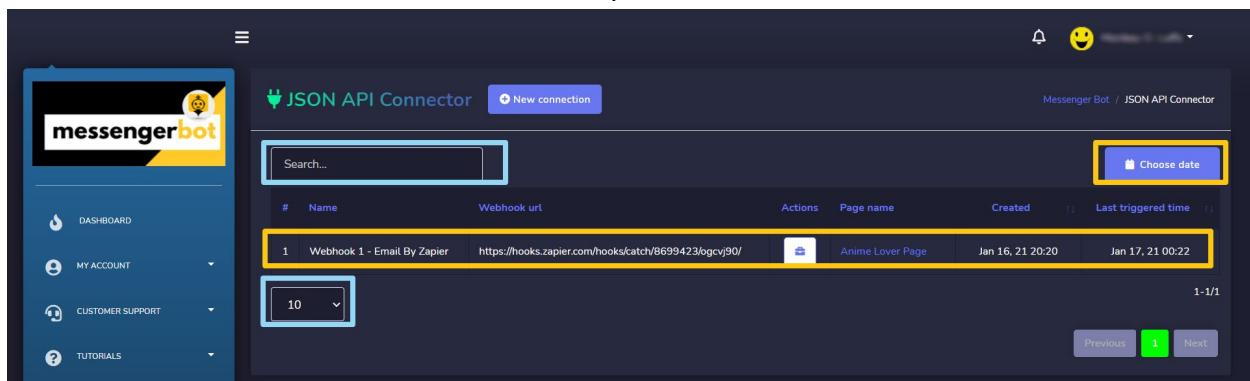



JSON API Connector


To access the JSON API Connector section, select **JSON API Connector**, then select **Actions** from **Messenger Bot** screen.



JSON API Connector screen consists of a list of webhook URLs, you can search for a specific URL by using the **search bar**. You can **adjust** the number of URLs to be **viewed per page**. You can also **arrange** them in either **ascending or descending order** by selecting the **arrows** from the header. Select the **date** filter to **narrow down** your search.



To perform different actions on the Webhook URLs, select  option against the URL you want to perform actions on. The following are the actions that can be performed:




- **View report** by selecting .





JSON API Connector [New connection](#) Messenger Bot / JSON API Connector

Search... [Choose date](#)

#	Name	Webhook url	Actions	Page name	Created	Last triggered time
1	Webhook 1 - Email By Zapier	https://hooks.zapier.com/hooks/catch/8699423/ogcvj90/	  		Jan 16, 21 20:20	Jan 17, 21 00:22

10 [Previous](#) [1](#) [Next](#)

[Report](#)

[Campaign details](#)

NAME	PAGE NAME
Webhook 1 - Email By Zapier	Anime Lover Page
WEBHOOK URL	LAST TRIGGERED TIME
https://hooks.zapier.com/hooks/catch/8699423/ogcvj90/	2021-01-17 00:22:36
TRIGGERED WEBHOOK	DATA TO SEND
birthdate, email, phone number	psid, subscribed_at, postbackid, first name, last name, email, page id, page name, phone number

[Last 10 activities](#)

#	Http code	Curl error	Post data	Post time
No data available in table				




10 [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entries

- Edit campaign

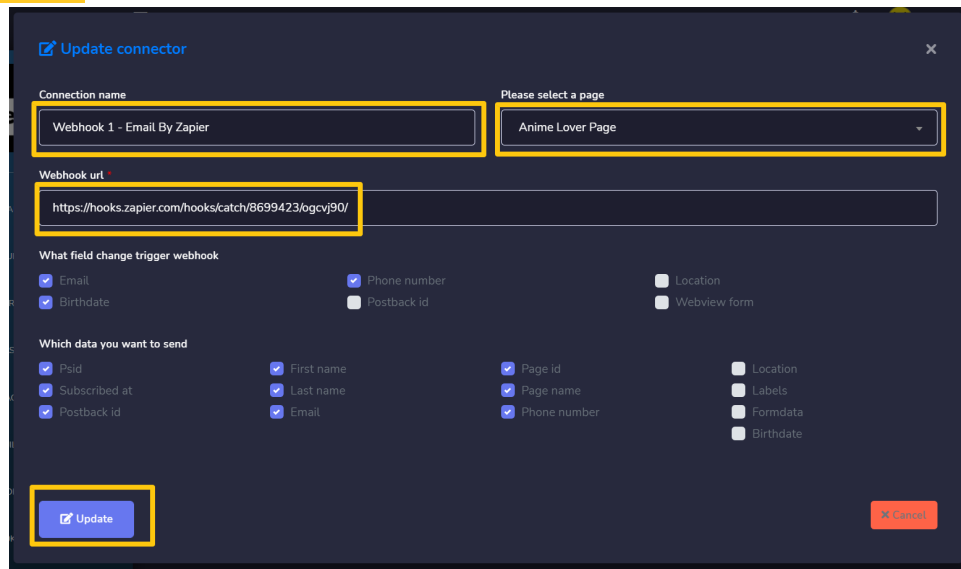
JSON API Connector [New connection](#) Messenger Bot / JSON API Connector

Search... [Choose date](#)

#	Name	Webhook url	Actions	Page name	Created	Last triggered time
1	Webhook 1 - Email By Zapier	https://hooks.zapier.com/hooks/catch/8699423/ogcvj90/	  	Edit campaign	Jan 16, 21 20:20	Jan 17, 21 00:22

10 [Previous](#) [1](#) [Next](#)





Update connector

Connection name: Webhook 1 - Email By Zapier

Please select a page: Anime Lover Page

Webhook url: `https://hooks.zapier.com/hooks/catch/8699423/ogcvj90/`

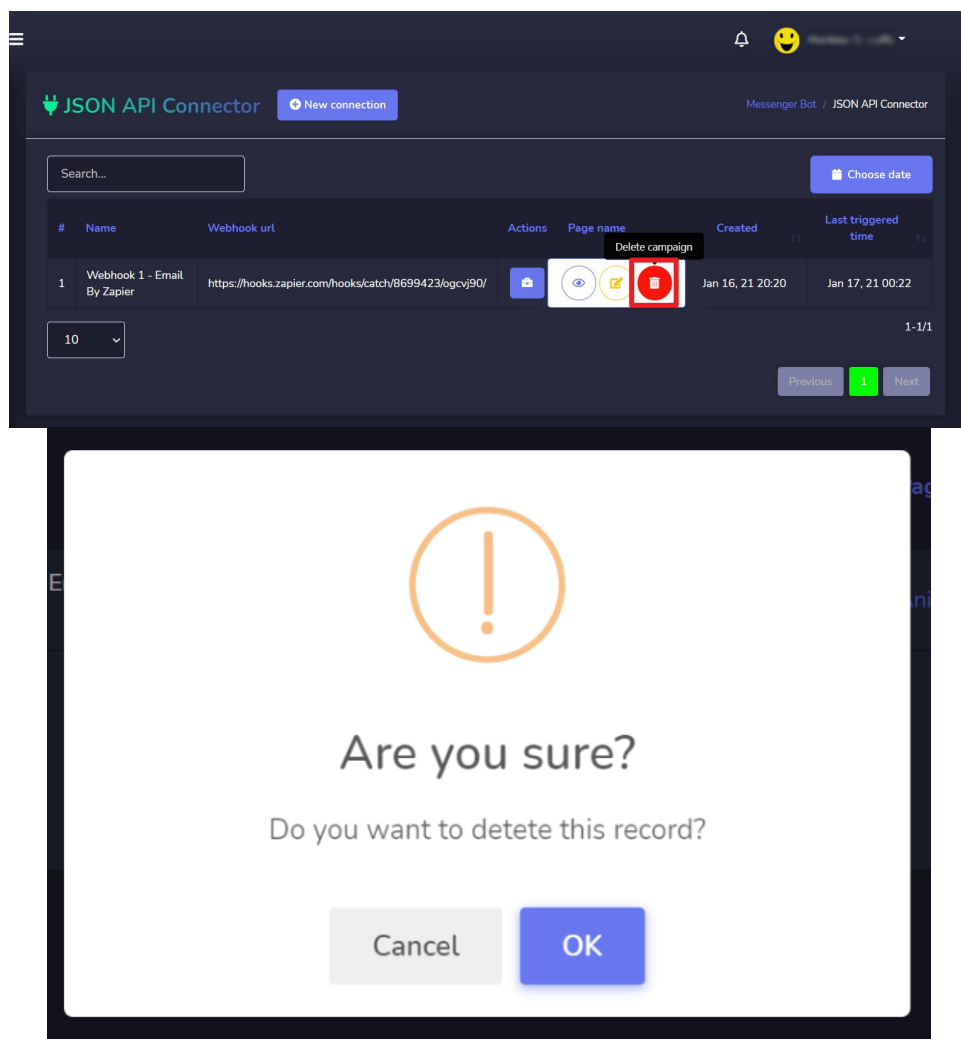
What field change trigger webhook

- ☒ Email
- ☒ Birthdate
- ☒ Phone number
- ☐ Postback id
- ☐ Location
- ☐ Webview form

Which data you want to send

- ☒ Psid
- ☒ Subscribed at
- ☒ Postback id
- ☒ First name
- ☒ Last name
- ☒ Email
- ☒ Page id
- ☒ Page name
- ☒ Phone number
- ☐ Location
- ☐ Labels
- ☐ Formdata
- ☐ Birthdate

- Delete record




JSON API Connector [New connection](#) Messenger Bot / JSON API Connector

Search... [Choose date](#)

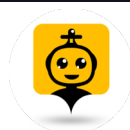
#	Name	Webhook url	Actions	Page name	Created	Last triggered time
1	Webhook 1 - Email By Zapier	<code>https://hooks.zapier.com/hooks/catch/8699423/ogcvj90/</code>			Jan 16, 21 20:20	Jan 17, 21 00:22

10 [Previous](#) [1](#) [Next](#)



Are you sure?


Do you want to delete this record?

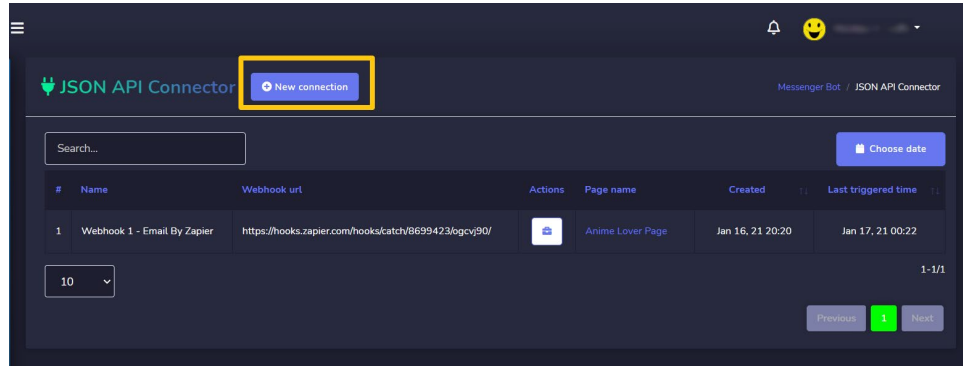




Create Connection

You can create a new connection by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select  from the top right of the screen.



- 2) Provide the **Name** and select the **page** for which you want to add the connection.
- 3) Enter the **webhook URL** in the field.
- 4) Mark the checkboxes against the field for which you want to **change trigger webhook**.
- 5) Mark the checkboxes against the field for which you want to **send the data**.
- 6) Select **Save** to make a new connection.

The screenshot shows the 'Add new connection' form. It has a title 'Add new connection' and a close button. The form contains the following fields and options:

- Name:** A text input field with the placeholder 'Enter your connector name'.
- Please select a page:** A dropdown menu with the placeholder 'Please select a page'.
- Webhook url:** A text input field with the placeholder 'Enter your webhook url'.
- What field change trigger webhook:** A section with checkboxes for Email, Birthdate, Phone number, Postback id, Location, and Webview form.
- Which data you want to send:** A section with checkboxes for Psid, Subscribed at, Postback id, First name, Last name, Email, Page id, Page name, Phone number, Location, Labels, Formdata, and Birthdate.
- Buttons:** A 'Save' button and a 'Cancel' button.





➕ Add new connection

Name

Connect

Please select a page

Anime Lover Page

Webhook url

webhook.com

What field change trigger webhook

☒ Email ☒ Birthdate ☒ Phone number ☒ Postback id ☒ Location ☐ Webview form

Choose postback id

QUICK_REPLY_BIRTHDAY_REPLY_BOT

Which data you want to send

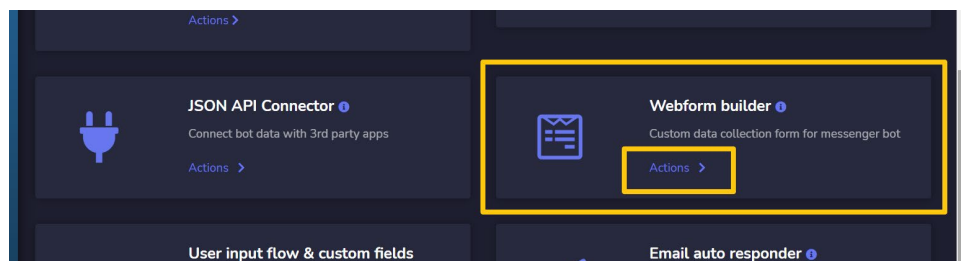
☒ Psid ☐ Subscribed at ☐ Postback id ☒ First name ☒ Last name ☐ Email ☒ Page id ☒ Page name ☐ Phone number ☐ Location ☐ Labels ☐ Formdata ☐ Birthdate

Save Cancel

✓ Connection has been created successfully

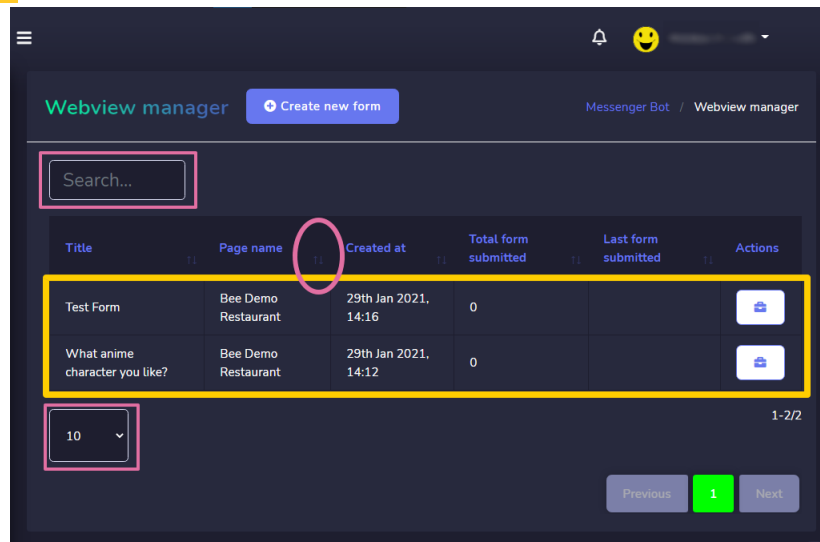
Webform builder


To access the webform builder section, select **Webform builder**, then select **Actions** from **Messenger Bot** screen.

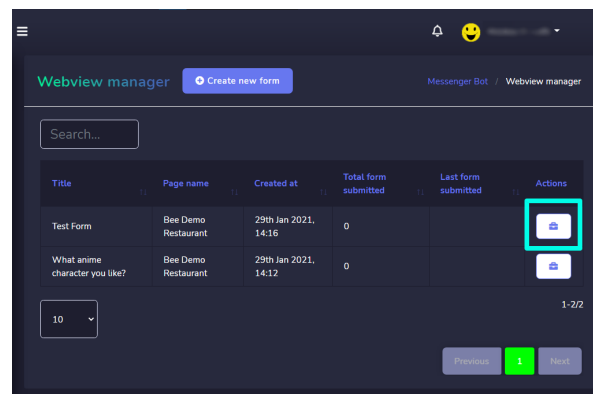


Webview manager screen consists of a list of pages, you can search for a specific page by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number of pages** to be **viewed per page**. You can also arrange them in either **ascending or descending order** by selecting the **arrows** from the header.



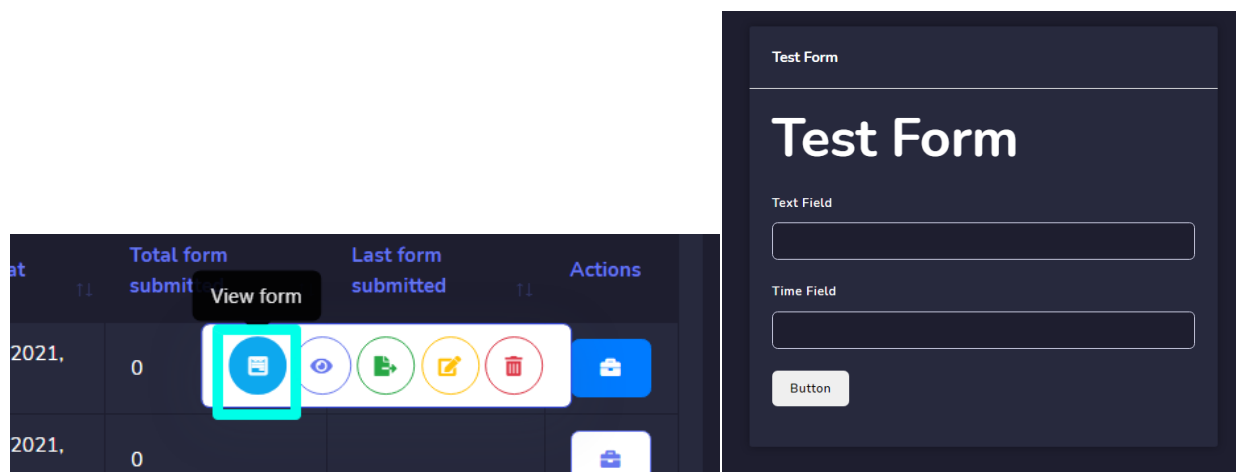


To perform different **actions** on the templates, select  option against the page you want to perform actions on.



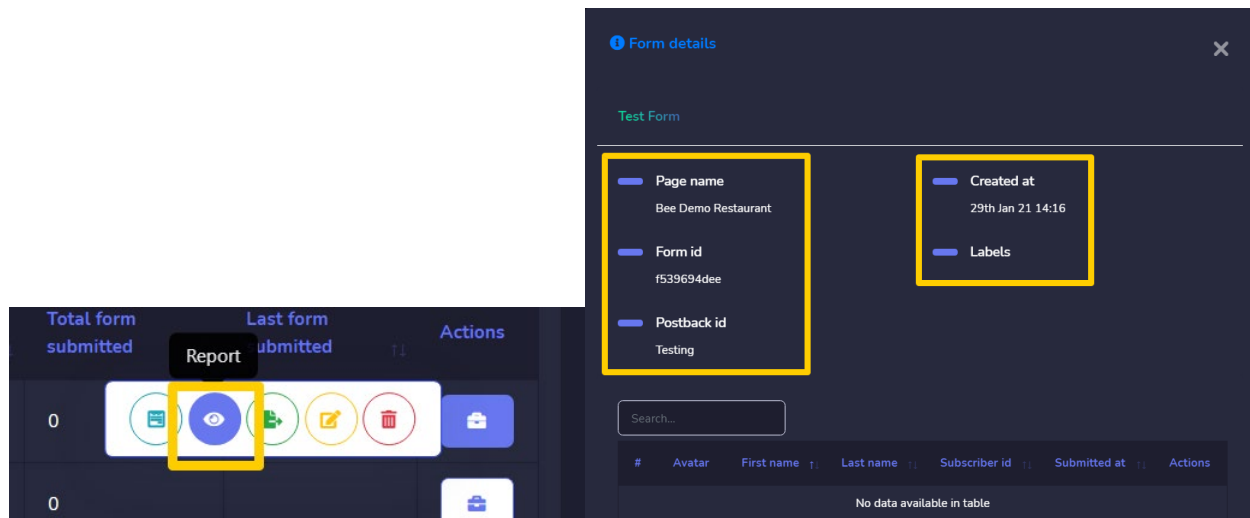
The following are the actions that can be performed:

- **View the form** by selecting .



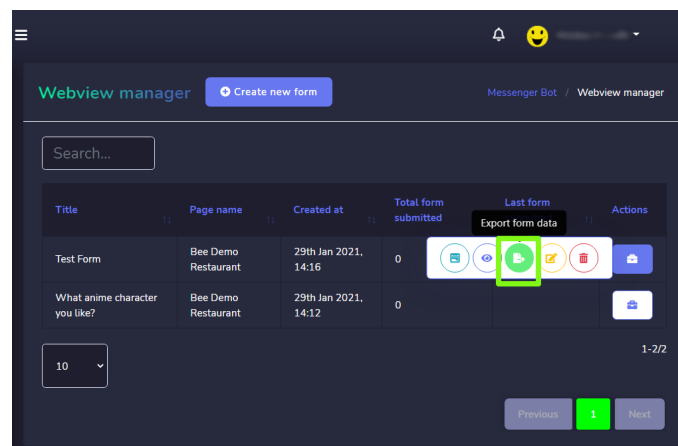


- View the report by selecting .



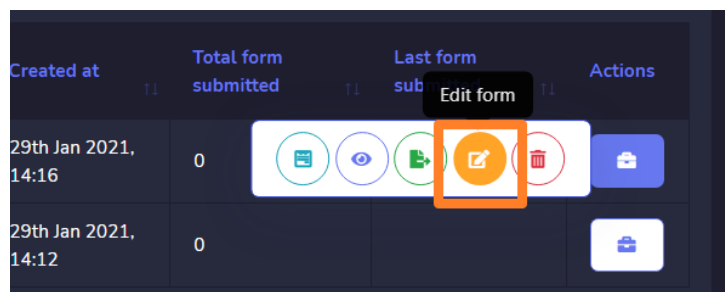
The image shows two parts of the interface. On the left, a table with columns 'Total form submitted', 'Last form submitted', and 'Actions'. The 'Report' button (eye icon) is highlighted with a yellow box. On the right, the 'Form details' modal for 'Test Form' is shown. It contains fields for 'Page name' (Bee Demo Restaurant), 'Form id' (f539694dee), 'Postback id' (Testing), 'Created at' (29th Jan 21 14:16), and 'Labels'. The 'Page name', 'Form id', and 'Postback id' fields are grouped in a yellow box, and the 'Created at' and 'Labels' fields are in another yellow box.

- Export the data from the form by selecting .



The image shows the 'Webview manager' interface. It has a table with columns: Title, Page name, Created at, Total form submitted, Last form submitted, and Actions. The 'Export form data' button (green icon) is highlighted with a green box in the 'Actions' column for the 'Test Form' row.

- Edit the form



The image shows a close-up of the 'Edit form' button (orange icon) in the 'Actions' column of the table, highlighted with an orange box.





Menu icon, Notification bell, Messenger Bot profile icon

Edit webview form

Messenger Bot / Webview manager / Edit webview form

Form name
Test Form

Form title
Test Form

Select page
Bee Demo Restaurant

Assign label
Select label [Create label](#)

Reply template
Testing [Testing] [Add template](#) [Refresh](#)

Test Form

Text Field

Time Field

- H Header
- Text Field
- Text Area
- Select
- Radio Group








- Delete the form


Menu icon, Notification bell, Messenger Bot profile icon

Webview manager

[Create new form](#) Messenger Bot / Webview manager

Search...

Title	Page name	Created at	Total form submitted	Last form submitted	Delete form	Actions
Test Form	Bee Demo Restaurant	29th Jan 2021, 14:16	0			  
What anime character you like?	Bee Demo Restaurant	29th Jan 2021, 14:12	0			 

10 

1-2/2

Previous **1** Next

Webview manager

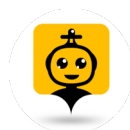
[Create new form](#)

Search...

Are you sure?

Once deleted, you will not be able to recover this form!

Cancel OK





Webform elements

To create a webform by dragging and dropping the elements from the right side to the canvas on the left side. You can add as many components as you want in the form. You can rename these components. For this purpose, you have the following set of elements:

The screenshot shows the 'Webview builder' interface. At the top, there are fields for 'Form name' and 'Form title', both with information icons. Below these is a 'Select page' dropdown menu. The main area is a large canvas with a dashed border and the text 'Drag a field from the right to this area'. To the right of the canvas is a vertical palette of form elements, each with an icon and a label: 'H Header', 'Text Field', 'Text Area', 'Select', 'Radio Group', 'Checkbox Group', 'Date Field', 'Time Field', and 'Button'. A yellow arrow points from the 'H Header' element in the palette to the canvas. The palette is highlighted with a green border. At the bottom right of the interface are 'Clear' and 'Save' buttons.

- **Header:** Here you can write the title/agenda of your form

This screenshot shows the 'Webview builder' interface after the 'Header' element has been added to the canvas. The 'Header' element is now a white box with the text 'Header' on the canvas. A yellow arrow points from the 'H Header' element in the palette to the 'Header' box on the canvas. The palette on the right remains the same. The 'Clear' and 'Save' buttons are at the bottom right.





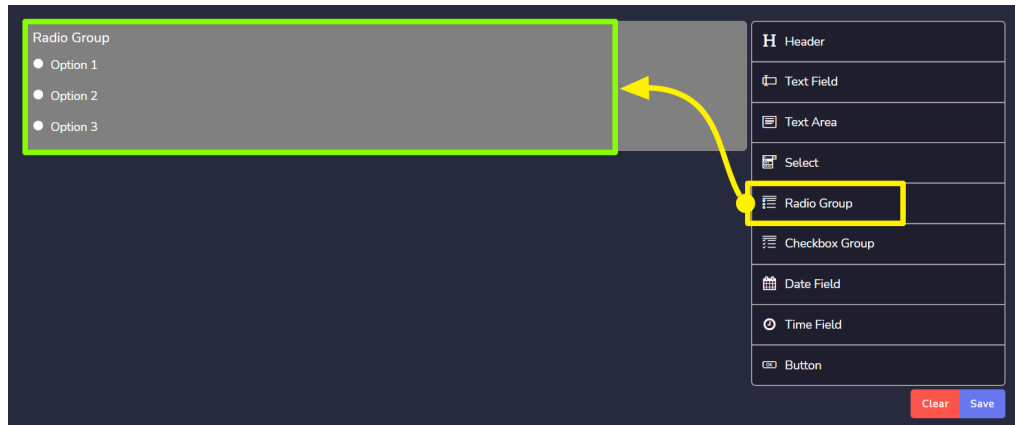
- **Text field:** You can add and edit a text from this field.

- **Text area:** You can add and edit a text from this area.

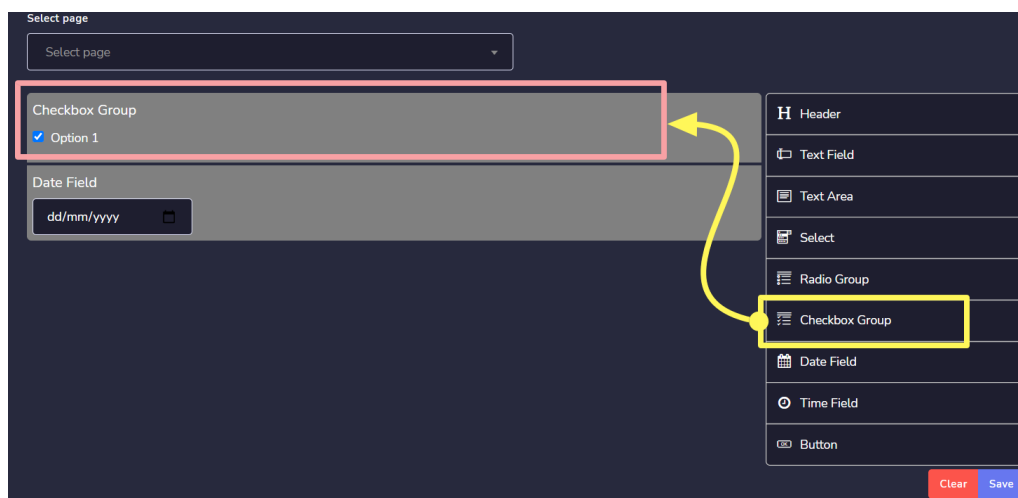
- **Select:** You can add a dropdown menu using this select option. It will have many options. In the form, the user can choose one option.



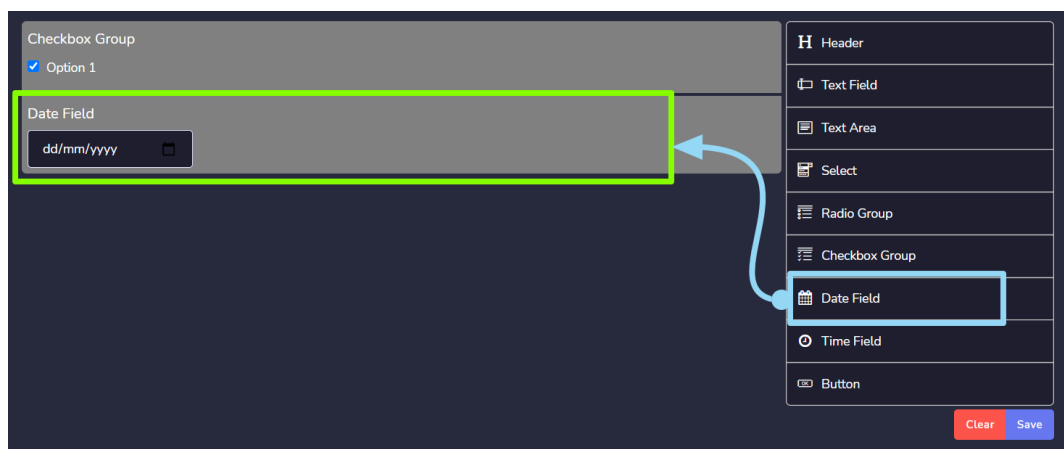
- **Radio group:** It will have many radio buttons, in the form user can choose one.



- **Checkbox group:** It will have many checkboxes, in the form user can choose one.

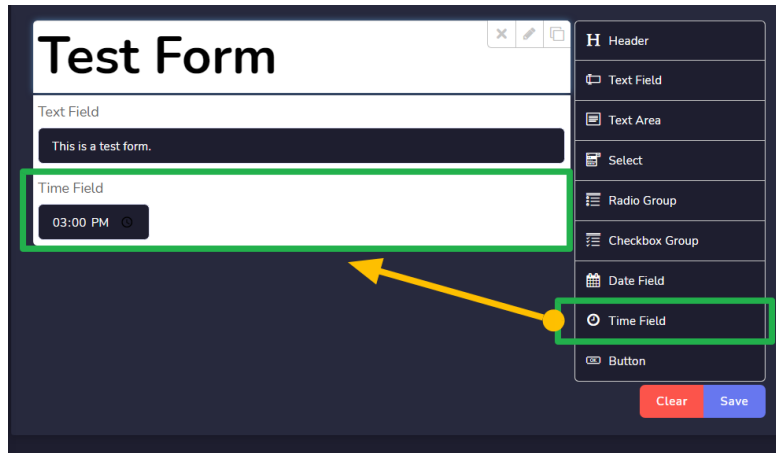


- **Date field:** It will have the mm/dd/yy field.

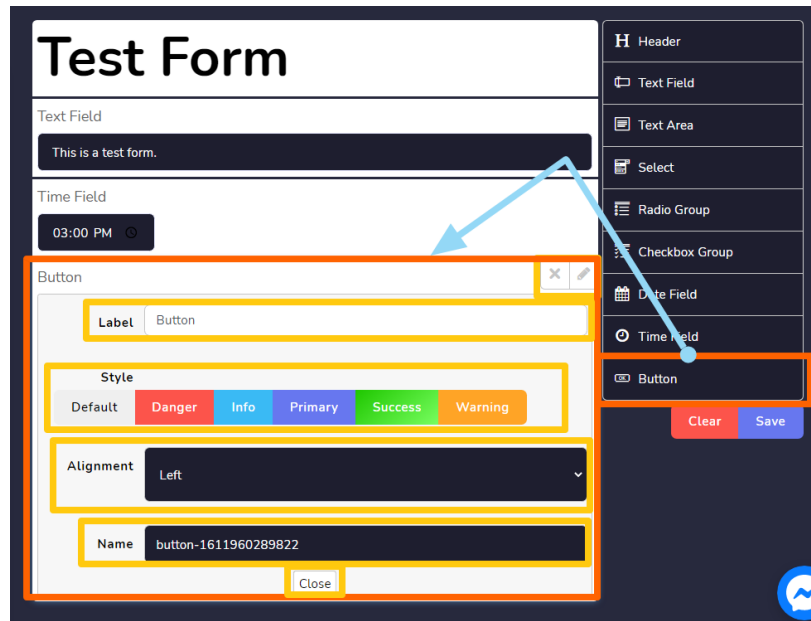


- **Time field:** It will have --:-- -- field to make the user enter the time.





- **Button:** It is a clickable box that works on action.

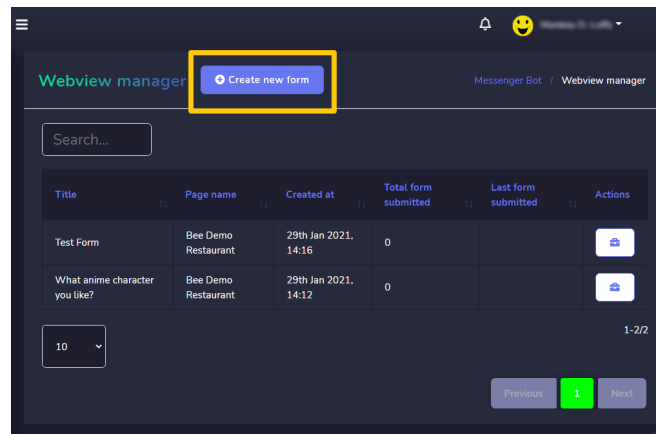


Create new form

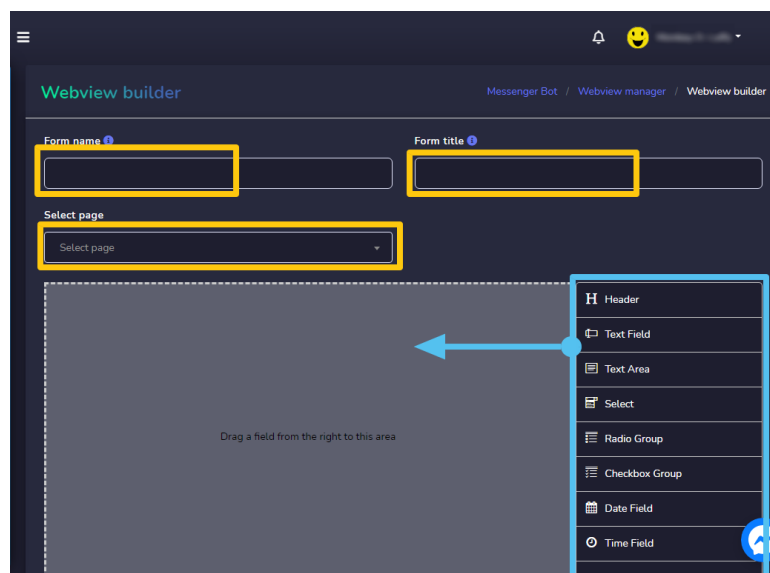
You can create a new form by following the steps given below:

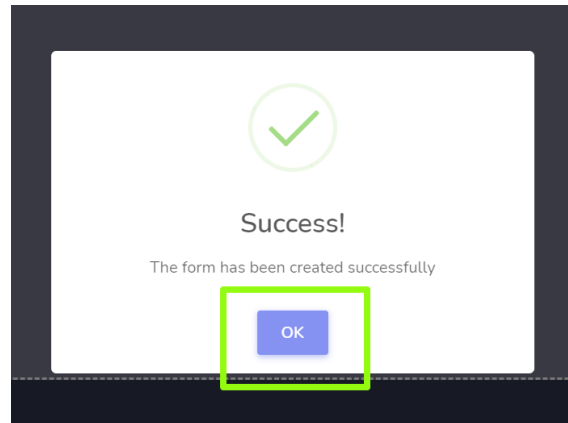
- 1) Select  from the top right of the screen.





- 2) Provide the **Form name** and **Form title** for your new form.
- 3) Select the **page** for which you want to create your form.
- 4) Drag and drop the fields you want to drag in the form as described in [Webform elements](#).
- 5) Select **Save** to make a new form.



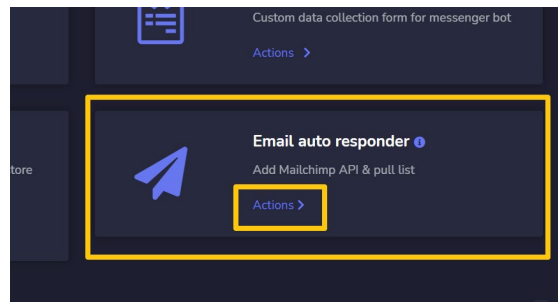


Note

- It is mandatory to choose the button field while creating a new form.

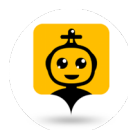
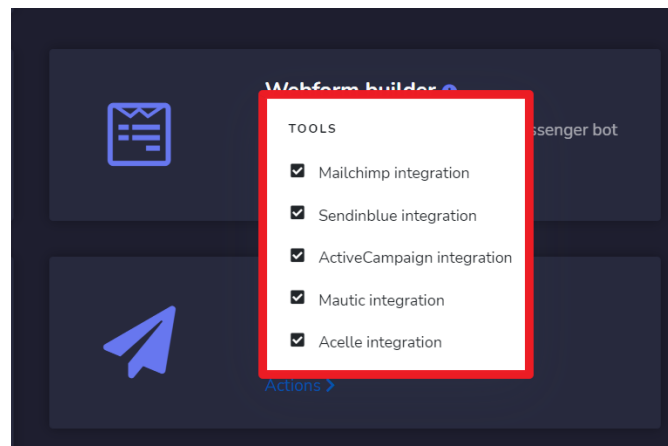
Email auto responder

To access the email auto responder section, select **Email auto responder**, then select **Actions** from **Messenger Bot** screen.



A dropdown menu containing three different options will appear on the screen.

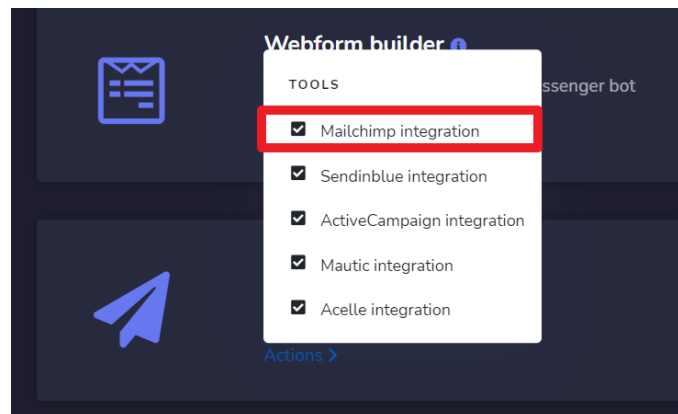
- Mailchimp Integration
- Sendin Blue Intergration
- Activecampaign Intergration



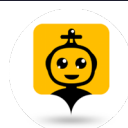
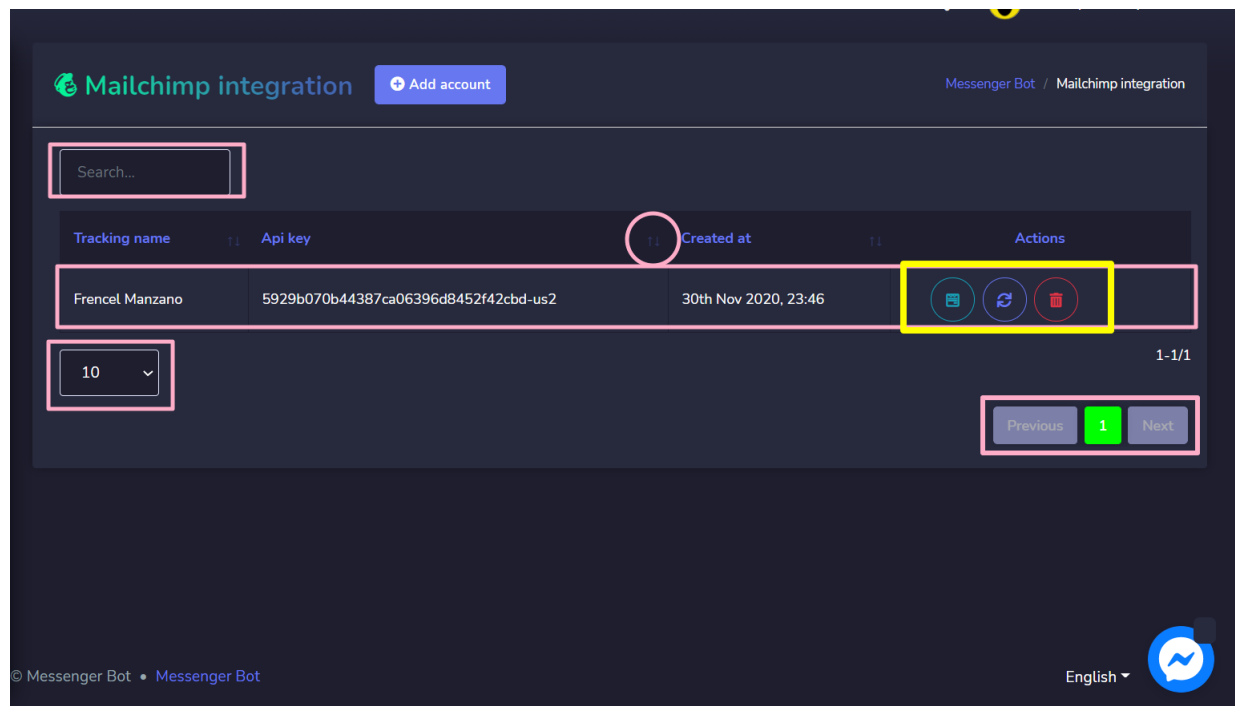
Note

- It is mandatory to have accounts in all three options to make the integration possible.

Mailchimp integration



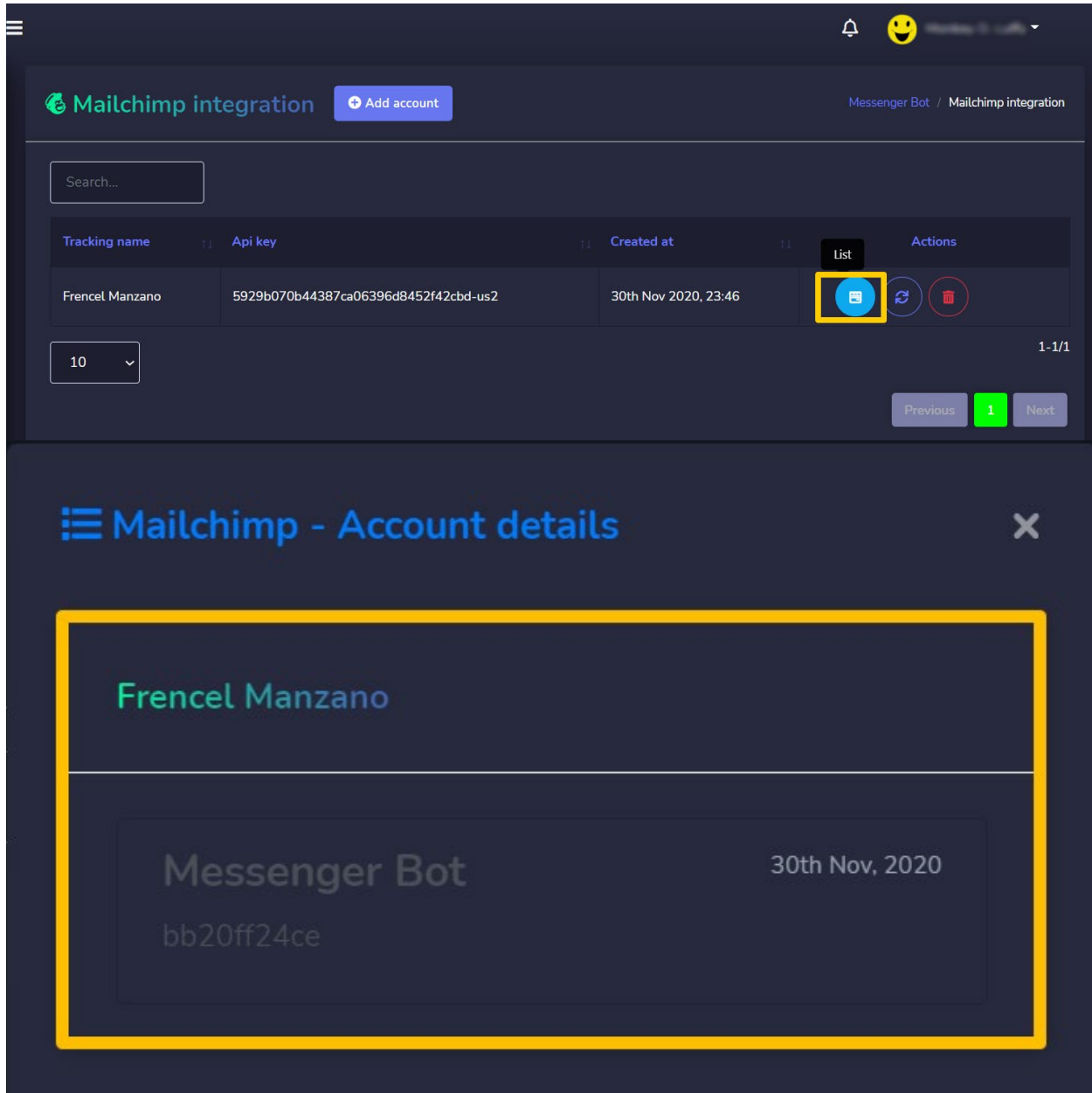
Mailchimp integration screen consists of **API Keys**, you can search for a specific tracking name by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of names to be **viewed per page**. You can also arrange them in either **ascending or descending order** by selecting the **arrows** from the header.






The following are the actions that can be performed:


- **View the list** by selecting .





The screenshot displays the 'Mailchimp integration' section of the Messenger Bot interface. At the top, there's a search bar and a table with columns: Tracking name, Api key, Created at, List, and Actions. The first row shows 'Frencel Manzano' with an API key and a creation date of '30th Nov 2020, 23:46'. The 'List' column for this row contains a blue icon with a white document symbol, which is highlighted with a yellow box. Below the table, there are pagination controls showing '10' items per page and '1-1/1' total items. A modal window titled 'Mailchimp - Account details' is open, showing the name 'Frencel Manzano' and a list of accounts. The first account in the list is 'Messenger Bot' with ID 'bb20ff24ce', created on '30th Nov, 2020'. This account entry is also highlighted with a yellow box.

- **Refresh the list** by selecting .







Mailchimp integration

[Add account](#)Messenger Bot / Mailchimp integration



Tracking name	Api key	Created at	actions
Frencel Manzano	5929b070b44387ca06396d8452f42cbd-us2	30th Nov 2020, 23:46	<div><div>Refresh</div><div></div><div></div></div>

10

1-1/1

[Previous](#)[1](#)[Next](#)

- Delete the account



Mailchimp integration


[Add account](#)Messenger Bot / Mailchimp integration

Tracking name	Api key	Created at	actions
Frencel Manzano	5929b070b44387ca06396d8452f42cbd-us2	30th Nov 2020, 23:46	<div><div></div><div></div><div>Delete</div></div>

10

1-1/1

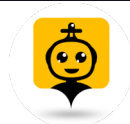
[Previous](#)[1](#)[Next](#)



Warning!

Are you sure you want to delete this account?

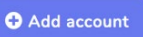
[Cancel](#)[OK](#)

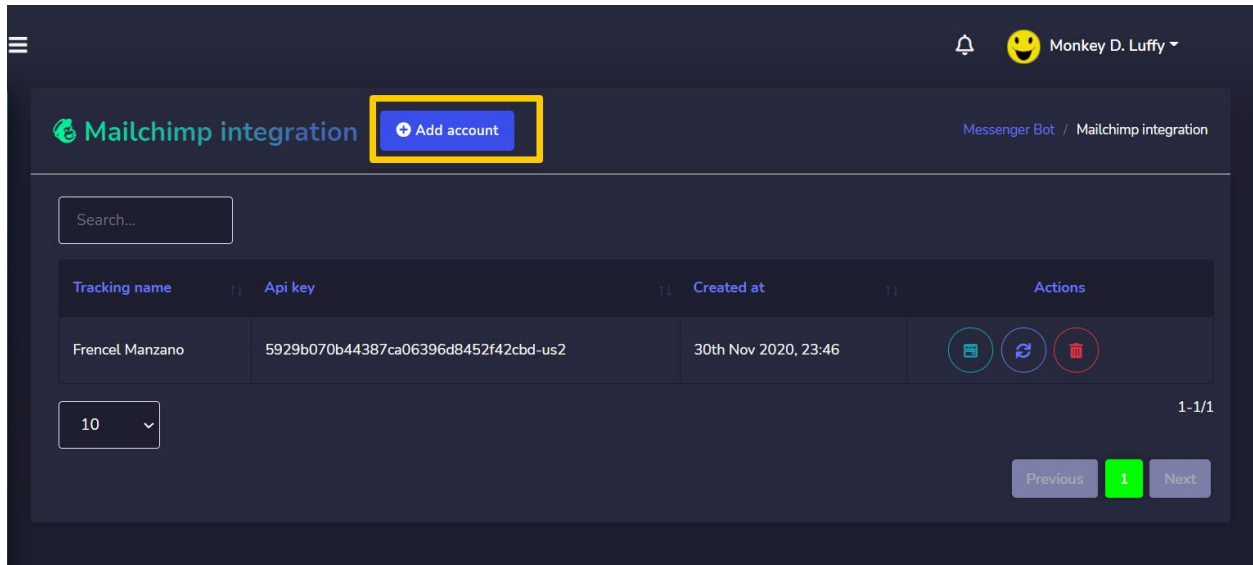




Add account

You can add an account by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select  from the top right of the screen.



- 2) Provide the **Tracking name** for your list.
- 3) Provide **API key** generated from Mailchimp account.
- 4) Select **Save** to add the new account.

Your API keys

API keys provide full access to your Mailchimp account, so keep them safe. [Tips on keeping API keys secure.](#)

Created	User	Label	API key	QR Code	Status
Dec 01, 2020 2:45 am	Frencel (owner)	none set	5929b070b44387ca06	QR	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Dec 01, 2020 12:56 am	Frencel (owner)	none set	781bd8da5c8e76b43f8	QR	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Create A Key



Bush

Api key

70597dd08db63720fc778d2fc3635fbb-us2

Save

X Cancel



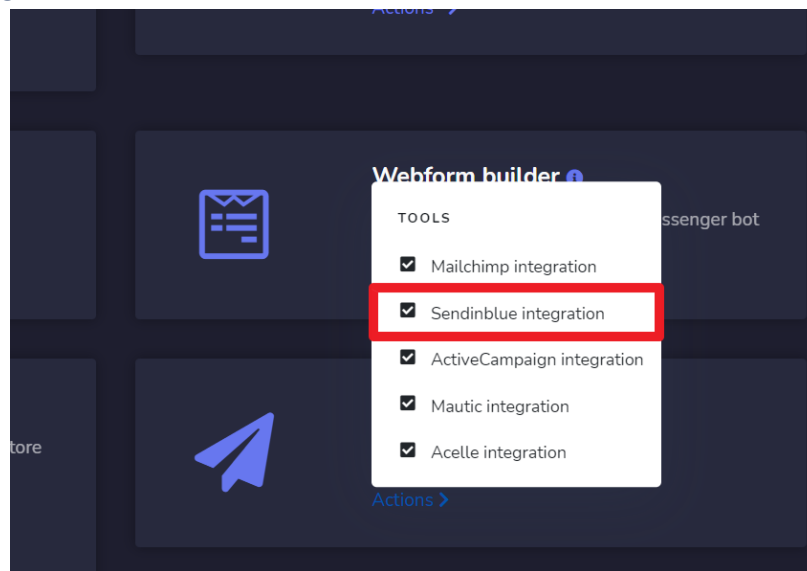
You Mailchimp account has been added successfully.

OK

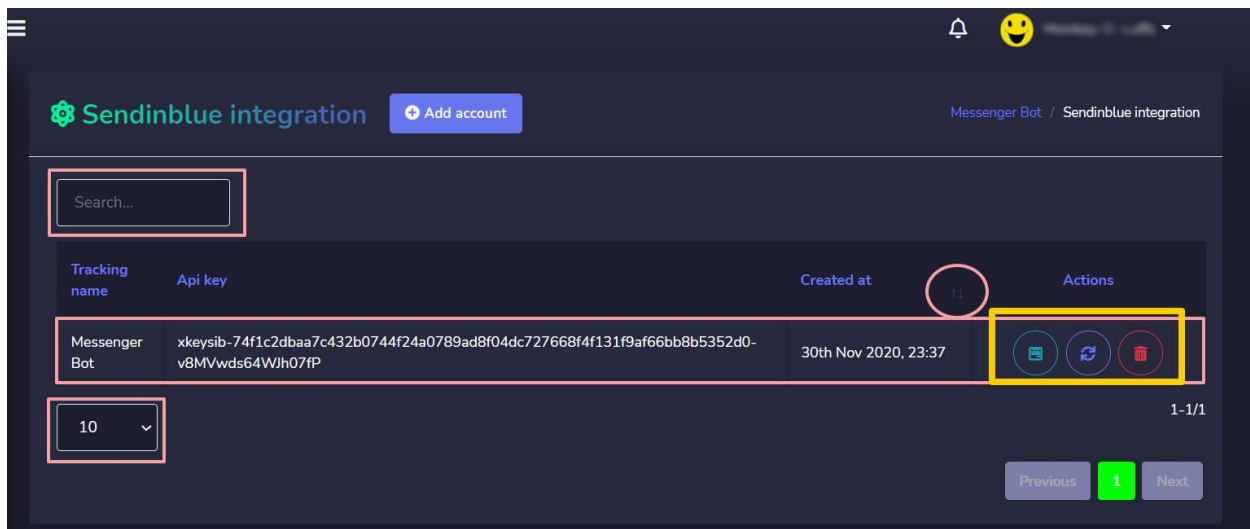





Sendin Blue integration

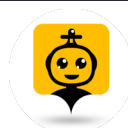
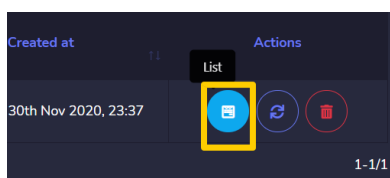


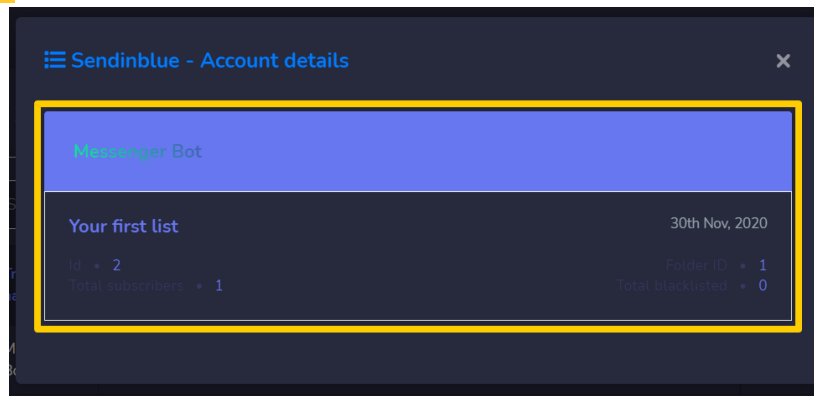
Sendinblue integration screen consists of **API Keys**, you can search for a specific tracking name by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of names to be **viewed per page**. You can also arrange them in either **ascending or descending order** by selecting the **arrows** from the header.



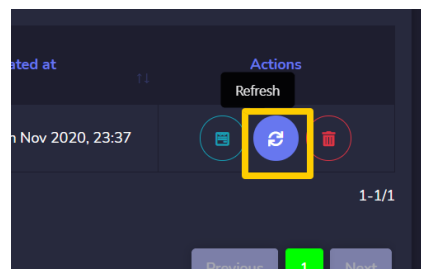
The following are the actions that can be performed:

- View the list by selecting .

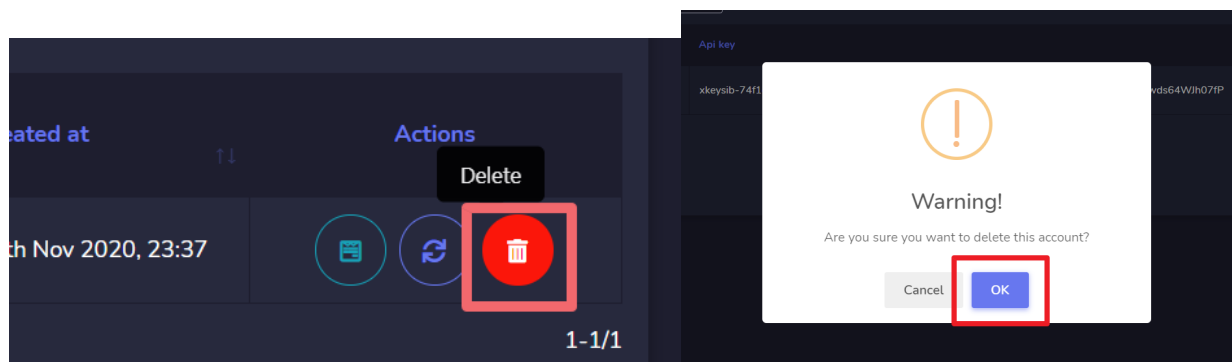




- Refresh the list by selecting .

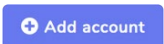


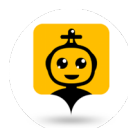
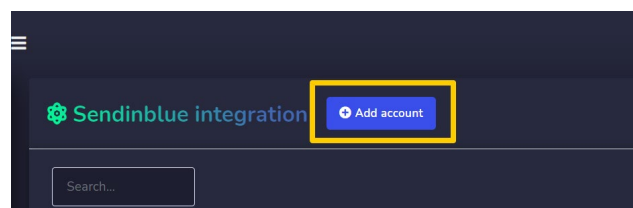
- Delete the account



Add account

You can add an account by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select  from the top right of the screen.





- 2) Provide the **Tracking name** for your list.
- 3) Provide **API key** generated from Sendinblue account.
- 4) Select **Save** to add the new account.

VERSION	API KEY	INFO	NAME
v3	xkeysib-bdae346028f89c8c	API v3	third_api
v3	xkeysib-bdae346028f89c8c	API v3	second_api
v3	xkeysib-bdae346028f89c8c	API v3	N°3

Sendinblue - Add account

Tracking name: Demo

Api key: 3b046a9f61d951a0ddfe7edf68416-bnW68xwdCt2DghPU

Save Cancel

Success!

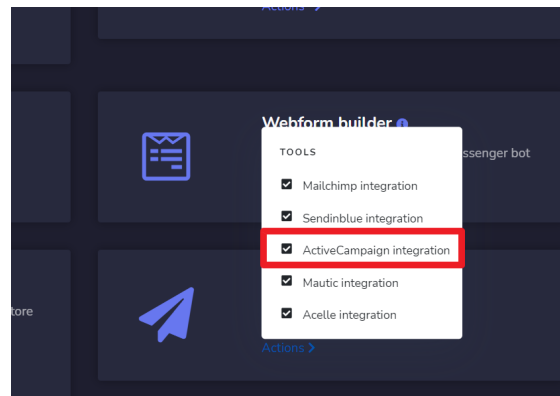
You Sendinblue account has been added successfully.

OK

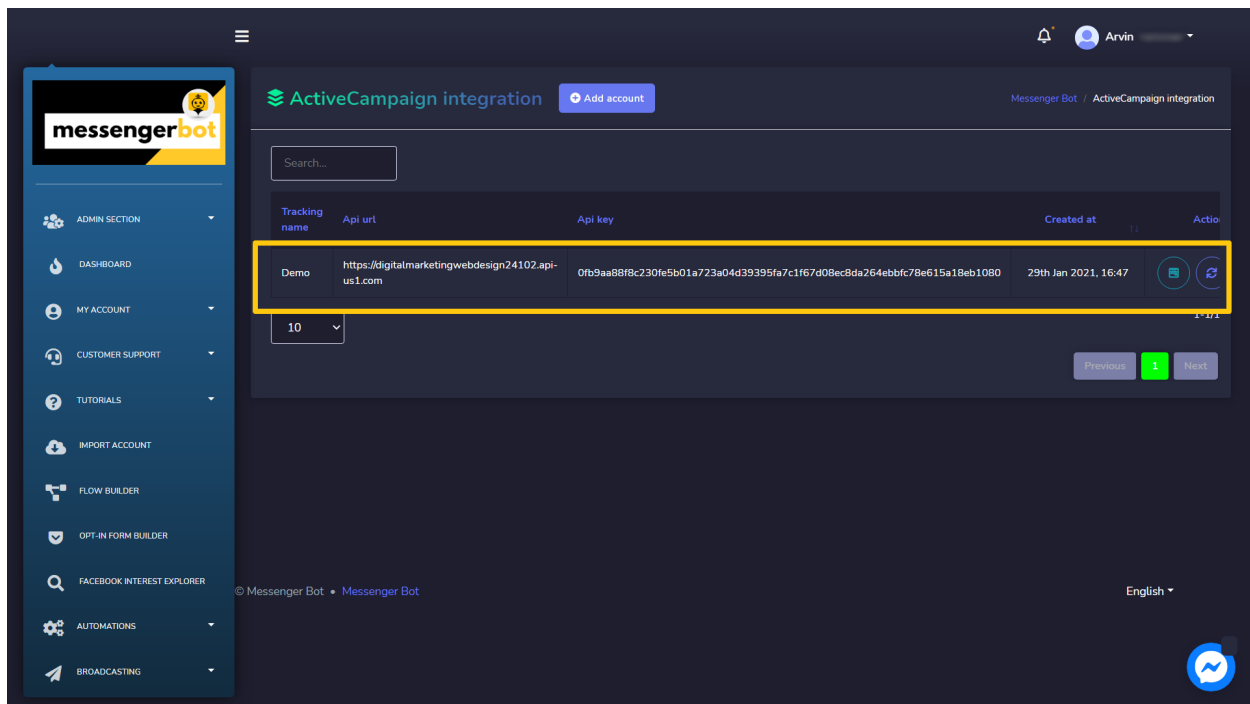




Activecampaign integration

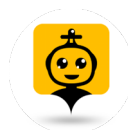



Activecampaign integration screen consists of API Keys, you can search for a specific tracking name by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of names to be **viewed per page**. You can also arrange them in either **ascending or descending order** by selecting the **arrows** from the header.






The following are the actions that can be performed:




- View the list by selecting .







ActiveCampaign integration [Add account](#) Messenger Bot / ActiveCampaign integration

Tracking name	Api url	Api key	Created at	Actions
Messenger Bot	https://digitalmarketingwebdesign.api-us1.com	a3c748b5a096cfdedabad5043e55ff47069058468eb16a597e765c72e6e202c13192ab9b	30th Nov 2020, 23:54	<div>Lists</div> <div></div>

10

1-1/1

Previous 1 Next

Sendinblue - Account details

Messenger Bot

Your first list


30th Nov, 2020


Id • 2




Folder ID • 1

Total subscribers • 1




Total blacklisted • 0

- Refresh the list by selecting .





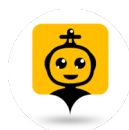
ActiveCampaign integration [Add account](#) Messenger Bot / ActiveCampaign integration

Tracking name	Api url	Api key	Created at	Actions
Messenger Bot	https://digitalmarketingwebdesign.api-us1.com	a3c748b5a096cfdedabad5043e55ff47069058468eb16a597e765c72e6e202c13192ab9b	30th Nov 2020, 23:54	<div>Refresh</div> <div></div>

10

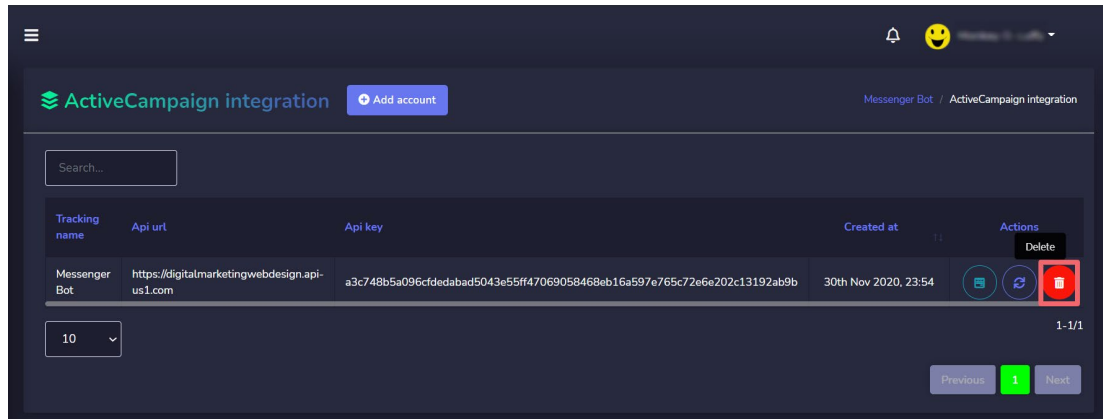
1-1/1

Previous 1 Next



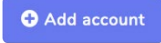


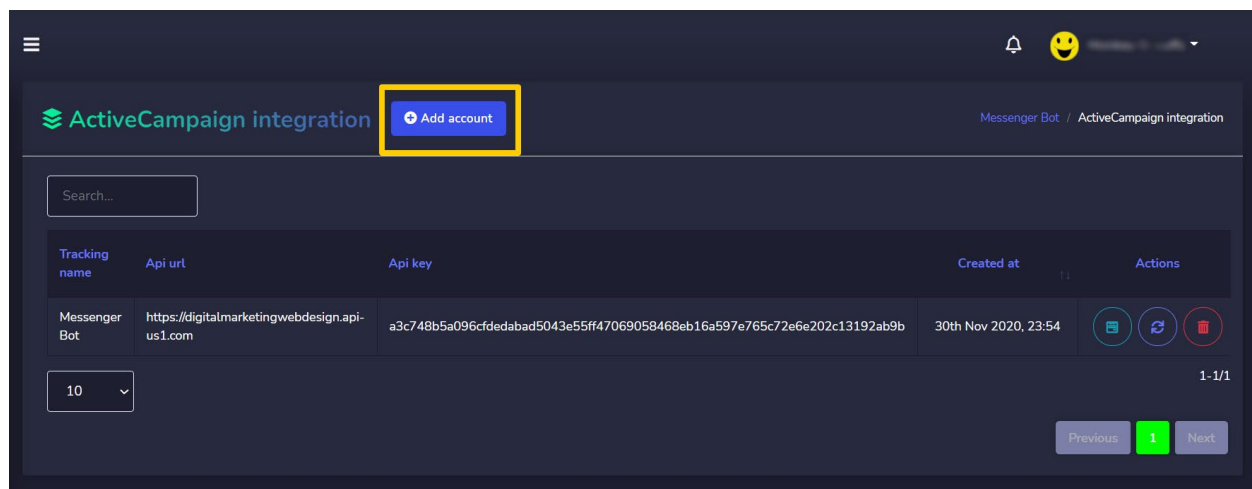
- Delete the account.



Add account

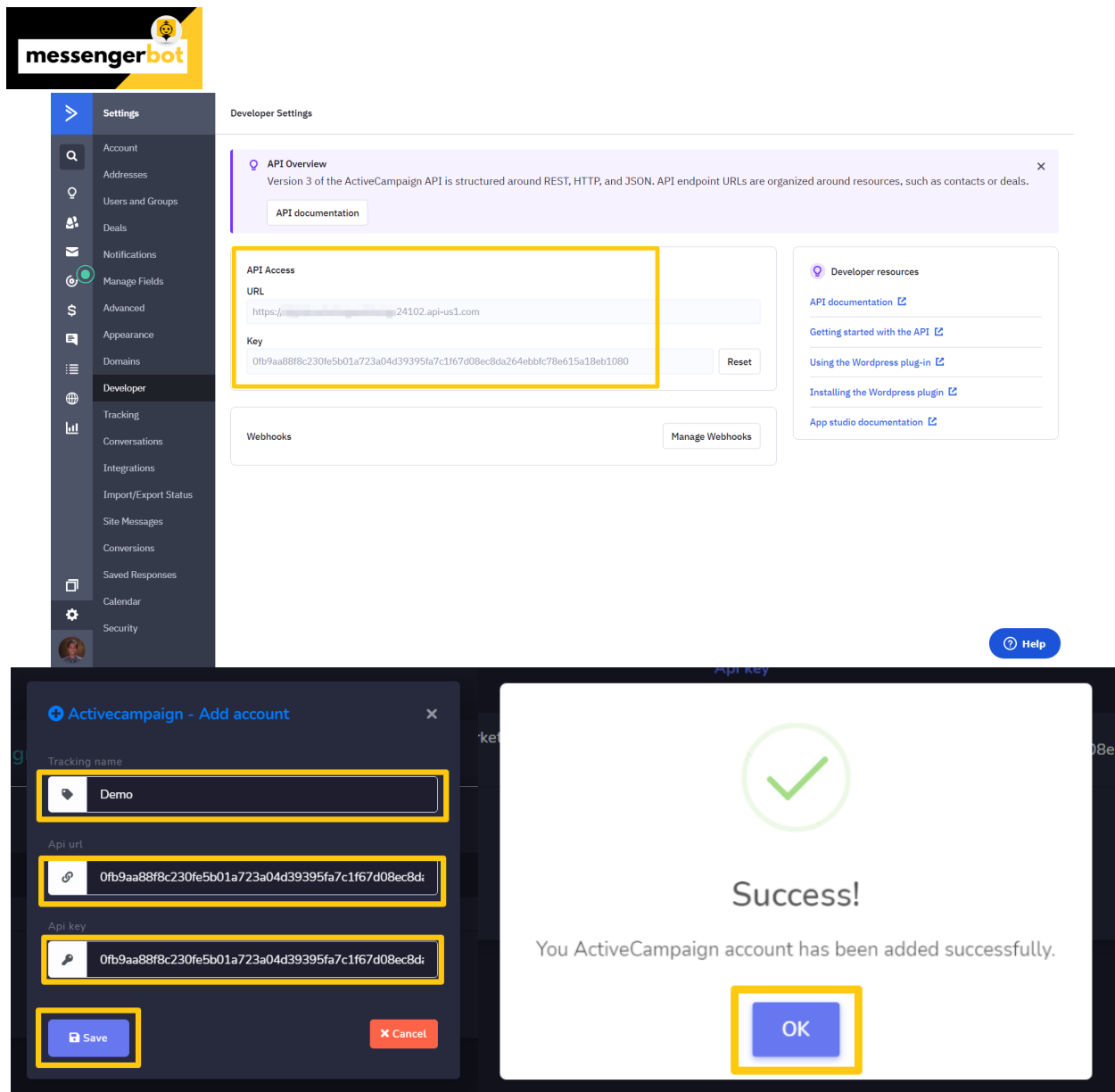
You can add an account by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select  from the top right of the screen.



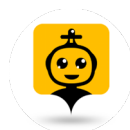
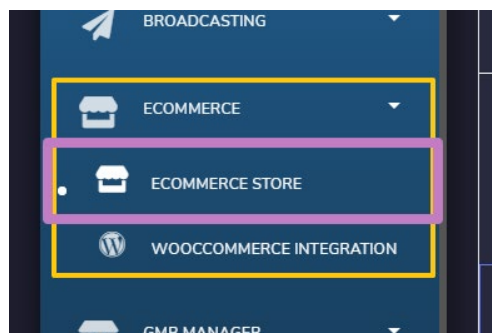
- 2) Provide the **Tracking name** for your list.
- 3) Provide **API URL** generated from Activecampaign API account.
- 4) Provide **API key** generated from Activecampaign API account.
- 5) Select **Save** to add the new account.





Messenger e-commerce store

Messenger e-commerce store is now known as **Ecommerce store**. To access the Messenger e-commerce store section, tab on **Ecommerce** on the left **navigation menu**, then select **Ecommerce Store**.





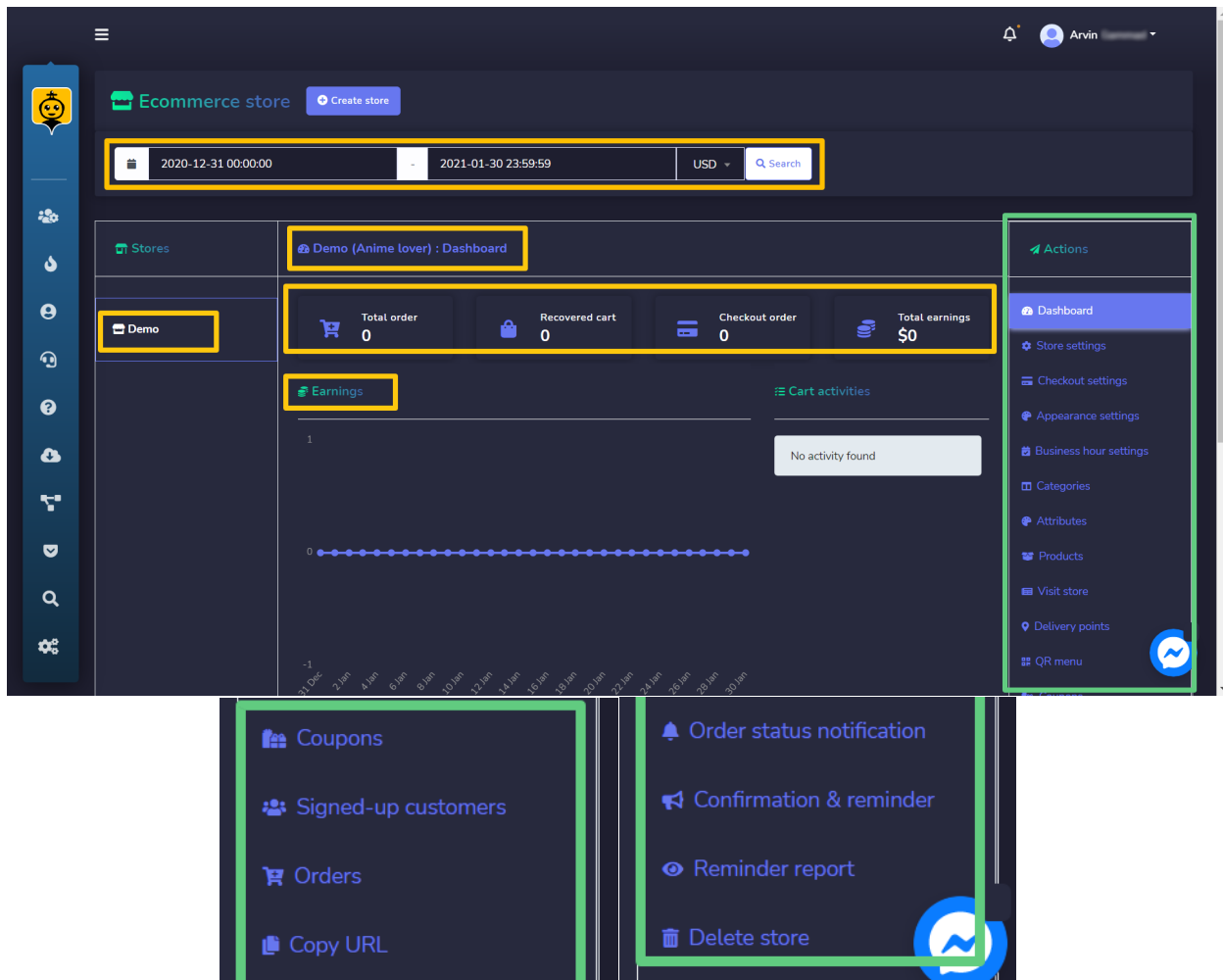
For this, we will be discussing:

- [Stores](#)
- [Payment settings](#)

Stores

The stores section allows you to view the existing store's dashboard. View different products summary and see all orders.

- You can simply apply **date filters** to track down the **narrowed search**.
- You can perform actions from **Actions** column on the right of the stores.
- You can **switch** between the **different stores** you created and analyze the stats.

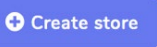


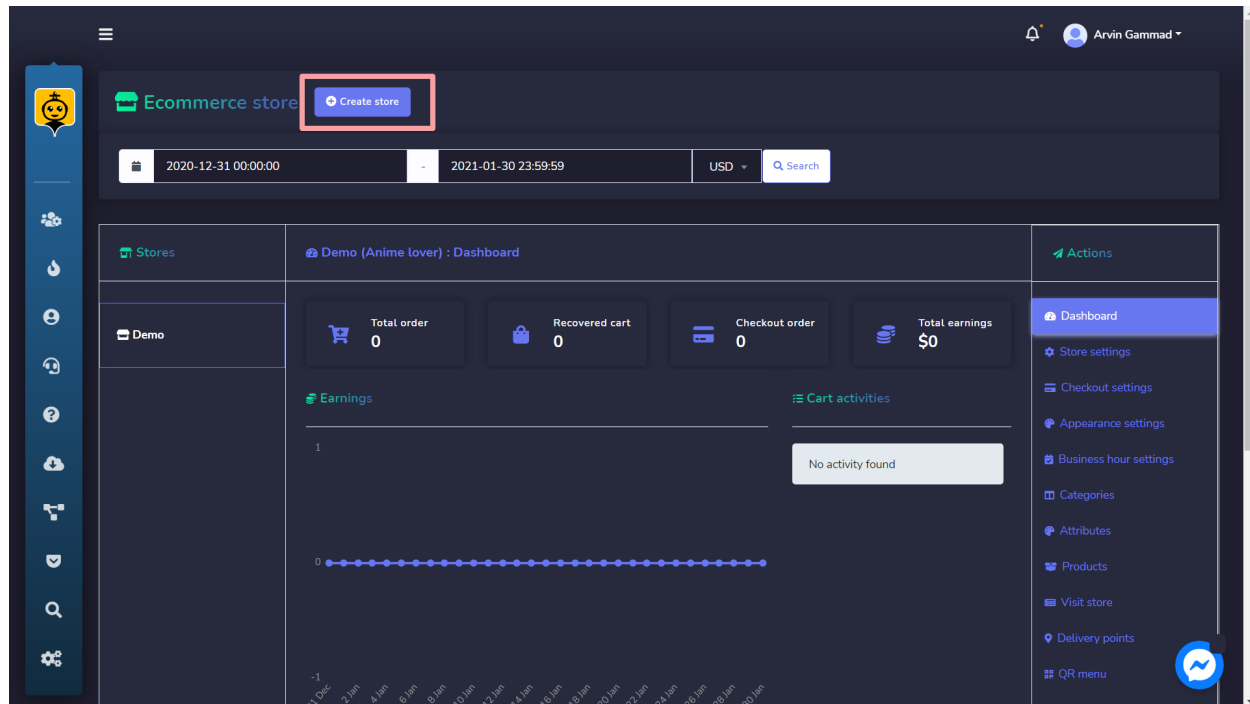
Create store

You can create a new store by following the steps given below:



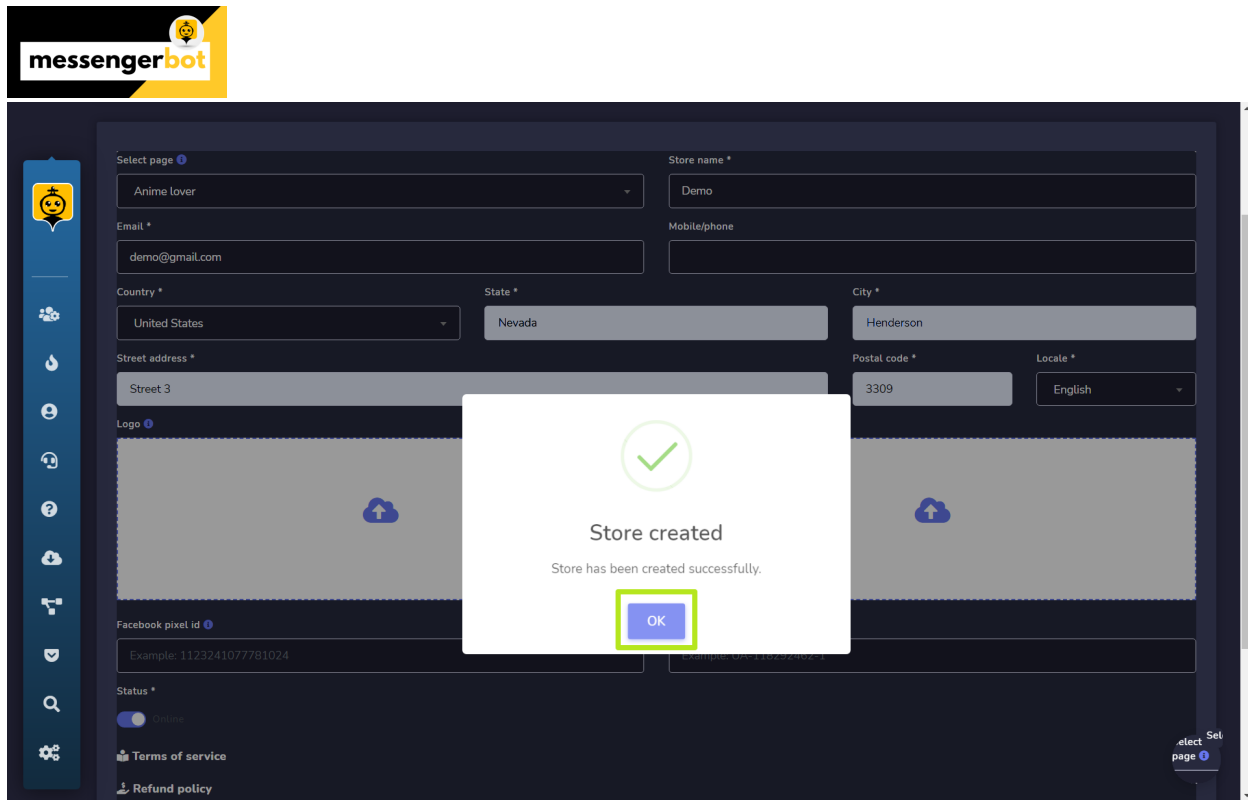


- 1) Select  option from the top right of the screen.



- 2) Provide **store information**, select the **page name**.
- 3) Provide the **store name**, **email address**, **postal address**.
- 4) Provide the [payments settings](#).
- 5) Set the **status** of the store.
- 6) Fill in the **confirmation message** section.
- 7) Select **Create store** to create the new store.





Actions

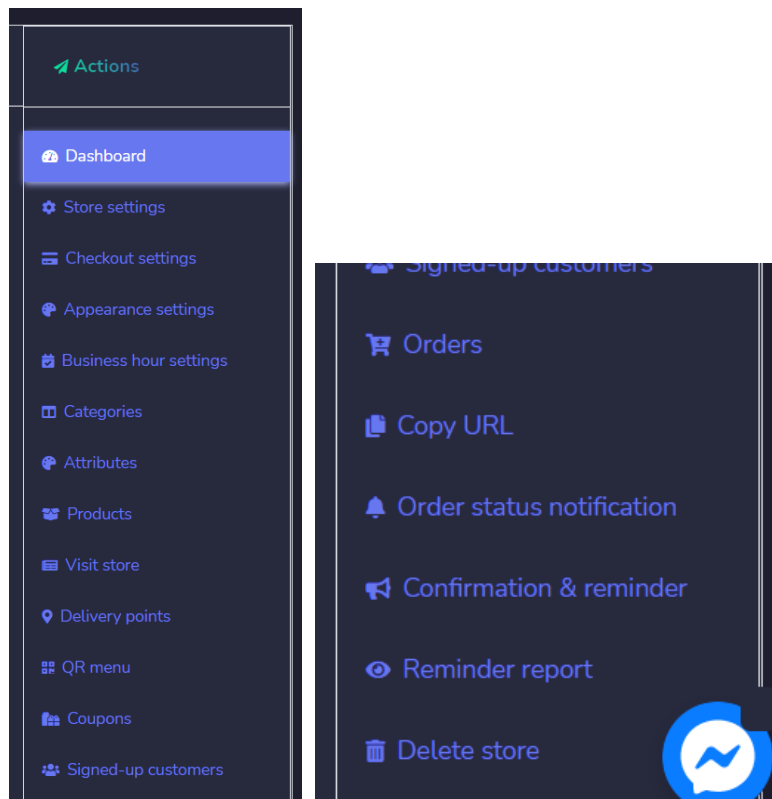
Actions from **Ecommerce store** screen containing following options such as:

- [Dashboard](#)
- [Store settings](#)
- [Checkout settings](#)
- Appearance settings
- Business hour settings
- [Categories](#)
- [Attributes](#)
- [Products](#)
- [Visit store](#)
- Delivery Points
- QR menu
- [Coupons](#)
- Signed-up customers
- [Orders](#)





- [Copy URL](#)
- Order status notification
- Confirmation & reminder
- Reminder report
- [Delete store](#)



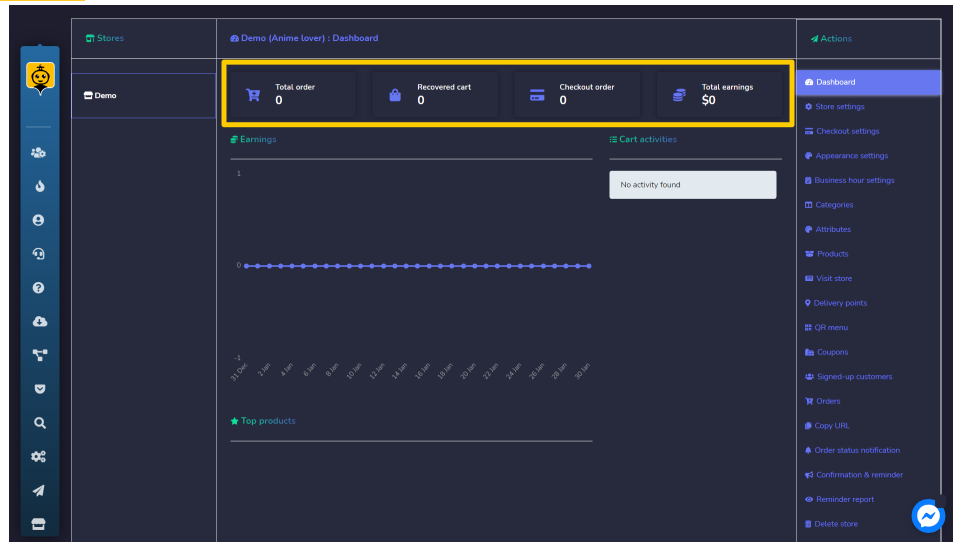
Some description of each section is given below:

[Dashboard](#)

It displays a summary of the statistics will include:


- **Total order:** The number of items ordered on selected dates.
- **Checked out order:** The number of orders that have been processed.
- **Total earnings:** Total amount of earnings till selected date.

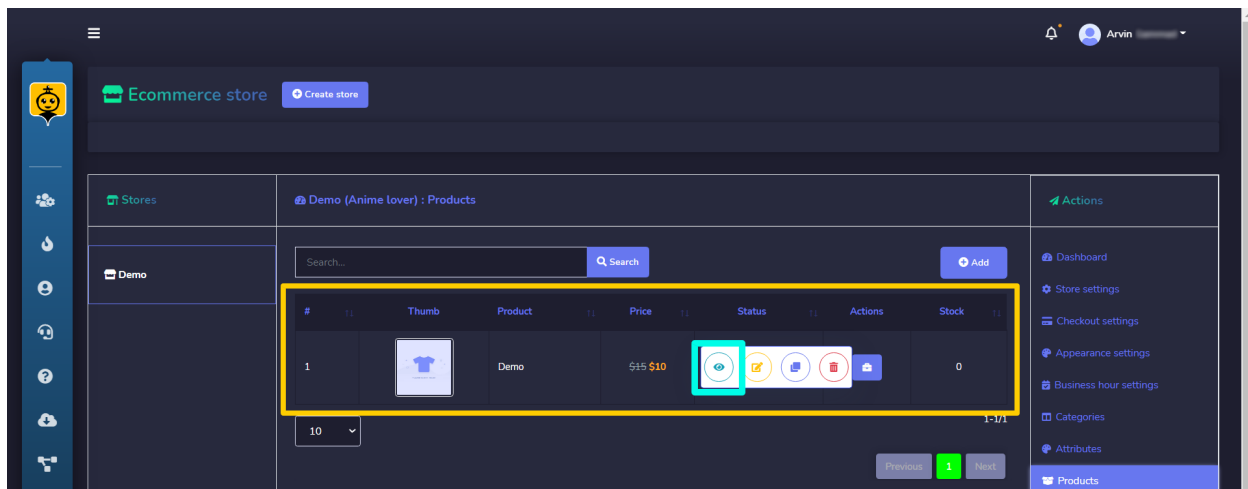


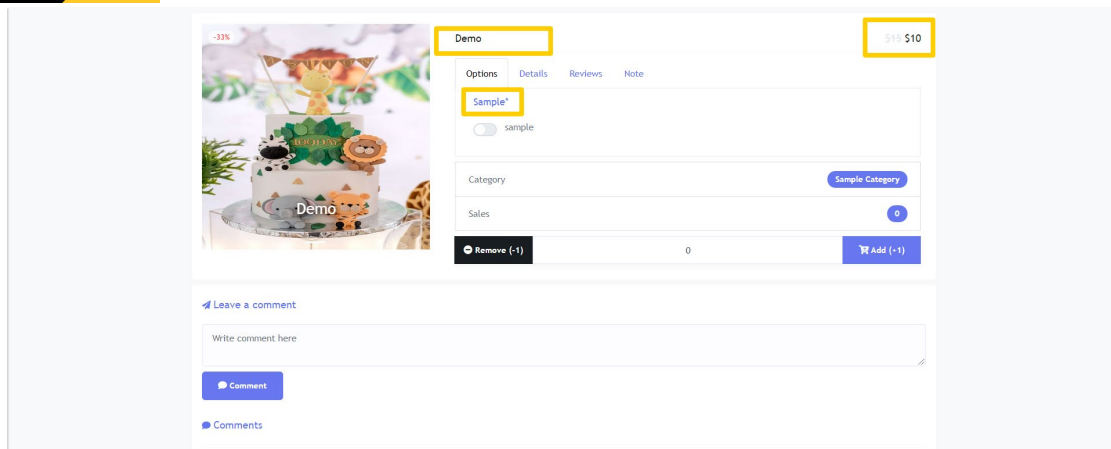


Products

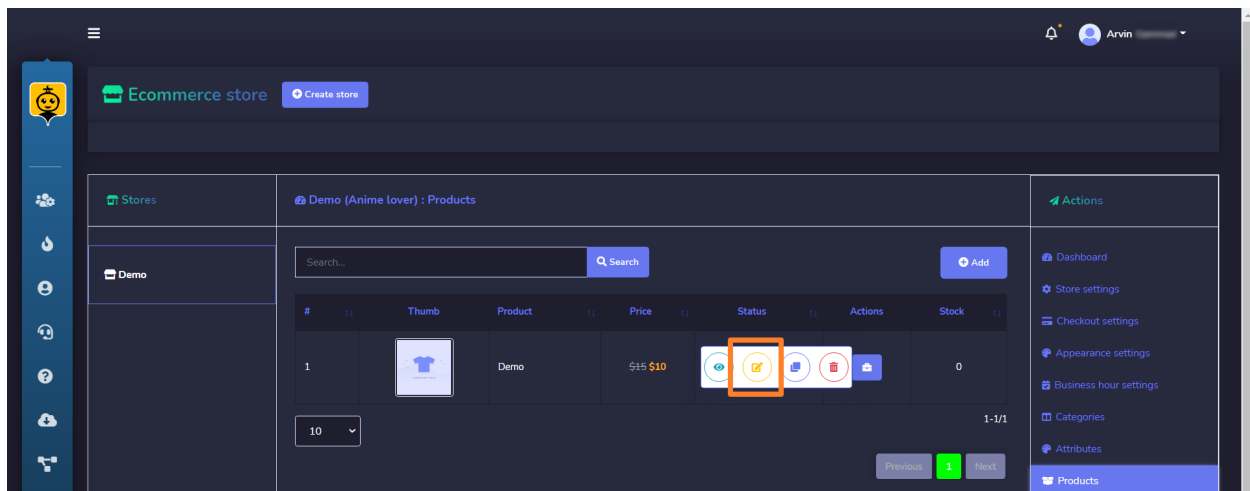
The products option allows you to get access to all existing products. You can perform following actions:


- View product page by selecting .

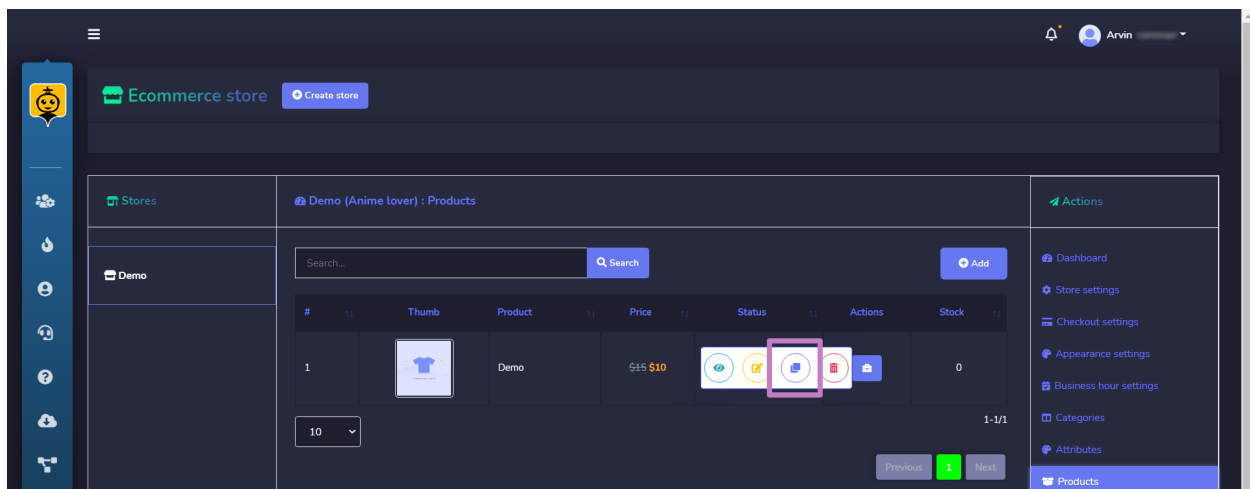




- Edit the product.

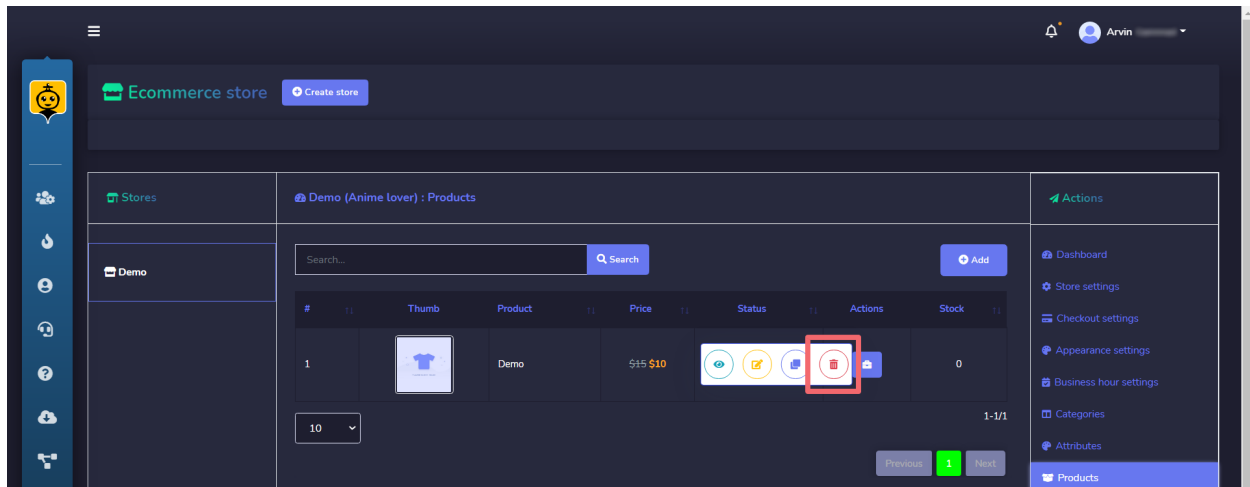


- Clone the product created by selecting .



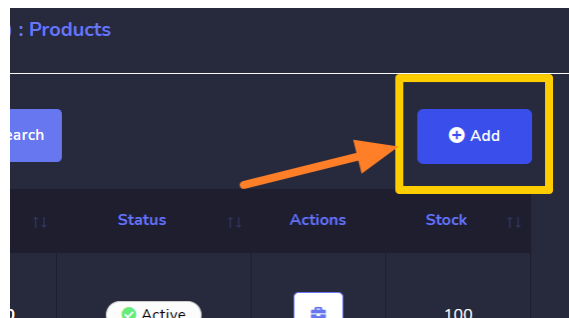


- Delete the product.



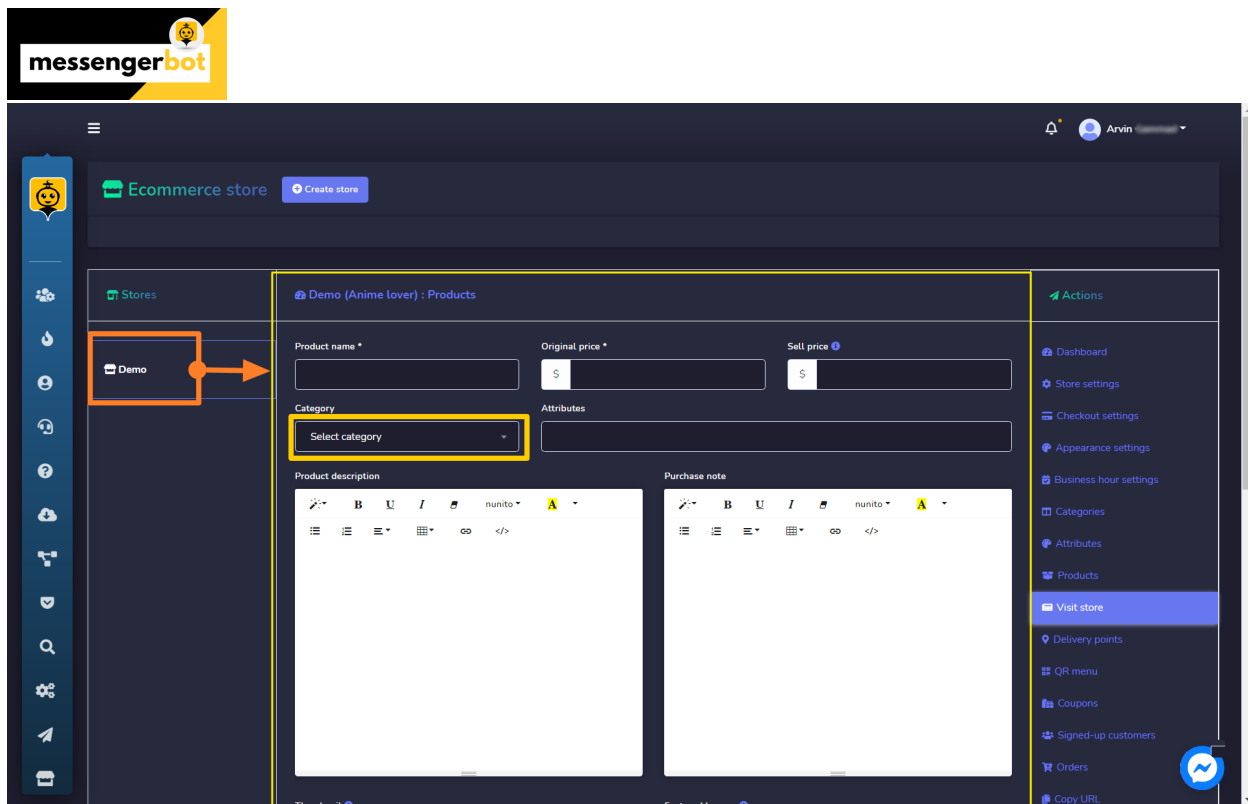
You can also add a new product to the database by following the steps given below:

1. Select  Add from products screen.

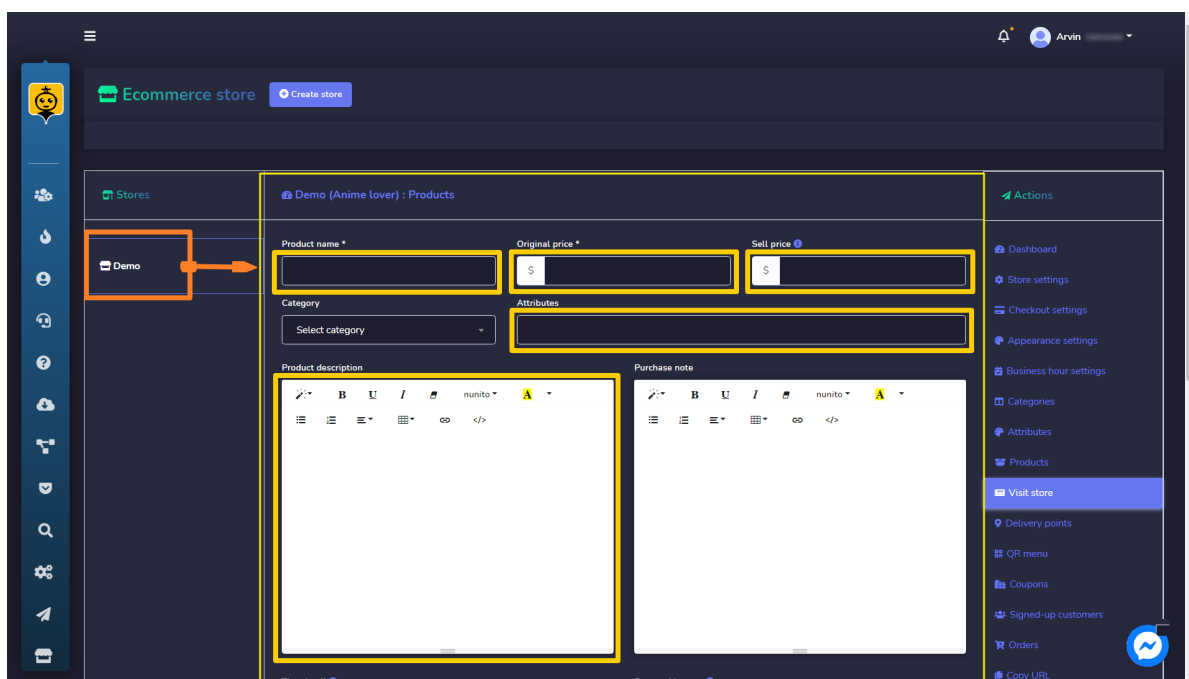


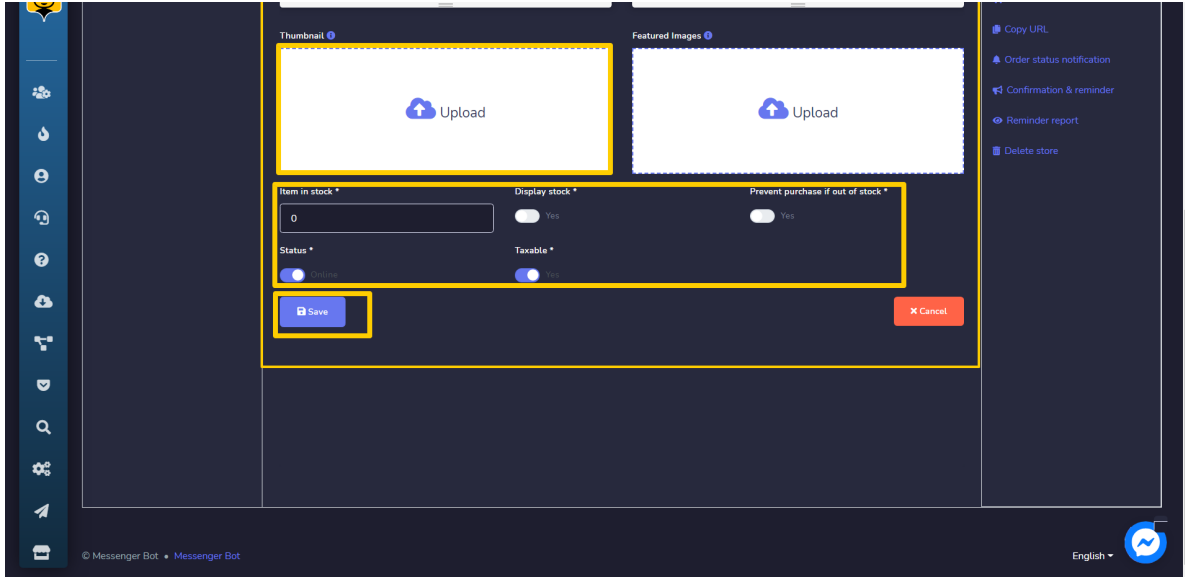
2. You need to select a **store** in which you want to add this product.
3. Select a **category** of the product.





4. Provide **product name** and **attributes**.
5. Add the **original price** and **sell price**.
6. Add a **description**, you can also add a **thumbnail**.
7. Select the **status** and tell whether the product is taxable or not.
8. Hit **Save**.





Thumbnail

Featured Images

Item in stock * Display stock * ☐ Yes ☐ No Prevent purchase if out of stock * ☐ Yes ☐ No

Status * ☐ Active ☐ Inactive Taxable * ☐ Yes ☐ No

Copy URL
Order status notification
Confirmation & reminder
Reminder report
Delete store

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot English

Demo (Anime lover) : Products

Your data has been successfully stored into the database.

Search...

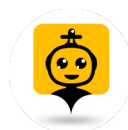
#	Thumb	Product	Price	Status	Actions	Stock
1		Demo 2	\$10 \$10	Active		0
2		Demo	\$15 \$10	Active		0

10 1-2/2

Coupons

The products option allows you to get access to all existing coupons. You can perform the following actions:

- **Edit the coupon** information
- **Delete the coupon**
- You can choose the **date range** for this view as well.



Demo (Anime lover) : Coupons

Search... Search Choose date + Add

#	Coupon	Amount	Type	Expiry date	Status	Actions	Free shipping	Used
1	MB-C4A6462D9	5	Percent	Feb 17, 21 18:23	Active	Edit Delete	Disabled	0/10

10 1-1/1

Previous 1 Next

You can also add a new coupon to the database by following the steps given below:

1. Select + Add from products screen.

Demo (Anime lover) : Coupons

Search... Search Choose date + Add

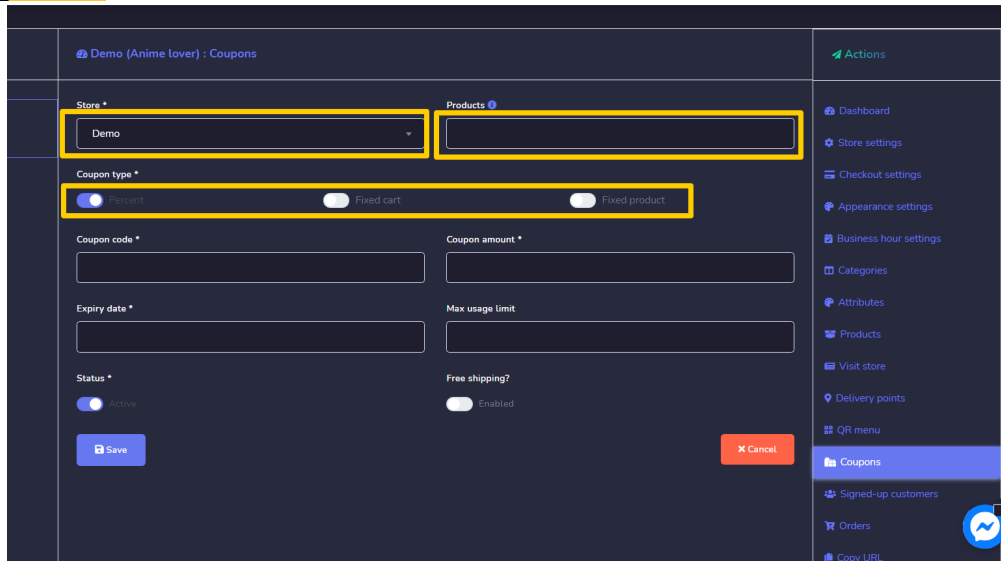
#	Coupon	Amount	Type	Expiry date	Status	Actions	Free shipping	Used
1	MB-C4A6462D9	5	Percent	Feb 17, 21 18:23	Active	Edit Delete	Disabled	0/10

10 1-1/1

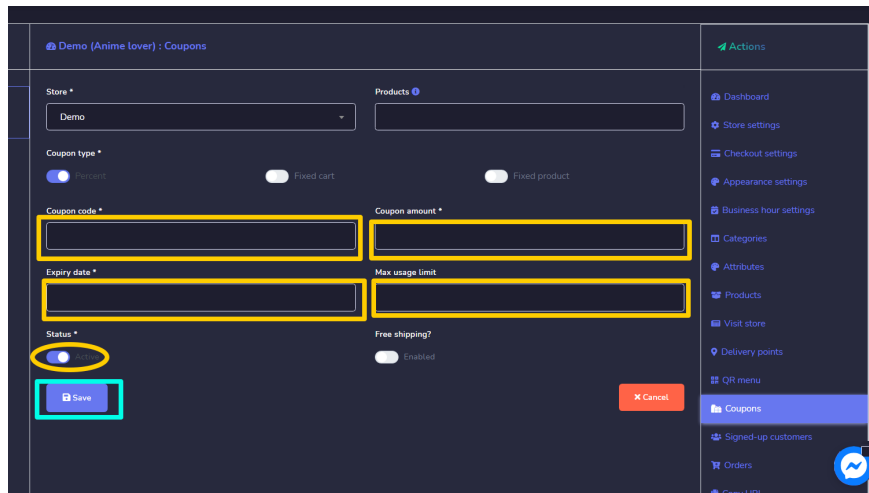
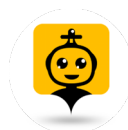
Previous 1 Next

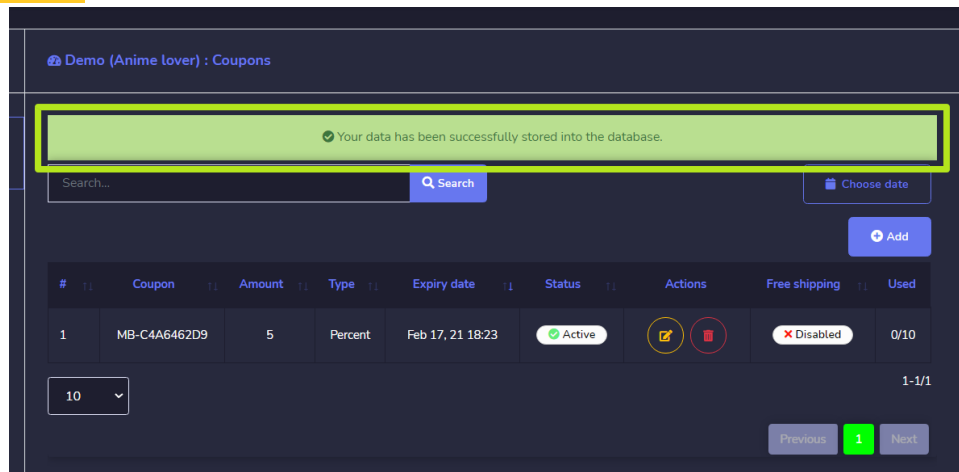
2. Select the **store** for which you want to add the coupon.
3. Choose the **product** for which you want to add the coupon.





4. Provide a **code** for your coupon.
5. Enter an **amount** for your coupon.
6. Provide an **Expiry date** and **maximum usage limit** for your coupon.
7. Select **Save**.



Categories

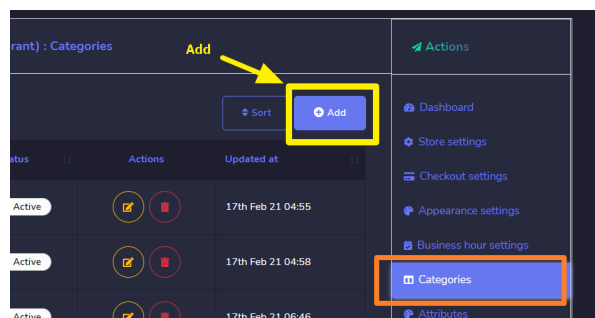
The categories for your stores appear in this section. You can perform the following actions:

- **Edit** the category
- **Delete** the category



You can also add a new category in the database by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select  from top right of categories screen.





- 2) A new category window will appear.
- 3) Choose the **store** for which you want to create categories.
- 4) Choose the **name** for your category.
- 5) Select **Save**.

Attributes

The attributes for your stores appear in this section. You can perform the following actions:

- **Edit an attribute**
- **Delete an attribute**

Stores

Demo

Demo (Anime lover) : Attributes

Search...

Add

#	Attribute	Values	Status	Actions	Updated at
1	Sample	sample	Active	<div><div></div><div></div></div>	30th Jan 21 02:01

10

Previous

1

Next

Actions

Dashboard

Store settings

Checkout settings

Appearance settings

Business hour settings

Categories

Attributes

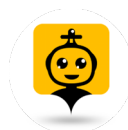
Products

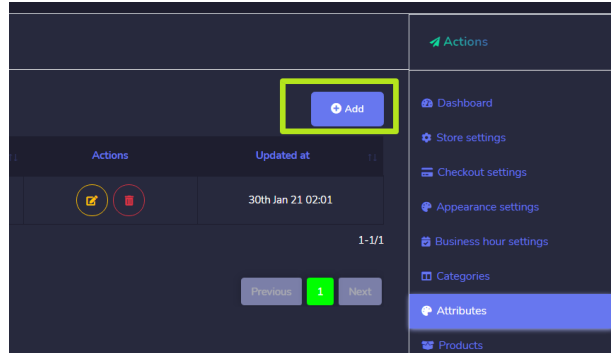
You can also add a new attribute in the database by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select

Add

 from the top right of the attributes screen.





- 2) A new attribute window will appear.
- 3) Choose the **store** for which you want to create attributes.
- 4) Choose the **name** for your attributes.
- 5) Choose **attribute values** and separate them with commas.
- 6) Select **Save**.



The screenshot shows the 'New attribute : Demo' form. It has the following fields and options:

- Store ***: A dropdown menu with 'Demo' selected.
- Attribute name ***: A text input field.
- Attribute values * (Comma separated)**: A text input field.
- Multi-select**: A toggle switch (off).
- Optional**: A toggle switch (off).
- Active**: A toggle switch (on).
- Save**: A blue button at the bottom left.
- Cancel**: A red button at the bottom right.

Orders

You can view the details of **all orders** from this screen. You can search for a particular order using the **search bar** or sort them **date** wise for **narrowed down search**. You can **arrange** them in any order by selecting the **arrows** in the header.





	Status	Amount	Currency	Invoice	Transaction ID	Manual payment	Method	Ordered at
114	Pending	117.00	USD		PD500DE2D0	x	Cash on Delivery	Jan 26, 21 15:04
114	Pending	165.00	USD		PD48BD8FCC	x	Cash on Delivery	Jan 26, 21 03:32
111	Completed	10.00	USD		x	x	x	Jan 26, 21 00:41
114	Completed	77.00	USD		PD4715795C	x	Cash on Delivery	Jan 25, 21 21:45
111	Completed	15.00	USD		PD40A11D31	x	Cash on Delivery	Jan 13, 21 01:37
112	Completed	25.00	USD		PD39349B4B	x	Cash on Delivery	Jan 12, 21 14:12
112	Completed	50.00	USD		PD38F61858	x	Cash on Delivery	Jan 12, 21 13:48

Copy URL

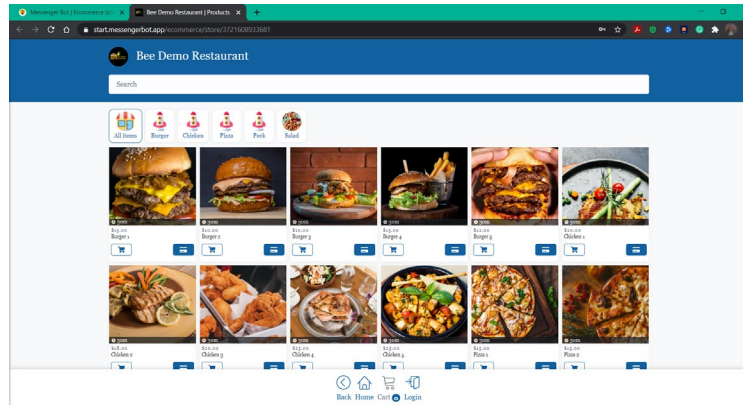
You can copy your store page, order, and product URL. Hover over the code, then select the Copy option that appears over the code line.

Store url	Order url	Product url	Legal url	Widget
Store page				
https://start.messengerbot.app/ecommerce/store/3721608933681				
Store page - Category : Burger				
https://start.messengerbot.app/ecommerce/store/3721608933681/category-50 Copy				
Store page - Category : Chicken				
https://start.messengerbot.app/ecommerce/store/3721608933681/category-49				
Store page - Category : Pizza				

Visit Store

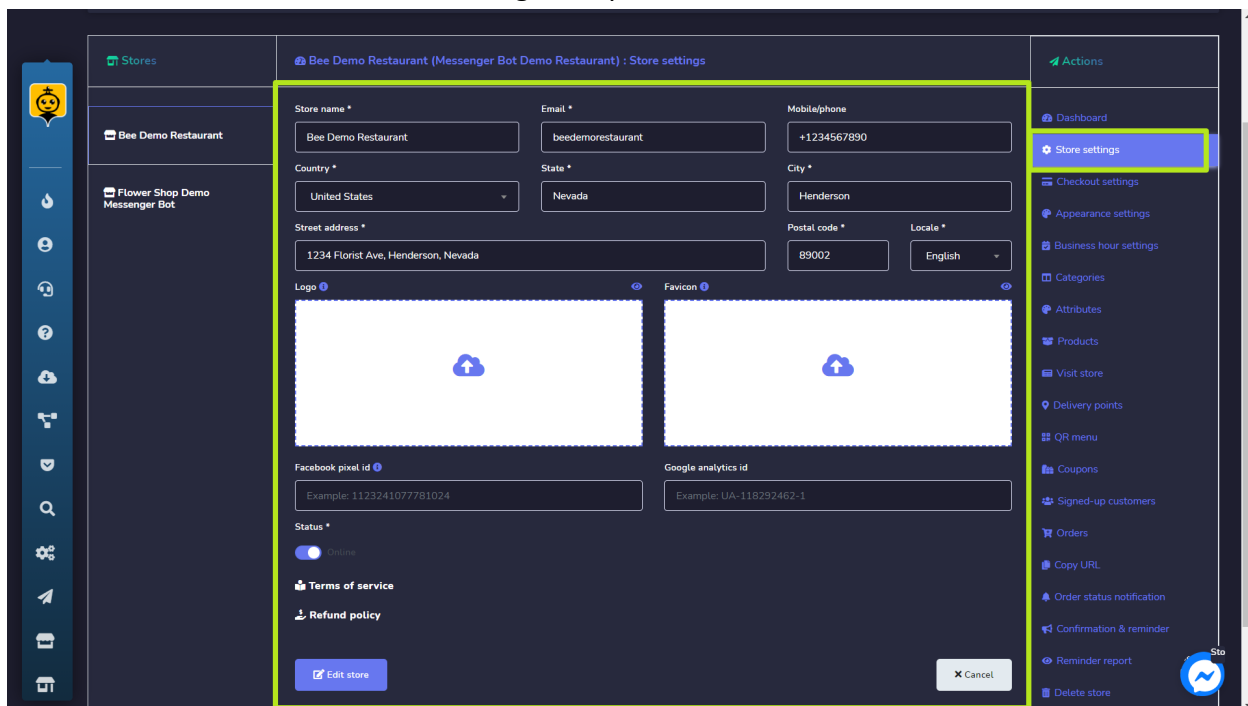
You can visit the store by selecting this option. It will redirect you to the store.





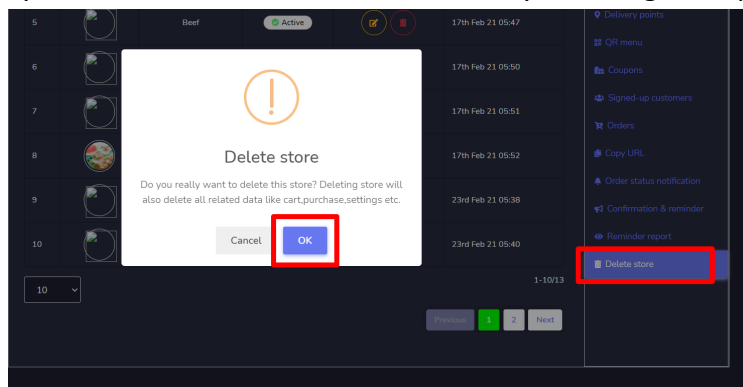
Store settings

You can edit the store information using this option.



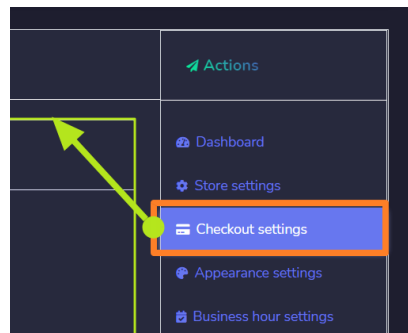
Delete store

You can permanently delete the store from the database by selecting this option.



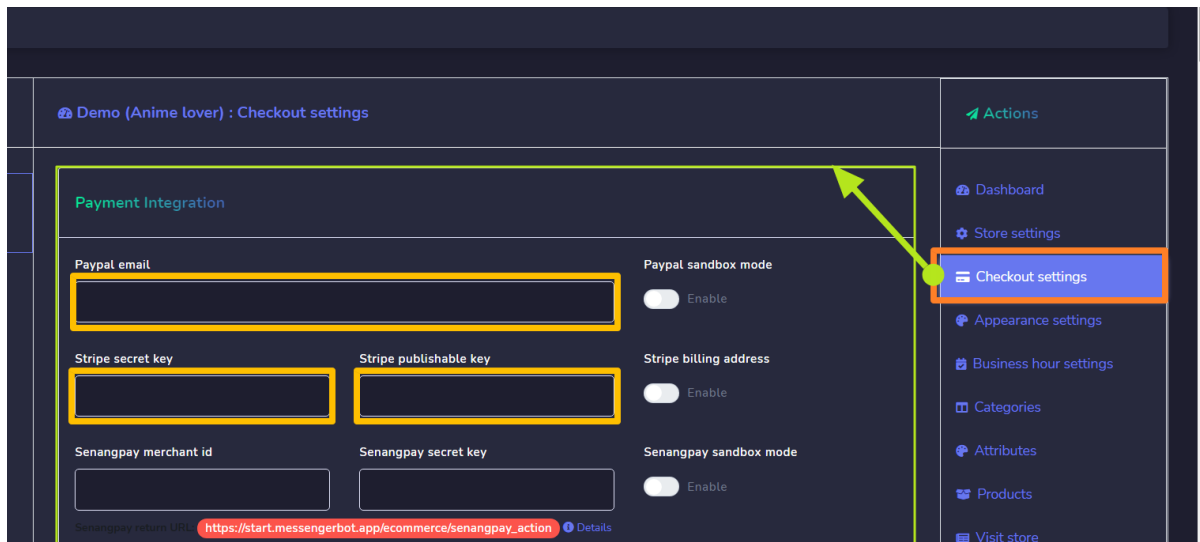


Payments




The payments section allows you to adjust the settings of all payment accounts. You need to follow the steps given below:












- 1) Provide the **PayPal email address**.
- 2) Enter a **stripe secret key**.
- 3) Enter a **stripe publishable key**. Note: You can also try to use the other mode of payment on Payment Integration



- 4) Select the **currency**, add your **tax and delivery charge**, modify your **delivery preference**, **login preference**, and **address preference**.





Currency & Formatting

Currency

USD (Dollar) - PayPal & Stripe

Right alignment

Two decimal

Display comma

Yes

Yes

Yes

Tax & Delivery Charge

Tax %

0

%

Delivery charge

0

\$

Delivery Preference

Store Pickup

Home Delivery

Enable

Enable

Preparation time

Enable

Time

30

Minutes

Scheduled order

Any

Login Preference

Guest purchase

Enable

Address Preference

Checkout country

Checkout state

Checkout city

Enable

Enable

Enable

Checkout zip

Checkout email

Checkout phone

Enable

Enable

Enable

Delivery note

Enable

Save




5) You can also provide **Manual payments instructions** in the field available.



messengerbot

Razorpay key id Razorpay key secret

Paystack secret key Paystack public key

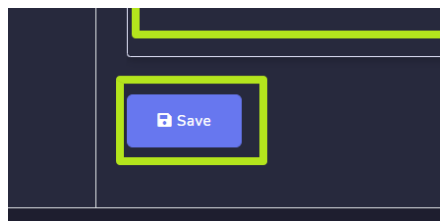
Write manual payment instructions

You can Pay Gcash or Any

Payment options

Paypal Checkout * <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	Stripe Checkout * <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	Razorpay checkout * <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	Paystack checkout * <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No
Mollie checkout * <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	Mercado pago checkout * <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	SSLCOMMERZ checkout * <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	Senangpay checkout * <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No

6) Select **Save** to make changes.



Your data will be updated in the database.

Ecommerce store [Create store](#)

Stores

Demo (Anime lover) : Checkout settings

Actions

- Dashboard
- Store settings
- Checkout settings**
- Appearance settings
- Business hour settings
- Categories
- Attributes
- Products
- Visit store
- Delivery points
- QR menu
- Coupons

Payment Integration

Paypal email **Paypal sandbox mode** ☒ Enable

Stripe secret key Stripe publishable key **Stripe billing address** ☒ Enable

Senangpay merchant id Senangpay secret key **Senangpay sandbox mode** ☒ Enable

Instamojo private api key Instamojo private auth token **Instamojo sandbox mode** ☒ Enable

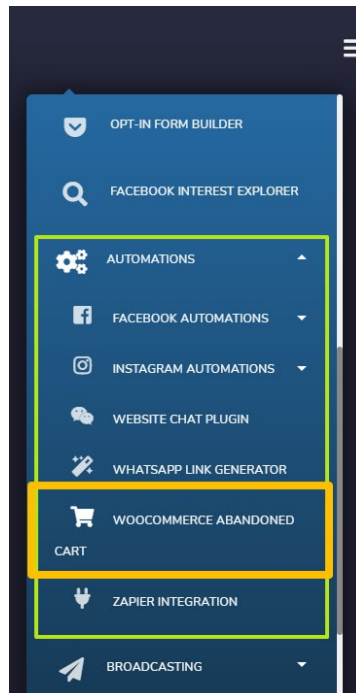
https://start.messengerbot.app/commerce/senangpay_action [Details](#)



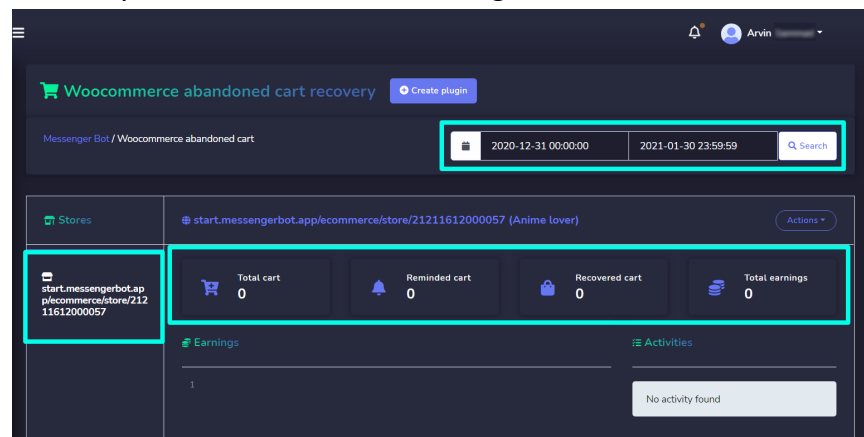


Woocommerce abandoned cart

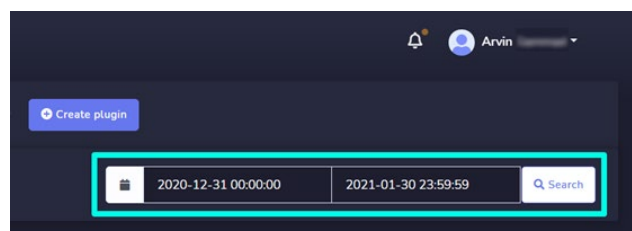
To access the **Woocommerce abandoned cart** section, select it under the Automations tab on the navigation menu as shown below.



Woocommerce abandoned cart section allows you to view the existing carts dashboard. View different carts summary and see all available earnings.

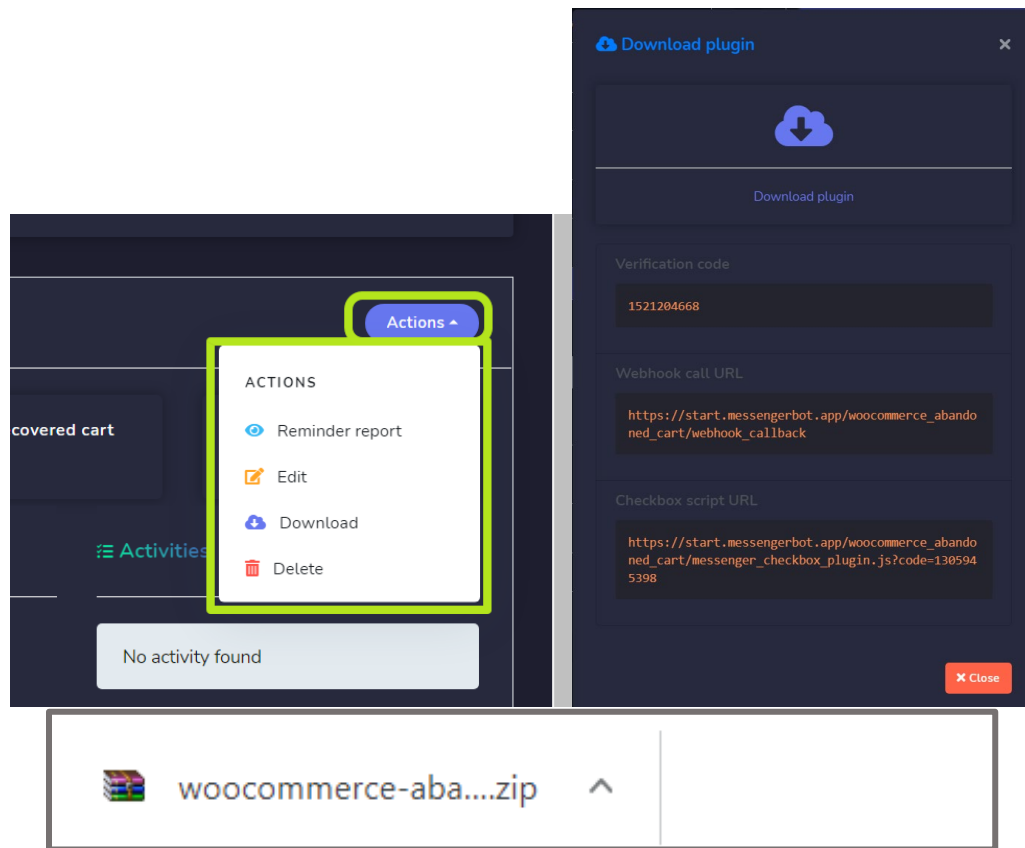


- You can simply apply **date filters** to track down the narrowed search.

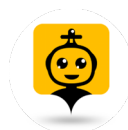
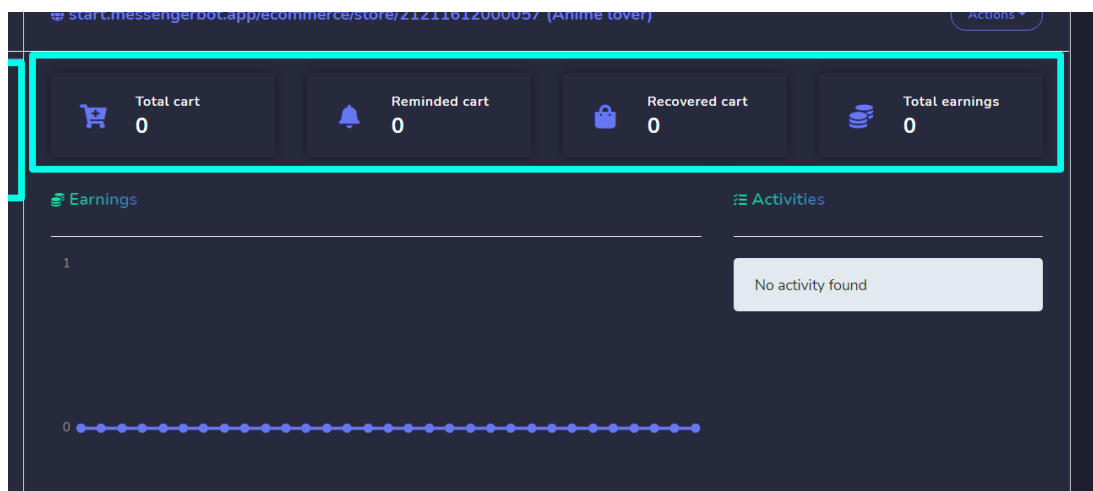




- You can perform actions from **Action** button like view **Reminder Report**, **Edit**, **Download** the report or **Delete** the report.




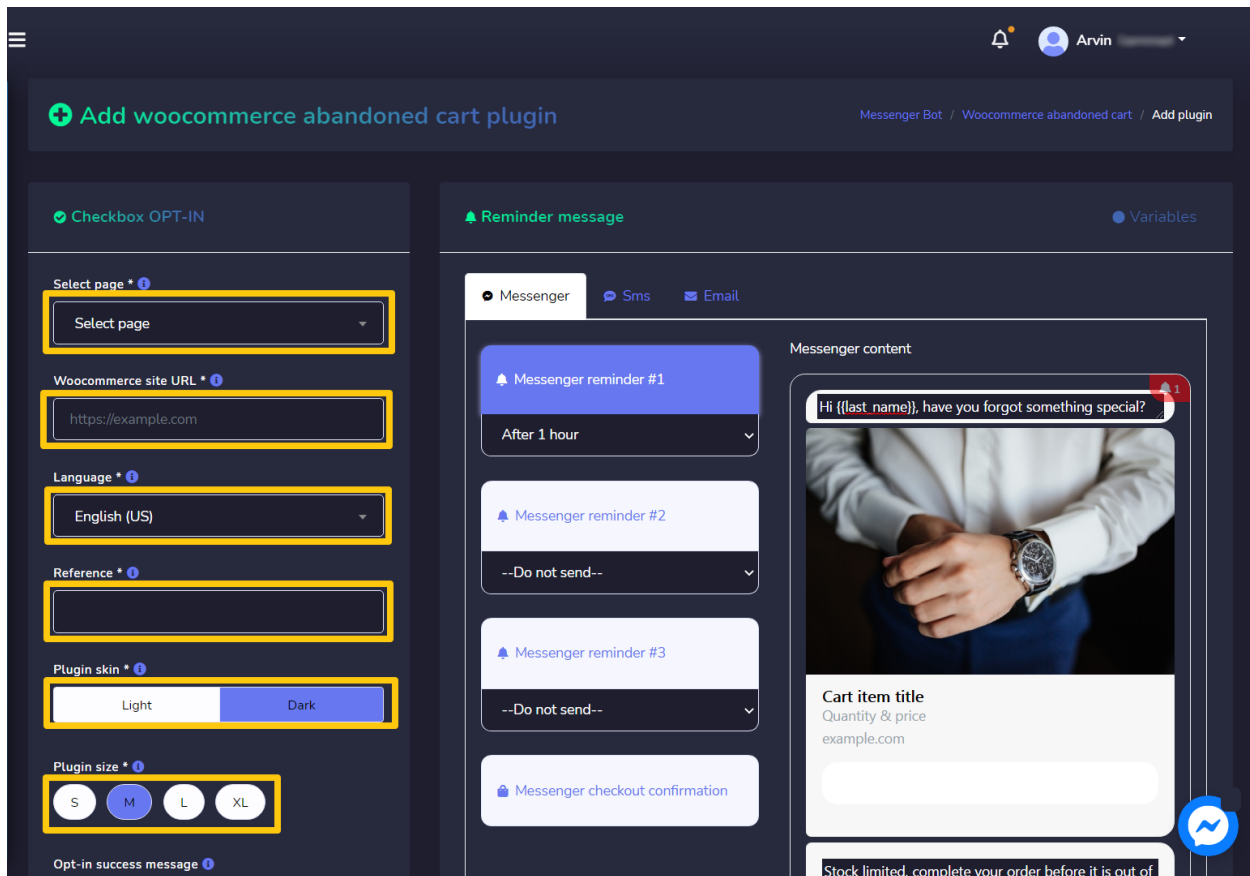
- The dashboard allows you to view **Total**, **Reminded**, and **Recovered** carts.
- It allows you to view the **Earnings**.





Create plugin

- 1) Select  from the top right of the screen.
- 2) In the **Checkbox OPT-IN** section, select the **page** for which you want to add the plugin.
- 3) Enter the **site URL**.
- 4) Select the **language**.
- 5) Add **Reference**.



The screenshot shows the 'Add plugin' configuration page for the 'woocommerce abandoned cart' plugin. The interface is divided into two main sections: 'Checkbox OPT-IN' on the left and 'Reminder message' on the right.

Checkbox OPT-IN Section:

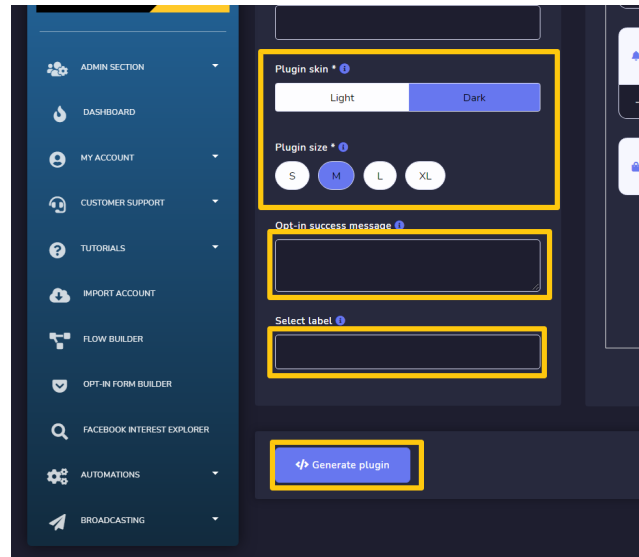
- Select page *:** A dropdown menu with 'Select page' selected.
- Wocommerce site URL *:** A text input field containing 'https://example.com'.
- Language *:** A dropdown menu with 'English (US)' selected.
- Reference *:** An empty text input field.
- Plugin skin *:** A toggle switch between 'Light' and 'Dark', with 'Dark' selected.
- Plugin size *:** Four radio buttons labeled 'S', 'M', 'L', and 'XL', with 'M' selected.
- Opt-in success message:** A text input field at the bottom.

Reminder message Section:

- Reminder type:** A dropdown menu with 'Messenger' selected, and options for 'Sms' and 'Email'.
- Messenger content:** A preview of the messenger message. It includes a greeting 'Hi {{last name}}, have you forgot something special?', a photo of a person's hands, a 'Cart item title' section with 'Quantity & price' and 'example.com', and a 'Stock limited, complete your order before it is out of' message.
- Reminders:** Three reminder cards are visible: 'Messenger reminder #1' (set to 'After 1 hour'), 'Messenger reminder #2' (set to '--Do not send--'), and 'Messenger reminder #3' (set to '--Do not send--'). There is also a 'Messenger checkout confirmation' card.

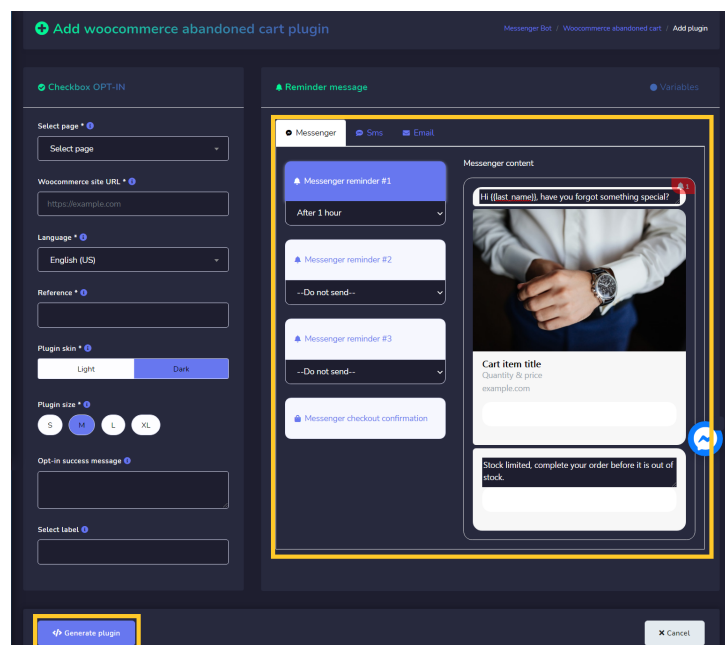
- 6) Provide the size of the **plugin and skin**.
- 7) Provide the **Opt-in success message**.
- 8) Select a **label**.

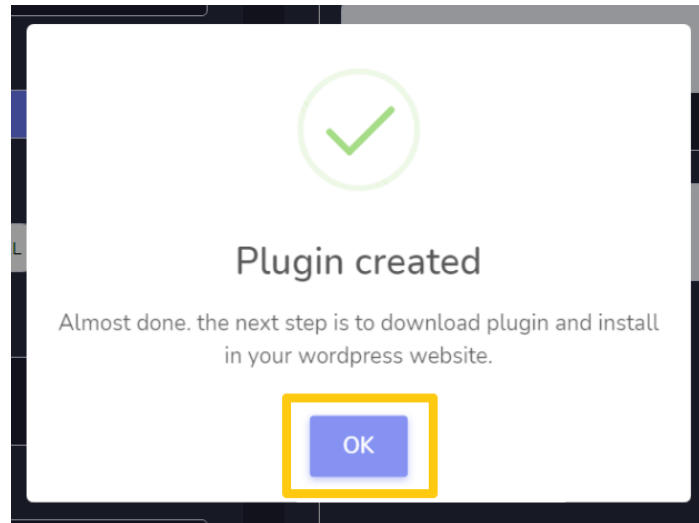




9) Adjust all settings in the **Reminder message** section based on your requirements.

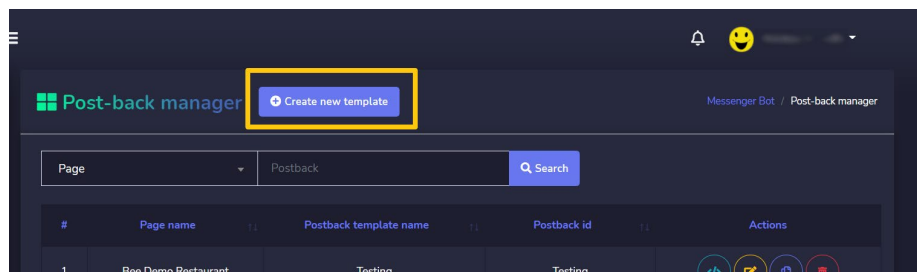
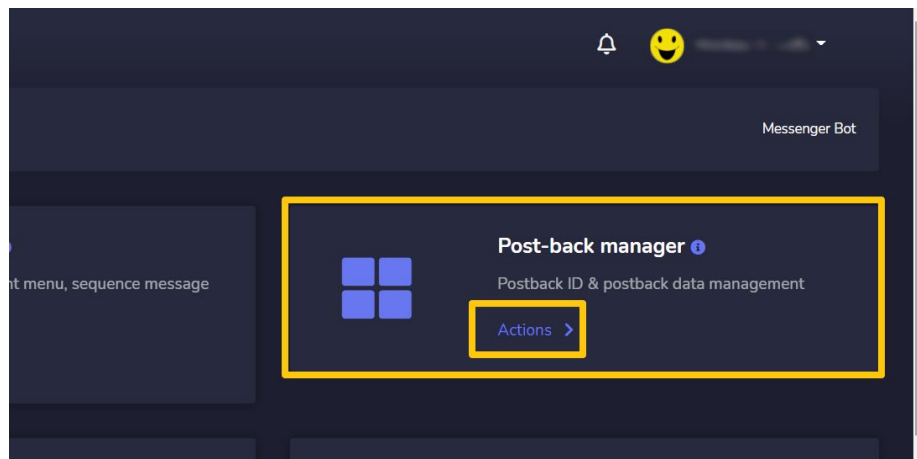
10) Select **Generate plugin**.





Assign Email SMS Sequence Campaign with Postback Click

To assign **Email/SMS sequence campaign with postback click**, go to **Messenger Bot -> Postback Manager**, click on Add new template and create Postback template with sequence campaigns.



messengerbot

Dashboard

MY ACCOUNT

CUSTOMER SUPPORT

TUTORIALS

IMPORT ACCOUNT

FLOW BUILDER

OPT-IN FORM BUILDER

FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER

AUTOMATIONS

BROADCASTING

Add a postback template Variables

Messenger Bot / Post-back manager / Create new template

Template name

Choose a page

Please select a page

Postback type

Parent Child

Postback id

Reply 1

Select reply type Text

Typing on display Enable

Delay in reply 0 Sec

Please provide your reply message

First name Last name

Add more reply

Submit Back

Page Name

this is text post

Hi, How are you ??? Hope you fine. How we can assist you by providing information?

Menu

Support

Settings

Help

type a message.

Now go to **Messenger Bot -> Bot Settings -> Bot Reply Settings** and click on **Add bot reply** button. Set a Bot reply with postback Id which created with Sequence campaigns (you can also add postback template from here by click on add link in bot reply settings form). Now whenever your subscribers click on this postback button inside messenger, they will assign to the sequence automatically.

messengerbot

Dashboard

MY ACCOUNT

CUSTOMER SUPPORT

TUTORIALS

IMPORT ACCOUNT

FLOW BUILDER

OPT-IN FORM BUILDER

FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER

AUTOMATIONS

BROADCASTING

ECOMMERCE

Add a postback template Variables

Messenger Bot / Post-back manager / Create new template

Template name

Choose a page

Please select a page

Postback type

Parent Child

Postback id

Reply 1

Select reply type Text with buttons

Typing on display Enable

Delay in reply 0 Sec

Please provide your reply message

First name Last name

Button text

Button type Post back

Postback id Select

Add more button

Submit Back

Page Name

button

How are you ?

website

button 2

Follow this link

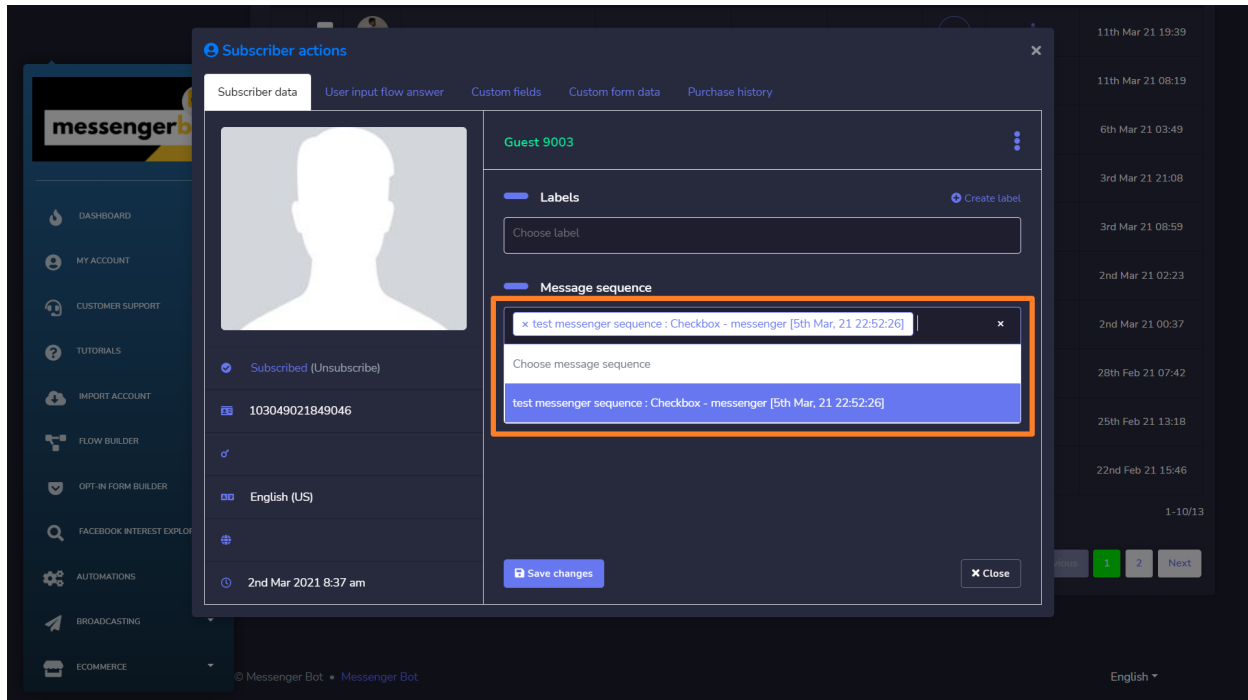
salespage

type a message...





After this, you can check this at **Subscriber Manager -> Bot Subscribers -> Subscribers Action** section modal.



Send Promotional Message Using One Time Notifications For Facebook Messenger

What is One Time Notification (OTN)?

As you know Facebook Messenger Platform doesn't allow to send message after 24 hours of last interaction by any subscriber.

Once any subscriber interacts with your Messenger, you have 24 hour time to send promotional message as many as you want (Don't spam).

After 24 hours, you are not allowed to send any message (Except using some specific tag only for non promotional message.)

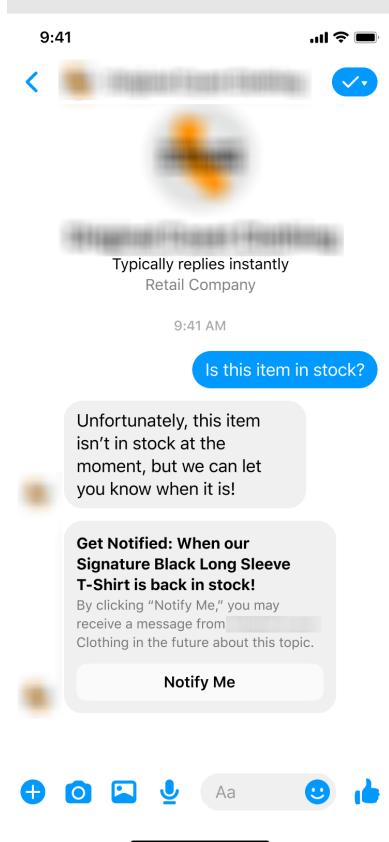
Here One Time Notification API is provided by Facebook to send promotional message after 24 hours window.



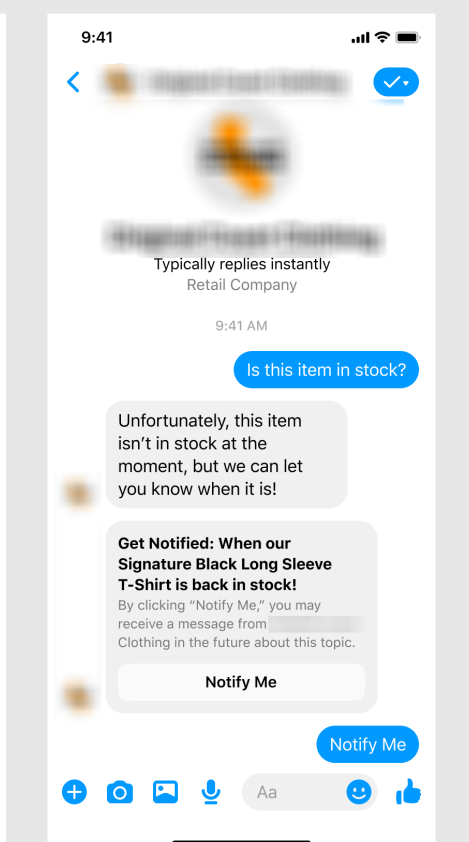
Source : <https://developers.facebook.com/docs/messenger-platform/send-messages/one-time-notification>

The Messenger Platform's One-Time Notification API (Beta) allows a page to request a user to send one follow-up message after 24-hour messaging window have ended. The user will be offered to receive a future notification. Once the user asks to be notified, the page will receive a token which is an equivalent to a permission to send a single message to the user. The token can only be used once and will expire within 1 year of creation

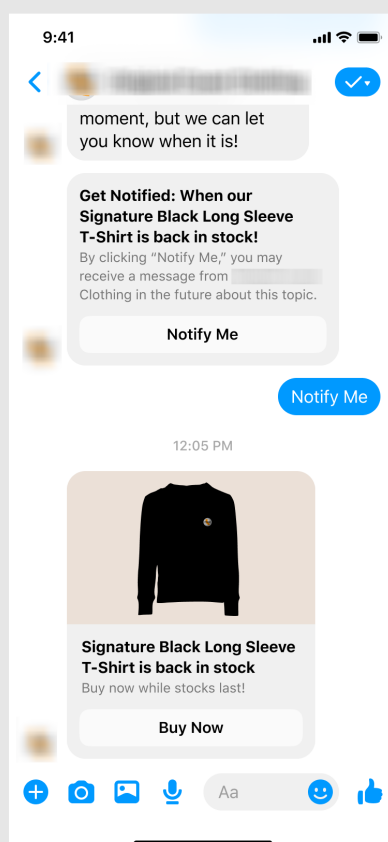
1. Page sends the one-time notification template to user



2. User asks to be notified in the future



3. Page uses the token received in step 2 and sends the reminder message

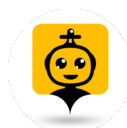


Why it's so important ?

After deprecated sending message after 24 hours, OTN is the only option to send promotional message now.

OTN message sending is happened in two steps. First you will need to set bot that asked for permission to send future promo message regarding any specific offer.

Later, you will be able to broadcast message to those people, have given permission for sending





message.

So, asking this permission & Opt-in by subscribers are super easy. Users just need a click to get subscribed for it.

And that's guaranteed & fully proved that Messenger has almost 95%+ open rate. So it's hundred times better than sending email broadcast.

Just imagine, if you have 500 users subscribed for Black Friday offer or any other promotional campaign, once you broadcast them, almost 450+ people will open it.

How to use One Time Notification Features in Messenger Bot.App?

First, you will need to apply for One Time Notification Access from Facebook Pages. It's just a click easy.

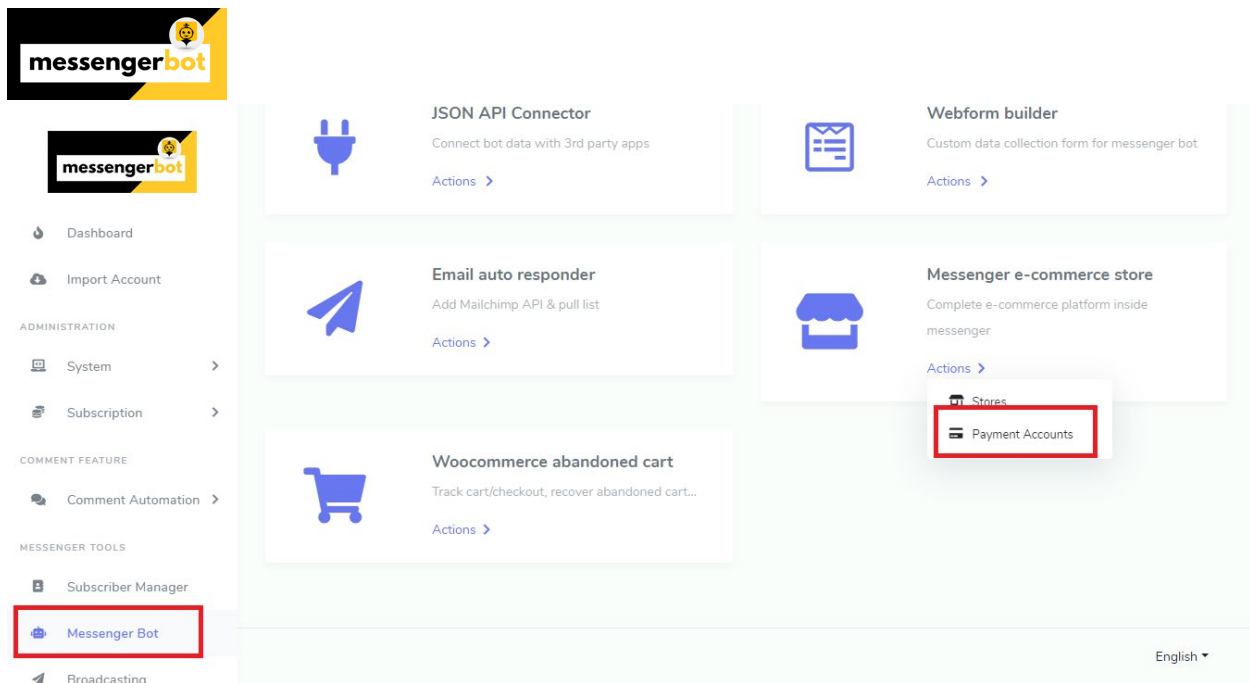
[How to set up Payment Settings in Messenger Bot](#)

We know that E-commerce is the backbone to build business worldwide. By the way, Alongside all-powerful features of Messenger Bot has integrated today world's most powerful E-commerce platform to make your business more flexible.

To complete this process you must have payment accounts to get payment from your buyers. So this is for helping to set up Payment system for E-commerce. Payment settings is global for one account, that means all store of the same account will use same payment system. Messenger Bot provides multiple payment gateway support for Ecommerce platform including Paypal , Stripe, Razorpay, Paystack , Mollie , Manual Payment & Cash on Delivery option.

Go to **Messenger Bot -> Messenger e-commerce store -> Payment Accounts** section





Here you'll see the Payment accounts form.





E-commerce payment accounts

Messenger Bot / E-commerce / Payment Accounts

@ Paypal email

Paypal sandbox mode

☐ Enable

Stripe secret key

Stripe publishable key

Razorpay Key ID

Razorpay Key Secret

Paystack Secret Key

Paystack Public Key

Mollie API Key

Currency

USD (Dollar) - PayPal & Stripe

Right Alignment ⓘ

☐ Yes

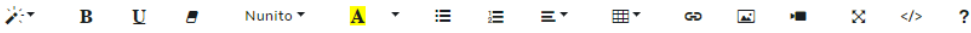
Two Decimal ⓘ

☒ Yes

Display Comma ⓘ

☐ Yes

Manual payment instructions



Save

You can set up six types of payment systems: Paypal, Stripe, Razorpay, Paystack, Mollie and manual Payment System.

PayPal Email: Provide your PayPal business account email.

PayPal Sandbox Mode: If you want to test the paypal payment then you have to enable sandbox mode.

Stripe secret Key & Stripe published key: If you want to integrate your Stripe account then you've put your stripe secret key and stripe published key of your stripe account.



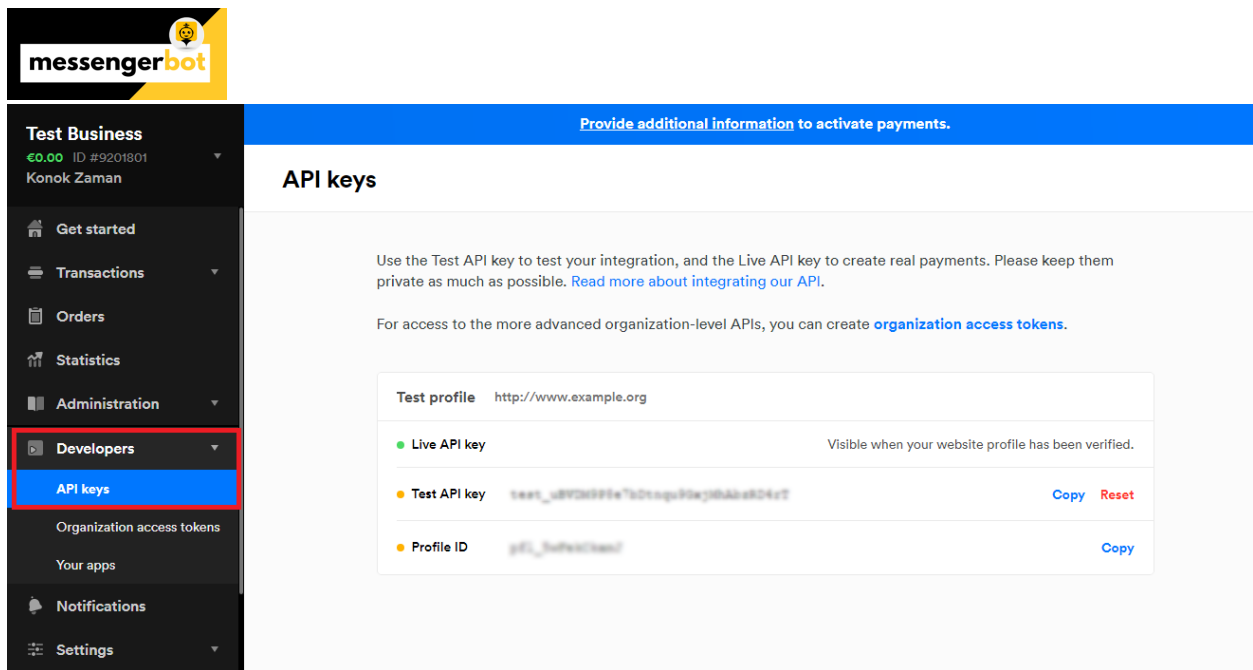


Razorpay Key ID & key secret: If you want to integrate Razorpay payment method then you've to put your razorpay key id and secret key. Visit [Razorpay](#) and go to **Settings > API Keys** and copy your key id and key secret and paste into the corresponding field.

Paystack Secret Key & public key: If you want to integrate paystack payment method then you've to put your paystack secret key and public key. Visit Paystack and go to **Settings > API Keys & Webhooks** and copy your key id and key secret and paste into the corresponding field.

Mollie API Key: If you want to integrate the Mollie payment method then you've to put your Mollie API key. Visit Mollie and go to **Settings > API Keys & Webhooks** and copy your key id and key secret and paste into the corresponding field.





Currency: Select your country payment currency.

Currency alignment: This setting is for make your currency alignment right or left. If you enable it then currency will be shown at right side of amount. Suppose your payment amount is 50 and your currency is \$, so the amount will be shown as 50\$. If you disable it then the amount will be shown as \$50.

Two decimal Places: If you enable it then amount will be shown with two decimal points. Suppose your amount is 39.44 and you enabled it, so it will show the amount as 39.44

Comma Separated: If you enable it, then amount will be shown as comma separated, suppose your amount is 29000, so the amount will be shown as 29,000

Manual Payment: Manual payment is for take payment manually from user manually and uploads payment documents in the system.

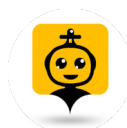
Enjoy all the awesome features of Messenger Bot.

How To Recover Lost Sale With Messenger Bot Abandoned Cart Reminder

How to Recover Lost Sale With Messenger Bot Abandoned Cart Reminder:

Nowadays, People are becoming used to shop online, so E-commerce business has become the most popular platform in modern days. Customers are switching to online shopping to save time instead of physical shopping, sometimes they do add to cart their desired products for future shopping. But as we're human, sometimes we forget to check out our added carts.

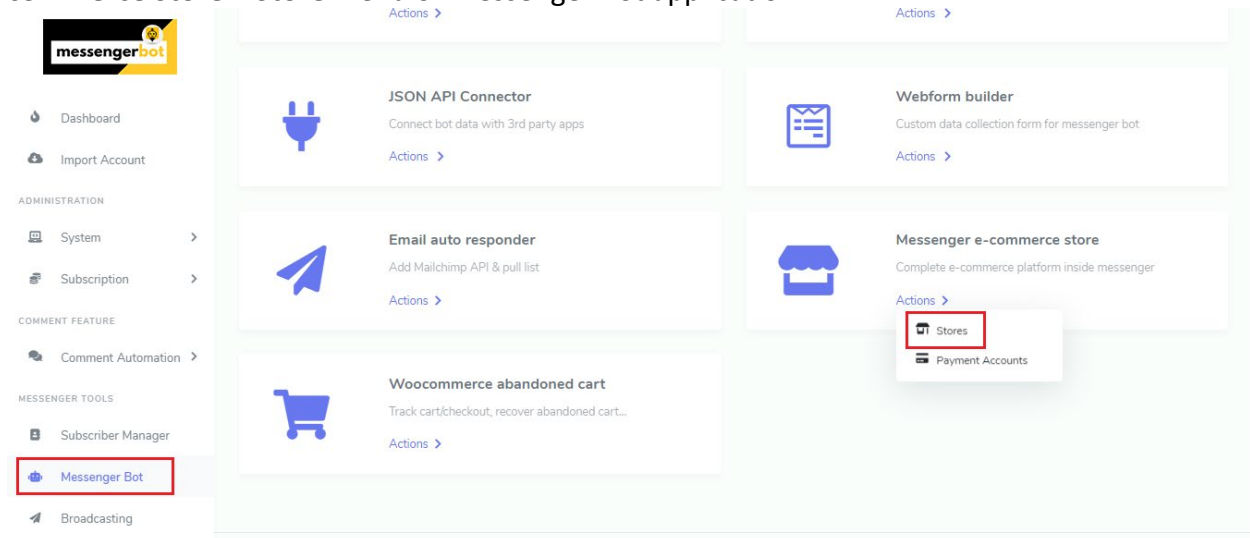
Besides very powerful and rich features, Messenger Bot has the Messenger E-commerce



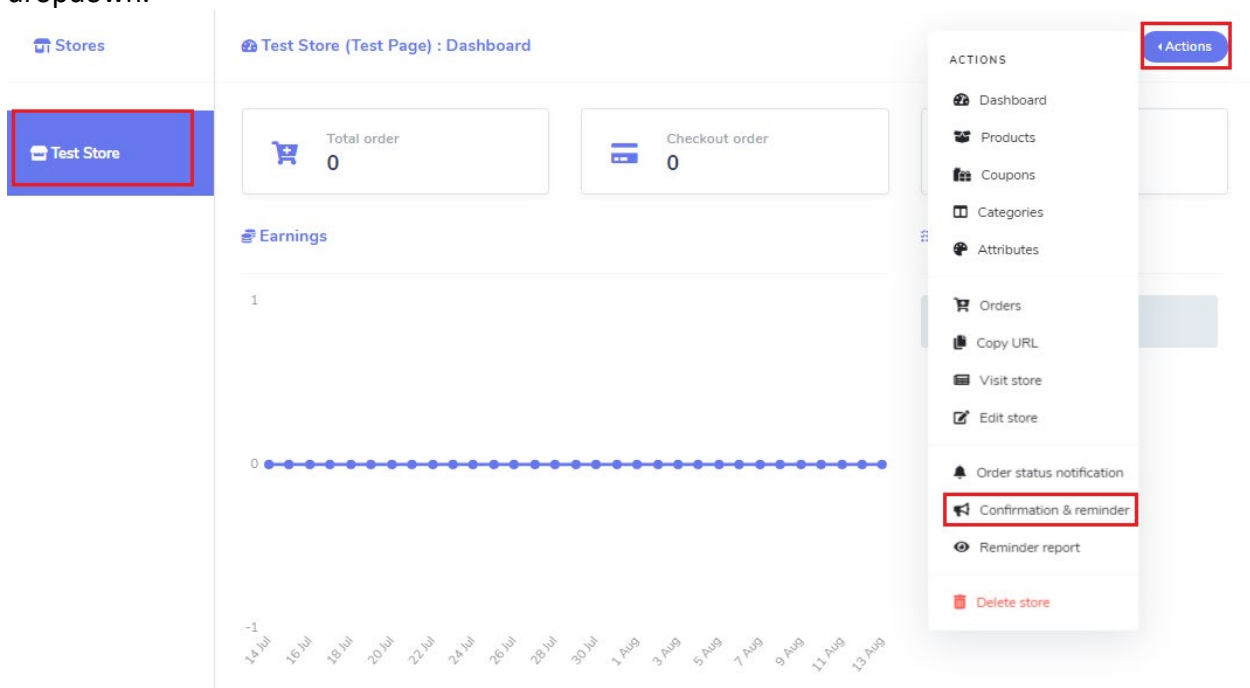


Platform which you already know. So in this blog, I'll write about how you can send a reminder message to your customers who added their desired products into the cart but forgot to check out. So I'm not going more details on E-commerce, moving to the blog on how you can do that, let's start.

>>> First of all go to your e-commerce store by visiting **Messenger Bot > Messenger E-commerce Store > Store** menu of Messenger Bot application.



>>> Now click on **Actions** and then click on **Confirmation & Reminder** menu from the dropdown.



>>> A form will appear for reminder message settings with three reminder options messenger,





sms and email. You can send your clients reminder as SMS or email if they have phone number or email address inside Messenger Bot.

>>> From left-sided section of the form, you can update the reminder text and also you can use variables inside your message, system will send the value for corresponding variables.

Stores

Test Store

Test Store (Test Page) : Confirmation & abandoned cart reminder

Actions

Variables

Reset

MessengerSmsEmail

Messenger content

Congratulations {{last_name}}!
Thanks for shopping from our store. You made the right choice. If you need any information, just leave us a message here.

Order confirmation

Cart item title
Price : XX
Qty : XX

Paid with

Payment method

Deliver to

Delivery address...

Total

\$xx.xx

You can see your order history and status here.

MY ORDERS

Messenger reminder #1

After 1 hour

Messenger reminder #2

--Do not send--

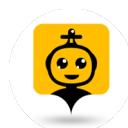
Messenger reminder #3

--Do not send--

Checkout Messenger

Save

Cancel





Variables

{{store_name}}

{{store_url}}

{{order_no}}

{{order_url}}

{{checkout_url}}

{{my_orders_url}}

{{last_name}}

{{first_name}}

{{email}}

{{mobile}}

OK





Stores

Test Store (Test Page) : Confirmation & abandoned cart reminder

Actions

Test Store

Variables

Reset

Messenger

Sms

Email

SMS content

Thanks for shopping from our store. You made the right choice.
{{store_name}}

SMS reminder #1

--Do not send--

SMS sender

Select sender

SMS reminder #2

--Do not send--

SMS reminder #3


--Do not send--

Checkout sms

Save

Cancel





Stores
Test Store

Test Store (Test Page) : Confirmation & abandoned cart reminder
Actions

Variables
Reset

Messenger
Sms
Email

Email content

B
U
I

Congratulations {{first_name}}!
Thanks for shopping from our store. You made the right choice. If you need any information, just leave us a message here.

You can see your order history and status [clicking here](#).

Have a nice day :)
{{store_name}} Team

Email reminder #1
--Do not send--

Email reminder #2
--Do not send--

Email reminder #3
--Do not send--

Checkout email

Email sender
SMTP: zilanise@xerochat.in

Email subject
{{store_name}} | Order Update

Save
Cancel

>>> And from the right-sided section of the form, You can send up to three reminders through messenger or sms or email. You can set the time after how many times you want to send the reminder to the customers.

>>> After set up your reminder message, when a customer adds products into the cart, but forget to checkout, system will send a reminder through messenger or sms or email according to your set up.

Messenger Bot User Input & Custom Fields

What is User Input Flow?

With user input flow you can ask a single or series of questions from users inside Messenger. Once users give any answer, then the next question will be sent if there any.

These answers will be saved in the database & also can be saved as custom fields. Custom fields





can be used as variables in Messenger reply.

What is Variable?

After you have saved a response in Custom Field, you can use it as a variable in your message reply to the subscriber.

How to use Variable?

To use the variable for Custom Field, write the variable surrounding by # like (#Custom Field#)

E-Commerce Product Review & Comment

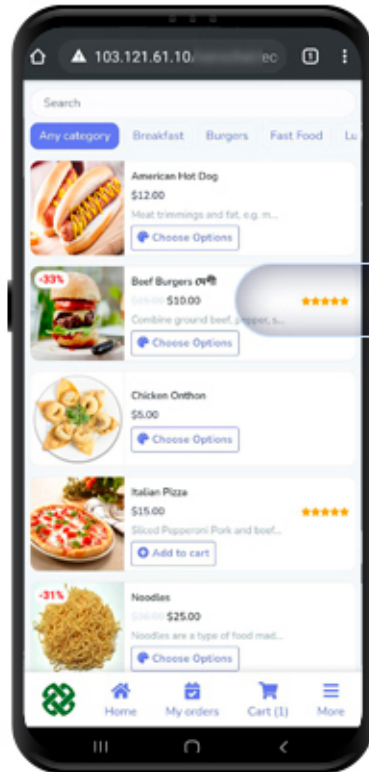
Our Messenger bot now comes up with a new E-commerce Product Review & Comment Add-on. This add-on has the following feature such as:

- Product comment & reply feature,
- Product rating and review feature,
- Messenger Bot notification to store admin on new comment/rating
- Store admin can hide comment/rating

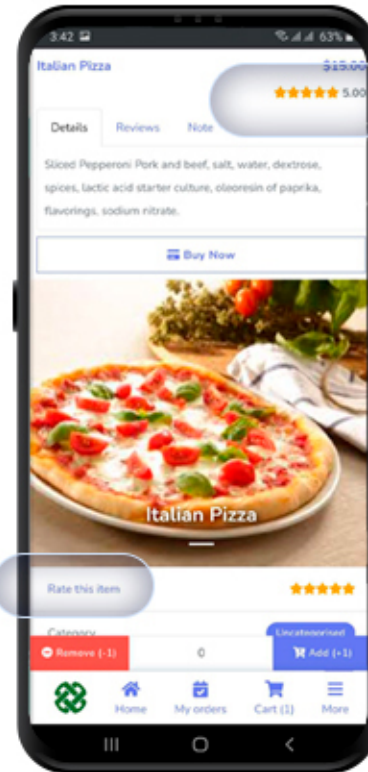
Once you enable e-commerce product review, rating, and comment features, you will have the same experience as the following examples:



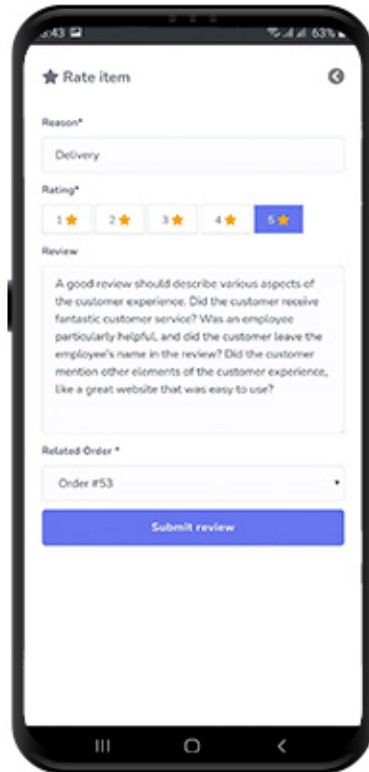
Product List with Review



Product Details View with Rating



Rate a Product



★ Rate item

Reason*

Delivery

Rating*

1 ★ 2 ★ 3 ★ 4 ★ 5 ★

Review

A good review should describe various aspects of the customer experience. Did the customer receive fantastic customer service? Was an employee particularly helpful, and did the customer leave the employee's name in the review? Did the customer mention other elements of the customer experience, like a great website that was easy to use?

Related Order *

Order #53

Submit review

Product Comment



Leave a comment

Write comment here

Comment

Comments

16 Nov 20 09:36 Reply

What does Lorem Ipsum mean? Derived from Latin *dolorem ipsum* ("pain itself"), Lorem ipsum is filler text used by publishers and graphic designers used to ...

23 Nov 20 09:45

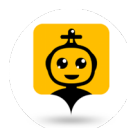
Thank you very much

16 Nov 20 09:34 Reply

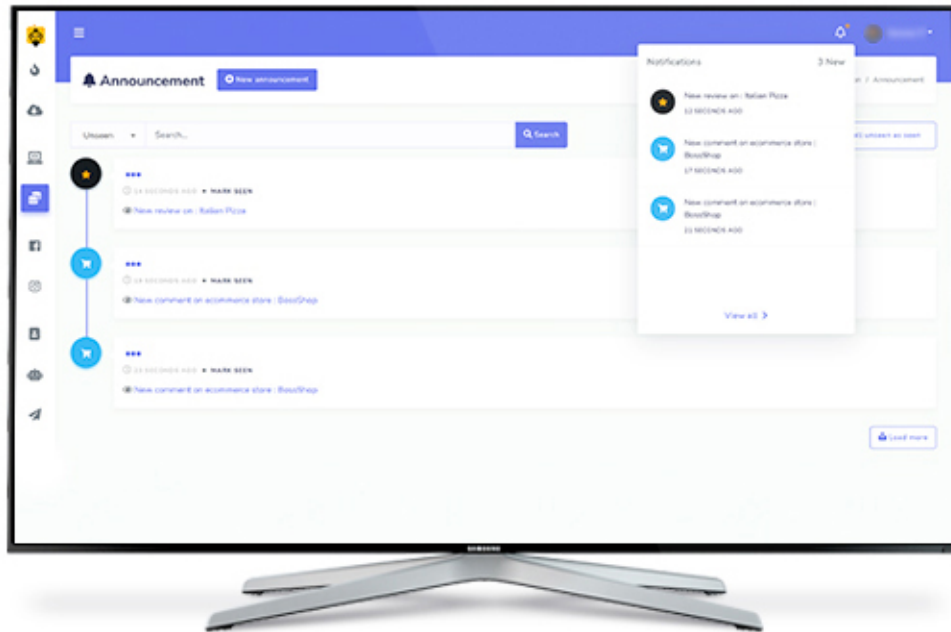
Lorem ipsum, or *lipsum* as it is sometimes known, is dummy text used in laying out print, graphic or web designs. The passage is attributed to an unknown typesetter in the 15th century who is thought to have scrambled parts of Cicero's *De*

Remove (-1) 0 Add (+1)

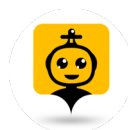
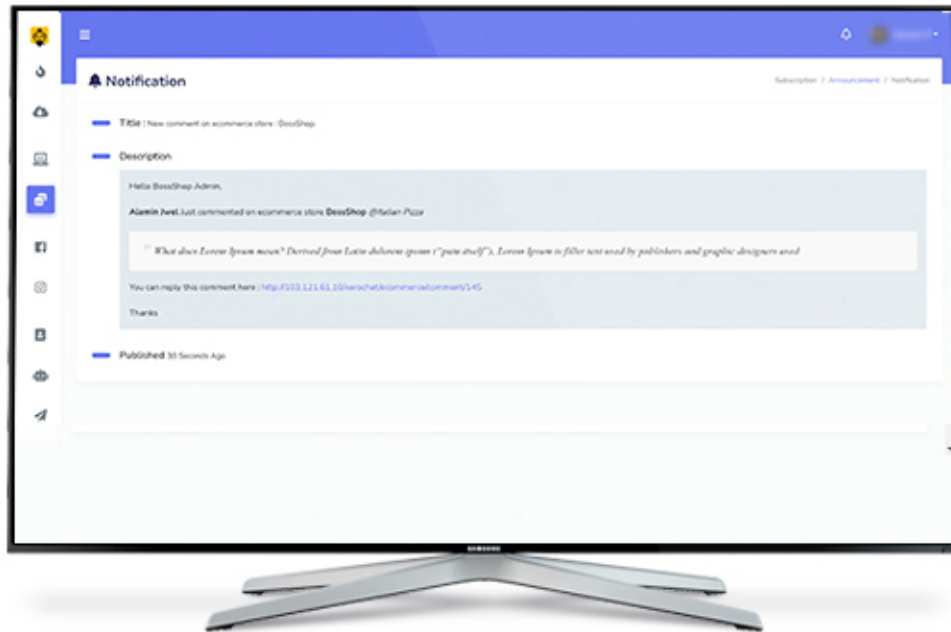
Home My orders Cart (1) More



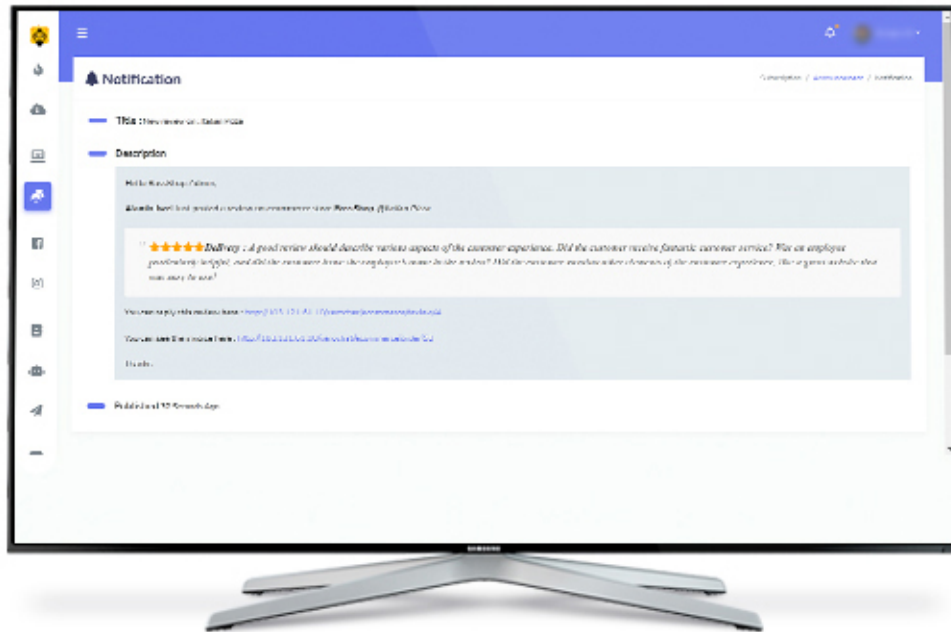
Admin Notification



Admin Notification (Comment)



Admin Notification (Review)



Messenger Bot WooCommerce Integration - JSON API

A complete steps on how to do WooCommerce Integration - JSON API on Messenger Bot.

IMPORT WC PRODUCTS

Go to Connect WooCommerce API menu. Put your Consumer key, Consumer Secret, WordPress Website home URL, and then click "Save & Sync Data"

It will automatically import all your WooCommerce store's product entries as well as related categories and attributes.





Connect WooCommerce API

WooCommerce Integration / Connect WooCommerce API

WooCommerce API settings

Consumer key *

Consumer secret *

Website home URL *

Save & Sync Data

Cancel

Successful integration will be listed like below :

WooCommerce Integration

Connect WooCommerce API

WooCommerce Integration

Store webview

Products

https://[redacted].net

ck_e4e998a3884508b1634d8841e1a16at

cs_7e2e91767a395556b22031ff79e8f5t

Dec 3, 20 12:05

Delete

Update

Copy URL

Re-sync data

Clicking the "Store webview" button will bring up store webview page. Clicking the "Products" button will bring up imported products and the eye icon will show product single page.





Search

Any category Nature New Image's

OPTIMUM FOOD
10kg AND 20kg
aquarium food
\$200 \$120
[Buy Now](#)

WooCommerce Integration - JSON API
\$45 \$28
Je m'appelle Angélica Summer,...
[Buy Now](#)

SOBO 320F
Sobo320f Power filter
\$300 \$280
AC 220-240V, 50/60Hz, Power: ...
[Buy Now](#)

真守兒野覺每件威都岡...
\$1 - \$3
[Buy Now](#)

Sobo320f Power filter \$300 \$280

Details

- AC 220-240V, 50/60Hz, Power: 5W, F. Max: 500L/H
- The Filter Sponge Absorbs Dirt And Clears The Water
- Fully Submersible And Ideal For Any Aquarium Filtration
- Made Of Premium Materials And Has A Beautiful Design

[Buy Now](#)



Products

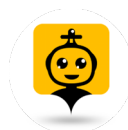
Search...

[Export to Ecommerce](#)

#	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Thumb	Product	Price	Actions	Updated at
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		aquarium food	\$200 \$120	Copy URL	Dec 3, 20 12:05
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		Je m'appelle Angélica Summer,...	\$45 \$28	Copy URL	Dec 3, 20 12:05
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		Sobo320f Power filter	\$300 \$280	Copy URL	Dec 3, 20 12:05
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		真守兒野覺每件威都岡...	\$1 - \$3	Copy URL	Dec 3, 20 12:05

10 1-4/4

You can create bot with imported WC products using the webview feature. You can copy URLs by clicking the "Copy URL" button





Copy URL

Store url

Product url

● Store page

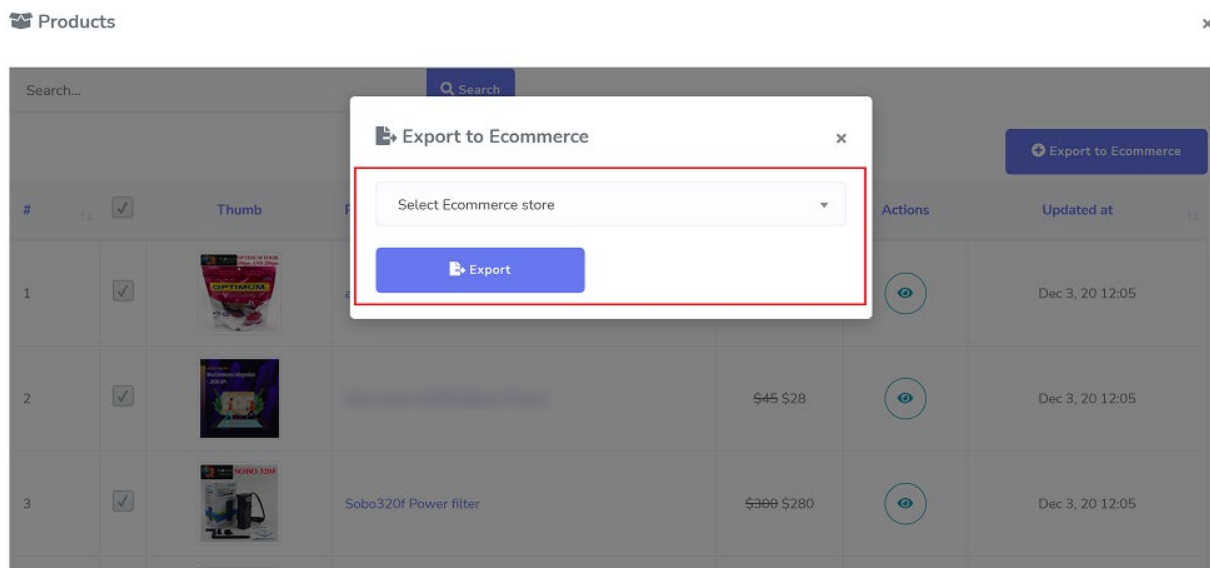
`http://...woocommerce_integration/store/54`

● Store page - Category : Nature

`http://...woocommerce_integration/store/54?category=19`

EXPORT WC PRODUCTS TO ECOMMERCE

From the product list page you can select and export WC products to ECommerce with just one click. As Ecommerce does not support multiple categories yet, exporting will take only the first WC category for each category. Also exported products may set the price to Zero due to WC product variation. You need to edit those products and fix them manually.



Google My Business Integration

Location Manager

Business in Multiple Locations

- You are able to maintain your business to multiple locations
- You are able to maintain multiple business' information
- You are able to switch between businesses at one click





In this section, you can manage your multiple business location. There are some list that you can manage easily using location manager:

1. Review reply settings
2. Review list
3. Post list
4. Questions & Ans

Location Information

Location Manager

Location list

Search...

Review reply settings

Change settings

Review list

Change settings

Post list

Change settings

Questions & Ans.

Change settings

Review reply settings

Options

Add settings

#	Star	Action
1	★★★★★	
2	★★★★★	
3	★★★	

10

1-1/1

Previous 1 Next

Location insights

Location and Post Insights

- Each location provides insights for multiple metrics
- Each post provides insight for different locations

Location Information

Location Manager

Location list

Search...

Review reply settings

Change settings

Review list

Change settings

Post list

Change settings

Questions & Ans.

Change settings

Review reply settings

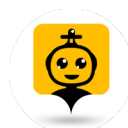
Options

Actions

New review URL

Location insights

#	Star	Action
1	★★★★★	
2	★★★★★	
3	★★★	



Location Insights For " "

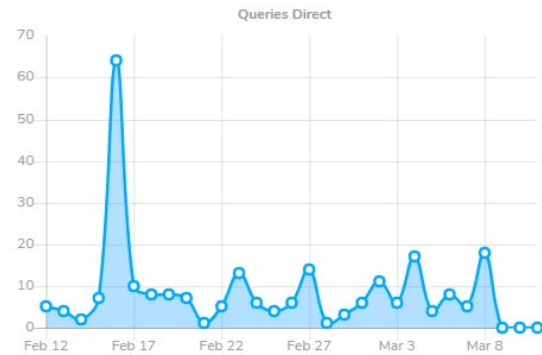
📅

2020-02-11

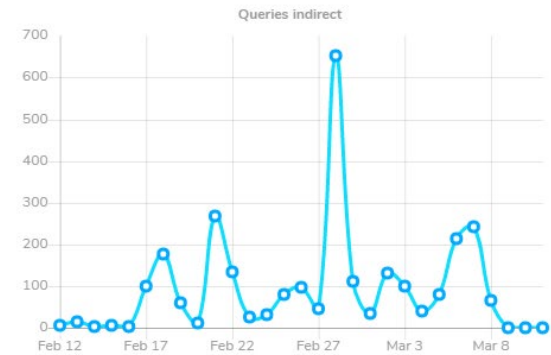
2020-03-11

🔍 Search

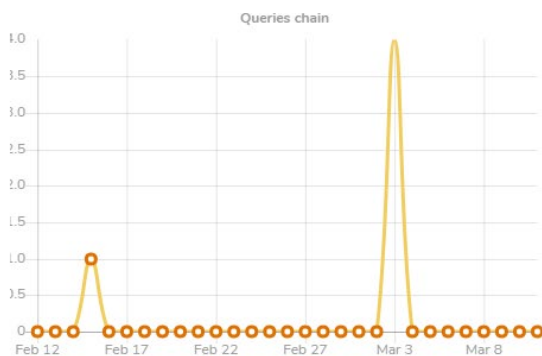
Queries Direct ⓘ



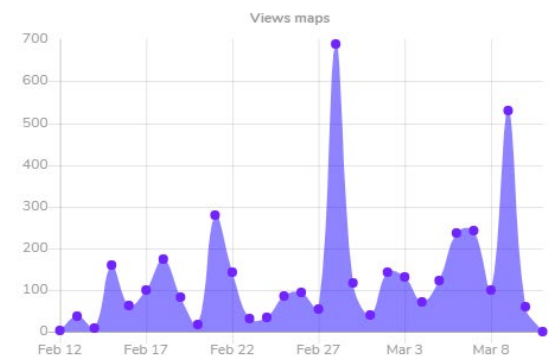
Queries Indirect ⓘ



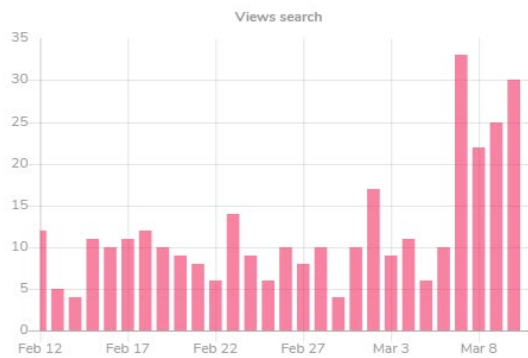
Queries Chain ⓘ



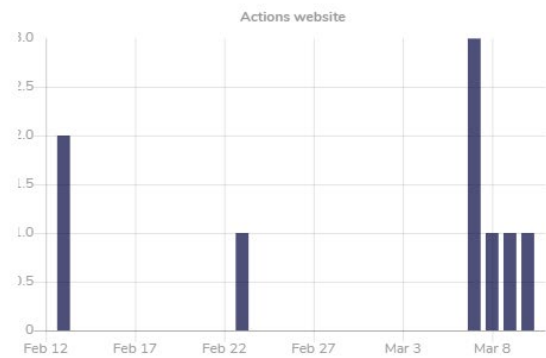
Views Maps ⓘ



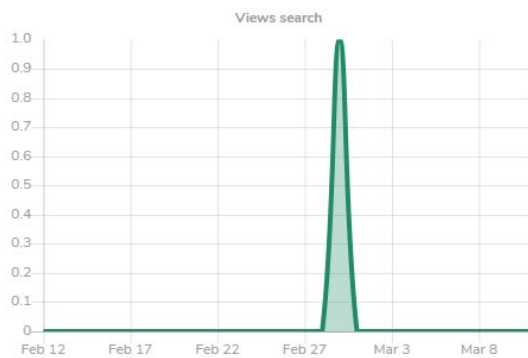
Views Search ①



Actions Website ①



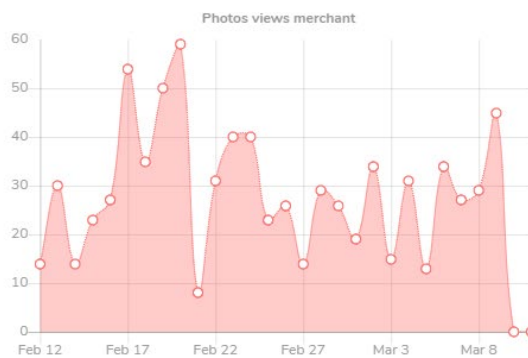
Actions Phone ①



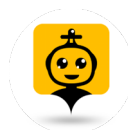
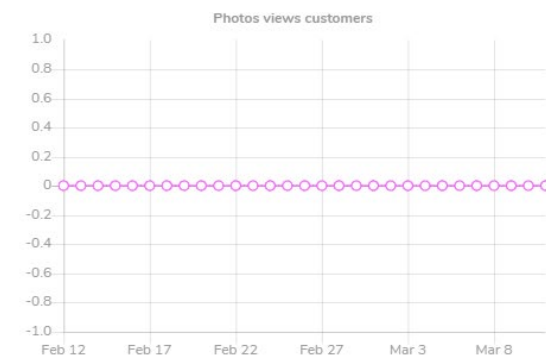
Actions Driving Directions ①

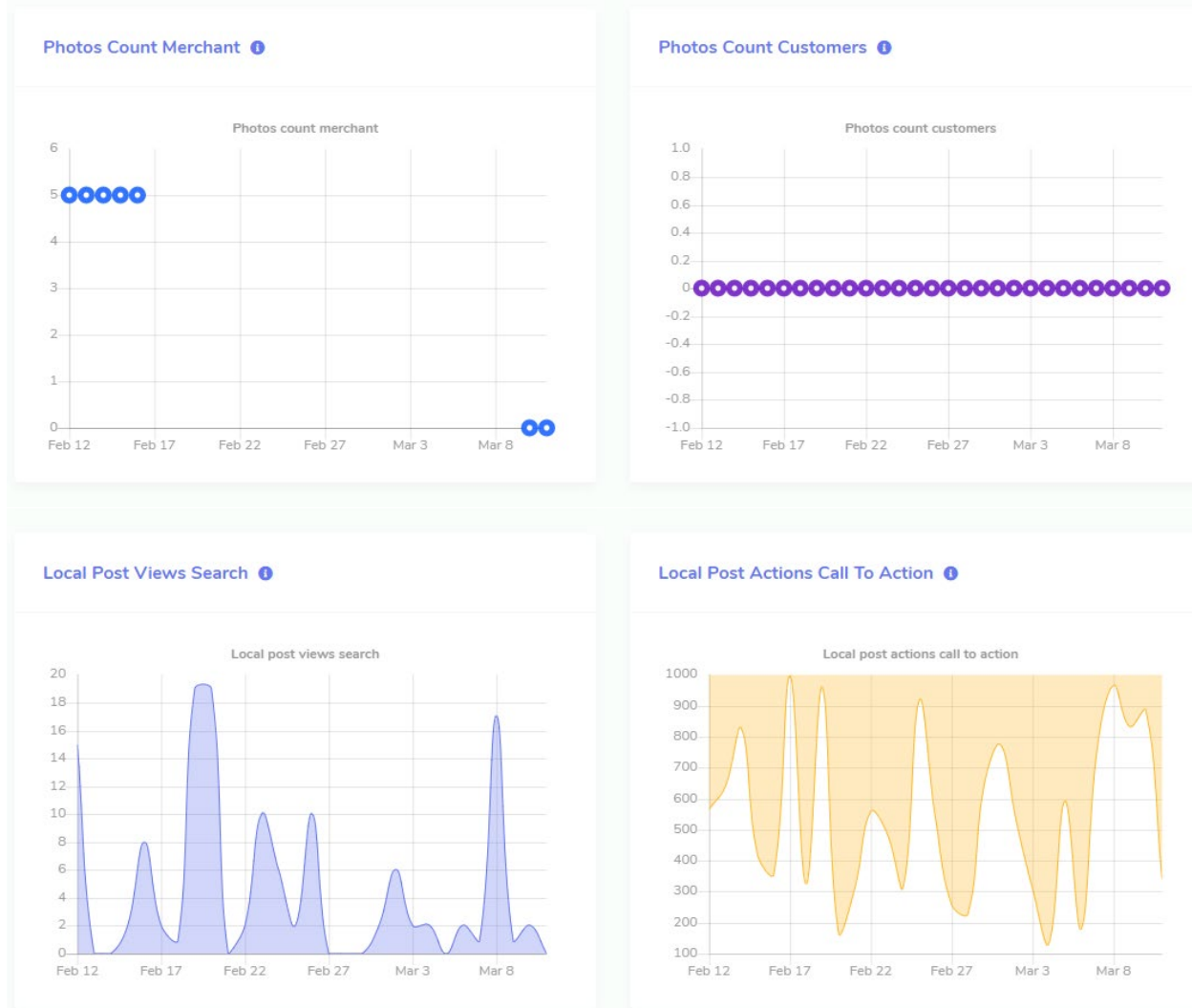


Photos Views Merchant ①



Photos Views Customers ①





Review reply settings

Automatic Review Reply

- Gives a way to reply to a review automatically.
- Custom star based automatic replies to reviews.
- Automatic replies to reviews are editable.
- Unlimited keyword based automatic replies.
- Generic replies to reviews.
- Default review reply for no keyword match
- Star based review report is available

In this section, you can set a predefined review reply template for those who give a review in your google my business. If you want to reply them to automatically then set a review reply predefined template. You can also set template star rating categorized like 5 stars and so on, that is a really cool feature, isn't it? Please follow the instructions below if you want to review the reply automatically.





Two Type of reply template available

1. Generic
2. Keyword

Location Information

Location Manager

Location list

Search...

6100, Rajshahi

6100, Rajshahi

Review reply settings

Change settings

Review list

Change settings

Post list

Change settings

Questions & Ans.

Change settings

Review reply settings

Options

#	Star	Action
1	★★★★★	
2	★★★★	
3	★★★	

10

1-1/1

Previous 1 Next

Select a rating and enter review reply text, after then hit the add settings button

If you want to reply them to your business reviewer Keyword wise then select the keyword instead of generic. You can add keyword more than one to click the add more keyword button also you can set the "no match" template If there no keyword match in your reviewers' review.





⚙️ Review reply settings

Options ▾

Select rating

5 Star ▾

Reply type



Generic



Keyword

Keyword

Keyword

Reply

😊

+ Add more settings

Message for no match

😊

💾 Add Settings








✕ Cancel



Review reply settings

Options ▾

+ Add settings

#	Star	Action
1	★★★★★	   
2	★★★★	
3	★★★	
4	★★	

10 ▾

1-1/1

Review List

In this section, you will see all the review list. You can edit review reply and delete it from here.

Note: Review list may take up to few minutes/hours to update & synchronize in review list.





Location Information

Location Manager

Location list

Search...

Location list

Review list

Options



Review reply settings

Change settings



Review list

Change settings



Post list

Change settings



Questions & Ans.

Change settings

Review report may take upto few minutes/hours to update & synchronize here.

Search...



Wing Rana Mar 10, 2020



Very effective

Hola, Could you please check your review again?

Mar 11, 2020



Agustine Suliana Mar 9, 2020



Howdy, Thanks for your awesome review 🙌 Team

Mar 11, 2020



Julian Smith Mar 8, 2020



Hola, Thanks for your awesome review 🙌 Team

Mar 11, 2020



Yusuf Hameed Mar 8, 2020



One of the best software company ❤️



danny dan Mar 8, 2020



Hola, Looks like you have given the review mistakenly, could you please check it again? Thanks Team

Mar 11, 2020





danny dan  Mar 8, 2020

★★★★



 Update review reply

 Delete review reply

the review mistakenly, could
ik: [redacted] Team

 Mar 11, 2020



[redacted]  Mar 8, 2020

★★★★

Best Software Company in [redacted]

Hola, You have given 4 star, can you upgrade it? ;) Thanks

[redacted] Team

 Mar 11, 2020

Post List

In this section you will see all the posts that you made through campaigns, even you can see post analytics.





Location Information

Location Manager

Location list

Search...

Review reply settings

Change settings

Review list

Change settings

Post list

Change settings

Questions & Ans.

Change settings

Post list

Options ▾

Search...

Best Multichannel Marketing Application

Platform)

Feb 24, 2020

Cta (ORDER) / Action URL / Analytics

- Best Multichannel Marketing Application

Platform)

Feb 16, 2020

Cta (ORDER) / Action URL / Analytics

WooCommerce Abandoned Cart Recovery Plugin

Jan 19, 2020

Cta (SHOP) / Action URL / Analytics

- Website Health Checker

Jan 19, 2020

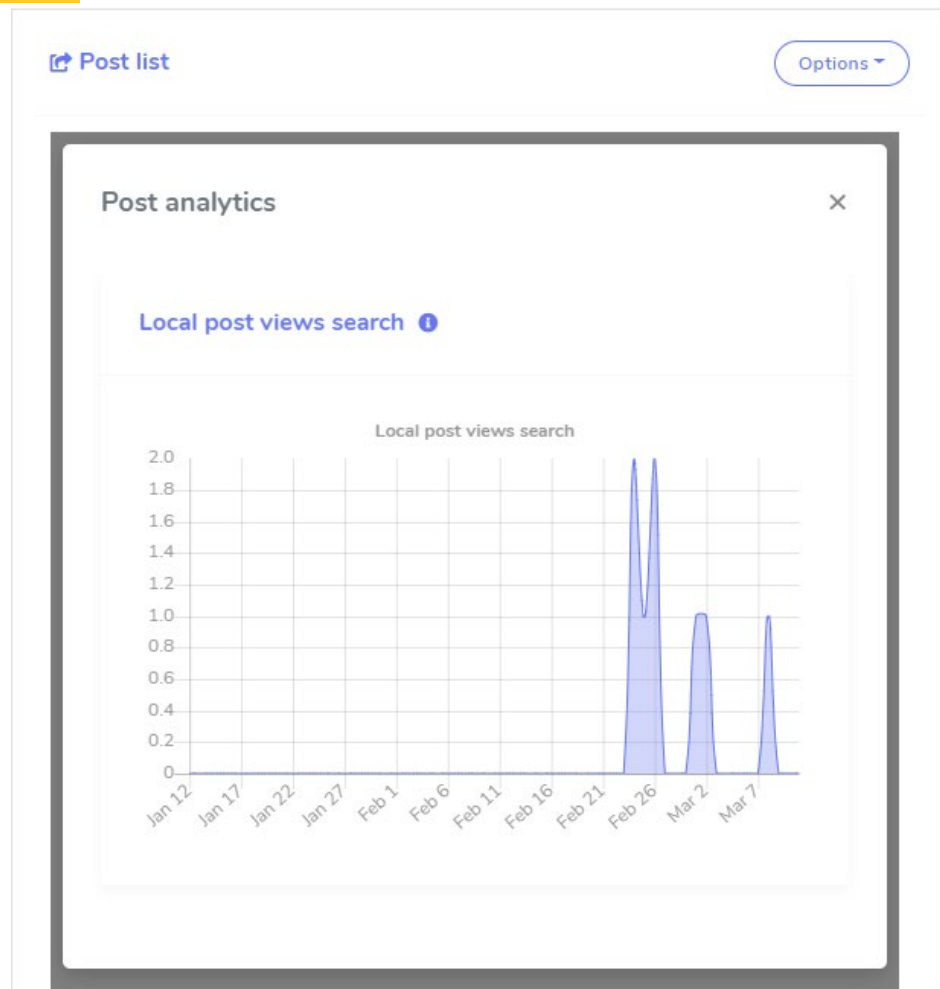
Cta (SHOP) / Action URL / Analytics

- Master Marketing Software For Facebook

Jan 19, 2020

Cta (SHOP) / Action URL / Analytics





Questions & Ans

Question and Answer

- No need for other platforms to answering a customer's question
- You can interact with your customers via questions & answers
- You can write answers for any questions from a single interface

In this section, you will see the full list of Questions & Ans about your business that people already made.

Note: Question & answer report may take up to a few minutes/hours to update & synchronize here.





Location Information

Location Manager

Location list

Search...

XerOne IT

Review reply settings
Change settings

Review list
Change settings

Post list
Change settings

Questions & Ans.
Change settings

Questions & Ans.

Options

Question & answer report may take upto few minutes/hours to update & synchronize here.

Search...

Nothing Butttest

What is your streamlined product?

Jan 18, 2020

Nothing Butttest

Multichannel Marketing Application.

Mar 9, 2020

Nothing Butttest

Does support manual payment?

Jan 16, 2020

Nothing Butttest

where are you located?

Jan 18, 2020

Nothing Butttest

Hello, Is there any new offer coming soon?

Jan 16, 2020

Nothing Butttest

We will inform as soon as possible.

Mar 9, 2020

Nothing Butttest

We will inform as soon as we will take any decision.

Mar 9, 2020

Campaigns

- A single interface for creating posts
- You're able to create several types of posts
- You're able to schedule posts to be posted later
- You're able to write a single post to different locations
- All posts will be automatically posted onto google

In this section, we will guide you on campaigns Feature. Here you will find all the instructions on Campaigns management. So Let's start.

1. CTA
2. Event
3. Offer



Create CTA, Event, Offer Post

Create CTA, Event or Offer post etc...

[Campaign list >](#)

Call To Action Post

Campaigning Call-To-Action Posts

- You're able to write several types of CTA posts
- You can make your customers a phone call to you
- You can get your customers to your products from google search page
- You can make your customers buy your products from google search

In this section, you will see how you can create campaigns.

Click Create new post.

Post campaign list

[Create new post](#)

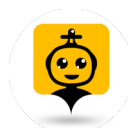
Campaign / Post campaign list

#	Campaign name	Post type	Post Title	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Error message
1	Offer Event	OFFER	asdfasdfsdf		Pending	Mar 9, 20 16:14	
2	Offer Event	OFFER	asdfasdfsdf		Completed	Mar 9, 20 16:08	
3	EVENT Campaign	EVENT	We're coming with huge discount		Completed	Mar 9, 20 13:35	
4	CTA Event	Cta	Products we've is here		Completed	Mar 8, 20 13:34	

10

1-4/4

Previous1Next





Put campaign name, select action type, put action URL, put CTA summary, upload an image, and select location name (multiple select available), You can schedule the campaign now or later. If you choose to schedule later then you have to enter schedule time and timezone then hit create campaign button.

+ Create Campaign

Campaign / CTA/EVENT/OFFER Posts / Create Campaign

Cta

EVENT

OFFER

Campaign name

Test

Action type

BOOK

Action URL:

Summary

This this test call to action

Media URL

Upload

1).

83396856_809911629526637_23504679427

57433344_o.jpg (205.80 KB)

Delete

Location Name

x

Posting time

Post now

Create Campaign

Cancel

Preview

This this test call to action

BOOK

Event Post

Campaigning Event Posts

- You're able to write a post that can represent an event

Click Create new post, click event tab, Put campaign name, put post title, put event date range, put event summary, upload an image and select location name (multiple select available), You can schedule the campaign now or later. If you choose to schedule later then you have to enter schedule time and timezone then hit create campaign button.





+ Create Campaign

Campaign / CTA/EVENT/OFFER Posts / Create Campaign

CTA

EVENT

OFFER

Campaign name

Test

Post Title:

This is

Date Range

2020-03-11 14:24:02

To

2020-03-31 14:24:11

Summary

This this event

Media URL

https://image_1_1583915012180147.8339685

Upload

1).
83396856_809911629526637_23504679427
57433344_o.jpg (205.80 KB)

Delete

Location Name

x

x

Posting time

☒ Post now

Create Campaign

Cancel

Preview

Offer Post

Campaigning Offer Posts

- You're able to make a coupon code for a specific or all products
- You can get your customers to your products from Google search page

Click Create new post, click offer tab, Put campaign name, put coupon code, put redeem URL, put offer summary, upload an image, and select location name (multiple select available), You can schedule the campaign now or later. If you choose to schedule later then you have to enter schedule time and timezone then hit create campaign button.





+ Create Campaign

Campaign / CTA/EVENT/OFFER Posts / Create Campaign

Cta EVENT OFFER

Campaign name

Test

Coupon Code:

marvelone

Redeem URL:

https://www.marvel.com/

Summary

This this marvel movie offer

Media URL

https://www.marvel.com/ upload image_1_1583915012180147.8339685

Upload

1).
83396856_809911629526637_23504679427
57433344_o.jpg (205.80 KB)

Delete

Location Name

x x

Posting time

Post now

Create Campaign

Cancel

Preview



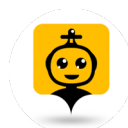
This this marvel movie offer

REDEEM ONLINE

marvelone

Report






If you want to see the campaign report click the analytics button.





Post campaign list

[Create new post](#)[Campaign](#) / [Post campaign list](#)

#	Campaign name	Post type	Post Title	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Error message
1	Offer Event	OFFER	asdfasdfsdf	 		Mar 9, 20 16:14	
2	Offer Event	OFFER	asdfasdfsdf		Completed	Mar 9, 20 16:08	
3	EVENT Campaign	EVENT	We're coming with huge discount		Completed	Mar 9, 20 13:35	
4	CTA Event	Cta	Products we've is here		Completed	Mar 8, 20 13:34	

10

1-4/4

Previous 1 Next

Campaign report



Summary: Products we've is here

Post type: Cta

Created at: Mar 9, 2020

Posted to locations: [View locations](#)

Media Manager

Media Manager is such a feature that allows you to represent each and every part of your business to your customers via PHOTO and VIDEO posts.

- A single interface for creating photo or video posts
- You're able to create as many posts as you want
- You're able to schedule posts to be posted later
- You're able to write a single post to different locations
- All posts will be automatically posted onto google



Media Campaigns

Create new media campaign

Media Campaigns

Select category

Location name

Search...

Search

Choose date

#	Campaign name	Media Category	Media Type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Fight Covid	ADDITIONAL	PHOTO		Completed	Apr 18, 20 14:15
2	Food	FOOD_AND_DRINK	PHOTO		Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:35
3	Fastival	FOOD_AND_DRINK	PHOTO		Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:31
4	ceremony	INTERIOR	PHOTO		Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:28
5	We are here.	TEAMS	PHOTO		Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:22
6	Corona	ADDITIONAL	PHOTO		Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:19

To go to the Media Manager interface, click on the **Media Manager** menu from the left-side menu bar as follows:

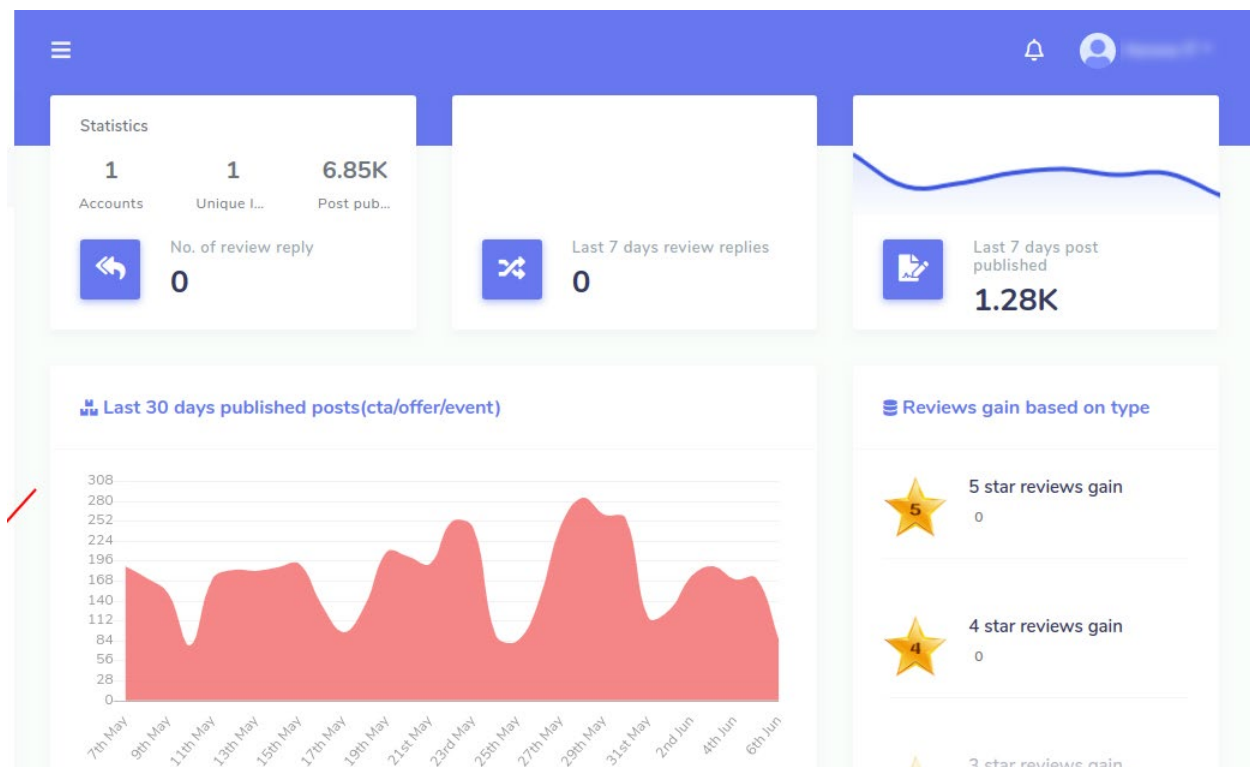




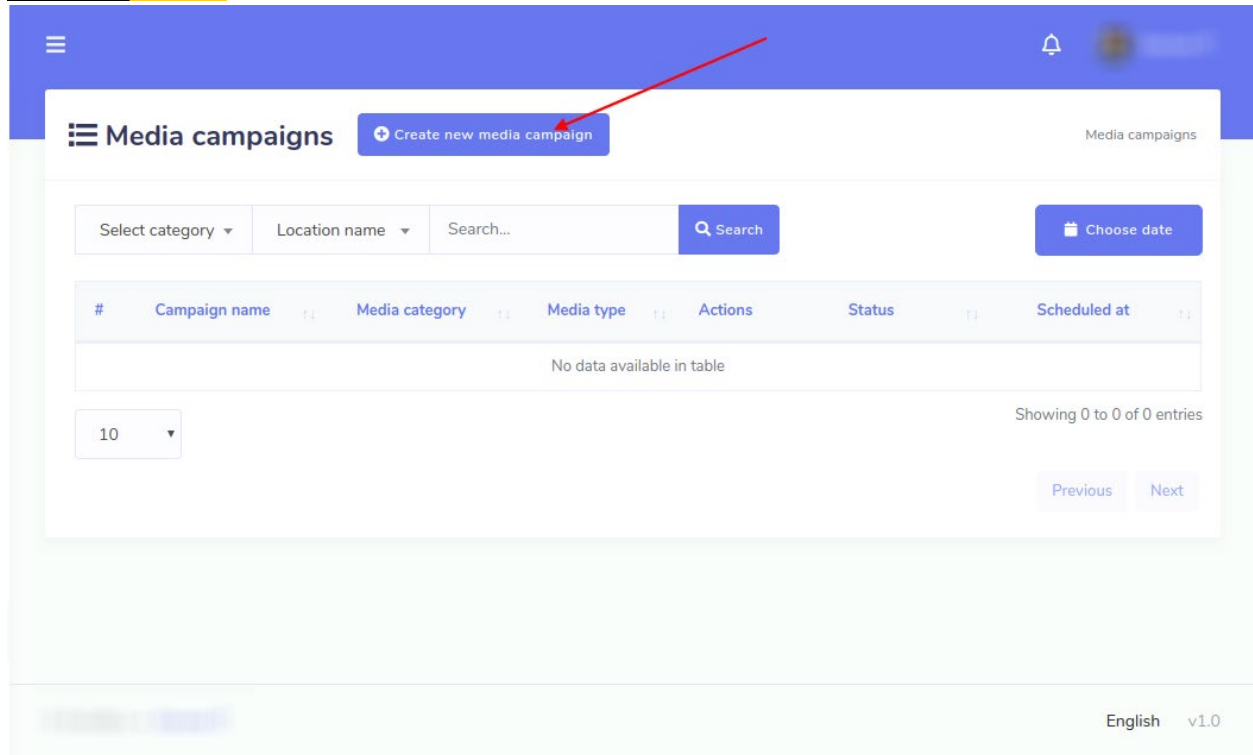
Photo or Video Campaign

Creating a photo campaign or video campaign is almost the same process. If you upload an image, then it will be an image campaign and vice versa. First of all, though it's depends on your business type, let's see how you can represent each and every part of your business using a photo or video campaign.

- You're able to set a LOGO/PROFILE/COVER photo of your business institution or place.
- You're able to represent the INTERIOR/EXTERIOR part of your business to your customers
- You're able to represent PRODUCTS that your business offers to your customers
- You're able to show off how your employees are active at work to the world
- If you sell consumer products such as food or drink, you can then represent them using videos or images
- If you have a restaurant, you can then represent MENU items to your customers
- Otherwise, if you have a HOTEL or MOTEL, you can then represent ROOMs to your customers
- If you have a business where team-work is very much important, you can then represent TEAMS to your customers
- If you have a business where common-area is important to represent, you can then do that too
- You're also able to represent ADDITIONAL information or whatever, using images and videos

To create PHOTO or VIDEO campaign, please click on the button named **Create new media campaign** as follows:






The screenshot shows a web interface for managing media campaigns. At the top, there's a blue header with a menu icon, a notification bell, and a profile picture. Below the header, the main content area is titled "Media campaigns" and features a "Create new media campaign" button, which is highlighted with a red arrow. The interface includes a search bar with "Select category" and "Location name" dropdowns, a "Search" button, and a "Choose date" button. A table with columns for "#", "Campaign name", "Media category", "Media type", "Actions", "Status", and "Scheduled at" is shown, but it contains no data, displaying "No data available in table". A pagination control shows "10" entries per page, and the status "Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entries" is displayed. At the bottom right, there are "Previous" and "Next" buttons. The footer shows "English" and "v1.0".

Next up, you need to fill in some fields with proper values. See the following screenshot:
Be careful of the following error! Upload an image or video that is quite related to your business. Otherwise, the campaign will not be published on GMB.

Note: Stay away from **Request contains an invalid argument** error.





Create media campaign

Media list / Create media campaign

Create media campaign

Campaign name

Interior Campaign

Media category

INTERIOR

Media description

This campaign describes the interior part/place/institution of your business.

Media upload

If any video does not support, we recommend convert the video to mp4 first and then try again please.

Upload

1). Screencast from 11-07-2019 04:30:19
PM.webm (1.06 MB)

Delete

Location name

You could select multiple location.

x

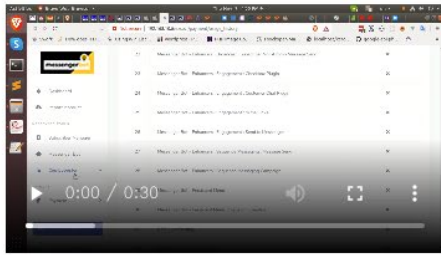
Posting time

Post now

Create media campaign

Cancel

Preview



This preview may differ from actual post.

Once you've completed all the fields, then click on the button below named **Create Media Campaign** to create a campaign.

At the moment, you will be redirected to the Media Manager interface. You will see there the



campaign you created earlier as below:

Media campaigns

Create new media campaign

Select category Location name Search... Search Choose date

#	Campaign name	Media category	Media type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Interior Campaign	INTERIOR	VIDEO		Pending	Jun 7, 20 15:29

10 1-1/1

Previous 1 Next

English v1.0

Notice the red-marked arrow in the following screenshot. This tells you that the campaign is in pending status and has not yet been posted to GMB.

Media campaigns

Create new media campaign

Select category Location name Search... Search Choose date

#	Campaign name	Media category	Media type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Interior Campaign	INTERIOR	VIDEO		Pending	Jun 7, 20 15:29

10 1-1/1

Previous 1 Next

English v1.0





The **Pending** status will be changed to **Completed** when the campaign has been posted to GMB. Look at the following screenshot:

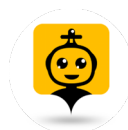
The screenshot shows the 'Media campaigns' dashboard. At the top, there's a header with a menu icon, a notification bell, and a user profile. Below the header, the main section is titled 'Media campaigns' with a '+ Create new media campaign' button. There are filters for 'Select category', 'Location name', and a 'Search' button. A 'Choose date' button is also present. The main table has columns: #, Campaign name, Media category, Media type, Actions, Status, and Scheduled at. The first row shows a campaign named 'Interior Campaign' with status 'Completed' (indicated by a green checkmark). A red arrow points to the 'Completed' status. The table has a pagination bar at the bottom showing '10' items per page and '1' of 1 pages.

#	Campaign name	Media category	Media type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Interior Campaign	INTERIOR	VIDEO		Completed	Jun 7, 20 15:29

Now it's time to spend some time on a specific campaign. So what are the options available on a specific campaign? Look at the following screenshot:

The screenshot shows the 'Media Campaigns' dashboard with several campaigns listed. Red arrows and text labels highlight specific actions available for a campaign. The 'Actions' column for the first campaign 'Fight Covid' is highlighted, with a red arrow pointing to the 'Campaign report' button (eye icon) and another pointing to the 'Edit campaign' button (pencil icon). The 'Status' column for the same campaign is highlighted, with a red arrow pointing to the 'Delete campaign' button (trash icon). The 'Actions' column for the second campaign 'Food' is highlighted, with a red arrow pointing to the 'Actions button' (document icon).

#	Campaign name	Media Category	Media Type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Fight Covid	ADDITIONAL	PHOTO			Apr 18, 20 14:15
2	Food	FOOD_AND_DRINK	PHOTO		Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:35
3	Festival	FOOD_AND_DRINK	PHOTO		Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:31
4	ceremony	INTERIOR	PHOTO		Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:28
5	We are here.	TEAMS	PHOTO		Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:22





First, we will see how a campaign looks when it has been posted successfully to GMB. There is a button called **Campaign report** there. Click on the button. It will pop up a modal. It looks like the screenshot below:

Image Campaign

Media category • PHOTO

Apr 16, 2020

We are celebrating.

Posted to locations

✓

Close

Photo campaign

Status	Scheduled at
✓ Completed	Apr 18, 20 14:15
✓ Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:35
✓ Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:31
✓ Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:28
✓ Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:22
✓ Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:19
✓ Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:11
✓ Completed	Apr 9, 20 20:42
✓ Completed	Apr 9, 20 17:27

Video Campaign

Media category • VIDEO

Apr 9, 2020

Test description

Posted to locations

✓ XerOne IT

Close

Video

List of locations where this campaign has been posted

✓ Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:31
✓ Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:28
✓ Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:22
✓ Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:19
✓ Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:11
✓ Completed	Apr 9, 20 20:42
✓ Completed	Apr 9, 20 17:27

1-9/9

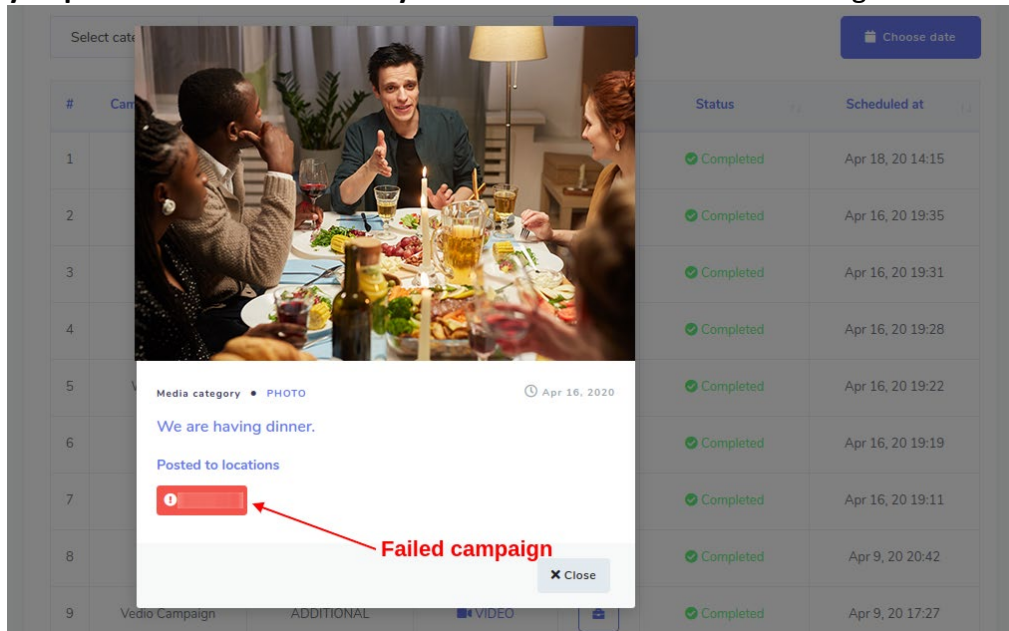
Previous 1 Next

English v1.1



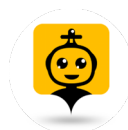
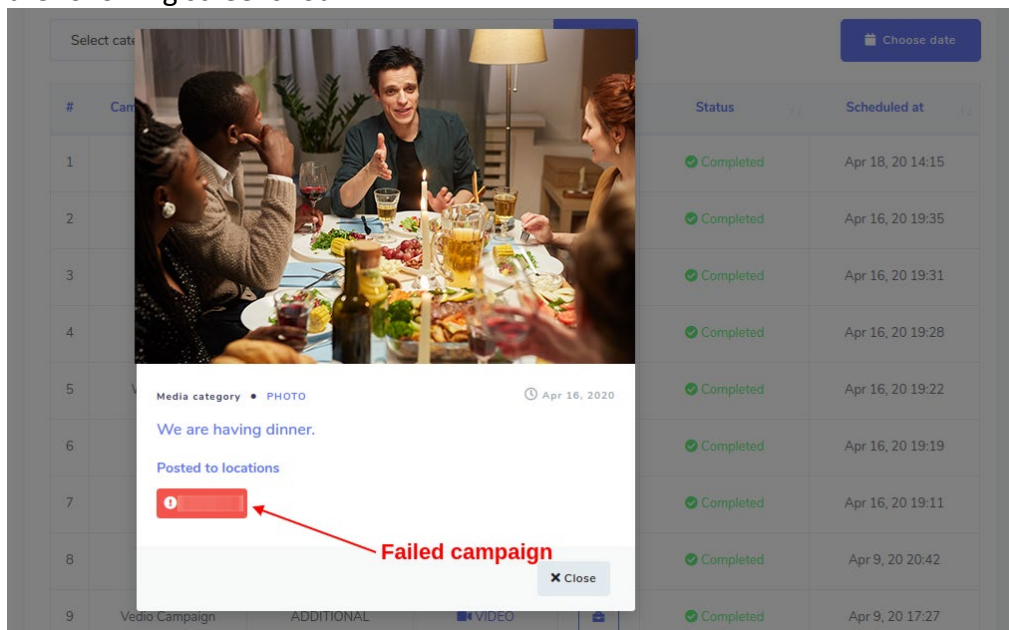


If you want to see the posted campaign on GMB, then click on the button. It will take you there. You will see some campaigns' status **Completed** on Messenger Bot system but red-marked on campaign report modal. **This happens when GMB system detects that the PHOTO or VIDEO you posted is not relevant to your business.** Look at the following screenshot:



Failed Campaign

You will see some campaigns' status **Completed** on Messenger Bot system but badges with red mark below the **Posted to locations** on campaign report modal. **This happens when GMB system detects that the PHOTO or VIDEO you posted is not relevant to your business.** Look at the following screenshot:





Review Replies

In this section you will see all review replies here

Review report

Campaign / Review report

Photo	Name	Star	Comment	Reply	Actions	Location Name	Replied at	Error
		★★	Very effective	Howdy Could you please check your review once again?			Mar 11, 20 11:46	
		★★★ ★	I am very happy with their products. They really make awesome software.	Testing generic reply!			Mar 10, 20 13:34	
		★★★ ★		Thanks for your feedback.			Mar 6, 20 15:16	
		★★★ ★		Hola, Thanks for your awesome review 🙌 Team			Mar 11, 20 12:42	
		★★★ ★	One of the best software company ❤️	Hello, Thanks for your awesome review 👍 Team			Mar 11, 20 12:42	
		★★★ ★		Hola, Looks like you have given the review mistakenly, could you please check it again? Thanks Team			Mar 11, 20 12:42	
		★★★ ★	Best Software Company in Rajshahi.	Hola, You have given 4 star, can you upgrade it? :) Thanks Team			Mar 11, 20 12:42	
		★★★ ★	Very effective	Hola, Could you please check your review again?			Mar 11, 20 12:42	
		★★★ ★		Howdy, Thanks for your awesome review 👍 Team			Mar 11, 20 12:42	

10

1-9/9

Previous1Next





Review report

Campaign / Review report

All Stars

Search...

Search













Choose date

All Stars	Star	Comment	Reply	Actions	Location Name	Replied at	Error
5 Star	★★	Very effective	Howdy Could you please check your review once again?			Mar 11, 20 11:46	
4 Star	★★★★	I am very happy with their products. They really make awesome software.	Testing generic reply!			Mar 10, 20 13:34	
3 Star	★★★★		Thanks for your feedback.			Mar 6, 20 15:16	
	★★★★		Hola, Thanks for your awesome review 👍 Team			Mar 11, 20 12:42	
	★★★★	One of the best software company ❤️	Hello, Thanks for your awesome review 👍 Team			Mar 11, 20 12:42	

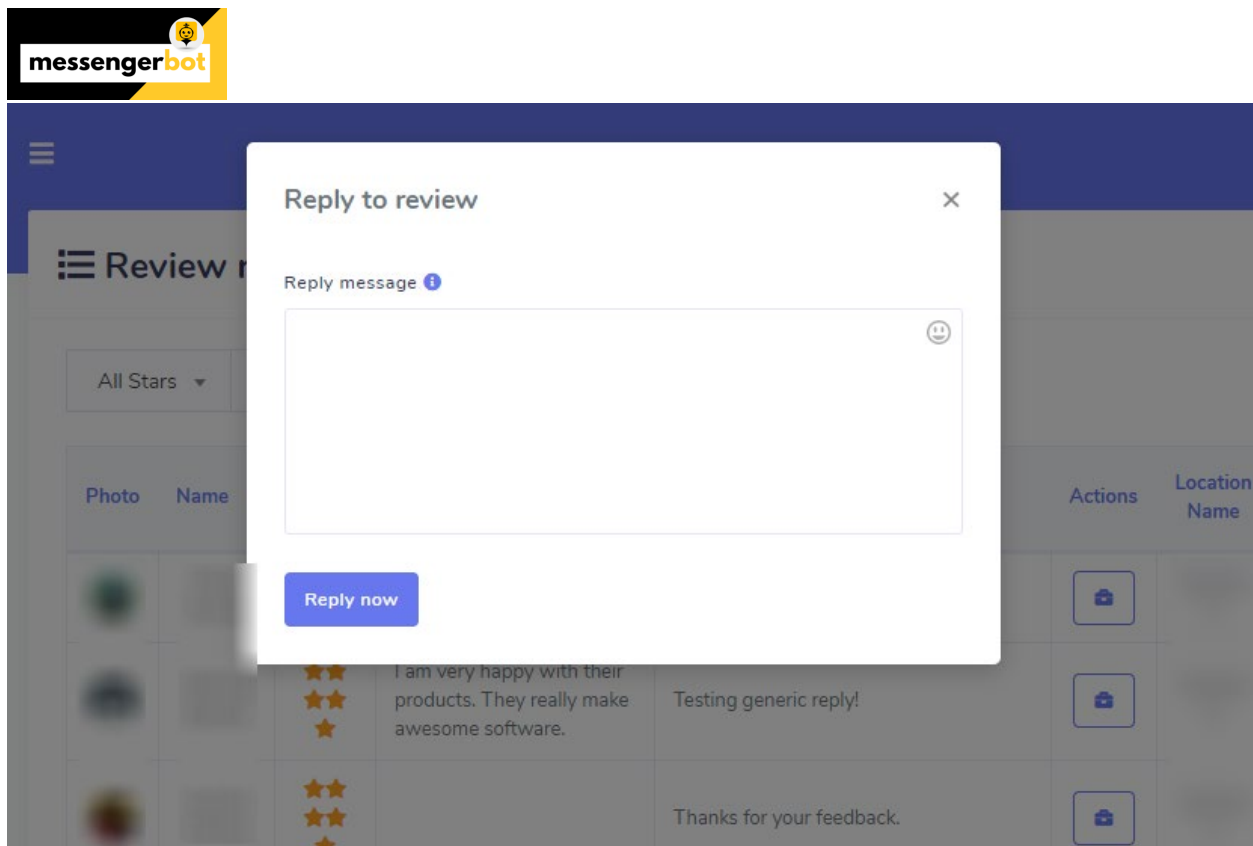
You can review reply Manually, click red marked reply button

Review report

Campaign / Review report

All Stars		Location Name	Search...	Search	Choose date			
Photo	Name	Star	Comment	Reply	Actions	Location Name	Replied at	Error
	Miraz Ronok	★★	Very effective	Howdy Could you please check your review once again?	<div><div></div></div>		20 11:46	
	Nothing Butttest	★★★	I am very happy with their products. They really make awesome software.	Testing generic reply!			Mar 10, 20 13:34	
	Ayesha Sultana	★★★		Thanks for your feedback.			Mar 6, 20 15:16	
	Julfikar Shaon	★★★		Hola, Thanks for your awesome review 👍 Team			Mar 11, 20 12:42	
	Toufik hasan	★★★	One of the best software company ❤️	Hello, Thanks for your awesome review 👍 Team			Mar 11, 20 12:42	



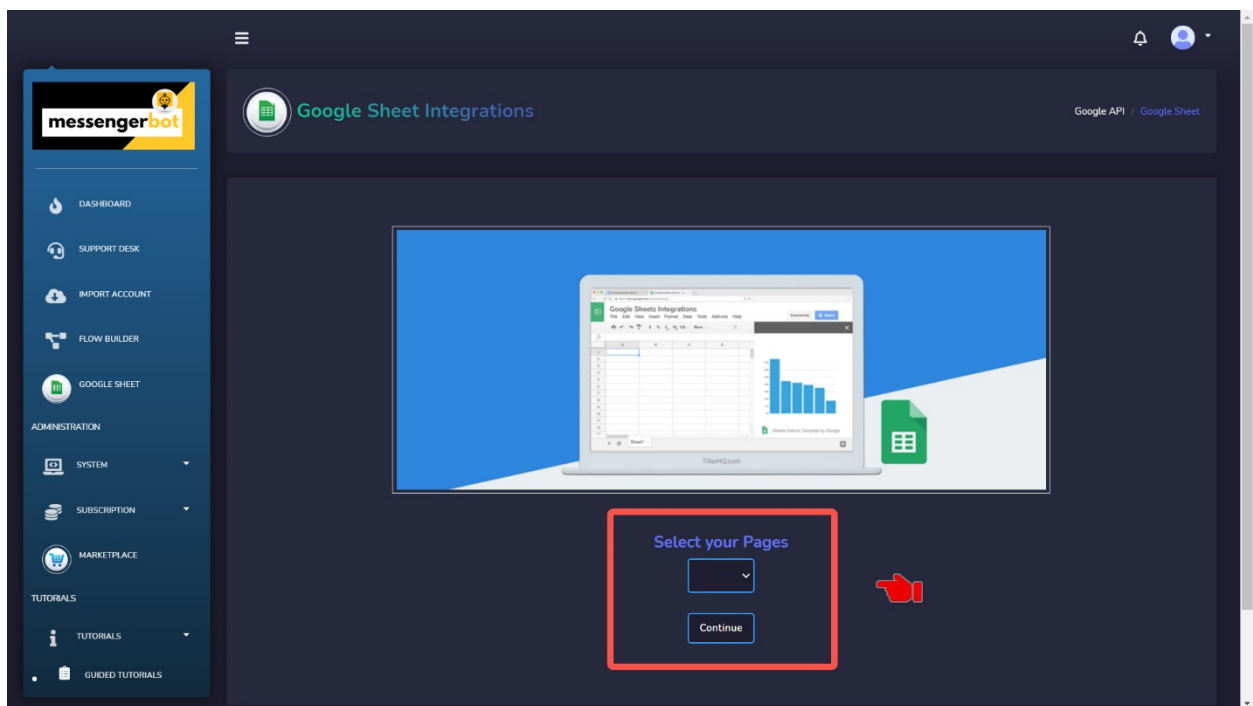
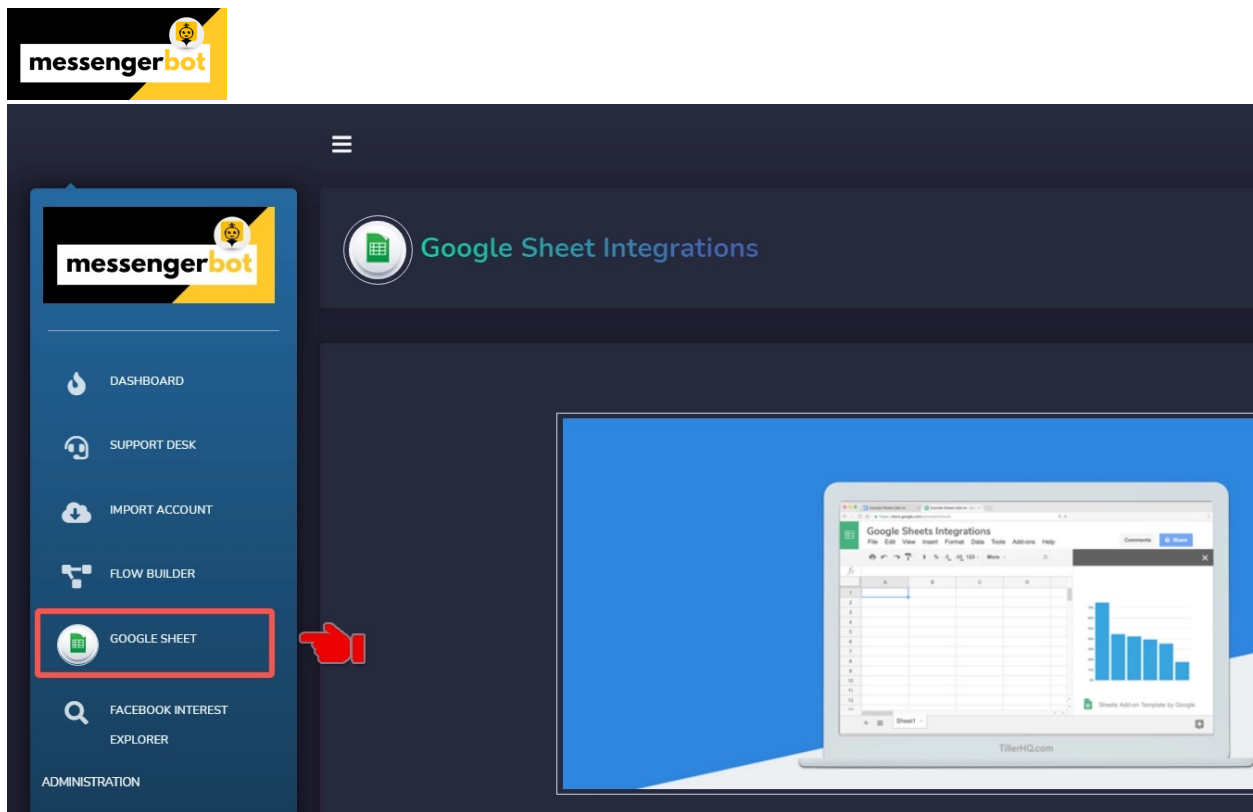


[Google Sheet Integration with Messenger Bot](#)

Our Messenger Bot is now with Google Sheet. In using this it gets the subscriber information data from those subscribed to the bot.

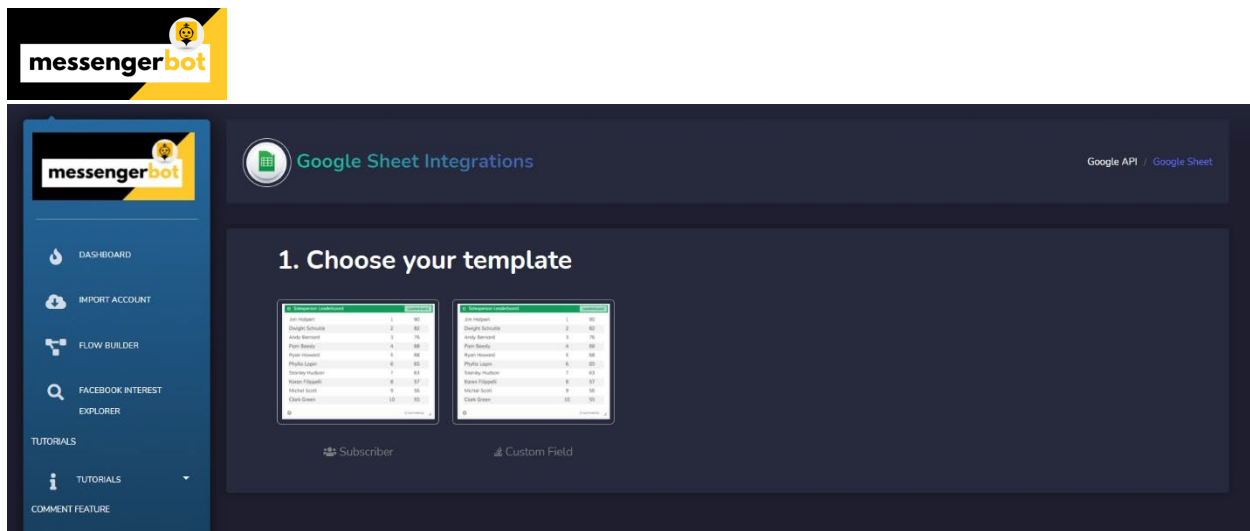
Here you will learn how to integrate Google Sheet with your store page. First, go to the main menu bar on the left and click Google Sheet. You can select now what page you want to integrate with your google sheet and click "Continue" for the next step



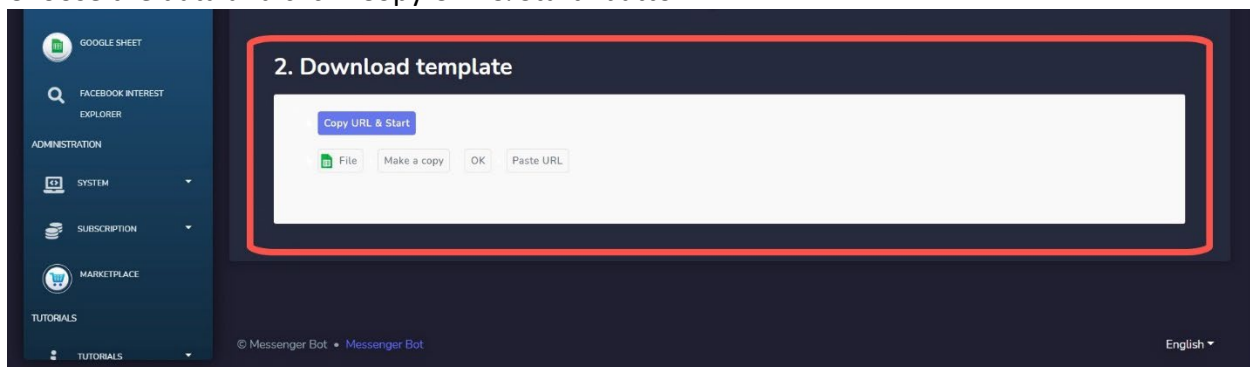


Now you can choose whatever template depends on your need but here in our demo.

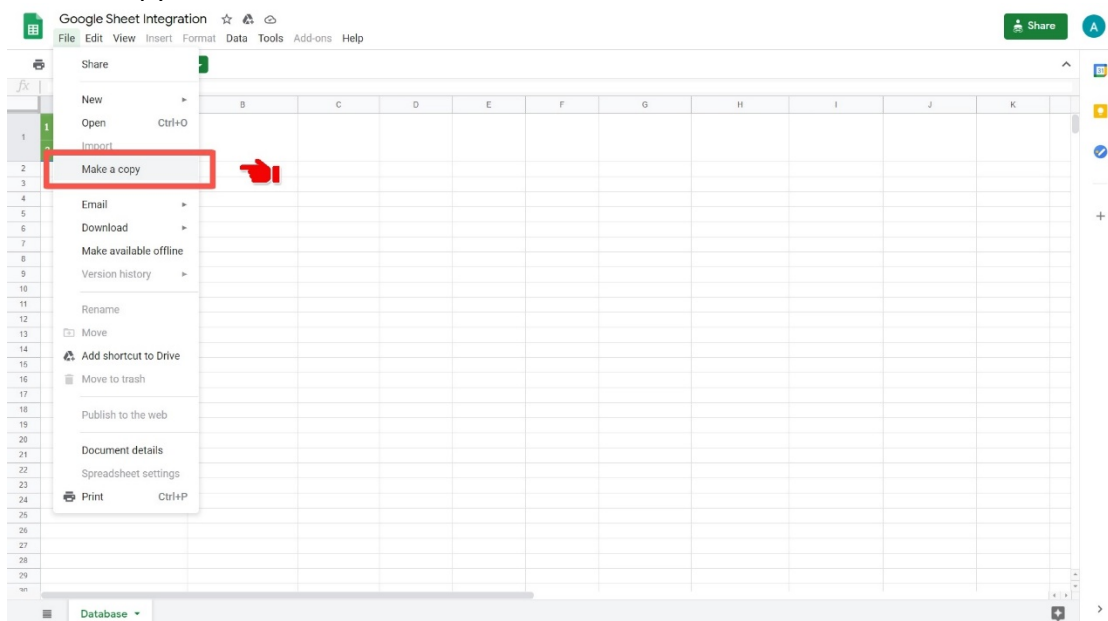




After selecting your desire template, the next thing that will show below is the user input data. Choose the data and click "Copy URL & Start" button.

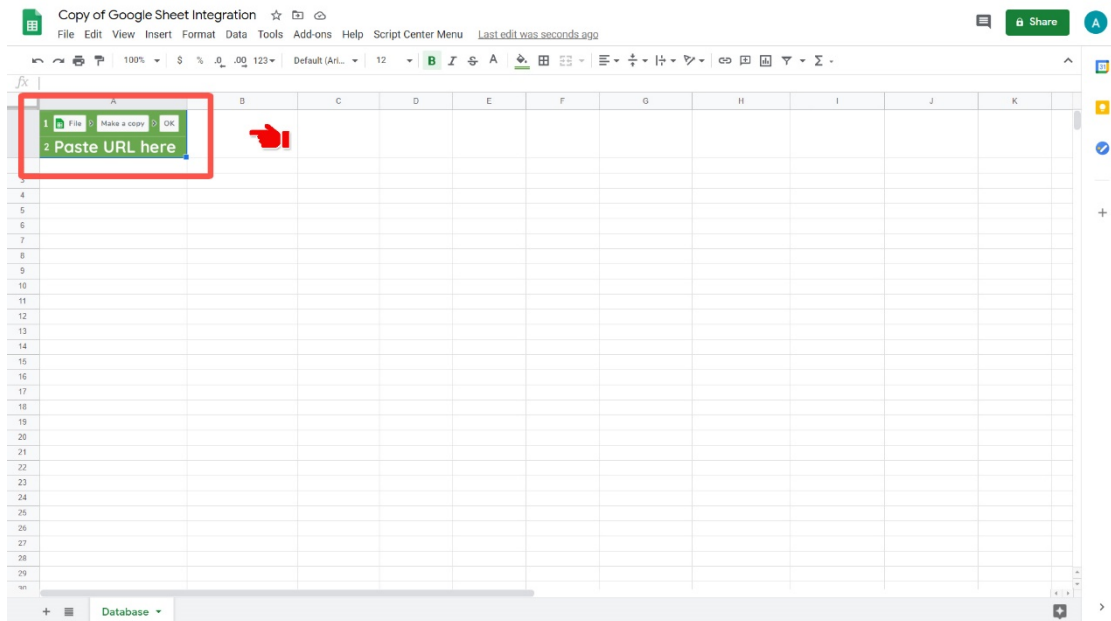


Then it will be directed to your Google Sheet. Click on the file then make a copy then click ok to make a copy of the file.

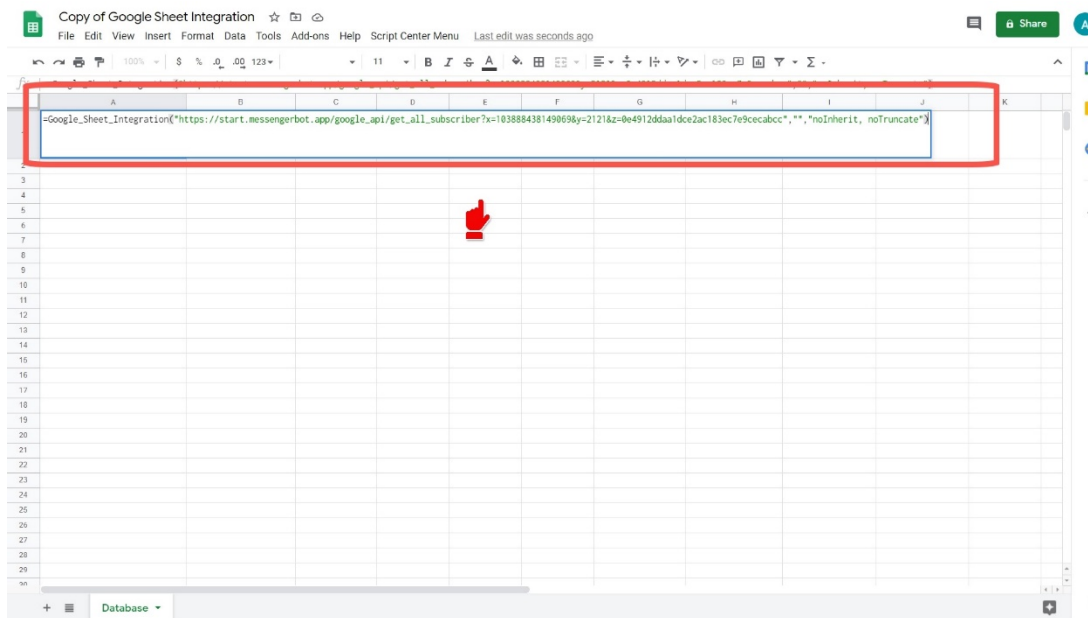




Click on the cell and paste your copied URL, you can right-click it and select paste.



Now, press enter to begin exporting data from messenger bot. That's it your data is exported to google spreadsheet!



How To Collect Email Address/Leads Inside Facebook Messenger with Messenger Bot
Gathering user data is general practice in modern websites and applications. For business, it is very important to collect the user's data or leads. Collecting proper information and using it cleverly can give associations an edge over competitors and increase the impact of limited resources.

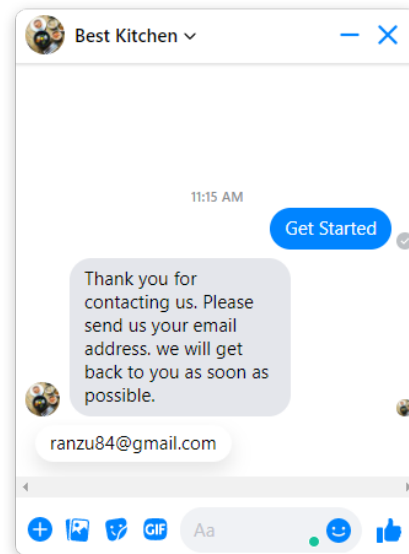




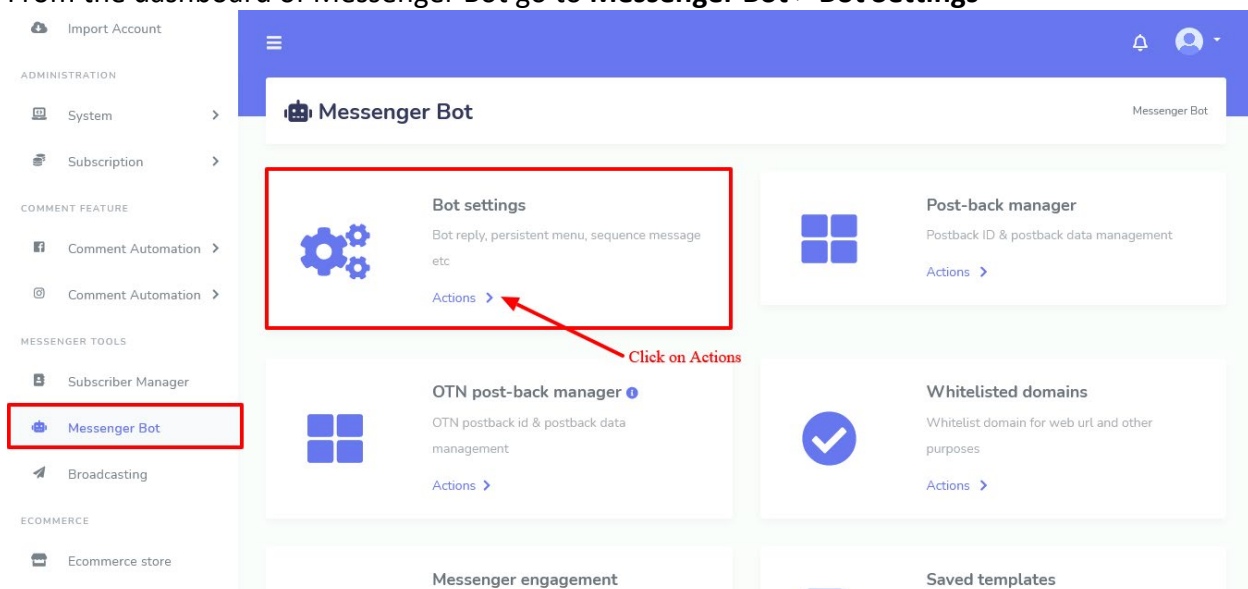
You can collect user's data or leads in 3 ways by using the Messenger Bot inside Facebook Messenger with Messenger bot. We will look into all the options we can use to collect user's data using Messenger Bot.

Quick Reply:

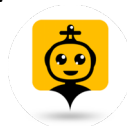
Quick replies are prior formatted answers you set up and then insert into a direct message to avoid having to type the same answer time and time again to different people. You can also use quick reply to collect users email, phone. I will explain how you can do that by using Messenger Bot. Quick Reply in Messenger, will just look like the below image:



From the dashboard of Messenger Bot go to **Messenger Bot > Bot Settings**



Now select your Facebook page for which you want to create a quick reply. By default, **Bot**





Reply Settings is selected. Click on **Add bot reply**.

Select Facebook Page

Click to add a bot reply

Bot settings

Pages

Best Kitchen

Bot reply settings

Get started settings

General settings

Action button settings

Persistent menu settings

Bot reply settings

Variables

Options

Add bot reply

Sl	Bot name	Keywords	Status	Actions
1	Quick reply	contact, get in touc...	Live	
2	User Input flow	visit	Live	
3	Web view user information	email, phone	Live	

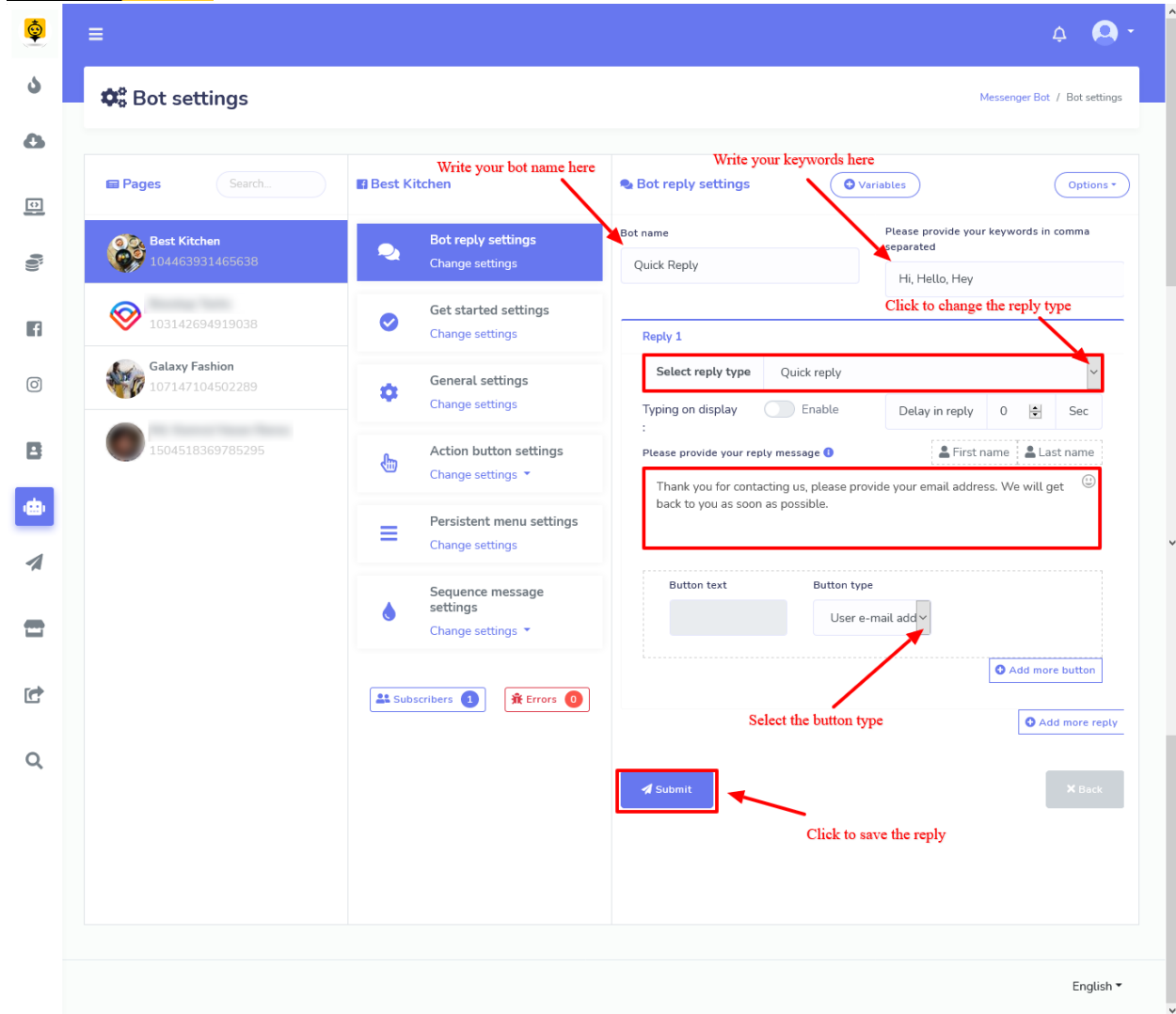
10

1-3/3

Previous 1 Next

Give a bot name, write keywords for which this bot reply will trigger. Then select reply type to “Quick Reply” from the drop-down list. Write your message on the Message box, after that select the “Button Type” to User-email address, for email and user phone number to collect phone number. Don’t type anything on “Button Text”, it’s already disabled for Quick Reply. Then click **Submit** to save the reply.

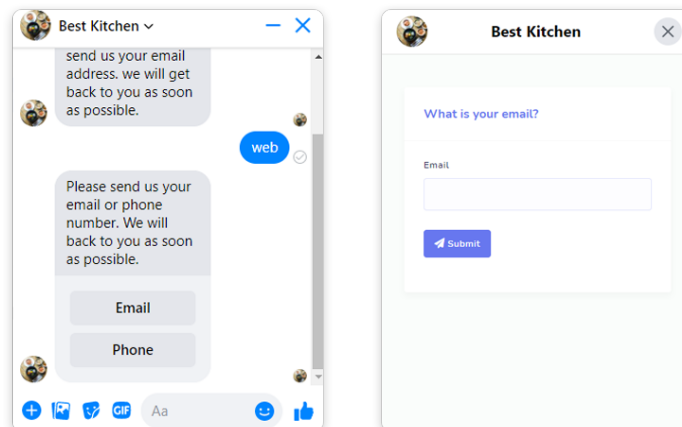




The screenshot shows the 'Bot settings' interface for a Facebook Messenger bot. The left sidebar lists various settings categories: Pages, Bot reply settings, Get started settings, General settings, Action button settings, Persistent menu settings, and Sequence message settings. The main area is titled 'Bot reply settings' and contains fields for 'Bot name' (annotated with 'Write your bot name here'), 'Quick Reply' (annotated with 'Write your keywords here'), and 'Reply 1'. The 'Reply 1' section includes a 'Select reply type' dropdown (annotated with 'Click to change the reply type'), a 'Typing on display' toggle, a 'Delay in reply' field, and a 'Please provide your reply message' text area (annotated with 'Thank you for contacting us, please provide your email address. We will get back to you as soon as possible.'). Below this is a 'Button text' and 'Button type' section (annotated with 'Select the button type'), with a 'Submit' button (annotated with 'Click to save the reply').

Web View:

We can also collect user's data like email or phone number using a web view form. Clients will see a web view form to enter their email or phone number.



The first screenshot shows a chat conversation with 'Best Kitchen'. The bot sends a message: 'send us your email address. we will get back to you as soon as possible.' followed by a 'web' button. The second screenshot shows the web view form that appears when the 'web' button is clicked. It contains a text input field labeled 'Email' and a 'Submit' button.





The process of creating a “web view form” for the user’s email or phone number is almost the same as the Quick reply, just change the “Select reply type” to Text with buttons instead of Quick reply. And then select the Button type to User’s email and give a name for the button on the Button Text field. You can also select User’s phone to collect a phone number and a user’s location by selecting the User’s location as the Button type. Click on Submit to save the Reply template.

The screenshot shows the 'Bot settings' interface for a bot named 'Best Kitchen'. The interface is divided into several sections:

- Pages:** A list of pages with their respective IDs and status. The first page, 'Best Kitchen', is highlighted.
- Bot reply settings:** A section for configuring the bot's responses. It includes a 'Bot name' field (annotated with 'Give a name to the bot') and a 'Keywords to trigger web view bot' field (annotated with 'Keywords to trigger web view bot').
- Reply 1:** A section for configuring the first reply. It includes a 'Select reply type' dropdown (annotated with 'Change it to Text with buttons') and a 'Text with buttons' option. Below this, there are fields for 'Button text' and 'Button type' (annotated with 'Click to add more button').
- Buttons:** A section for adding buttons to the reply. It includes a 'Button text' field (annotated with 'Click to add more button') and a 'Button type' dropdown (annotated with 'Click to add more button').
- Update:** A button at the bottom right (annotated with 'Click to save') to save the settings.

Red arrows point to the following elements:

- 'Give a name to the bot' points to the 'Bot name' field.
- 'Keywords to trigger web view bot' points to the 'Keywords to trigger web view bot' field.
- 'Change it to Text with buttons' points to the 'Select reply type' dropdown.
- 'Click to add more button' points to the 'Add more button' button.
- 'Click to save' points to the 'Update' button.

User Input Flow and Custom Field: (Needs User Input & Custom Fields : A Messenger Bot Add-on)

Other than Quick Reply and web view there is a fantastic and powerful way to collect lead or user’s data, that is User Input Flow and Custom Field. It’s a special add-on of Messenger Bot to collect user’s data. Besides the user’s phone and email, it can collect any kind of user data in text, number, and date-time format. It can collect Full name, age, image, audio, video, and so





on. We can also create Custom fields other than a system-defined field to collect user's data and use them as a variable.

We can collect user's data and use them in real-time, for example, collect user's name and then call them by their name instantly. When you will use User Input Flow and Custom Field to collect data, users will feel like they are talking to a human while It's nothing but a Bot.

Now, we will see how to create a User Input Flow and Custom Field. First, you need to get the add-on and install it with Messenger Bot.

Now go to **Messenger Bot > User Input Flow & Custom Field** and click on **Actions** then Click on **User input flow campaign**



The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot dashboard interface. On the left is a sidebar menu with categories: Dashboard, Import Account, ADMINISTRATION (System, Subscription), COMMENT FEATURE (Comment Automation), MESSENGER TOOLS (Subscriber Manager, Messenger Bot, Broadcasting), ECOMMERCE (Ecommerce store), POSTING FEATURE (Social Posting), and UTILITY TOOLS (Search Tools). A 'Support desk' button is at the bottom of the sidebar. The main content area is titled 'Messenger Bot' and contains several cards: Bot settings, Post-back manager, OTN post-back manager, Whitelisted domains, Messenger engagement, Saved templates, JSON API Connector, Webform builder, User input flow & custom fields, and Email auto responder. The 'User input flow & custom fields' card is highlighted with a red box. A red arrow points from the text 'Click on Actions' to the 'Actions >' link in this card. Another red arrow points from the text 'Click on User input flow campaign' to the 'User input flow campaign' option in the dropdown menu that appears after clicking 'Actions'.

messengerbot

Messenger Bot

Dashboard

Import Account

ADMINISTRATION

- System
- Subscription

COMMENT FEATURE

- Comment Automation
- Comment Automation

MESSENGER TOOLS

- Subscriber Manager
- Messenger Bot**
- Broadcasting

ECOMMERCE

- Ecommerce store

POSTING FEATURE

- Social Posting

UTILITY TOOLS

- Search Tools

Support desk

Bot settings
Bot reply, persistent menu, sequence message etc
Actions >

Post-back manager
Postback ID & postback data management
Actions >

OTN post-back manager
OTN postback id & postback data management
Actions >

Whitelisted domains
Whitelist domain for web url and other purposes
Actions >

Messenger engagement
Checkbox, send to messenger, customer chat, m.me
Actions >

Saved templates
Saved exported bot settings
Actions >

JSON API Connector
Connect bot data with 3rd party apps
Actions >

Webform builder
Custom data collection form for messenger bot
Actions >

User input flow & custom fields
Create flow campaign & custom fields to store user's data
Actions >

Email auto responder
Add Mailchimp API & pull list
Actions >

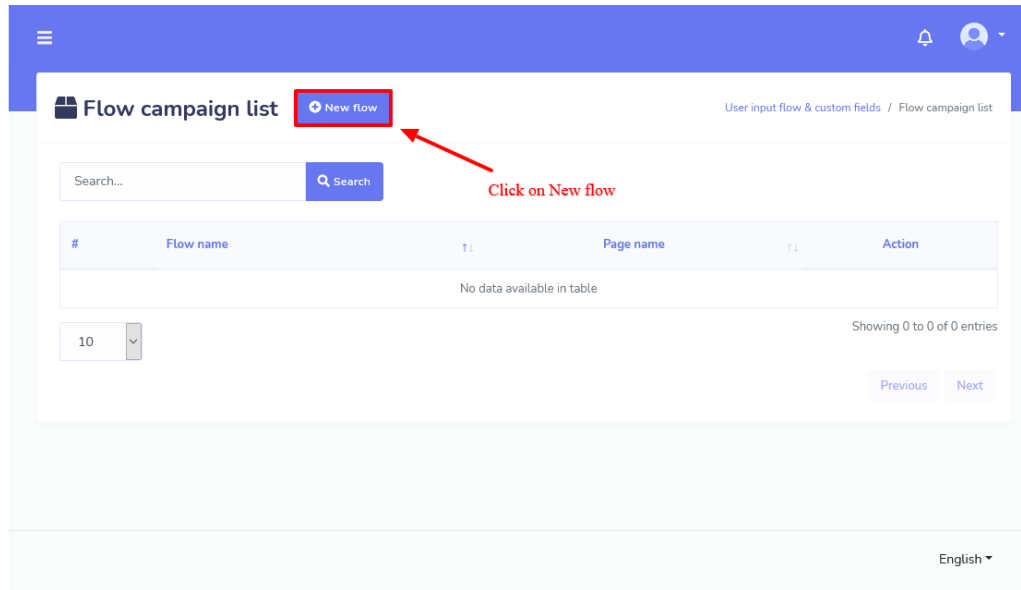
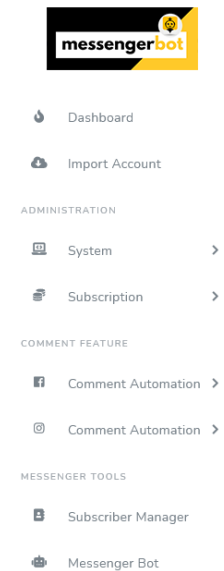
Click on Actions

Click on User input flow campaign

English

When you click on **User input flow campaign**, the Flow Campaign list interface will appear. At the top left corner, you can see a button named **New Flow**, click on this button to create a new User Input Flow. An interface to create a new user input flow will appear.





Give the campaign a name and choose the Facebook page for which you want to create the User Input Flow. We can create 2 types of user input flow, one is Free keyboard input, and the other one is Multiple choice. You can find these options on the right side of the interface. Under Free Keyboard input we have Email, Phone, Text, Number, URL, File, Image, Video, Date, Time, and Datetime. Just click on them to create your desired flow. You can add as many questions as you want.





- Dashboard
- Import Account
- ADMINISTRATION
 - System
 - Subscription
- COMMENT FEATURE
 - Comment Automation
 - Comment Automation
- MESSANGER TOOLS
 - Subscriber Manager
 - Messenger Bot
 - Broadcasting
- ECOMMERCE
 - Ecommerce store
- POSTING FEATURE
 - Social Posting
- UTILITY TOOLS

Create user input flow

Flow campaigns / Create user input flow

Campaign name *Give a name to campaign*
Collect User Email

Choose a page *Choose Facebook page*
Best Kitchen [Kamrul Hasan Ranzu]

User input flow start

Please provide your email address, we will get back to you. *Write the Question here*

Free keyboard input

Free keyboard input

+ Email + Phone + Text
+ Number + Url + File
+ Image + Video + Date
+ Time + Datetime

Select final reply template

Final Reply [Final Reply]

Submit *Click to add a new reply template* *Click to save the Flow*

Cancel

Refresh

Multiple choice

English

You can also create a custom field to store user's data, but this is optional because to store Email; there is already a system defined field. To create custom fields, go to **Messenger Bot > User Input Flow & Custom field > Actions > Custom field**, an Interface to create Custom field will appear. Click on **New Custom Filed** to create a new custom field, a pop up form will appear, give a custom field name and select a reply type from drop down list. Then click the save button to save the New Custom Field.





- Dashboard
- Import Account
- ADMINISTRATION
 - System >
 - Subscription >
- COMMENT FEATURE
 - Comment Automation >
 - Comment Automation >
- MESSENGER TOOLS
 - Subscriber Manager
 - Messenger Bot

Custom field list [New custom field](#) Click here to create a custom field User input flow & custom fields / Custom field list

Search... [Search](#)

#	Name	Reply type	Created time	Action
No data available in table				

10 [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entries

English

Custom field creation:

+ Add custom field ×

Custom field name

Email Address

Reply type

Email

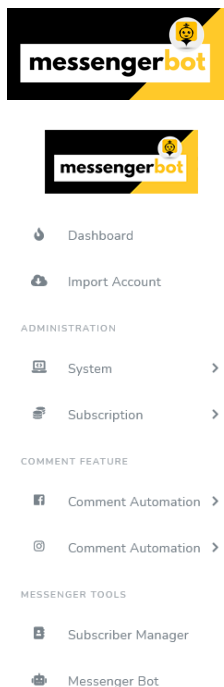
[Save](#) [Close](#)

Give a name for custom field

Click to change reply type

There is a settings button with every question you create for the flow, click on settings to define where the data should be saved. There are two options to save user's data, one is System Field and the other one is Custom field. You can also assign to a messenger sequence or email/phone sequence. There is also a skip button to skip the question for your user. You can as well remove the questions from this setting.





Finally, select a final reply template when you are done with questions. You can create a new Final reply template by clicking on the **Add** button. When you are done with all the questions for your flow, click on the **Submit** button to save the campaign

Now we need to Integrate this User Input Flow to a Messenger Bot. Go to **Messenger Bot > Bot Settings**. Select your Facebook page and add a bot reply. Give the bot a name, put keywords to trigger the bot. Then select the Reply type to “User Input Flow”, from the drop-down list and next select the Flow campaign you just created.





How To Create A Sales Funnel In Messenger With Messenger Bot

Have you ever considered creating a sales funnel? Think it's complicated and overwhelming? Don't know where to begin? As an entrepreneur, you realize marketing's importance: In the absence of marketing, your business would ultimately fail due to the lack of new customers. Therefore, if you haven't already put time and effort into this task, now is the time to start; and one easy way to start is the utilization of Messenger Bot as a sales funnel.

What is a sales funnel?

A sales funnel is the marketing term for the voyage potential client goes through on the way to buy. There are different steps to a sales funnel, commonly known as the top, middle, and bottom of the funnel, even though these steps may vary depending on a business's sales model.

A typical sales funnel has 4 stages:

1. Awareness
2. Interest
3. Decision
4. Action

These four stages represent your prospective customer's mindset. A sales funnel is started by marketing activities that generate awareness and build demand for a product or service, such as social media posts, paid ads, blogging on relevant topics for your target audience, ad retargeting, or SEO. At this stage, the prospects are in huge amounts.

Moving a customer through the funnel is carefully designed to raise consciousness and inform the customer on the benefits of your products to move them toward making a buying decision.

Over time, customers go down through the sales funnel, from primary contact to final purchase – as they learn more about your product and get interested in your product and make the final decision to purchase it. When they become your customer, you may send them more offers on your other products that may or may not related to that particular product.





Creating a Sales Funnel using Messenger Bot:

In this article i am going to describe the features which will need two more add-ons for Messenger Bot.

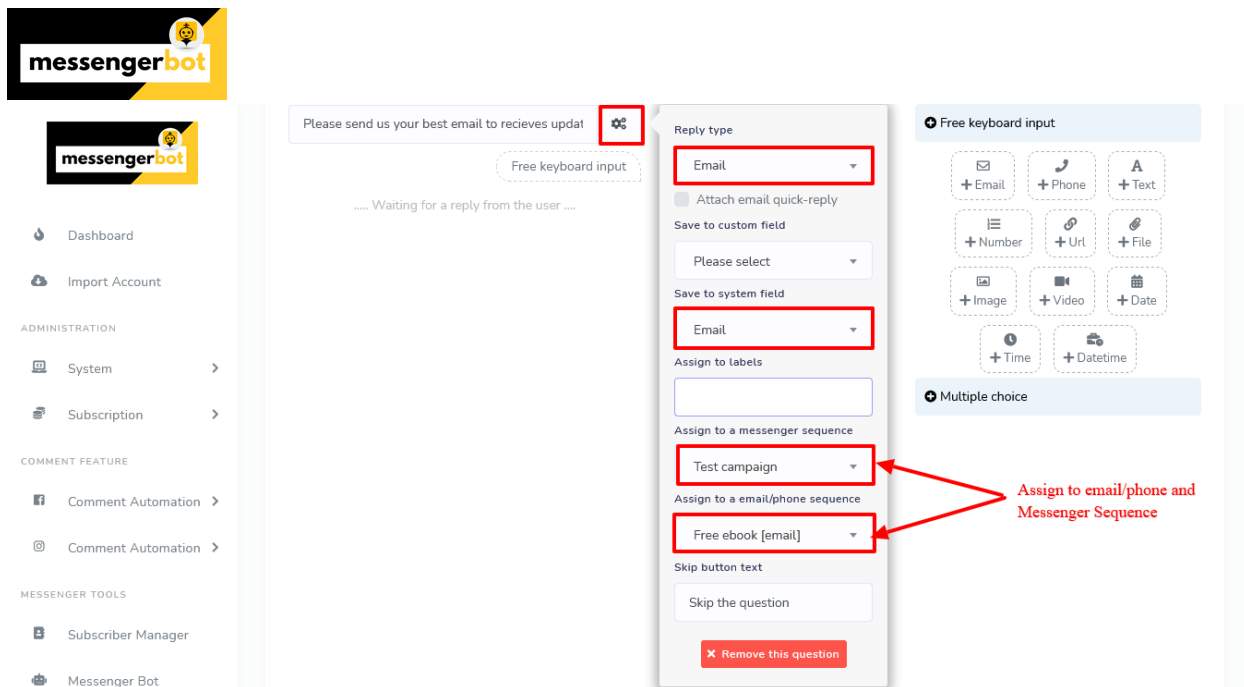
1. Email & SMS Sequence Campaigner Add-on
2. Messenger Bot User Input & Custom Fields Add-on

Collect Leads/Email:

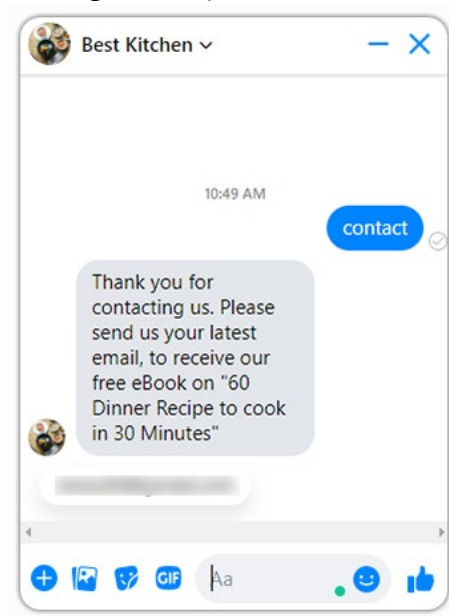
The first thing you need to do is collect leads. When a customer comes to your Facebook Messenger, you need to collect their email or phone number. To do that, you can create a lead magnet. What is a lead magnet? You can offer a free eBook or anything related to your product as a gift to collect their email or phone. In this case, the eBook is the lead magnet. Now you have leads instead of prospects. They are moving through your sales funnel.

There are three ways in Messenger Bot to collect leads, you can use Quick Reply, Web View, and User Input Flow & custom field (A Messenger Bot Add-on).





Example of Lead Magnet: (in the image below)

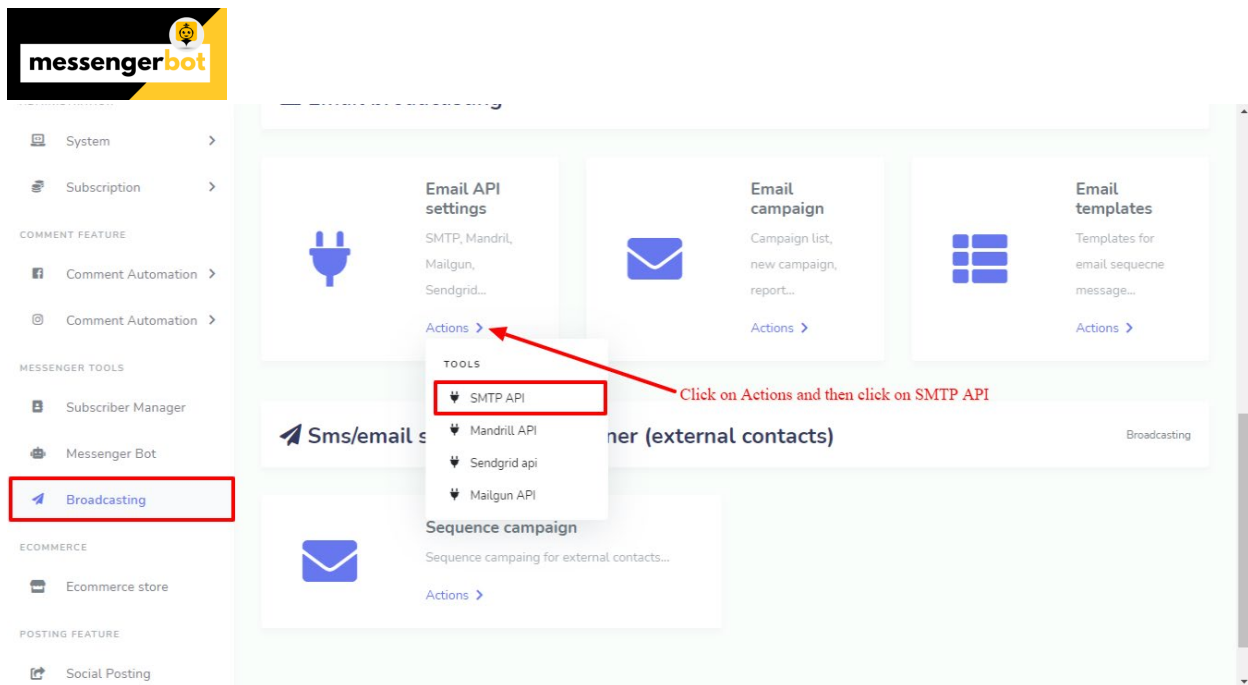


Add Email sender and SMS sender API to send Email and SMS:

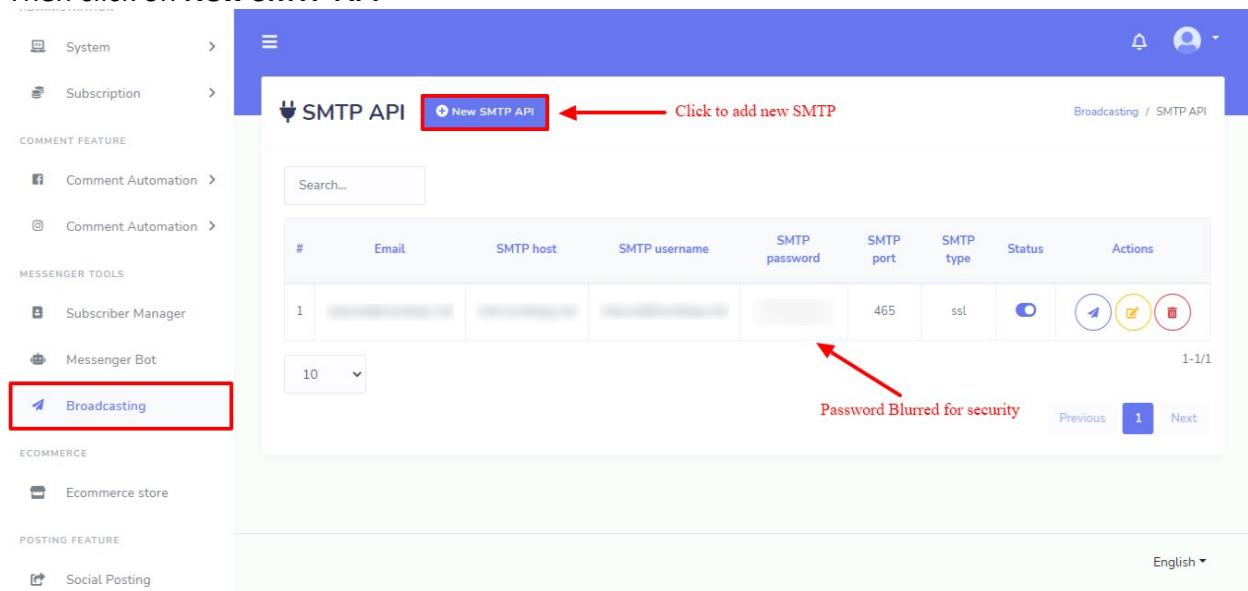
Before we create the sales funnel, we need to add the Email/SMS sender API, we will see how to add Email sender API or SMTP server.

To add an Email sender API or SMTP Server go to **Broadcasting>Email API settings >Actions** I have added an SMTP API here, you can add Madrill, Sendgrid, and Mailgun API too. Please follow the screenshots for the step-by-step process to add an SMTP or email sender API.





Then click on **New SMTP API**



Now that we have set up the SMTP API, Messenger Bot can handle the rest to send follow up emails. We just need to set the default API's for Email and SMS sequence campaign.

Go to **Messenger Bot > Bot Settings**, select your Facebook page and then go to **General Settings**. In the right side under "SMS sequence integration" and "Email sequence integration" choose the API's you want to use for the Sequence campaign.





Dashboard

Import Account

ADMINISTRATION

System

Subscription

COMMENT FEATURE

Comment Automation

Comment Automation

MESSENGER TOOLS

Subscriber Manager

Messenger Bot

Broadcasting

ECDMERCCE

Ecommerce store

POSTING FEATURE

Social Posting

UTILITY TOOLS

Search Tools

Support desk

Bot settings

Messenger Bot / Bot settings

Pages

Best Kitchen

103142694919038

107147104502289

1504518369785295

Bot reply settings

Get started settings

General settings

Action button settings

Persistent menu settings

Sequence message settings

Subscribers

Errors

General settings

Variables

Options

Mark as seen status

Disabled

Chat with human email

Reply if no match found

Mailchimp integration

Send collected email from quick reply to your Mailchimp account list. Page name will be added as tag name in your Mailchimp list.

Select Mailchimp list

Api log

Sendinblue integration

Select Sendinblue list where email will be sent when user signup.

Select Sendinblue list

Api log

ActiveCampaign integration

Select ActiveCampaign list where email will be sent when user signup.

Select ActiveCampaign list

Api log

Mautic integration

Select mautic list where email will be sent when user signup. page name will be added as tag name in your mautic list.

Select mautic list

Api log

Acelle integration

Select acelle list where email will be sent when user signup.

Select acelle list

Api log

SMS integration

Send automated sms to users who provide phone number through quick reply.

Select sms API

Api log

SMS reply message

First name

Last name

Email integration

Send automated email to users who provide email address through quick reply.

Select email api

Api log

Select API

Email reply message

First name

Last name

Email subject

Sms sequence integration

Set sms sequence campaign for users, who provide phone number address through quick reply or post-back button.

Select sms API

clickatell-platform

Select sequence campaign

Refresh lists

Email sequence integration

Set email sequence campaign for users, who provide email address through quick reply or post-back button.

Select email api

SMTP:

Select sequence campaign

Refresh lists

Save

Click to save

Select the SMS API

Select the Email sender API

English



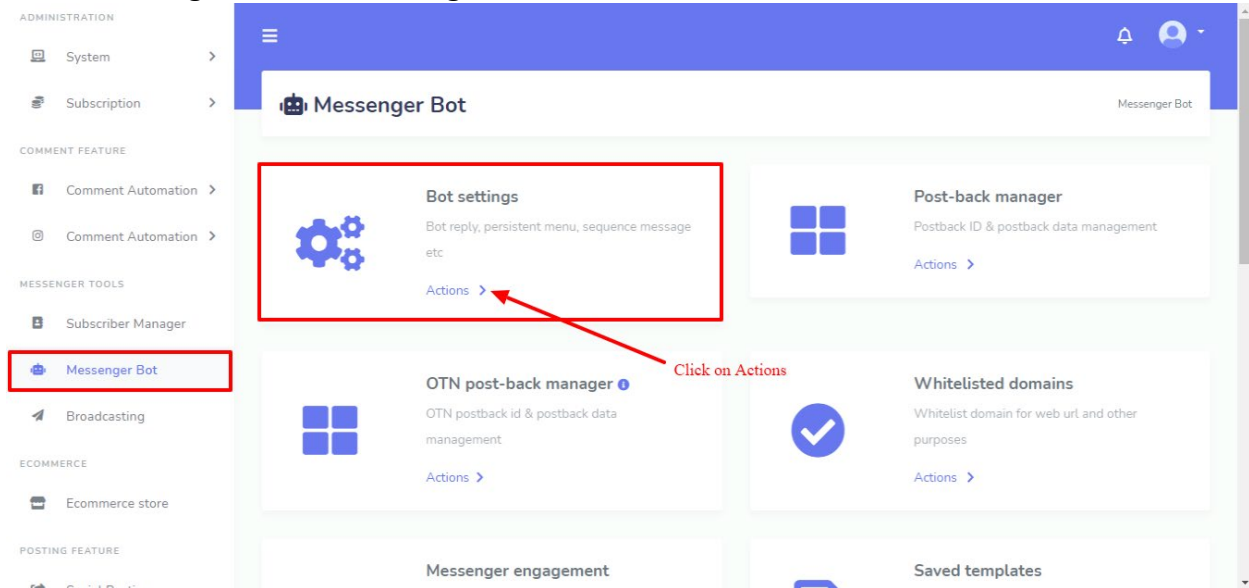


Assign leads to Email, SMS, Messenger Sequence:

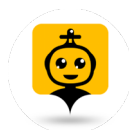
The most effective sales funnel could be created by using the “User Input Flow & Custom Field” (A Messenger Bot Add-on). Also, you must need another add-on of Messenger Bot named “Email/SMS sequence campaigner”. We will create an Email or SMS Sequence first and then assign the sequence to leads (Email and Phone). Please follow the steps below to create a successful sales funnel.

Step-1 (Creating Email/SMS Sequence):

Go to **Messenger Bot > Bot Settings**





When you click on **Actions** under the Bot setting, the Bot Settings interface will appear. Select your Facebook Page and then go to Sequence Message Setting and click on Change settings, a drop-down menu will appear with Messenger sequence settings and SMS/email sequence settings. Click on SMS/email sequence settings to create an SMS/email sequence.





Bot settings Select Facebook Page from here Messenger Bot / Bot settings

Pages Search...

**Best Kitchen**
104463931465638


103142694919038



107147104502289



1504518369785295


Best Kitchen


Bot reply settings
Change settings


☒ **Get started settings**
Change settings


 **General settings**
Change settings


 **Action button settings**
Change settings

 **Persistent menu settings**
Change settings

 **Sequence message settings**
Change settings




 **Messenger sequence settings**

 **Sms/email sequence settings**

 Subscribers

Bot reply settings Variables Options

Search... Add bot reply

Sl	Bot name	Keywords	Status	Actions
1	doctor	doctor	Live	
2	Quick Reply	contact	Live	
3	Web view	hi	Live	

10 1-3/3

Previous 1 Next

Click on Change settings

Click here to create a Sms/email sequence





In the same window, on the right side, the SMS/email sequence interface will appear. Click on the **Add sequence** button.

The screenshot shows the 'Bot settings' interface for a Messenger Bot. The left sidebar contains a list of pages, with 'Best Kitchen' (ID: 104463931465638) selected. The main content area is divided into two columns. The left column lists various settings for the bot, including 'Bot reply settings', 'Get started settings', 'General settings', 'Action button settings', 'Persistent menu settings', and 'Sequence message settings' (which is highlighted with a red box). The right column is titled 'Sms/email sequence settings' and contains a search bar, a table with columns for 'Name', 'Last sent', 'Campaign type', 'Engagement campaign', and 'Actions', and an 'Add sequence' button (also highlighted with a red box). A red arrow points to the 'Add sequence' button with the text 'Click to create a new sequence'.

Give a name for the Campaign, then select the type of Sequence from Email / SMS, then Sequence time, we can create two types of sequence, one is 24 hours and the other one is Daily. Here I have selected Daily because I will create a sequence campaign that will last for few days, you can also create a campaign for 24 hours, sending different emails or SMS on the same day within the 24 Hours.

You can also change the starting and closing time. Select your time zone. Then select the email template from the dropdown list for days you want to send an email. You can add new template and add more days to the campaign.

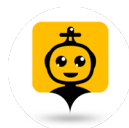


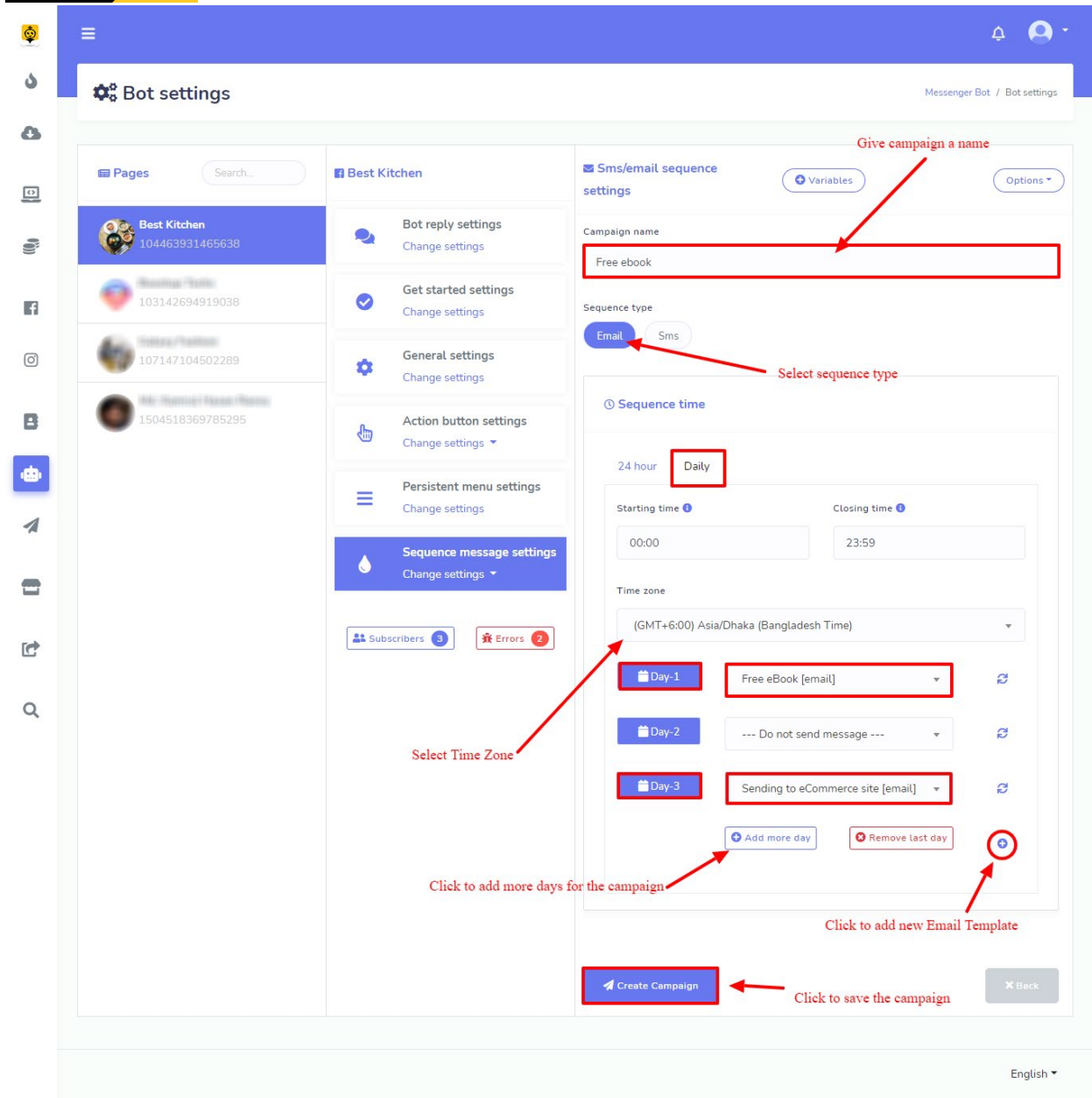


On the first day of the email sequence, I will send an email with the eBook I promised to giveaway for free. So, I will create my first email sequence with a greeting for being on my subscriber's list and send them the free eBook on “60 Dinner Recipe to cook in 30 minutes”

The screenshot shows the 'Bot settings' interface for a bot named 'Best Kitchen'. The 'Sms/email sequence settings' section is active, showing a campaign named 'Free ebook'. The sequence type is set to 'Email'. The 'Sequence time' section shows a daily sequence starting at 00:00 and ending at 23:59, with the time zone set to '(GMT+6:00) Asia/Dhaka (Bangladesh Time)'. The sequence editor shows three days: Day-1 with 'Free eBook [email]', Day-2 with '--- Do not send message ---', and Day-3 with 'Sending to eCommerce site [email]'. A red arrow points to a plus icon in the sequence editor, with the text 'Click to add new Email Template' below it.

Click on the (+) Add new template to create an email template, and then set it for the email sequence.





The screenshot shows the 'Bot settings' interface for a bot named 'Best Kitchen'. The left sidebar contains a list of pages and a 'Sequence message settings' section. The main area is titled 'Sms/email sequence settings' and includes the following elements:

- Campaign name:** A text field containing 'Free ebook', with an annotation 'Give campaign a name' pointing to it.
- Sequence type:** Radio buttons for 'Email' (selected) and 'Sms', with an annotation 'Select sequence type' pointing to the 'Email' button.
- Sequence time:**
 - 24 hour / Daily:** A dropdown menu with 'Daily' selected, with an annotation 'Select Time Zone' pointing to it.
 - Starting time:** A time picker set to '00:00'.
 - Closing time:** A time picker set to '23:59'.
 - Time zone:** A dropdown menu set to '(GMT+6:00) Asia/Dhaka (Bangladesh Time)'.
- Sequence days:**
 - Day-1:** A dropdown menu set to 'Free eBook [email]'.
 - Day-2:** A dropdown menu set to '--- Do not send message ---'.
 - Day-3:** A dropdown menu set to 'Sending to eCommerce site [email]'.
- Buttons:** 'Add more day', 'Remove last day', and a gear icon for settings.
- Bottom buttons:** 'Create Campaign' (with an annotation 'Click to save the campaign') and 'Back'.

At the bottom right, there is a language selector set to 'English'.

You can create different SMS/email sequences for a different group of leads, and assign them accordingly.

You can also create a Messenger sequence, but Facebook Messenger allows you to send a promotional message only within 24 Hours of the subscription.

Step-2 (Assign the Sequence while creating User Input Flow):

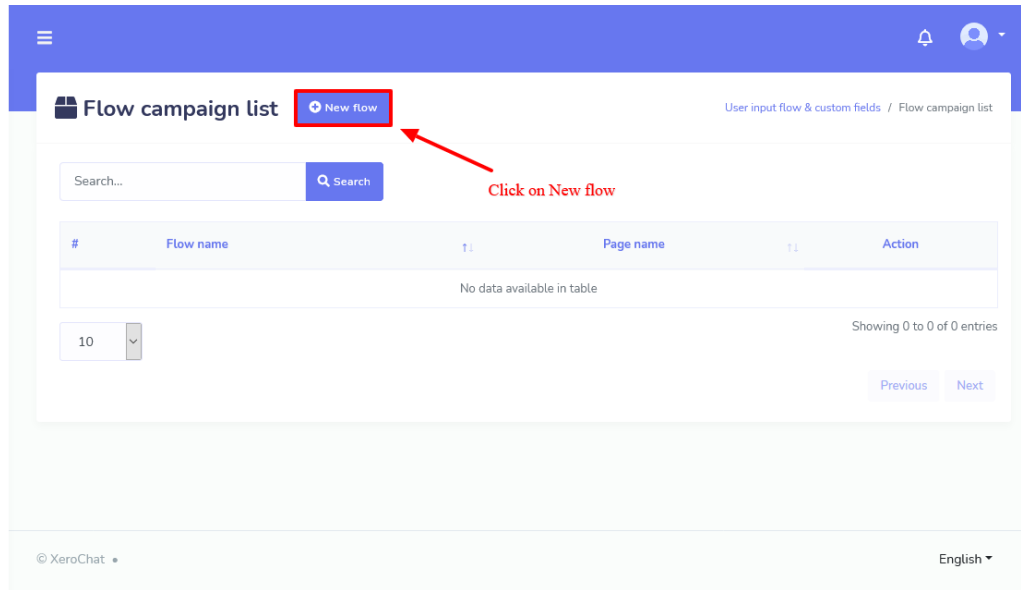
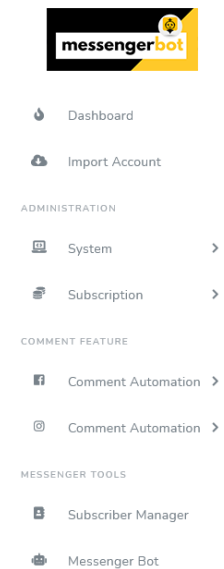
To create a User Input Flow, go to **Messenger Bot > User Input Flow & Custom Field** and click on **Actions** then Click on **User input flow campaign**



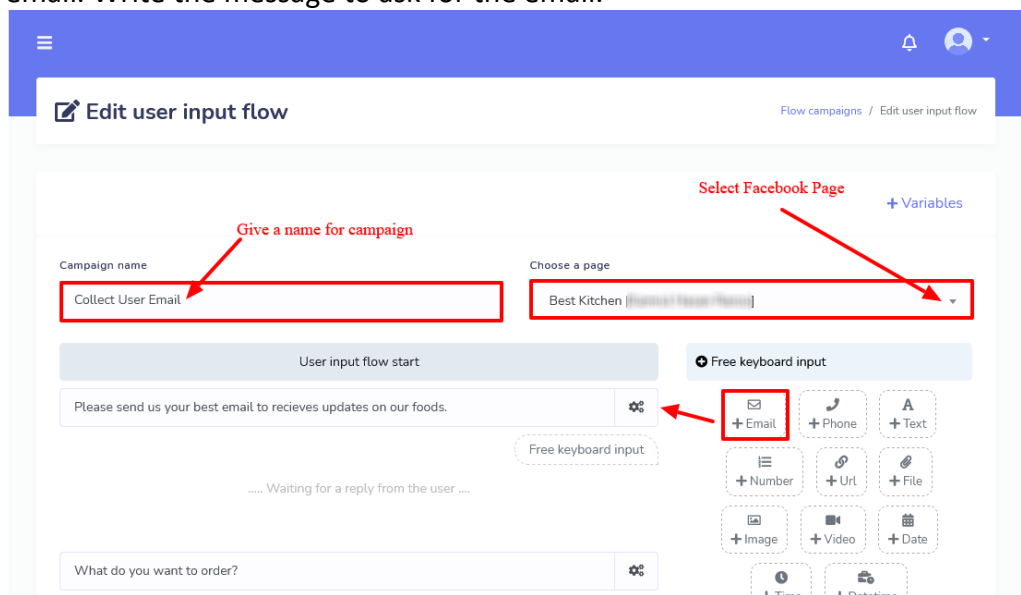
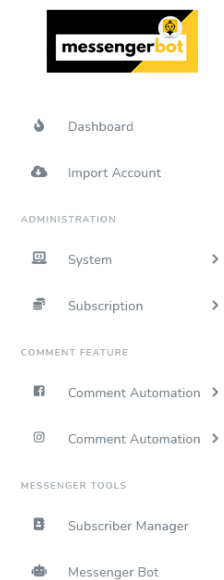
The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot dashboard interface. On the left is a sidebar menu with categories: **ADMINISTRATION** (Dashboard, Import Account, System, Subscription), **COMMENT FEATURE** (Comment Automation), **MESSENGER TOOLS** (Subscriber Manager, Messenger Bot, Broadcasting), **ECOMMERCE** (Ecommerce store), **POSTING FEATURE** (Social Posting), and **UTILITY TOOLS** (Search Tools). A **Support desk** button is at the bottom of the sidebar. The main content area is titled **Messenger Bot** and contains several cards: **Bot settings**, **Post-back manager**, **OTN post-back manager**, **Whitelisted domains**, **Messenger engagement**, **Saved templates**, **JSON API Connector**, **Webform builder**, **User input flow & custom fields**, and **Email auto responder**. The **User input flow & custom fields** card is highlighted with a red box. A red arrow points from the text **Click on Actions** to the **Actions >** link in this card. Another red arrow points from the text **Click on User input flow campaign** to the **User input flow campaign** option in the dropdown menu that appears when **Actions >** is clicked. The footer shows **© XeroChat** and **English**.

When you click on **User input flow campaign**, the Flow Campaign list interface will appear. At the top left corner, you can see a button named **New Flow**, click on this button to create a new User Input Flow. An interface to create a new user input flow will appear.





Give the campaign a name and choose the Facebook page for which you want to create the User Input Flow. From the left side choose a question type. Here I have selected email, to collect the user's email. Write the message to ask for the email.



With every question there is a settings button, click on that settings button. From the settings, assign the SMS/email sequence and Messenger sequence for the lead.



The screenshot displays the Messenger Bot configuration interface. On the left is a sidebar with navigation links: Dashboard, Import Account, ADMINISTRATION (System, Subscription), COMMENT FEATURE (Comment Automation), and MESSENGER TOOLS (Subscriber Manager, Messenger Bot). The main panel shows a question configuration for 'Please send us your best email to receives updat'. The 'Reply type' is set to 'Email'. Below it, 'Attach email quick-reply' is unchecked. 'Save to custom field' is set to 'Please select'. 'Save to system field' is set to 'Email'. 'Assign to labels' is empty. 'Assign to a messenger sequence' is set to 'Test campaign'. 'Assign to a email/phone sequence' is set to 'Free ebook [email]'. 'Skip button text' is 'Skip the question'. A red box highlights the 'Test campaign' and 'Free ebook [email]' options, with a red arrow pointing to them and the text 'Assign to email/phone and Messenger Sequence'. On the right, there are sections for 'Free keyboard input' (Email, Phone, Text, Number, Url, File, Image, Video, Date, Time, Datetime) and 'Multiple choice'.

Save the User Input Flow, and then add this “user input flow” to the messenger bot.

Sales funnel without “User Input Flow and Custom Field (A Messenger Bot Add-on)”:

You can also create a sales funnel without “User Input Flow & Custom Field”. There are two ways other than “User Input Flow & Custom Field” to collect the user’s email and phone number. You can use “Quick Reply” and “Web View” to collect leads and then assign SMS/email sequence to those leads. But this is limited to only one particular SMS/Email sequence at a time. But with the use of “User Input Flow & Custom Field” we can create different types of Sms/Email sequence for different group of leads.

To create an Sms/Email sequence for leads collected by “Quick Reply” and “Web View” go to **Messenger Bot > Bot Settings > General Settings** and select the Sms Sequence campaign and Email Sequence campaign on the perspective field as shown below.



Pages

Search...

Best Kitchen

10446093314656738

Marketing Tools

103142694919038

Products / Features

107147104502289

Web Resources / News / Events

1504518369785295

Best Kitchen

Bot reply settings

Change settings

Get started settings

Change settings

General settings

Change settings

Action button settings

Change settings

Persistent menu settings

Change settings

Sequence message settings

Change settings

Subscribers

Errors

General settings

Options

Mark as seen status

Disabled

Chat with human email

Reply if no match found

Mailchimp integration

Add Mailchimp API

Send collected email from quick reply to your Mailchimp account list. Page name will be added as tag name in your Mailchimp list.

Select Mailchimp list

Sendinblue integration

Add Sendinblue API

Select Sendinblue list where email will be sent when user signup.

Select Sendinblue list

ActiveCampaign integration

Add ActiveCampaign API

Select ActiveCampaign list where email will be sent when user signup.

Select ActiveCampaign list

Mautic integration

Add mautic api

Select mautic list where email will be sent when user signup. page name will be added as tag name in your mautic list.

Select mautic list

Acelle integration

Add acelle api

Select acelle list where email will be sent when user signup.

Select acelle list

SMS integration

Add SMS API

Send automated sms to users who provide phone number through quick reply.

Select sms API

SMS reply message

First nameLast name

Email integration

Add email api

Send automated email to users who provide email address through quick reply.

Select email api

Select API

Email reply message

First nameLast name

Sms sequence integration

Set sms sequence campaign for users, who provide phone number address through quick reply or post-back button.

Select sms API

clickatell-platform

Select sequence campaign

Refresh lists

Sms sequence

Email sequence integration

Set email sequence campaign for users, who provide email address through quick reply or post-back button.

Select email api

SMTP:smtp.gmail.com

Select sequence campaign

Refresh lists

Free ebook

Save



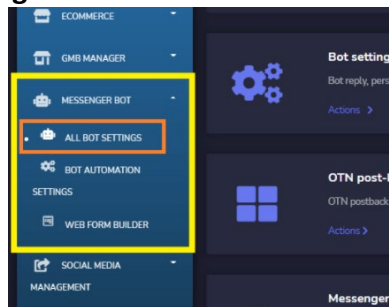


Abandoned cart recovery:

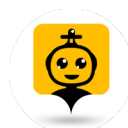
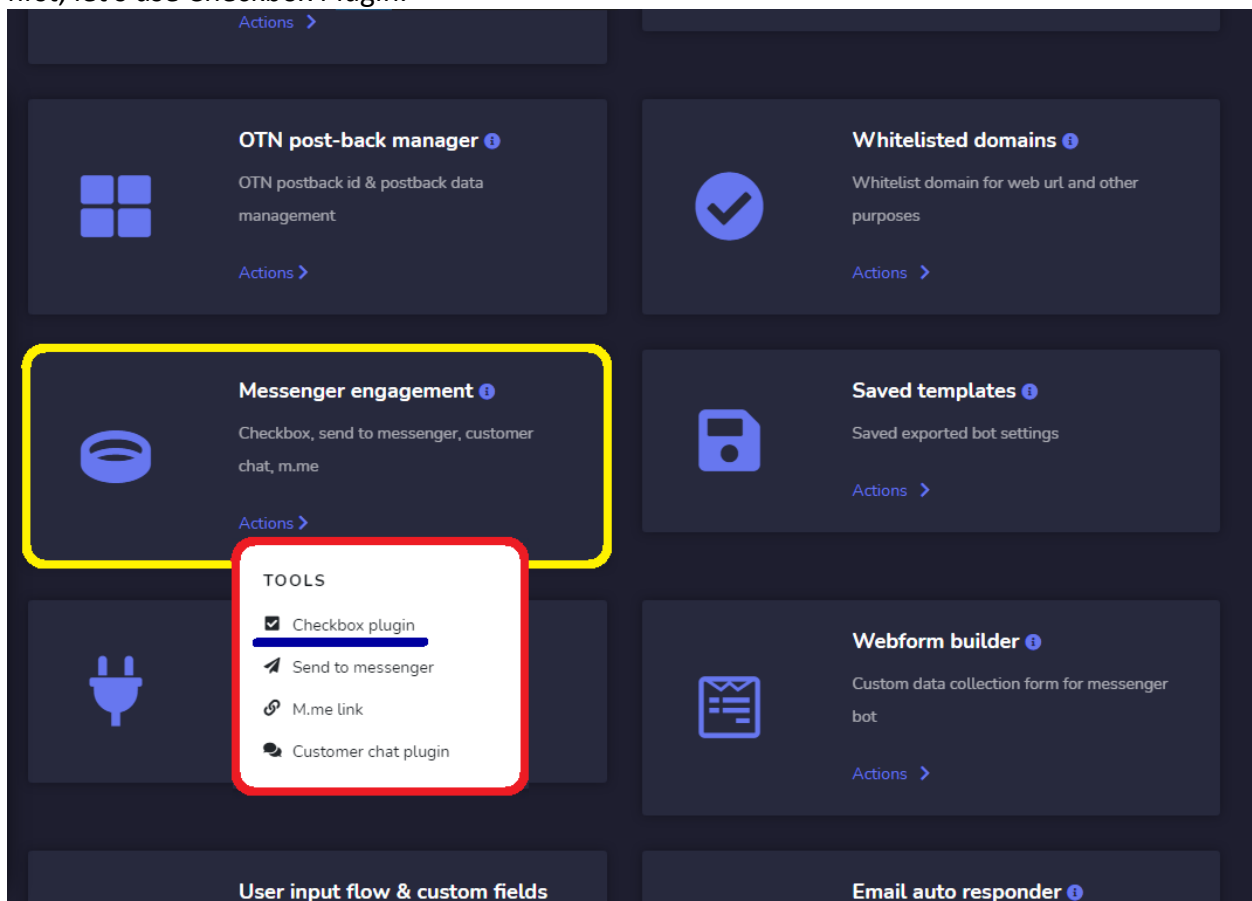
You can also optimize your sales funnel using Abandoned Cart Recovery. If you use Messenger Bot to create an eCommerce store on messenger and customers leave the eCommerce store after adding products to the cart. “Abandoned cart Recovery” could be used to send a notification to the buyer with a message.

Which Messenger Engagement Plugins Best To Use?

In your Dashboard select **Messenger Bot** and click **All Bot Settings**.



To access the messenger engagement section, select **Messenger engagement**, then select **Actions from the Messenger Bot screen**. A dropdown menu will show and choose on the Tools to use like **Checkbox Plugin**, **Send to Messenger**, **M.me Link**, and **Customer Chat Plugin**. But first, let's use Checkbox Plugin.





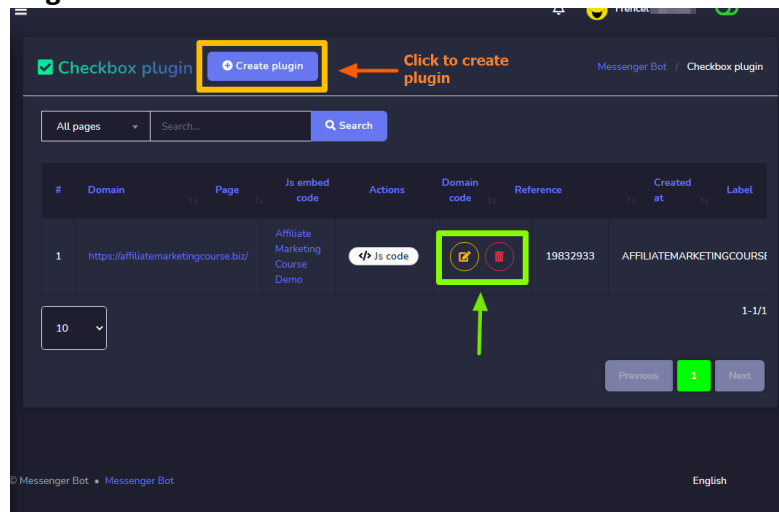
Checkbox Plugin

Checkbox plugin screen consists of a list of domains, you can search for a specific domain by using the search bar. You can adjust the number of domains to be viewed per page. You can also arrange them in either ascending or descending order by selecting the arrows from the header.

Following actions can be performed from the checkbox plugin view:

- **Edit** the plugin
- **Delete** the plugin

Now click **Create Plugin**.



Select your **Facebook Page** for which you want to add the Plugin. **Provide** your **Domain** and you can select your preferred **Language**. You can select your **Plugin Skin**, you can **align** your Plugin to the Center, and you can also select your **Plugin Size**. If you enable **Redirect** to a webpage on successful opt-in. You need to provide your **redirect URL**.





Provide your Opt-in success message on the website. You can **check the box** if you want to **add a button** in the **success message**.

Opt-in success message in website ⓘ

You have been subscribed successfully, thank you.

☐ I want to add a button in success message

Checkbox validation error message ⓘ

Opt-in inbox confirmation message template * ⓘ

Get Started [English101_JYCGZJ]

Add template Refresh

Reference * ⓘ

AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSE

Select label ⓘ

Create label

Generate embed code

Provide your **Button Text**, **Button URL**, select your **Button Background Color**, also choose your **Button Text**, **Button Hover Background**, and **Button Text Hover** color. You can also provide your **Checkbox Validation Error Message**, select your **Opt-in inbox confirmation message** template, your **Reference** and you have an option to **Select your Label**. Then, click **Generate embed code**.

Opt-in success message in website ⓘ

You have been subscribed successfully, thank you.

☒ I want to add a button in success message

Button text * ⓘ

Send Message

Button url * ⓘ

https://m.me/101769115308123

Button background *

#149614

Button text color *

ffffff

Button hover background *

#c93314

Button text hover color *

#750d72

Checkbox validation error message ⓘ

Opt-in inbox confirmation message template * ⓘ

Get Started [English101_JYCGZJ]

Add template Refresh

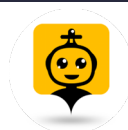
Reference * ⓘ

AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSE

Select label ⓘ

Create label

Generate embed code





Click **Js Code** to copy the Js Code. **Copy the code below** and **paste it inside the HTML** element of your webpage where you want to **display this plugin**.

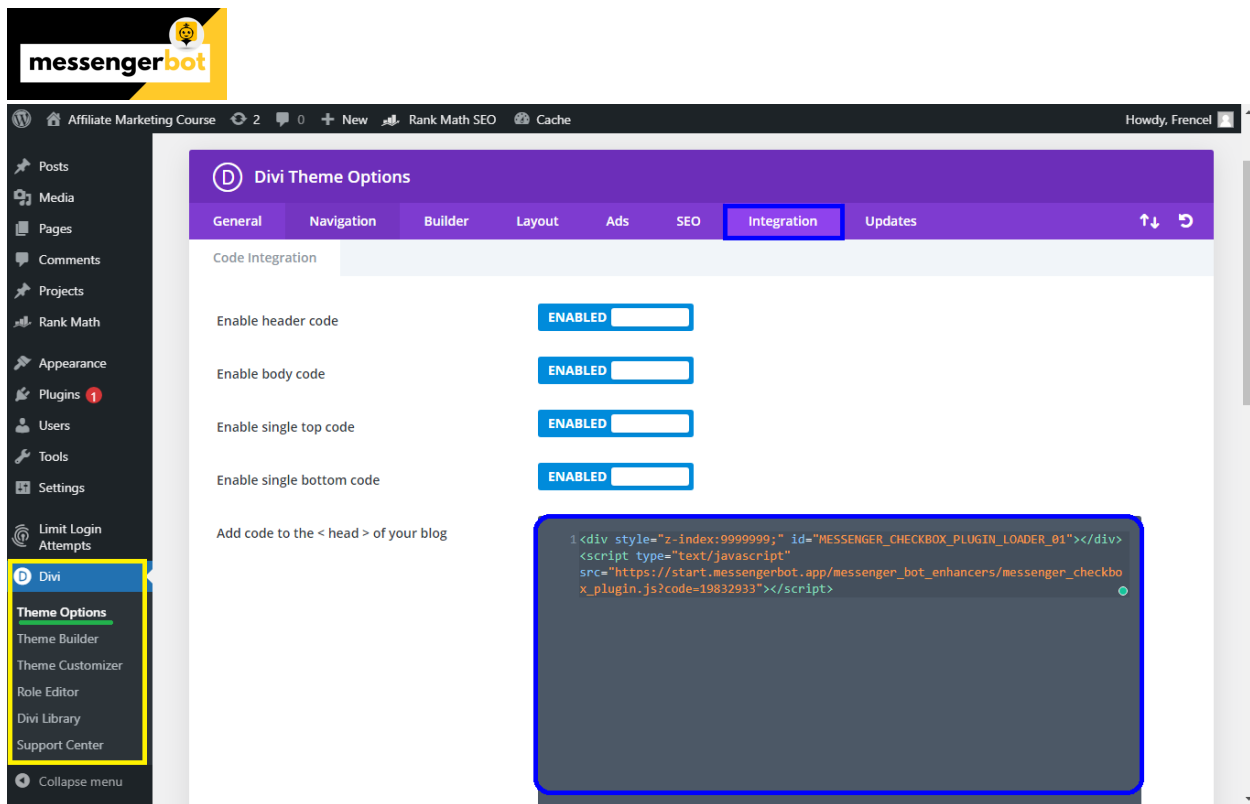
The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot dashboard interface. At the top, there's a header with a menu icon, a notification bell, a user profile (Frencel), and a status indicator. Below the header, the main content area is titled 'Checkbox plugin' with a 'Create plugin' button. A search bar is present. A table lists plugins, with the first row highlighted in yellow. This row has columns for #, Domain, Page, Js embed code, Actions, Domain code, Reference, Created at, and Label. The 'Js embed code' column contains a button labeled '</> Js code', which is highlighted with a green box and a green arrow. Below the table, there's a pagination control showing '10' items per page. At the bottom, there's a modal window titled 'Checkbox plugin embed code' with a close button. The modal contains the instruction 'Copy the code below and paste inside the html element of your webpage where you want to display this plugin' and a code block with the following HTML/JavaScript code:

```
<div style="z-index:9999999;" id="MESSENGER_CHECKBOX_PLUGIN_LOADER_01"></div><script type="text/javascript" src="https://start.messengerbot.app/messenger_bot_enhancers/messenger_checkbox_plugin.js?code=19832933"></script>
```

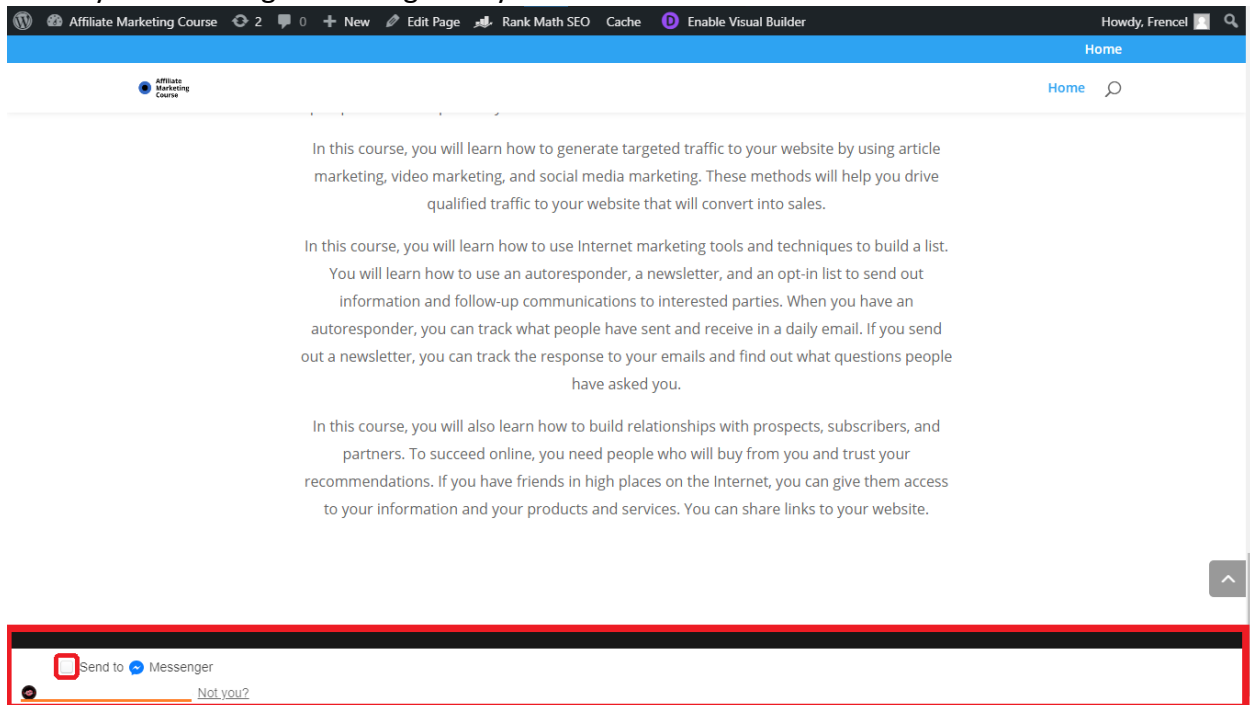
The code block is highlighted with a blue border. A 'Close' button is at the bottom right of the modal.

In your **WordPress Dashboard**, locate your **website builder** or your **Theme**. On this site we use **DIVI**. Then, select the **Integration tab** and **Paste the HTML Element** at any part of your site's Home Menu.





This is your Messenger Bot Plugin for your Website.



Send to messenger plugin

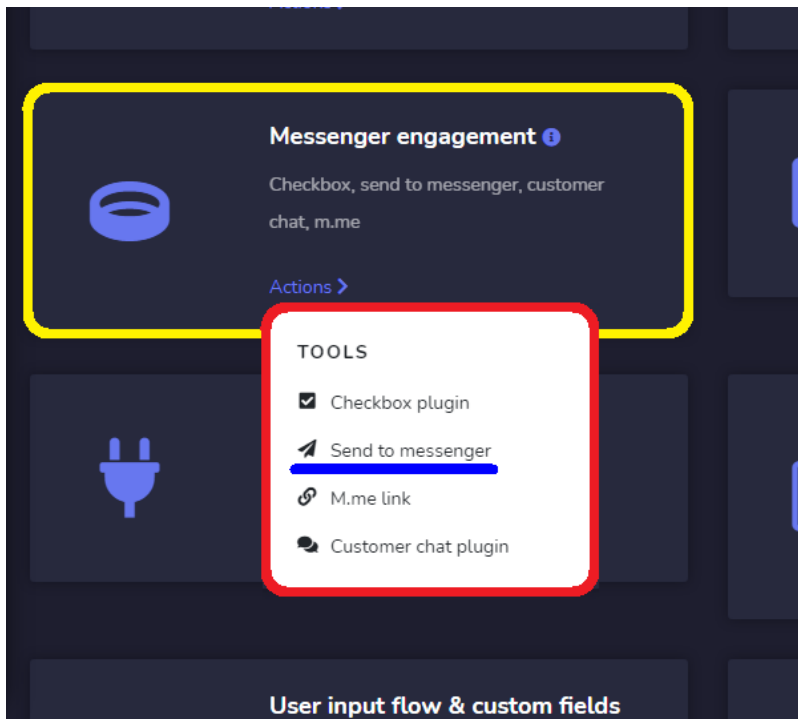
Send to messenger plugin screen consists of a list of domains, you can search for a specific domain by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of domains to be **viewed per page**.





You can also arrange them in either **ascending or descending** order by selecting the **arrows** from the header.

Back in the **Messenger Bot dashboard**, select Messenger Engagement and click **Send to Messenger**.



Following **actions** can be performed from the Send to Messenger plugin view:

- **Edit** the plugin: Edit messenger plugin and select Update plugin.
- **Delete** the plugin

Click **Create Plugin** from the top right of the screen.



Send to messenger plugin Create plugin Messenger Bot / Send to messenger plugin

All pages Search Search

#	Domain	Page	Js embed code	Actions	Domain code	Reference	Created at	Label
1	https://affiliatemarketingcourse.biz/	Affiliate Marketing Course Demo			1617279524372	AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSE.BIZ/	1st A 21	

10 Previous 1 Next

Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot English

Select the **page** for which you want to **add the plugin**. Provide the **domain**. Select the **language** and **CTA button** text option. Select the **Plugin skin**, turn it to either **white** or **blue**. Select the **Plugin size**. Enable **Redirect** to a webpage on successful opt-in.

Edit send to messenger plugin Messenger Bot / Send to messenger plugin / Edit send to messenger plugin

Select page * Domain * Language * Cta button text *

Affiliate Marketing Course Demo https://affiliatemarketingcourse.biz/ English (US) GET THIS IN MESSENGER

Plugin skin * Plugin size *

White Blue Standard Large Extra Large

☒ Redirect to a webpage on successful opt-in

Opt-in success message in website *

You have been subscribed successfully, thank you.

☒ I want to add a button in success message

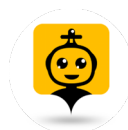
Opt-in inbox confirmation message template * Reference * Select label * Create label


Get Started [English101_JYCGZ] AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSE.BIZ

Add template Refresh

Generate embed code Cancel

By enabling the **Redirect** to a webpage on successful opt-in. You need to **provide** an **Opt-in success redirect URL**.





☒ Redirect to a webpage on successful opt-in

Opt-in success redirect url * ⓘ

Opt-in inbox confirmation message template * ⓘ
 Get Started [English101_JYCGZ]

Reference * ⓘ
 AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSE.BIZ/

Select label ⓘ
 Create label

Add template Refresh

Generate embed code Cancel

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot English

Provide an Opt-in success message on the website. You can also **add a button** in the success message. By **checking the box**. Provide **Button Text**, **Button URL**, choose **colors for Button Background**, **Button Text**, **Button Hover Background**, and **Button Text Hover**.

Edit send to messenger plugin
 Messenger Bot / Send to messenger plugin / Edit send to messenger plugin

Select page * ⓘ
 Affiliate Marketing Course Demo

Domain * ⓘ
 https://affiliatemarketingcourse.biz/

Language * ⓘ
 English (US)

Cta button text ⓘ
 GET THIS IN MESSENGER

Plugin skin * ⓘ
 White Blue

Plugin size * ⓘ
 Standard Large Extra Large

☒ Redirect to a webpage on successful opt-in

Opt-in success message in website ⓘ
 You have been subscribed successfully, thank you.
☒ I want to add a button in success message

Opt-in inbox confirmation message template * ⓘ
 Get Started [English101_JYCGZ]

Reference * ⓘ
 AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSE.BIZ/

Select label ⓘ
 Create label

Add template Refresh

Generate embed code Cancel

Click, the **JS Code**. To view the HTML Elements. **Copy the code** below and **paste it inside the HTML element** of your webpage where you want to display this plugin.




▶▶ Send to messenger plugin




[+ Create plugin](#)

Messenger Bot / Send to messenger plugin

All pages ▾

Search...

 Search

#	Domain	Page	Js embed code	Actions	Domain code	Reference	Created at	Label
1	https://affiliatemarketingcourse.biz/	Affiliate Marketing Course Demo		 	1617279524372	AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSE.BIZ/		1st A 21

1-1/1

10

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot

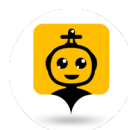
English

Copy the code below and paste inside the html element of your webpage where you want to display this plugin.

```
<div style="z-index:9999999;" id="SEND_TO_MESSENGER_PLUGIN_LOADER_01"></div><script type="text/javascript" src="https://start.messengerbot.app/messenger_bot_enhancers/send_to_messenger_plugin.js?code=1617279524372"></script>
```

✕ Close

AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSE.BIZ/





In your **WordPress Dashboard**, select your **theme or plugin builder**, then click **Theme Options** and select **Integration** in your Tab area. And **Paste the HTML elements** in here from your Messenger Bot.

This is the **sample of Send to Messenger Plugin** on your Website.

It will directed you to **Facebook Messenger**.



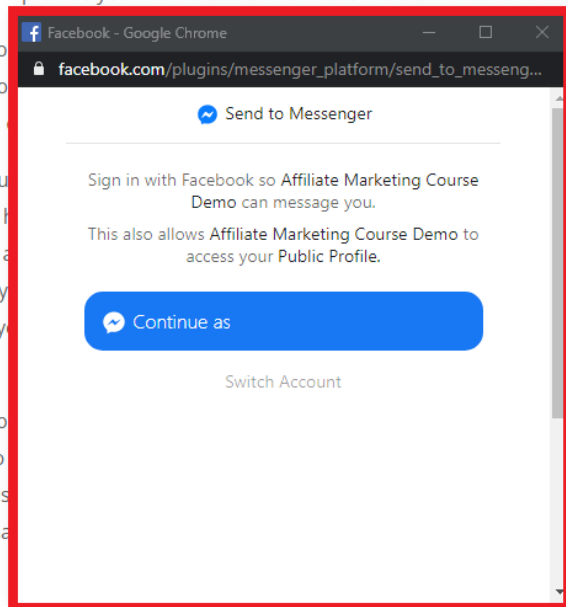


aspects that will provide you with valuable information to build trust and conversion ri

this course, you
marketing, video

this course, you
You will learn h
information a
itorresponder, y
a newsletter, y

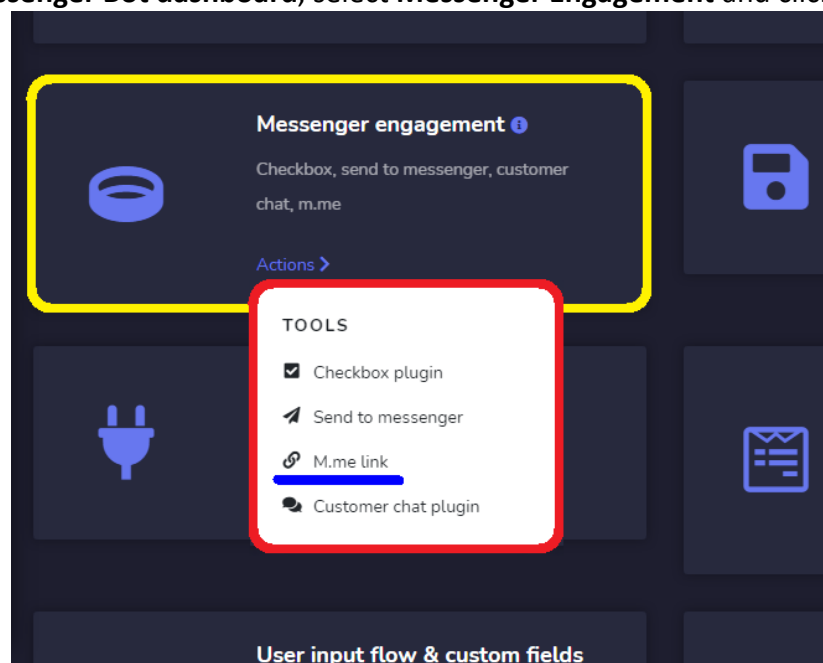
this course, yo
partners. To
ommendations
to your informa



M.me link

M.me link screen consists of a **list of pages** you can **search for a specific page** by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number of pages** to be **viewed per view**. You can also arrange them in either **ascending or descending order** by selecting the **arrows** from the header.

Back in the **Messenger Bot dashboard**, select **Messenger Engagement** and click **M.me Link**.







Following actions can be performed from the M.me link view:

- **Edit** the plugin: Edit M.me link and select Update plugin.
- **Delete** the plugin.

Select **Create Plugin** from the top right of the screen.


The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with a hamburger menu, a bell icon, a smiley face icon, the name 'Frencel', and a status icon. Below this is a section titled 'Send to messenger plugin' with a '+ Create plugin' button highlighted by a yellow box. Underneath is a search bar with 'All pages' and a 'Search' button. A table lists plugins with columns: #, Domain, Page, Js embed code, Actions, Domain code, Reference, Created at, and Label. The first row shows a plugin for 'https://affiliatemarketingcourse.biz/' with the page 'Affiliate Marketing Course Demo'. The 'Actions' column for this row contains an 'Edit' icon (pencil) and a 'Delete' icon (trash can), both highlighted by a yellow box. Below the table is a pagination control showing '10' and '1-1/1'. At the bottom, there are 'Previous', '1', and 'Next' buttons. The footer shows 'Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot' and 'English'.


#	Domain	Page	Js embed code	Actions	Domain code	Reference	Created at	Label
1	https://affiliatemarketingcourse.biz/	Affiliate Marketing Course Demo	</> Js code	 	1617279524372	AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSE.BIZ/		1st A 21





Select the **page** for which you want to add the plugin. Provide the **Button text**. Provide the **Button background, text color, hover over color**. Provide the **Button background, text color, hover over color**. Select **Button Size**.


Select an **opt-in inbox confirmation message** template, **reference**, and **label**. Select **Generate embed code** option to create the send to messenger plugin.









Frencel




Add m.me link
Messenger Bot / M.me link / Add m.me link

Select page * ⓘ

Select page

Button text * ⓘ

Send us Message

Button background * ⓘ

#0084ff

Button text color * ⓘ

#ffffff

Button hover background * ⓘ

#367fa9

Button text hover color * ⓘ

#ffdddd

Button size * ⓘ

Small

Medium


Large

Extra Large


Opt-in inbox confirmation message template * ⓘ





Reference * ⓘ


Select label ⓘ


Generate embed code

You can select the **Embed code to be copied and paste** into your website. Between **Js Code** and **QR Code**.





Frencel




M.me link





Create plugin

Messenger Bot / M.me link

All pages

Search...

Q Search

#	Page	Embed code	Actions	Link code	Reference	Created at	Label
1	Affiliate Marketing Course Demo	<div>  Js code  Qr code </div>	 	10606407	AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSEDEMO	1st April 21	

10

Previous


1

Next

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot
English

Copy the **code below** and **paste it inside the HTML element** of your webpage where you want to display this plugin. Or you can use the **M.me Link** for your website.





</> M.me plugin embed code

✓ Plugin has been created successfully.

Copy the code below and paste inside the html element of your webpage where you want to display this plugin.

```
<div style="z-index:9999999;" id="MME_LINK_LOADER_01"></div><script type="text/javascript" src="https://start.messengerbot.app/messenger_bot_enhancers/mme_link.js?code=10606407"></script>
```


M.me link

```
https://m.me/101769115308123?ref=AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSEDEMO
```

✕ Close

✕ Generate embed code

This is the **M.me link QR code**.



M.me link

Create plugin

All pages


Search...

#	Page	Embed code	Reference	Created at	Label
1	Affiliate Marketing Course Demo	</> Js code	AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSEDEMO	1st April 21	

10

Previous1Next

M.me link qr code

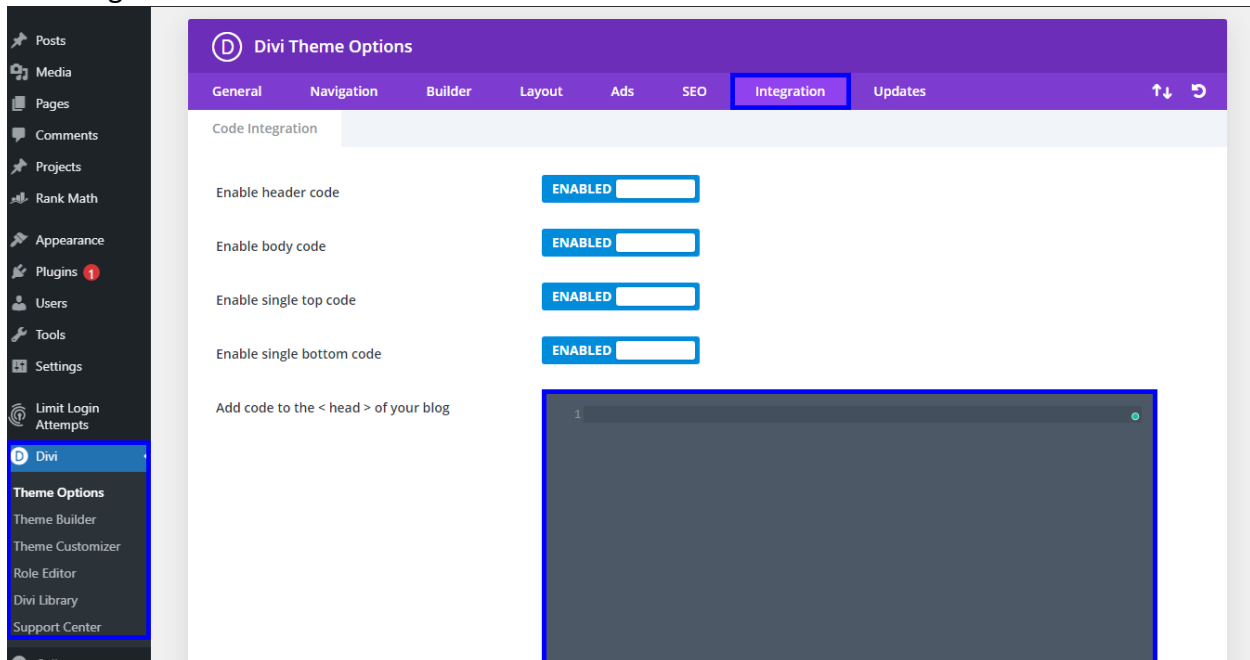


✕ Close

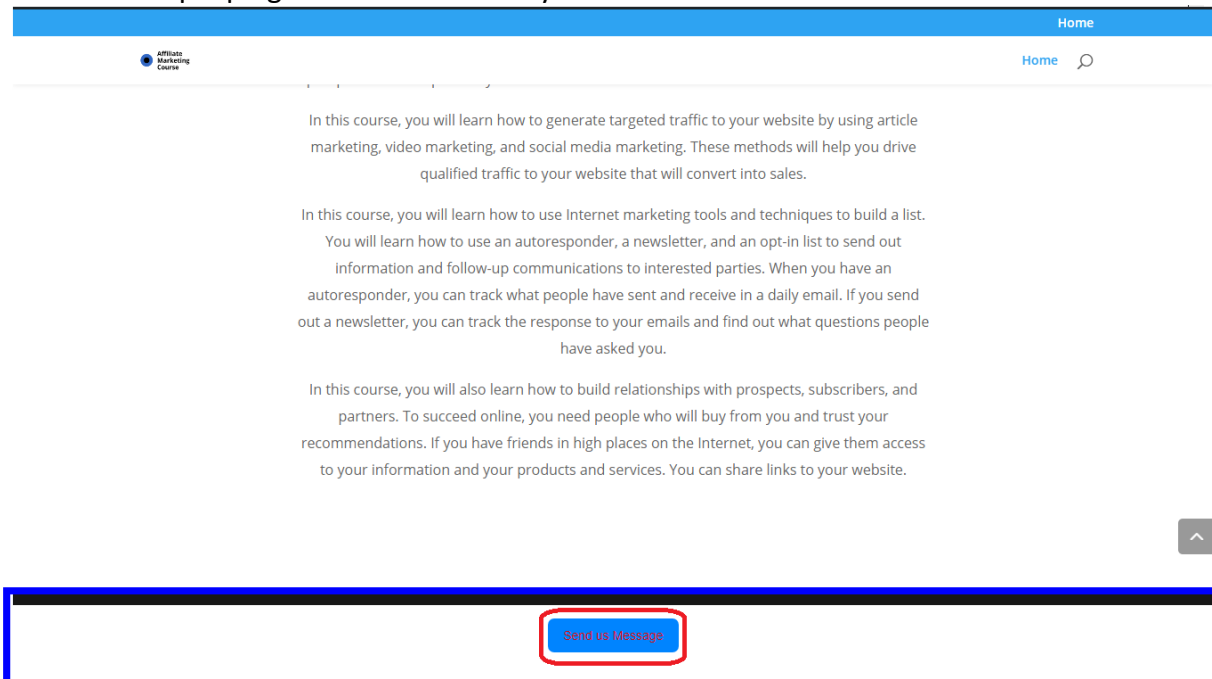




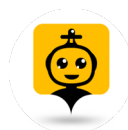
In your **WordPress Dashboard**, select your **theme or plugin builder**, then click **Theme Options** and select **Integration** in your Tab area. And **Paste the HTML elements in here** from your Messenger Bot.

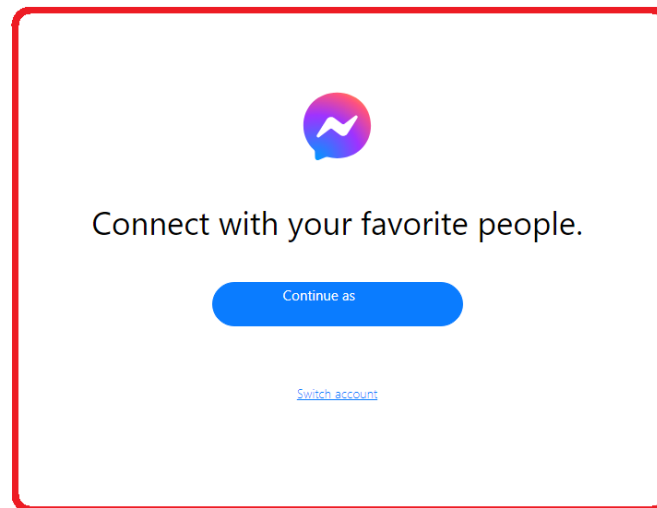


This is the sample plugin of **M.me Link** for your Website.



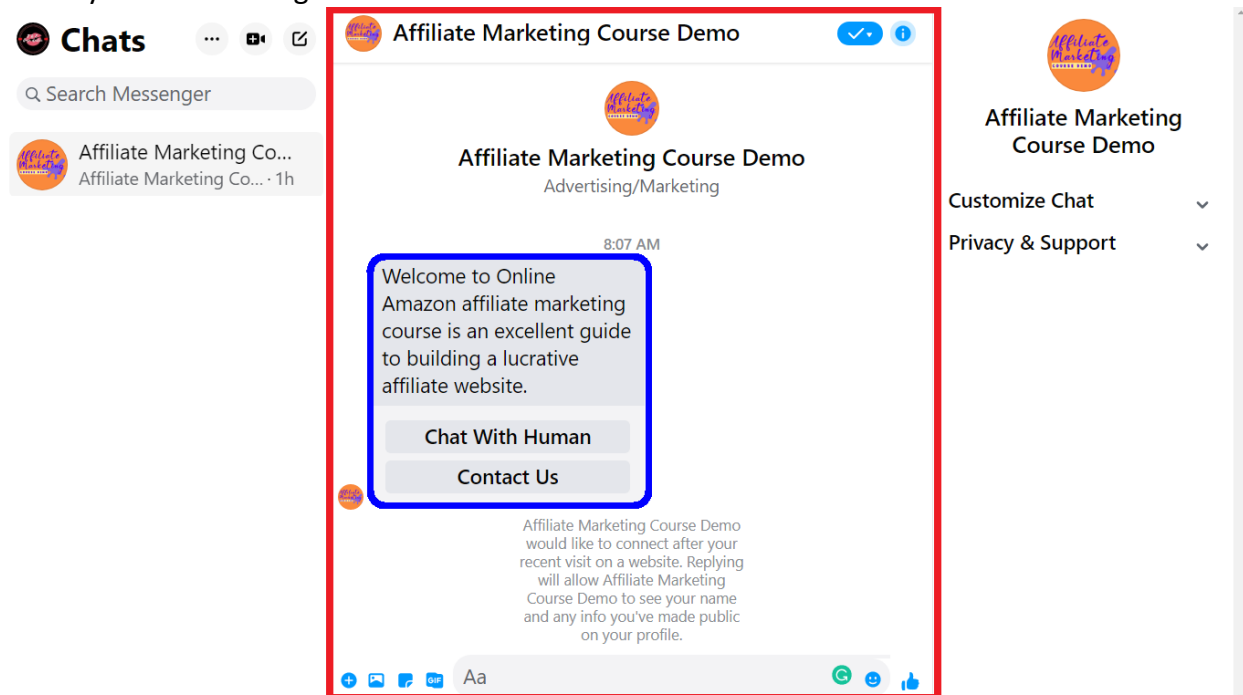
It will redirect you to your FB Messenger.





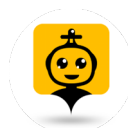
[Not on Facebook?](#)
[Forgot Password](#)
[Data Policy](#)
[Terms](#)
[Cookies Policy](#)
 © Facebook 2021

Inside your FB Messenger Bot.



Customer chat plugin

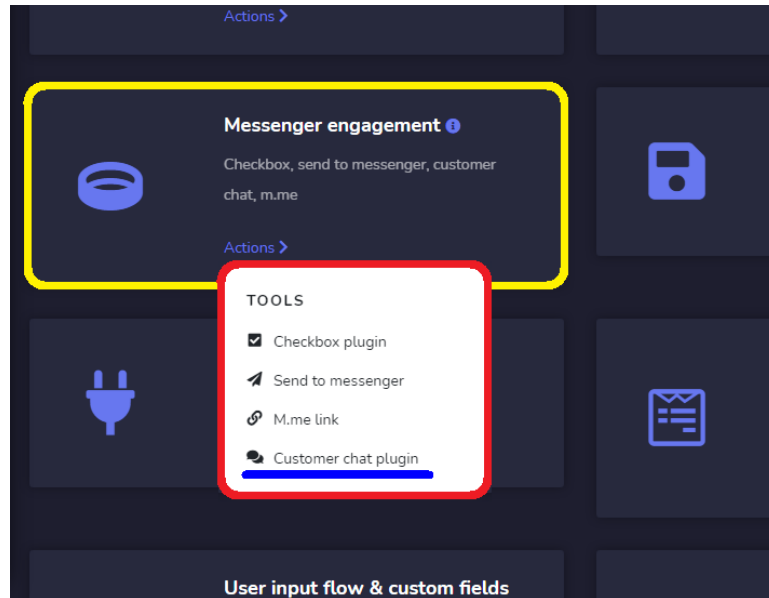
The **Customer Chat plugin** screen consists of a list of domains, you can search for a specific domain by using the search bar. You can adjust the **number** of domains to be **viewed per page**.





You can also **arrange** them in **either ascending or descending order** by selecting the **arrows** from the header.

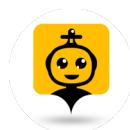
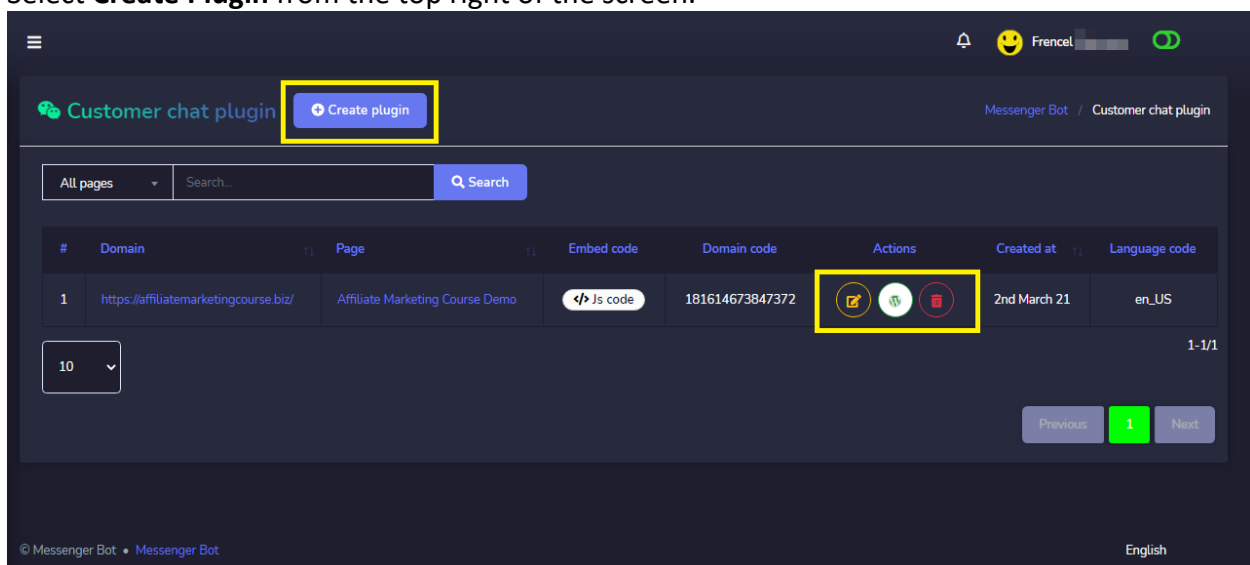
Back in the **Messenger Bot dashboard**, select **Messenger Engagement** and click **Customer Chat Plugin**.



Following actions can be performed from the Customer chat plugin view:

- **Edit the plugin:** Edit customer chat plugin and select Update plugin.
- **Download** WordPress plugin
- **Delete** the plugin.

Select **Create Plugin** from the top right of the screen.





Select the **page** for which you want to **add the plugin**. Enter the domain to be added in the **domain field**. Select the **language** and **chat plugin** loading option. Provide the **Delay**. Provide the **theme color**. Select **yes** or **no** for do not log in. Provide **greeting text if logged in or not to Facebook**. Select an **opt-in inbox confirmation message template**, **reference**, and **label**. Select **Generate embed code** option to create the **customer chat plugin**.

Edit customer chat plugin Messenger Bot / Customer chat plugin / Edit customer chat plugin

Editing customer chat plugin will require to copy new embed code and replace on website again.

Select page * ? Affiliate Marketing Course Demo Domain * ? https://affiliatemarketingcourse.biz/

Language ? English (US) Chat plugin loading ? Hide Show Fade

Loading delay (Seconds) ? 1 Theme color * ? #0c1acd Do not show if not logged in? * ? Yes No

Greeting text if logged in to Facebook * ? Maximum 80 characters Greeting text if not logged in to Facebook * ? Maximum 80 characters

Opt-in inbox confirmation message template * ? Get Started [English101_JYCGZJ] Reference * ? AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSE.BIZ/ Select label ? Create label

Add template Refresh

Generate embed code Cancel

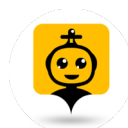
Select **Embed code - JS Code** or **Download WordPress Plugin**.

Customer chat plugin Create plugin Messenger Bot / Customer chat plugin

All pages Search... Search

#	Domain	Page	Embed code	Domain code	Actions	Created at	Language code
1	https://affiliatemarketingcourse.biz/	Affiliate Marketing Course Demo	Js code	181614673847372	Download wordpress plugin	2nd March 21	en_US

10 Previous 1 Next





In your **WordPress Dashboard**, select **Plugins**. Then, click **Add New Plugins**.

The screenshot shows the WordPress Dashboard with the 'Plugins' menu item highlighted in the left sidebar. The main content area displays a list of installed plugins. The 'Add New' button is highlighted in the top left corner of the Plugins section.

Plugin	Description	Automatic Updates
GoDaddy Pro Sites Worker	We help you efficiently manage all your WordPress websites. Updates, backups, 1-click login, migrations, security and more, on one dashboard. This service comes in two versions: standalone ManageWP service that focuses on website management, and GoDaddy Pro that includes additional tools for hosting, client management, lead generation, and more.	Enable auto-updates
Limit Login Attempts Reloaded	Limit the rate of login attempts for each IP address.	Enable auto-updates
Rank Math SEO	Rank Math is a revolutionary SEO product that combines the features of many SEO tools and lets you multiply your traffic in the easiest way possible.	Enable auto-updates


And **Upload Plugin**.

The screenshot shows the WordPress Dashboard with the 'Add Plugins' menu item highlighted in the left sidebar. The main content area displays a list of featured plugins. The 'Upload Plugin' button is highlighted in the top left corner of the Add Plugins section.

Plugin	Description	Install Now
Classic Editor	Enables the previous "classic" editor and the old-style Edit Post screen with TinyMCE, Meta Boxes, etc. Supports all plugins that extend this...	Install Now
Akismet Spam Protection	The best anti-spam protection to block spam comments and spam in a contact form. The most trusted antispam solution for WordPress and WooCommerce.	Install Now
Jetpack - WP Security, Backup, Speed, & Growth	The best WP plugin for backup, anti spam, malware scan, CDN, AMP, social search, contact form, and integrations with Woo, Facebook, Instagram, Google	Install Now
Gutenberg	The Gutenberg plugin provides editing, customization, and site building features to WordPress. This beta plugin allows you to test bleeding-edge features...	Install Now

Then **Choose File**,





Affiliate Marketing Course

2

0

New

Rank Math SEO

Cache

Howdy, Frencl

Help

Dashboard

Posts

Media

Pages

Comments

Projects

Rank Math

Appearance

Plugins 1

Installed Plugins

Add New

Users

Tools

Settings

Limit Login Attempts

Divi

Collapse menu

Add Plugins

Upload Plugin

SpinupWP — Your site is ready to go! You will need to set up email if you wish to send outgoing emails from this site. [More info >](#)

If you have a plugin in a .zip format, you may install or update it by uploading it here.

Choose File

No file chosen

Install Now

Featured

Popular


Recommended

Favorites

Keyword

Search plugins...

Plugins extend and expand the functionality of WordPress. You may automatically install plugins from the [WordPress Plugin Directory](#) or upload a plugin in .zip format by clicking the button at the top of this page.




Classic Editor

Install Now

More Details

Enables the previous "classic" editor and the old-style Edit Post screen with TinyMCE, Meta Boxes, etc. Supports all plugins that extend thi ...
By WordPress Contributors



Akismet Spam Protection

Install Now

More Details

The best anti-spam protection to block spam comments and spam in a contact form. The most trusted antispam solution for WordPress and WooCommerce.
By Automattic

click **Install now**,

Affiliate Marketing Course

2

0

New

Rank Math SEO

Cache

Howdy, Frencl

Help

Dashboard

Posts

Media

Pages

Comments

Projects

Rank Math

Appearance

Plugins 1

Installed Plugins

Add New

Users

Tools

Settings

Limit Login Attempts

Divi

Collapse menu

Add Plugins

Upload Plugin

SpinupWP — Your site is ready to go! You will need to set up email if you wish to send outgoing emails from this site. [More info >](#)

If you have a plugin in a .zip format, you may install or update it by uploading it here.

Choose File

EasyEmbedChat-372.zip

Install Now

Featured

Popular


Recommended

Favorites

Keyword

Search plugins...

Plugins extend and expand the functionality of WordPress. You may automatically install plugins from the [WordPress Plugin Directory](#) or upload a plugin in .zip format by clicking the button at the top of this page.




Classic Editor

Install Now

More Details

Enables the previous "classic" editor and the old-style Edit Post screen with TinyMCE, Meta Boxes, etc. Supports all plugins that extend thi ...
By WordPress Contributors




Akismet Spam Protection

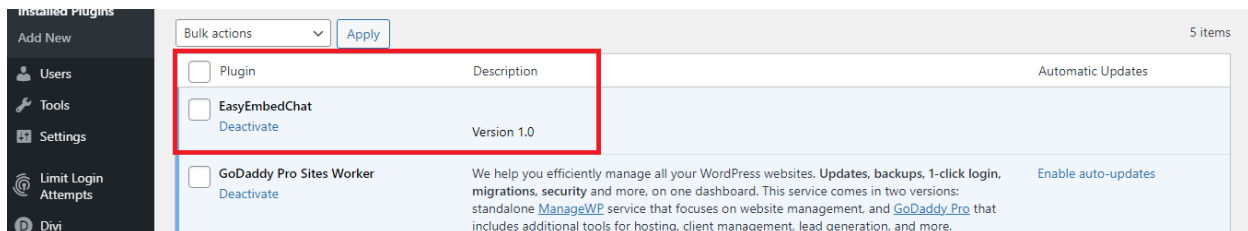
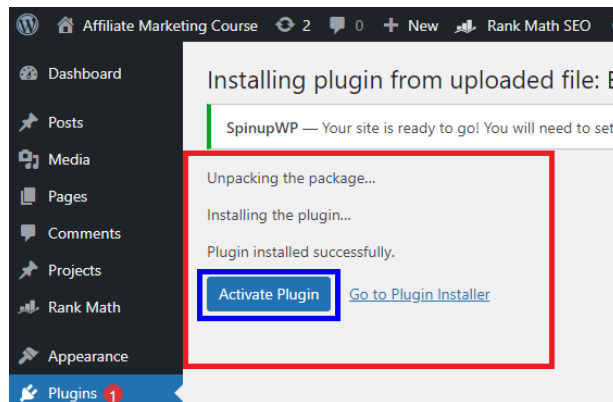
Install Now

More Details

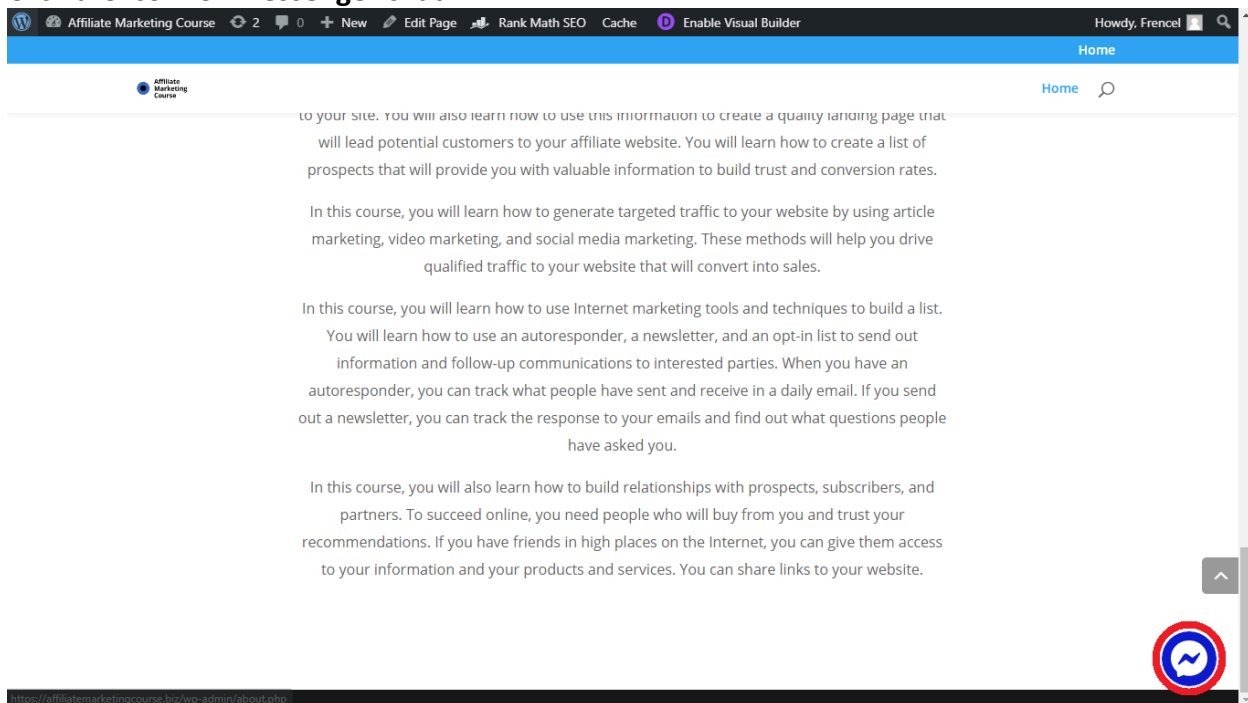
The best anti-spam protection to block spam comments and spam in a contact form. The most trusted antispam solution for WordPress and WooCommerce.
By Automattic

Click **Activate Plugin** and your Plugin is now already activated.



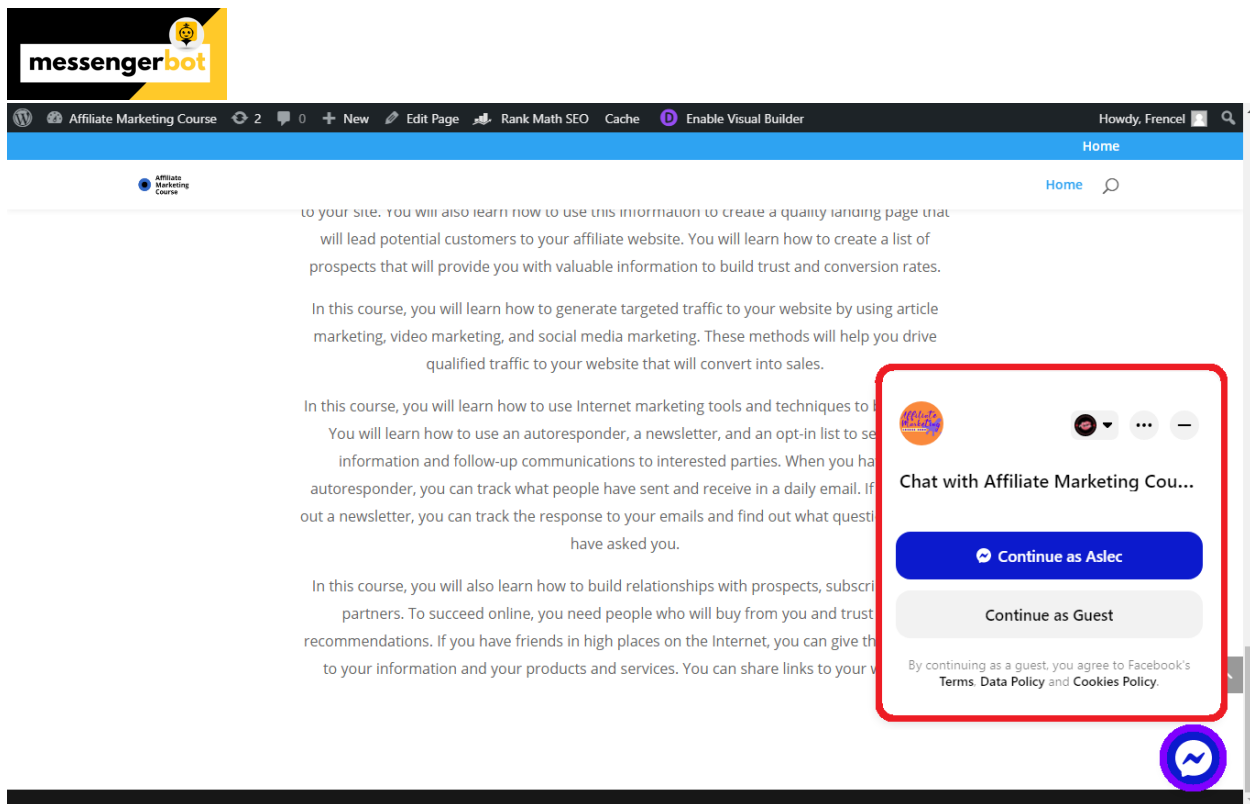


Click the icon for Messenger chat.

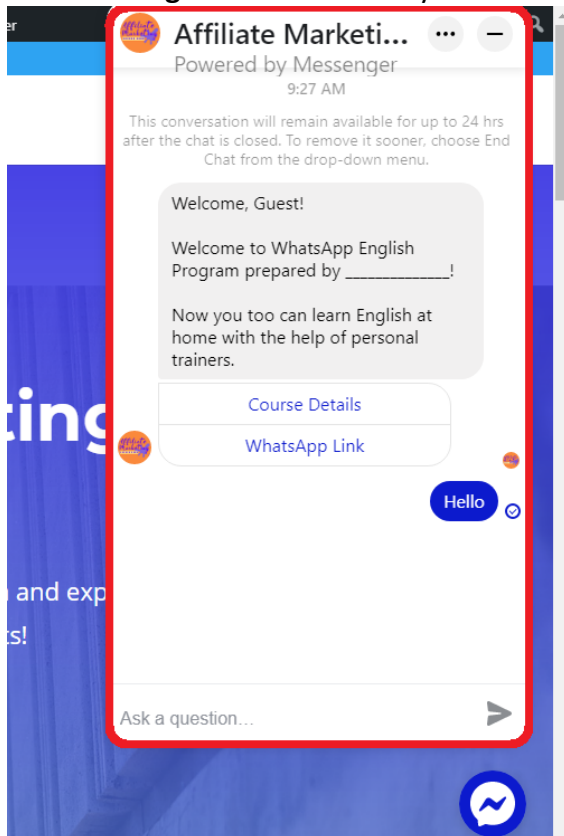


The chatbox will pop up.





The **Messenger chatbox** within your website.



Now, you're ready to create your Plugin for your website.





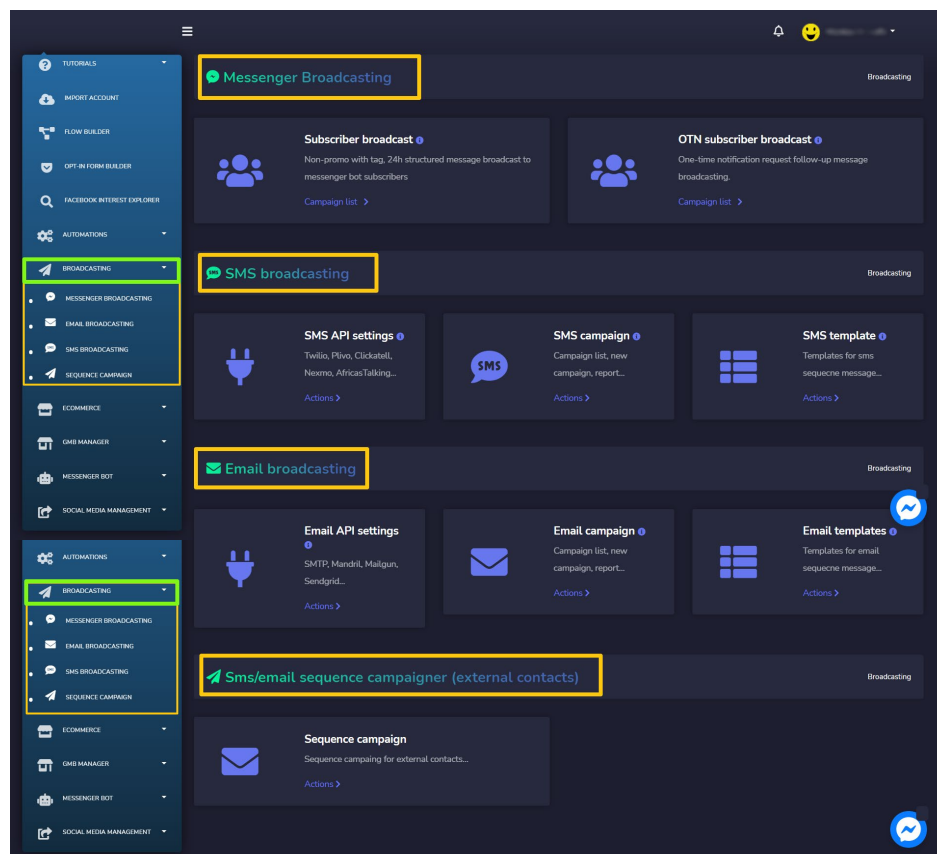
Broadcasting

The Broadcasting feature allows you to send messages in bulk and helps you broadcast via SMS and emails. You can create subscribers' campaigns and compile a list. Broadcasting helps you send promotional messages to the targeted audience. You can send emails and SMS to the people using different platforms like Twilio discussed in the [Twilio SMS campaign demo section](#) and [SMTP API](#), [Mandrill API](#), in the respective sections.

To view this section, navigate to **Broadcasting** from the **navigation menu** located at the left below the **Automations** section. Tab on **Broadcasting** and click any under it. A screen containing the following 4 sections will appear:

A screen containing the following four sections will appear:

- [Messenger broadcasting](#)
- [SMS broadcasting](#)
- [Email broadcasting](#)
- Sms/email sequence campaigner (external contacts):



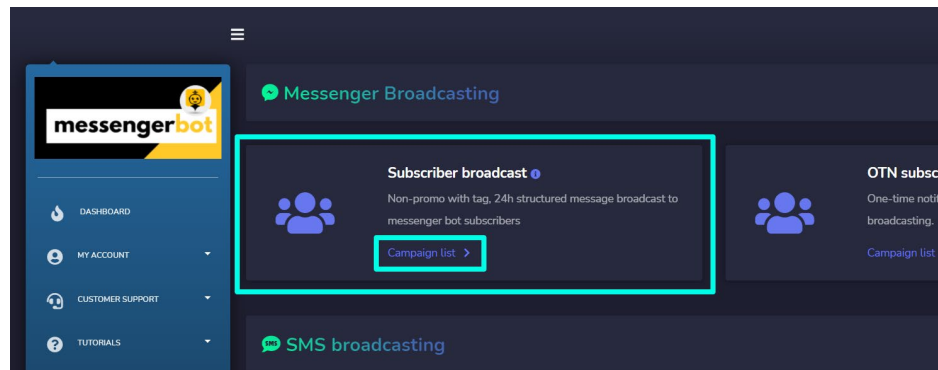


Messenger broadcasting

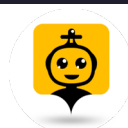
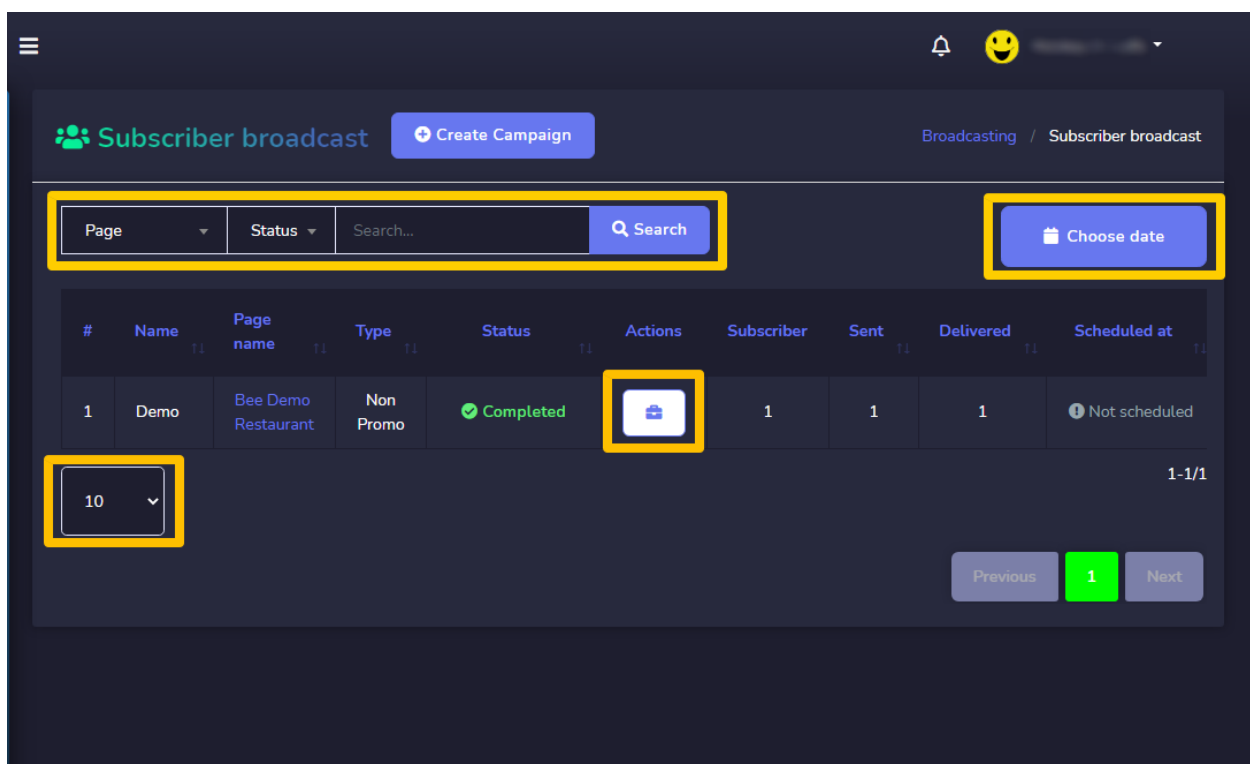
Messenger broadcasting is used to send **promo messages** and **target the real audience** for you. This section has **Subscriber broadcast** and **OTN subscriber broadcast** options. The details of this first option are given below:

Subscriber broadcast


To access the Subscriber broadcast, select the **Campaign list** option in the **Subscriber broadcast** section of **Messenger broadcasting**.



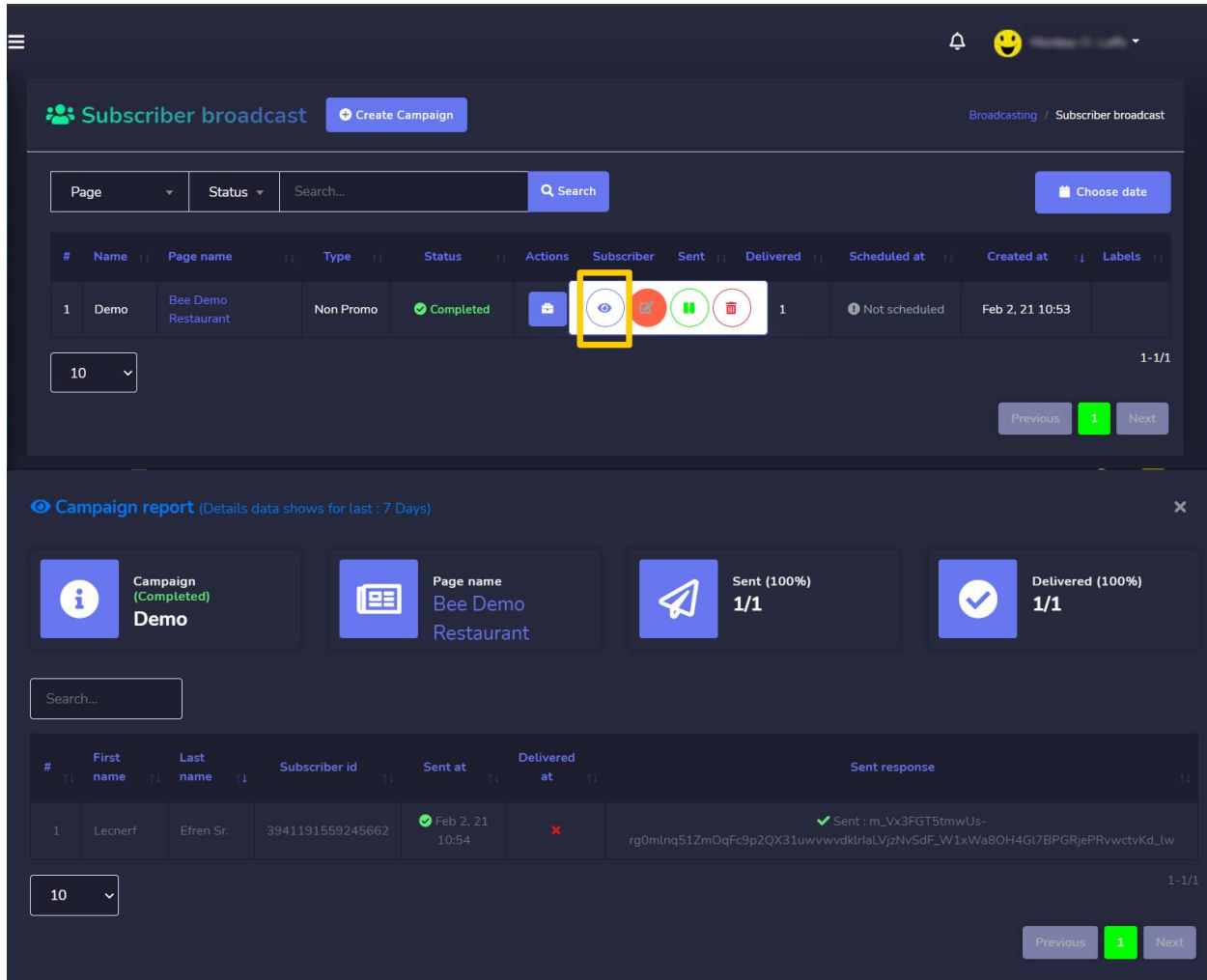
Subscriber broadcast screen consists of a **list of page numbers**, you can search for a specific **page** by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the number of **templates** to be **viewed per page**. You can also **arrange** them in either **ascending or descending order** by selecting the **arrows** from the header. You can choose the **date range** for the narrowed search. You can also sort them out based on their **status**.





To perform different actions on the templates, select  option against the template you want to perform actions on. The following are the actions that can be performed:

- View the campaign report by selecting .



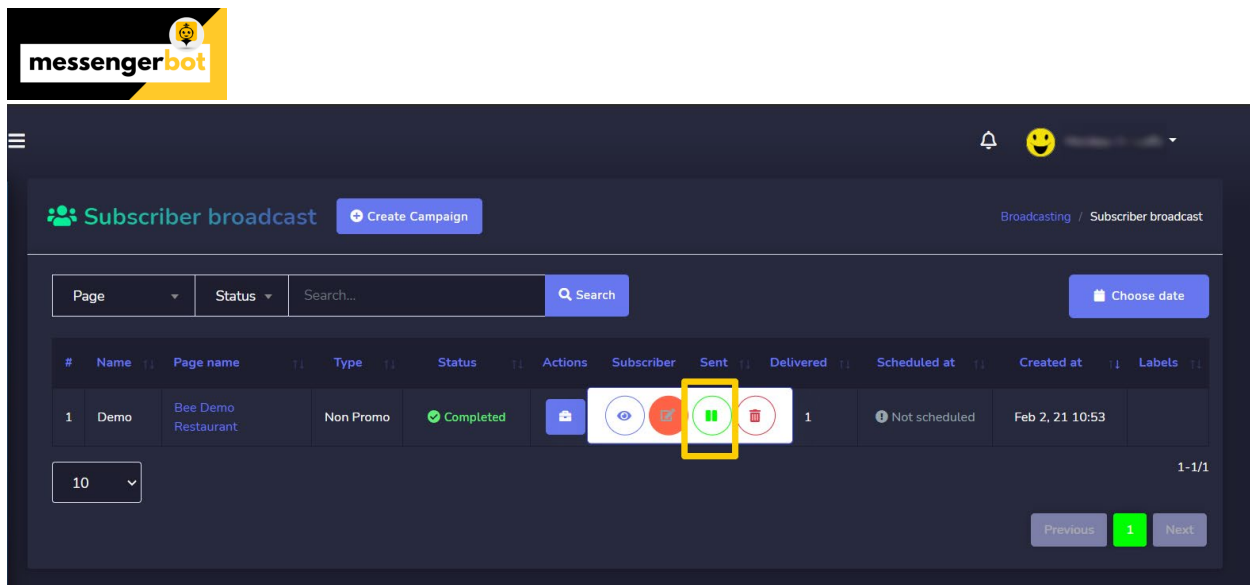
The screenshot displays the Messengerbot interface. At the top, there's a 'Subscriber broadcast' section with a 'Create Campaign' button. Below this is a table listing campaigns. The first campaign, 'Demo', is highlighted with a yellow box around its 'Actions' column, which contains an eye icon (representing 'View campaign report').

Below the table, the 'Campaign report' for the 'Demo' campaign is shown. It includes summary cards for 'Campaign (Completed) Demo', 'Page name Bee Demo Restaurant', 'Sent (100%) 1/1', and 'Delivered (100%) 1/1'. A table below these cards shows the details of the sent message, including the subscriber's name, ID, and the message content.

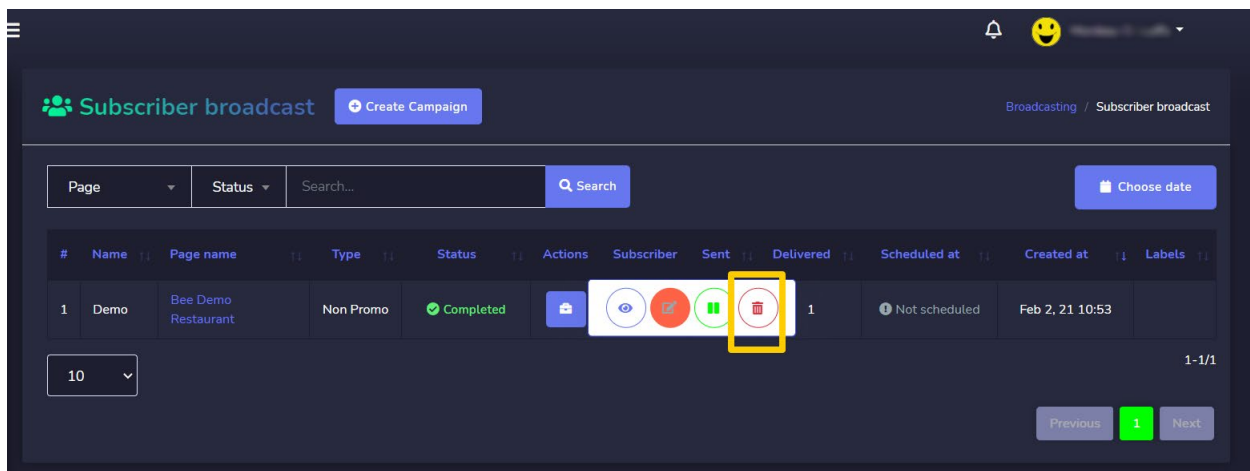
#	First name	Last name	Subscriber id	Sent at	Delivered at	Sent response
1	Lecnerf	Efren Sr.	3941191559245662	Feb 2, 21 10:54	✗	✓ Sent : m_Vx3FGT5tnwUs-rg0mlnq51ZmOqFc9p2QX31uwwvvdKlrlaLVjzNvSdF_W1xWa8OH4GI7BPGRjePRvwctvKd_lw

- Edit the campaign





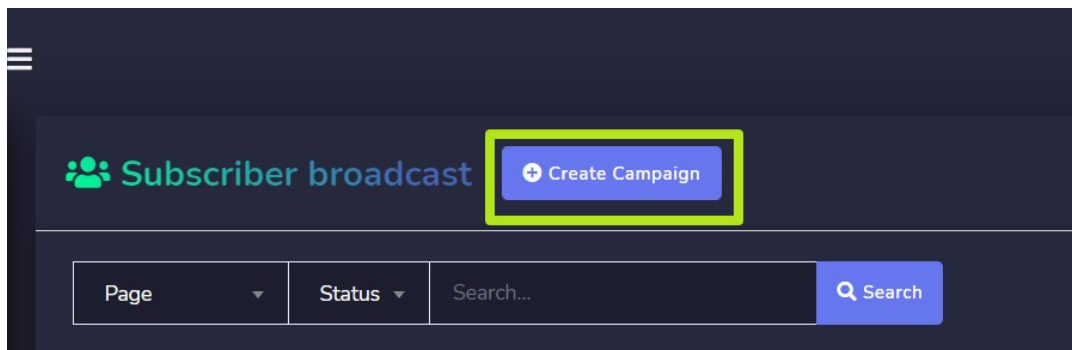
- Delete the campaign



Create campaign

You can create a new subscriber broadcast campaign by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select **Create Campaign** from the top of subscriber broadcast campaign.



- 2) An **add subscriber broadcast** screen will appear.





3) Provide the following campaign details:

- a. Campaign name
- b. Select the page for which you want to create the campaign
- c. Select a broadcast type: It can either be non-promo or 24-hour promo
- d. Select a message tag from the dropdown menu.

Add subscriber broadcast

Use broadcasting with message tag carefully. message must not contain any advertisement or promotional material & use appropriate tag that's applicable for sending message to those people. using message tag without proper reason may result in block your page's messaging option by facebook.

Campaign details

Campaign name: Demo

Select page: Bee Demo Restaurant

Broadcast type: Non Promo

Message tag: Select tag

Targeting options

Target by labels: []

Exclude by labels: []

Summary

Page subscribers: 0

Targeted reach: 0

Page Name: []

this is text post

Hi, How are you ??? Hope you fine. How we can assist you by providing information?

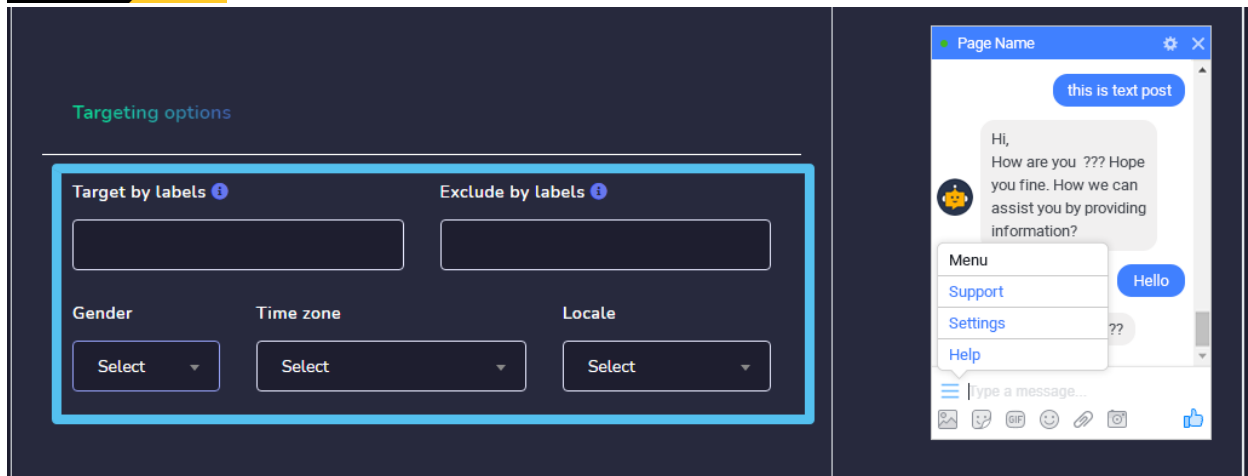
Menu

Support

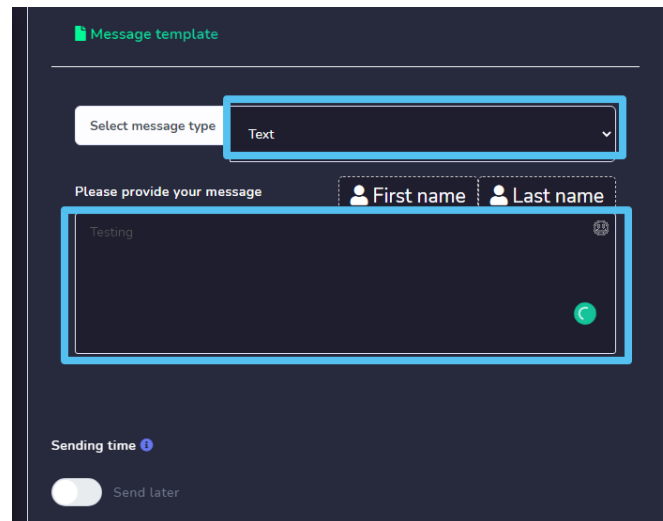
Hello

- e. Choose the targeting options for better reach to your post, based on your gender, time zone, and locale selection.

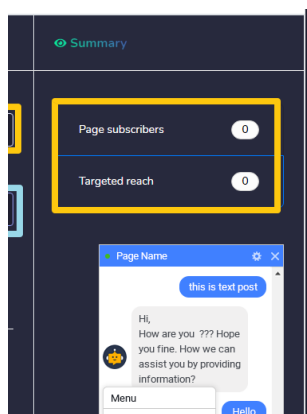




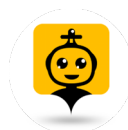
f. Choose message templates and sending time.

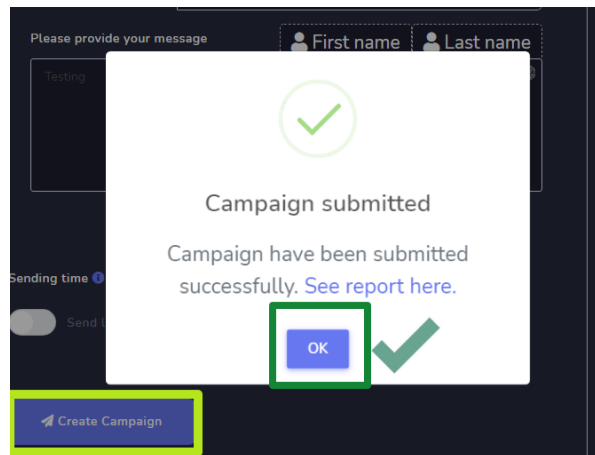


4) You can also see the subscriber numbers displaying on the right side of your screen in the **Summary** section.



Once you have provided all information, select **Create campaign**.





Note

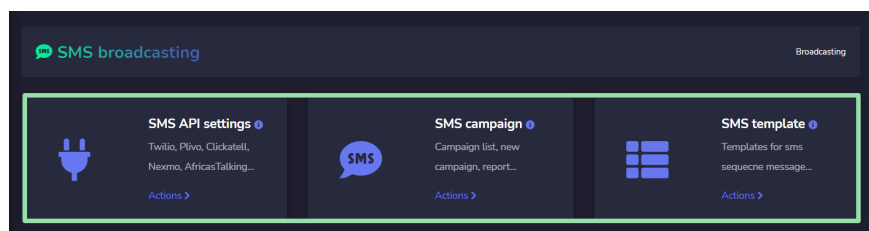
- Use broadcasting with message tag carefully.
- The message must not contain any advertisement or promotional material.
- Use an appropriate tag that's applicable for sending a message to targeted people.
- Using a message tag without proper reason may result in block your page's messaging option by Facebook.

Once you have created a campaign, it will be executed from your Facebook page account and will broadcast to multiple targeted audiences.

SMS Broadcasting

SMS broadcasting is used for sending SMS in bulk, helping in managing the SMS campaigns. This section consists of three options:

- [SMS API settings](#)
- [SMS campaign](#)
- [SMS Template](#).

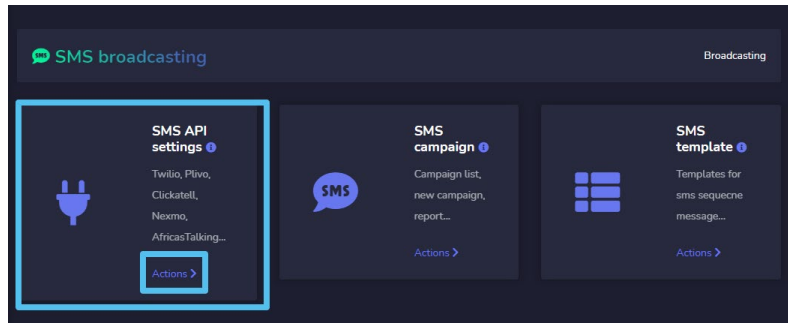




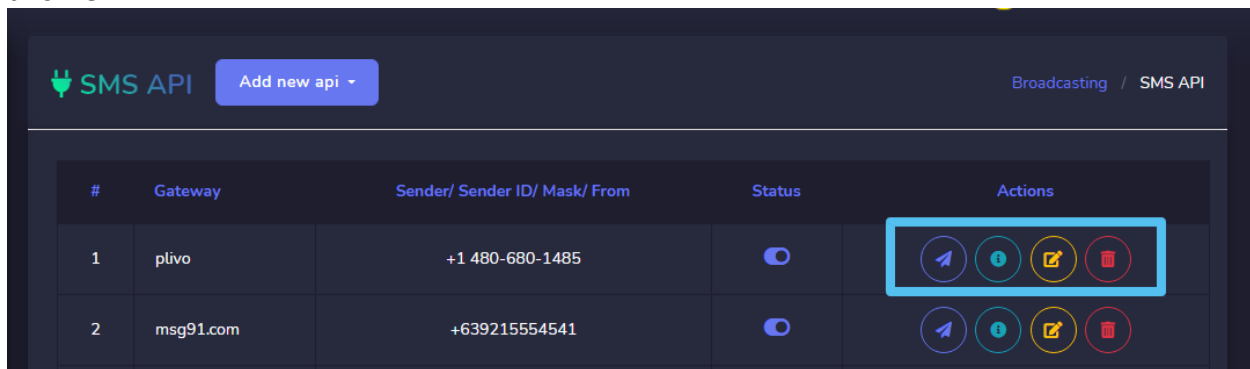
The details of these option are given below:

SMS API settings

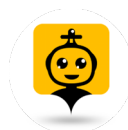
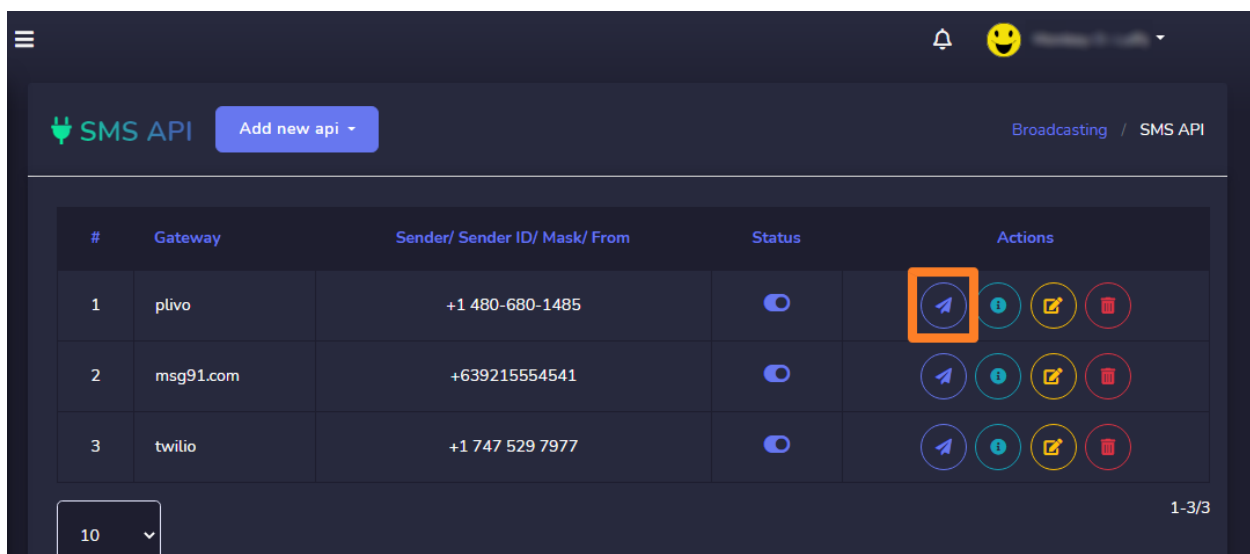
To access the SMS API settings, select the **Actions** option in **SMS API settings** section of **SMS broadcasting**.




A list of gateways will appear on the SMS API screen. You can perform following actions from this view.



- **Send SMS** by selecting the  icon against a particular gateway.





Send test SMS

Phone number

+123456789

Message



Test message


Send

Cancel

- View API information by selecting  icon against a particular gateway.
















☰

  Dashboard > SMS API

 SMS API

Add new api

Broadcasting / SMS API

#	Gateway	Sender/ Sender ID/ Mask/ From	Status	Actions
1	plivo	+1 480-680-1485		   
2	msg91.com	+639215554541		   
3	twilio	+1 747 529 7977		   

1/3



API informations

AUTH ID/ AUTH KEY/API KEY/ MSISDN/ ACCOUNT SID/ ACCOUNT ID/ USERNAME/ ADMIN

username

AUTH TOKEN/ API SECRET/ PASSWORD

123

ROUTESMS HOSTNAME

Test


API ID

SK047e35e2f229b92bd9e2a5cdbdc6b1c7

REMAINING CREDITS [PLIVO, CLICKATELL, CLICKATELL-PLATFORM, NEXMO, AFRICASTALKING.COM]

-

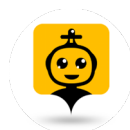
- Edit the API you want to update.



SMS API

Add new api

Broadcasting / SMS API

#	Gateway	Sender/ Sender ID/ Mask/ From	Status	Actions
1	routesms.com	340517995	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> </div>
2	plivo	+1 480-680-1485	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> </div>





[Update SMS API](#)
[Instructions](#)

Gateway name
Plivo [Required : Auth ID, Auth Token, Sender]

Auth token/ API secret/ password
ZTBINGY3YTNjZmU4ODA0OTYwNmRjYWY1ZGI0MWnk

Sender/ Sender ID/ Mask/ From
+1 480-680-1485


Auth ID/ auth key/ API key/ msisdn/ account sid/ account ID/ username/ admin
MAZTAXNMYYOOGYXMM3MW

API ID



Status
☒ Active

[Update](#)
[Cancel](#)

- Delete the API.



[Add new api](#)


#	Gateway	Sender/ Sender ID/ Mask/ From	Status
1	routesms.com		<input type="checkbox"/>
2	plivo		<input type="checkbox"/>
3	msg91.com		<input type="checkbox"/>
4	twilio		<input type="checkbox"/>

Broadcasting / SMS API

Actions





Are you sure?

If you delete this API, then all SMS Campaigns which were created with this API will be deleted. So do you really want to delete this API?

[Cancel](#)
[OK](#)

Note

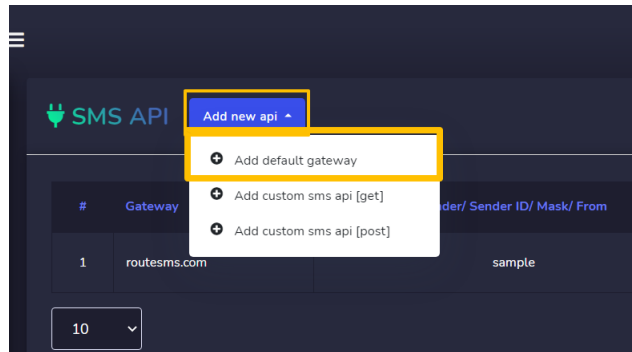
- If you delete an API, all campaigns created with that API will also be deleted

Create API

You can also create a new API from SMS API screen. Follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select [New API](#) button from the **SMS API** screen.





Test

Properties

IMPORTANT NOTE: This secret is only shown ONCE. Make note of it and store it in a safe, secure location.

FRIENDLY NAME Test

SID SKd1b706ff23a4d84ed1c999bcd44c256

KEY TYPE Standard

SECRET hOw4HsKHxKnePc7LiRnWF04SdzMuTC63

☐ Got it! I have saved my API Key Sid and Secret in a safe place to use in my application.

Done

- 2) Provide the **gateway name**.
- 3) Provide the **Authentication key/ API Key**.
- 4) Enter your **secret password** you want to set.

New SMS API

Instructions

Gateway name

Twilio [Required : Account Sid, Auth Token, From]

Auth ID/ auth key/ API key/ msisdn/ account sid/ account ID/ username/ admin

username

Auth token/ API secret/ password

hOw4HsKHxKnePc7LiRnWF04SdzMuTC63

API ID

SKd1b706ff23a4d84ed1c999bcd44c256

Sender/ Sender ID/ Mask/ From

ACd7fc3818d40171dc0c246c4b8ddc63fd

Status

☒ Active

Save

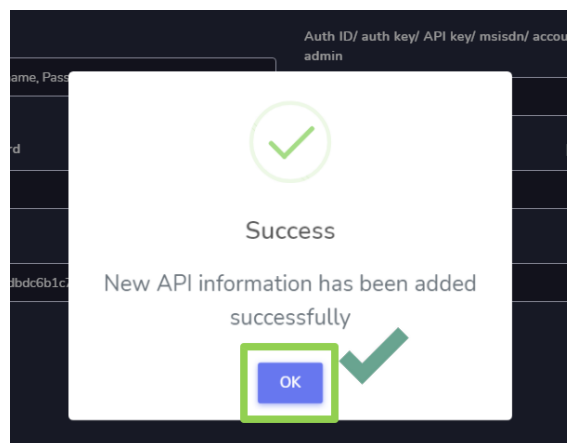
Cancel

- 5) Enter the **ID** of your API.



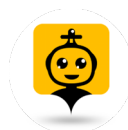
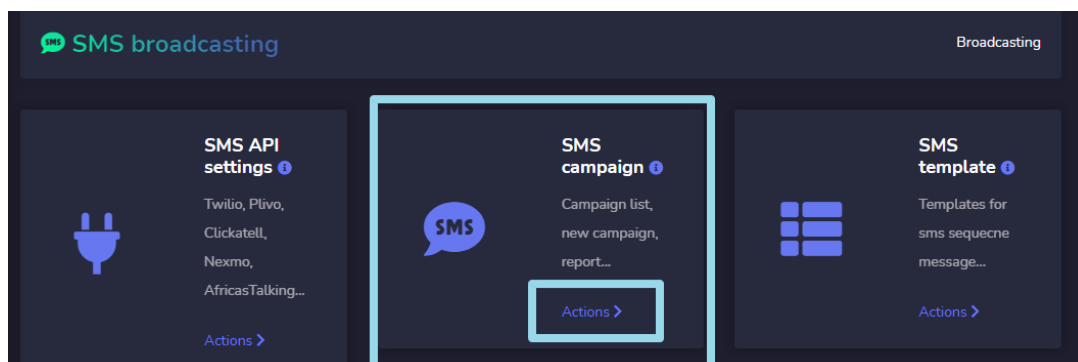


- 6) Provide the **Sender ID**.
- 7) Set the **status** of your API.
- 8) Once you have done all these settings, click on **Save**.



SMS campaign


To access the SMS campaign, select the **Actions** option in **SMS API settings** section of **SMS broadcasting**.






SMS campaign screen consists of a **list of SMS API**, you can search for a specific API by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number of APIs** to be **viewed per page**. You can choose the **date range** for narrowed search. You can also sort them out based on their **status**.

#	Name	SMS API	Total sent	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Created at
1	New Campaign	routesms.com : 340517995	0/6		Completed	Jan 16, 2021 18:00	Feb 2, 2021 11:12
2	What is Messenger Bot?	plivo : +1 480-680-1485	1/5		Completed	Not scheduled	Jan 24, 2021 02:54
3	What is Messenger Bot?	plivo : +1 480-680-1485	1/5		Completed	Not scheduled	Jan 24, 2021 00:23
4	What is Messenger Bot?	twilio : +1 747 529 7977	3/5		Completed	Not scheduled	Jan 14, 2021 01:34

To perform different actions on the templates, select  option against the template you want to perform actions on. The following are the actions that can be performed:

- View the report by selecting .

#	Name	SMS API	Total sent	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Created at
1	SMS Demo campaign	twilio : +1 747 529 7977	0/6		Completed	Mar 18, 2021 16:40	Mar 16, 2021 16:40





Campaign report

Campaign (Completed)
New Campaign

SMS API
routesms.com : 340517995

Sent
0/6

Search...

#	First name	Last name	Phone	Sent at	Response
1			23423445 34455221 34389019	Feb 2, 2021 11:15	
2	Vinsmoke		+639155662701	Feb 2, 2021 11:15	
3	Nico		+639190951474	Feb 2, 2021 11:15	
4	Son		+639667668942	Feb 2, 2021 11:15	
5	Mickey		+639474943427	Feb 2, 2021 11:15	
6	Frencel		+639215554541	Feb 2, 2021 11:15	

10 1-6/6

Previous 1 Next


Original message

This is a new campaign

- Edit the campaign

SMS campaign **New SMS campaign** Broadcasting / SMS campaign

Status Search... Search Choose date

#	Name	SMS API	Total sent	Actions	Scheduled at	Created at
1	SMS Demo campaign	twilio : +1 747 529 7977	0/6		Mar 18, 2021 16:40	Mar 16, 2021 16:40


10 1-1/1

Previous 1 Next

- Delete the campaign

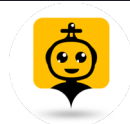
SMS campaign **New SMS campaign** Broadcasting / SMS campaign

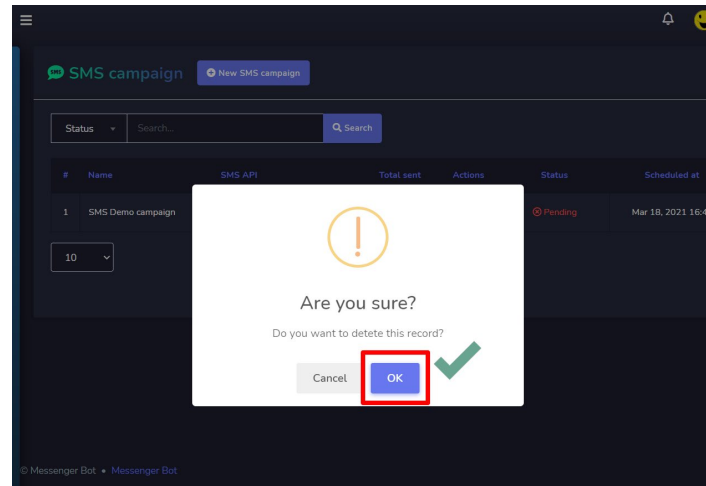
Status Search... Search Choose date

#	Name	SMS API	Total sent	Actions	Scheduled at	Created at
1	SMS Demo campaign	twilio : +1 747 529 7977	0/6		Mar 18, 2021 16:40	Mar 16, 2021 16:40

10 1-1/1

Previous 1 Next

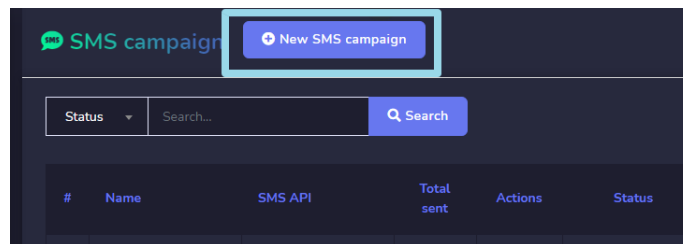




Create sms campaign


You can create a new sms campaign by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select  option from the top of the SMS campaign screen.



- 2) A **Create sms campaign** screen will appear. Provide the campaign details which include:
 - a. Campaign name
 - b. SMS API (to be selected from dropdown)
 - c. Message





[Broadcasting](#) / [SMS campaigns](#) / [Create SMS campaign](#)

Create SMS campaign

Campaign details

Campaign name

SMS API

Message ⓘ

This is a new campaign

[Messenger subscribers](#)

[SMS subscriber \(external\)](#)

- 3) Provide the information of **Messenger subscribers** and **SMS subscribers (external)**.
- 4) You can also choose the targeting options for a better reach.

Messenger subscribers

Page subscribers 0

Targetted reach 0

Select page

Targeting options ⓘ

Target labels ⓘ

Exclude labels ⓘ

Gender

Time zone

Locale

SMS subscriber (external)

Contact numbers 5

Manual numbers 1

Select contacts

Numbers to send ⓘ


23423445

34455221

34389019

- 5) You can choose a sending **time**.
- 6) Once all information is added, select **Create campaign**.





Sending time ⓘ

☐ Send now

Country code ⓘ

Actions

Schedule time ⓘ

Time zone

(GMT-8:00) America/Los_Angeles (Pacific Standard Time)

Create Campaign

Cancel

Campaign submitted

Campaign have been submitted successfully. [See report here.](#)

OK

Twilio SMS campaign Demo

To start an SMS campaign, you need to get an API key for integration from Twilio. You can access Twilio from your web browser. Follow the steps given below:

1. Open the following link in your browser: <https://www.twilio.com/>



Already have an account? [Login](#)

Get started with a free Twilio account.
No credit card required.

WITH TWILIO YOU CAN BUILD:

- ✓ SMS marketing
- ✓ Omnichannel contact center
- ✓ Call tracking
- ✓ Web chat
- ✓ Push notifications
- ✓ Alerts and notifications
- ✓ Phone verification

First Name *

Last Name *

Email *

Password (14+ Characters) *

☐ I accept the [Twilio Terms of Service](#)
and have read the [Twilio Privacy Statement](#)

[Start your free trial](#)

- The Twilio **login** screen appears. You need to sign up for first time login.

credit card required.

First Name *

Test

Last Name *

Demo

Email *

test_demo1245@gmail.com

Password (14+ Characters) *


..... Show

☒ I accept the [Twilio Terms of Service](#)
and have read the [Twilio Privacy Statement](#)

[Start your free trial](#)

- You will also receive an **authentication email**. Follow the link, it will redirect to the dashboard.
- Now you need to reach the **Settings** option from the left navigation menu.
- A sub menu will appear, now select **API Keys** option. A list of API Keys will appear on the screen. You need to create a new key.





twilio

My first Twilio... TRIAL Settings / Upgrade Project Go to...

Dashboard
Billing
Usage
Notification Preferences
Settings
General
Subaccounts
Manage Users
API Keys
Credentials
Connect Apps
Audit Events
Upgrade
Trust Hub Beta
Account Insights Beta

General Settings

Properties

PROJECT NAME My first Twilio project

ACCOUNT SID ACd7fc3818d40171dc0c246c4b8ddc63fd

Require Two-Factor Authentication (2FA)

Add an extra layer of protection to Twilio accounts. Once you enable 2FA, all users accessing this account must enter verification codes sent on the channel they prefer. To enable 2FA for yourself, go to [User Settings](#).

☐ ONCE PER COMPUTER We will only ask for a verification code once every 30 days on trusted devices

☐ EVERY LOG-IN We will always ask for a verification code

☒ DISABLED We will not require a verification code (If you are accessing an upgraded/paid account, this option will not be available after Oct 12, 2020 as Twilio is requiring 2FA for paid accounts)

API Credentials

LIVE Credentials [Learn about REST API Credentials](#)


ACCOUNT SID
ACd7fc3818d40171dc0c246c4b8ddc63fd
Used to exercise the REST API

AUTH TOKEN
.....
[Request a Secondary Token](#)

TEST Credentials [Learn about Test Credentials](#)

TEST ACCOUNT SID
ACcdbedc7071803e3fe8fc2a53875f8b9d
Used to exercise the REST API

TEST AUTH TOKEN
.....
Keep this somewhere safe and secure

6. Select the  icon from the table header. You can provide a **friendly name** for your key and the **type** of your key.


twilio

My first Twilio... TRIAL Settings / Upgrade Project Go to...

Dashboard
Billing
Usage
Notification Preferences
Settings
General
Subaccounts
Manage Users
API Keys
Credentials
Connect Apps
Audit Events
Upgrade
Trust Hub Beta
Account Insights Beta

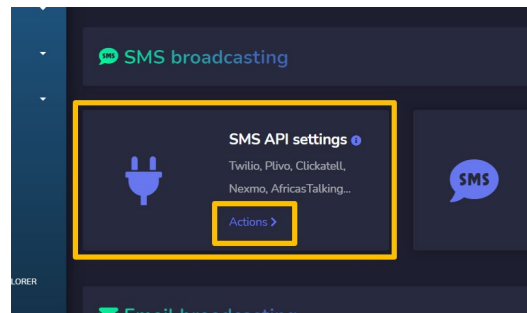
API Keys

API Keys are revokable credentials for the Twilio API. You can use API Keys to authenticate to the REST API using basic auth, with `username=keySid` and `password=keySecret`. And, you can use API Keys to sign Access Tokens, which are used by Twilio's Real-Time Communications SDKs. Access Tokens are short-lived credentials that can be distributed safely to client-side applications. [Learn more](#)

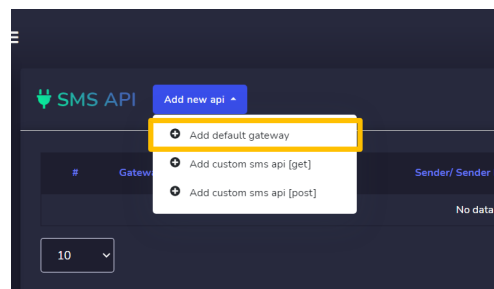
 API KEY	TYPE	DATE CREATED
Demo SID 5K0ae4706e08ee6350f814d5cf5b8c4fbd	Standard	2021-02-03 UTC 08:10:44

7. Select **Create API Key**. A new API key will be generated, copy it to use.





9. Select **New API** button from the top of the screen.
10. A **New SMS API** modal will appear, select the gateway, provide the API Key in the field.



11. Provide the **authentication token**, **sender ID** and **user name**. Hit **Save**.

New SMS API Instructions

Gateway name: Twilio [Required : Account Sid, Auth Token, From]

Auth token/ API secret/ password: hOw4HsKH-XKnePc7LRnWF04SdzMuTC63

Sender/ Sender ID/ Mask/ From: ACd7fc3818d40171dc0c246c4b8ddc63fd

Auth ID/ auth key/ API key/ msisdn/ account sid/ account ID/ username/ admin: username

API ID: SKd1b706f23a4d84ed1c999bcd44c256

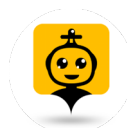
Status: ☒ Active

Save Cancel

Success

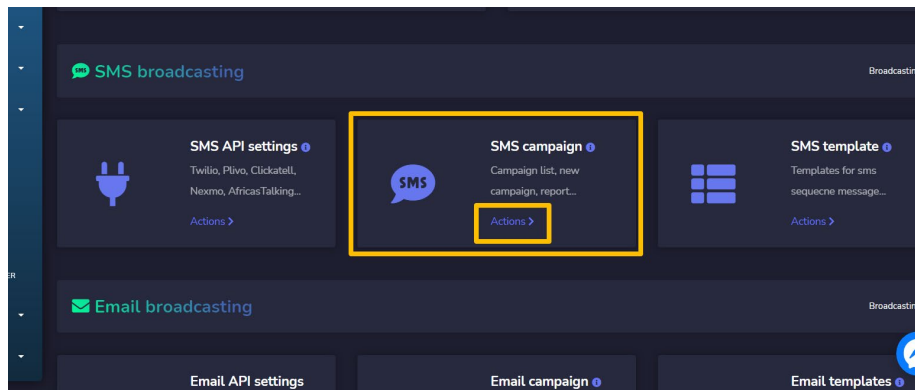
New API information has been added successfully

OK

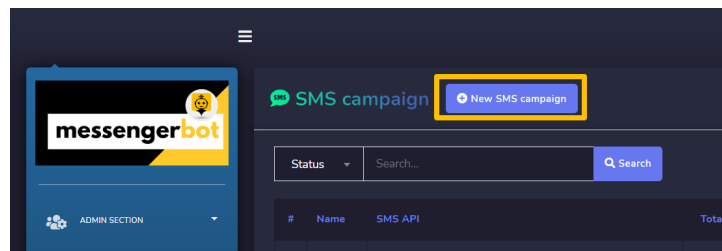




12. Now this **SMS API**, will help you make a **new SMS campaign**. Go to SMS campaign, then select **Actions**.



13. Select **New SMS campaign** from **SMS campaign** screen.



14. A **Create SMS campaign** view will appear. Provide the **campaign name** and **message**.
15. Now Select the **SMS API** from the dropdown menu which you created in **Step 11**.

Create SMS campaign

Campaign details

Campaign name: Demo

SMS API: twilio: ACd7fc3818d40171dc0c246c4b8ddc63fd

Message: Test message

Messenger subscribers: Page subscribers (0), Targetted reach (0)

SMS subscriber (external): Contact numbers (0), Manual numbers (0)

16. Select the **page** for which you want to make this campaign. A number of subscribers will appear in the toll.





17. You can also choose the **targeting options**.
18. You can select the number for **Contact** field either manually or import the **CSV** file and add your country code.

Messenger subscribers

Page subscribers 0 Targetted reach 0

Select page

Select page

Targeting options ⓘ

Target labels ⓘ Exclude labels ⓘ

Gender Time zone Locale

Select Select Select

Sending time ⓘ

Send now

Country code ⓘ

Actions

Create Campaign

Cancel

SMS subscriber (external)

Contact numbers 0 Manual numbers 0

Select contacts

Numbers to send ⓘ

Upload csv

You can type comma separated numbers with country code here, you can also import numbers from a csv file and numbers will be merged here.

19. Select a **sending time**, along with **time zone**.
20. Select **Create campaign**.

Gender Time zone Locale

Male GMT +11... Ukrainian

January - 2021

Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat
27	28	29	30	31	1	2
3	4	5	6	7	8	9
10	11	12	13	14	15	16
17	18	19	20	21	22	23
24	25	26	27	28	29	30
31	1	2	3	4	5	6

18:00

19:00

20:00

21:00

22:00

23:00

Country code ⓘ

92

Actions

Time zone

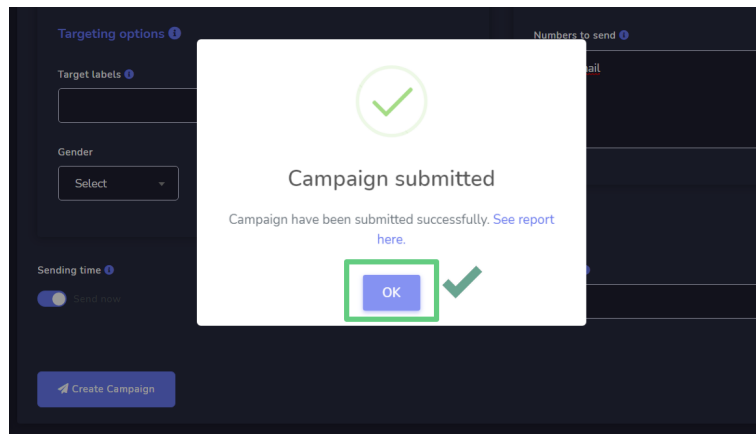
2021-01-16 18:00:56

(GMT-8:00) America/Los_Angeles (Pacific Standard Time)

Create Campaign

Cancel



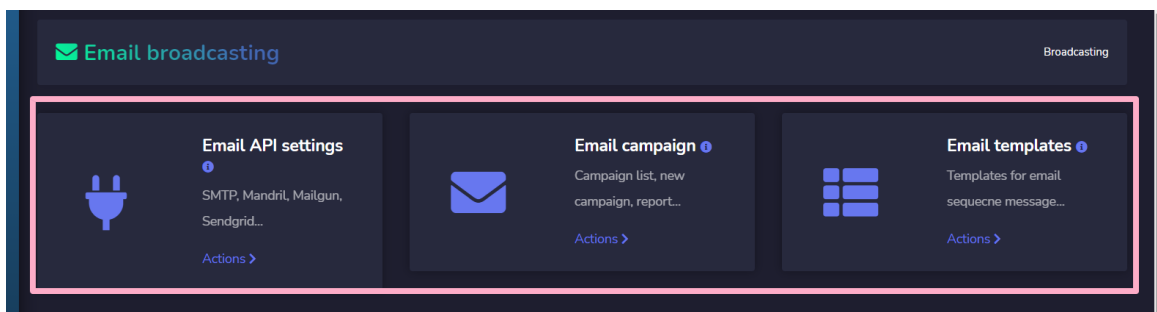


Once you have created a campaign, it will send SMS to all chosen people and broadcast the messages to them.

Email broadcasting

Email broadcasting is used for sending Email in bulk, helping in managing the Email campaigns. This section consists of three options.

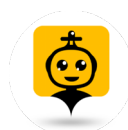
- Email API settings
- Email campaign
- Email Template

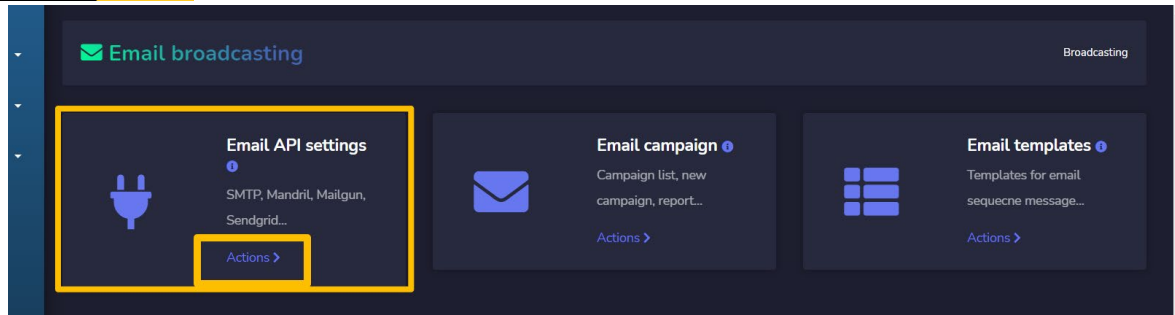


The details of these options are given below:

Email API settings

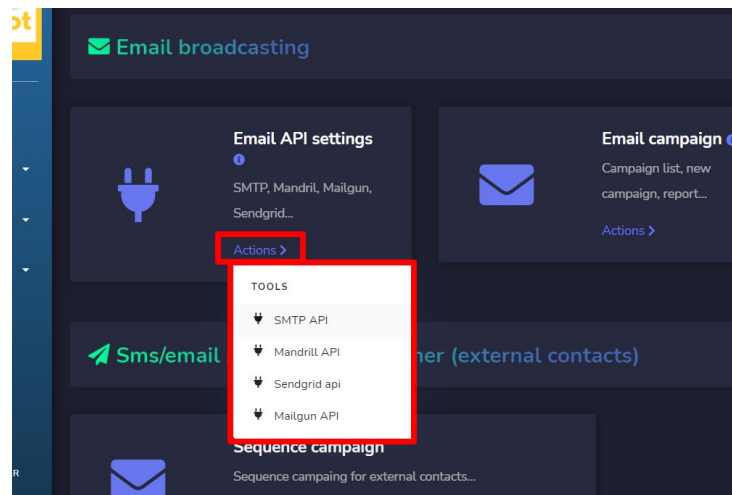
To access the Email API settings, select the **Actions** option in **Email API settings** section of **Email broadcasting**.





A list of four following options will appear:

- SMTP API
- Mandill API
- Sengrid API
- Mailgun API

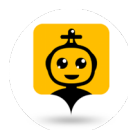


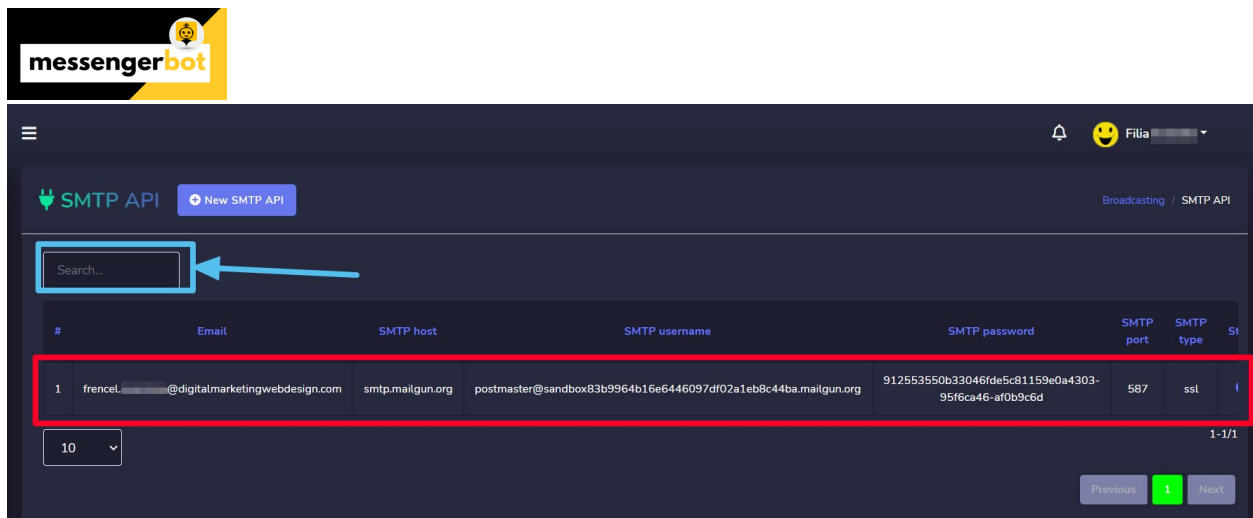
Note

- It is mandatory to have accounts in all four options to make the integration possible.

SMTP API

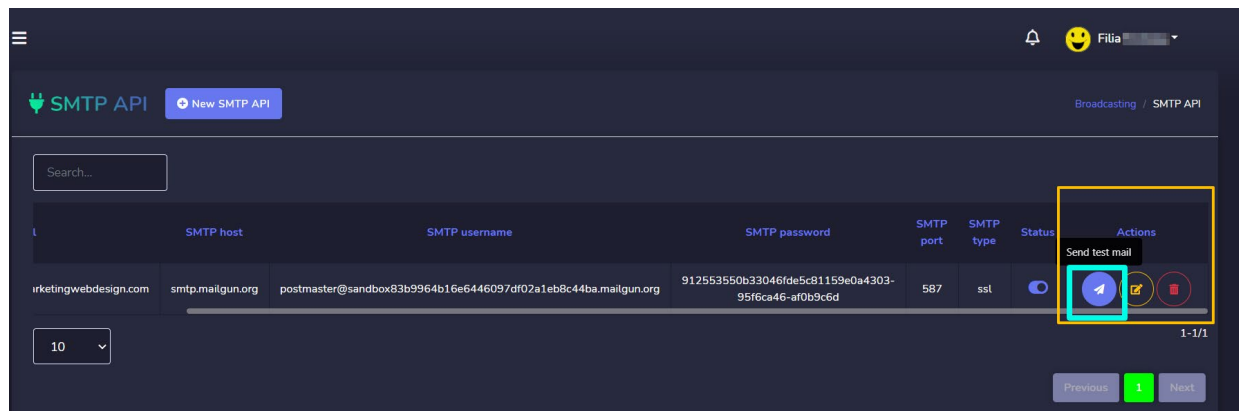
A list of gateways will appear on the SMTP API screen. You can search for a particular email address by using the **search bar**.





You can perform the following actions from this view.

- Send test email by selecting the  icon against a particular email address.



Send test email

Recipient email

deanne@messengerbot.app

Subject

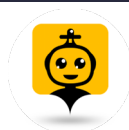
Test message

Message

Hello, this is for test only.

Send

Close







- Edit the API you want to update.

SMTP API

New SMTP API

Broadcasting / SMTP API

Search...

	SMTP host	SMTP username	SMTP password	SMTP port	SMTP type	Status	Actions
marketingwebdesign.com	smtp.mailgun.org	postmaster@sandbox83b9964b16e6446097df02a1eb8c44ba.mailgun.org	912553550b33046fde5c81159e0a4303-95f6ca46-af0b9c6d	587	ssl	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	 

10

Previous 1 Next

Update SMTP API

Email address: frencel. @digitalmarketingwebdesign.com

SMTP host: smtp.mailgun.org

SMTP port: 587

SMTP username: postmaster@sandbox83b9964b16e6446097df02a1eb8c44ba.mailgun.org

SMTP password: 912553550b33046fde5c81159e0a4303-95f6ca46

SMTP type: Ssl

Status: ☒ Active

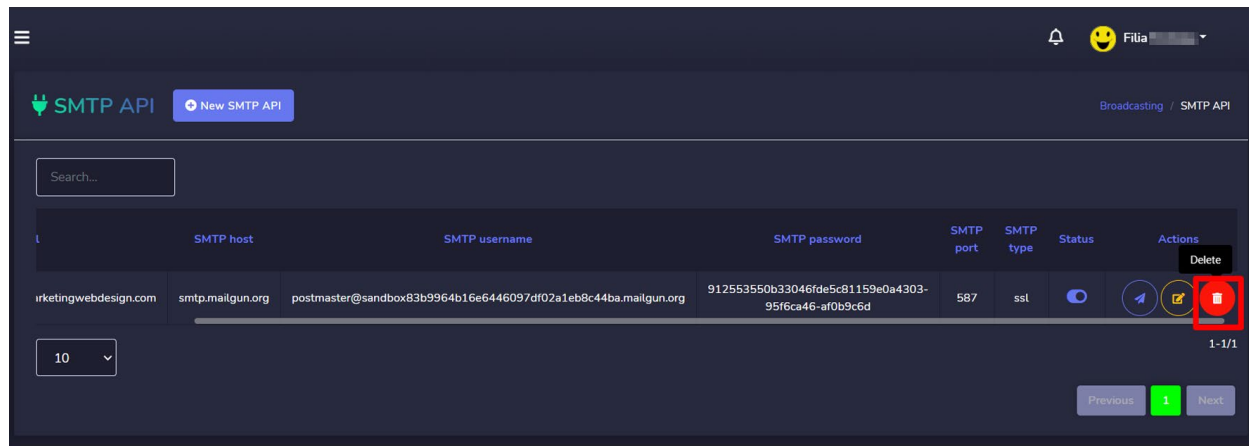
Sender name:

Update

Close

- Delete the API.





Are you sure?

Do you want to delete this record?

Cancel

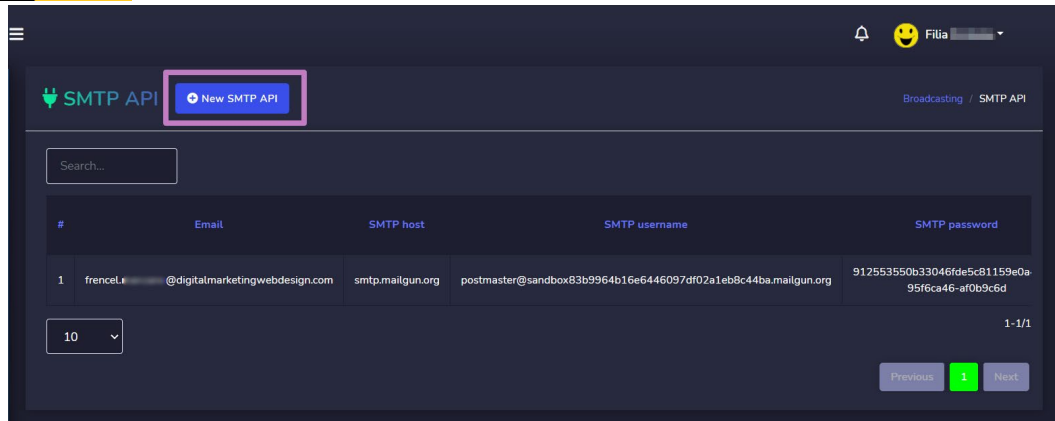
OK

Create SMTP API

You can create a new SMTP API by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select the **+ New SMTP API** from the **SMTP API** screen.
- 2) Provide the **New SMTP API** information. Enter the **Email address**.
- 3) Enter the **SMTP host** and **port information**.
- 4) Provide the **SMTP username** and **SMTP password**.
- 5) Select the **SMTP type** from the dropdown menu.
- 6) Provide the **sender name**.
- 7) Select the **status** of the SMTP API.
- 8) Select **Save** to create a new SMTP API.





SMTP API

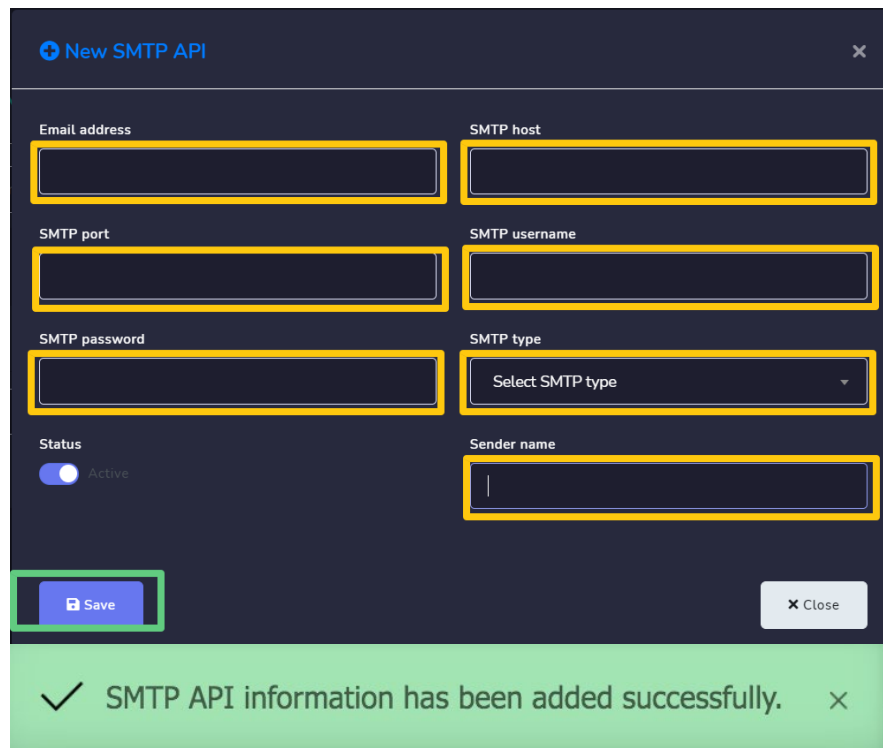
New SMTP API

Search...

#	Email	SMTP host	SMTP username	SMTP password
1	frenchel...@digitalmarketingwebdesign.com	smtp.mailgun.org	postmaster@sandbox83b9964b16e6446097df02a1eb8c44ba.mailgun.org	912553550b33046fde5c81159e0a95f6ce46-af0b9c6d

10

Previous 1 Next



New SMTP API

Email address

SMTP host

SMTP port

SMTP username

SMTP password

SMTP type

Status

Sender name

Save

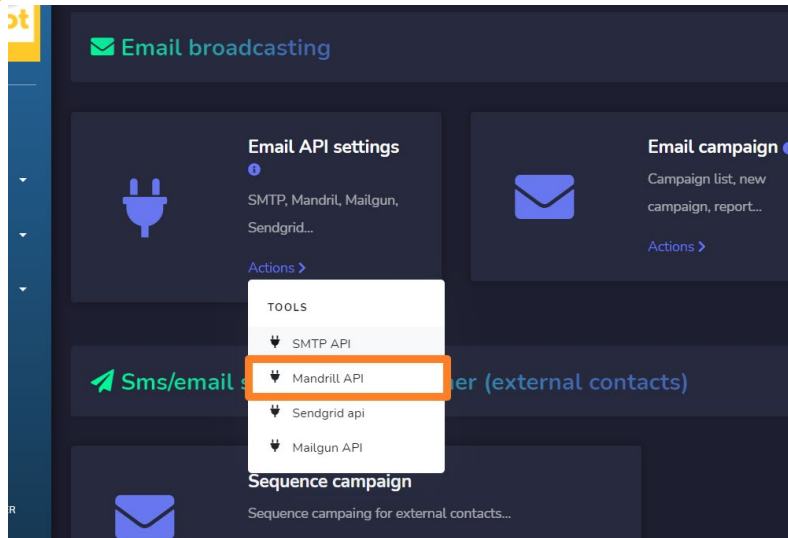
Close

✓ SMTP API information has been added successfully.

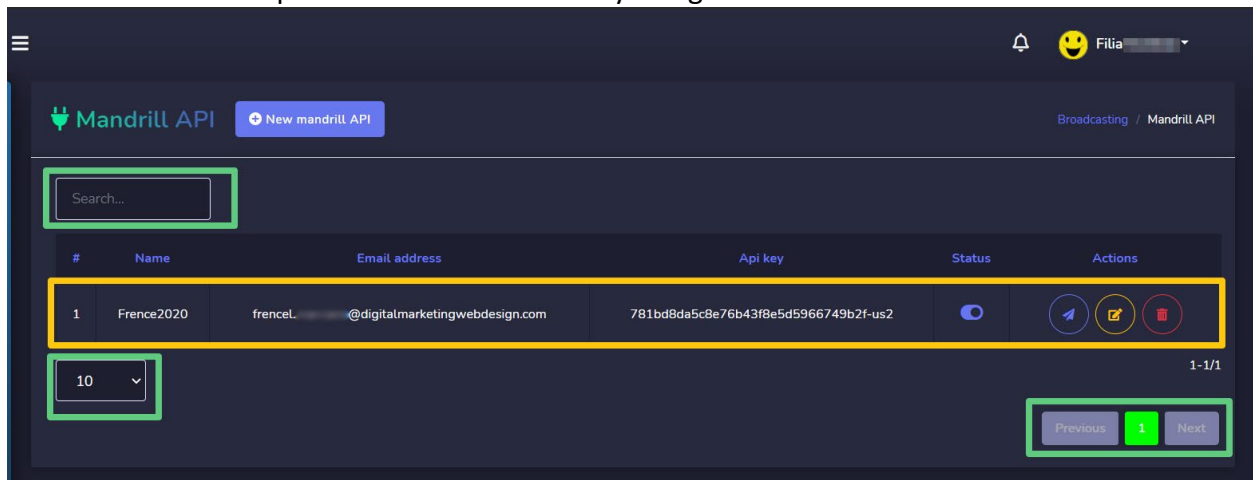
Mandrill API

A list of email addresses will appear on the Mandrill API screen.



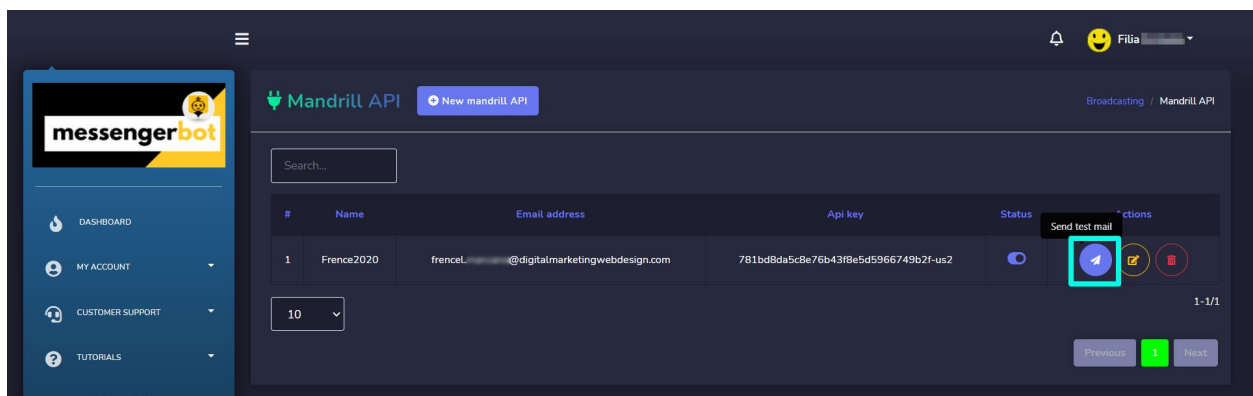


You can search for a particular email address by using the **search bar**.



You can perform the following actions from this view.

- Send test email by selecting the  icon against a particular email address.





Send test email

Recipient email:

Subject:

Message:

Hello, this is for test only.

- Edit the API you want to update.

Mandrill API

New mandrill API

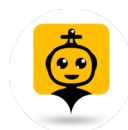
Broadcasting / Mandrill API



Search...

#	Name	Email address	Api key	Status	Actions
1	Frence2020	frenceL...@digitalmarketingwebdesign.com	781bd8da5c8e76b43f8e5d5966749b2f-us2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<div><div><div></div></div><div><div></div></div><div><div></div></div></div>

10

Previous 1 Next



 Update mandrill API 


Your name


Email address

Api key

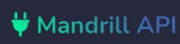

Status




☒ Active

 Update

 Close

- Delete the API.

  Broadcasting / Mandrill API

#	Name	Email address	Api key	Status	Actions
1	Frence2020	frenceL. @digitalmarketingwebdesign.com	781bd8da5c8e76b43f8e5d5966749b2f-us2		 

10 ▾

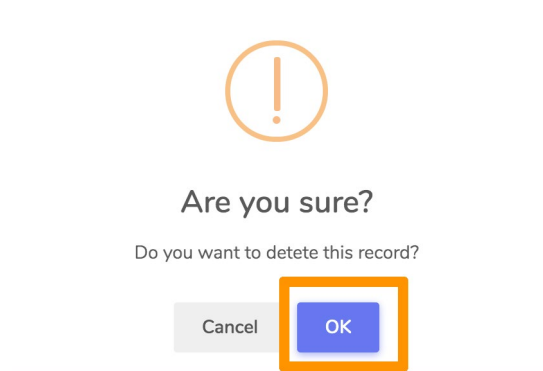
1-1/1

Previous

1


Next

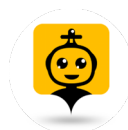
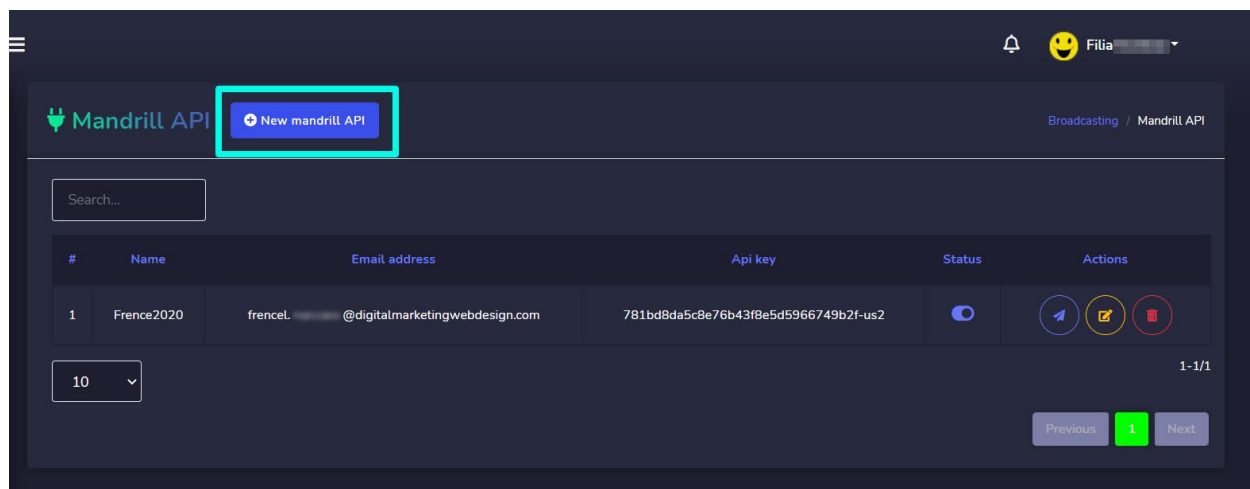




Create Mandrill API

You can create a new mandrill API by following the steps given below:

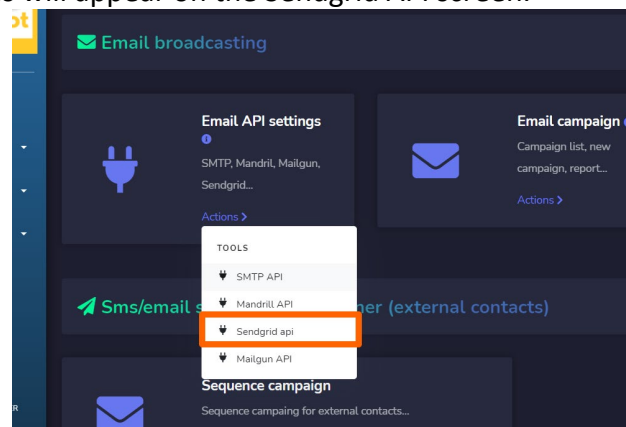
- 1) Select the  from **Mandrill API** screen.
- 2) Provide the **New Mandrill API** information. Enter your name.
- 3) Enter the **email address**.
- 4) Provide the **Mandrill API key** generated from your account.
- 5) Set the status of the API, then hit **Save**.



A screenshot of a "New mandrill API" form. The form has a dark blue background with white text. It contains four input fields: "Your name" with the value "DEA2818", "Email address" with the value "deanne@digitalmarketingwebdesign.com", and "Api key" with the value "KjsgeuijGbmlLrbna1J8vh0762mP-jl0Tbc". Below these fields is a "Status" section with a toggle switch labeled "Active". At the bottom left is a blue "Save" button, and at the bottom right is a grey "Close" button. A green success message at the bottom reads "Mandrill API information has been added successfully." with a checkmark icon and a close button.

Sendgrid API

A list of email addresses will appear on the Sendgrid API screen.

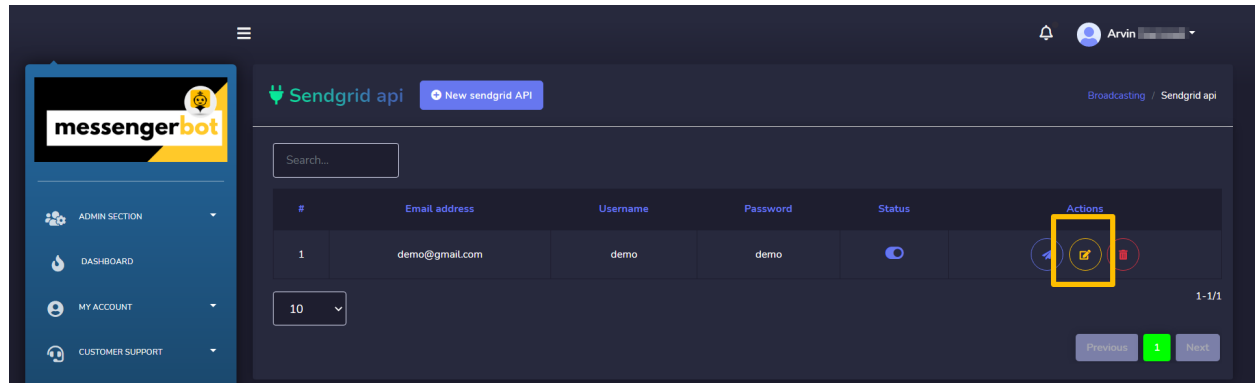


You can search for a particular email address by using the **search bar**.





- Edit the API you want to update.



Update sendgrid API

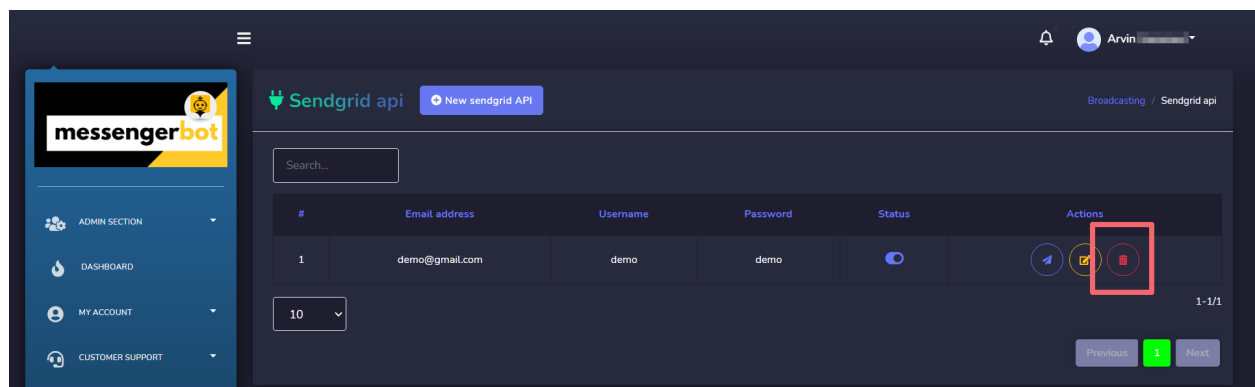
Email address

Username

Password

Status
☒ Active

- Delete the API.





Are you sure?

Do you want to delete this record?

Cancel OK



Create Sendgrid API

You can create a new sendgrid API by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select the **+ New sendgrid API** from **Sendgrid API** screen.
- 2) Provide the **New Sendgrid API** information.
- 3) Enter the **email address**.
- 4) Enter your **user name**.
- 5) Provide the **password**.
- 6) Set the status of the API, then hit **Save**.

Sendgrid api **+ New sendgrid API** Broadcasting / Sendgrid api

Search...

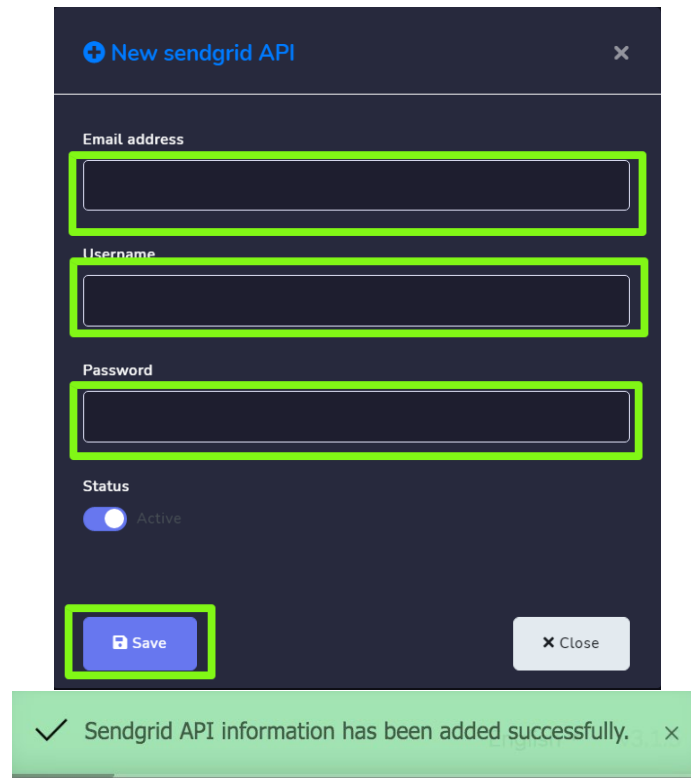
#	Email address	Username	Password	Status	Actions
1	demo@gmail.com	demo	demo	ON	 

10

1-1/1

Previous **1** Next

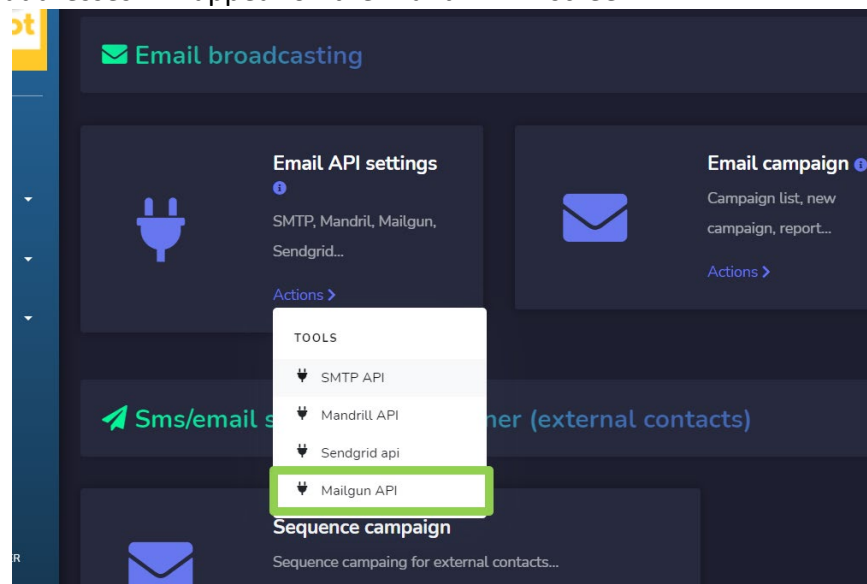




A screenshot of a 'New sendgrid API' form. The form has a dark blue background with white text. It contains four input fields: 'Email address', 'Username', 'Password', and 'Status'. The 'Email address', 'Username', and 'Password' fields are highlighted with a red border. The 'Status' field has a toggle switch labeled 'Active'. At the bottom, there is a red 'Save' button and a grey 'Close' button. Below the form, a green success message reads: '✓ Sendgrid API information has been added successfully. ✕'.

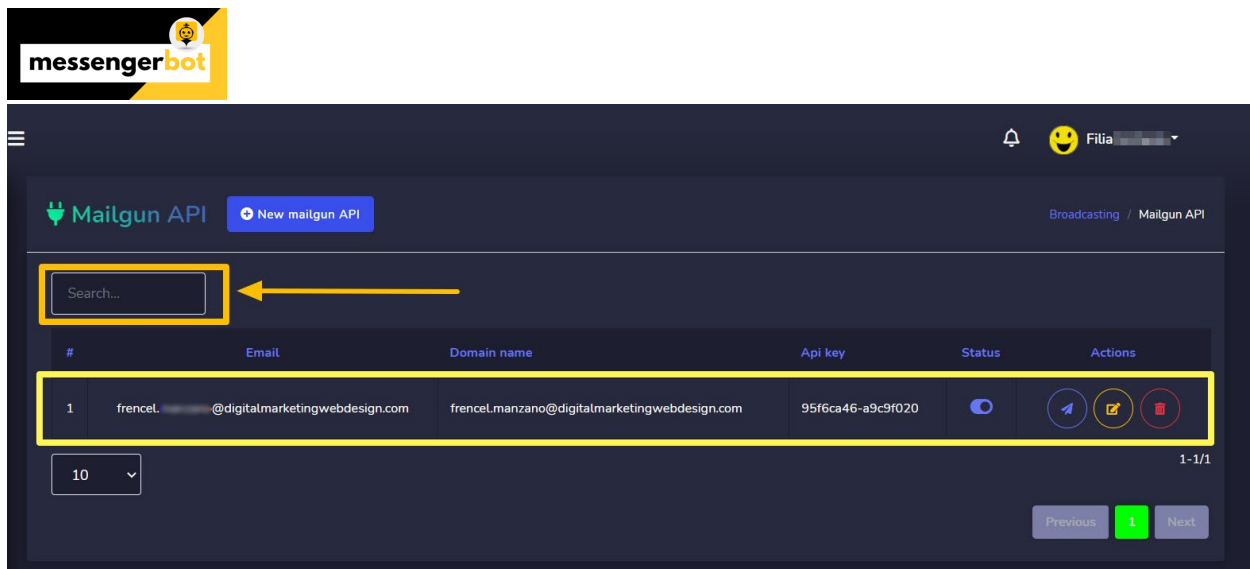
Mailgun API

A list of email addresses will appear on the Mandrill API screen.



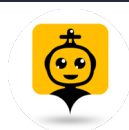
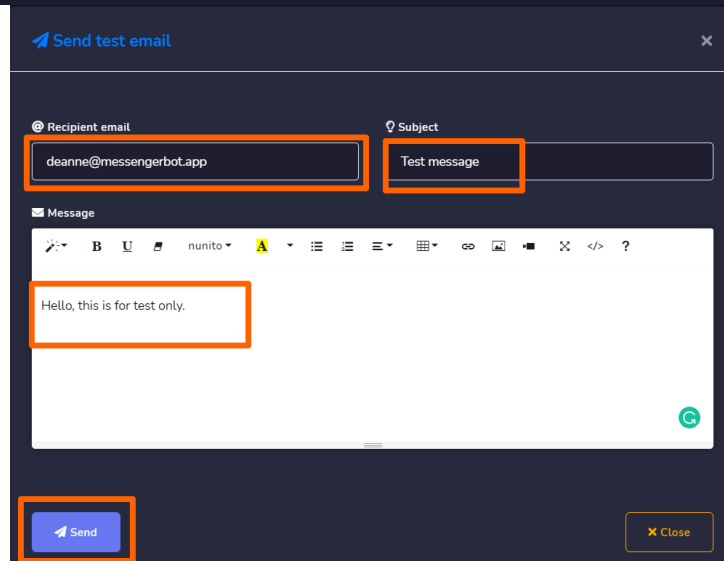
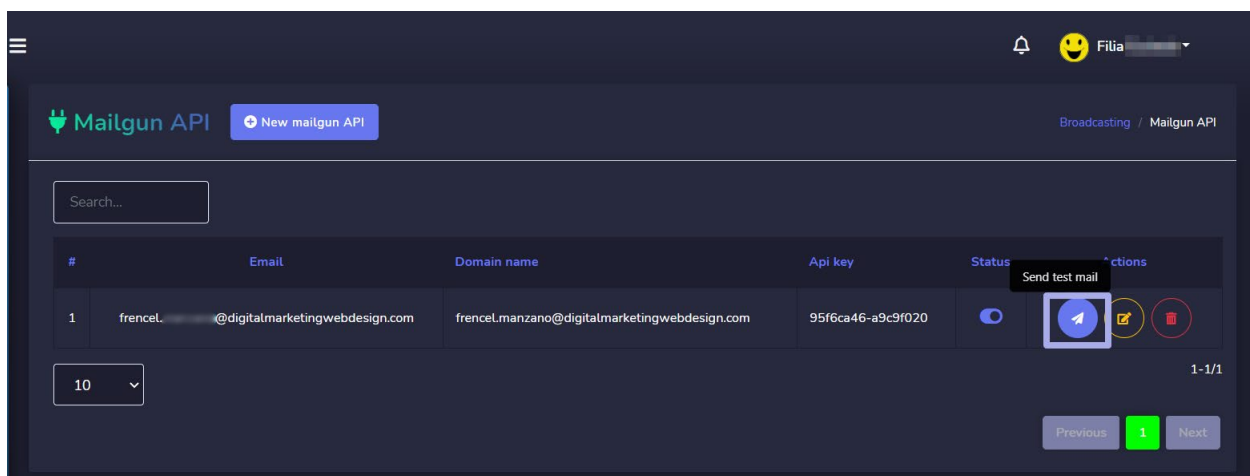
You can search for a particular email address by using the **search bar**.





You can perform the following actions from this view.

- Send test email by selecting the  icon against a particular email address.







- Edit the API you want to update.

Mailgun API

New mailgun API

Broadcasting / Mailgun API

Search...

#	Email	Domain name	Api key	Status	Actions
1	frencel. @digitalmarketingwebdesign.com	frencel.manzano@digitalmarketingwebdesign.com	95f6ca46-a9c9f020	Active	 

10

Previous 1 Next

Update mailgun API

Email address

frencel. @digitalmarketingwebdesign.com

Domain name

frencel. @digitalmarketingwebdesign.com

Api key

95f6ca46-a9c9f020

Status

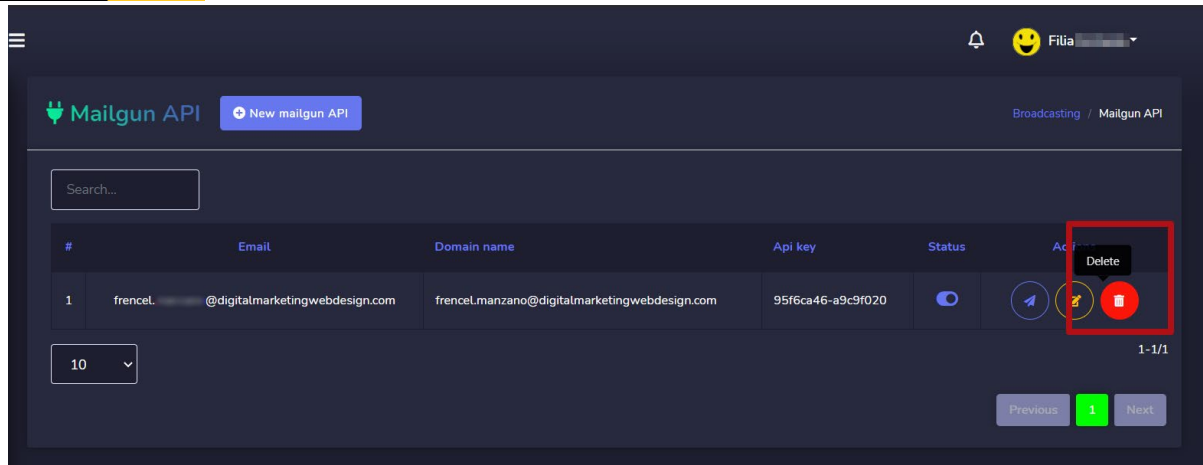
Active

Update

Close

- Delete the API.





Are you sure?


Do you want to detete this record?

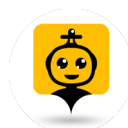
Cancel

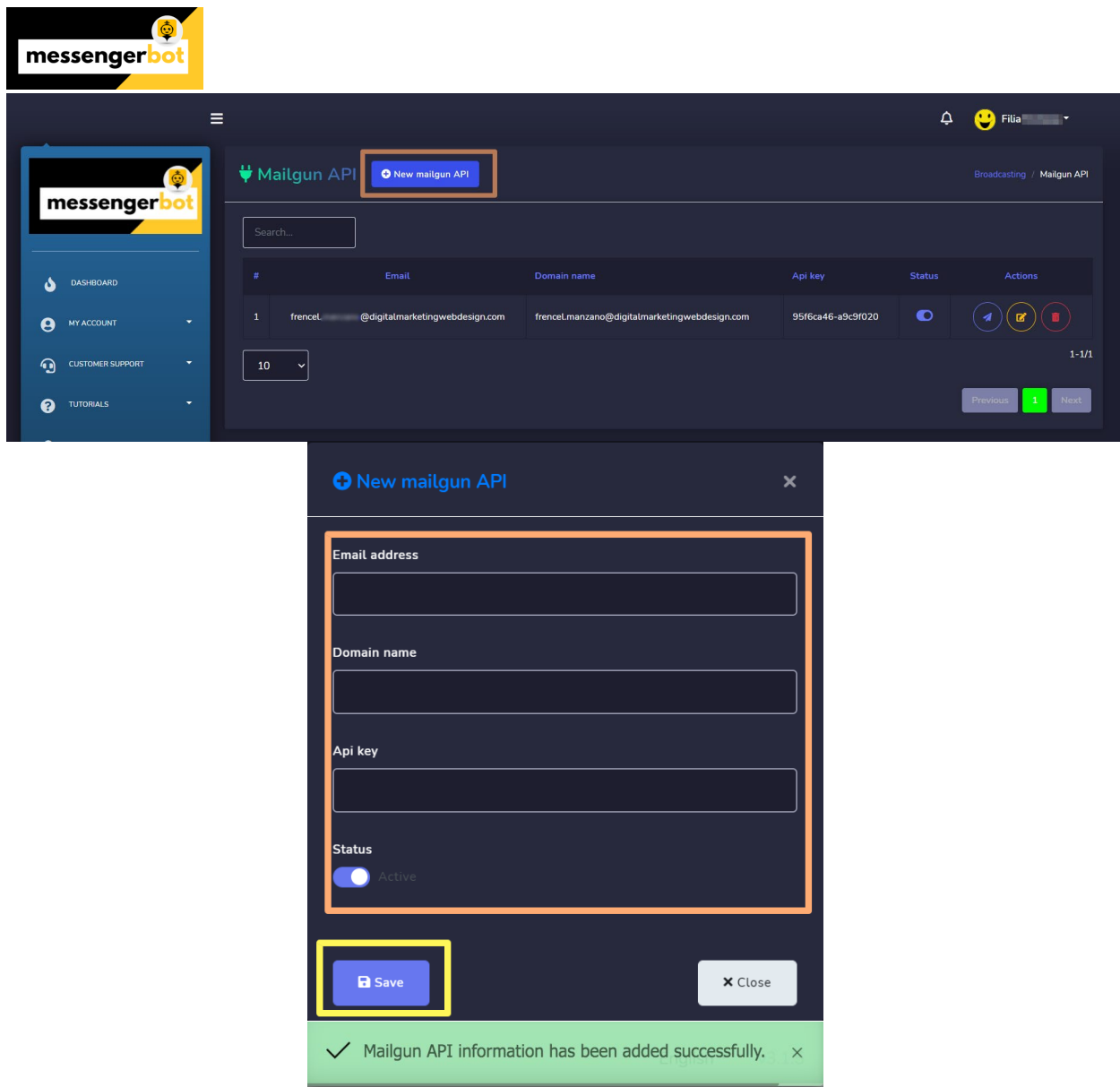
OK

Create Mailgun API

You can create a new mailgun API by following the steps given below:

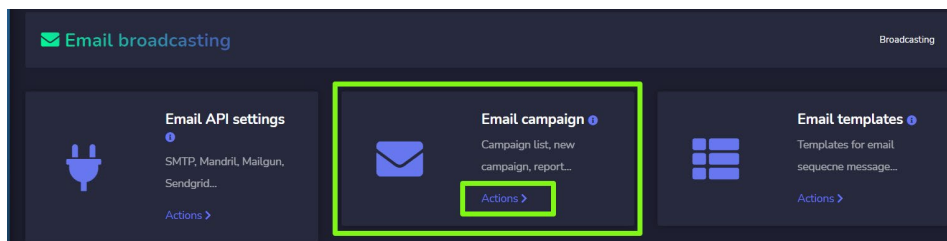
- 1) Select the  from **Mailgun API** screen.
- 2) Provide the **New Mailgun API** information.
- 3) Enter the **email address**.
- 4) Provide the **Domain** name.
- 5) Provide the **Mailgun API key** generated.
- 6) Set the status of the API, then hit **Save**.





Email campaign

To access the Email campaign, select the **Actions** option in **Email campaign** section of **Email broadcasting**.




Email campaign screen consists of a name of campaigns you can search for a specific campaign by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of campaigns to be **viewed per page**. You can choose the **date range** for the narrowed search. You can also sort them out based on their






status. You can arrange them either in **ascending or descending order** by selecting the **arrows** from the header of the table.

#	Name	Recipients	Delivered	Openers	Clickers	Unsubscribed	Scheduled at	Status	Actions
1	Demo	100%	0%	0%	0%	0%	X	Pending	

To perform different actions on the templates, select  option against the template you want to perform actions on. The following are the actions that can be performed:

- View the report by selecting .

#	Name	Recipients	Delivered	Openers	Clickers	Unsubscribed	Scheduled at	Status	Actions
1	Demo	100%	0%	0%	0%	0%	X	Pending	



ADMIN SECTION

DASHBOARD

MY ACCOUNT

CUSTOMER SUPPORT

TUTORIALS

IMPORT ACCOUNT

FLOW BUILDER

OPT-IN FORM BUILDER

FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER

AUTOMATIONS

BROADCASTING

Campaign report

Campaign (Completed)

Demo

Email api

Sendgrid - demo@gmail.com

Sent (0%)

0/1

Campaign open rate

0%

Openers 0

0%

Openers 0

0

Total opens 0

0

Click-to-open-ratio 0%

0%

Campaign click rate

0%

Clickers 0

0%

Clickers 0

0

Total clicks 0

0

Last clicked

00-00-0000 00:00

Unsubscribed

0%

Unsubscribed 0

0%

Unsubscribe rate 0

0%

Total unsubscribed

0

Last unsubscribed

00-00-0000 00:00

All

Search...

Search

- Edit the campaign.

Email campaign

New email campaign

Status

Search...

Search

Choose date

#	Name	Recipients	Delivered	Openers	Clickers	Unsubscribed	Scheduled at	Status	Actions
1	Demo	100%	0%	0%	0%	0%	x	<div> <div>←</div> <div>✎</div> <div>🗑</div> </div>	

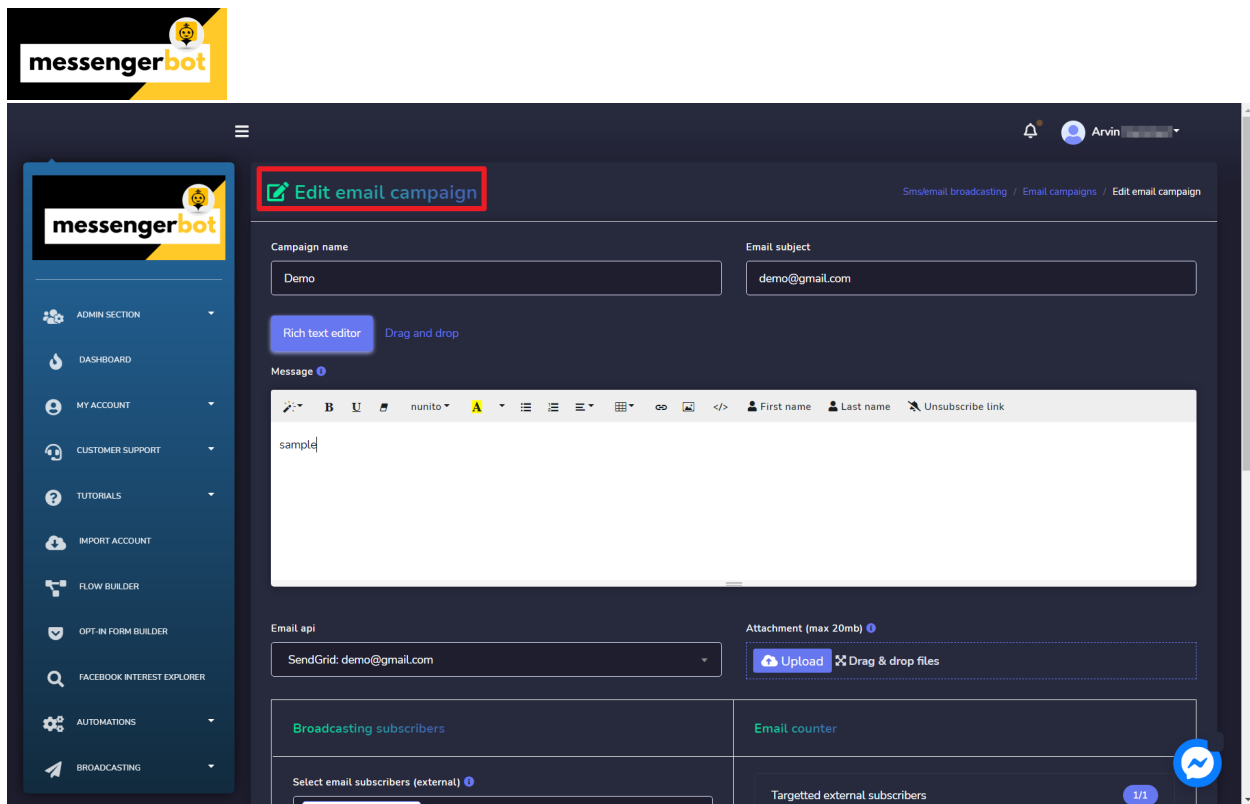
10

Previous

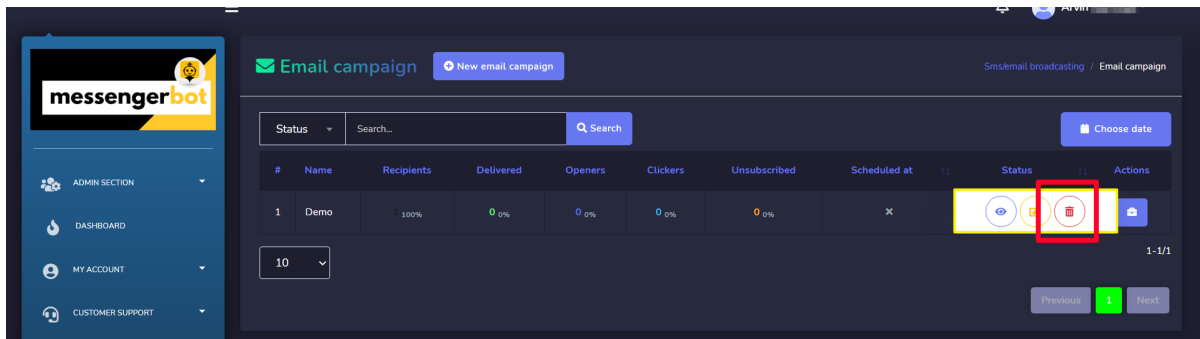
1

Next



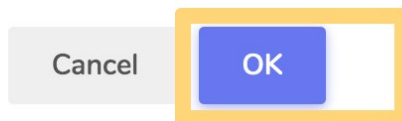


- Delete the campaign



Are you sure?

Do you want to delete this record?





Create email campaign

You can create a new email campaign by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select **New email campaign** option from the top of the **Email campaign** screen.
- 2) An **Email campaign** screen will appear. Provide the campaign details which include:
 - a. Campaign name
 - b. Email subject
 - c. Message
 - d. Email API (to be selected from dropdown)
 - e. Attachment
- 3) Provide the information of **Broadcasting subscribers** and **Message subscribers**.
- 4) You can also choose the targeting options for a better reach. The right side of the view displays the **Email counter** i.e. targeted subscribers.
- 5) You can choose a sending **time**.
- 6) Once all information is added, select **Create campaign**.

The screenshot displays the messengerbot dashboard. The top navigation bar includes a hamburger menu, a notification bell, and the user profile 'Arvin'. The left sidebar contains the 'messengerbot' logo and a menu with 'ADMIN SECTION', 'DASHBOARD', 'MY ACCOUNT', and 'CUSTOMER SUPPORT'. The main content area is titled 'Email campaign' and features a 'New email campaign' button highlighted with a red box. Below this is a table with columns: #, Name, Recipients, Delivered, Openers, Clickers, Unsubscribed, Scheduled at, Status, and Actions. The table contains one row with the name 'Demo' and various percentage values. A 'Choose date' button is located to the right of the table. Below the table is a pagination control showing '10' items per page and 'Previous', '1', and 'Next' buttons. The bottom section of the image shows the 'Create email campaign' form, which includes fields for 'Campaign name' and 'Email subject', both highlighted with green boxes. Below these fields is a 'Rich text editor' with a 'Drag and drop' button. The message editor area has a toolbar with various formatting options and a text area with the placeholder 'Write your message here...'.



Email api

Select API

Attachment (max 20mb)

Upload

Drag & drop files

Broadcasting subscribers

Select email subscribers (external)

Messenger subscribers

Select page

Select page

Targeting options

Gender

Time zone

Locale

Select

Select

Select

Email counter

Targetted external subscribers

0/0

Targetted page subscribers

0/0

Total targetted reach

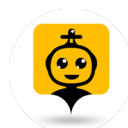
0/0

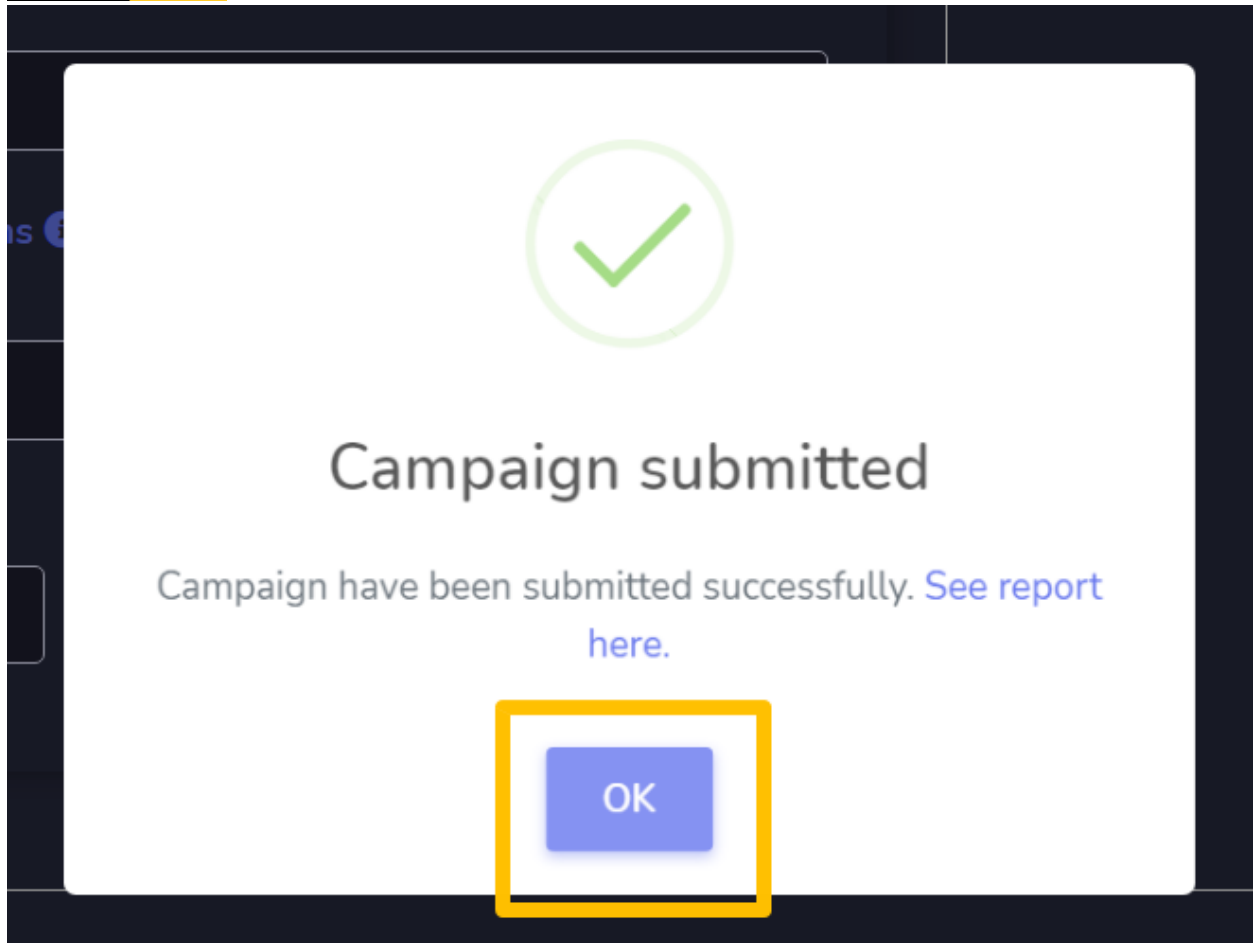
Sending time

Send now

Create Campaign

Cancel

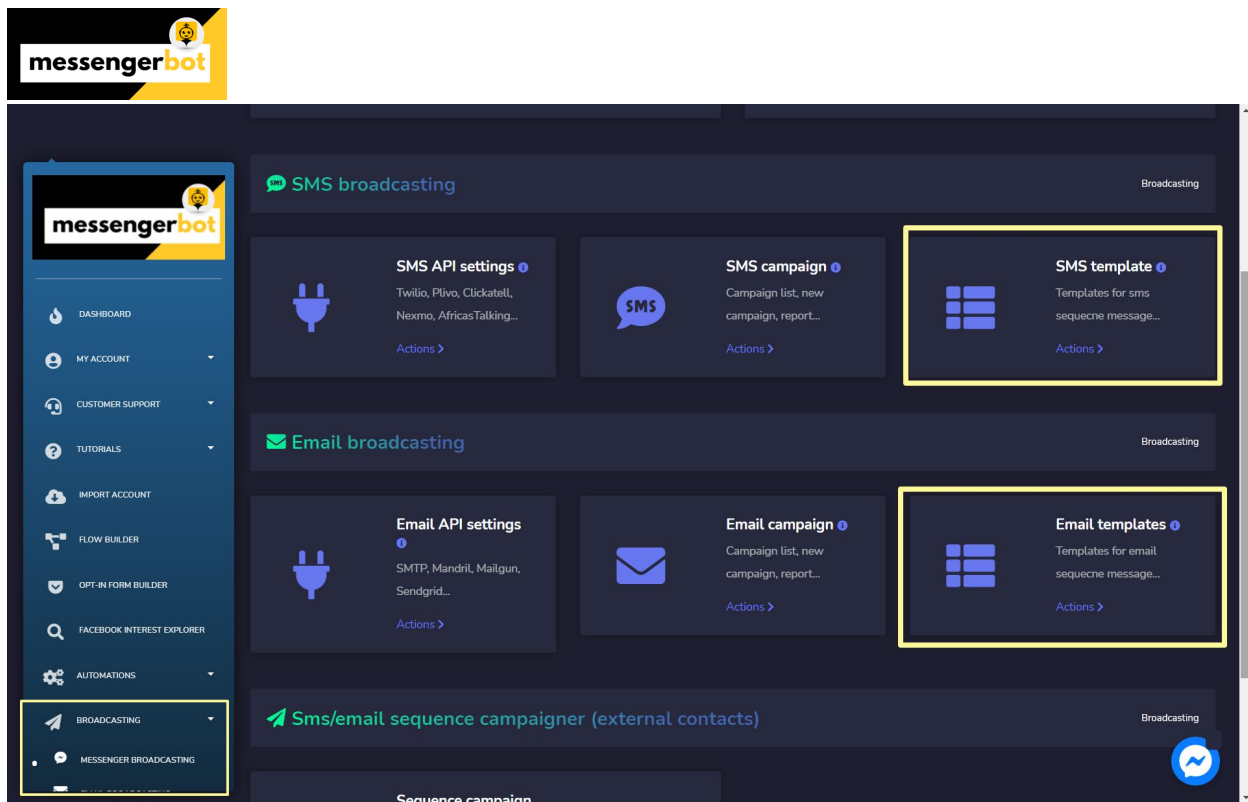




[SMS/Email Templates](#)

To get started with SMS/Email sequence, you've to create SMS & Email Templates to create SMS & Email Sequence campaigns. But to do this you need to go to the Broadcasting menu and choose **Email or SMS Broadcasting**. Then this screen will show. you will find two blocks named **SMS Template** and **Email Template**.

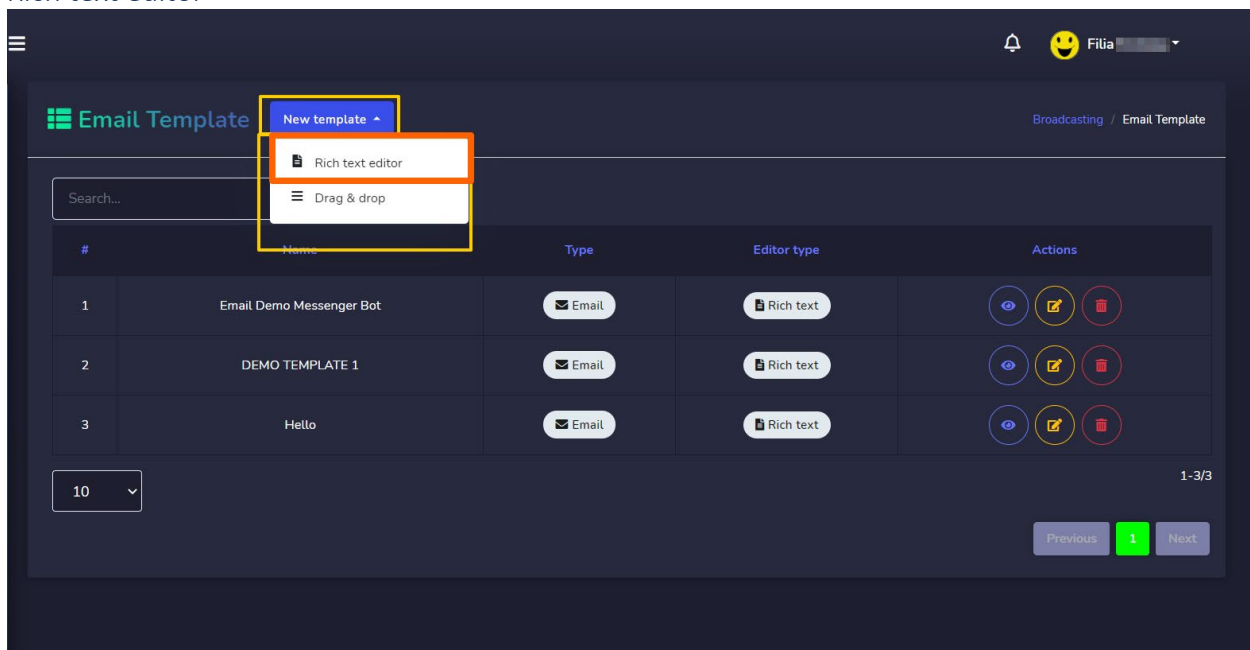




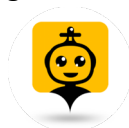
Go to the SMS or Email template section and click on the **New template** button then a dropdown will appear with two choices:


- Rich text editor
- Drag & Drop

Rich text editor



Create SMS or Email Templates by providing information.





Create template

Template name

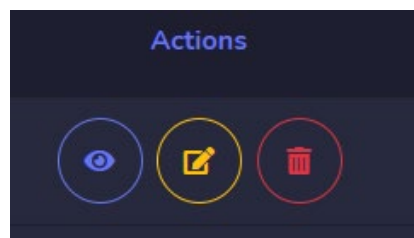
Subject

Content


Rich text editor toolbar: Bold (B), Italic (I), Underline (U), Text color (A), Background color, Bulleted list, Numbered list, Indent, Outdent, Link, Unlink, Code, User, Avatar, and a search icon.


Rich text editor area

Also, you can see the existing templates in the table from where you can view, edit and delete templates.



Drag & Drop





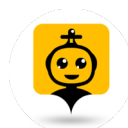
New template ^

Rich text editor

Drag & drop

Search...

#	Name	Type
1	Email Demo Messenger Bot	Email
2	DEMO TEMPLATE 1	Email
3	Hello	Email





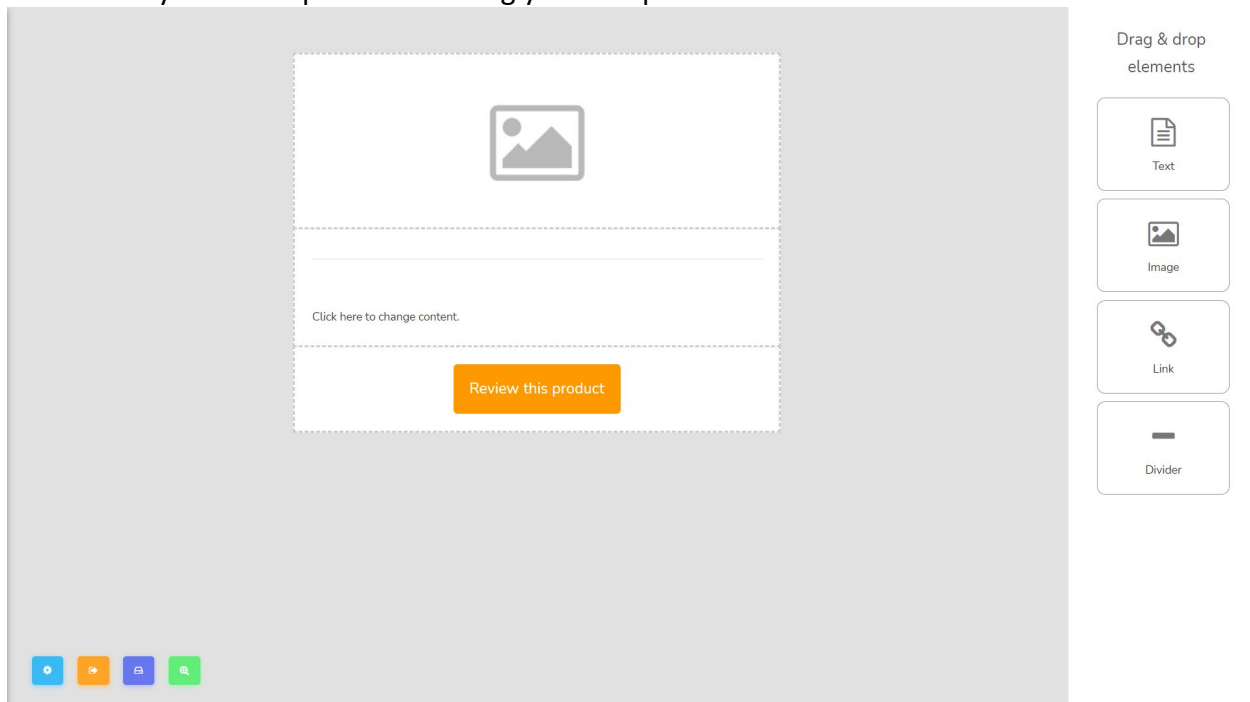
For the drag & drop, we have 4 templates that you can use:

1. No sidebar (wide)
2. Left sidebar
3. Right sidebar
4. Both sidebar



No sidebar (wide)

This is how your workspace on building your template would look like.

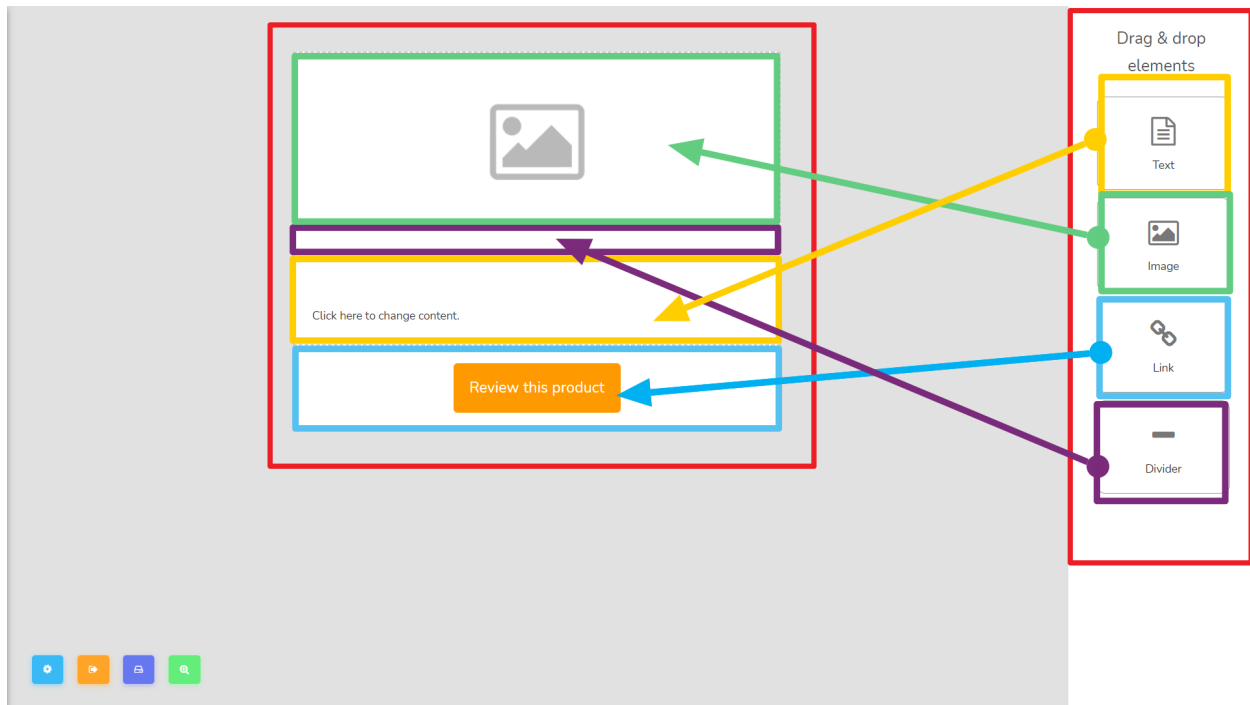




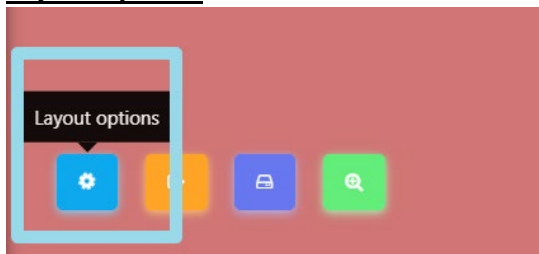
On the right part, you will see the **drag and drop elements** that you can use such as:

- Text
- Image
- Link
- Divider

There are sets of a button on the lower left of the workspace page. starting from left to right we have **Layout options**, **Save and Quit**, **Save template**, and **Preview**.



Layout options



Here, you can see the settings of your template layout. You can change its **background color** and **height sizes per section**. These are the following sections:

1. **Layout** would be the background of your template. You can also change the outline of your template by changing the 2nd color to where you can see the cursor.
2. **Header section** is the first layer of the template as shown. You can change the background color and height here.

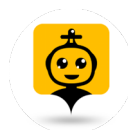
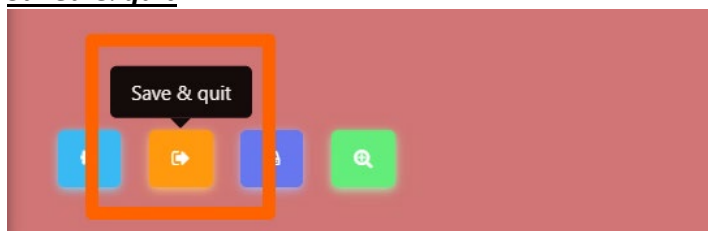




3. **Content section** is the second layer of the template as shown. You can also change the background color and height here.
4. **Footer section** is the third layer of the template as shown. You can also change the background color and height here.

The screenshot shows the MessengerBot template editor. On the left, the 'Settings' panel is open, showing four sections: Layout, Header section, Content section, and Footer section. Each section has a color picker and a height slider. The main canvas displays a template with a red background. The template consists of a purple header section, a content section with a placeholder image and a 'Review this product' button, and a footer section with another 'Review this product' button. Arrows point from the settings panels to the corresponding sections in the template. On the right, there is a 'Drag & drop elements' panel with buttons for Text, Image, Link, and Divider.

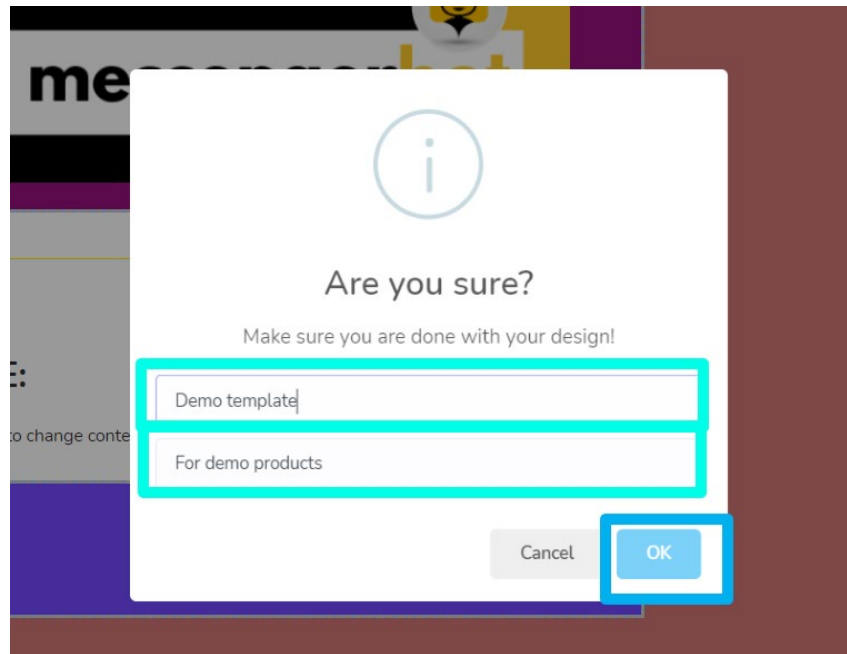
Saved & quit



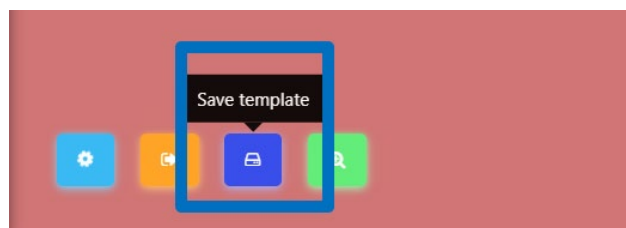


Saved & quit means saving your **work** and will be **exited** on the workspace.

When you click **Save and quit**, this modal will appear, type in your template name and template subject then click **OK**.



Save template



Save template will be simply **saving** your **template** and still can **continue building** it, this notification is what it will show you after.

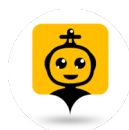


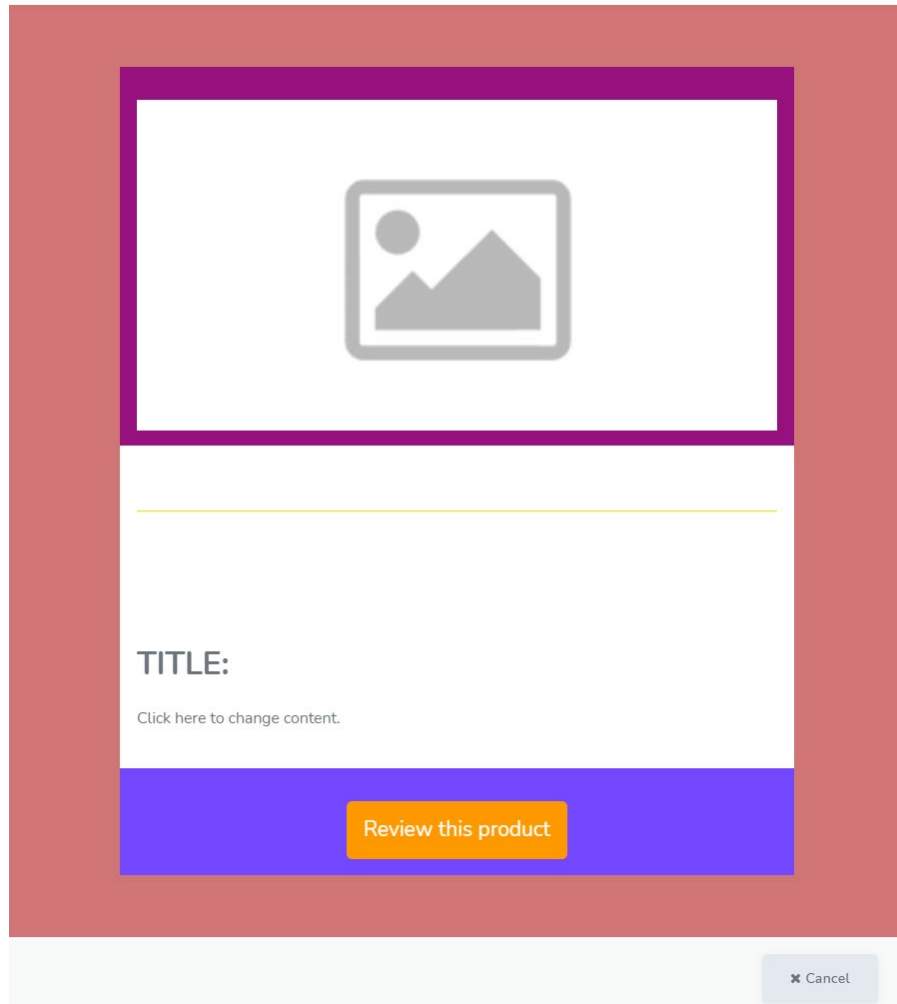
Preview



The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot template editor. The main workspace has a red background and displays a template with a purple header, a white image placeholder, a blue input field with the text "#ffe600", a white title section with the text "TITLE:" and "Click here to change content.", and a blue footer with an orange button labeled "Review this product". A small black box with the text "Preview" is overlaid on the input field. On the right side, there is a "Drag & drop elements" panel with four options: Text, Image, Link, and Divider. At the bottom left, there is a row of four icons: a blue gear, an orange arrow, a blue Facebook icon, and a green Messenger icon. The green Messenger icon is highlighted with a green square.

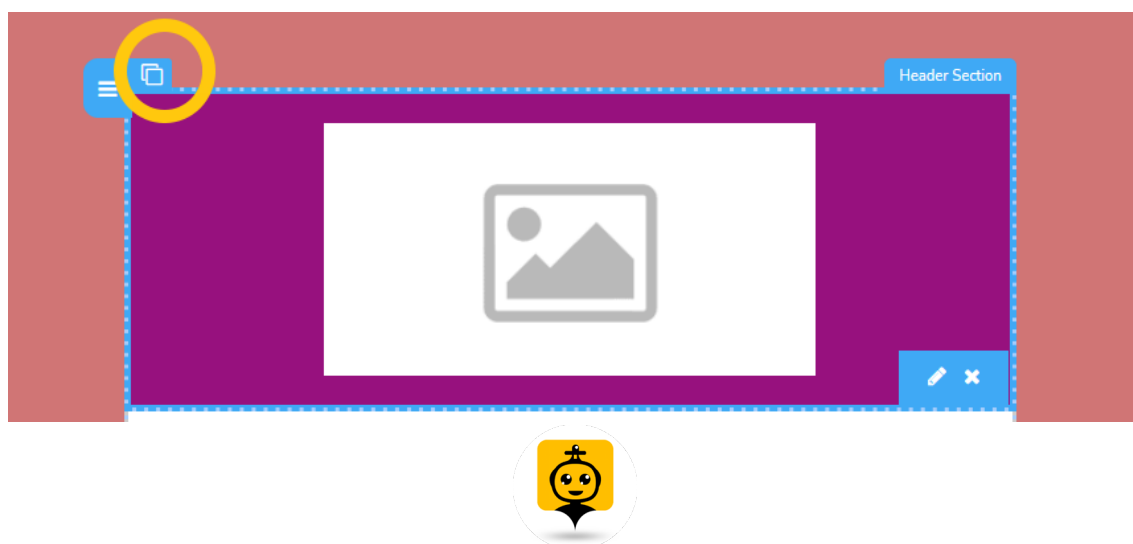
Preview means previewing the overall design o your template when generated.



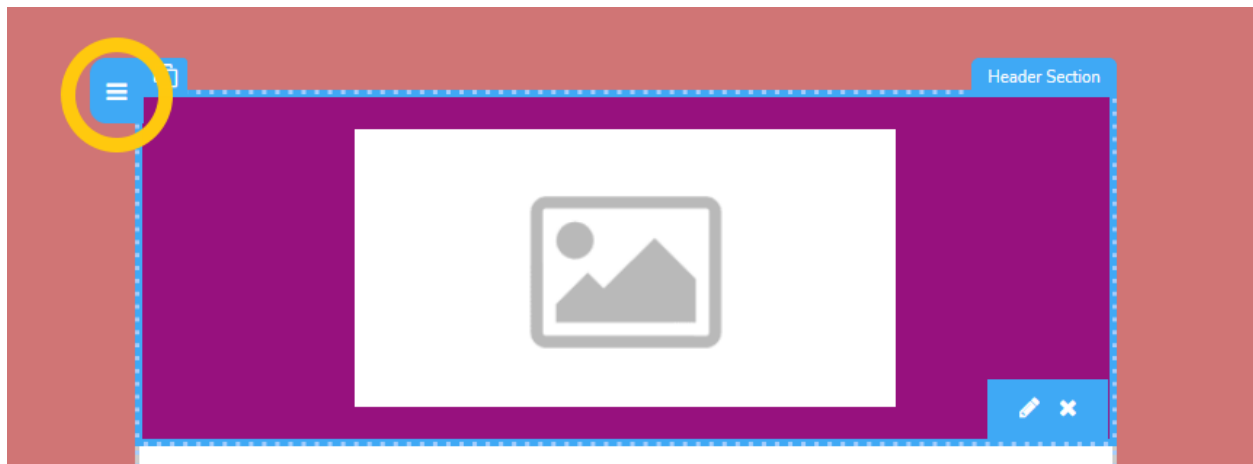


Now, you have to learn that each element that you placed on your template are editable and have **functions** like:

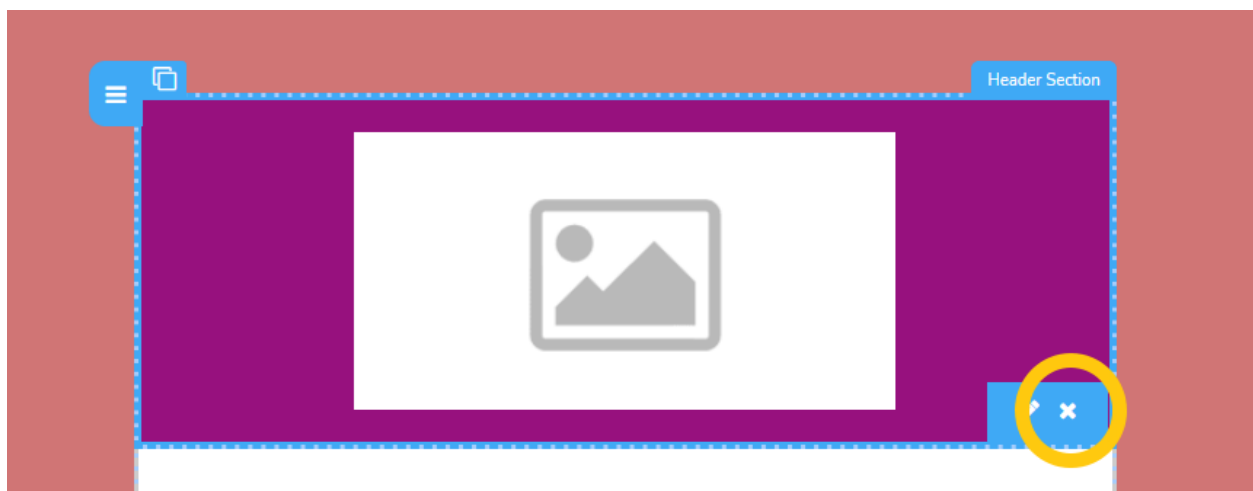
1. **Copy**, this is for duplicating your element.



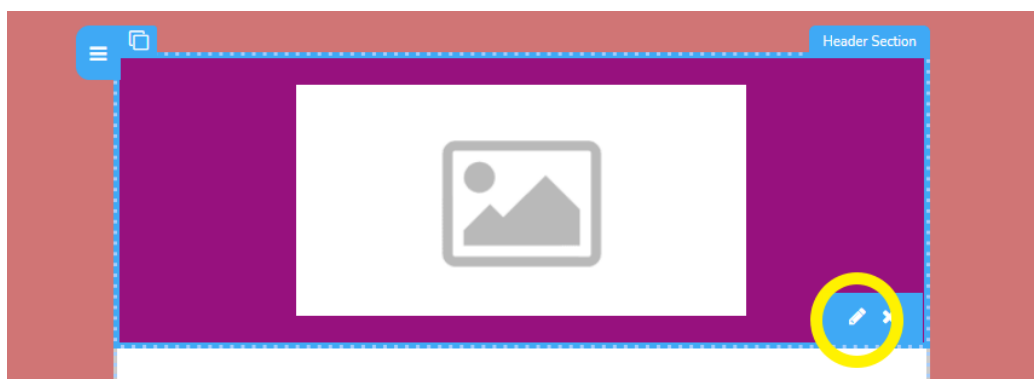
2. By clicking and holding this at the same time, you can **drag this up and down** to move its place on the template.



3. **X** is for deleting the element.



4. **Pen icon** is when you want to edit the element. Each element has its different ways of customization that you can play with:





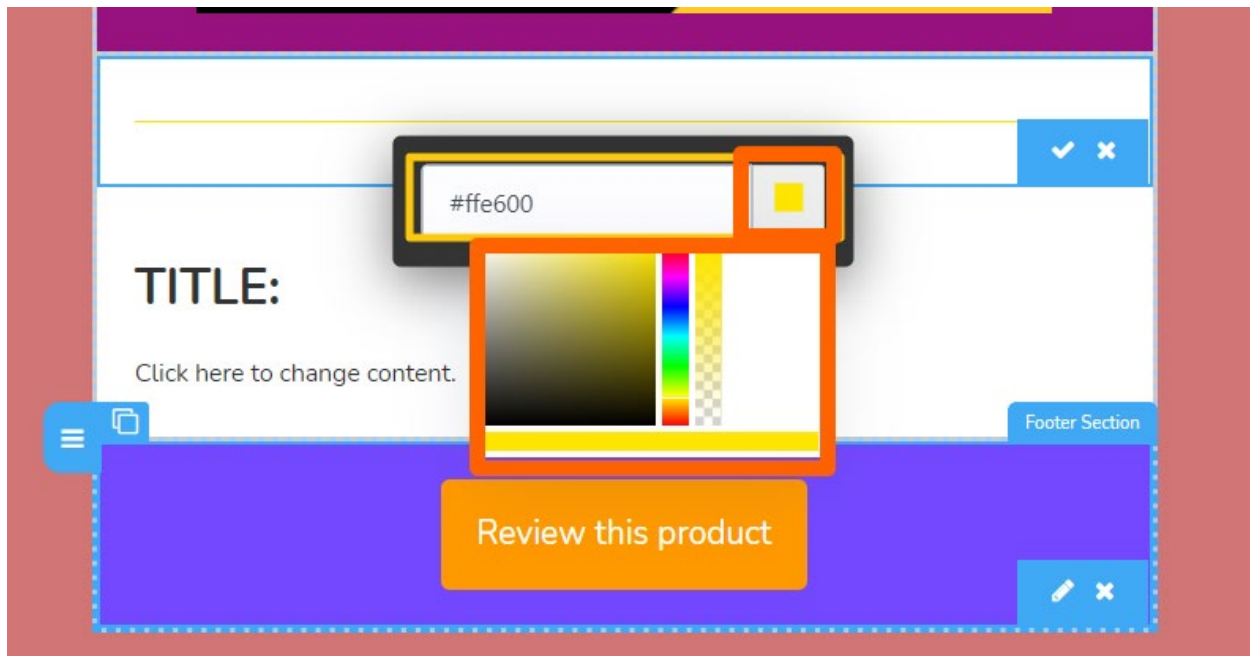
- a. **Image** - you need to **upload** your desired **image**, next for **insert image SRC (source)** which is the place where your image is saved, it will be shown automatically after you save your edit by **clicking the check icon**. this is how it will show. **Type the link** here where you want to be **redirected** whenever the image is clicked by users.

The image displays three sequential screenshots of the messengerbot interface, illustrating the steps to add an image to a post. Each screenshot is framed by a red border.

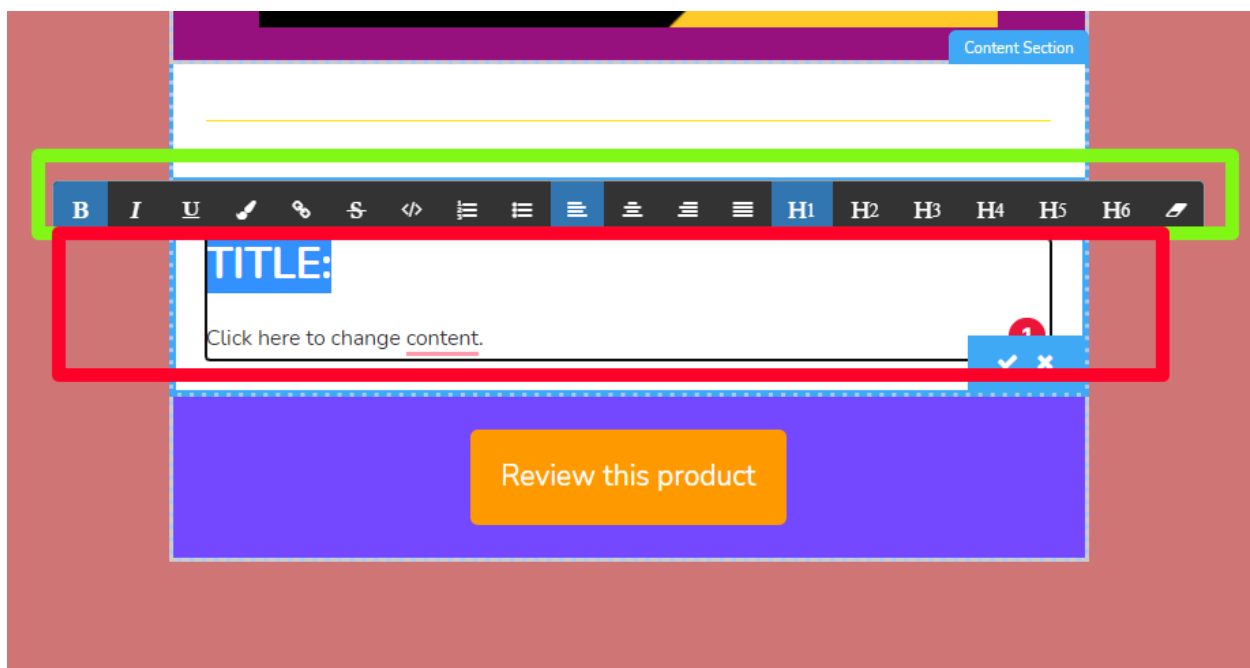
- Top Screenshot:** Shows a post editor with a purple header section containing a placeholder image icon. Below the header is a white box with three input fields: "Choose File" (with "No file chosen" text), "Insert Image SRC", and "Insert Image Link". A yellow box highlights the "Insert Image SRC" field. A blue checkmark icon is visible in the top right corner of the post editor.
- Middle Screenshot:** Shows the same post editor, but the "Insert Image SRC" field now contains the URL `https://start.messengerbot.app/upload/image/media_372_161`. The yellow box highlights this field.
- Bottom Screenshot:** Shows the same post editor, but the "Insert Image Link" field now contains the URL `messengerbot.app`. The yellow box highlights this field.

At the bottom of the page, there is a circular icon of the messengerbot robot head.

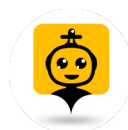
- b. **Divider** - You can change its color by typing the HTML color code or choose your color randomly on the color gradient.



- c. **Text** – It can be customized by choosing the options above while typing your texts on the text box.



- d. **Link** – This means editing the button

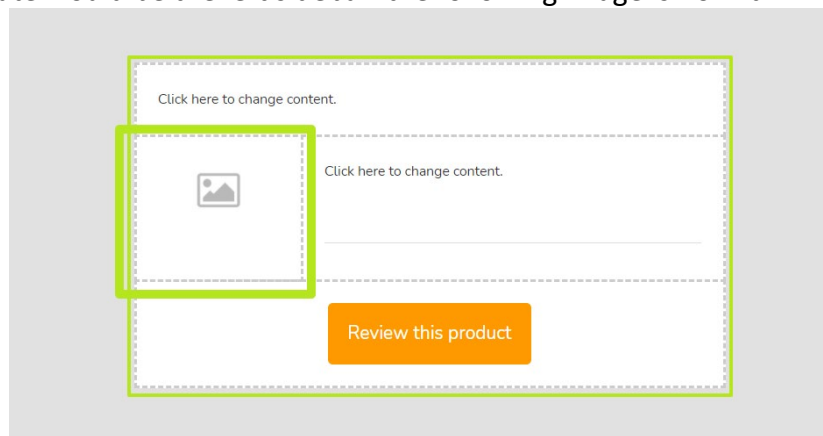




- Place the wanted link of your product.
- change your desired text display on the button
- Color represents the color of the text of the button.
- The background images can be changed here, I made it yellow-orange as an example.
- This will be the button's position either left, center, or right.
- The last one is the size of the button itself from small to big.

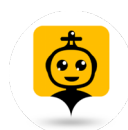
Left sidebar

The next template would be the left sidebar. the following image is how it will look like:



Right sidebar

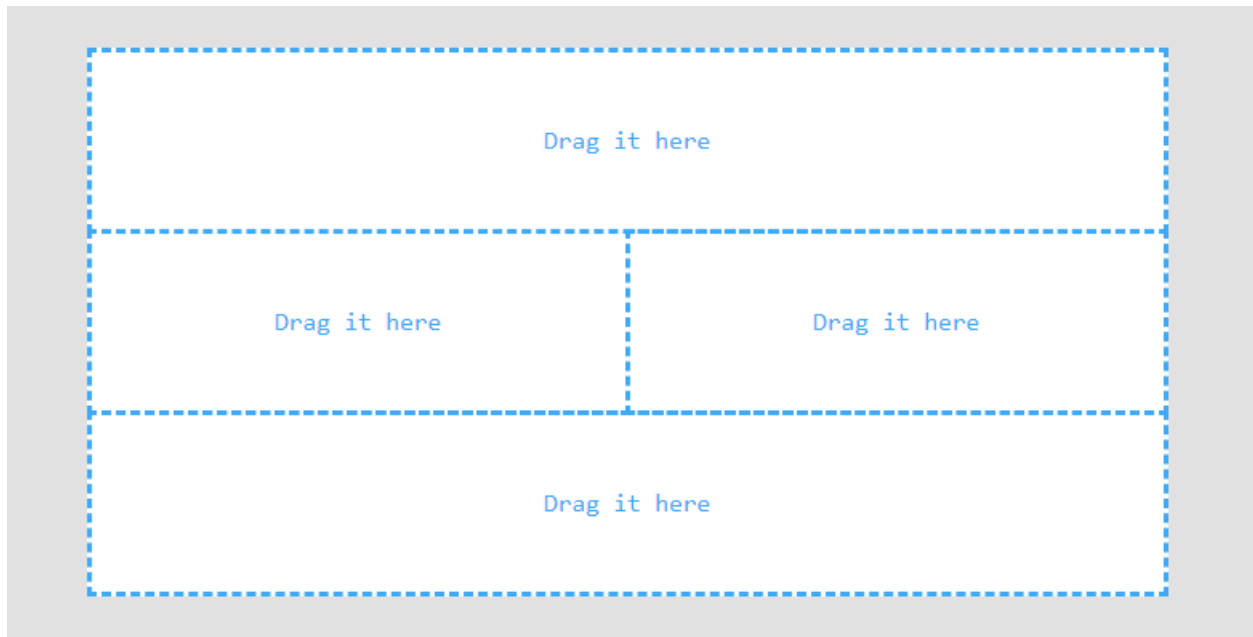
Click on the right sidebar and you can now create and edit your template.





Both sidebars

Last, click on Both sidebars and you can now create and edit your template.



Also, you can see the **existing templates** in the table from where you can **view, edit, and delete templates**.

Email Template New template Broadcasting / Email Template

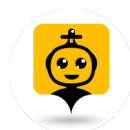
Search...

#	Name	Type	Editor type	Actions
1	Demo template	Email	Drag & drop	View Edit Delete
2	Email Demo Messenger Bot	Email	Rich text	View Edit Delete
3	DEMO TEMPLATE 1	Email	Rich text	View Edit Delete
4	Hello	Email	Rich text	View Edit Delete

10 1-4/4

Previous 1 Next

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot English





How to Create & Assign Sequence Campaign for External Subscribers:

Beside assigning automatically SMS/Email Sequence to Messenger Subscribers, now you can also create SMS/Email Sequence Campaign for your external subscribers and assign them manually with **Email SMS Sequence Campaigner Add-on**. So, let's get started.

Create Sequence for external Subscribers:

Go to Broadcasting -> Sequence Campaign -> Actions and click on Add sequence button to create sequence campaign with the necessary information for External Subscribers.

The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot dashboard. The left sidebar has a 'Broadcasting' menu item highlighted with a red box. The main content area has two sections: 'Email broadcasting' and 'SMS/Email Sequence Campaigner (External Contacts)'. The 'SMS/Email Sequence Campaigner' section contains a 'Sequence Campaign' option, which is highlighted with a red box. The 'Sequence Campaign' option has a description 'Sequence Campaign for external Contacts...' and an 'Actions >' link.

Sequence Campaign

[Add sequence](#)

Broadcasting / Sequence Campaign

Search...

#	Name	Last sent	Campaign type	Actions
1		Jun 13, 2020 16:41	SMS	Add
2		Jun 13, 2020 16:41	Email	Add

10

1-2/2

Previous1Next





+ Add sequence

[Broadcasting](#) / [Campaign list](#) / [Add sequence](#)

Campaign name

Sequence type

Email

Sms

Select email api

Select API

⌚ Sequence time

24 hour Daily

⌚ 30 mins

--- Do not send message ---



⌚ 1 Hour

--- Do not send message ---



⌚ 2 Hour

--- Do not send message ---



⌚ 3 Hour

--- Do not send message ---



+ Add more hour

✖ Remove last hour

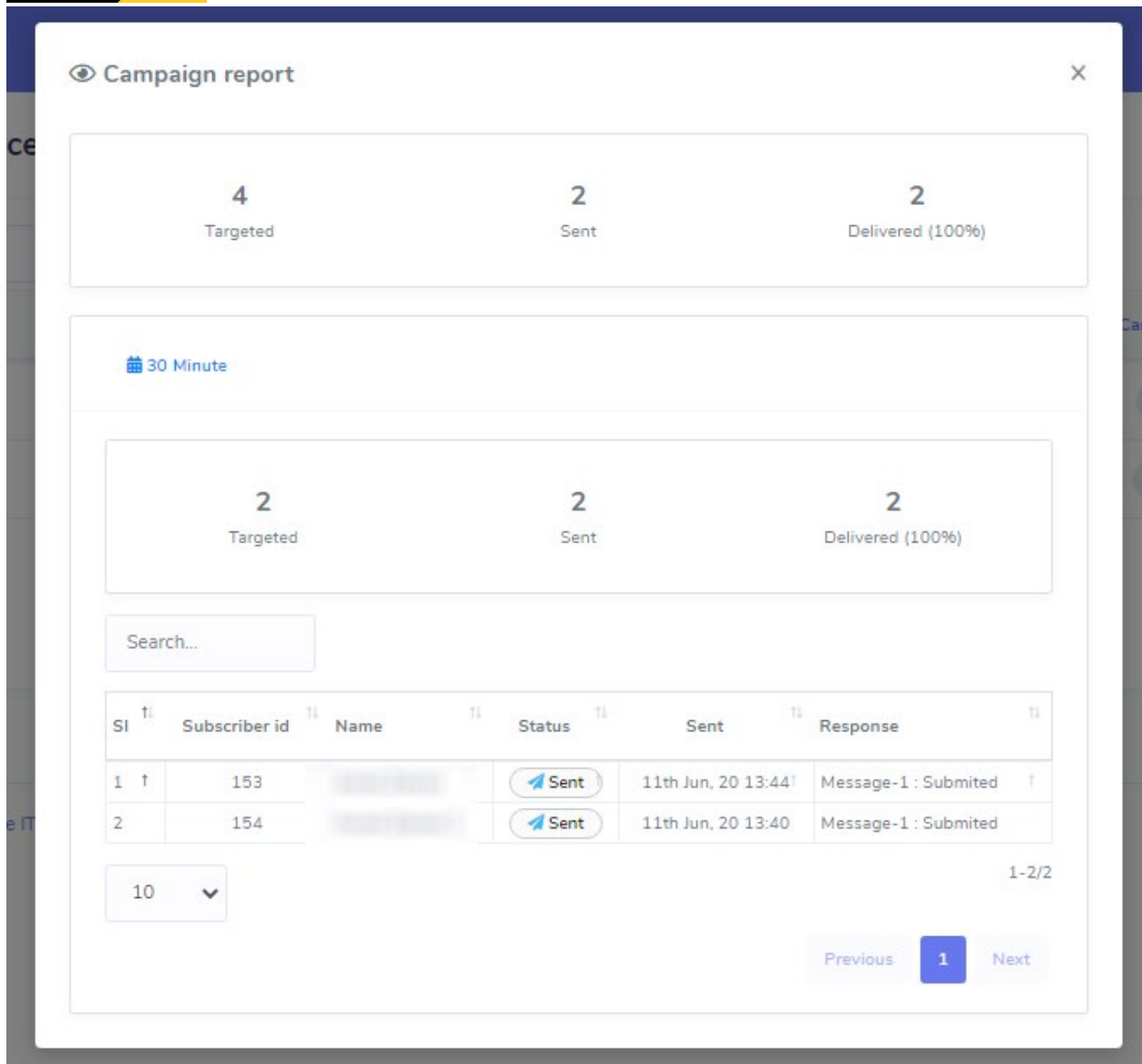


🚀 Create Campaign

⌕ Back

You can see campaign report 24H or Daily report from the campaign table by click on Corresponding Report icon.





Assign Sequence To External Subscribers:

Go to Subscriber Manager -> Contact Book section, select your contact and click on Options -> Assign Sequence. Select your Sequence campaign from the dropdown and hit the save button.





Dashboard

Import Account

ADMINISTRATION

System

Subscription

COMMENT FEATURE

Comment Automation

MESSENGER TOOLS

Subscriber Manager

Messenger Bot

Broadcasting

subscribers

Sync, migrate, conversation...

Actions >

subscribers

Subscriber actions, assign label, download...

Actions >

Subscriber label/tags, segmentation...

Actions >

SMS/email subscriber (external)

Subscriber Manager

Contact Group

Manage contacts by groups, sms/email campaign...

Actions >

Contact Book

Manage contacts, import, sms/email campaign...

Actions >

English

Contact Book

New contact

Subscriber Manager / Contact Book

Contact Group Search... Search

#	<input type="checkbox"/>	First name	Last name	Email	Phone	Contact Group	Actions
1	<input type="checkbox"/>			@yahoo.com	8801925121523	Group 1, Group 2 Group 6, Group 7	<div>Import Export Assign sequence Delete</div>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>			@gmail.com	8801722977459	Group 1	<div><div></div><div></div><div></div></div>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>			@gmail.com	1717293722	Group 1	<div><div></div><div></div><div></div></div>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>			@gmail.com	1718839535	Group 1	<div><div></div><div></div><div></div></div>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>			@gmail.com	1683909417	dddd'fdfd	<div><div></div><div></div><div></div></div>



Assign sms/email sequence

Bulk sequence assign is available for Email & SMS campaign.

Select sequence campaign

Assign sequence

Close

You can also assign manually to individual Subscribers by click on the Contact Details icon from the table.

Contact Book

[+ New contact](#)
[Subscriber Manager](#) / [Contact Book](#)

Contact Group		Search...		Search		Options	
#		First name	Last name	Email	Phone	Contact Group	Actions
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Test 4	User 4	testuser4@gmail.com	0123456781	test, test 1, test 2, test 3	<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> </div>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Test 2	User 2	testuser2@gmail.com	0123456789	test, test 1, test 3	<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> </div>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Test 1	User 1	testuser1@gmail.com	012345678	test, test 1, test 3	<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> </div>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	Test	User	testuser@gmail.com	12345678	test, test 1	<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> </div>

10

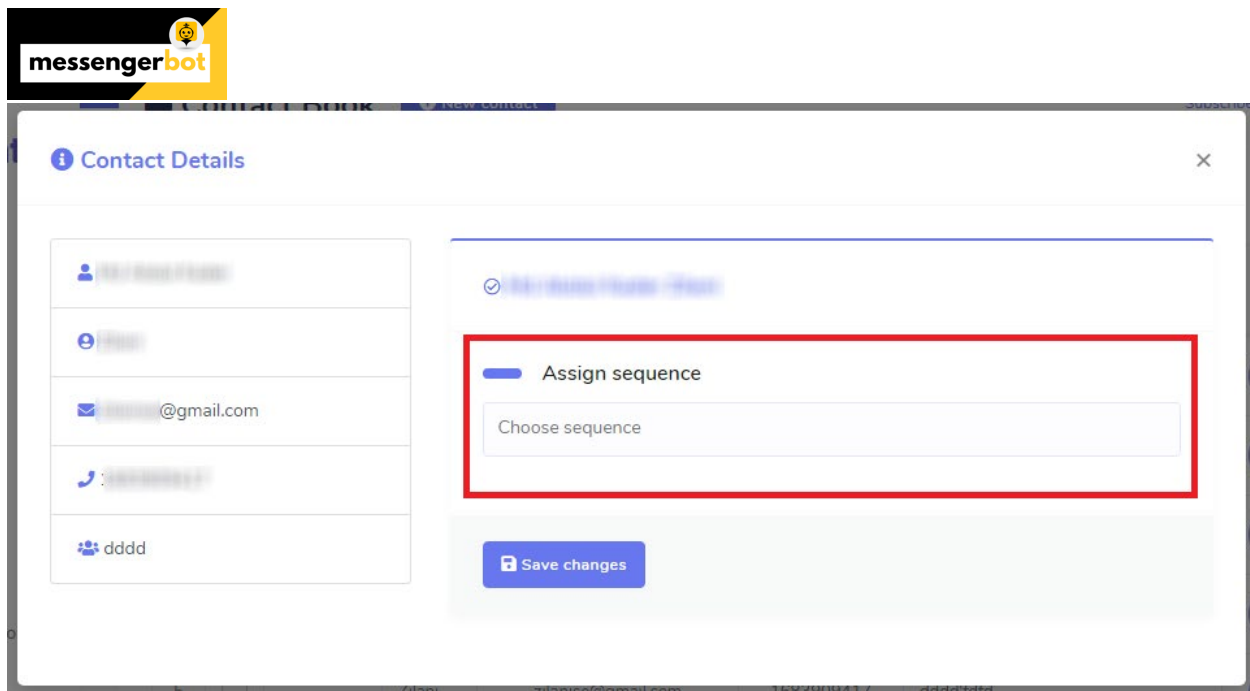
1-4/4

Previous

1

Next





How To Create Email Templates In Messenger Bot

Now, there's no need to pay third parties for building email templates!

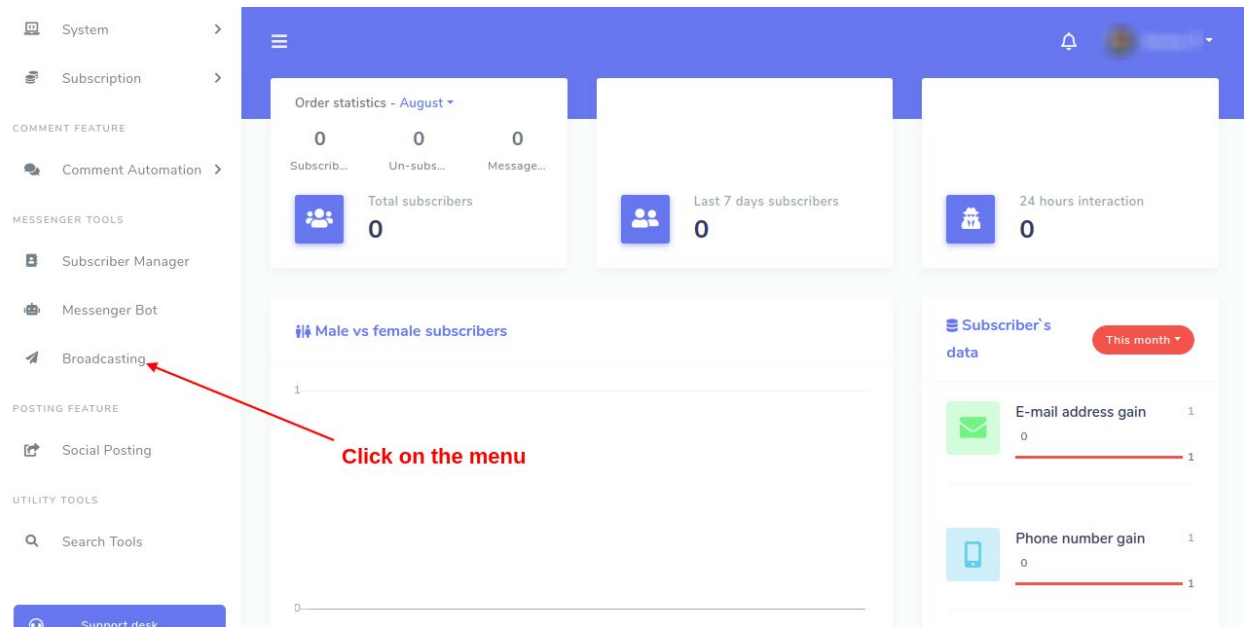
Messenger Bot has come up with a brand new module called Drag & Drop Email Template Builder. It has a very simple interface. It has been made such a way that its user can create an HTML Email template within a few seconds. Just drag and drop the elements you need and build your HTML email templates without paying third party services for months.

Let's see how to build your email templates for your products or any other purposes. Today, I'm going to show you how to create an HTML email template using Messenger Bot's Drag & Drop Email Template Builder. Say, we're going to create a campaign for our specific product.

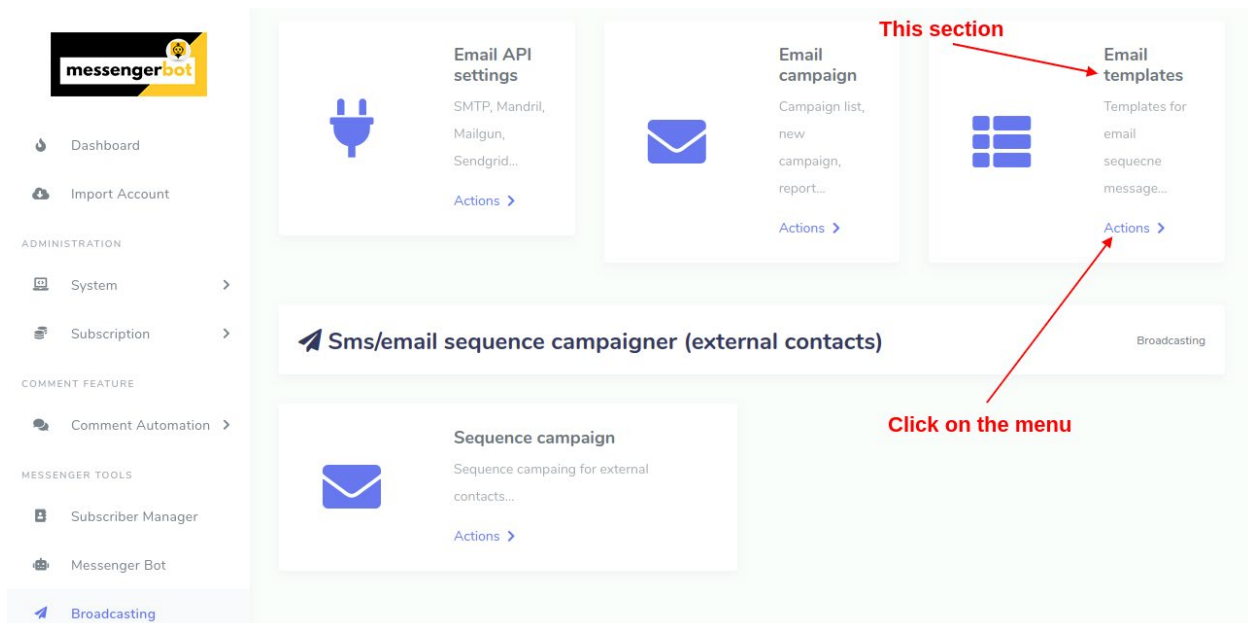




Log in to your Messenger Bot's dashboard. Click on the menu named **Broadcasting**.



When you're on that page, find out the section that says **Email Templates**. And click on the **Actions** link. After clicking on that link, you should see an interface where you can find templates that have already been created.



When you're there, click on the button named **New template** and then click again on the link named **Drag & Drop**. It will take you to the interface where you need to choose which template you're going to work with.





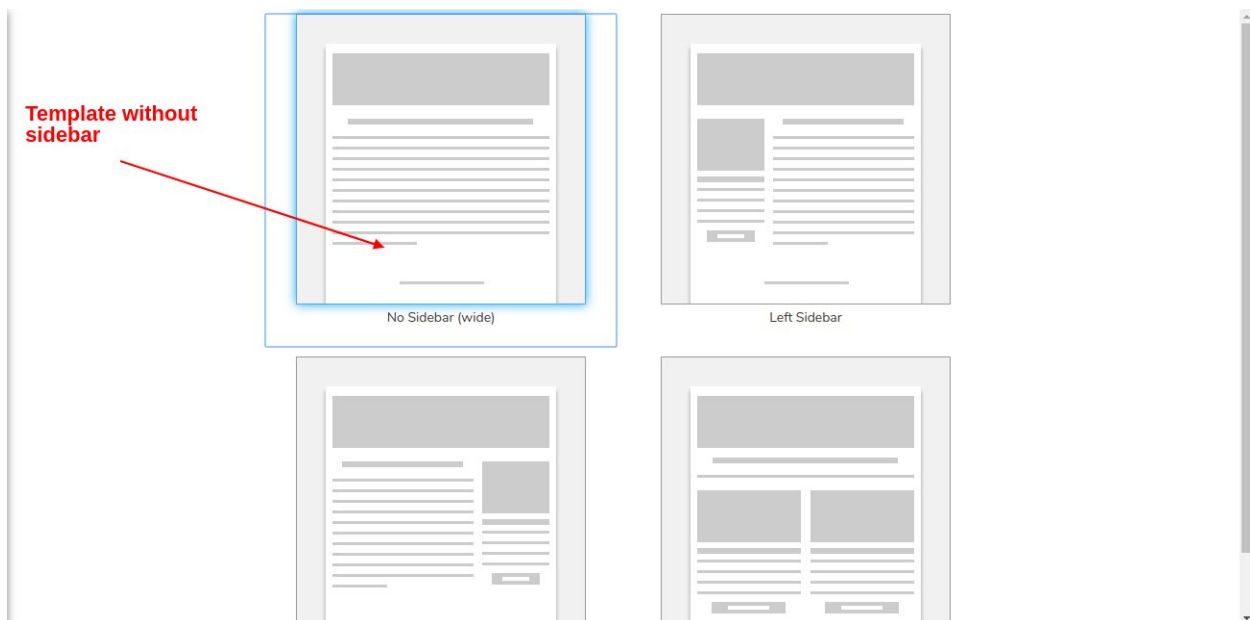
- Dashboard
- Import Account
- ADMINISTRATION
 - System >
 - Subscription >
- COMMENT FEATURE
 - Comment Automation >
- MESSANGER TOOLS
 - Subscriber Manager
 - Messenger Bot
 - Broadcasting

Email Template New template ▾ Click on the button

Search... Rich Text Editor Drag & Drop Click on the menu

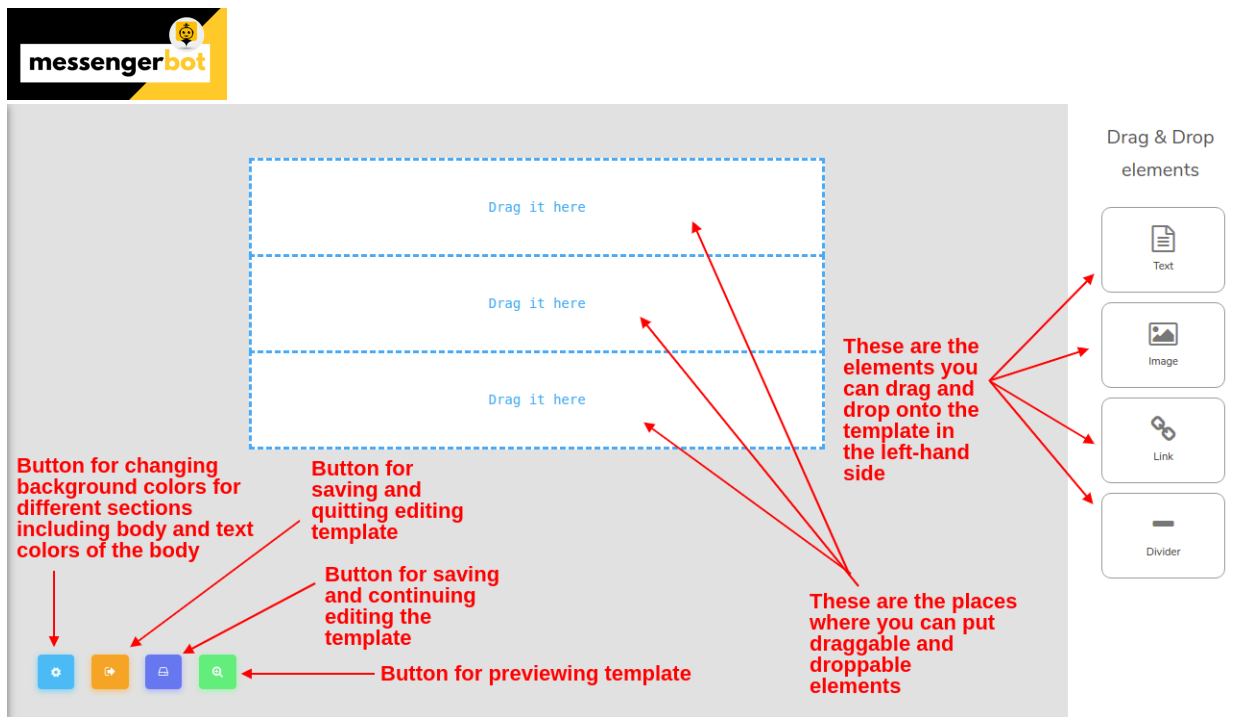
#	Name	Type	Editor Type	Actions
1		Email	Drag & Drop	
2		Email	Drag & Drop	
3		Email	Drag & Drop	
4		Email	Drag & Drop	
5		Email	Drag & Drop	
6		Email	Drag & Drop	

In my case, I'm going to choose the boiler-template without sidebars as marked below:

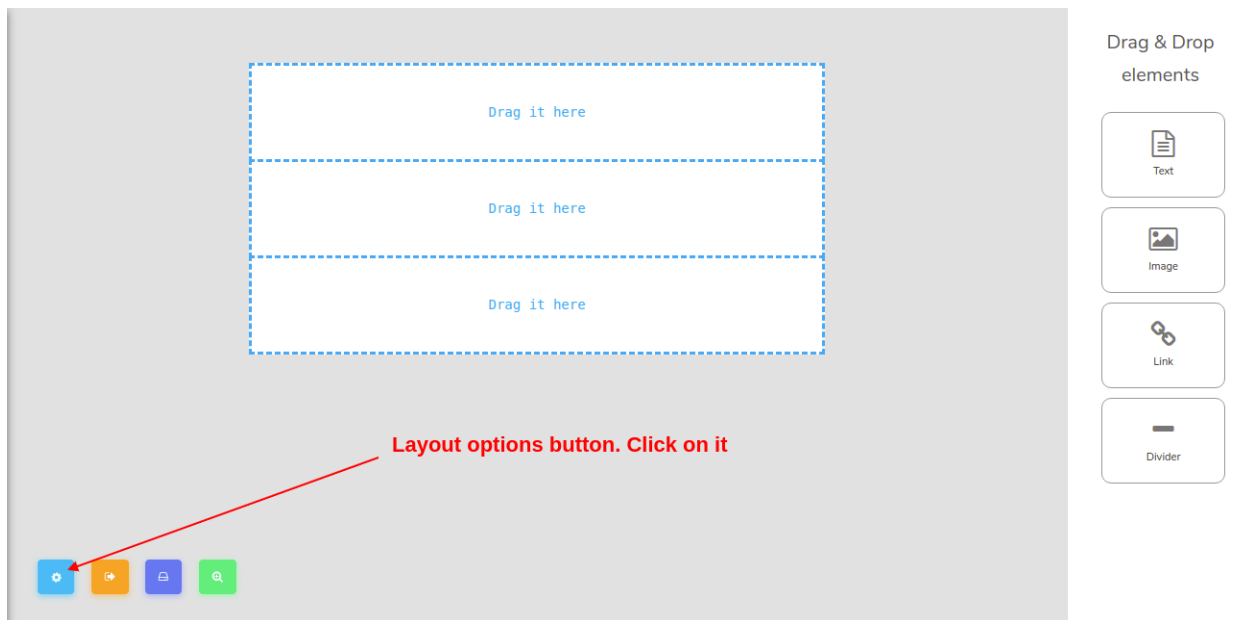


Now it's time to build the email template for the product I want to promote/campaign with. But before starting, let me tell you what components do what tasks. Please check out notes on the following screenshot:



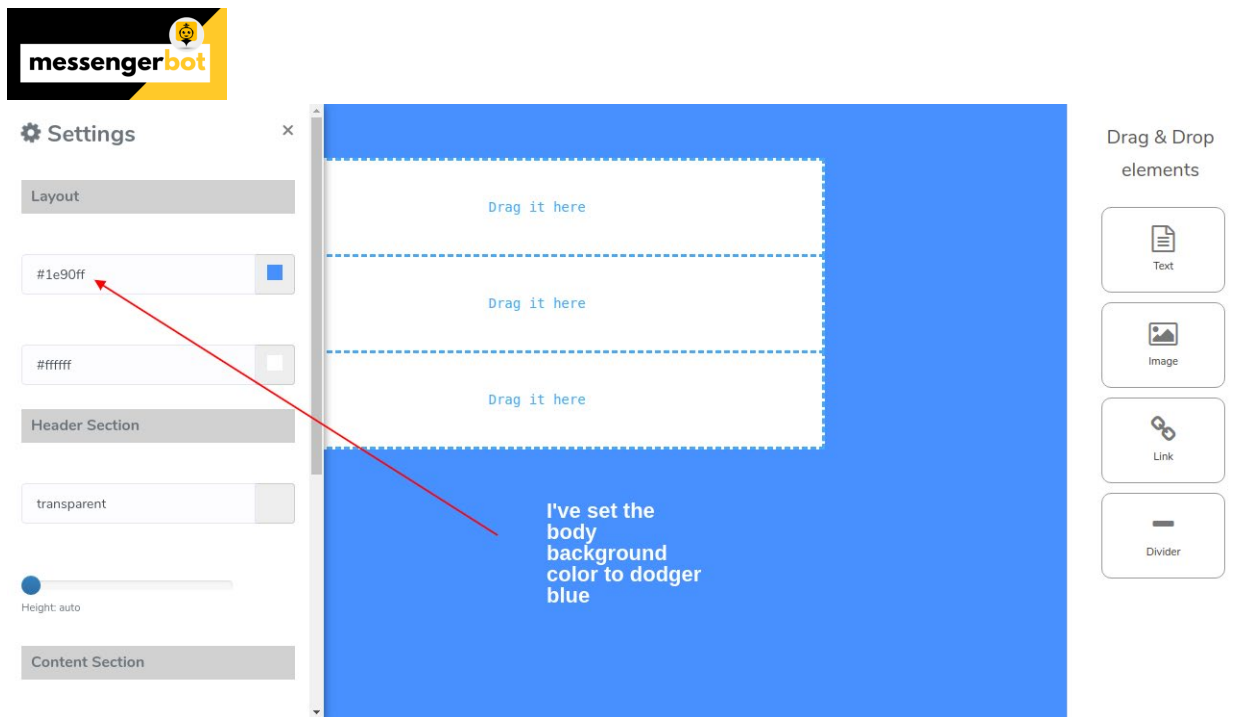


Well, assuming, we are now somewhat familiar to the components and parts of the template builder. Let start building our template. First, I will change the background color of the body. To do that you need to click on the **Layout options** button which is the 1st button from the left side as the screenshot says below:

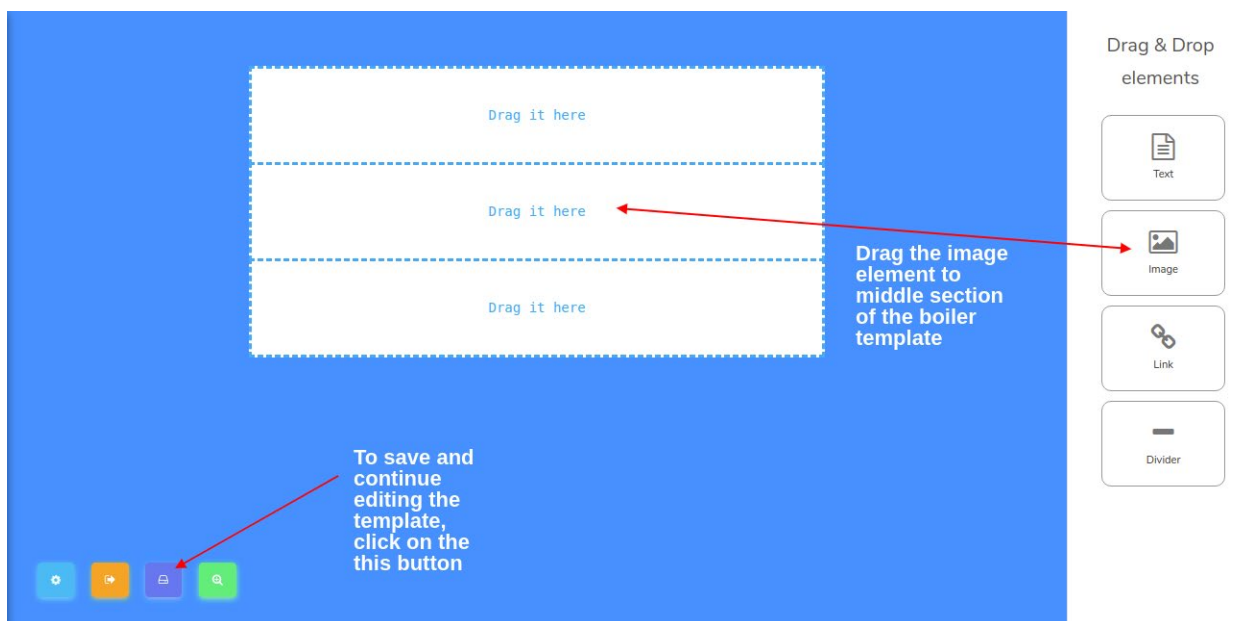


Upon clicking on that button, it will open up a box from the left side. See the screenshot below:



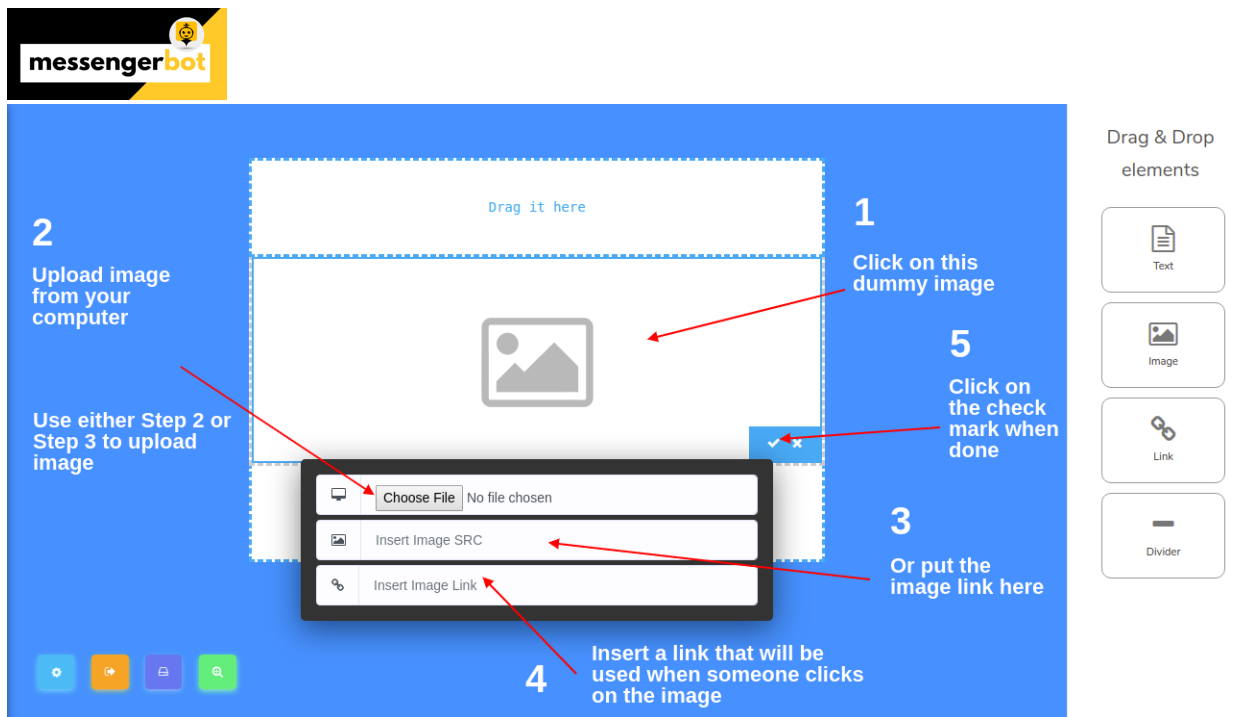


I've set up the body background color to dodger blue. You may choose one that you prefer. Now I will save the template and continue editing. To save and continue editing the template, I will click on the **Save template** button. Okay, now our template has been saved. Now I will drag the image element from the Drag & Drop elements bar to the middle section of the template. It will look like the following screenshot:



Now click on the dummy image that we get after dragging the image element. It will pop up a tiny modal. You can either upload an image from your computer or put the image source in the specified input field. Check out the following screenshot:





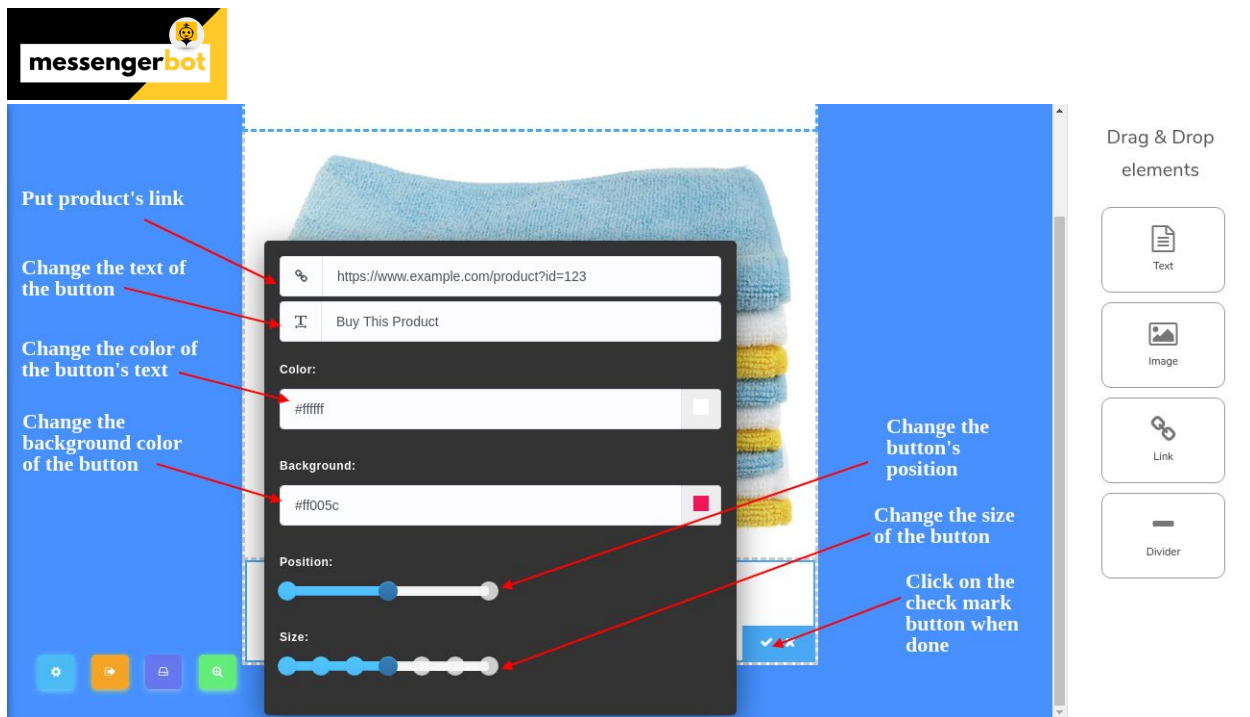
Now I will upload my product's image, for example, and set the product's link to the image as described in the screenshot above.

Next, I will add a button. To do that I need to drag the button element to the template's end section.

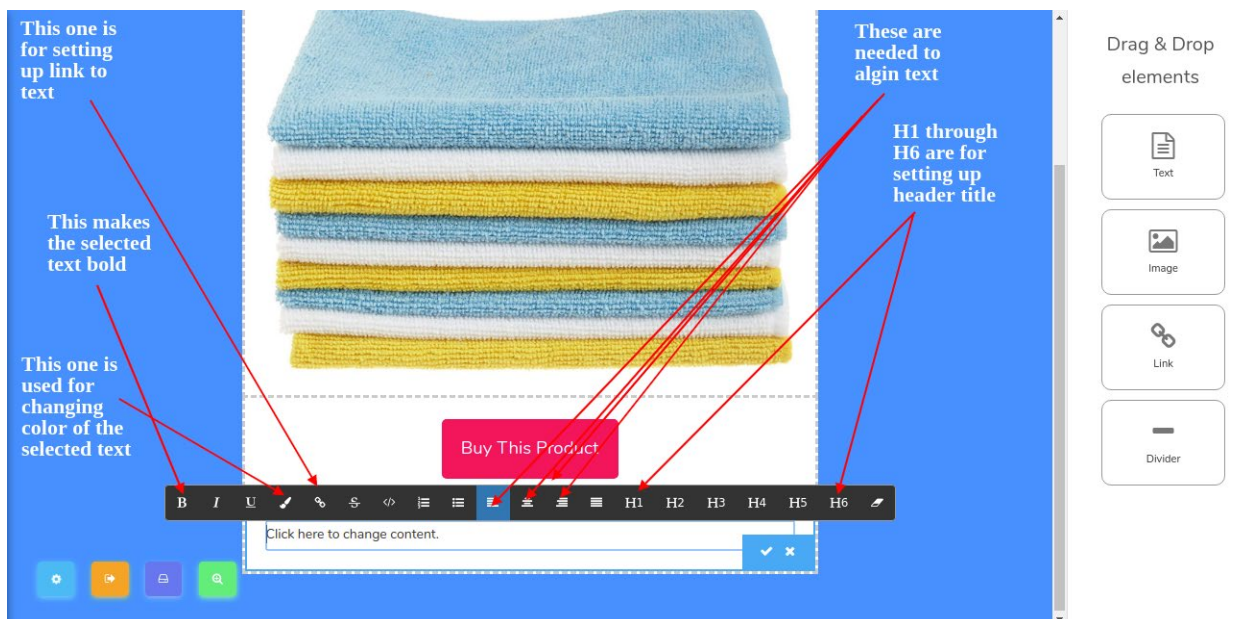


And to change its background color and to set up a link of the product's page I need to click on the button. I get this modal when clicking the button:



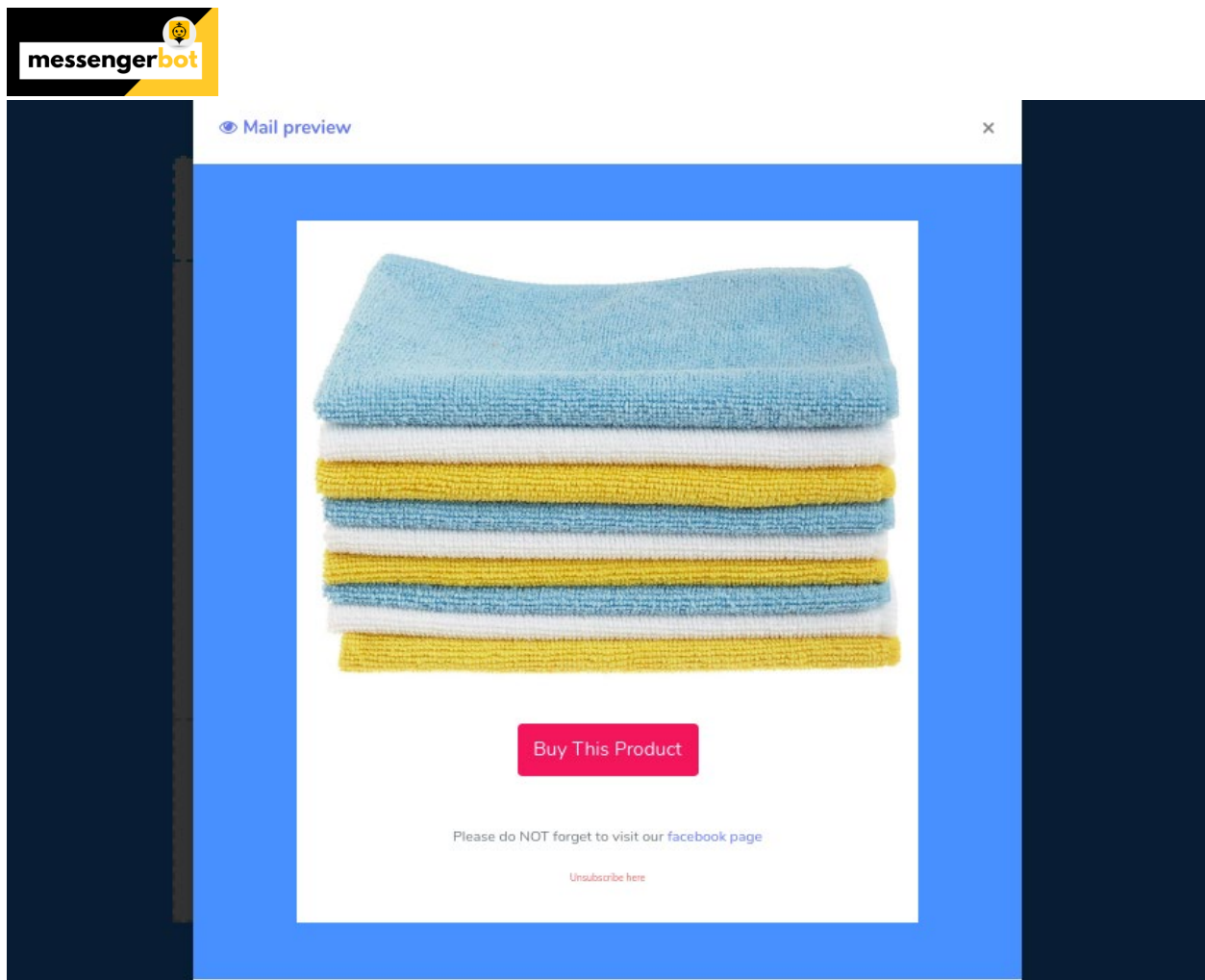


Now I will add a couple of link elements and a text element. Before doing that let's see what's in it. Check out the screenshot below:

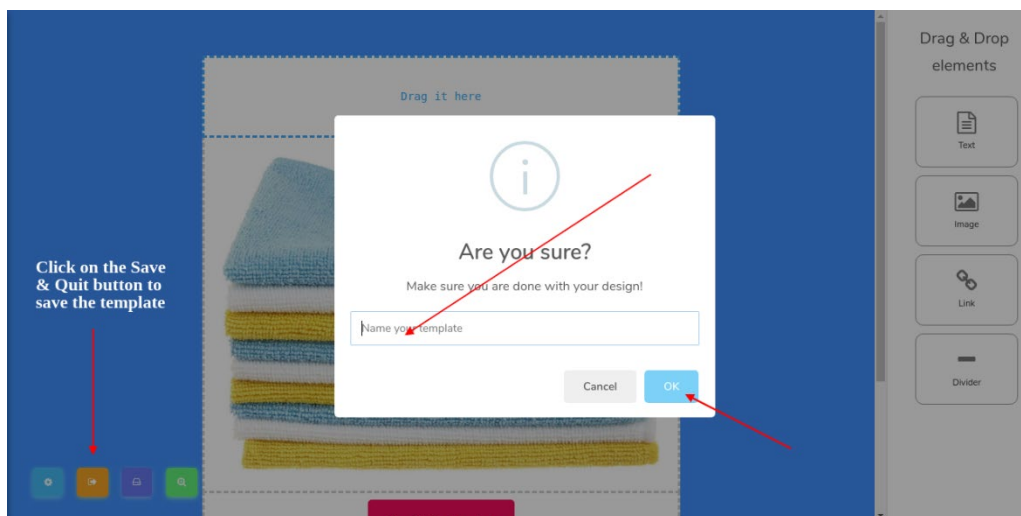


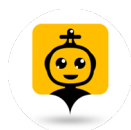
I've added two text elements and made two links. One is for the Facebook page and the other is for unsubscribing. Now I'm done. See its preview as the following:





As I'm done with building the HTML email template, it's time to save the template and quit the interface. To do that you need to click on the **Save & Quit** button. It will then pop up a modal that will ask for the template name. So put the template name as you need. Click on the **OK** button when done. See the following screenshot:







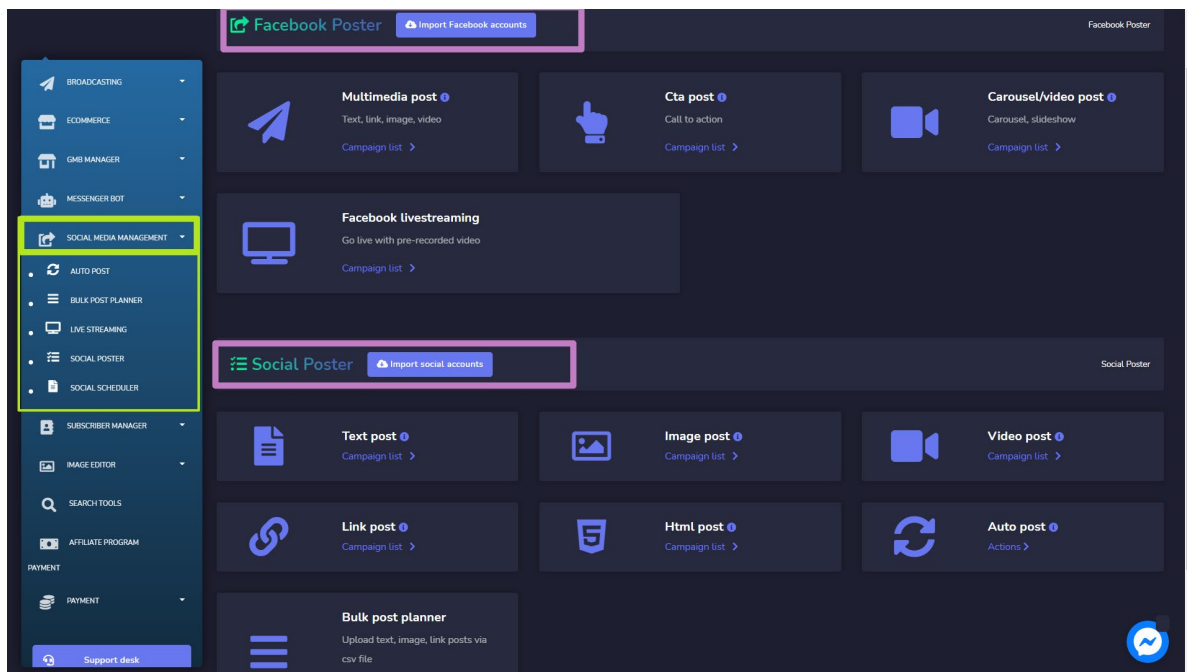
Social Posting

The Social Posting feature allows you to manage all social media accounts via one platform. You can manage all Facebook posts, slideshows, videos via the Facebook poster section. You can import multiple accounts and integrate them for different posts respectively in the Social poster section.

To view this section, navigate to **Social Media Management** from the navigation menu located and tab on it, then **click on any under it**.

A screen containing the following two sections will appear:

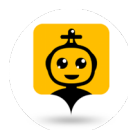
- [Facebook Poster](#)
- [Social Poster](#)



Facebook Poster

Facebook Poster manages all Facebook-related activities and posts. This section further consists of the following four parts:

- [Multimedia Post](#)
- [CTA Post](#)
- [Carousel/Video Post](#)
- Facebook livestreaming

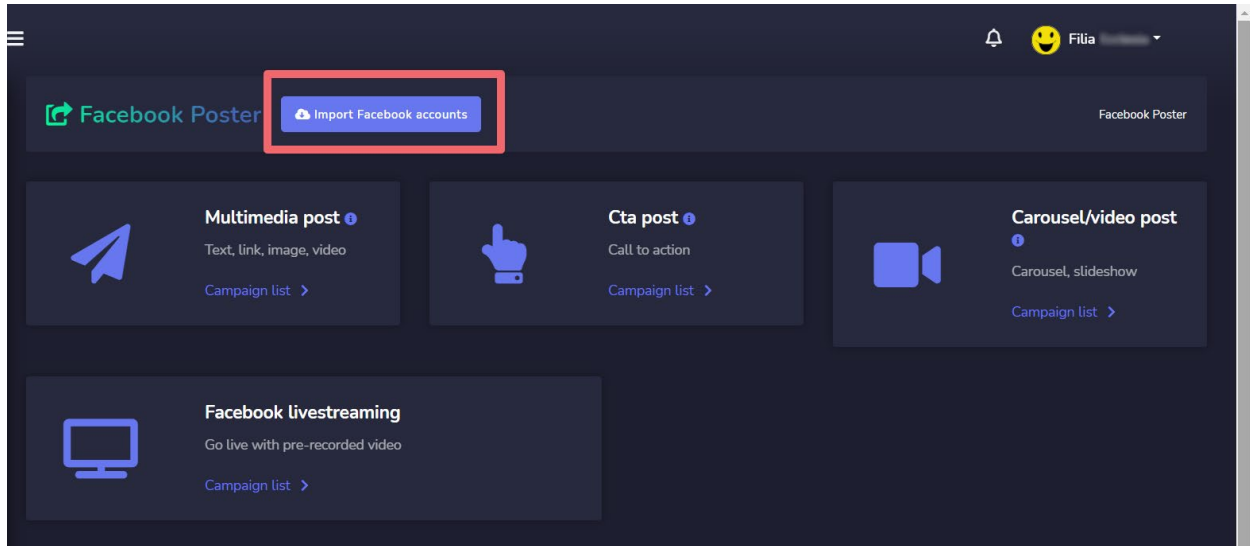




The details of these first three are discussed in upcoming sections.

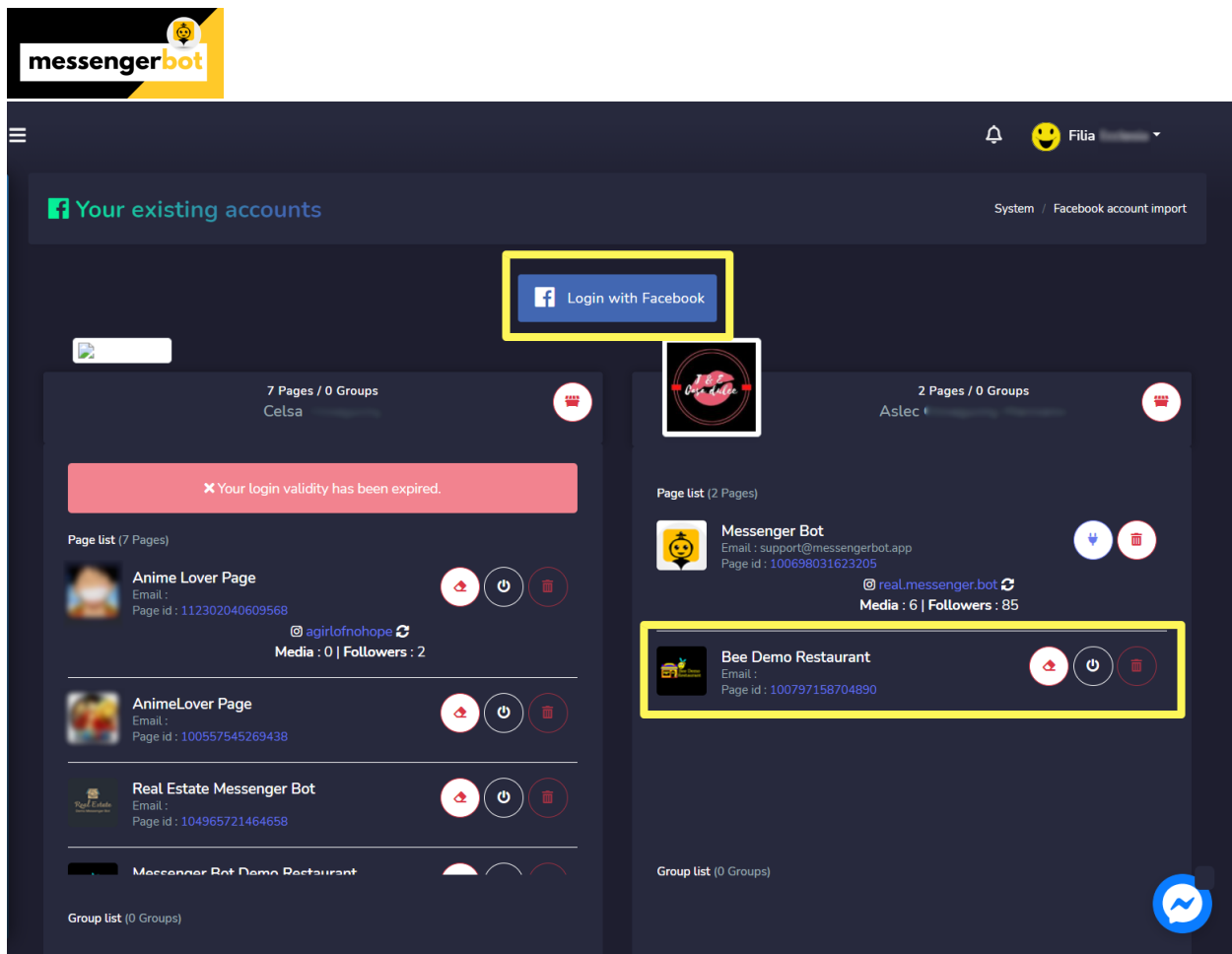
To access this section, you need to make sure that all your Facebook accounts have already been imported.

1. Select **Import Facebook accounts** from the top of your screen.

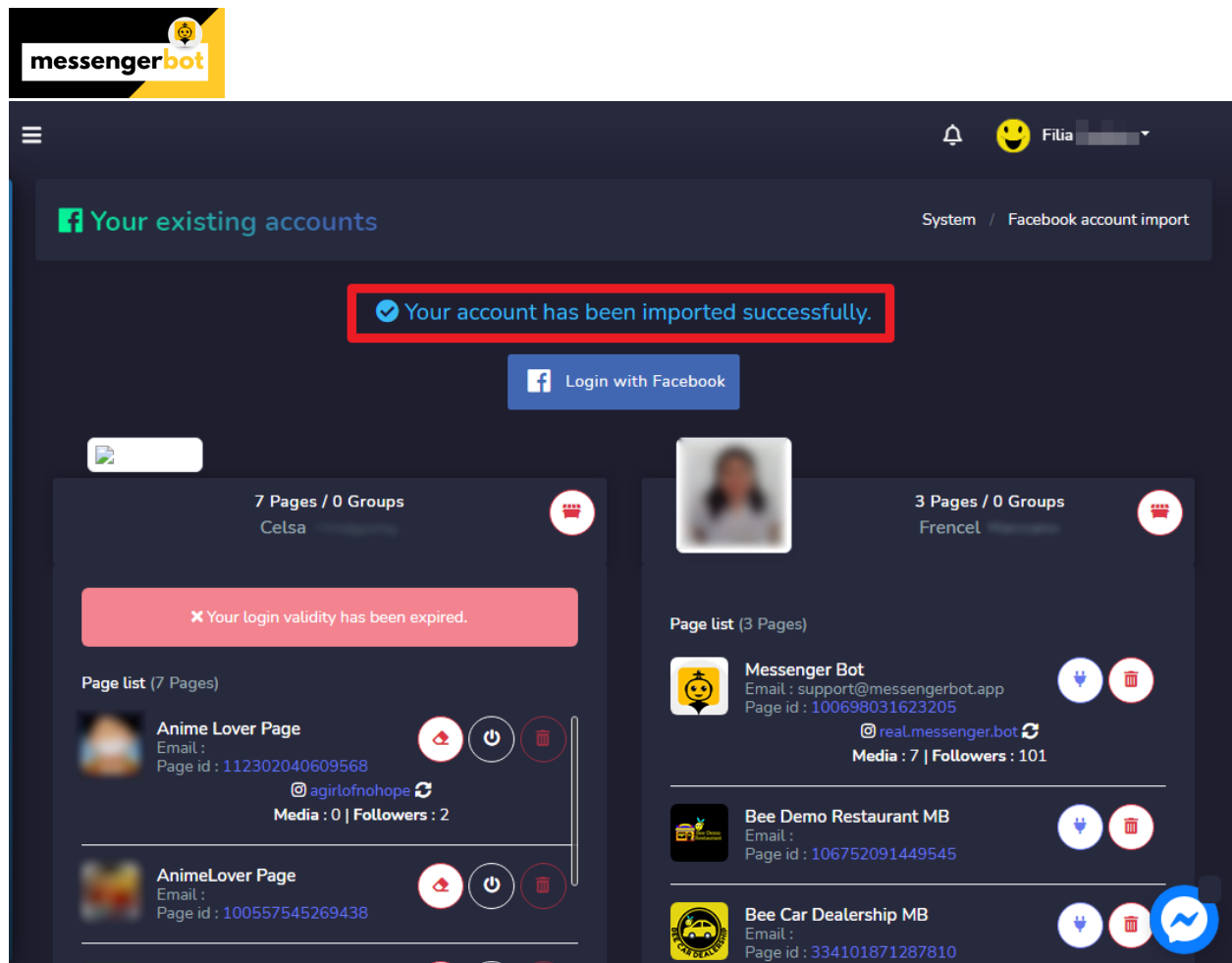


2. Select **Login with Facebook**.





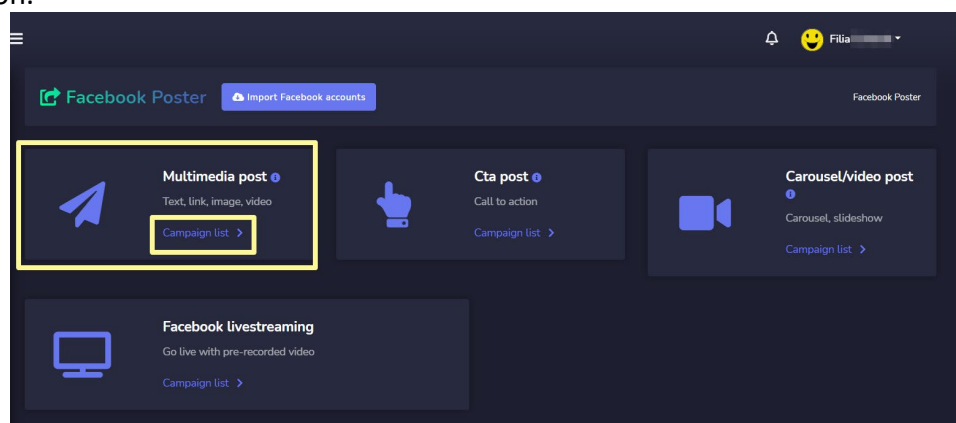
3. Your account will be imported successfully.



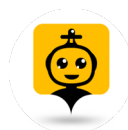
You can also see the [Import Account](#) section for clarification.

Multimedia Post

To access the multimedia post section, select the **Campaign list** option from the **Multimedia Post** section.




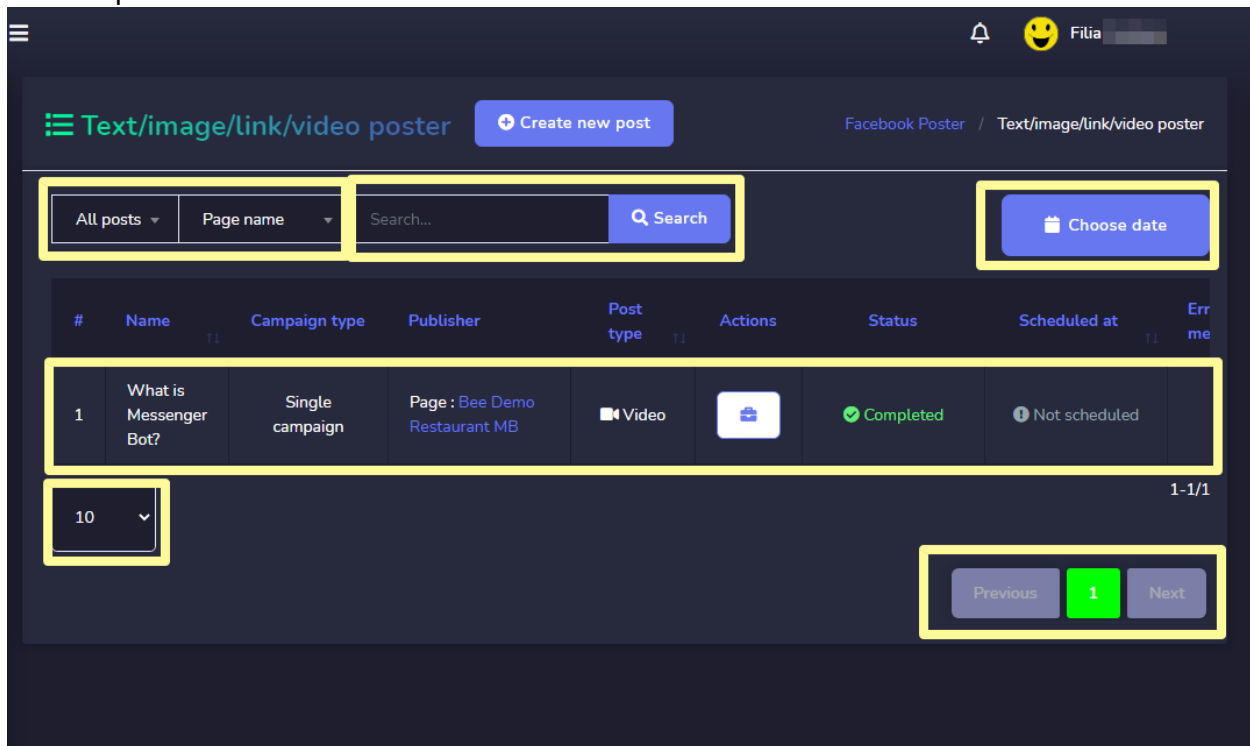
A **Text/Image/Link/Video Poster** screen will appear, it consists of a list of campaign types and names you can search for a campaign by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of campaigns to be **viewed per page**. You can choose the **date range** for the **narrowed search**.






You can also sort them out **based on their status**. You can arrange the **names** either in **ascending or descending order** by using the **arrows** in the **header of the table**. You can **narrow down** your search by selecting the **Page name** and **Posts**.

To perform different **actions** on the campaigns, select  option against the campaign you want to perform actions on.



The screenshot shows the Facebook Poster interface. At the top, there's a header with a menu icon, a notification bell, a smiley face, and the name 'Filia'. Below the header, there's a section titled 'Text/image/link/video poster' with a 'Create new post' button. A search bar is present with filters for 'All posts' and 'Page name', and a 'Search' button. A 'Choose date' button is also visible. The main part of the interface is a table with columns: '#', 'Name', 'Campaign type', 'Publisher', 'Post type', 'Actions', 'Status', 'Scheduled at', and 'Error'. The first row of the table is highlighted with a yellow box and contains the following data: '# 1', 'Name: What is Messenger Bot?', 'Campaign type: Single campaign', 'Publisher: Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB', 'Post type: Video', 'Actions: [action icon]', 'Status: Completed', 'Scheduled at: Not scheduled', and 'Error:'. Below the table, there's a pagination control showing '10' and a 'Next' button. At the bottom right, there's a navigation bar with 'Previous', '1', and 'Next' buttons.

The following are the actions that can be performed:

- View the post by selecting .



messengerbot

☰

🔔

😊 Filia

☰ Text/image/link/video poster

➕ Create new post

Facebook Poster / Text/image/link/video poster

All posts ▾ Page name ▾ Search...

🔍 Search

📅 Choose date

#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Post type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Error message
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	📺 Video		Scheduled		

10 ▾

1-1/1

Previous 1 Next

- View the campaign report by selecting 

Text/image/link/video poster Create new post Facebook Poster / Text/image/link/video poster

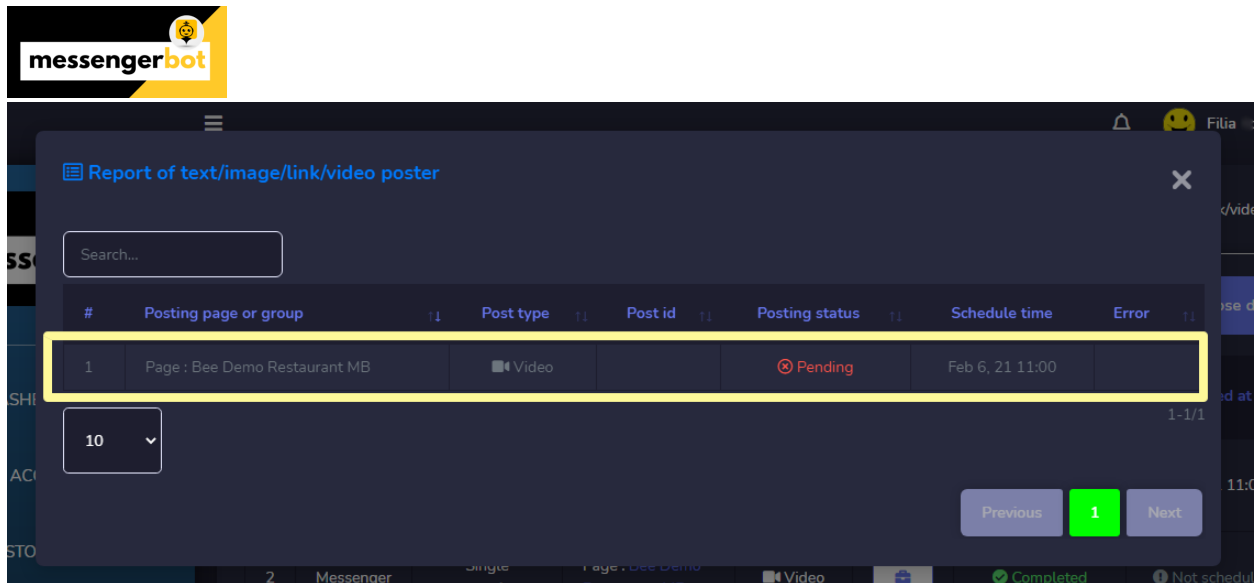
All posts ▾
Page name ▾


Search
Choose date

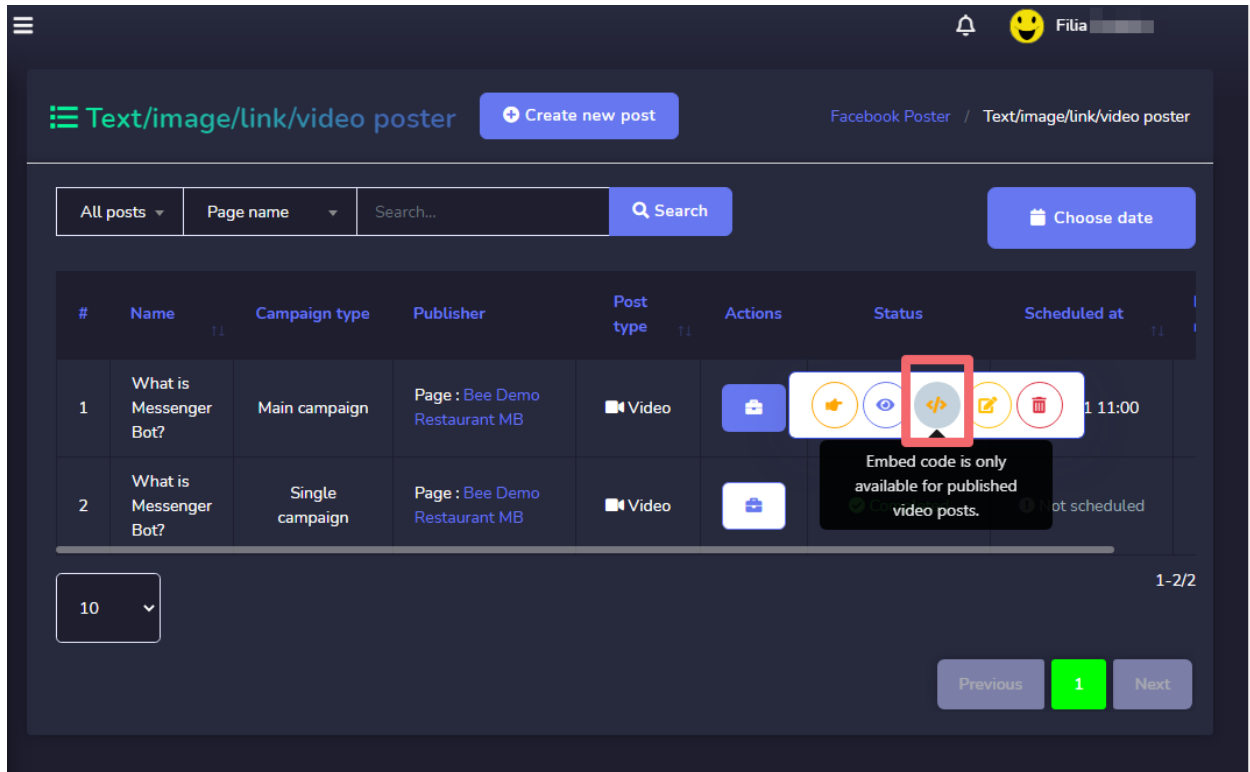
#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Post type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Main campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Video		In progress	11:00
2	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Video		Completed	Not scheduled

10 ▾
Previous
1
Next

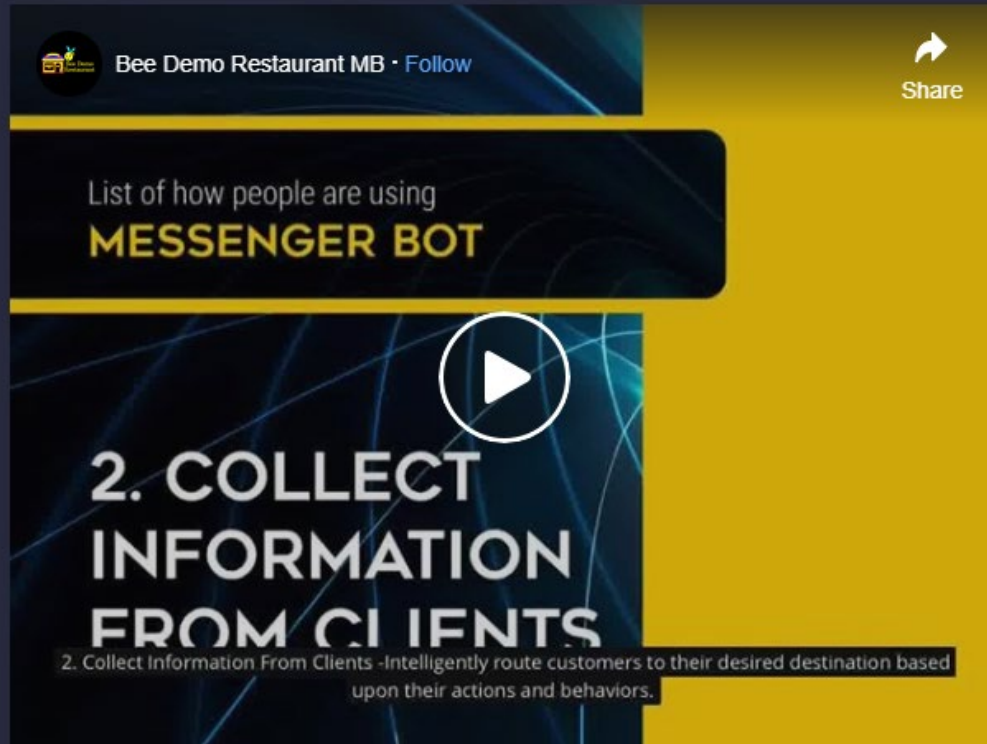




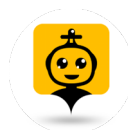
- Fetch the JSON by selecting 



```
<iframe src="https://www.facebook.com/plugins/video.php?href=https://www.facebook.com/BeeDemoRestaurantMB/videos/121834859830980/&show_text=0&width=600" width="600" height="600" style="border:none;overflow:hidden" scrolling="no" frameborder="0" allowTransparency="true" allowFullScreen="true"></iframe>
```



- Edit a campaign



Text/image/link/video poster

[Create new post](#)
Facebook Poster / Text/image/link/video poster

All posts
Page name
Search...
[Search](#)
[Choose date](#)

#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Post type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Main campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Video			11:00
2	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Video		Completed	Not scheduled

10
1-2/2

[Previous](#)
[1](#)
[Next](#)

Update text/image/link/video post

Facebook Poster / Text/image/link/video posts / Update text/image/link/video post

Text
Link
Image
Video

Campaign name

Message

Video url

Video thumbnail url

[Upload](#)
[Upload](#)

Preview

This preview may differ with actual post.

Frencel
Messenger Bot • Now

What is
MESSENGER BOT?

0:00 / 3:28



×

Post to pages

×

Bee Demo Restaurant MB

Auto reply template

Welcome

▼

Post to groups

❗ For posting to group, you must need to install the app in your groups. Click here to read the full instruction.

Schedule time

2021-02-06 11:00:09

Time zone

(GMT-8:00) America/Los_Angeles

▼

Repost this post

0

Times

Time interval

every 1 hours

▼

Submit post

Cancel

- Delete a campaign

☰

🔔

😊 Filia

Text/image/link/video poster

Create new post

Facebook Poster / Text/image/link/video poster

All posts ▼

Page name ▼

Search...

Search

Choose date

#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Post type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Main campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Video	<div> <div>🗑️</div> <div>👍</div> <div>👁️</div> <div>🔗</div> <div>✍️</div> <div>🗑️</div> </div>		11:00
2	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Video	<div>🗑️</div>		

 Completed | Not scheduled |

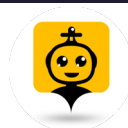
10 ▼

1-2/2

Previous

1

Next





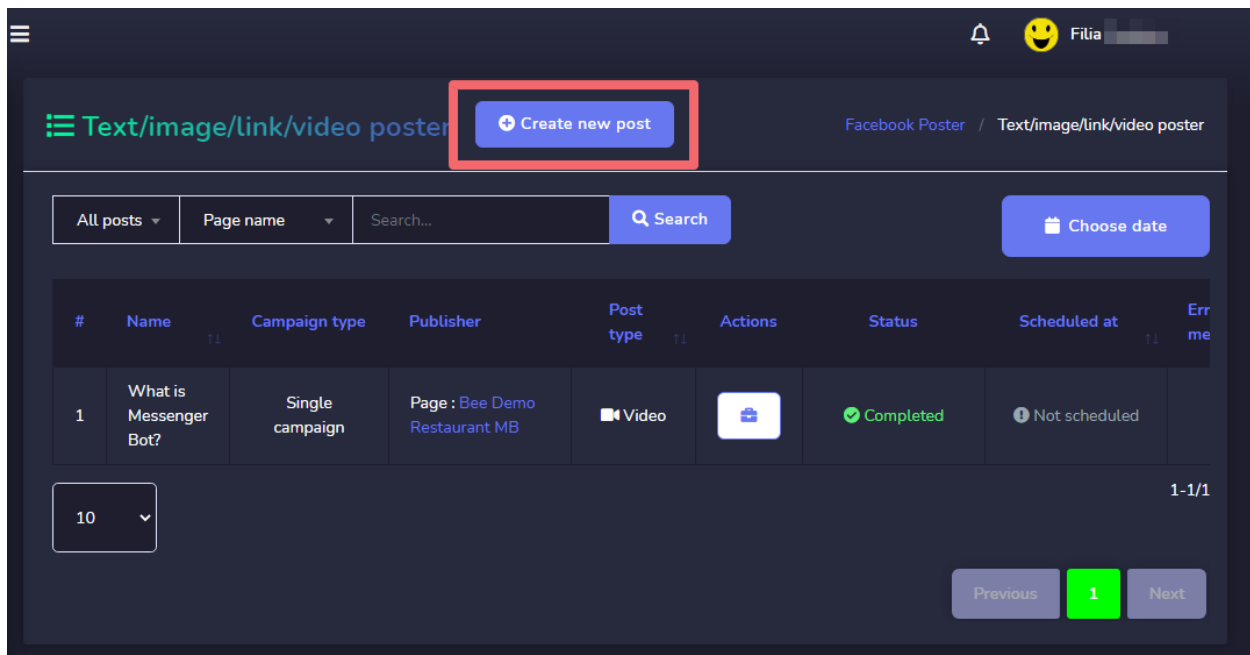
Note

- For the posts that are already published, you cannot fetch the JSON code nor edit them.
- If the parent campaign has been selected while creating the campaign then only the parent campaign will display the report.

Create new Multimedia Post


To create a new multimedia post, follow the steps given below:

1. Select  from **Text/Image/Link/Video Poster** screen.



2. An **Add text/image/link/video post** screen will appear. User can either add one of the following
 - Text
 - Link
 - Image
 - Video





Facebook Poster / Text/image/link/video posts / Add text/image/link/video post

Add text/image/link/video post

Text Link Image Video

Campaign name

Message ⓘ

Type your message here...

Post to pages ⓘ

Auto reply template ⓘ

Please select a template

Post to groups

Posting time ⓘ


Post now

For posting to group, you must need to install the app in your

Preview


This preview may differ with actual post.

Frencel Messenger Bot • Now




3. Provide a **Campaign name** and a **message, link, image or video** based on your selection from the step 2.
4. Select the **pages** to which this needs to be posted.
5. Select an **Auto reply template** as well.
6. Schedule a **Posting time**.
7. Once done, you need to select **Create campaign** option.





 Add text/image/link/video post Facebook

Text | Link | Image | Video


Campaign name


Message 


Type your message here...


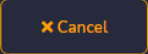
Post to pages  Auto reply template 

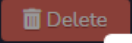
Post to groups

Posting time 

 Post now

 For posting to group, you must need to install the app in your groups. Click here to read the full instruction.


 

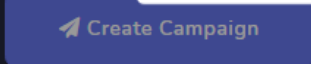
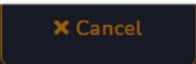



Post to pages

x Bee Den

Post to group


 For posting need to install groups. Click here to read the full instruction.



Facebook post has been performed successfully.

[Click here to see report](#)

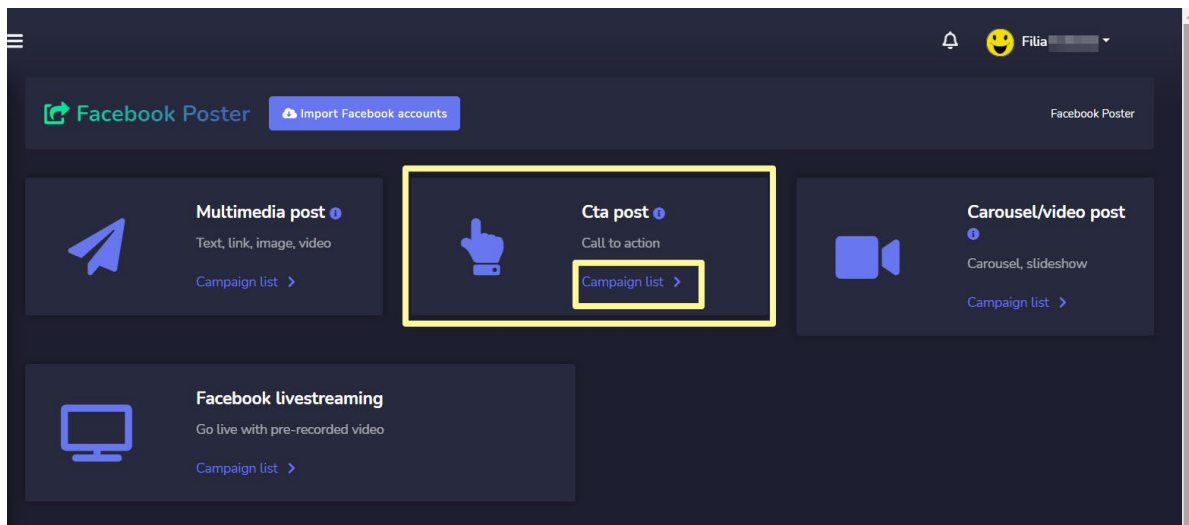





- You can check the preview version that appears on the right side of the screen for a better analysis of the way your post will appear.

CTA Post

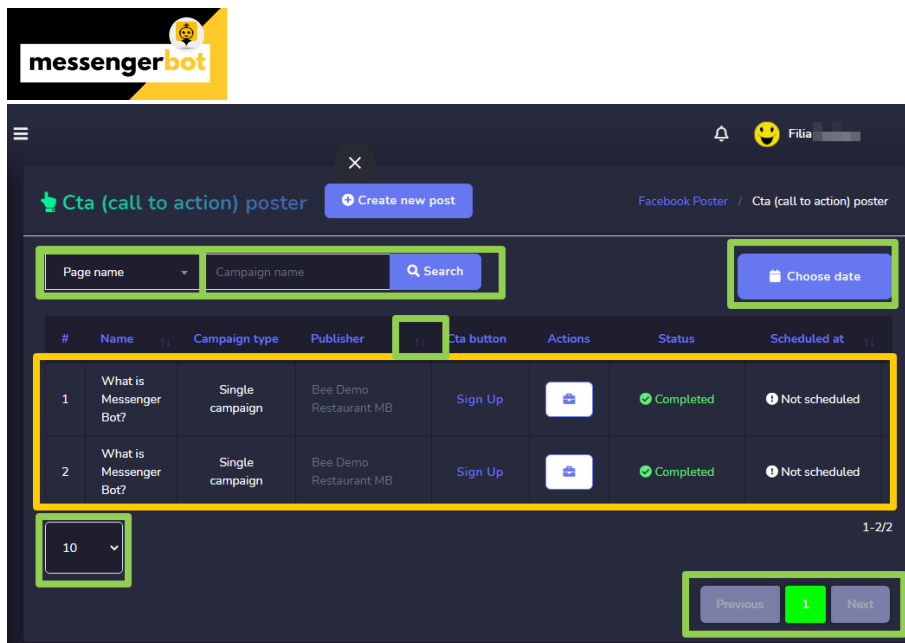
To access the CTA post section, select the **Campaign list** option from **CTA Post** section.




A **CTA (Call to Action) Poster** screen will appear, it consists of a list of campaign types and names you can search for a campaign by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the number of campaigns to be viewed per page. You can choose the **date range** for the narrowed search. You can also sort them out based on their status. You can arrange the names either in ascending or descending order by using the **arrows** in the header of the table. You can narrow down your search by selecting the **Page name**.

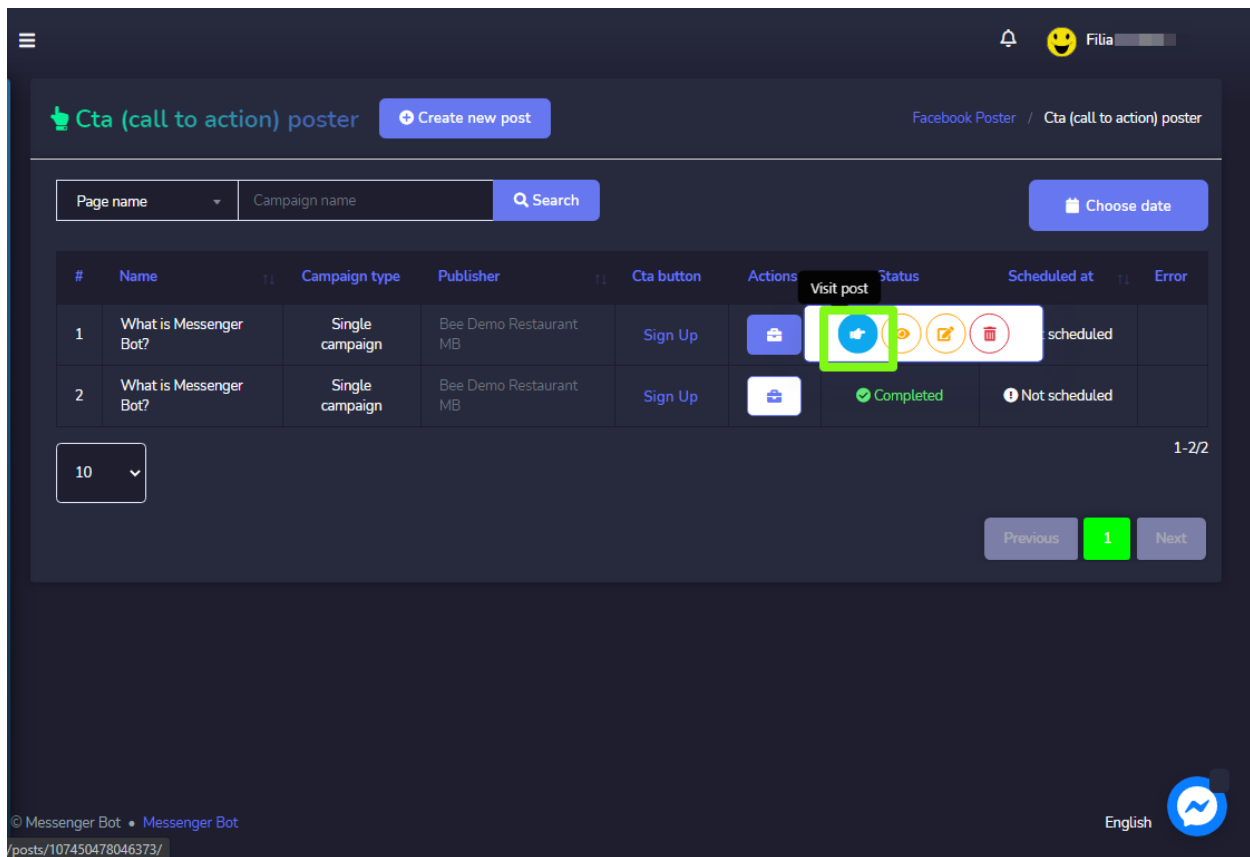
To perform different actions on the campaigns, select  option against the campaign you want to perform actions on.

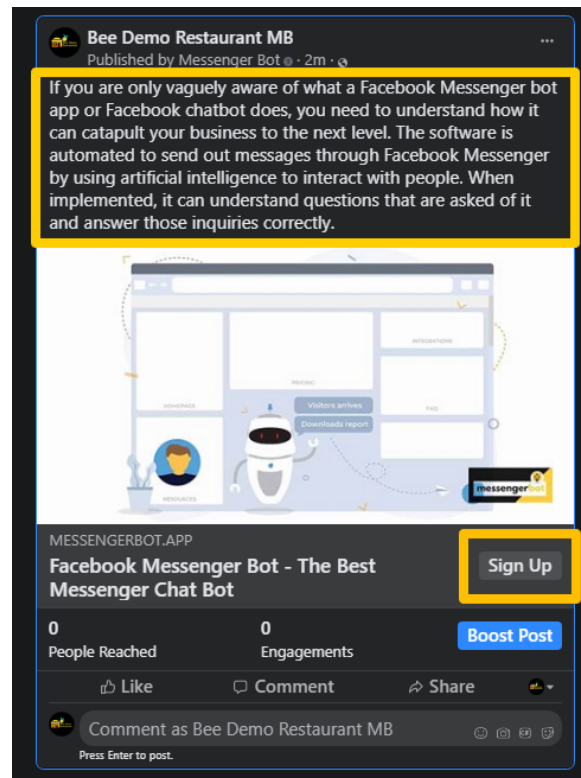




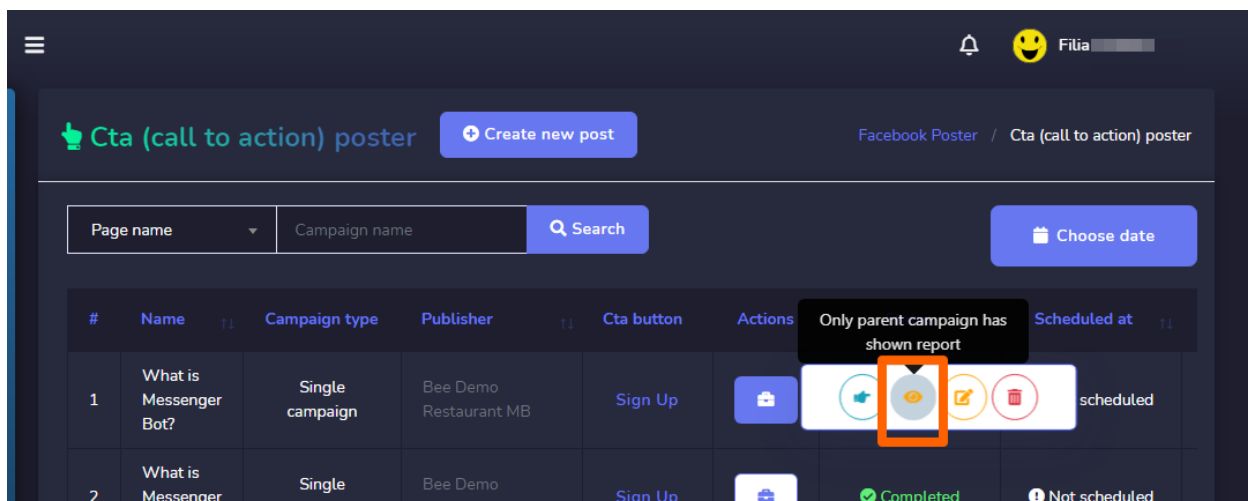
The following are the actions that can be performed:

- View the post by selecting 









- View the campaign report by selecting 





- Edit a campaign







 Filip










 Cta (call to action) poster [Create new post](#) Facebook Poster / Cta (call to action) poster


Page name 

Campaign name

 Search




 Choose date


#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Cta button	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Sign Up	   	  	scheduled
2	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Sign Up		 Completed	Not scheduled


10 

1-2/2


- Delete a campaign


 Filip










 Cta (call to action) poster [Create new post](#) Facebook Poster / Cta (call to action) poster


Page name 

Campaign name

 Search

 Choose date

#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Cta button	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Sign Up	   	  	scheduled
2	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Sign Up		 Completed	Not scheduled


10 

1-2/2

Previous

1

Next







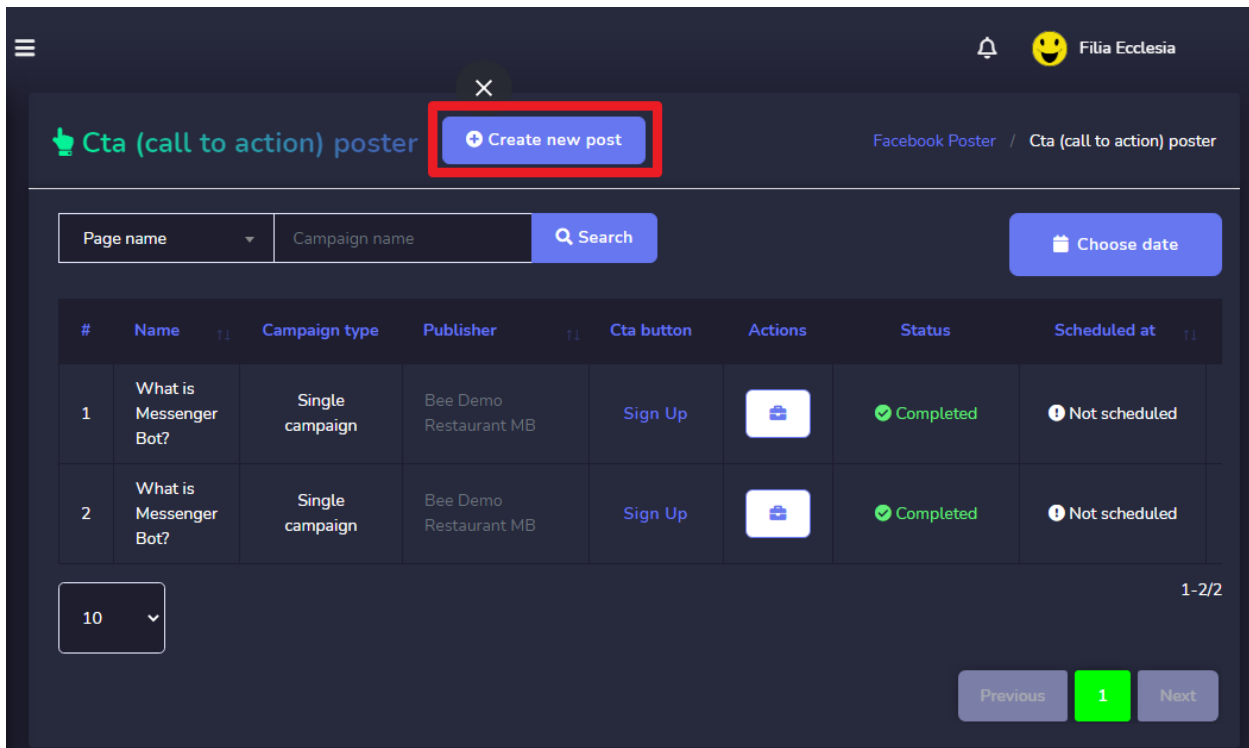
Note

- For the posts that are already published, you cannot edit them.
- If the parent campaign has been selected while creating the campaign then only the parent campaign will display the report.



Create new CTA Post

To create a new CTA post, follow the steps given below:

1. Select  from **CTA (Call to Action) Poster** screen.




The screenshot shows the 'Cta (call to action) poster' screen. At the top, there is a 'Create new post' button highlighted with a red box. Below this, there is a search bar with 'Page name' and 'Campaign name' fields, a 'Search' button, and a 'Choose date' button. The main content is a table with the following columns: #, Name, Campaign type, Publisher, Cta button, Actions, Status, and Scheduled at. The table contains two rows of data.

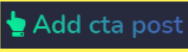
#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Cta button	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Sign Up		✓ Completed	ⓘ Not scheduled
2	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Sign Up		✓ Completed	ⓘ Not scheduled

At the bottom, there is a pagination control showing '10' items per page and '1-2/2' total items. The 'Previous' button is disabled, the '1' button is active, and the 'Next' button is disabled.

2. Provide a **Campaign name** and a **message**.
3. Provide the **paste link** and **CTA button type**.






Facebook Poster / Cta posts / Add cta post

Campaign form

Campaign name

Message

If you are only vaguely aware of what a Facebook Messenger bot app or Facebook chatbot does, you need to understand how it can catapult your business to the next level. The software is automated to send out messages through Facebook Messenger by using artificial intelligence to interact with people. When implemented, it can understand questions that are asked of it and answer those inquiries correctly.

Paste link

Cta button type

Message Page

Post to pages

x Bee Demo Restaurant MB

Auto reply template

Welcome


Posting time

☒ Post now

Create Campaign **Cancel**


Preview

This preview may differ with actual post.

 **Frencel**
Messenger Bot • Now


If you are only vaguely aware of what a Facebook Messenger bot app or Facebook chatbot does, you need to understand how it can catapult your business to the next level. The software is automated to send out messages through Facebook Messenger by using artificial intelligence to interact with people. When implemented, it can understand questions that are asked of it and answer those inquiries correctly.

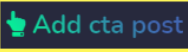
Placeholder



4. Select the **pages** to which this needs to be posted.
5. Select an **Auto reply template** as well.
6. Schedule a **Posting time**.
7. Once done, you need to select **Create campaign** option.







Facebook Poster / Cta posts / Add cta post

Campaign form

Campaign name

What is Messenger Bot?

Message

If you are only vaguely aware of what a Facebook Messenger bot app or Facebook chatbot does, you need to understand how it can catapult your business to the next level. The software is automated to send out messages through Facebook Messenger by using artificial intelligence to interact with people. When implemented, it can understand questions that are asked of it and answer those inquiries correctly.

Paste link

Cta button type

Message Page

Post to pages

x Bee Demo Restaurant MB

Auto reply template

Welcome

Posting time

☒ Post now

Create Campaign

Cancel

Preview

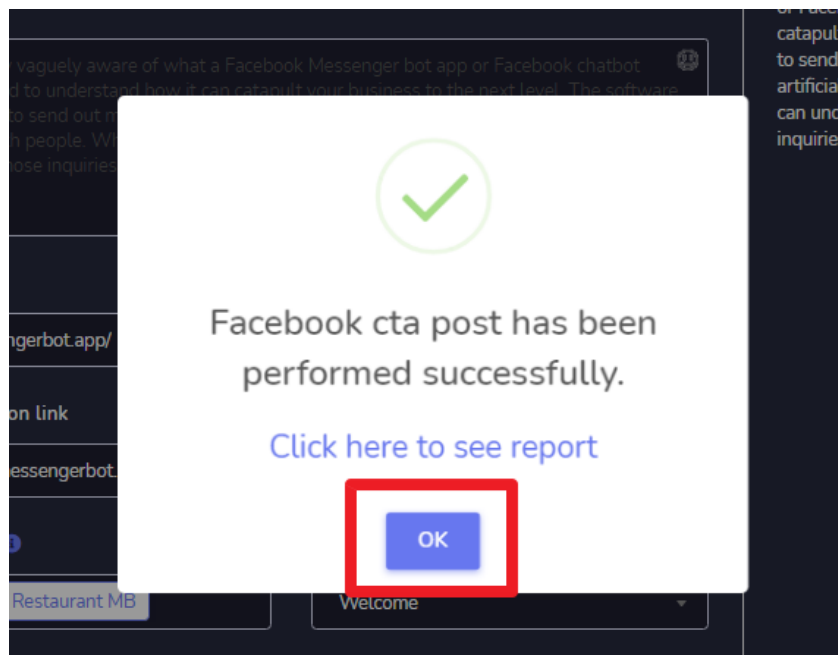
This preview may differ with actual post.

Frencel

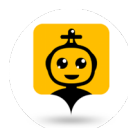
Messenger Bot • Now

If you are only vaguely aware of what a Facebook Messenger bot app or Facebook chatbot does, you need to understand how it can catapult your business to the next level. The software is automated to send out messages through Facebook Messenger by using artificial intelligence to interact with people. When implemented, it can understand questions that are asked of it and answer those inquiries correctly.

Placeholder



A white dialog box with a green checkmark icon at the top. The text inside reads: "Facebook cta post has been performed successfully." Below this, there is a link that says "Click here to see report". At the bottom of the dialog box, there is a blue button with the text "OK" inside it, which is highlighted with a red rectangular border.



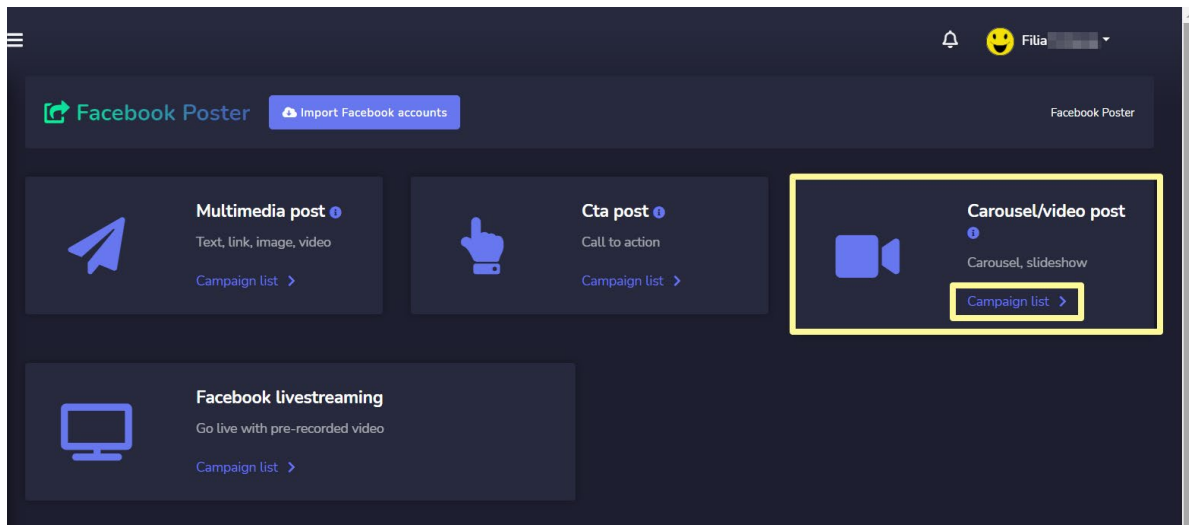
A circular logo featuring a stylized yellow robot head with a black outline and a small antenna on top.

Note


- You can check the preview version that appears on the right side of the screen for a better analysis of the way your post will appear.

Carousel/Video Post

To access the **Carousel/Video Post** section, select the **Campaign list** option from **Carousel/Video Post** section.



A **Carousel/Slider Poster** screen will appear, it consists of a list of campaign types and names you can search for a campaign by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the number of campaigns to be viewed per page. You can choose the **date range** for the narrowed search. You can also sort them out based on their status. You can arrange the names either in ascending or descending order by using the **arrows** in the header of the table. You can narrow down your search by selecting the **Page name**.

To perform different actions on the campaigns, select  option against the campaign you want to perform actions on.



Carousel/slider poster
Create new post
Facebook Poster / Carousel/slider poster

Page name
Campaign name
Search

Choose date

#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Post type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Error
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Carousel		Completed	Not scheduled	

10

Previous
1
Next

The following are the actions that can be performed:

- View the post by selecting

Carousel/slider poster
Create new post
Facebook Poster / Carousel/slider poster

Page name
Campaign name
Search

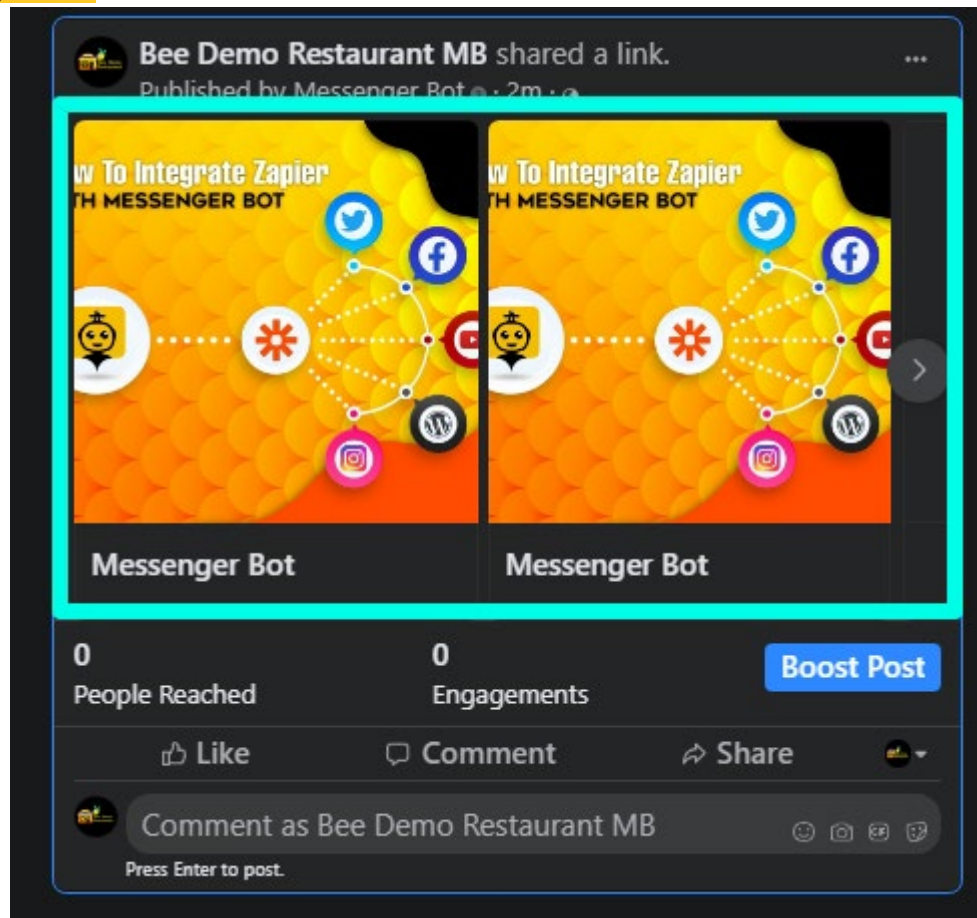
Choose date

#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Post type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Error
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Carousel		Scheduled		

10

Previous
1
Next










- View the campaign report by selecting 

Carousel/slider poster [Create new post](#) Facebook Poster / Carousel/slider poster

Page name Campaign name [Search](#) [Choose date](#)

#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Post type	Action	Status	Scheduled at	Error
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Carousel	    	Only parent campaign has shown report	Scheduled	

10

Previous **1** Next











- Fetch the JSON by selecting 

Facebook Poster / Carousel/slider poster

Page name Campaign name Search Choose date

#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Post type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Error
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Carousel	     	Scheduled		

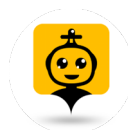
10


Previous 1 Next



Embed code is only available for published video posts.

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot English

- Edit a campaign













Filia

Carousel/slider poster
Create new post
Facebook Poster / Carousel/slider poster

Page name
Campaign name

 Search

 Choose date

#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Post type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Error
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Carousel	   			


10



1-1/1

Previous


1


Next





Filia

Edit video/carousel poster
Facebook Poster / Carousel/slider posts / Edit video/carousel poster

 Carousel

 Video slide show

Campaign name
Post to pages

Demo
x Bee Demo Restaurant MB


Video-slide

Message

What is Messenger Bot?

Image duration (second)
Transition duration (second)

1 sec
1 sec








Image content 1 :

Image link

Upload image

Image content 2 :

Image link

Upload image

Image content 3 :

Image link

Upload image

Image link

Upload image

Schedule time

Time zone


Repost this post


Times

Time interval

- Delete a campaign










Facebook Poster / Carousel/slider poster

Page name

Campaign name

Search

Choose date

#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Post type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Error
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Carousel	   		Scheduled	

10

1-1/1


Previous

1

Next

Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot

English



Note

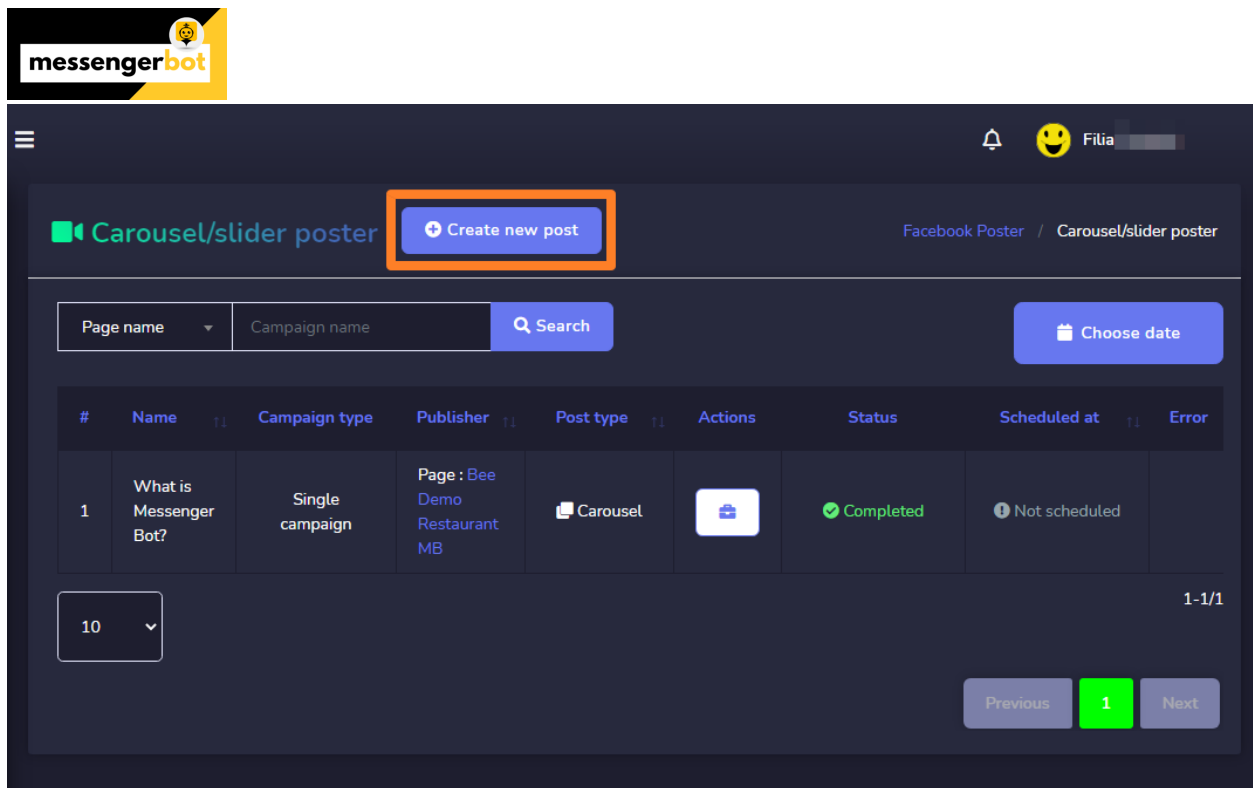
- For the posts that are already published, you cannot fetch the JSON code nor edit them.
- If the parent campaign has been selected while creating the campaign then only the parent campaign will display the report.

Create new Carousel/Video Post

To create a new Carousel/Video post, follow the steps given below:

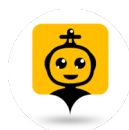
1. Select  from **Carousel/Slider Poster** screen.





2. A **Carousel/Slider Poster** screen will appear. User can either add one of the following:
 - Carousel
 - Video slide show
3. Provide a **Campaign name** and a **message, slider link** or **video-slide** based on your selection from the step 2.

This screenshot shows the 'Video/carousel poster' form. It has two tabs: 'Carousel' (selected) and 'Video slide show'. The form contains several input fields, four of which are highlighted with orange rectangles: 'Campaign name' (containing 'What is Messenger Bot?'), 'Post to pages' (containing 'Bee Demo Restaurant MB'), 'Slider link' (containing 'https://messengerbot.app/'), and 'Message' (containing 'Type your status here...').





4. Provide the **Slider Content 1**.
5. Select the **pages** to which this needs to be posted.
6. Schedule a **Posting time**.
7. Once done, you need to select **Create campaign** option.

A screenshot of the Messenger Bot campaign creation interface. The interface is dark-themed with a blue header bar. The main content area is titled "Slider content 1:" and contains several input fields and buttons. The "Title" field is labeled "Title" and contains the text "Messenger Bot". The "Action link" field is labeled "Action link" and contains the URL "https://messengerbot.app/". The "Description" field is labeled "Description" and contains the placeholder text "Type your description here...". The "Image link" field is labeled "Image link" and contains the URL "https://messengerbot.app/". The "Upload image" section has a button labeled "Upload". Below the input fields is a button labeled "Add more content". At the bottom, there is a "Posting time" section with a toggle switch labeled "Post now". The "Create Campaign" button is highlighted with an orange box, and the "Cancel" button is also highlighted with an orange box. A blue Messenger logo is visible in the bottom right corner.

Slider content 1: ✕

Title
Messenger Bot

Action link
https://messengerbot.app/

Description
Type your description here...

Image link
https://messengerbot.app/

Upload image
Upload

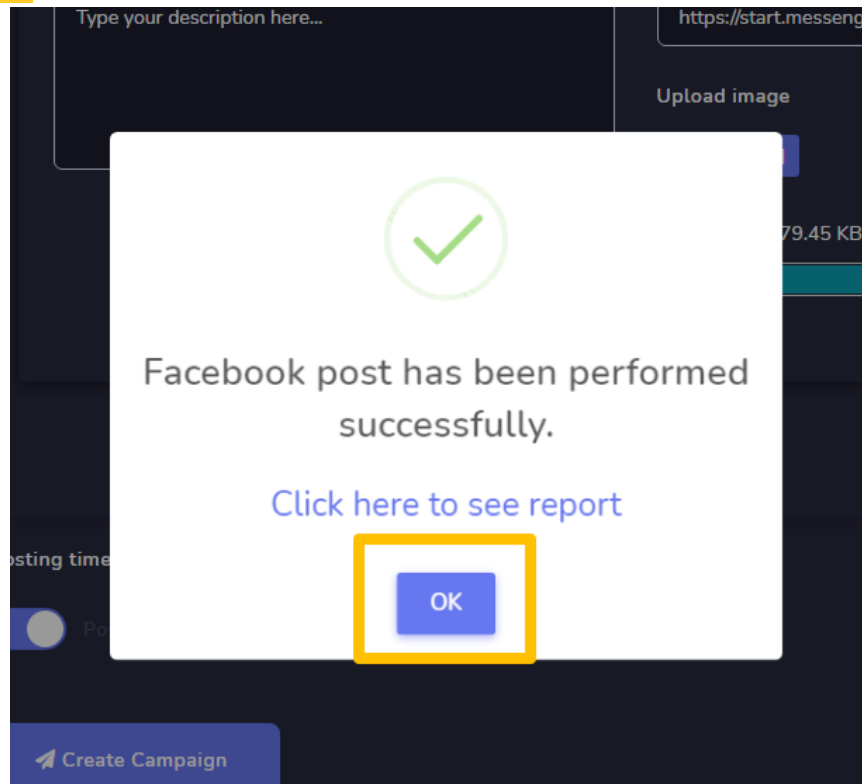
+ Add more content

Posting time ⓘ
Post now

Create Campaign

Cancel





Social Poster

Social poster is used to manage all activities from a different account on one platform. This section further consists of following seven parts:

- Text Post
- Image Post
- Video Post
- Link Post
- Html Post
- Auto post
- Bulk post planner.

The details of these will be discussed in upcoming sections and start with Import social accounts.

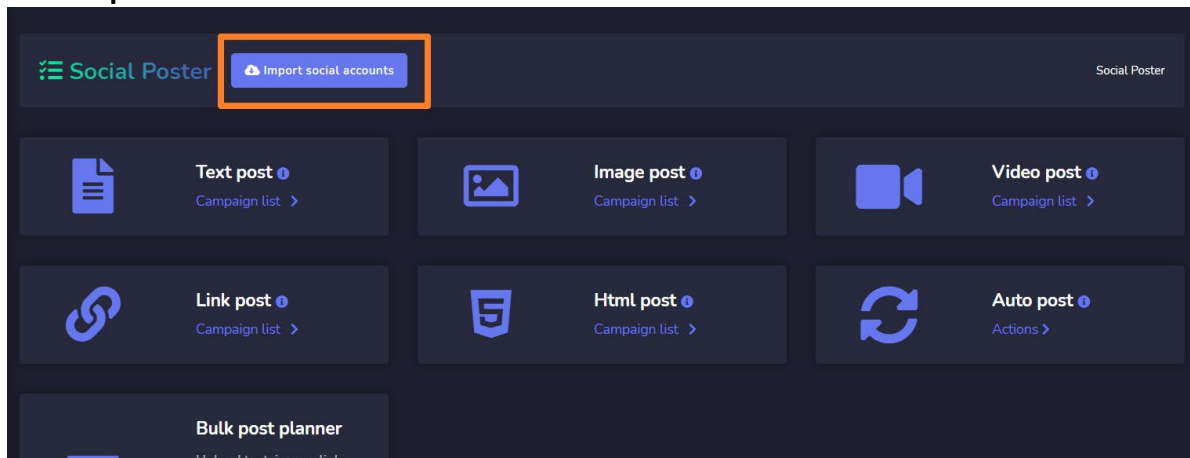
Import social accounts

To access this section, you need to make sure that all your social accounts have already been imported.

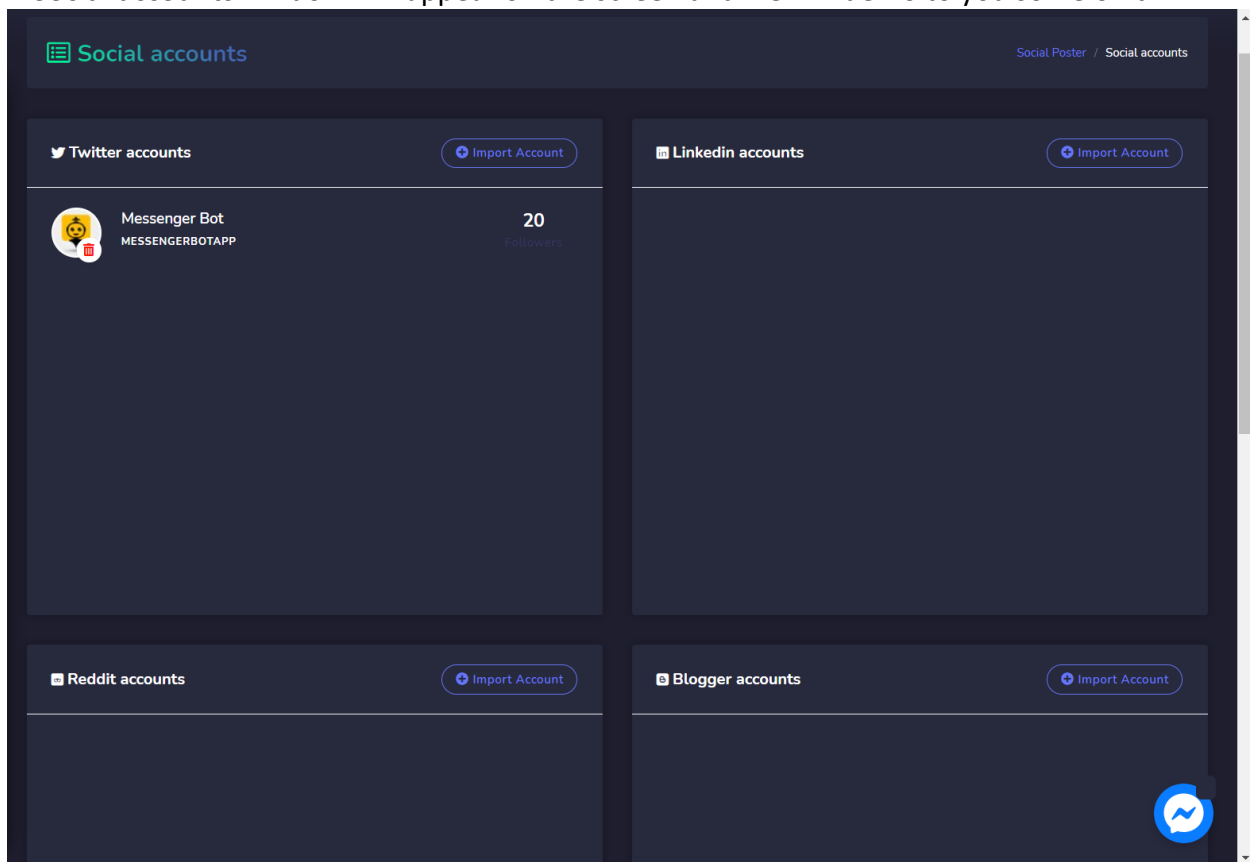




Tab on **Import social accounts**.



A **Social accounts** window will appear on the screen and we will demo to you some of it.

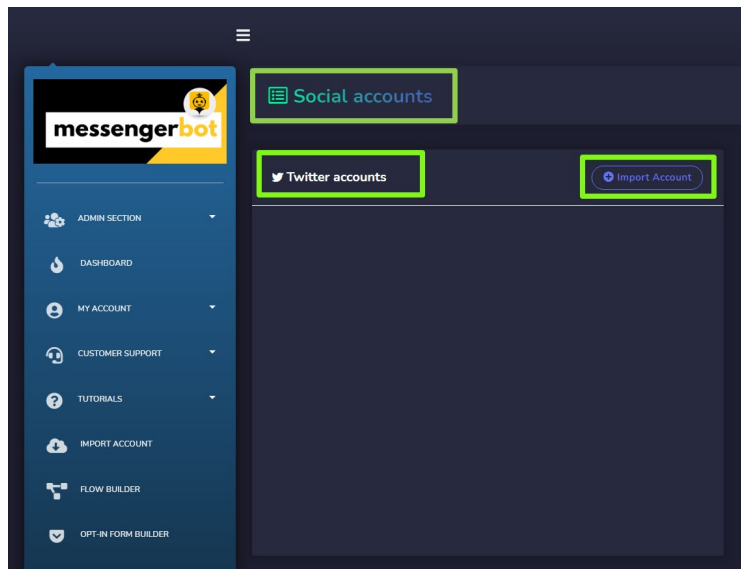


Twitter accounts

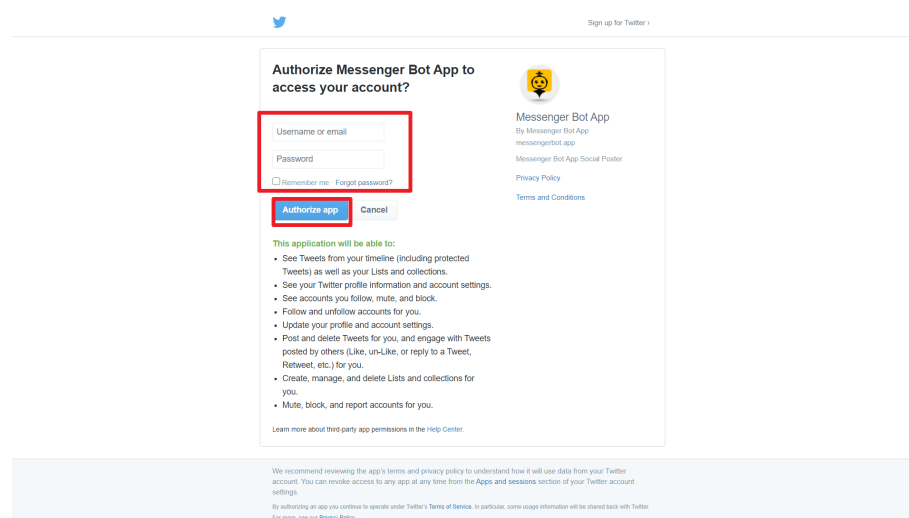
To import your twitter account, follow the steps given below:

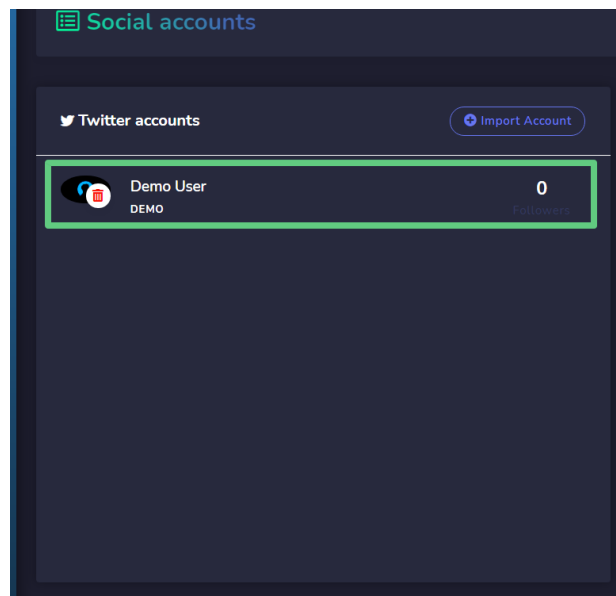
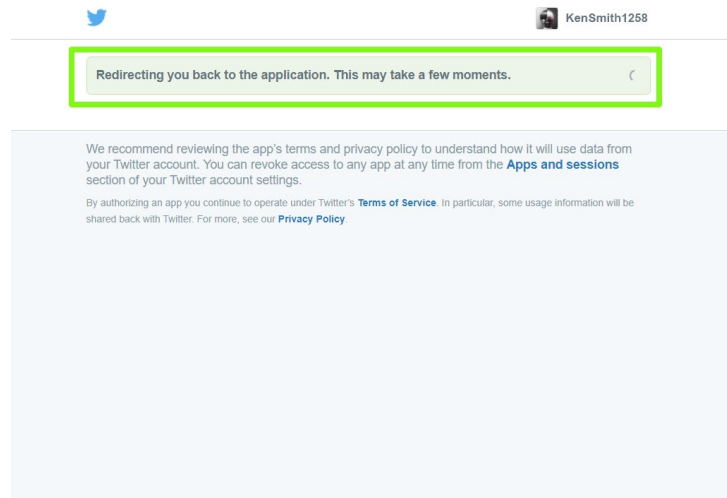
1. Select **Import Account** from the **Twitter accounts** section.





2. You will be redirected to **twitter's authorization** page view.
3. Select **Authorize app** button, once done you will be redirected back to the application.



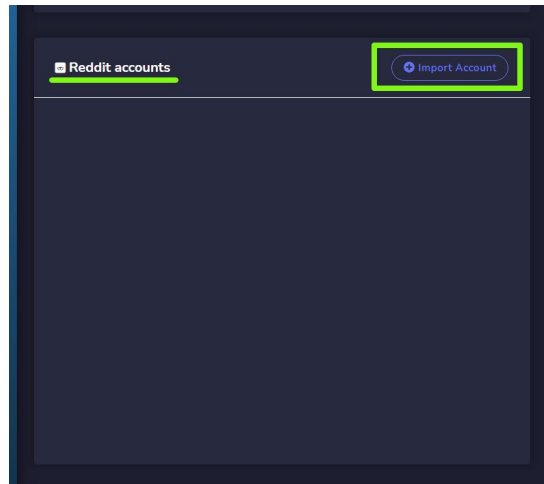


Reddit accounts

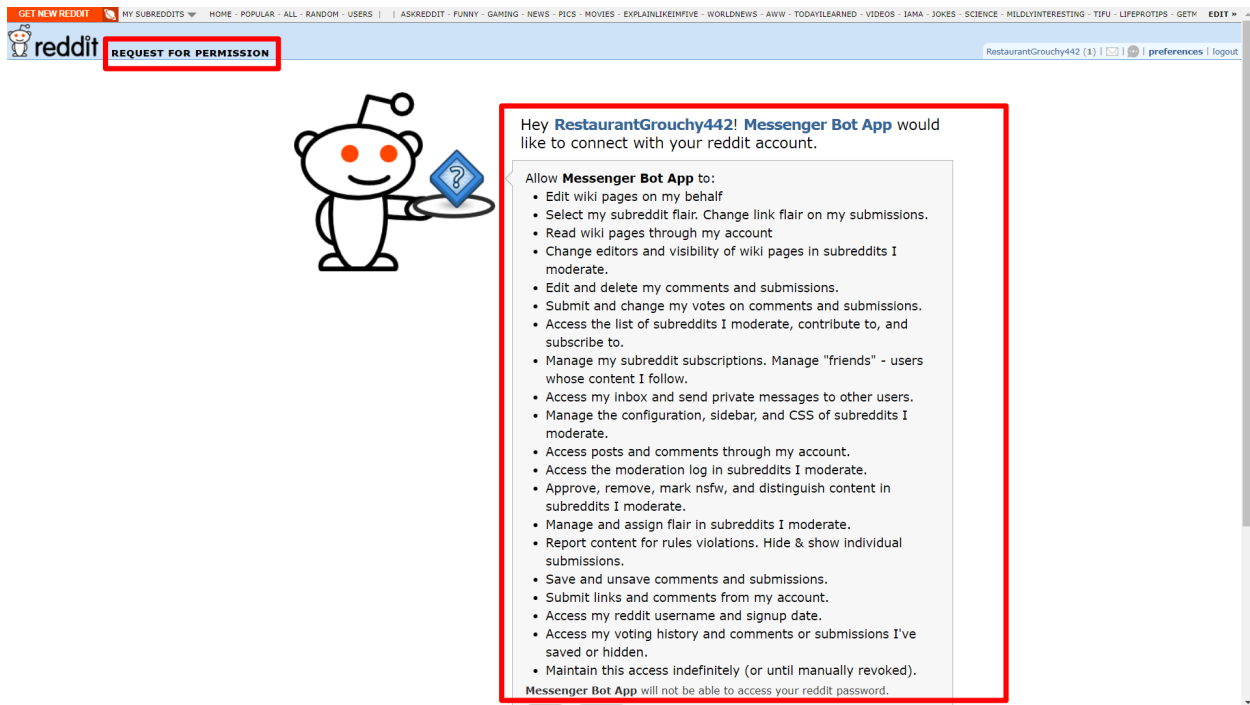
To import your Reddit account, follow the steps given below:

1. Select  from the **Reddit accounts** section.





2. If already signed in, you will be redirected to Reddit authorization page view.
3. Select **Allow** to all permissions. Once done you will be redirected back to the application.





- Change editors and visibility of wiki pages in subreddits I moderate.
- Edit and delete my comments and submissions.
- Submit and change my votes on comments and submissions.
- Access the list of subreddits I moderate, contribute to, and subscribe to.
- Manage my subreddit subscriptions. Manage "friends" - users whose content I follow.
- Access my inbox and send private messages to other users.
- Manage the configuration, sidebar, and CSS of subreddits I moderate.
- Access posts and comments through my account.
- Access the moderation log in subreddits I moderate.
- Approve, remove, mark nsfw, and distinguish content in subreddits I moderate.
- Manage and assign flair in subreddits I moderate.
- Report content for rules violations. Hide & show individual submissions.
- Save and unsave comments and submissions.
- Submit links and comments from my account.
- Access my reddit username and signup date.
- Access my voting history and comments or submissions I've saved or hidden.
- Maintain this access indefinitely (or until manually revoked).

Messenger Bot App will not be able to access your reddit password.

Allow

Decline

about

blog
about
advertising
careers

help

site rules
Reddit help center
reddiquette
mod guidelines
contact us

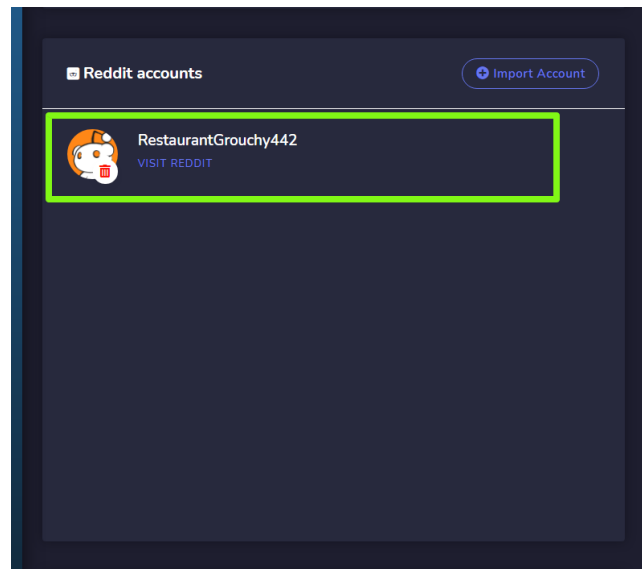
apps & tools

Reddit for iPhone
Reddit for Android
mobile website

<3

reddit premium
reddit coins
redditgifts

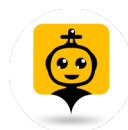
Use of this site constitutes acceptance of our [User Agreement](#) and [Privacy Policy](#). © 2021 reddit inc. All rights reserved.
REDDIT and the ALIEN Logo are registered trademarks of reddit inc.

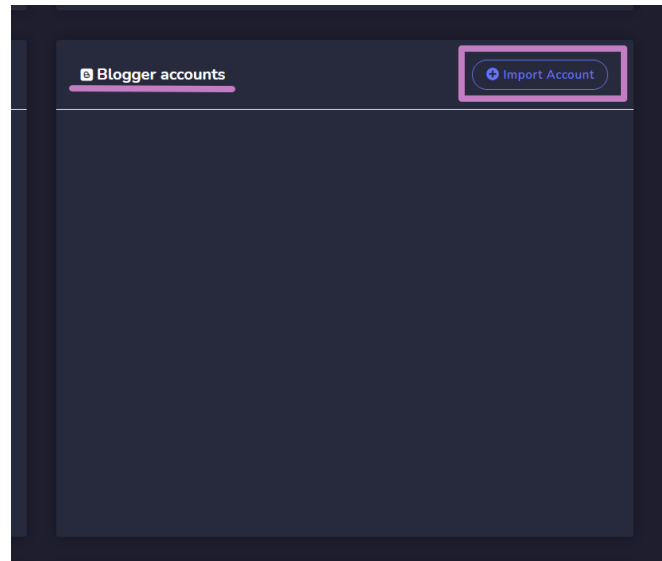


Blogger accounts

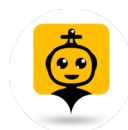
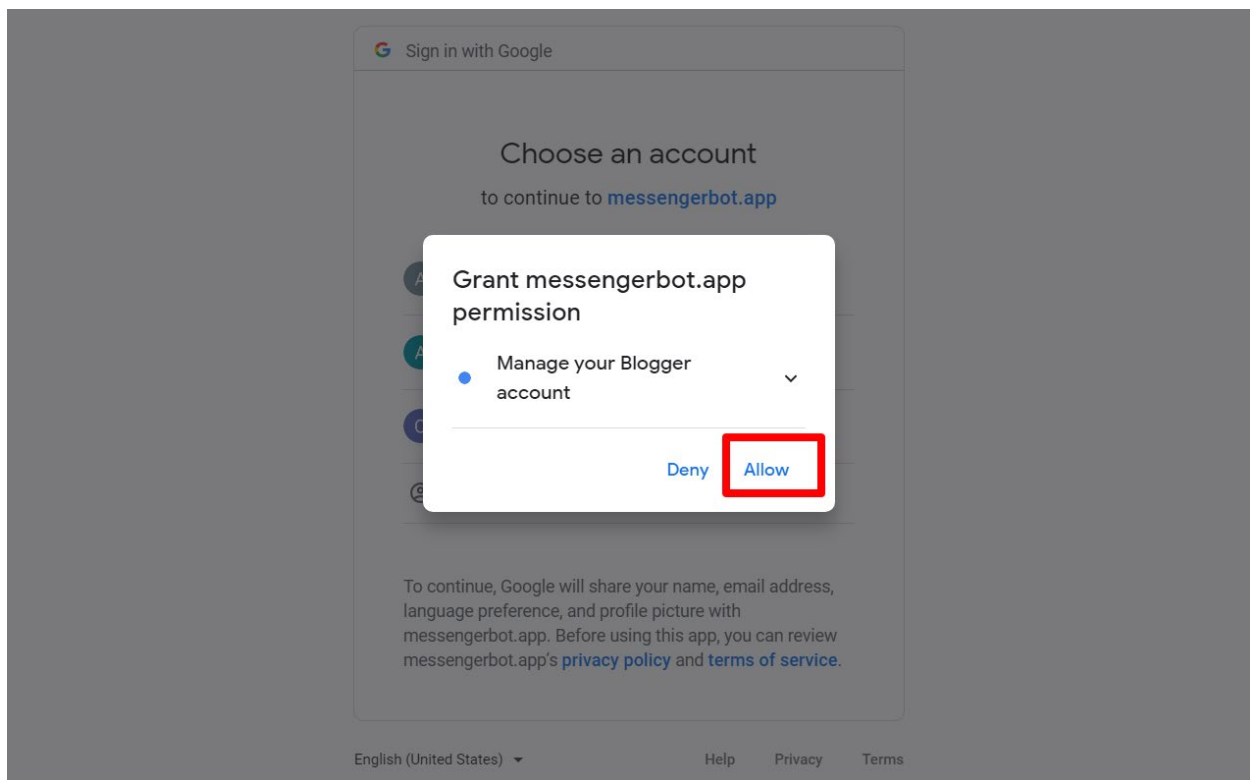
To import your Blogger account, follow the steps given below:

1. Select **Import Account** from the **Blogger accounts** section.





2. Select the account which you want to use.
3. Select **Allow** to all permissions. Once done you will be redirected back to the application.





Sign in with Google

Confirm your choices

arvin.gammad@digitalmarketingwebdesign.com

You are allowing messengerbot.app to:

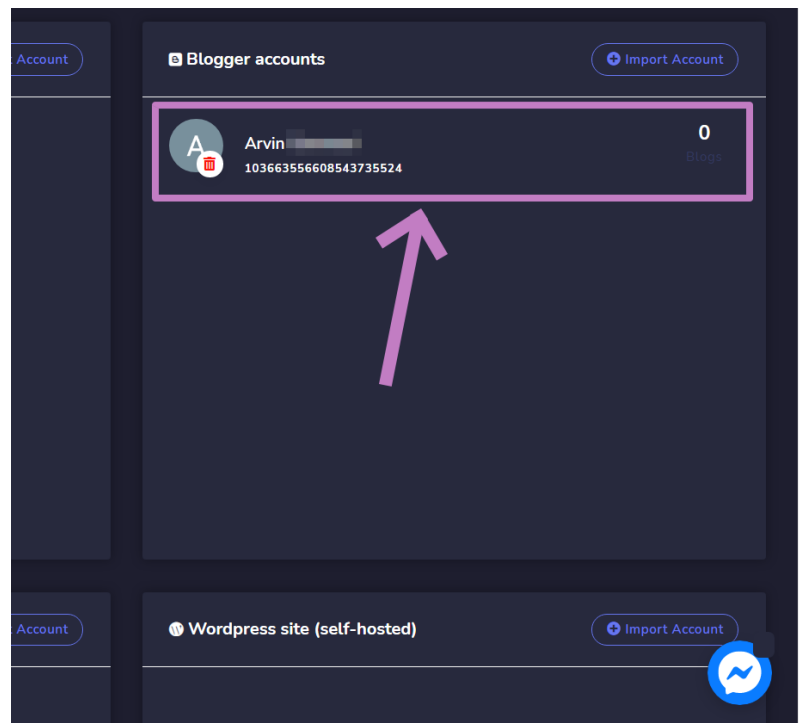
- ☒ Associate you with your personal info on Google
- ☒ See your personal info, including any personal info you've made publicly available
- ☒ View your email address
- ☒ Manage your Blogger account

Make sure you trust messengerbot.app

You may be sharing sensitive info with this site or app. Learn about how messengerbot.app will handle your data by reviewing its [terms of service](#) and [privacy policies](#). You can always see or remove access in your [Google Account](#).

[Learn about the risks](#)

[Cancel](#) [Allow](#)

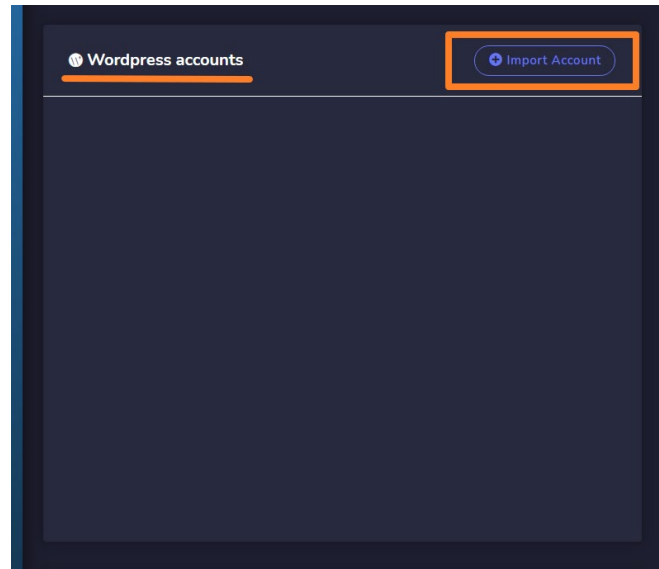


WordPress accounts

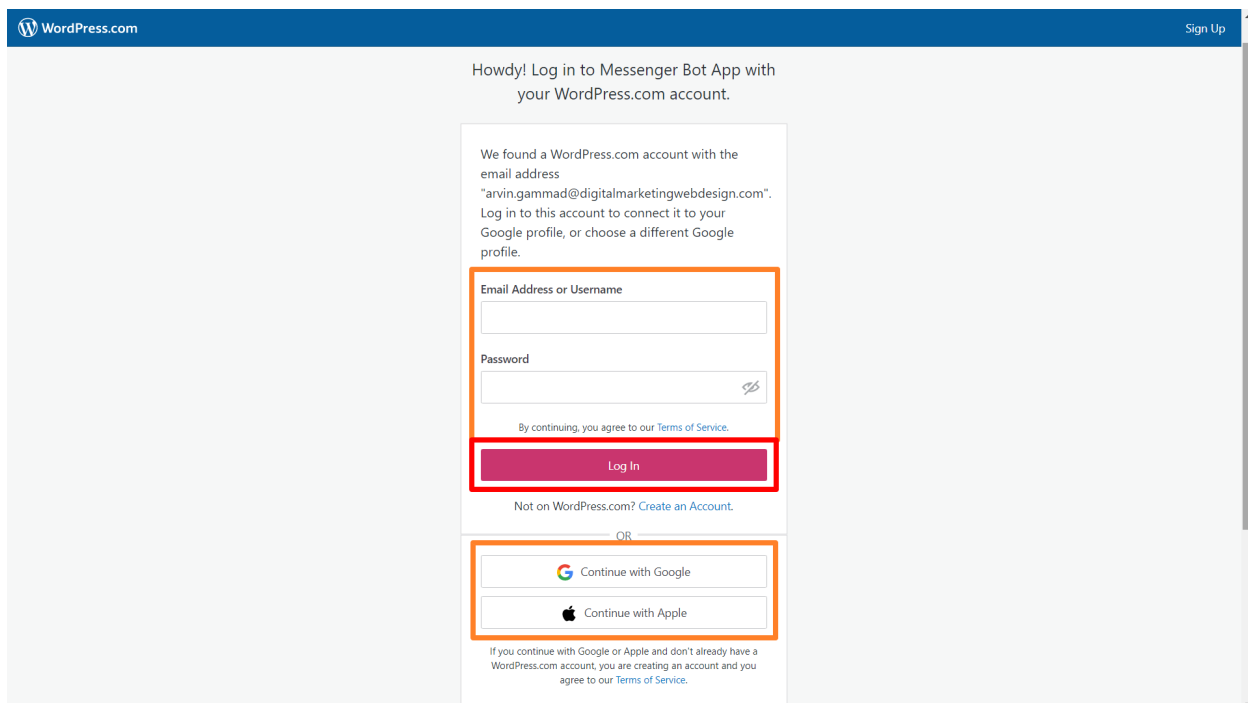
To import your WordPress account, follow the steps given below:

1. Select [Import Account](#) from the top left of the **WordPress accounts** screen.

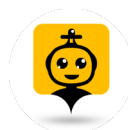


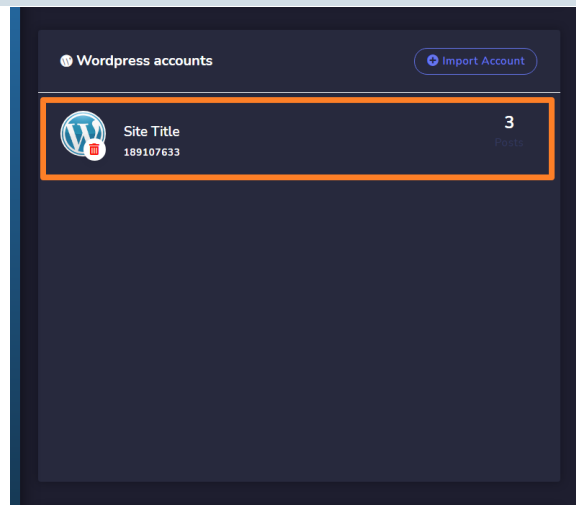
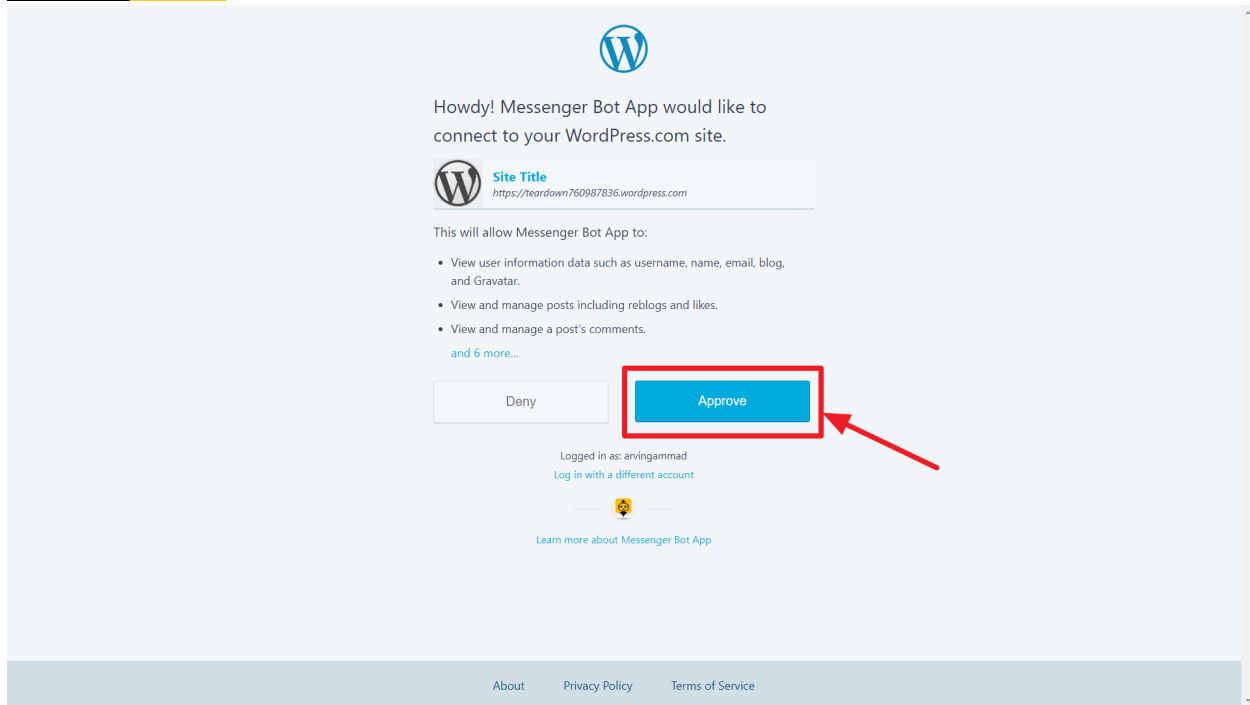


2. Select the account which you want to use.



3. Select **Allow** to all permissions. Once done you will be redirected back to the application.



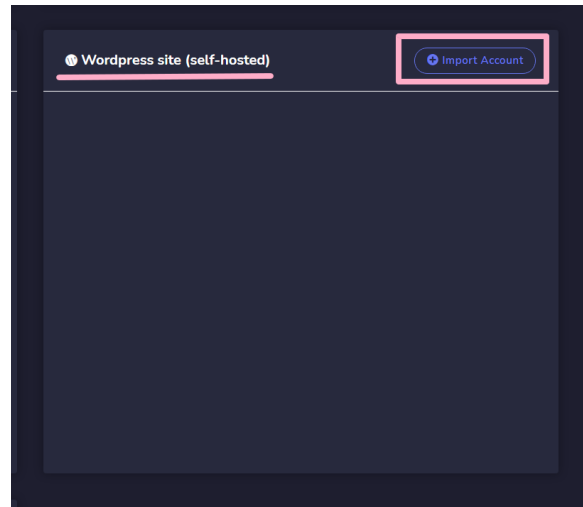


WordPress site (self-hosted)

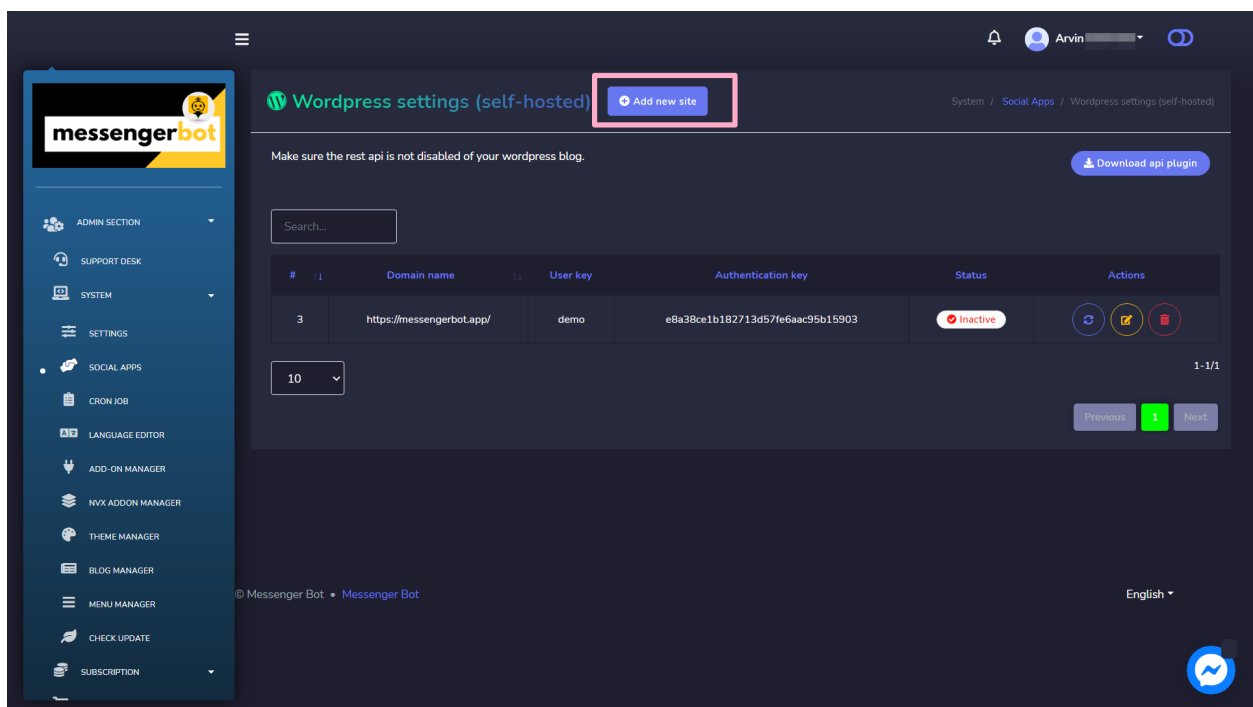
To import your WordPress site (self-hosted), follow the steps given below:

1. Select from the top left of the **WordPress site (self-hosted)** screen.









2. You will be redirected to **WordPress site (self-hosted)** screen.
3. You can add new site by selecting the **Add new site** option.




4. Provide the **Domain name**, **User key** and **Authentication key**, then select **Save**.







 Arvin 


 **Add wordpress settings (self-hosted)** System / Social Apps / Add wordpress settings (self-hosted)

App details

 **WordPress blog URL**

 **User key**

demo

 **Authentication key**


e8a38ce1b182713d57fe6aac95b15903

☐ Active

Save

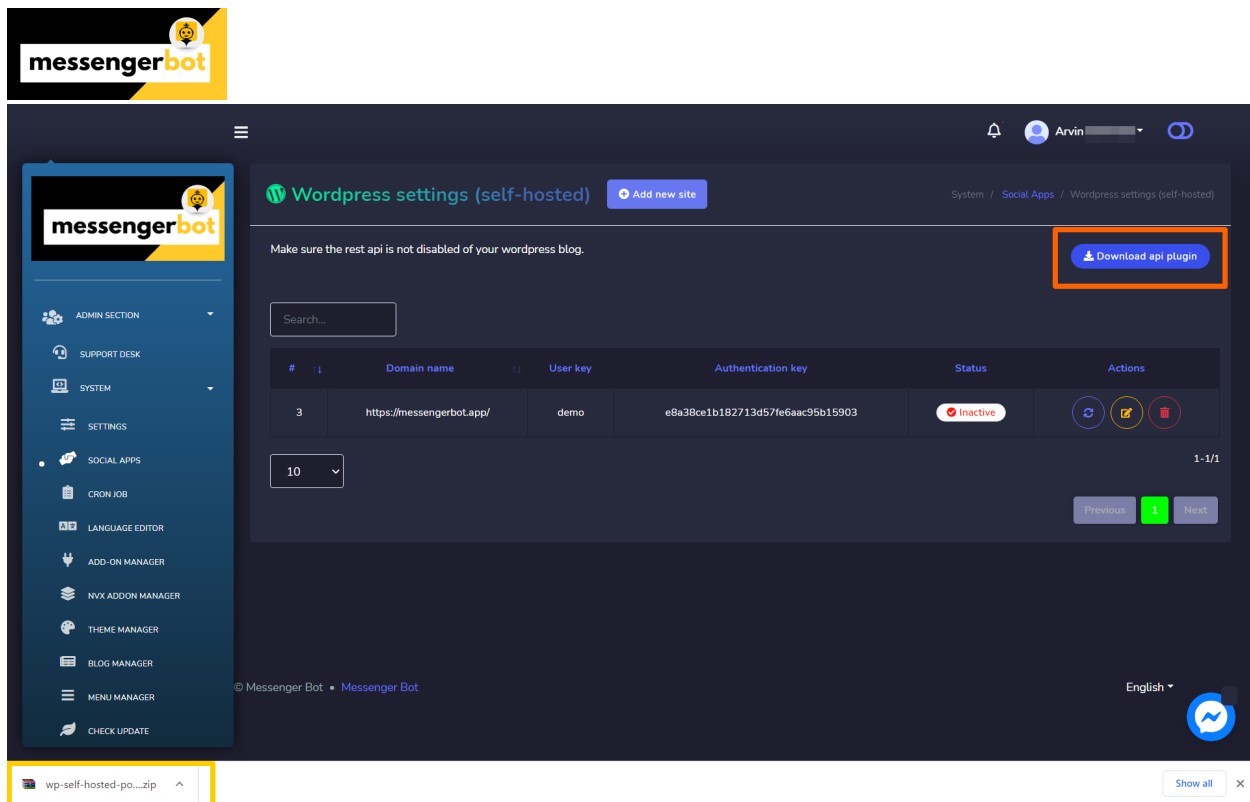
Cancel

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot English



5. You can also download the API plugin by selecting **Download API Plugin** from **WordPress site (self-hosted)** screen.





messengerbot

Arvin

Wordpress settings (self-hosted)

Make sure the rest api is not disabled of your wordpress blog.

[Download api plugin](#)

#	Domain name	User key	Authentication key	Status	Actions
3	https://messengerbotapp/	demo	e8a38ce1b182713d57fe6aac95b15903	Inactive	Refresh Edit Delete

10

Previous 1 Next

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot

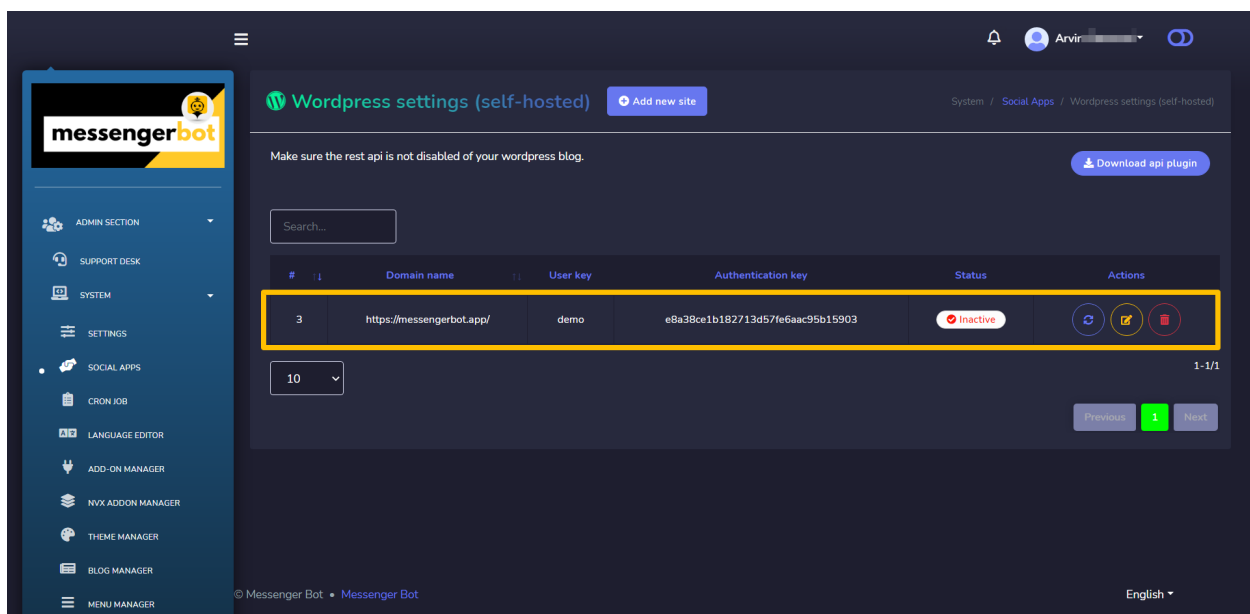
English

wp-self-hosted-po...zip

Show all

6. Once your account is imported you can refresh. edit and delete it from the table.

- Refresh the site with the **refresh button**.
- Click the **edit button**, perform your changes here, then hit **Save**.
- if you want to delete, click the **delete button**. A modal of delete confirmation will appear. Hit **OK** to confirm.



messengerbot

Arvin

Wordpress settings (self-hosted)

Make sure the rest api is not disabled of your wordpress blog.

[Download api plugin](#)

#	Domain name	User key	Authentication key	Status	Actions
3	https://messengerbotapp/	demo	e8a38ce1b182713d57fe6aac95b15903	Inactive	Refresh Edit Delete

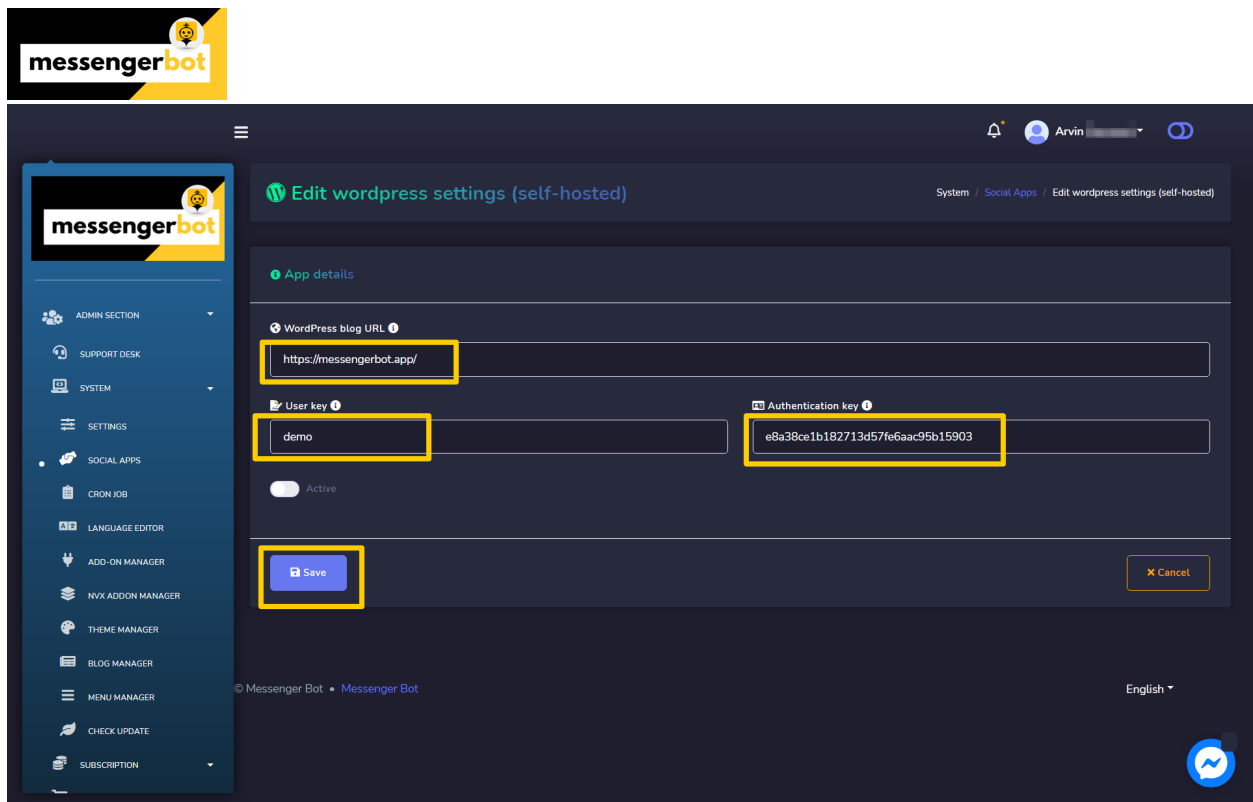
10

Previous 1 Next

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot

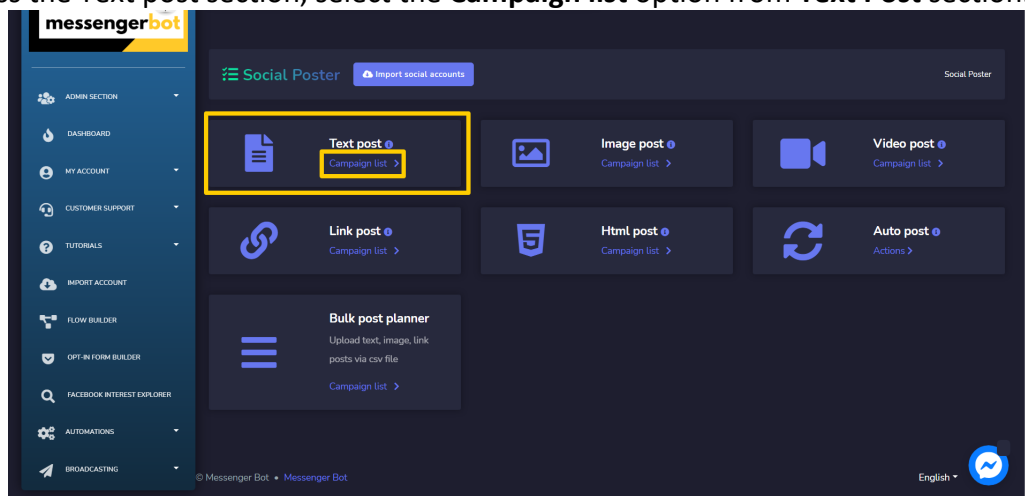
English





Text Post

To access the Text post section, select the **Campaign list** option from **Text Post** section.



A **Text post screen** will appear, it consists of a **list of campaign types and campaign names** you can search for a campaign by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number of campaigns** to be **viewed per page**. You can choose the **date range for narrowed search**. You can also sort them out based on their **status**. You can **arrange** the names either in **ascending or descending order** by using the **arrows** in the header of the table.



The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot dashboard interface. On the left is a sidebar with the 'messengerbot' logo and a menu including ADMIN SECTION, DASHBOARD, MY ACCOUNT, CUSTOMER SUPPORT, TUTORIALS, IMPORT ACCOUNT, FLOW BUILDER, OPT-IN FORM BUILDER, FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER, AUTOMATIONS, and BROADCASTING. The main area is titled 'Text post' and contains a 'Create new post' button. Below this is a search bar and a 'Choose date' button. A table lists campaigns with columns: #, Campaign name, Campaign type, Social media, Actions, Status, and Scheduled at. The first row shows a campaign named 'Demo' of type 'Single campaign' on 'Reddit' with a status of 'Pending' and scheduled for 'Feb 8, 21 10:37'. The 'Edit' icon (pencil) in the 'Actions' column for this campaign is highlighted with a yellow box. A green box highlights the search bar, and another green box highlights the 'Choose date' button. At the bottom right, there are 'Previous', '1', and 'Next' pagination buttons, with '1' being highlighted in green. The footer shows '© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot' and a language selector set to 'English'.

The following are the **actions** that can be performed against the campaign you want to perform actions on:

- **Edit a campaign**

This screenshot is identical to the one above, showing the Messenger Bot dashboard. The 'Edit' icon (pencil) in the 'Actions' column for the first campaign is highlighted with a yellow box. The sidebar, main content area, and footer are the same as in the previous image.





Arvin

[Edit post](#) Social Poster / Text post / Edit post

Campaign info

Campaign name: Demo


Title (reddit, medium): Demo

Message: Demo

Posting time: ☒ Post now

Facebook: Vin Gammad

Twitter: Kaneki Ken, KenKaneki1726

- Clone the campaign by selecting .





messengerbot

ADMIN SECTION

- DASHBOARD
- MY ACCOUNT
- CUSTOMER SUPPORT
- TUTORIALS
- IMPORT ACCOUNT
- FLOW BUILDER
- OPT-IN FORM BUILDER
- FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER

Text post Create new post

Search... Search Choose date

#	Campaign name	Campaign type	Social media	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Demo	Single campaign	Reddit	   	Pending	Feb 8, 21 10:37

10

Previous i Next

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot English



messengerbot

Arvin

Clone post

Social Poster / Text post / Clone post

Campaign info

Campaign name: Demo

Title (reddit, medium): Demo

Message: Demo

Posting time: ☒ Post now

Facebook

Vin Gammad

Search...

Twitter

Keneki Ken
KenKeneki1726

Wordpress (self-hosted)

Medium

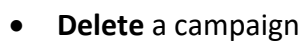
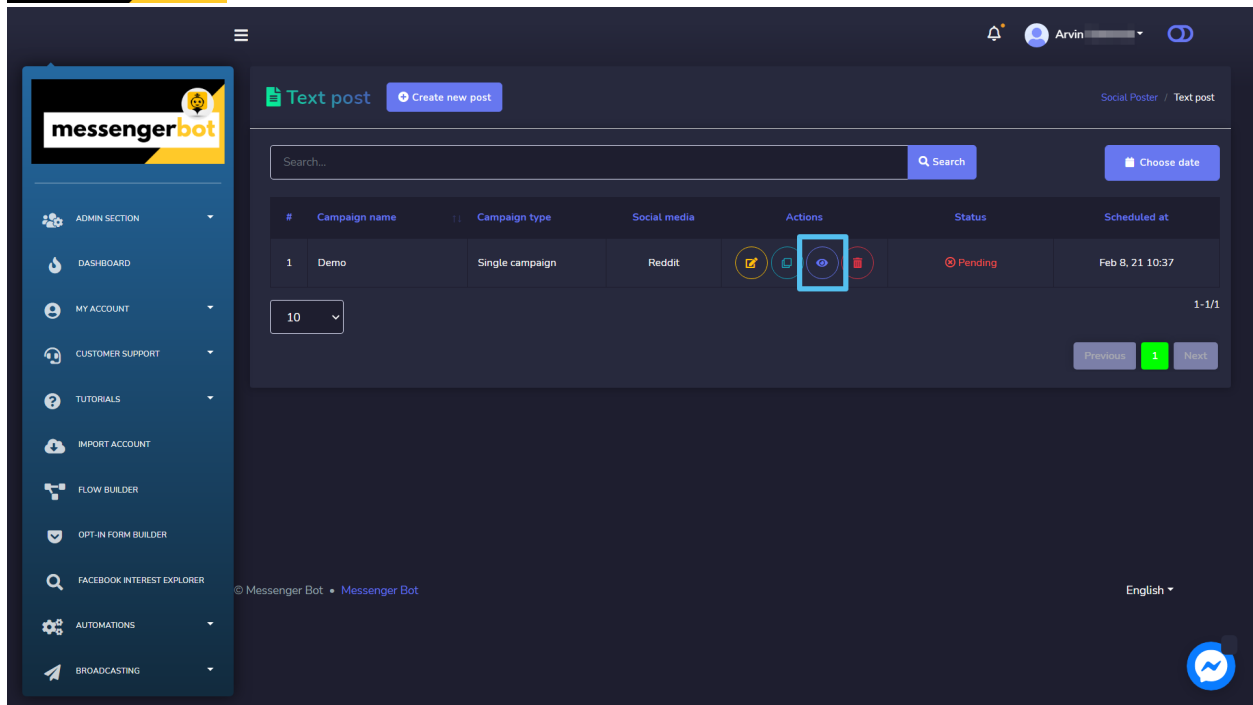
Clone campaign **Cancel**

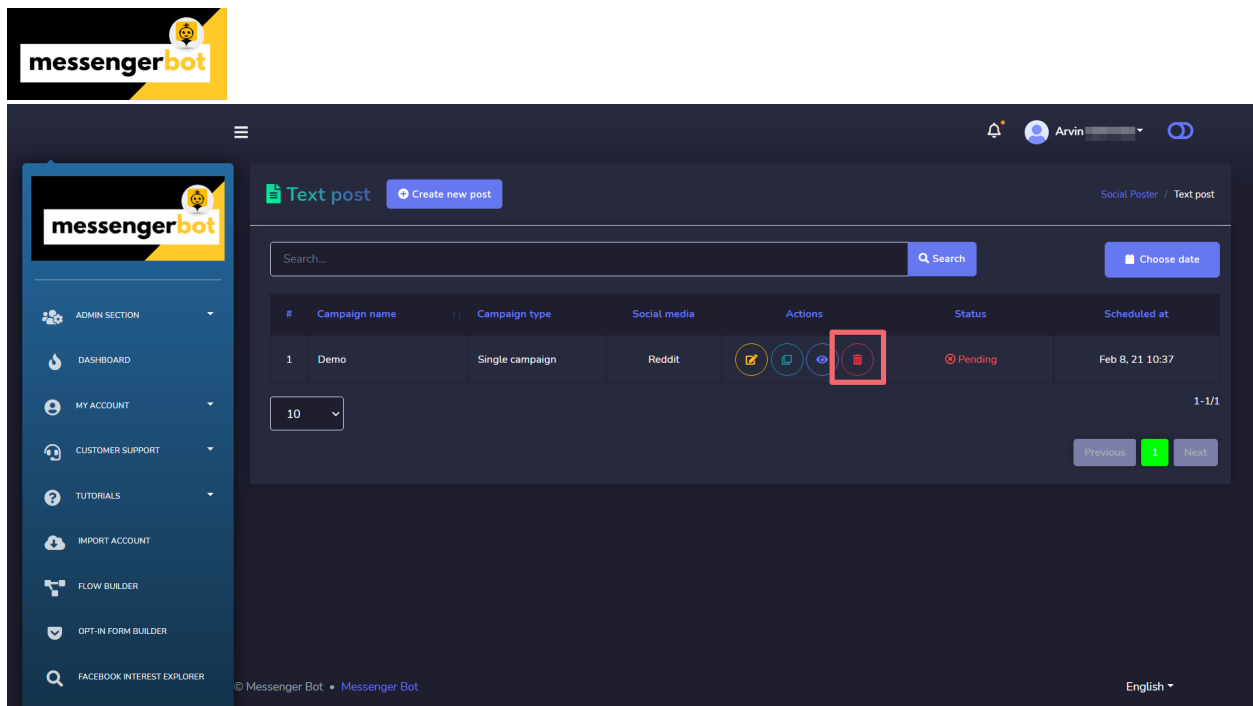
© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot

English

- **View** the campaign report by selecting .



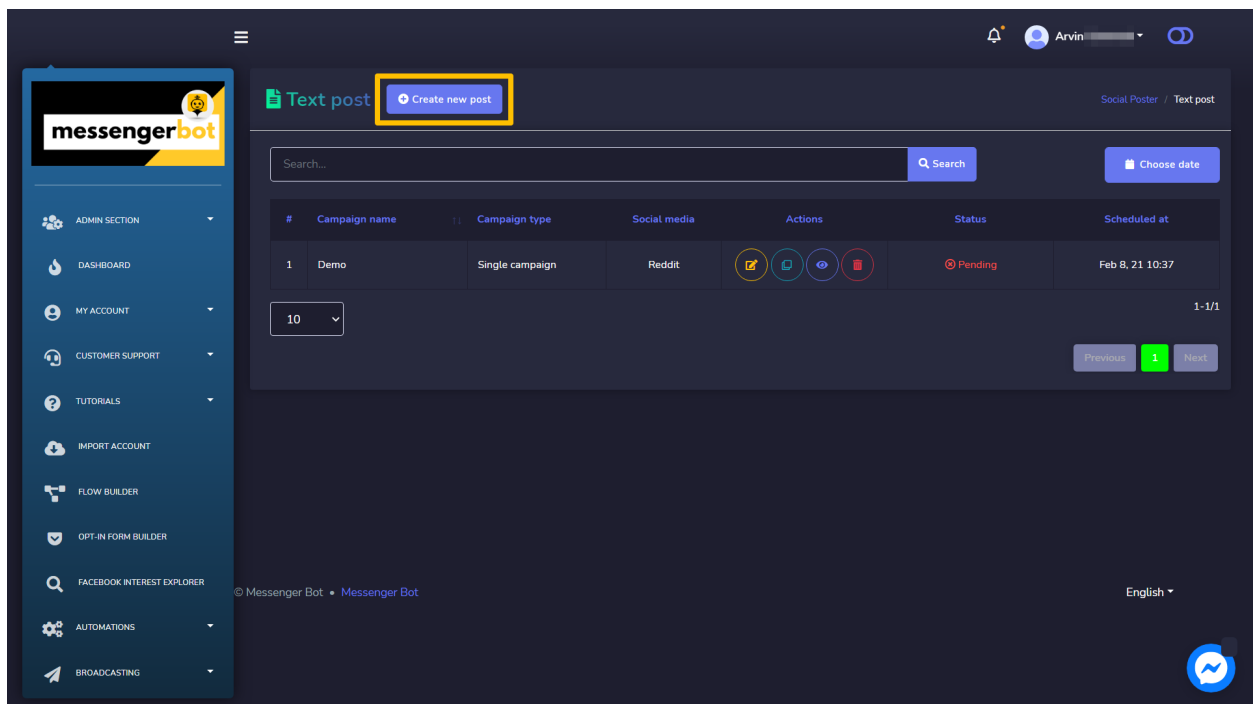




Create new Text Post

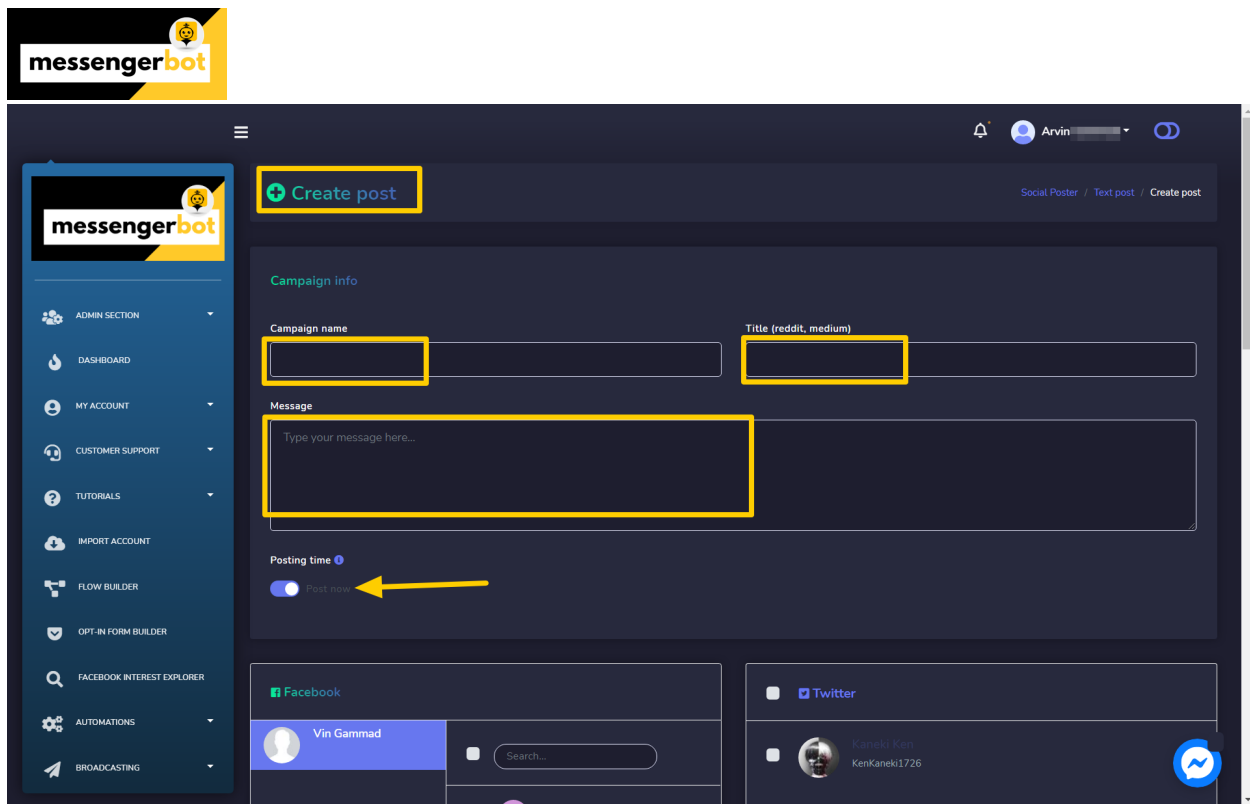
To create a new Text post, follow the steps given below:

1. Select **Create new post** from **Text post** screen.



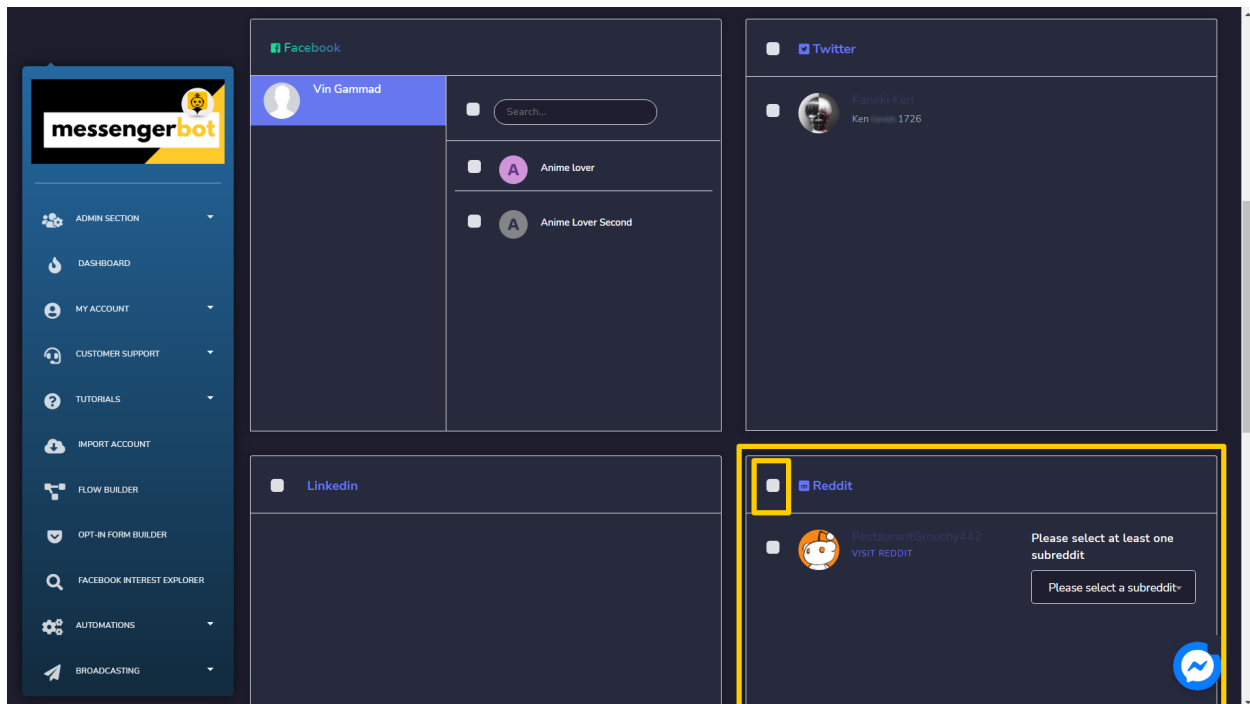
2. Provide a **Campaign name** and a **message**.
3. Select a **Posting time** for the text post.





The screenshot shows the 'Create post' interface in the messengerbot dashboard. The left sidebar contains navigation links: ADMIN SECTION, DASHBOARD, MY ACCOUNT, CUSTOMER SUPPORT, TUTORIALS, IMPORT ACCOUNT, FLOW BUILDER, OPT-IN FORM BUILDER, FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER, AUTOMATIONS, and BROADCASTING. The main area is titled 'Create post' and includes a 'Campaign info' section with fields for 'Campaign name', 'Title (reddit, medium)', and a 'Message' text area. Below these is a 'Posting time' section with a toggle switch labeled 'Post now', which is highlighted by a yellow arrow. At the bottom, there are sections for selecting social accounts: Facebook (showing 'Vin Gammad') and Twitter (showing 'Kaneki Ken').

4. Select the **social accounts** from which this needs to be posted.



This screenshot shows the same dashboard with additional social account options. Under the Facebook section, there are two more accounts: 'Anime lover' and 'Anime Lover Second'. Under the Twitter section, there is one account: 'Kaneki Ken'. A new section for 'Reddit' has been added at the bottom right, highlighted with a yellow box. It contains a search bar and a button labeled 'RestaurantGrouchy442 VISIT REDDIT'. Below this, there is a text prompt 'Please select at least one subreddit' and a dropdown menu labeled 'Please select a subreddit~'.

5. Once selected all required options, you need to select **Create campaign** option.



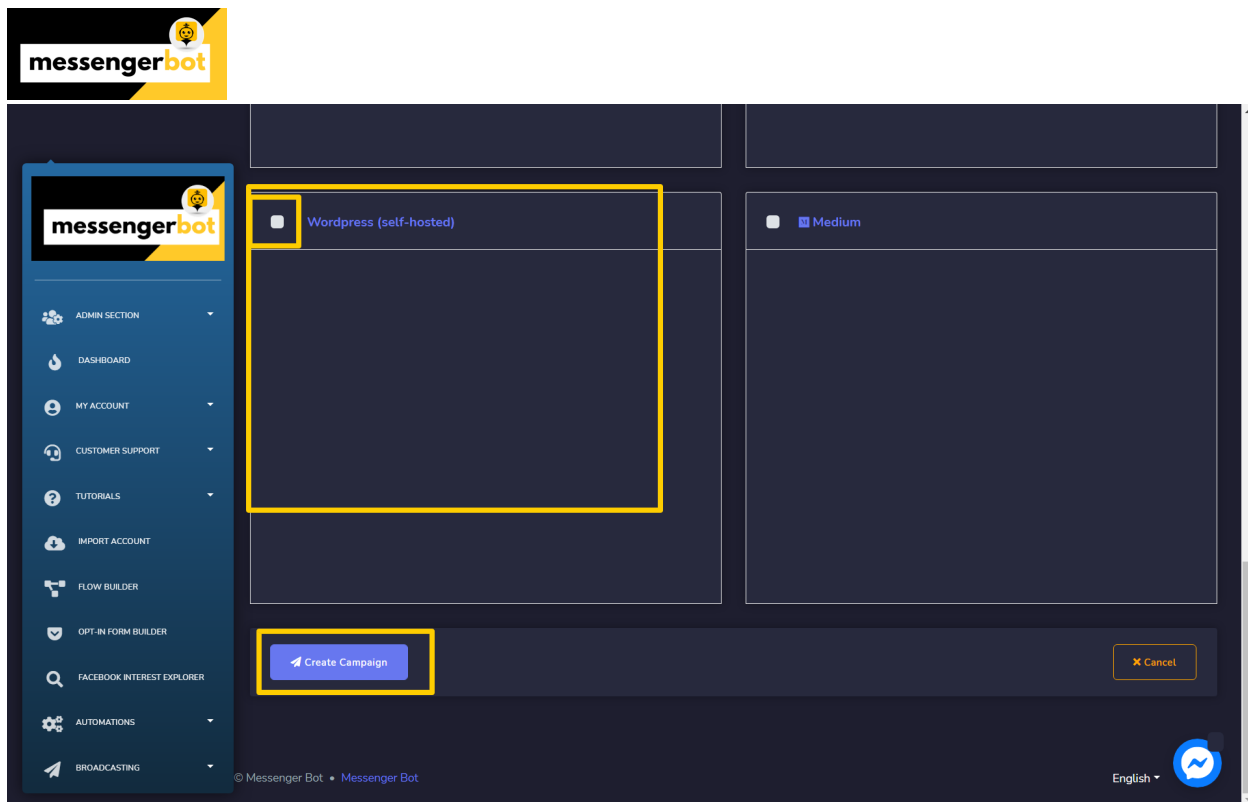
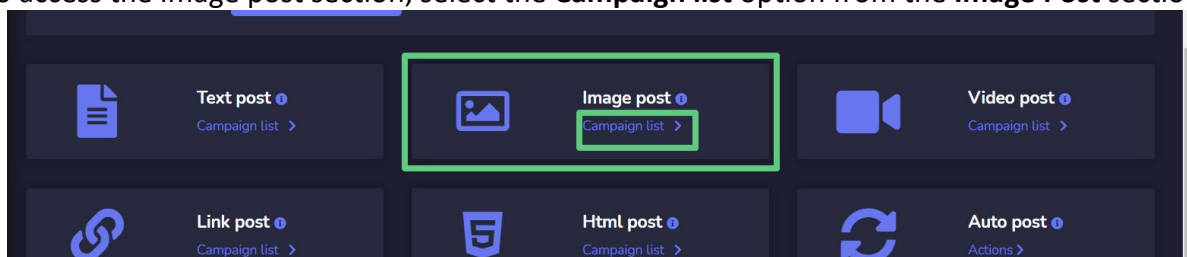


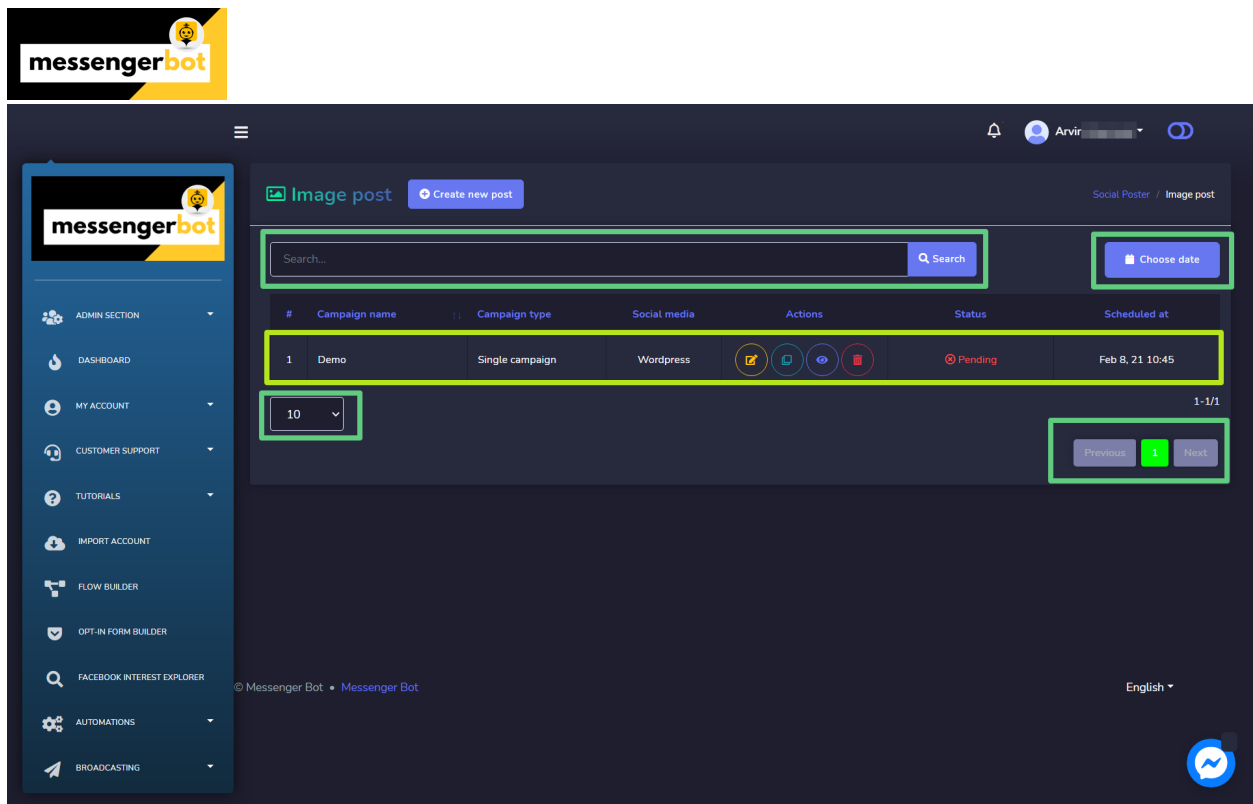
Image Post

To access the Image post section, select the **Campaign list** option from the **Image Post** section.



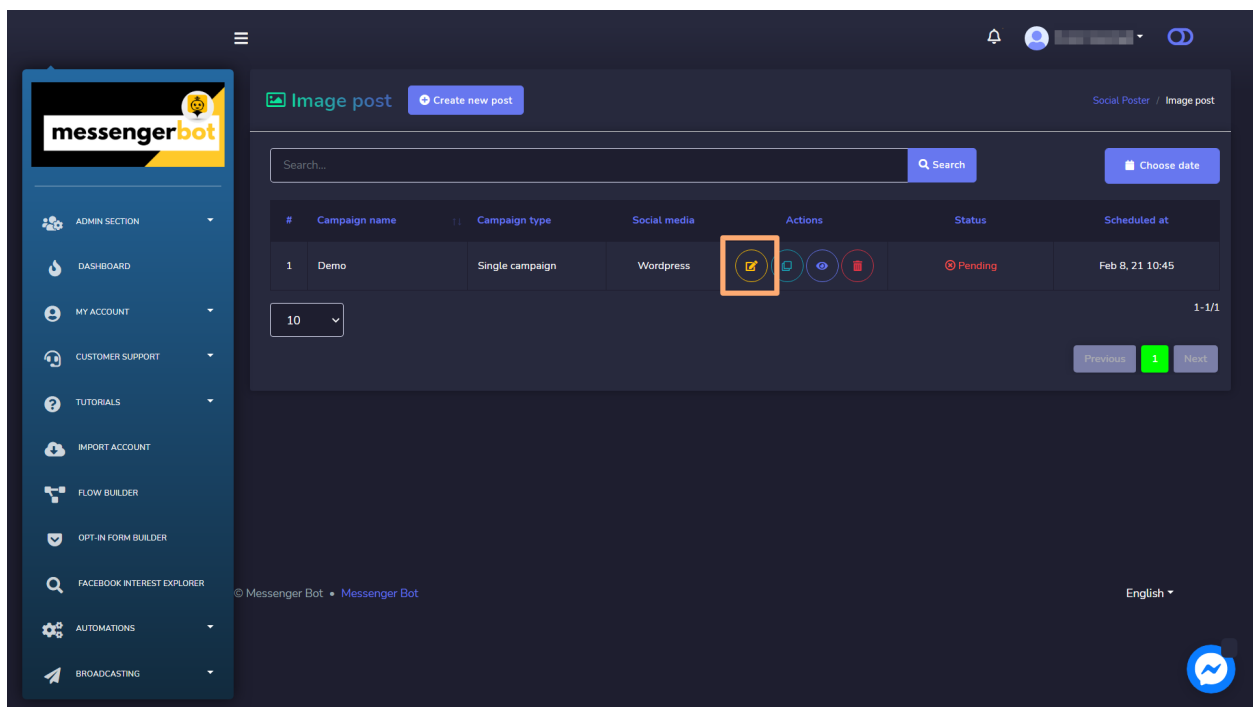
An **Image post** screen will appear, it consists of a **list of campaign types and campaign names** you can search for a campaign by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the number of campaigns to be **viewed per page**. You can choose the **date range** for the narrowed **search**. You can also sort them out based on their **status**. You can **arrange the names** either in **ascending or descending order** by using the **arrows** in the header of the table.

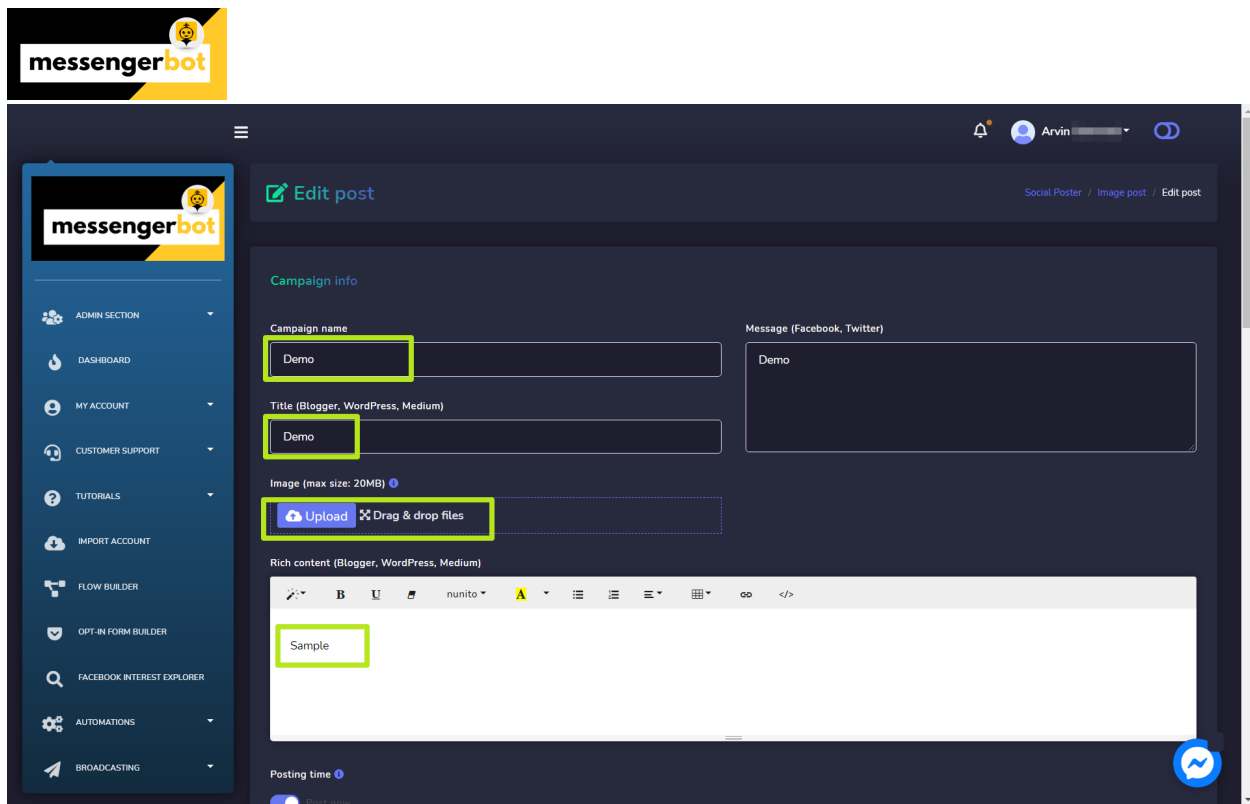




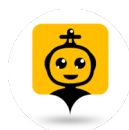
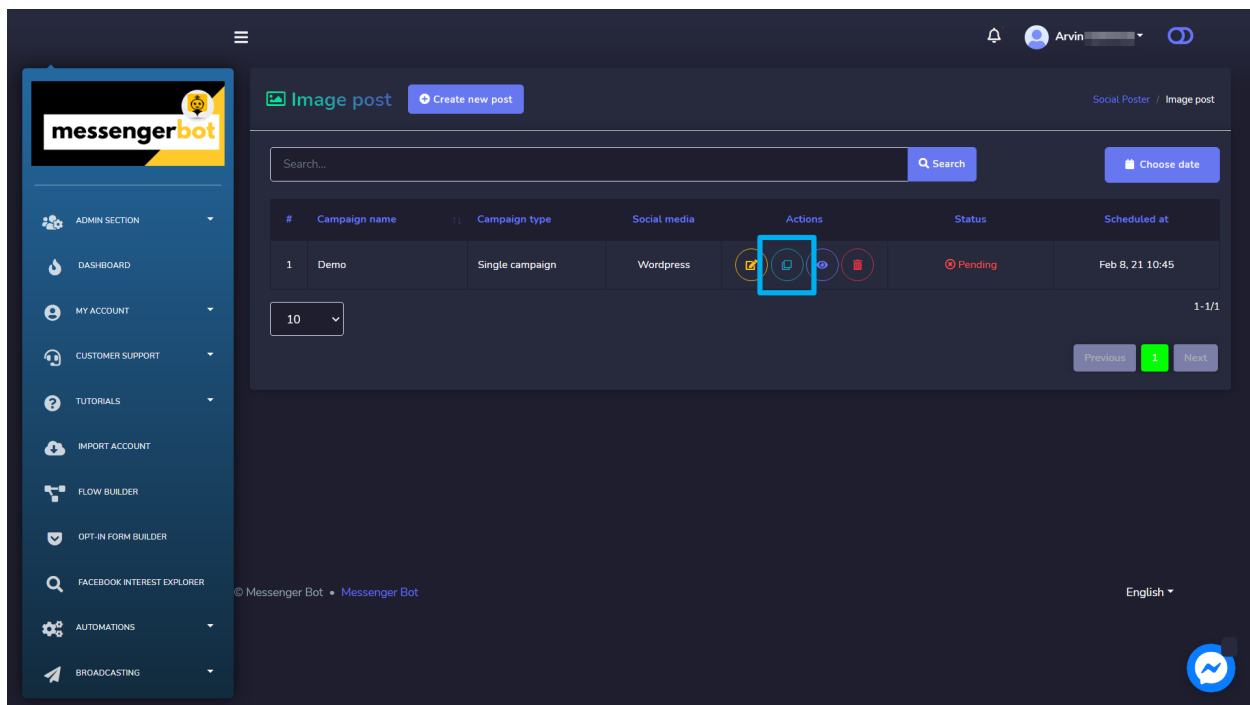
The following are the **actions** that can be performed against the campaign you want to perform actions on:

- Edit a campaign.





- Clone the campaign by selecting .



messengerbot

Clone post

Social Poster / Image post / Clone post

Campaign info

Campaign name: Demo

Title (Blogger, WordPress, Medium): Demo

Image (max size: 20MB): Upload Drag & drop files

Rich content (Blogger, WordPress, Medium): Sample

Posting time


- View the campaign report by selecting .

messengerbot

Image post Create new post

Social Poster / Image post

Search... Search Choose date

#	Campaign name	Campaign type	Social media	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Demo	Single campaign	Wordpress		Pending	Feb 8, 21 10:45

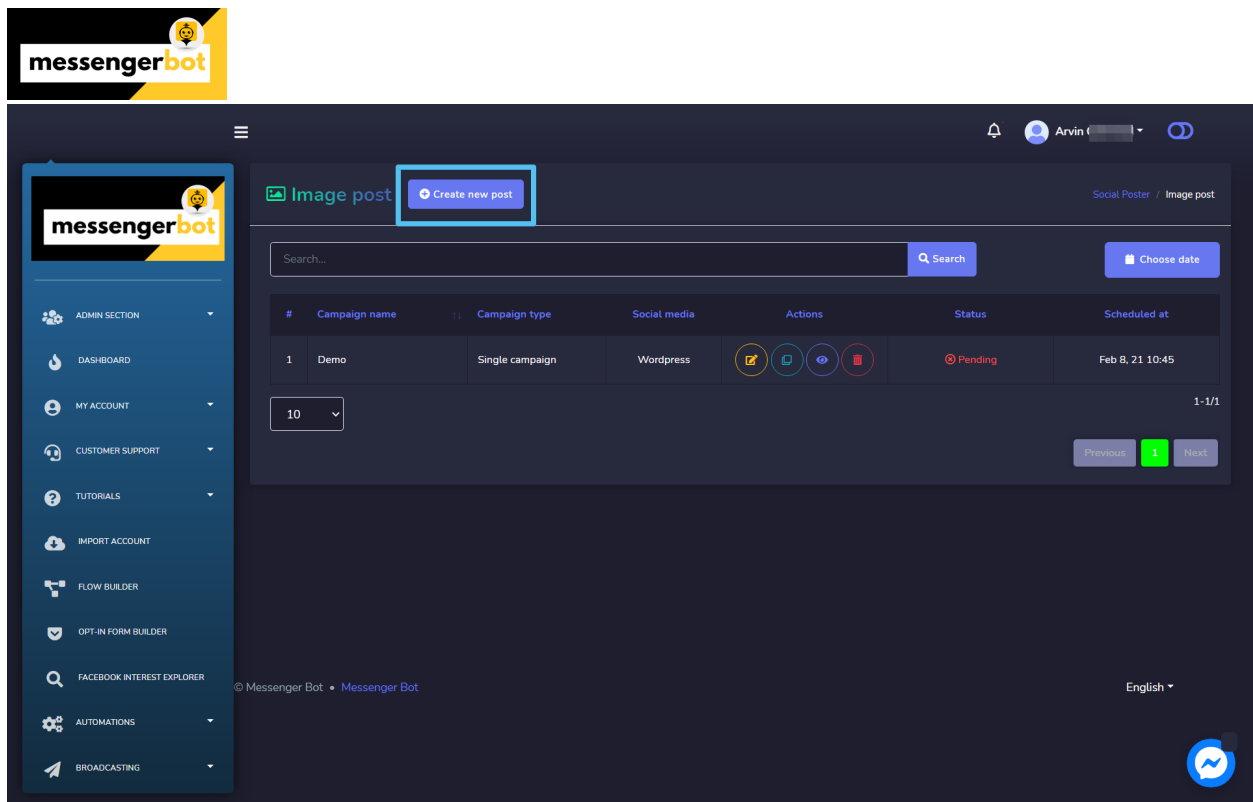
10

Previous 1 Next

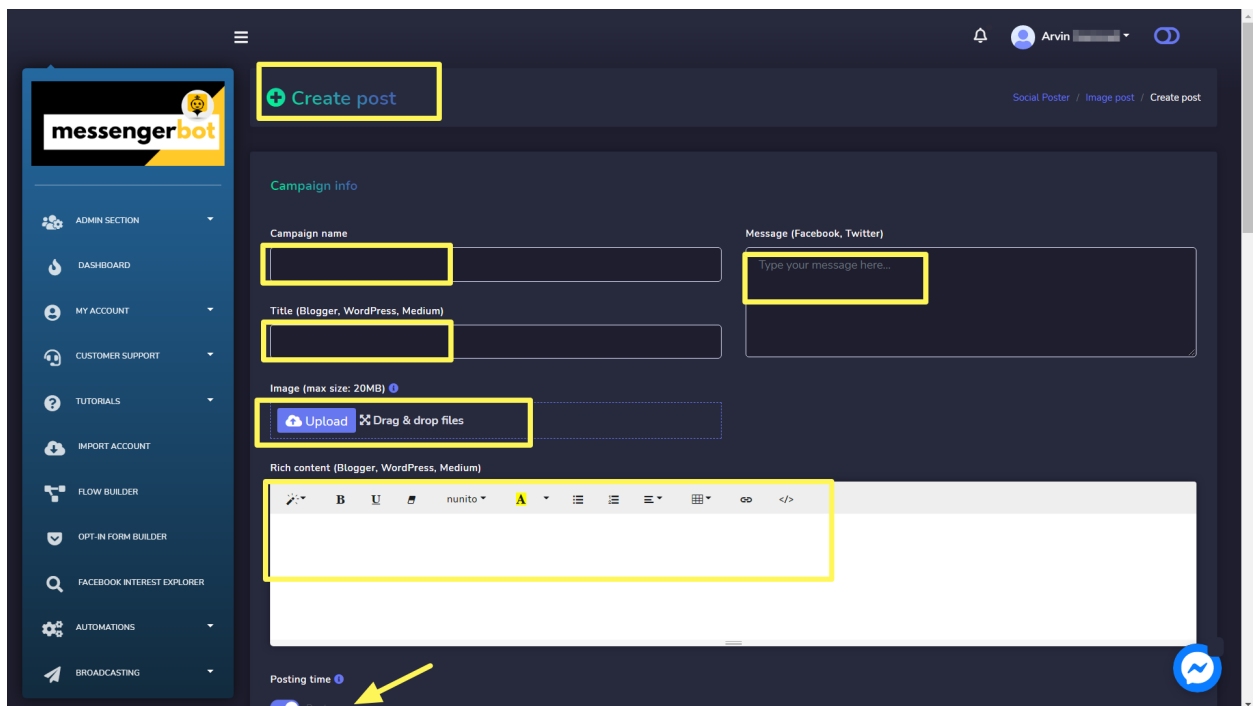
© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot

English



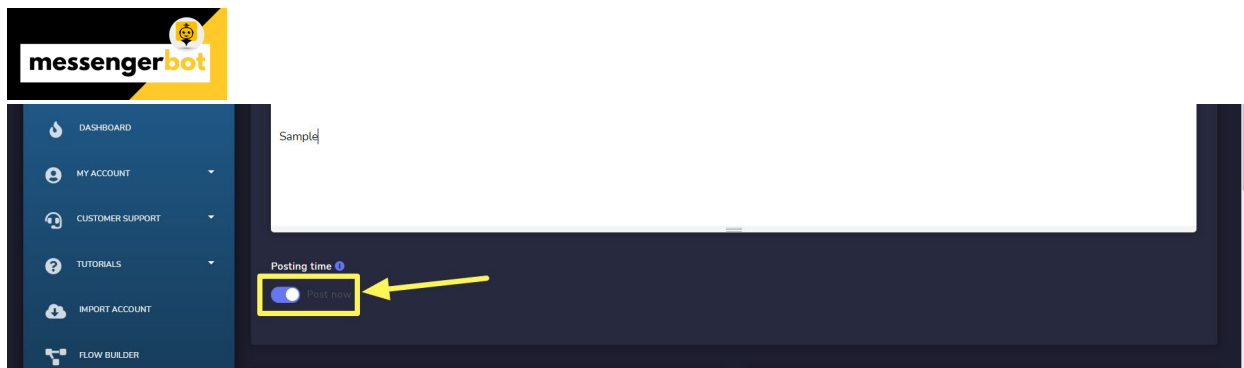


2. Provide a **Campaign name**, title and a message.
3. Provide a **Link** for pinterest and **rich content**.

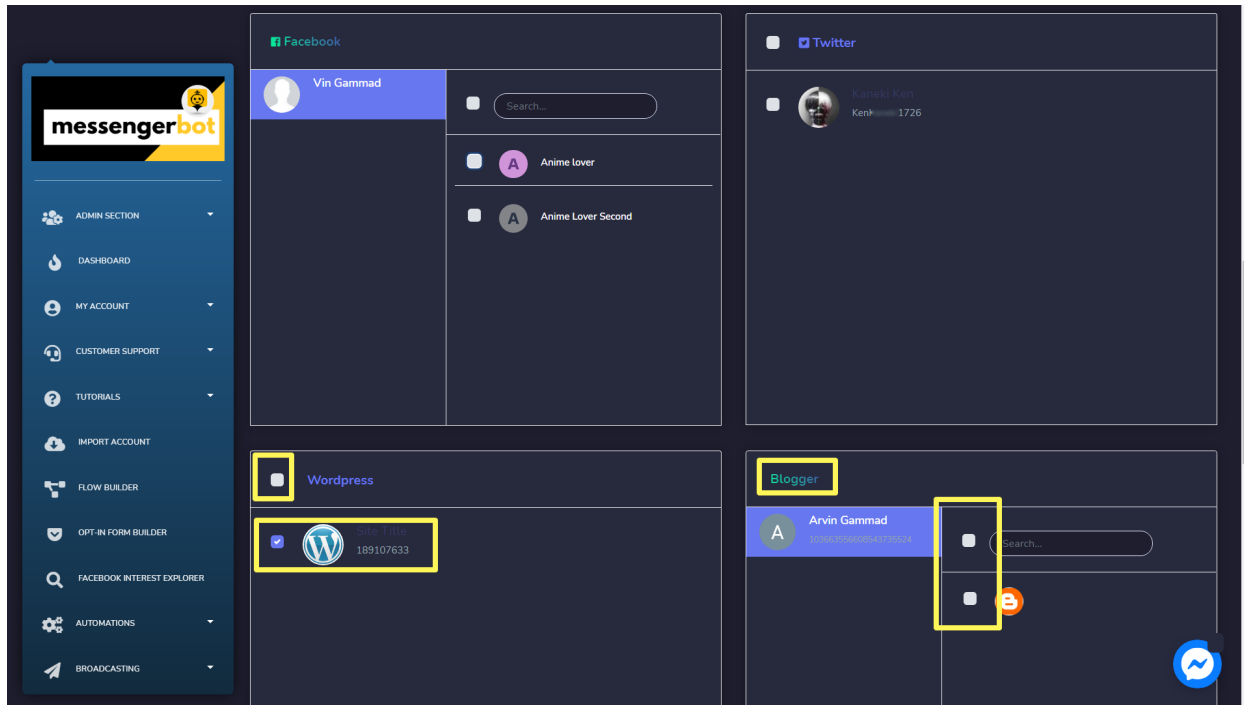


4. Select a **Posting time** for the text post.



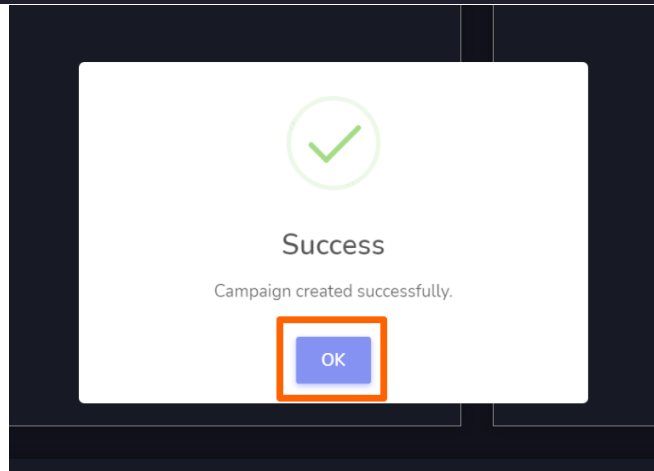
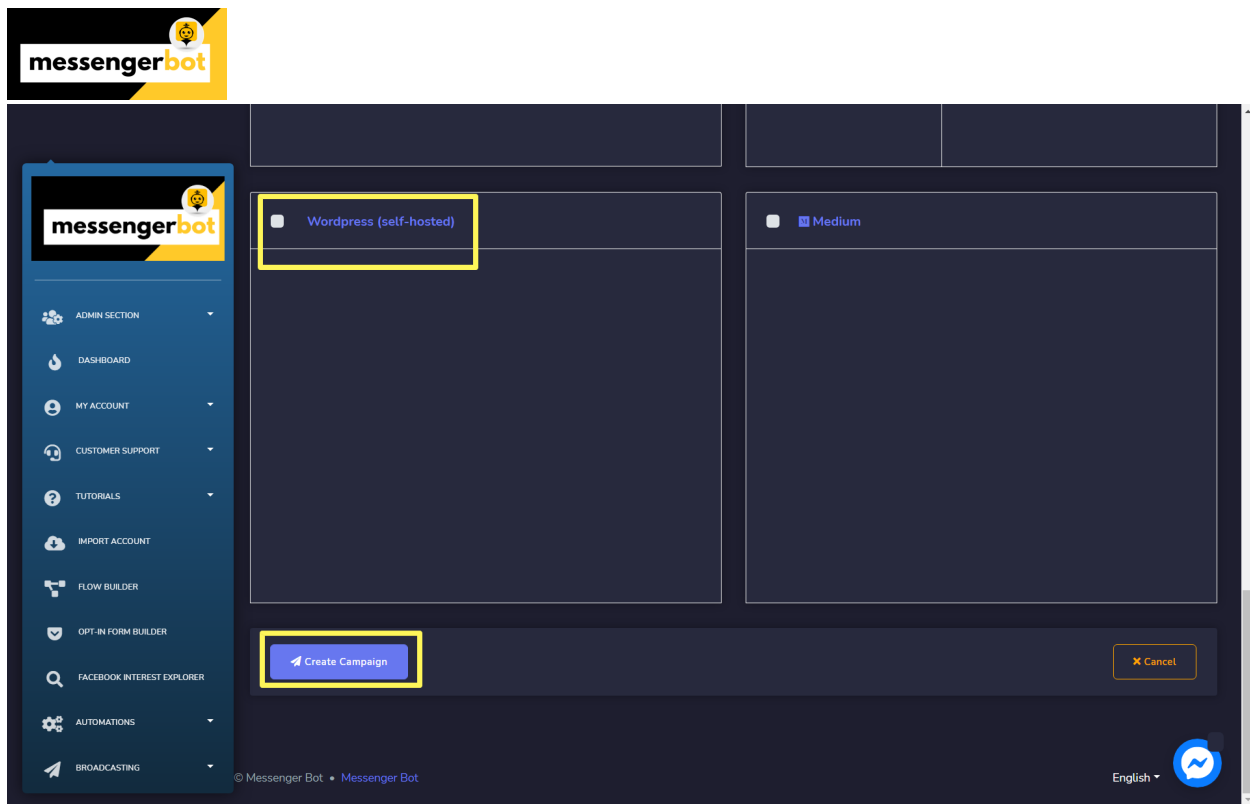


5. Select the **social accounts** from which this needs to be posted.



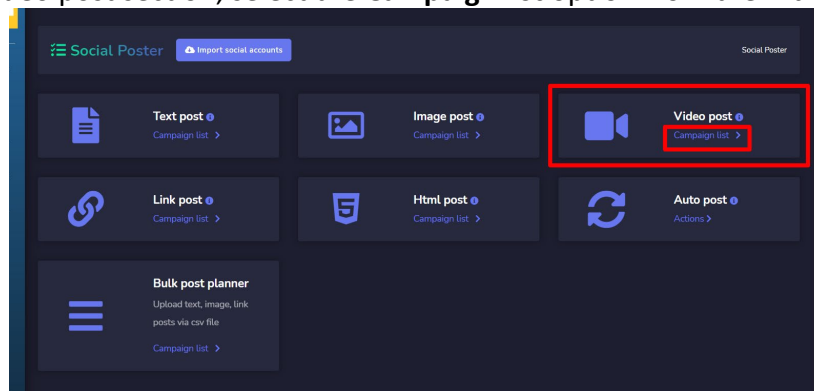
6. Once selected all required options, you need to select **Create campaign** option.





Video Post

To access the Video post section, select the **Campaign list** option from the **Video Post** section.





A **Video post** screen will appear, it consists of a **list of campaign types and campaign names** you can search for a campaign by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of campaigns to be **viewed per page**. You can choose the **date range** for the **narrowed search**. You can also sort them out based on their **status**. You can **arrange** the names either in **ascending or descending order** by using the **arrows** in the header of the table.


The screenshot shows the 'Video post' interface of the Messenger Bot. The sidebar on the left contains navigation links: ADMIN SECTION, DASHBOARD, MY ACCOUNT, CUSTOMER SUPPORT, TUTORIALS, IMPORT ACCOUNT, FLOW BUILDER, OPT-IN FORM BUILDER, and FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER. The main content area has a 'Video post' header with a 'Create new post' button. Below this is a search bar and a 'Choose date' button. A table lists campaigns with columns: #, Campaign name, Campaign type, Social media, Actions, Status, and Scheduled at. The first row shows a campaign named 'Demo' of type 'Single campaign' on 'Facebook' with a status of 'Pending' and scheduled for 'Feb 8, 21 11:06'. A dropdown menu shows '10' items per page. At the bottom right, there are 'Previous', '1', and 'Next' pagination buttons.


The following are the **actions** that can be performed against the campaign you want to perform actions on:

- Edit a campaign.

This screenshot is identical to the previous one, but with a yellow box highlighting the 'Edit' icon (a pencil) in the 'Actions' column of the first row of the campaign table.







ADMIN SECTION

DASHBOARD

MY ACCOUNT

CUSTOMER SUPPORT

TUTORIALS

IMPORT ACCOUNT

FLOW BUILDER

OPT-IN FORM BUILDER

FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER

AUTOMATIONS

BROADCASTING

Edit post

Social Poster / Video post / Edit post

Campaign info

Campaign name

Demo

Title (Facebook)

Demo

Video url

https://start.messengerbot.app/upload/comboposter/2121/2121_video_161285354

Video thumbnail url (Facebook)

https://start.messengerbot.app/upload/comboposter/2121/2121_image_161285354

Upload video

Upload

Drag & drop files

Upload video thumbnail

Upload

Drag & drop files


Message (Facebook, Twitter)

Type your message here...

Posting time

Post now

- Clone the campaign by selecting .



Video post




Create new post

Social Poster / Video post

Search...

Search

Choose date

#	Campaign name	Campaign type	Social media	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Demo	Single campaign	Facebook	  	Pending	Feb 8, 21 11:06

10

Previous

1

Next

1-1/1

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot

English



ADMIN SECTION

DASHBOARD

MY ACCOUNT

CUSTOMER SUPPORT

TUTORIALS

IMPORT ACCOUNT

FLOW BUILDER

OPT-IN FORM BUILDER

FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER

AUTOMATIONS

BROADCASTING

Clone post

Campaign info

Campaign name

Demo

Title (Facebook)

Demo

Video url

https://start.messengerbot.app/upload/comboposter/2121/2121_video_161285354

Video thumbnail url (Facebook)

https://start.messengerbot.app/upload/comboposter/2121/2121_image_161285354

Upload video

Upload

Drag & drop files

Upload video thumbnail

Upload

Drag & drop files

Message (Facebook, Twitter)

Type your message here...

Posting time

Post now

Wordpress (self-hosted)

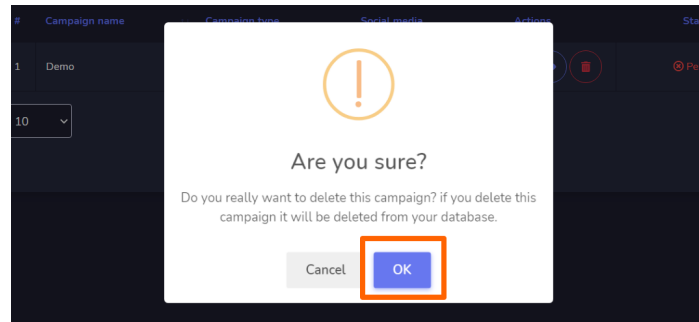
Clone campaign

Cancel

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot


English

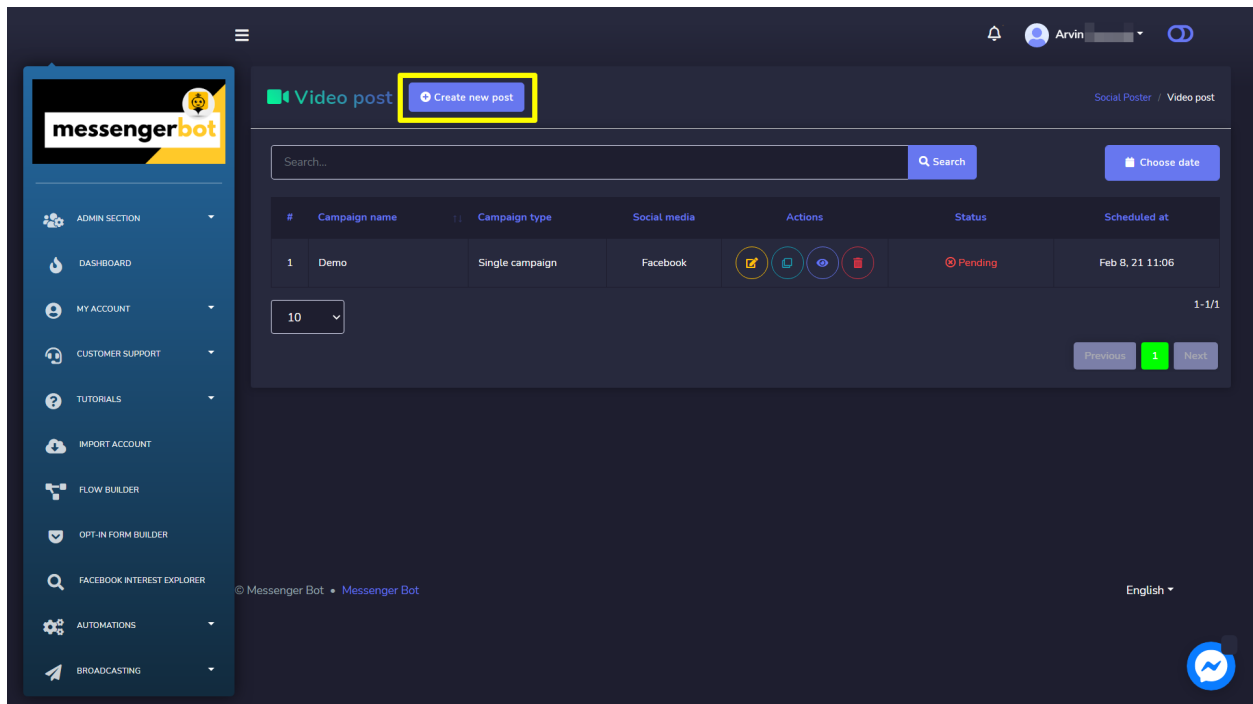
- View the campaign report by selecting



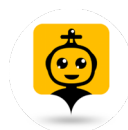
Create new Video Post


To create a new Video post, follow the steps given below:

1. Select  from **Video post** screen.



2. Provide a **Campaign name** and a **title**.
3. Select the type of **privacy** from the dropdown menu for YouTube.





ADMIN SECTION

DASHBOARD

MY ACCOUNT

CUSTOMER SUPPORT

TUTORIALS

IMPORT ACCOUNT

FLOW BUILDER

OPT-IN FORM BUILDER

FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER

AUTOMATIONS

BROADCASTING

Create post

Social Poster / Video post / Create post

Campaign info

Campaign name

Title (Facebook)

Video url

Video thumbnail url (Facebook)


Upload video

Upload video thumbnail

Message (Facebook, Twitter)

Posting time

- If needed, provide a video **thumbnail URL** for the Facebook platform.
- Provide a message in the **Message** field.
- Select a **Posting time** for the video post.



ADMIN SECTION

DASHBOARD

MY ACCOUNT

CUSTOMER SUPPORT

TUTORIALS

IMPORT ACCOUNT

FLOW BUILDER

OPT-IN FORM BUILDER

FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER

AUTOMATIONS

BROADCASTING

Create post

Social Poster / Video post / Create post

Campaign info

Campaign name

Title (Facebook)

Video url

Video thumbnail url (Facebook)

Upload video

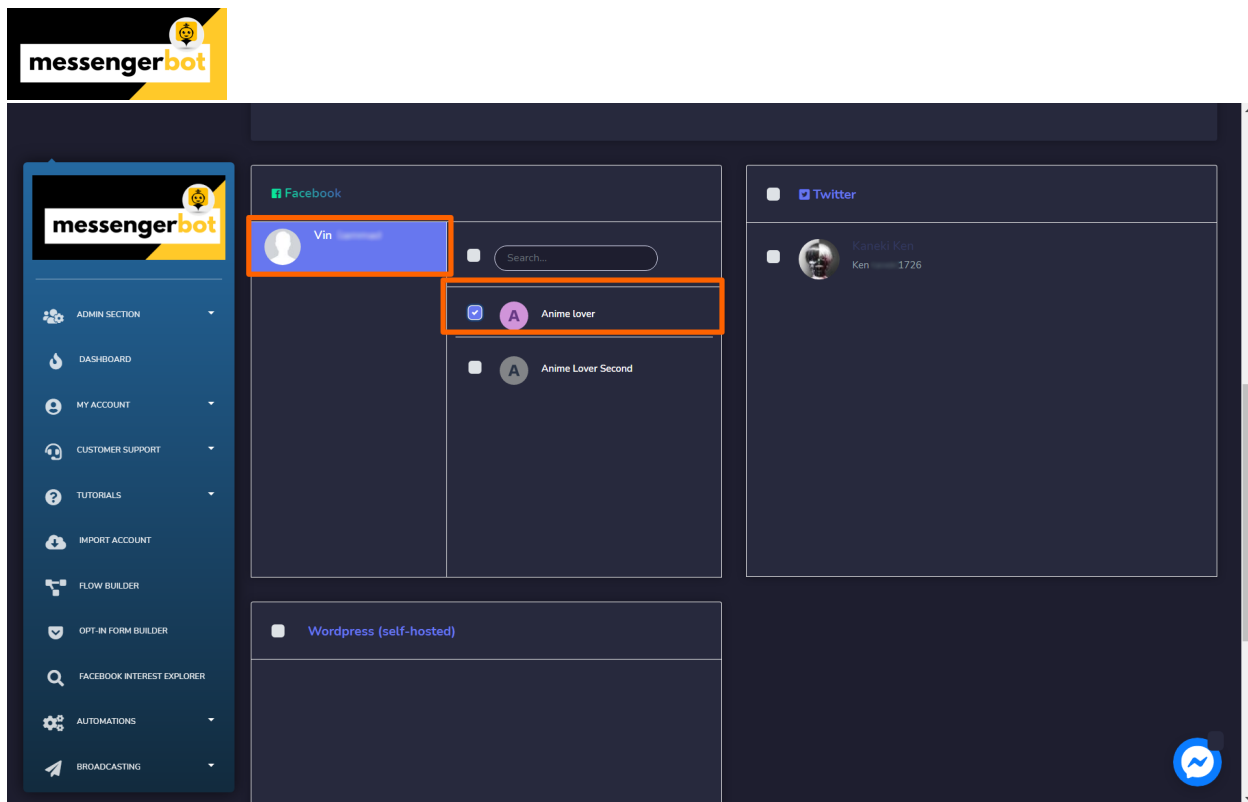
Upload video thumbnail

Message (Facebook, Twitter)

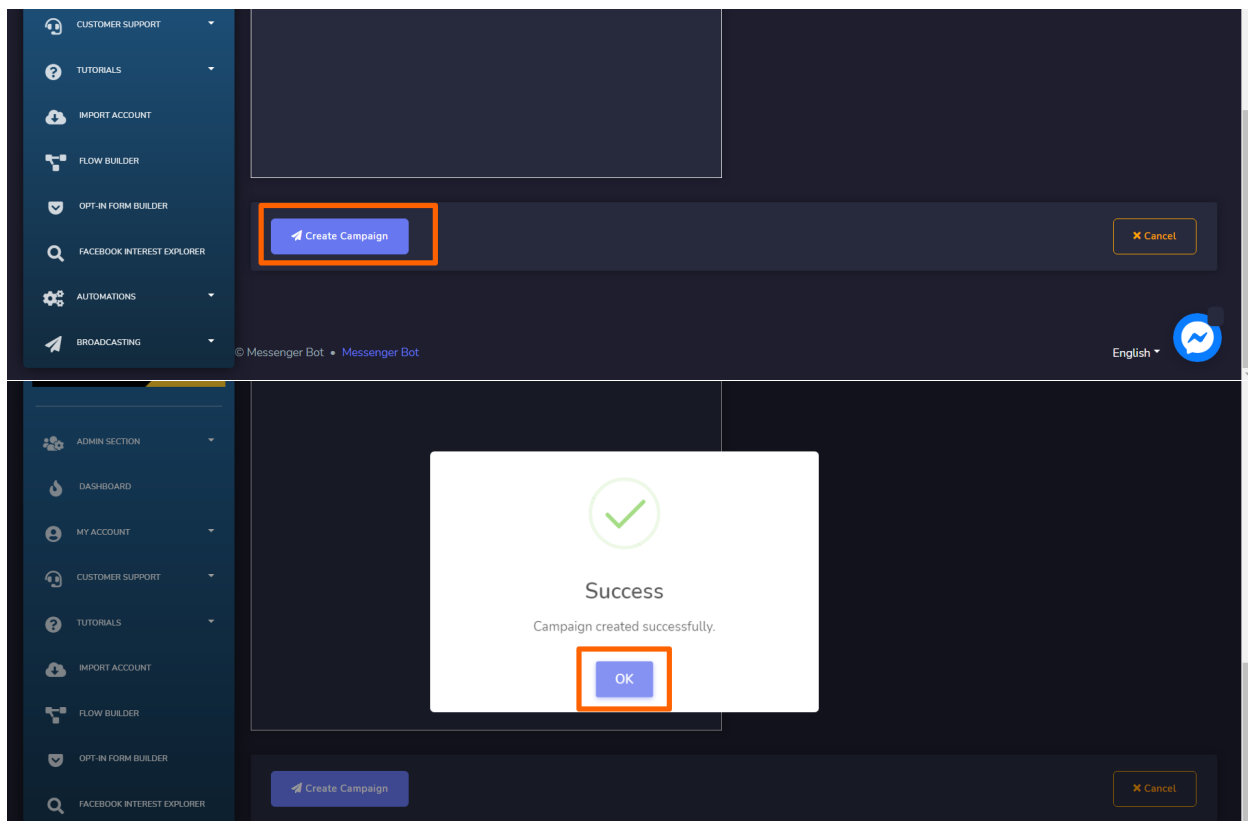
Posting time

- Select the **social accounts** from which this needs to be posted.





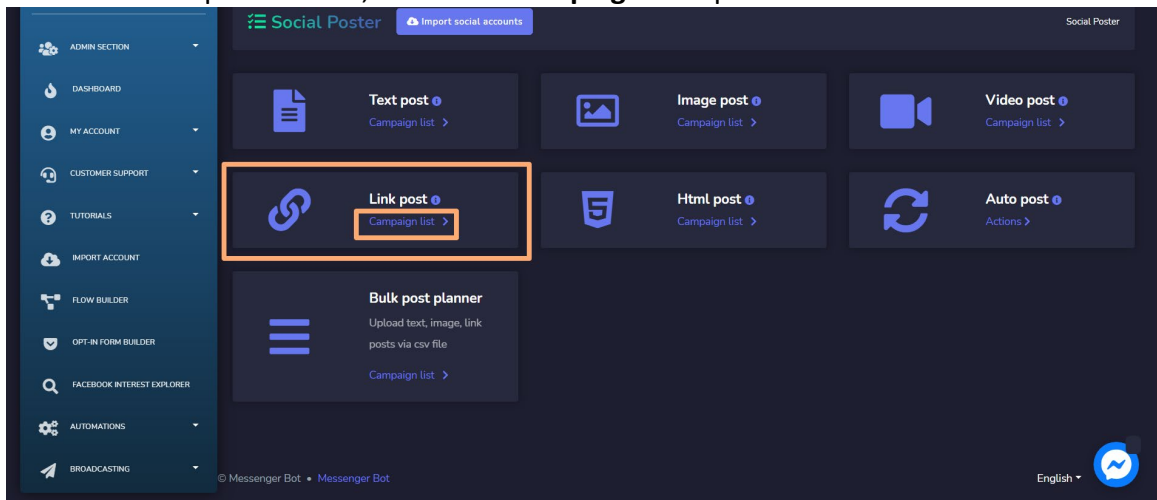
8. Once selected all required options, you need to select **Create campaign** option.



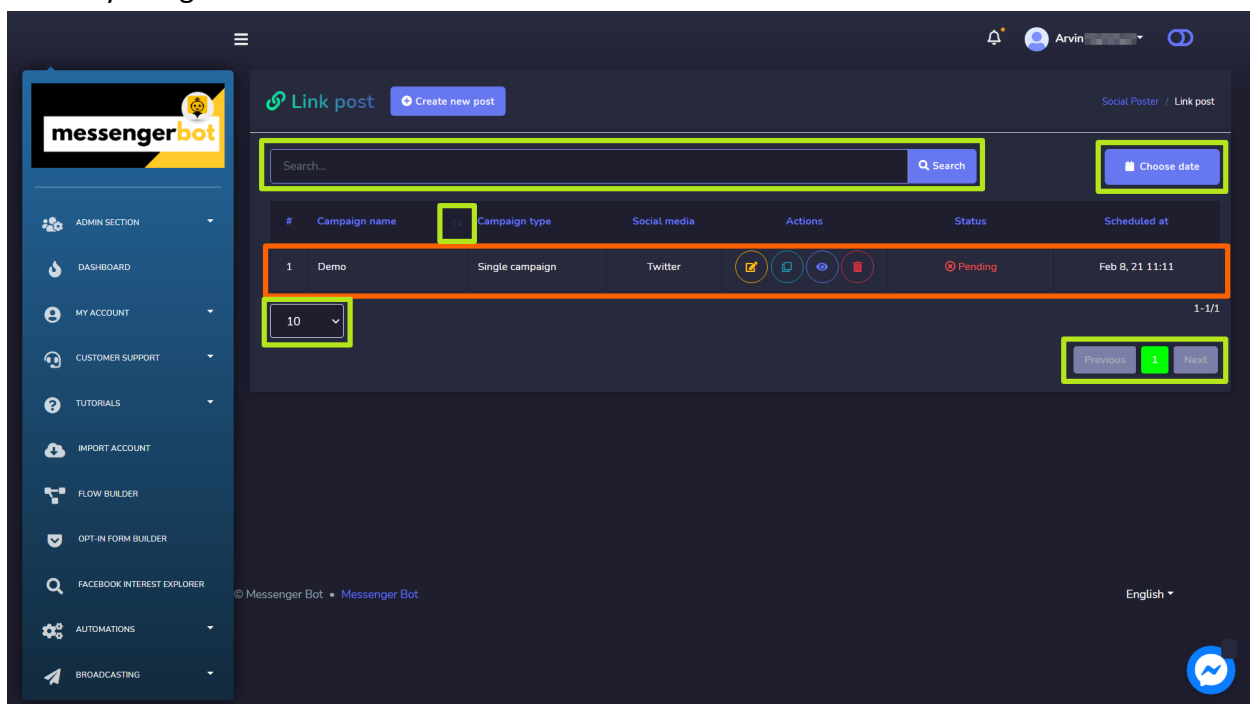


Link Post

To access the Link post section, select the **Campaign list** option from the **Link Post** section.



A **Link post** screen will appear, it consists of a **list of campaign types and campaign names** you can search for a campaign by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of campaigns to be **viewed per page**. You can choose the **date range** for the **narrowed search**. You can also sort them out based on their **status**. You can **arrange** the names either in **ascending or descending order** by using the **arrows** in the header of the table.



The following are the **actions** that can be performed against the campaign you want to perform actions on:





- Edit a campaign.

The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot dashboard. On the left is a sidebar with the 'messengerbot' logo and a menu including: ADMIN SECTION, DASHBOARD, MY ACCOUNT, CUSTOMER SUPPORT, TUTORIALS, IMPORT ACCOUNT, FLOW BUILDER, OPT-IN FORM BUILDER, and FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER. The main area is titled 'Link post' with a 'Create new post' button. Below this is a search bar and a 'Choose date' button. A table lists campaigns with columns: #, Campaign name, Campaign type, Social media, Actions, Status, and Scheduled at. The first row shows a campaign named 'Demo' of type 'Single campaign' on 'Twitter'. The 'Actions' column for this campaign contains several icons, with the 'Edit post' icon (a pencil inside a square) highlighted by a yellow box. The status is 'Pending' and the scheduled time is 'Feb 8, 21 11:11'. At the bottom of the table is a pagination control showing '10' items and 'Previous', 'Next' buttons. The footer includes '© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot' and a language selector set to 'English'.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit post' form. At the top, the 'Edit post' button is highlighted with a green box. The form is titled 'Campaign info' and contains several input fields: 'Campaign name' (filled with 'Demo'), 'Thumbnail url (Linkedin)' (filled with 'Demo'), 'Title (Reddit, LinkedIn)' (filled with 'Demo'), 'Link' (filled with 'demo.com'), and 'Message (Facebook, LinkedIn)' (filled with 'Sample'). There is an 'Upload thumbnail' section with an 'Upload' button and a 'Drag & drop files' area. At the bottom, there is a 'Posting time' section with a toggle switch set to 'Post now'. The sidebar and top navigation are consistent with the previous screenshot.

- Clone the campaign by selecting .





ADMIN SECTION

DASHBOARD

MY ACCOUNT

CUSTOMER SUPPORT

TUTORIALS

IMPORT ACCOUNT

FLOW BUILDER

OPT-IN FORM BUILDER

FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER

AUTOMATIONS

BROADCASTING

Link post

Create new post

Social Poster / Link post

Search...

Search

Choose date

#	Campaign name	Campaign type	Social media	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Demo	Single campaign	Twitter	<div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div></div>	Pending	Feb 8, 21 11:11

10

Previous

1

Next

1-1/1

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot

English

ADMIN SECTION

DASHBOARD

MY ACCOUNT

CUSTOMER SUPPORT

TUTORIALS

IMPORT ACCOUNT

FLOW BUILDER

OPT-IN FORM BUILDER

FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER

AUTOMATIONS

BROADCASTING

Clone post

Social Poster / Link post / Clone post

Campaign info

Campaign name

Demo

Thumbnail url (Linkedin)

Demo

Title (Reddit, Linkedin)

Demo

Upload thumbnail

Upload

Drag & drop files

Link

demo.com

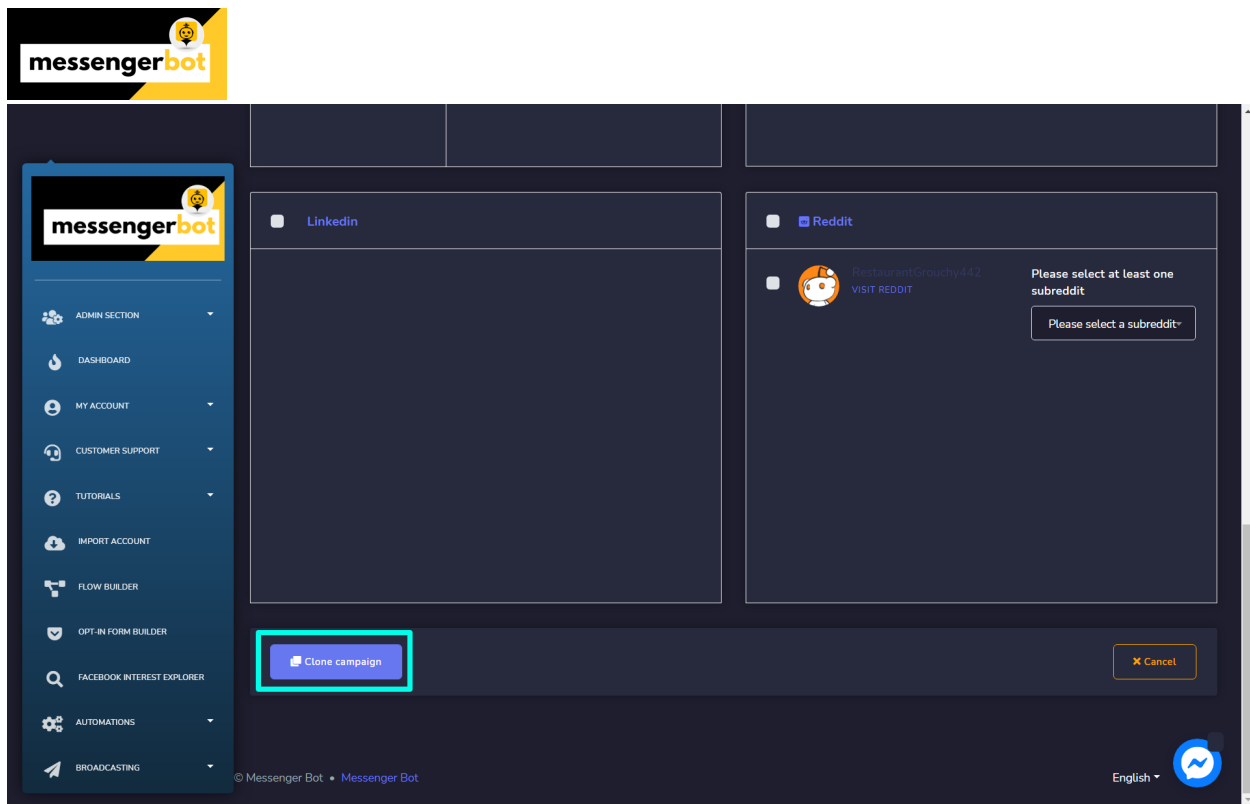
Message (Facebook, Linkedin)

Sample

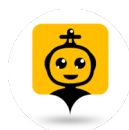
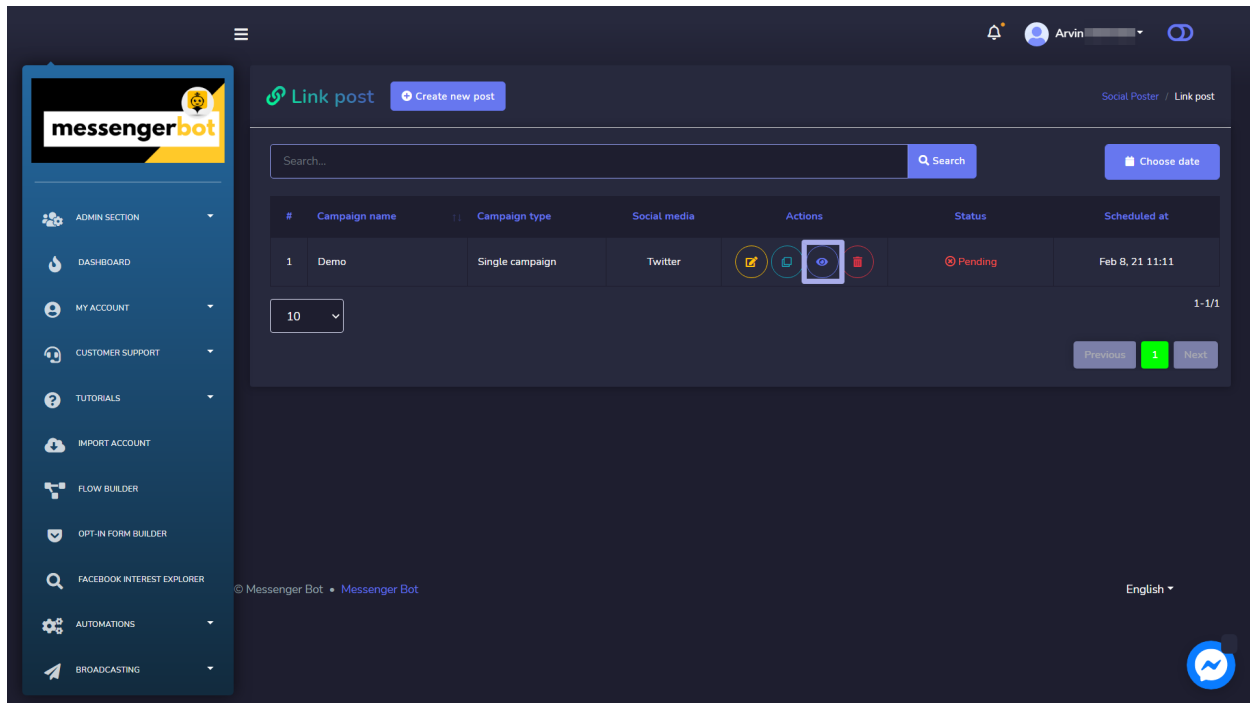
Posting time

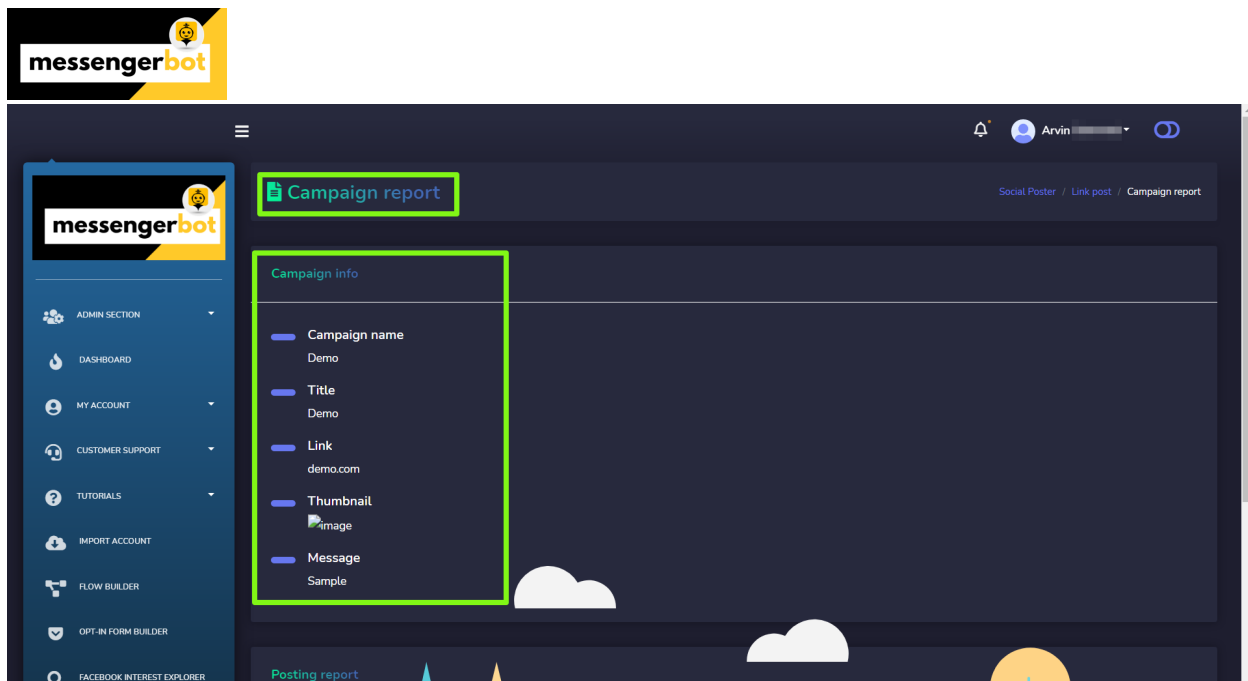
Post now



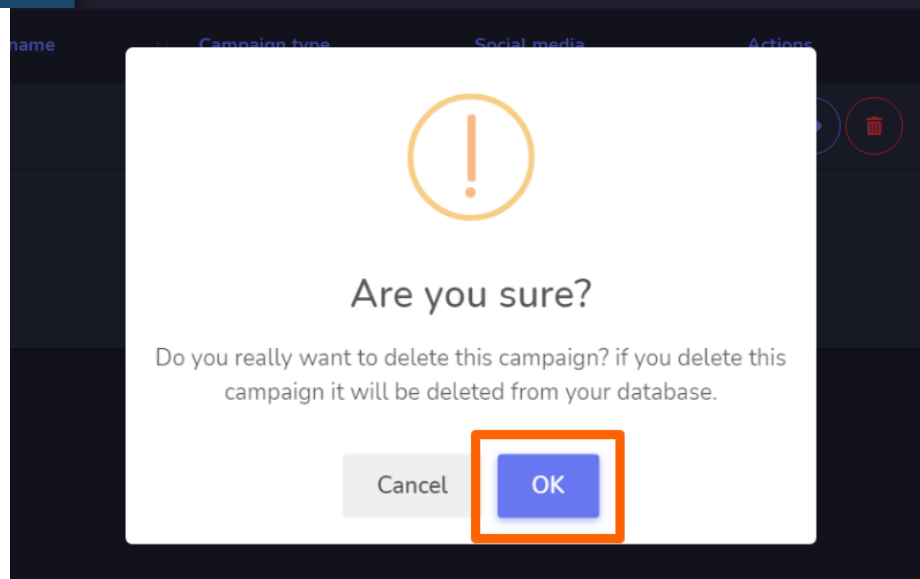
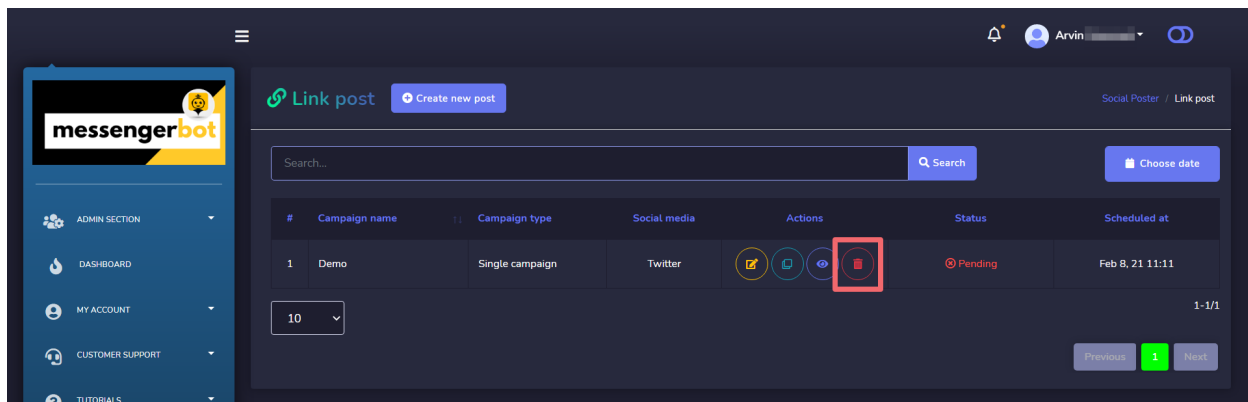


- View the campaign report by selecting .





- Delete a campaign.

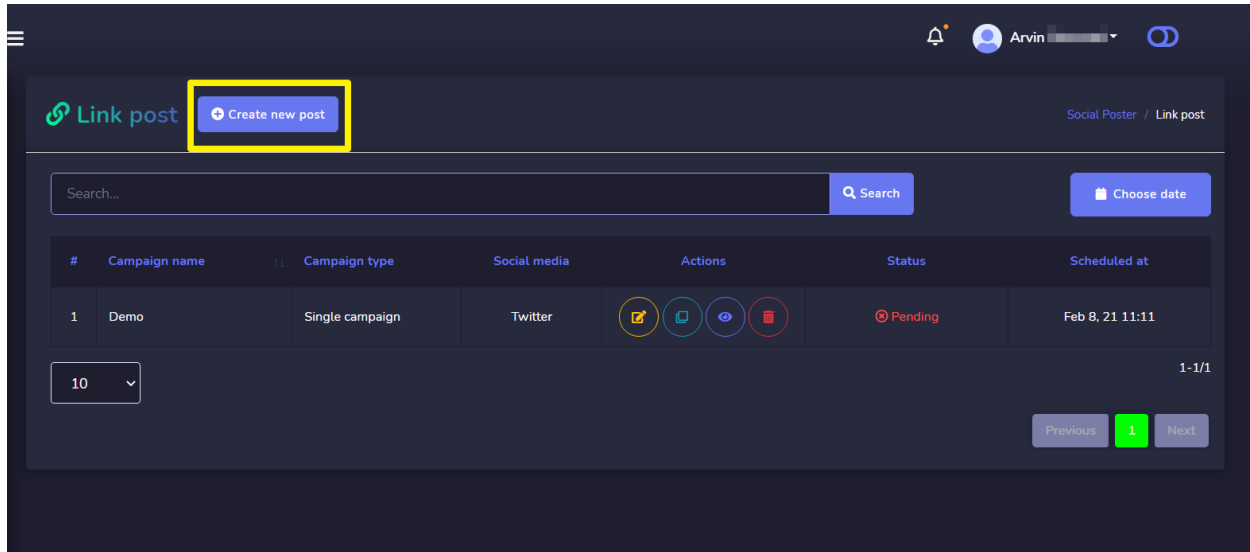




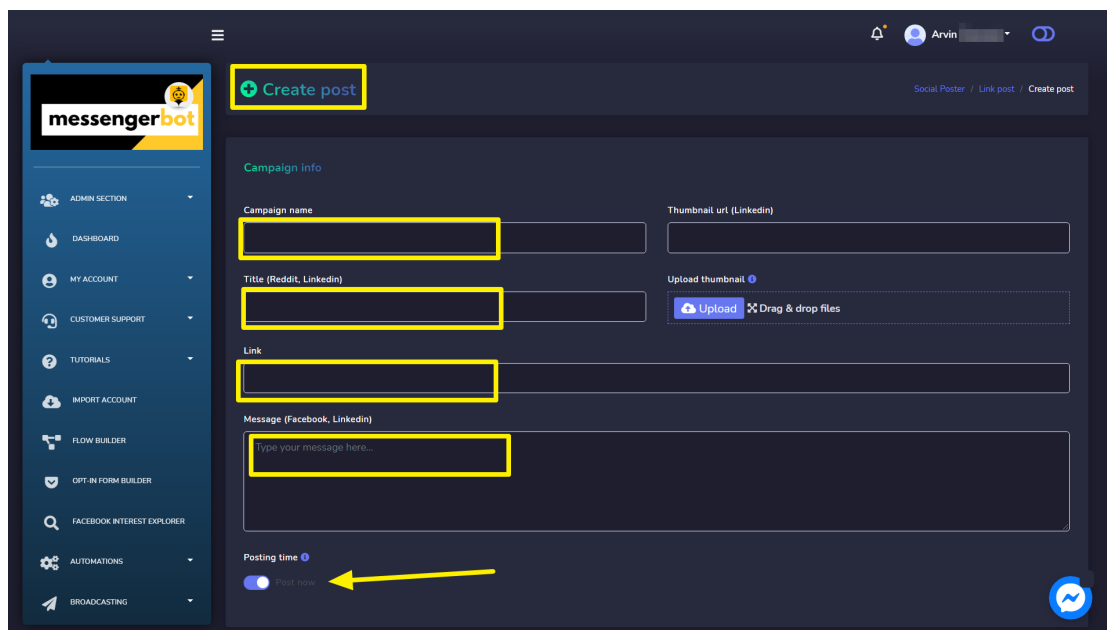
Create new Link Post

To create a new Link post, follow the steps given below:

1. Select **Create new post** from **Link post** screen.



2. Provide a **Campaign name**, title.
3. If needed, provide a **Link**.
4. Select a **Posting time** for the link post.
5. Upload a **thumbnail** by dragging and dropping the files.
6. Enter a **message** to be send via this post.





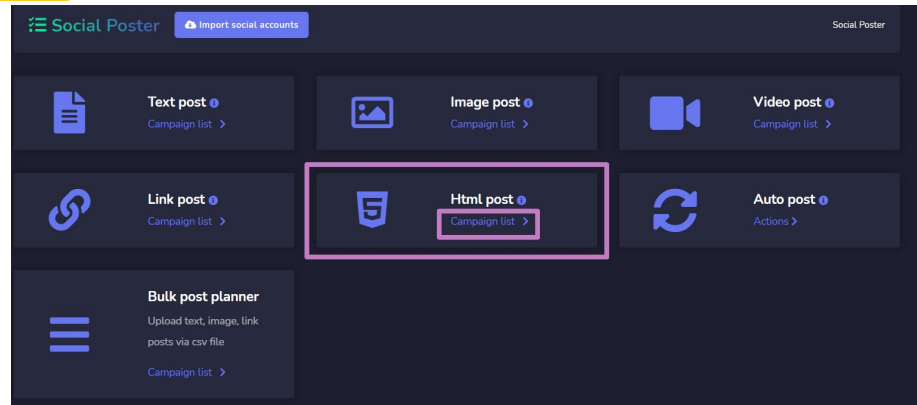
7. Select the **social accounts** from which this needs to be posted.
8. Once selected all required options, you need to select **Create campaign** option.

The screenshot displays the Messenger Bot dashboard interface. On the left, a sidebar menu lists various sections: ADMIN SECTION, DASHBOARD, MY ACCOUNT, CUSTOMER SUPPORT, TUTORIALS, IMPORT ACCOUNT, FLOW BUILDER, OPT-IN FORM BUILDER, FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER, AUTOMATIONS, and BROADCASTING. The main content area is divided into two columns. The left column shows a 'LinkedIn' section with a large empty box. The right column shows a 'Reddit' section with a yellow box highlighting the 'Reddit' account selection. Below the 'Reddit' section, there is a prompt: 'Please select at least one subreddit' and a button 'Please select a subreddit'. At the bottom of the dashboard, there is a 'Create Campaign' button highlighted with a yellow box, and a 'Cancel' button. A success modal is displayed in the center, showing a green checkmark and the text 'Success Campaign created successfully.' with an 'OK' button highlighted by an orange box. The footer of the dashboard includes the copyright notice '© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot' and a language selector set to 'English'.

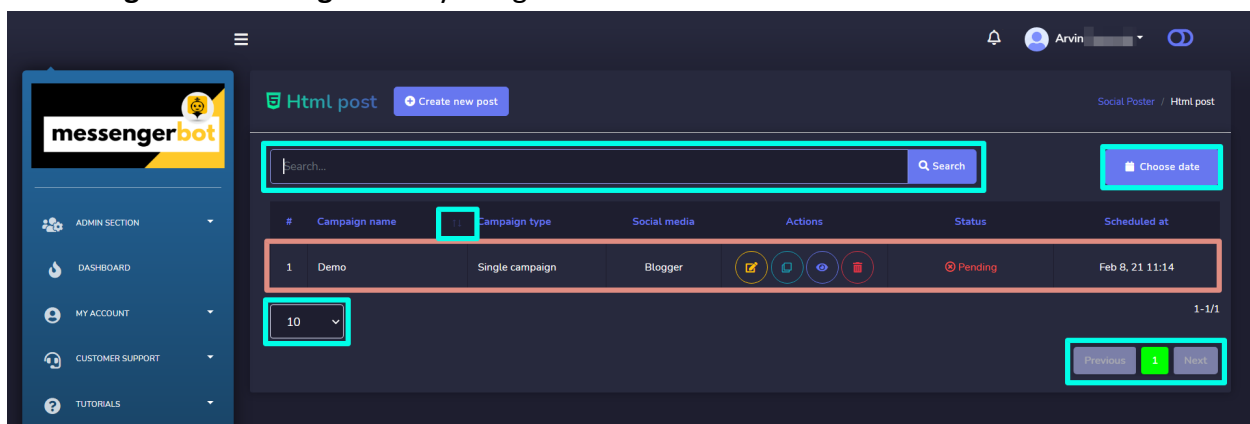
Html Post

To access the Html post section, select the **Campaign list** option from the **Html Post** section.



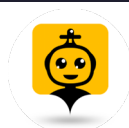
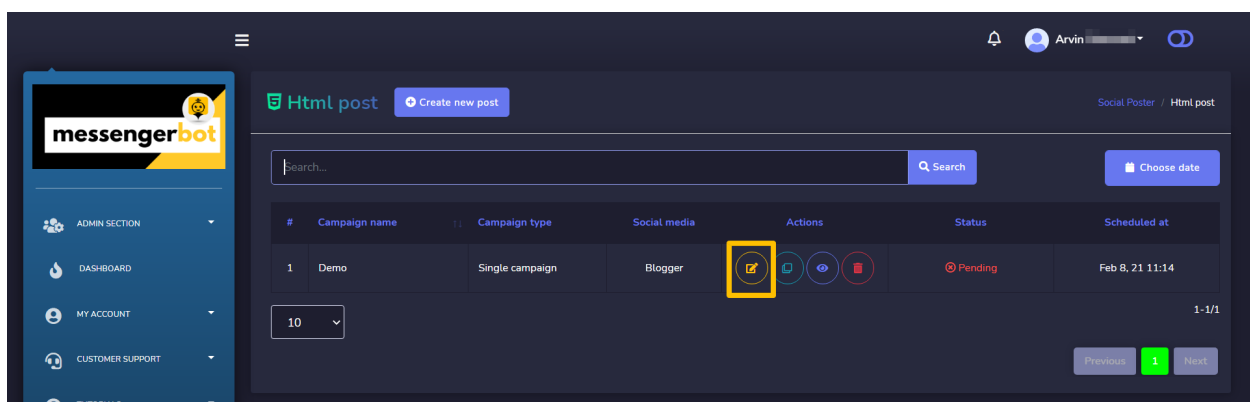


An **Html post** screen will appear, it consists of a **list of campaign types and campaign names** you can search for a campaign by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of campaigns to be **viewed per page**. You can choose the **date range** for the **narrowed search**. You can also sort them out based on their **status**. You can **arrange** the names either in **ascending or descending order** by using the **arrows** in the header of the table.



The following are the **actions** that can be performed against the campaign you want to perform actions on:

- **Edit a campaign.**



messengerbot

Edit post

Social Poster / Html post / Edit post

Campaign info

Campaign name

Demo

Rich content

Demo

Posting time

On

Blogger

Arvin Gammad

Wordpress

- **Clone** the campaign by selecting .


messengerbot

Html post [Create new post](#)

Social Poster / Html post

Search...


Choose date

#	Campaign name	Campaign type	Social media	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Demo	Single campaign	Blogger		Pending	Feb 8, 21 11:14

10

Previous 1 Next

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot

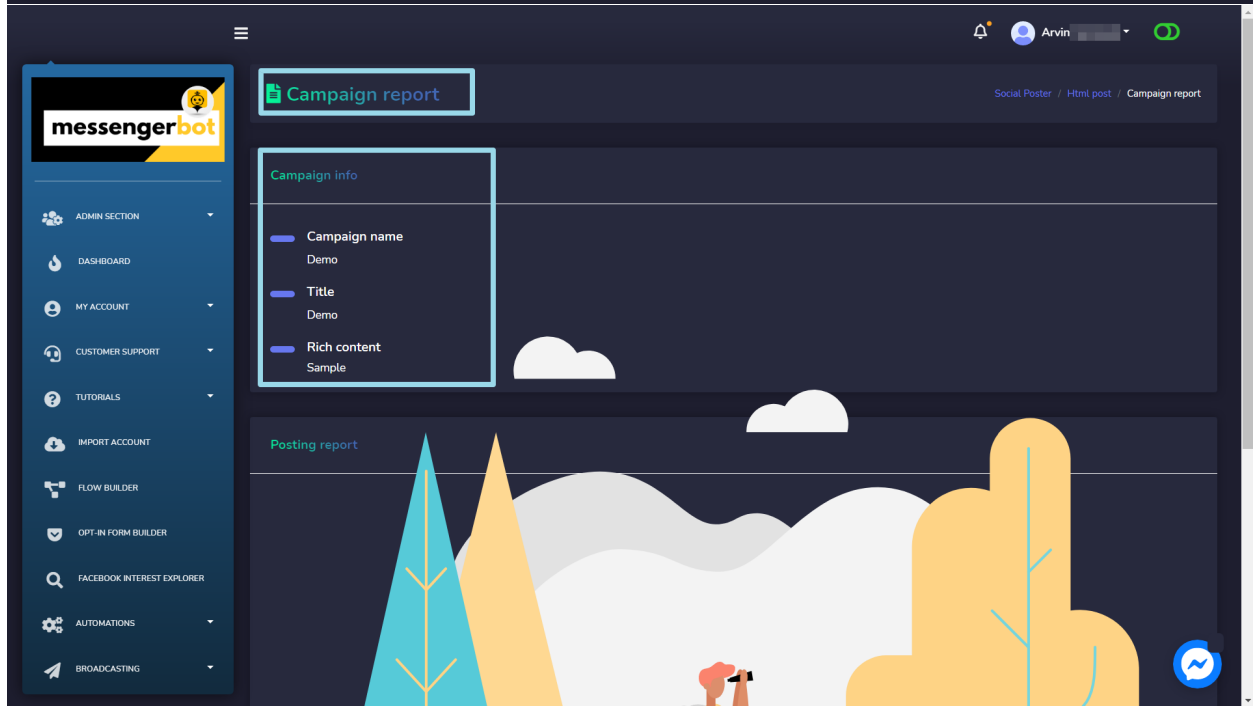
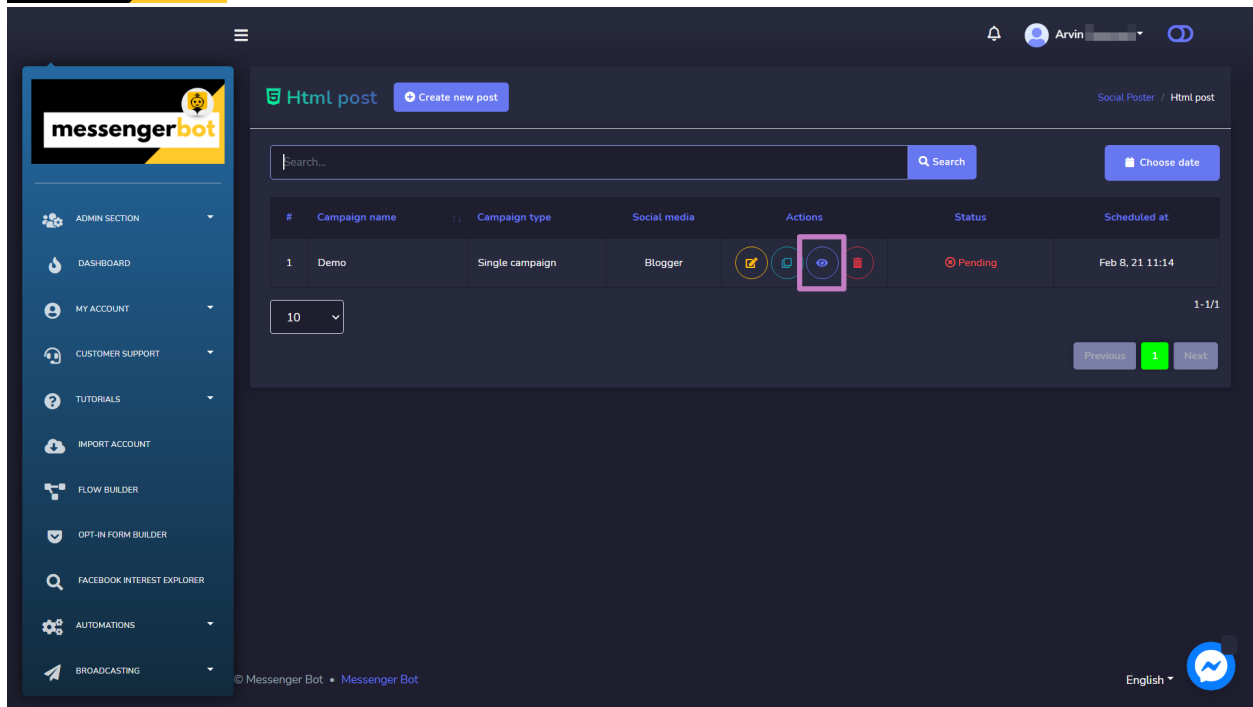
English 



The screenshot displays the Messenger Bot dashboard interface. On the left is a sidebar with the 'messengerbot' logo and a menu including: ADMIN SECTION, DASHBOARD, MY ACCOUNT, CUSTOMER SUPPORT, TUTORIALS, IMPORT ACCOUNT, FLOW BUILDER, OPT-IN FORM BUILDER, FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER, AUTOMATIONS, and BROADCASTING. The main area is titled 'Clone post' (highlighted with a pink box) and contains a 'Campaign info' section with fields for 'Campaign name' (Demo) and 'Title' (Demo). Below this is a 'Rich content' editor with a toolbar and a text area containing 'Demo'. A 'Posting time' toggle is set to 'Post now'. At the bottom of the main area, there are buttons for 'Blogger', 'Wordpress', 'Medium', and 'Wordpress (self-hosted)'. A 'Clone campaign' button (highlighted with a pink box) is located at the bottom of the dashboard, next to a 'Cancel' button. The footer shows '© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot' and a language selector set to 'English'.

- **View** the campaign report by selecting .





- **Delete** a campaign



The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot dashboard. The sidebar on the left contains the following menu items: ADMIN SECTION, DASHBOARD, MY ACCOUNT, CUSTOMER SUPPORT, TUTORIALS, IMPORT ACCOUNT, FLOW BUILDER, OPT-IN FORM BUILDER, FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER, AUTOMATIONS, and BROADCASTING. The main content area is titled 'Html post' and features a 'Create new post' button. Below this is a search bar and a 'Choose date' button. A table lists campaigns with the following data:

#	Campaign name	Campaign type	Social media	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Demo	Single campaign	Blogger	[Icons: Edit, Share, Delete]	Pending	Feb 8, 21 11:14

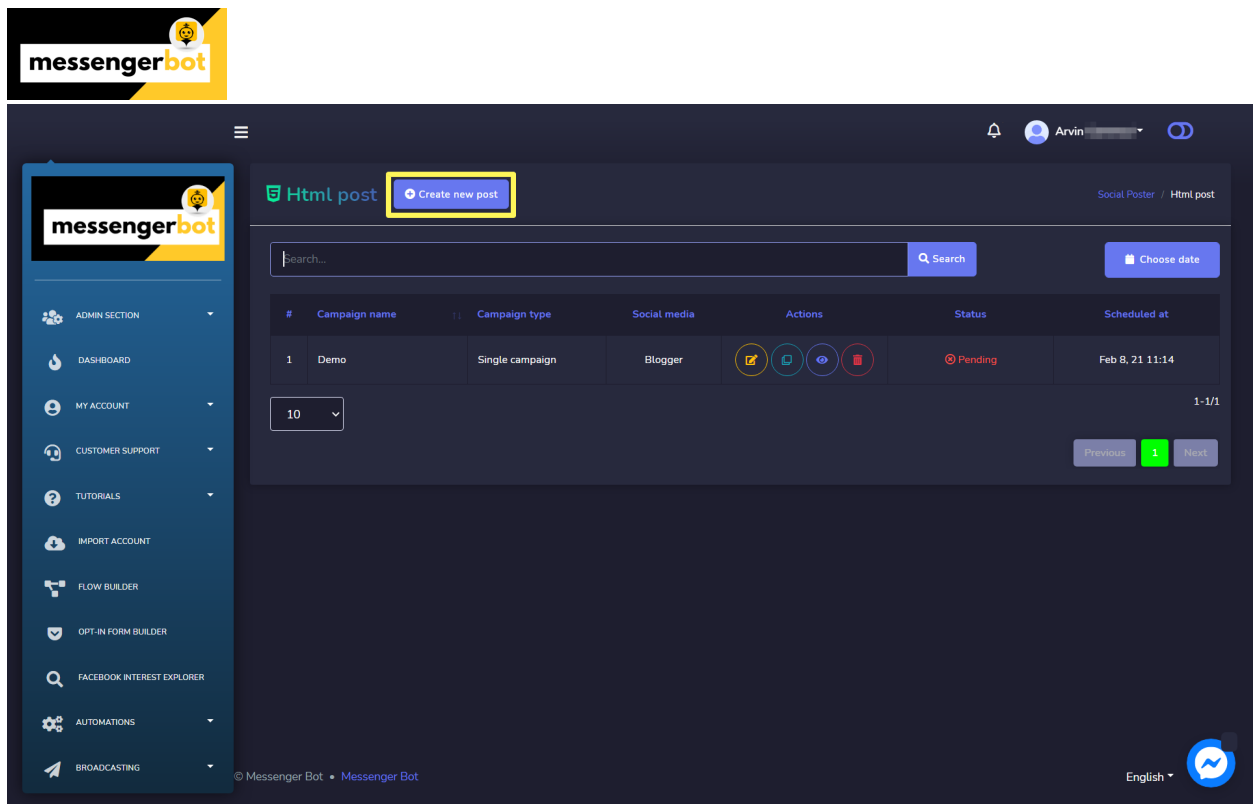
A modal dialog box is open in the center, asking for confirmation to delete the campaign. The dialog contains the text: 'Are you sure? Do you really want to delete this campaign? if you delete this campaign it will be deleted from your database.' The 'OK' button is highlighted with a red box.

Create new Html Post

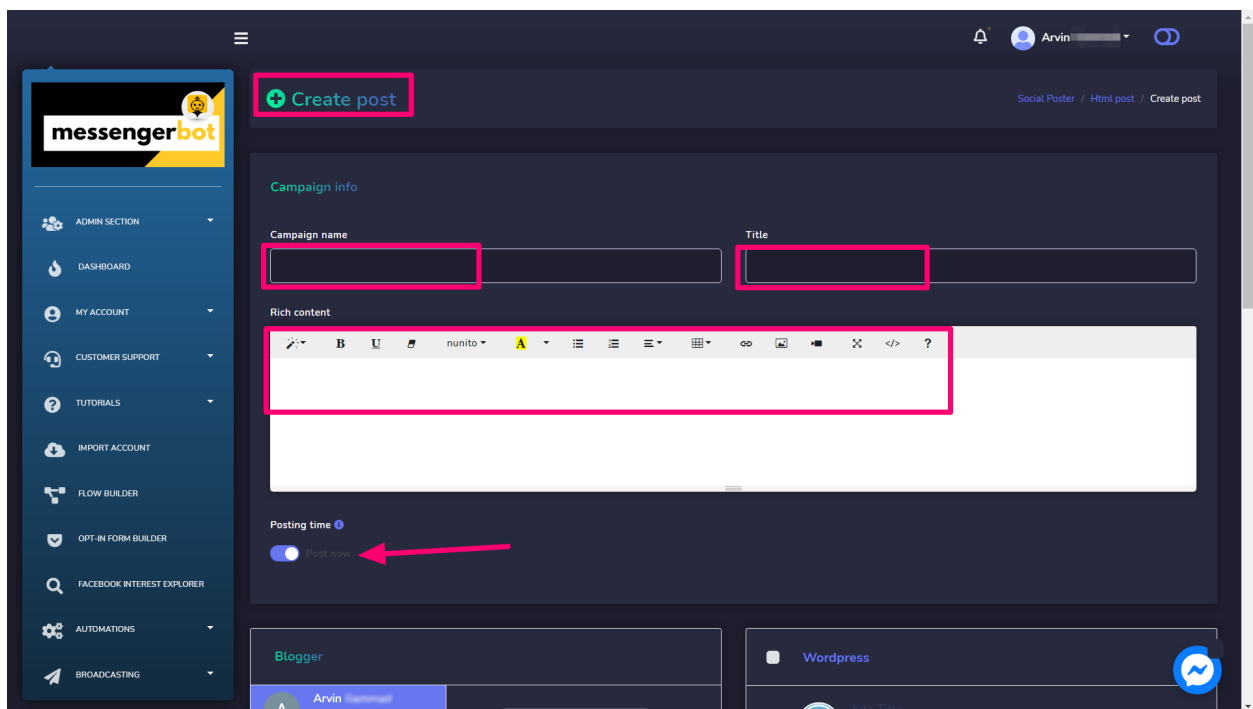
To create a new Html post, follow the steps given below:

1. Select **Create new post** from **Html post** screen.





2. Provide a **Campaign name**, and **title**.
3. Select a **Posting time** for the html post.
4. Provide the **rich content** message in the field provided.

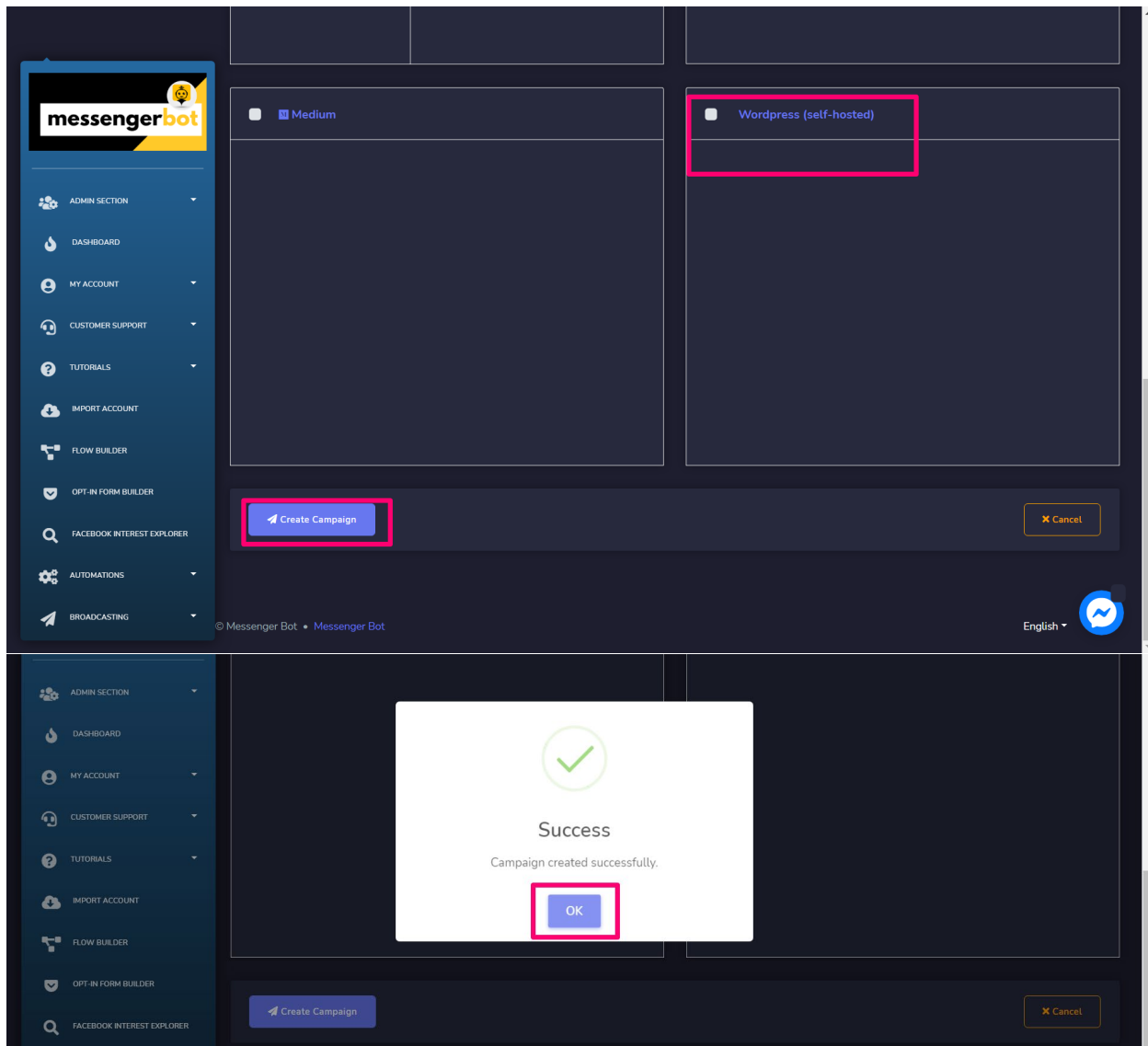


5. Select the **social accounts** from which this needs to be posted.





6. Once selected all required options, you need to select **Create campaign** option.



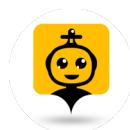
Auto Post

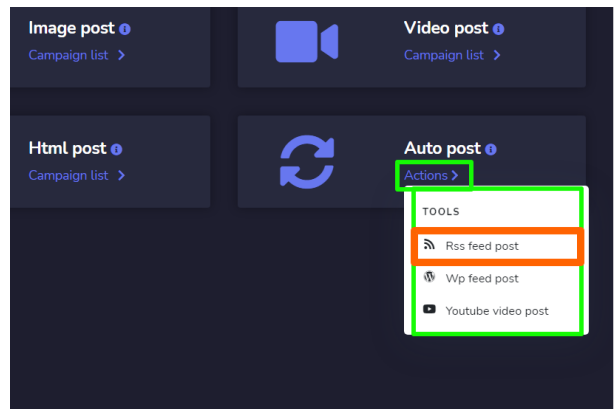
Auto Post has 3 tools:

- [RSS feed post](#)
- Wp feed post
- Youtube video post.

RSS Feed Post

To access the RSS Feed Post section, select the **Campaign list** option from **RSS Feed Post** section.




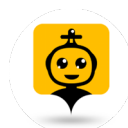


Note

- RSS auto posting will be published as Link post. It will post once any new feed comes to RSS feed after setting it in the system. It will not post any existing feeds during setup the campaign.
- You need to add XMLs for this feature to be published.

An **RSS-auto posting** screen will appear, it consists of a **list of Feed names** you can search for a feed by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of feeds to be **viewed per page**. You can choose the **date range** for the **narrowed search**. You can **arrange** the names either in **ascending or descending order** by using the **arrows** in the header of the table.

To perform different **actions** on the feeds, select  option against the feed you want to perform actions on.



messengerbot

Rss auto-posting [New auto posting feed](#)

Facebook Poster / Rss auto-posting

RSS auto posting will be publised as link post. It will post once any new feed comes to rss feed after setting it in the system. It will not post any existing feeds during setup the campaign.

Search...

Sn	Feed name	Status	Actions	Last updated	Last feed	Post as pages
1	demo	Active		09 Feb 00:10	19 Oct 16:09	

10 1-1/1

Previous 1 Next

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot English

The following are the **actions** that can be performed against the feed you want to perform actions on:

- Manage the settings of the campaign by selecting .

messengerbot

Rss auto-posting [New auto posting feed](#)

Facebook Poster / Rss auto-posting

RSS auto posting will be publised as link post. It will post once any new feed comes to rss feed after setting it in the system. It will not post any existing feeds during setup the campaign.

Search...

Sn	Feed name	Status	Actions	Last updated	Last feed	Post as pages
1	demo	Active			19 Oct 16:09	

10 1-1/1

Previous 1 Next

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot English





Campaign settings : demo

Post to Facebook pages

Post to twitter accounts

Post to reddit accounts

Subreddit list

Posting timezone

Post between time

To

Message

Create Campaign

Close

- Disable the feed by selecting .

messengerbot






Rss auto-posting

New auto posting feed

Facebook Poster / Rss auto-posting

RSS auto posting will be publised as link post. It will post once any new feed comes to rss feed after setting it in the system. It will not post any existing feeds during setup the campaign.

Search...

Sn	Feed name	Status	Actions	Last updated	Last feed	Post as pages
1	demo	Active	    	19 Oct 16:09		

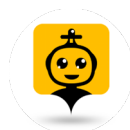
10

Previous 1 Next

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot

English

- Delete the feed.



ADMIN SECTION

DASHBOARD

MY ACCOUNT

CUSTOMER SUPPORT

TUTORIALS

IMPORT ACCOUNT

FLOW BUILDER

OPT-IN FORM BUILDER

FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER

AUTOMATIONS

BROADCASTING

Rss auto-posting

New auto posting feed

Facebook Poster / Rss auto-posting

RSS auto posting will be publised as link post. It will post once any new feed comes to rss feed after setting it in the system. It will not post any existing feeds during setup the campaign.

Search...

Sn	Feed name	Status	Actions	Last updated	Last feed	Post as pages
1	demo	Active			19 Oct 16:09	

10

Previous 1 Next

1-1/1

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot

English

ADMIN SECTION

DASHBOARD

MY ACCOUNT

CUSTOMER SUPPORT

TUTORIALS

IMPORT ACCOUNT

FLOW BUILDER

Search...

Sn	Feed name	Status	Actions	Last updated	Last feed	Post as pages
1	demo	Active			19 Oct 16:09	Anime lover

10

Previous 1 Next

1-1/1

!

Delete campaign

Do you really want to delete this campaign?

Cancel OK

- Track down the errors in XML by selecting

ADMIN SECTION

DASHBOARD

MY ACCOUNT

CUSTOMER SUPPORT

TUTORIALS

IMPORT ACCOUNT

FLOW BUILDER

OPT-IN FORM BUILDER

Rss auto-posting

New auto posting feed

Facebook Poster / Rss auto-posting

RSS auto posting will be publised as link post. It will post once any new feed comes to rss feed after setting it in the system. It will not post any existing feeds during setup the campaign.

Search...

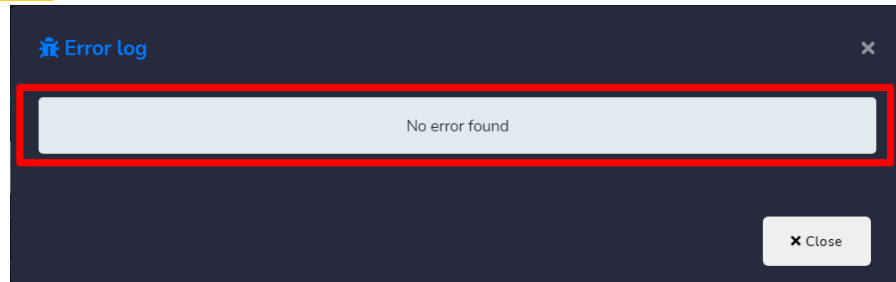
Sn	Feed name	Status	Actions	Last updated	Last feed	Post as pages
1	demo	Active			19 Oct 16:09	

10

Previous 1 Next

1-1/1

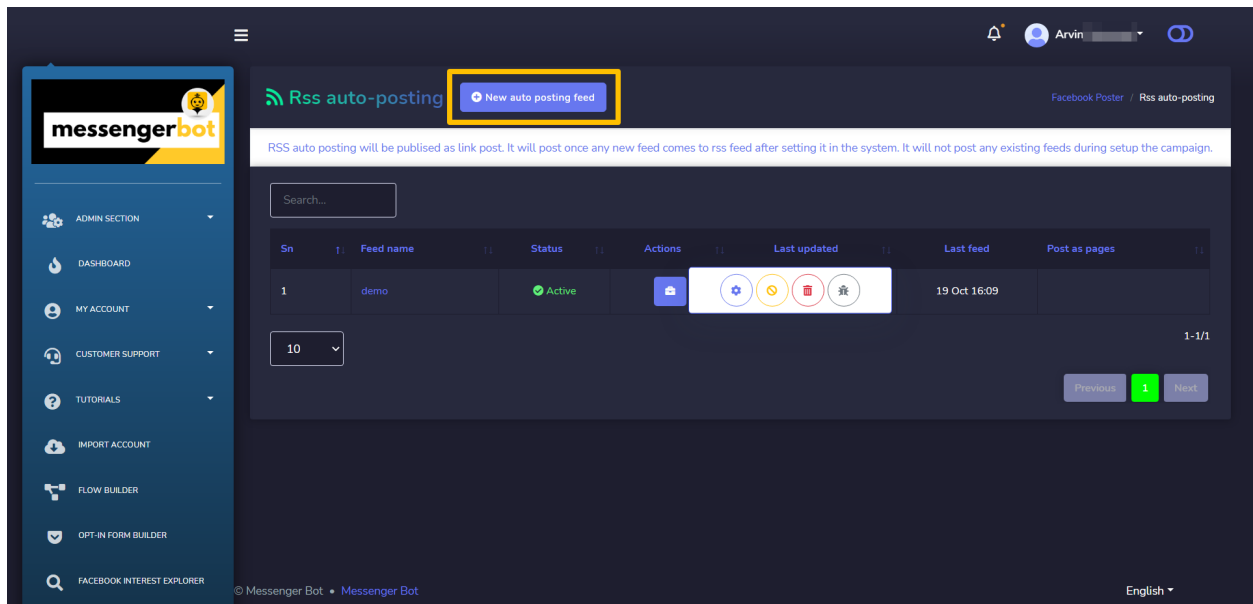




Create a new auto posting feed

To create a new Html post, follow the steps given below:

1. Select [+ New auto posting feed](#) from **RSS auto-posting** screen.



2. Provide a **Feed name**.
3. Provide an **RSS feed URL**, which is an XML, fetched by an RSS feed reader.
4. Select **Add feed** button.



Auto-posting feed ×

Feed name *

Rss feed url *

+ Add feed × Close

✓

Success

Feed has been added successfully.

OK





How to share YouTube Video to Social Media Automatically with Messenger Bot.App add-on

YouTube RSS Feed Post: YouTube RSS Feed Post allows you to post automatically of your new comes YouTube video to your YouTube channels with Messenger Bot.App. After adding your YouTube Channel ID and Creating Campaign, when new video come in your YouTube channel, system will automatically post your YouTube videos on your campaign's Social Medias.

YouTube Auto Posting feature will share your YouTube video on following Social Medias:

Facebook Pages

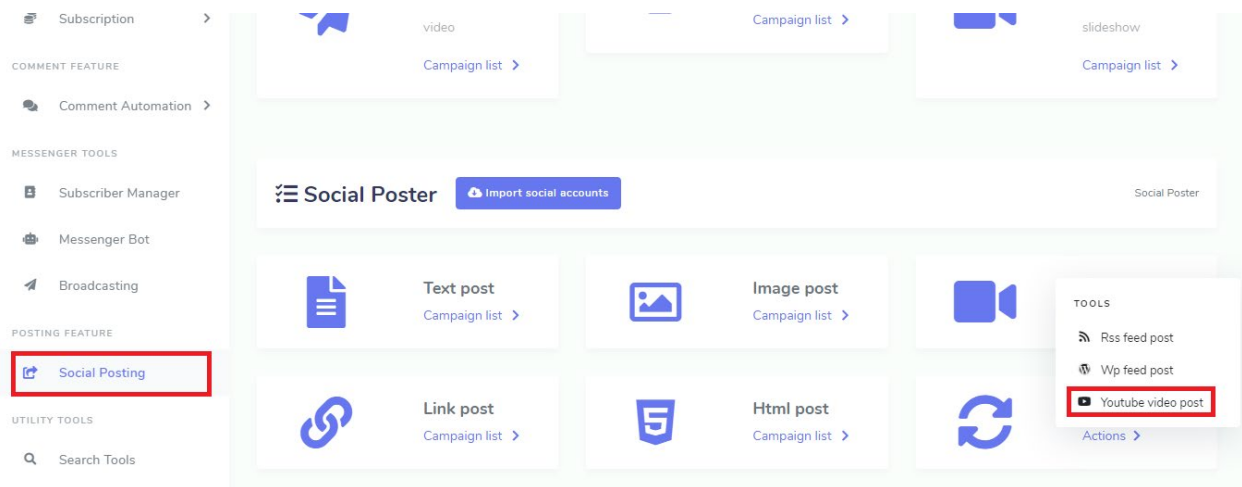
Twitter Accounts

LinkedIn Accounts

Reddit Accounts

Create YouTube RSS Auto Posting Feed :

First of all, Go to **Broadcasting -> Auto Post -> YouTube Video Post** section and click on the Add New YouTube Channel button, a modal will appear and provide your Feed name and your YouTube Channel ID, then hit Add Feed button.



Youtube video auto-posting will be published as a link post on selected social media. It will post new videos if there is any in your youtube channel after setting it up in the system. It will not post any existing videos during setup the campaign.

Sn	Feed name	Status	Actions	Last updated	Last feed	Post as pages
1		Active		21 May 20:14	18 May 17:00	Friends Forever


10

1-1/1

Previous

1

Next

 Youtube video auto-posting

Feed name *

Youtube channel id *

+ Add feed

X Close

Create YouTube RSS Auto Posting Campaign :

After Creating YouTube RSS Feed, now you need to set up your Campaign for Auto Sharing of your new comes YouTube Videos. **Click on Settings** button to get started with Campaign. A Campaign Creation form will appear, fill up the field and hit **Create Campaign** button.










Youtube video auto-posting

[Add new youtube channel](#)[Facebook Poster](#) / [Youtube video auto-posting](#)

Youtube video auto-posting will be publised as a link post on selected social media. It will post new videos if there is any in your youtube channel after setting it up in the system. It will not post any existing videos during setup the campaign.

Search...

Sn	Feed name	Status	Actions	Last updated	Last feed	Post as pages
1		Active	    		18 May 17:00	Friends Forever

10

Previous1Next

1-1/1



Campaign settings :
 ×

Post to Facebook pages

Post to twitter accounts

Post to linkedin accounts

Post to reddit accounts

Subreddit list

▼

Posting timezone

Time
▼

Post between time ⓘ

To

Message

🗨️ Title

😊

Create Campaign

× Close

Now you're all set up. Now when system gets a new video on your YouTube Channels, it will share automatically to your selected Social media.

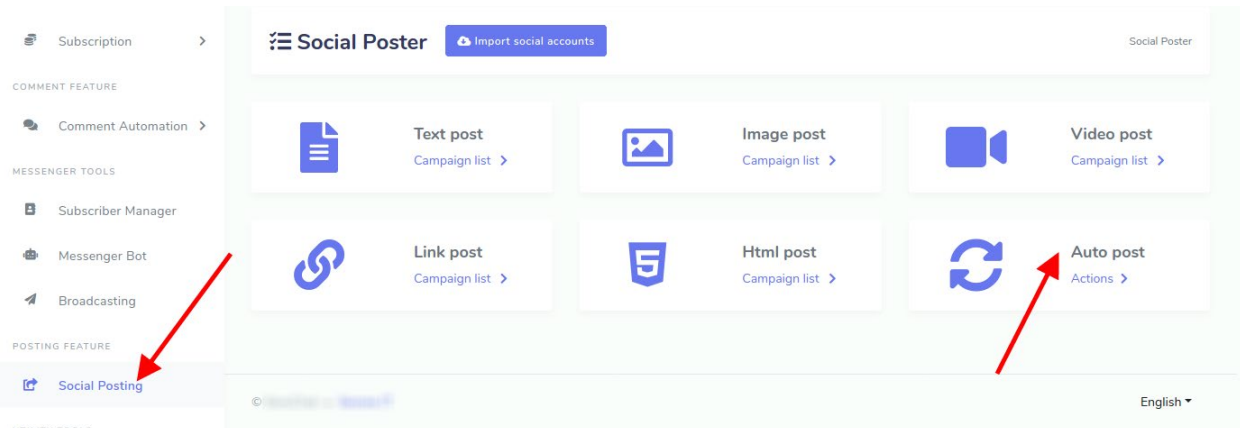
How To Share WordPress Blog Post To Social Media Automatically

Messenger Bot has come with a brand new add-on called Auto Post. This add-on has two great features. WordPress Blog Post is one of them. WordPress blog post will allow you to post new posts on user-specified social media. Here we are going to show you how to share WordPress blog post to social media.

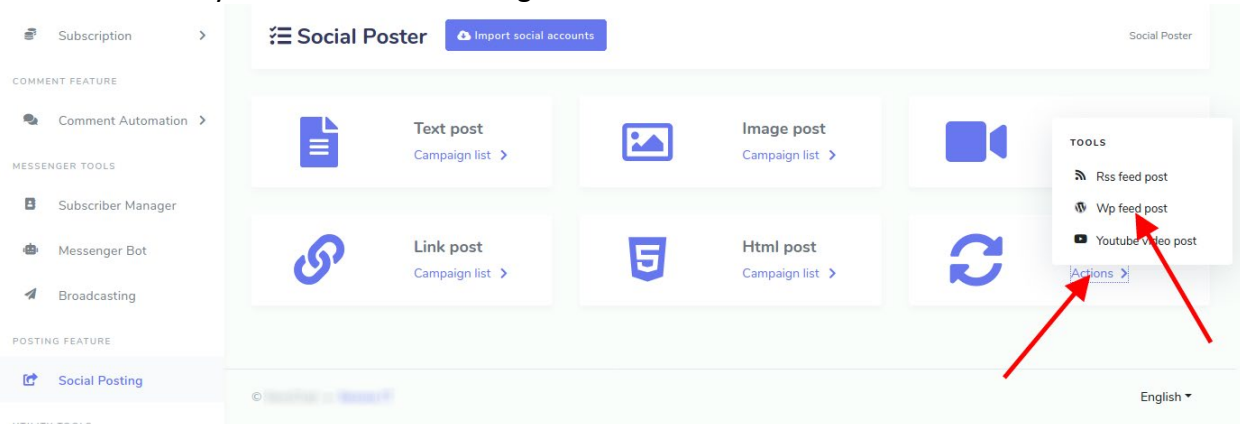




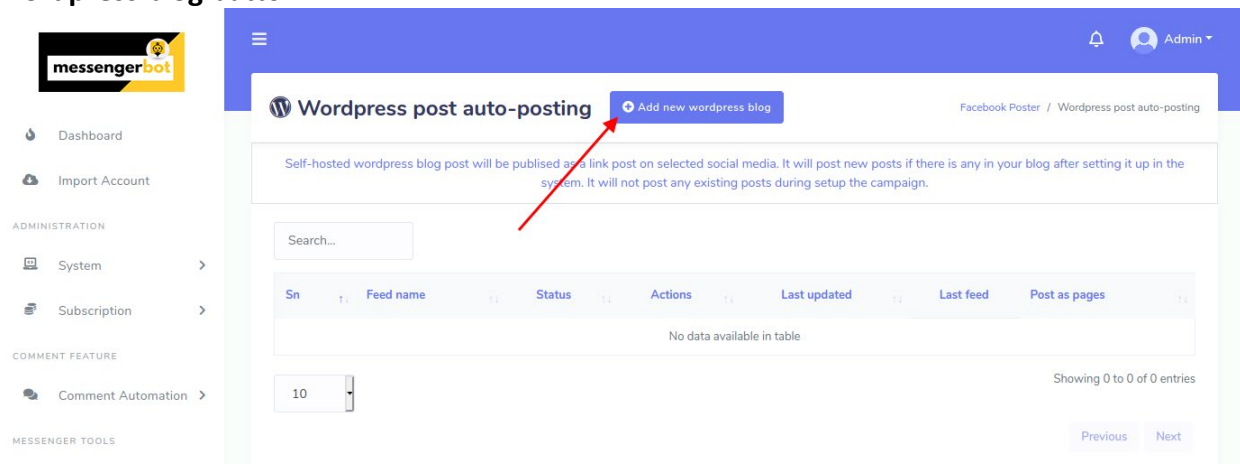
To get started with Wordpress blog post, you've to add the Wordpress blog URL. Click on the **Social Posting** menu in the dashboard. It will take you to an interface. Find out **Auto post** section there. Check out the screenshot below:



Click on the **Actions** button. It will pop up a menu box. Now click on the **Wp feed post** link from there. Follow as you see on the following screenshot:



Now you will get another interface as seen on the screenshot below. Click on the **Add new wordpress blog** button.

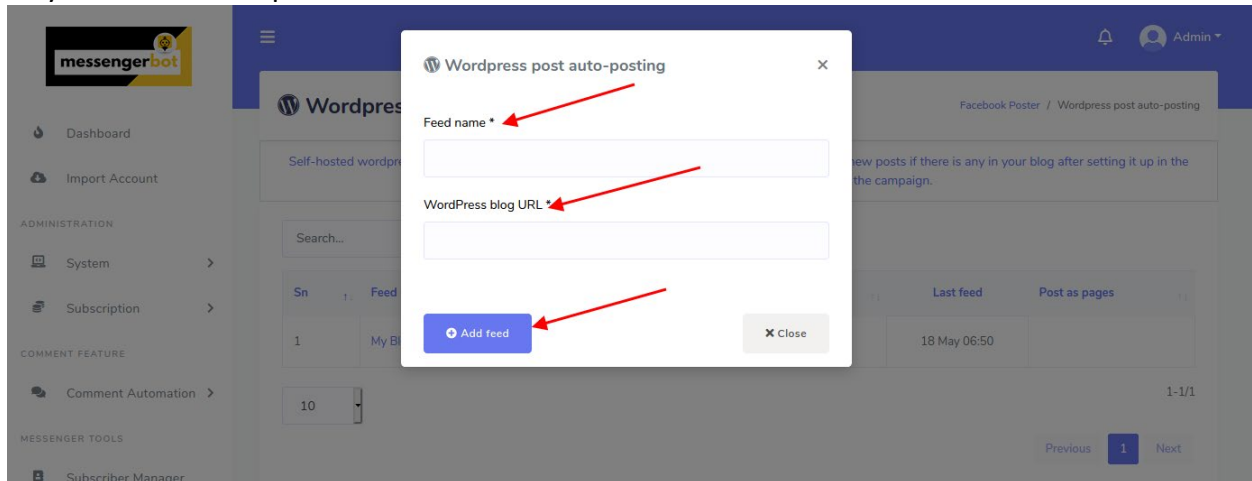


This time it will open up a modal asking for **Feed Name** and **WordPress blog URL**. Fill in the two fields. You can put a name for the **Feed name**. Select the blog URL from the dropdown. Note

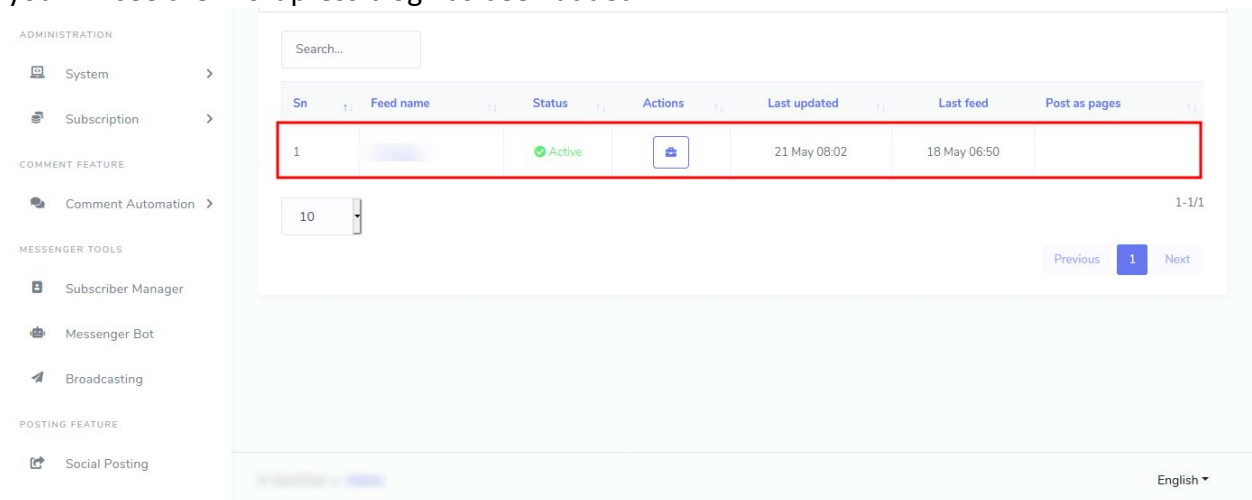




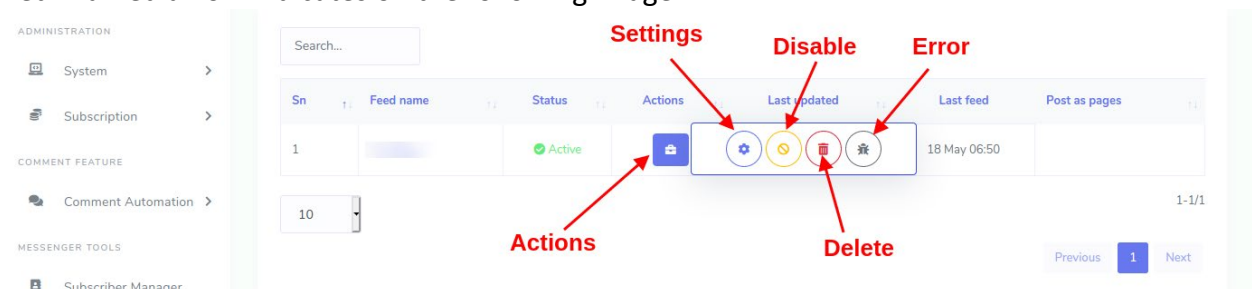
that blog URL comes from **Social Apps > Wordpress (self-hosted)** this section in the dropdown. So you need to set up that first. So do it.



Once you've done, close the modals. After that the page will automatically be refreshed and you will see the Wordpress blog has been added.



Now it's time to tell the system on which social media your blog posts will be published. To do that click on the **Actions** button and then click on the round (gear-icon) **Settings** button as the red-marked arrow indicates on the following image.





It will open up an modal from where you can specify social media, time zone, time range, and default message for your blog posts to be published. So set up those things as you need. Finally save those settings by clicking the **Create Campaign** button. And you are done!

There are other options there too. You can tell the system not to publish posts anymore on social media by clicking the **Disable** button, though you will be able to enable it again. You can check out the error log by click the **Error** button, and you can delete the blog settings by clicking the **Delete** button.

How To Post On Social Media From CSV File With Messenger Bot Bulk Post Planner

Post Planner – a completely brand new module of Messenger Bot. It allows you to upload bulk image, link, and text campaigns via CSV file to be posted on specified social media.

Today, you're going to see how to deal with Post Planner and make campaigns using CSV file upload. First of all, take a look at how the CSV file should be formatted with data.

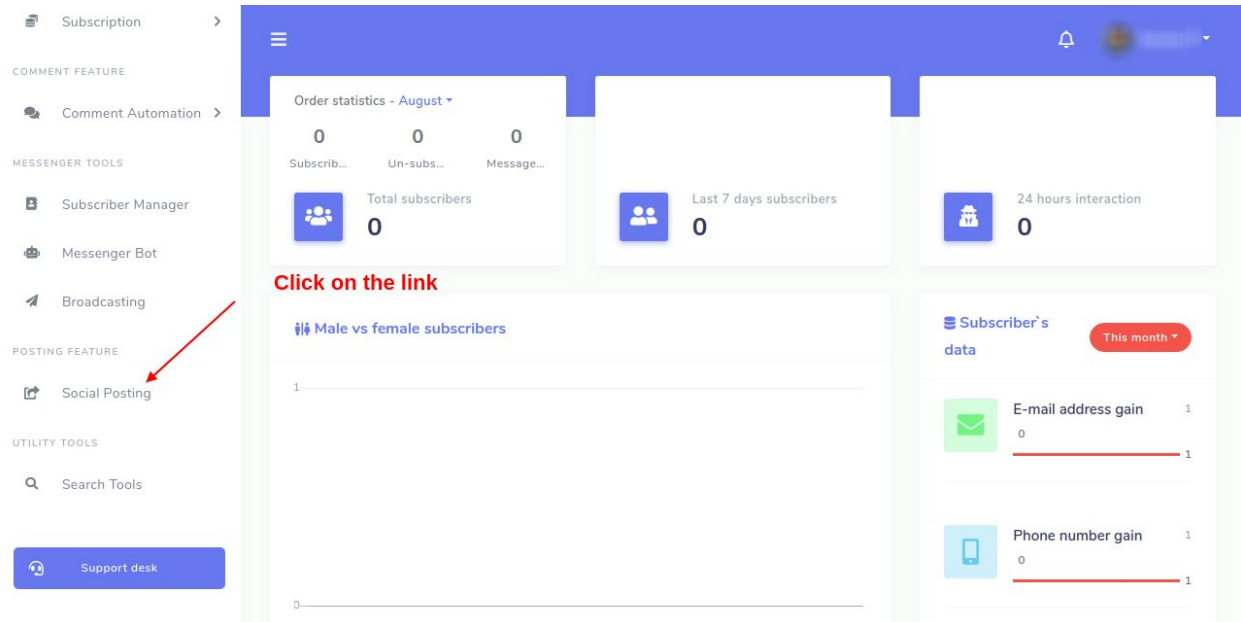
The CSV file has to have 4 header fields with the exact name as the following – **campaign_name**, **campaign_type**, **message**, and **source**. These are the required header fields. The values for the **campaign_name** field may be optional. But you have to put values for the **campaign_type** and **message** fields. The **campaign_type** must be one of three types – **text**, **image**, or **link**. The values for the **source** field may be optional, but we recommend you provide values for the **source** header field, especially for **image** and **link** campaign types.



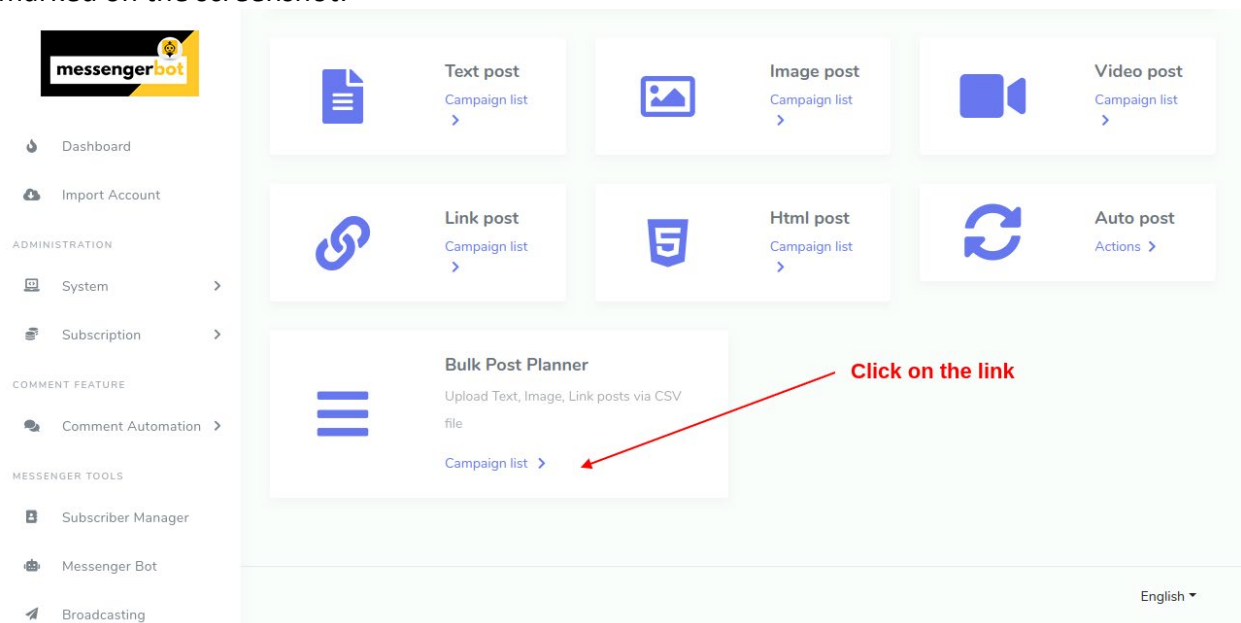


How it Works

Log in to your dashboard then find out the **Social Posting** menu from the left-hand side menu box. Click on that menu. See the screenshot below:



Now you need to scroll down onto the **Social Posting** page. Find out **Bulk Post Planner** module navigating box under the **Social Poster** section and click on the **Campaign list** link there as red-marked on the screenshot:

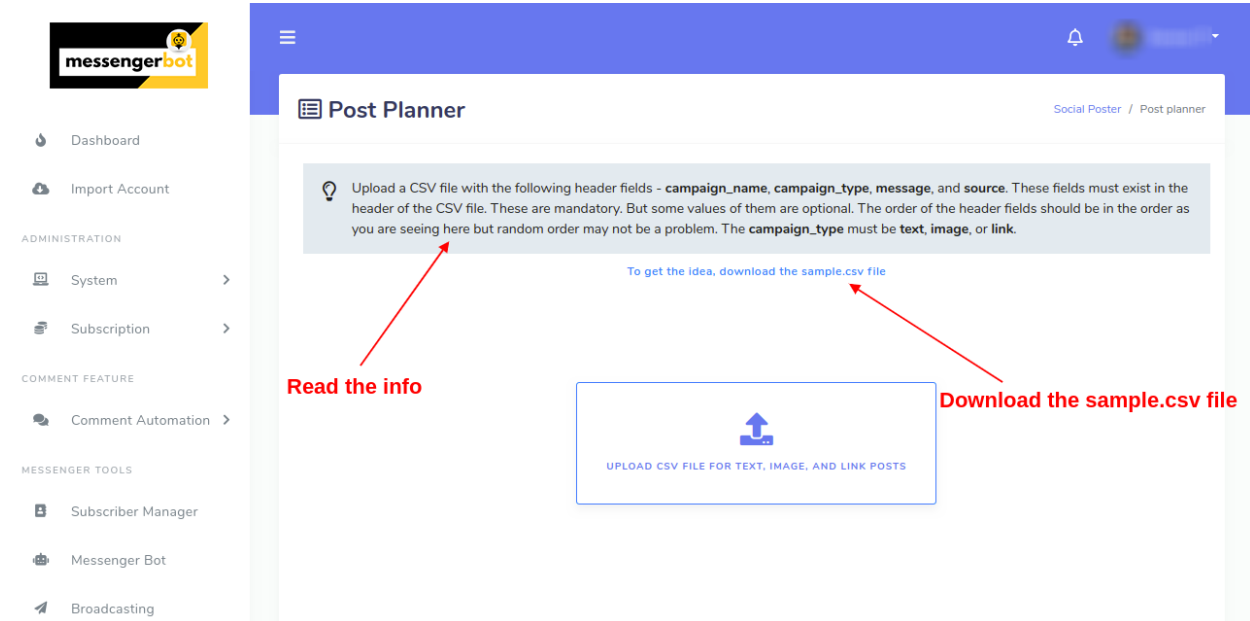


This will take you to the following interface. Read the information about how the data in the





CSV file should be formatted. To get the idea, you could download the **sample.csv** file. Do it as described in the image below:



Once you've downloaded the sample CSV file or you've prepared CSV file, then you can upload it via the upload interface as described below on the screenshot:



Once you've uploaded the CSV file, you should then get an interface with a table that contains the data you've uploaded. At the top of the data-table, you should see two buttons named – **Manual** and **Automatic**.

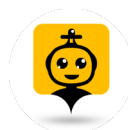




The **Manual** button allows you to set up date-time for each and every campaign **manually** while the **Automatic** button allows you to set up start-date, post-time-range, post-interval, and day-off for the campaigns and after that, the system will then automatically calculate your settings and apply them to the campaigns.

Automatic Settings

Let's start with **Automatic** settings. Click on the **Automatic** button. It will hide the data-table and pop up another interface by which you can set up start-date, post-time-range, post-interval, and day-off. The start-date tells on which date you want the system to start posting on social media. By setting up post-time-range you tell the system to post on social media between two specified times of each day except those days that are off. The post-interval tells how often you want to post on social media. The last one, the day-off tells the system not to post on specified day(s). Once you've set up all the settings, click on the button below called **Next**. It is located under the **Schedule Settings** section of that page.





- Dashboard
- Import Account
- ADMINISTRATION
 - System
 - Subscription
- COMMENT FEATURE
 - Comment Automation
- MESSENGER TOOLS
 - Subscriber Manager
 - Messenger Bot
 - Broadcasting

Post Planner

Click on a button below to set up campaign settings

Manual Automatic

Schedule settings

Post start-datetime*

2020-08-20

Post between two times

From 18:00 To 22:00

Post interval*

1 day

Do not post on day(s)

x Saturday x Sunday

Next

Once you're done with settings, click on the "Next" button to set up timezone and social settings

By clicking on the **Next** button, you will get a modal that will tell you to input timezone and social media settings. If you've imported social media accounts, then those media will be available via dropdowns on the modal. Click on the red-marked select-boxes to see them and select as your needs.

Campaign settings

Posting timezone

(GMT+6:00) Asia/Dhaka (Bangladesh Time)

Post to Facebook pages

x Forever

Post to twitter accounts

Post to linkedin accounts

Post to reddit accounts

Post to subreddit accounts

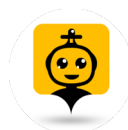
Create Campaigns

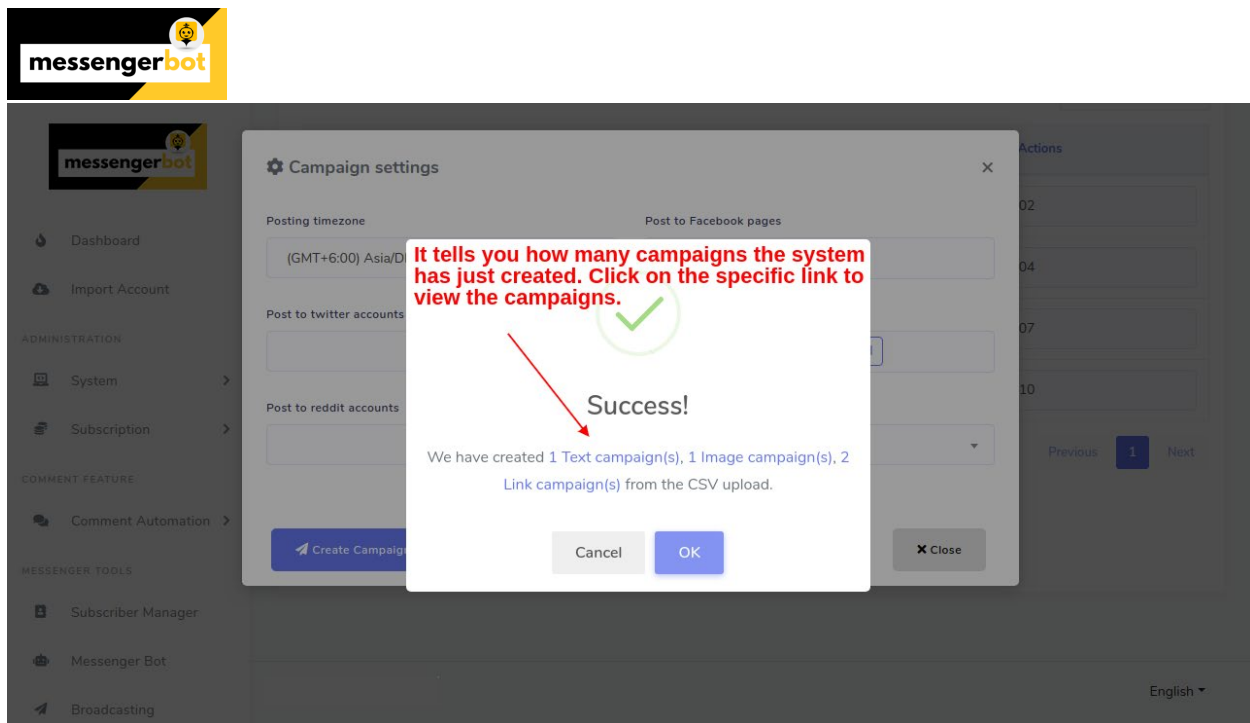
Close

Done with setup! Click on "Create Campaigns" button

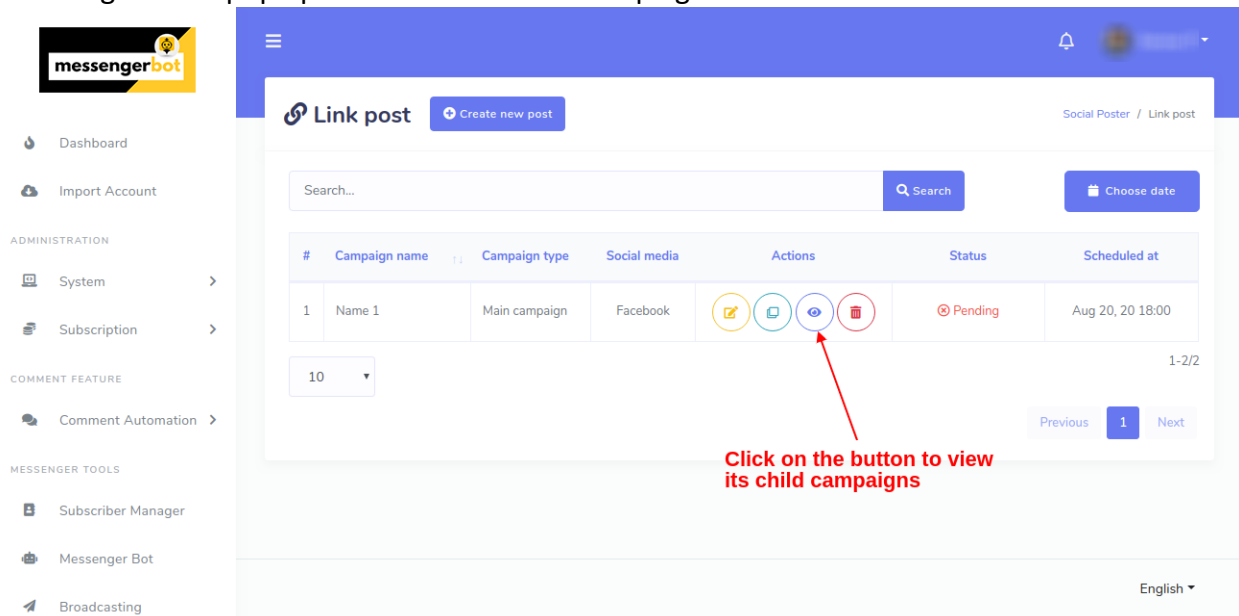
Once you're done with the setup, you can create campaigns. To create campaigns, click on the button named **Create Campaigns**.

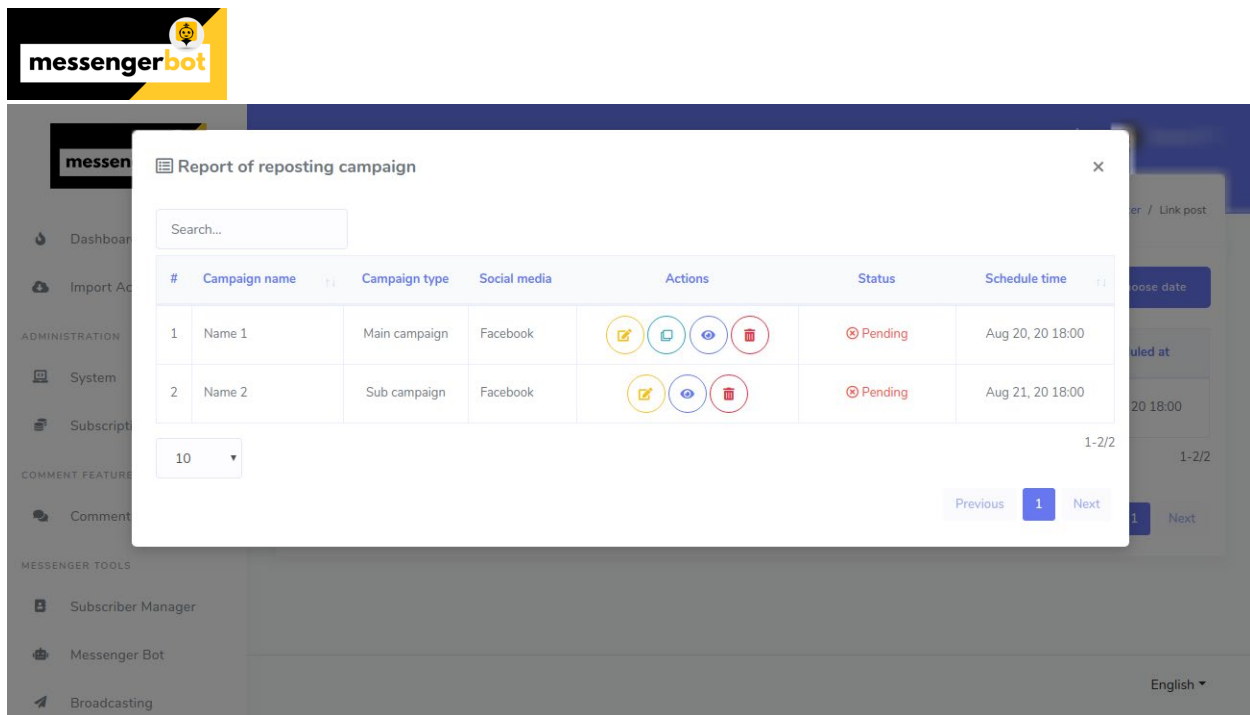
If everything goes well, the system will tell you about how many campaigns have been created from your CSV file upload. Now you can navigate to those campaigns created just now by clicking on them one by one. See the screenshot below:





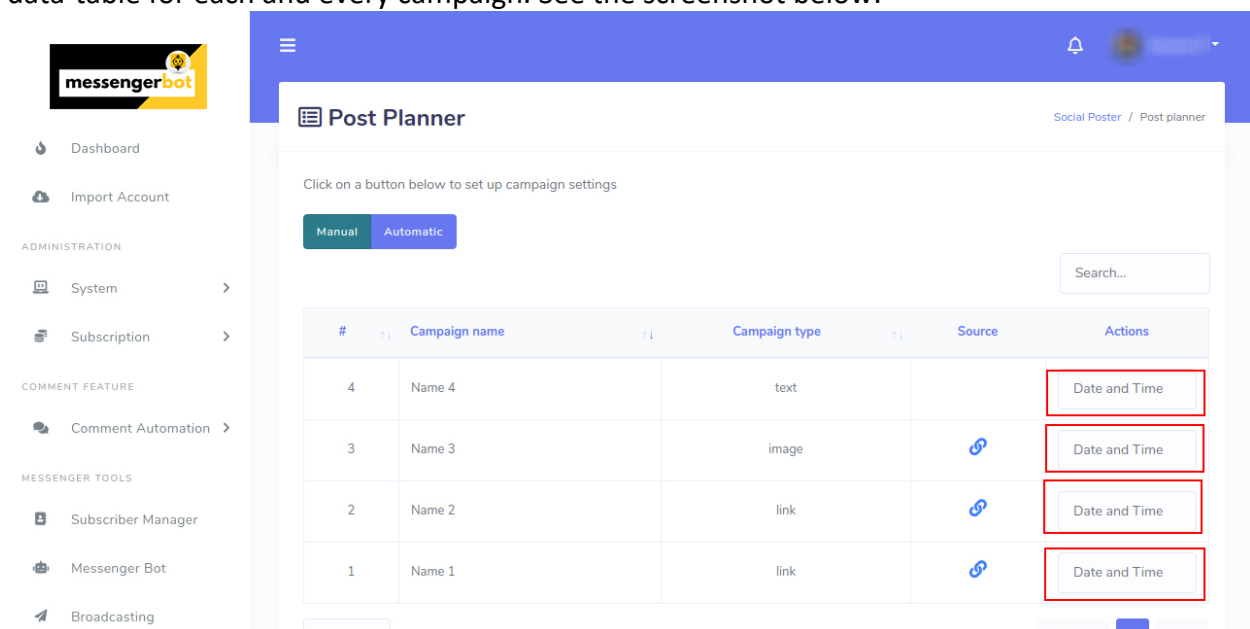
To view the child campaigns you need to click the on the button indicated by the red-marked arrow sign. It will pop up a modal with those campaigns.





Manual Settings

Now we will see how we can create manual campaign settings. It's really simple. Assuming you've uploaded the CSV file. Now you should have the data-table interface. Now you need to click on the **Manual** button. This will open up date-time fields on the right-hand side of the data-table for each and every campaign. See the screenshot below:



Now you need to put values for the date-time input fields one by one by clicking on it as described below on the screenshot:





- Dashboard
- Import Account
- ADMINISTRATION
 - System
 - Subscription
- COMMENT FEATURE
 - Comment Automation
- MESSENGER TOOLS
 - Subscriber Manager
 - Messenger Bot
 - Broadcasting

Post Planner

Click on a button below to set up campaign settings

Manual Automatic Clear cached CSV data

Search...

#	Campaign name	Campaign type	Source	Actions
4	Name 4	text		Date and Time
3	Name 3	image		
2	Name 2	link		
1	Name 1	link		

Click on the "Date and Time" field to select a specific datetime

August - 2020 -

Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	
26	27	28	29	30	31	1	17:00
2	3	4	5	6	7	8	18:00
9	10	11	12	13	14	15	19:00
16	17	18	19	20	21	22	20:00
23	24	25	26	27	28	29	21:00
30	31	1	2	3	4	5	22:00

Once you've done that you can go for the timezone and social media settings by clicking on the **Next** button as you did it previously in the Automatic Settings. Finally create campaigns by clicking the **Create Campaigns** button.

Live Streaming With Pre-recorded Video on Facebook

Facebook Live Streaming Campaign

Go to **Social Posting > Facebook livestreaming** and you'll see your created streaming campaigns with Messenger Bot. You can visit, edit, delete and clone campaign with actions button of the campaign.

Live Streaming Campaign List

Create new campaign

Facebook Poster / Live Streaming Campaign List

All posts Publisher/campaign name Search Choose schedule date

#	Publisher	Campaign name	Live	Status	Actions	Scheduled time	Stream started	Stream ended	Ffmpeg error log
1	Page: [redacted]	schedule crosspost test	No	Pending	[edit] [clone] [delete] [refresh]			X	[refresh]
2	Page: [redacted]	final check	No	Pending	[edit] [clone] [delete] [refresh]	22 Jun, 20 12:00	X	X	[refresh]
3	Page: [redacted]	yuyu	No	Pending	[edit] [clone] [delete] [refresh]	21 Jun, 20 17:00	X	X	[refresh]
4	Page: [redacted]	streaming test	Yes	Completed	[edit] [clone] [delete] [refresh]	X	10 Jun, 2020 18:02:54	X	[refresh]
5	Page: [redacted]	polo	No	Pending	[edit] [clone] [delete] [refresh]	10 Jun, 20 20:00	X	X	[refresh]





Create Livestreaming Campaign

Click on the **Create new campaign** button to get the create campaign form.

Create your live Streaming campaign with the required informations.

- Upload your video.
- You can choose when to stream, now or later
- You can also create event before going live. When you schedule a live event, an announcement post will be published to News Feed letting your fans on Facebook know that the broadcast is coming. People who see the post can opt in to receive a one-time reminder notification that will alert them shortly before your broadcast begins. Your fans can then join a pre-broadcast lobby directly before the live video starts, where they can connect and interact with other viewers.
- You can choose where to post among your timeline, pages and groups.
- You can enable auto share and choose among your timeline or pages to share the post . It will be automatically shared (only works for page post).
- You can crosspost to your pages. Crossposting refers to streaming live broadcast to multiple Facebook pages without uploading to each pages or sharing the original live video.
- You can enable auto comment , means after this post publish, there will be a comment there already on behalf of you.





Create live campaign

Facebook Poster / Livestreaming / Create live campaign

Campaign form

Campaign name

Post content

Broadcast pre-recorded video from system

☒ Yes

☐ No (i'll use third party broadcasting software)

Upload video

Upload

Video width

Please select

Video height

Please select

Schedule type *

☐ Now

☒ Later

Planned time to go live *

Time zone *

(GMT+6:00) Asia/Novosibirsk (No...▼

- ☒ I want to create live event now.
☐ I do not want to create live event, go live directly.

Upload thumbnail image

Upload

Post to timeline/page/group *

(Timeline)

Auto share as pages / crosspost to pages

☒ Nothing

☐ Crossposting

☐ Auto share as pages

Auto comment

☐ Enable

☒ Disable

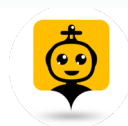
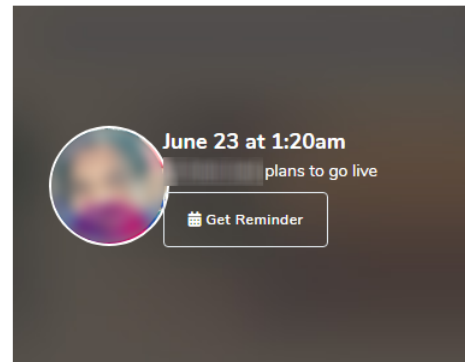
Create Campaign

Preview



plans to go live.

Now localhost test



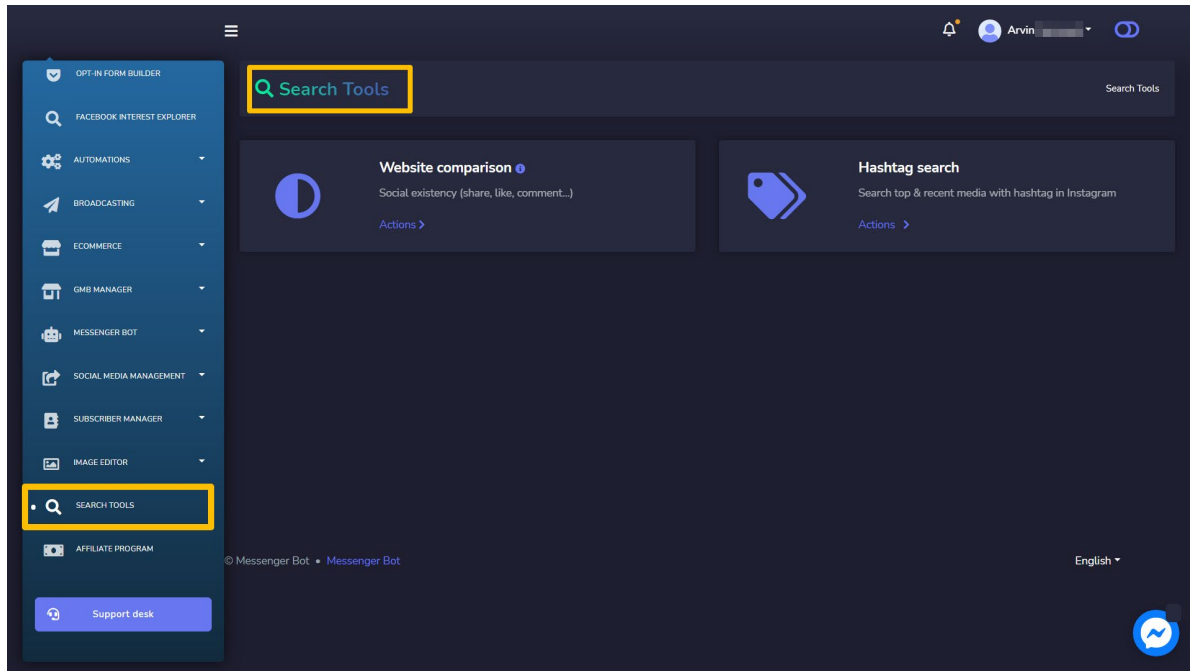




Search Tools

Search Tools feature allows you to manage all compare the website and help you search hashtags.

To view this section, navigate to **Search Tools** from the navigation menu located at the left and click on it.



A screen containing the following two sections will appear:

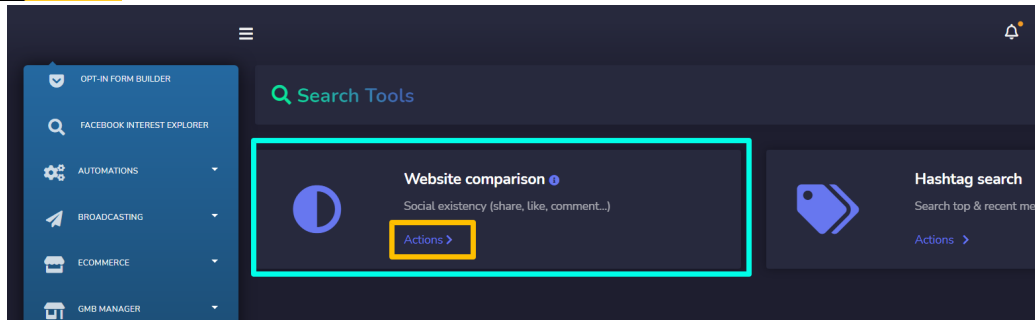
- [Website comparison](#)
- Hashtag search

For this section, we only have a Website Comparison demo.

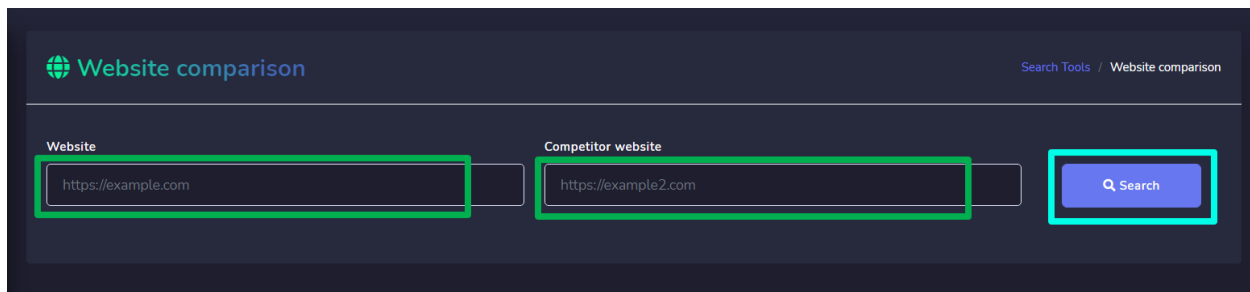
Website comparison

You can compare two websites by using this feature. To access the Website comparison section, select the **Actions** option from the **Website comparison** section.

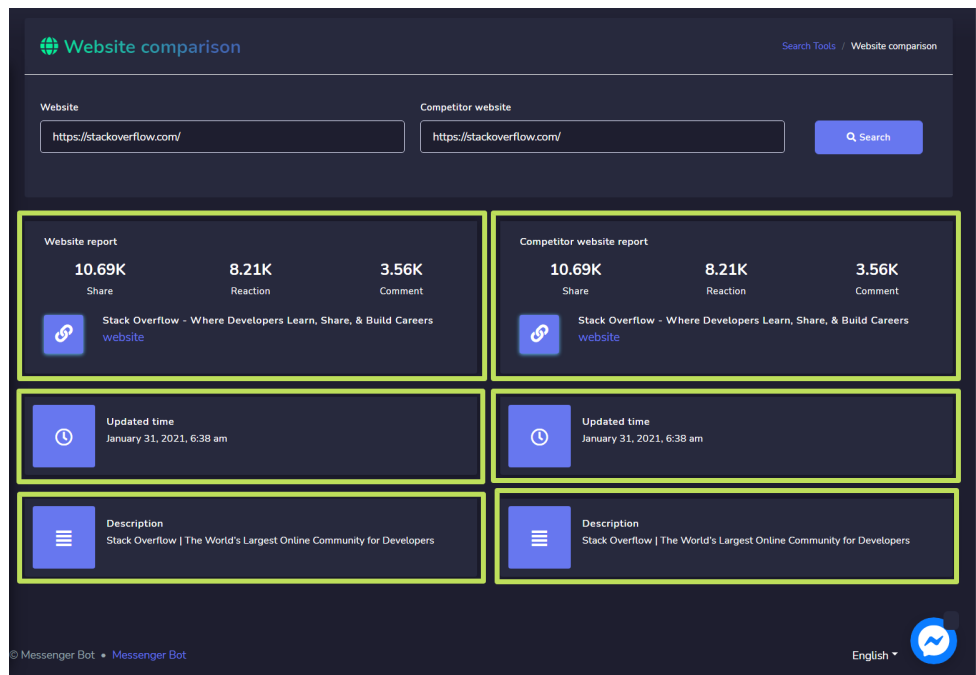




1. A **Website comparison** screen will appear.
2. Enter both the websites to be compared in the **Website** and **Competitor website** field respectively.
3. Hit **Search**.



A **website comparison report** will appear on the screen.

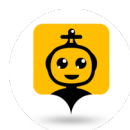
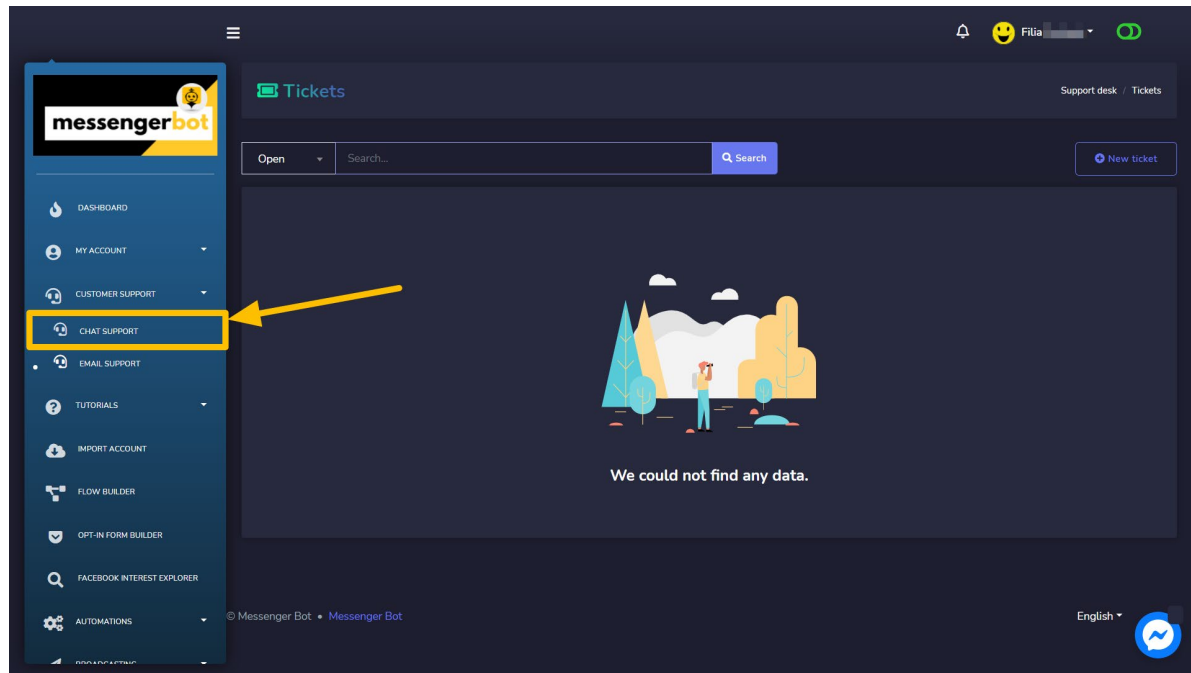


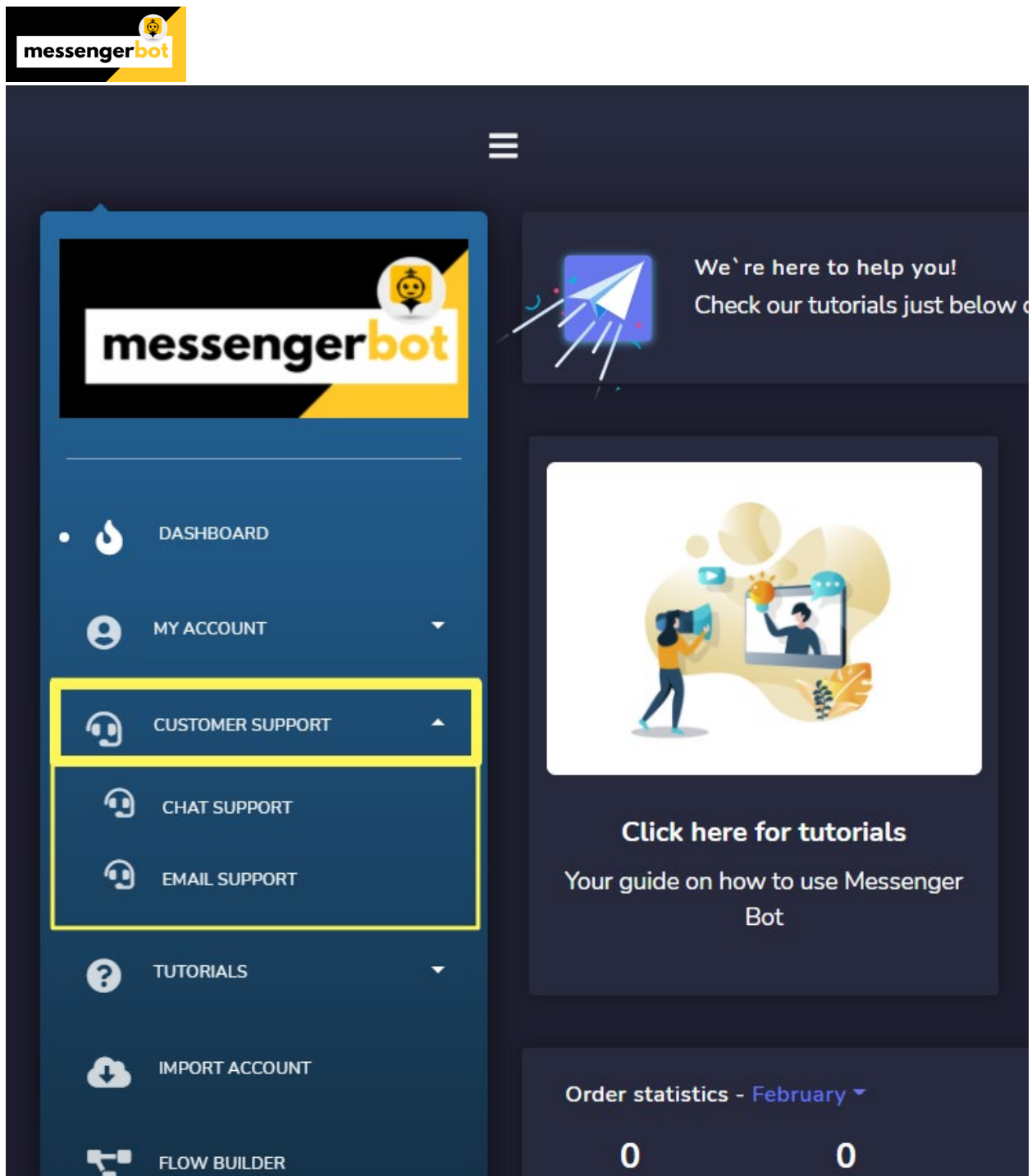


Support Desk (Customer support)

Support Desk is now known as **Customer support**. This feature has two sub-sections:

- Chat Support
- Email Support

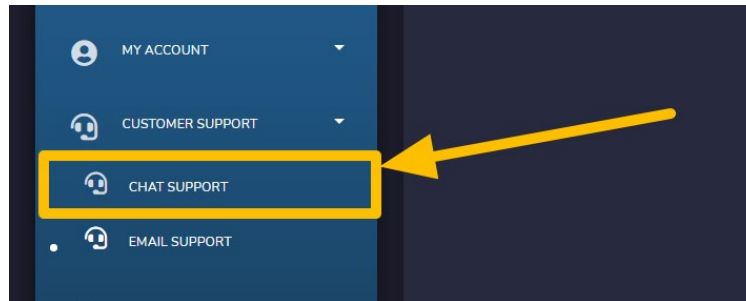




Chat Support

To access it, click **Chat Support** under **Customer support** on the navigation menu.

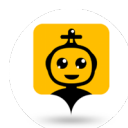


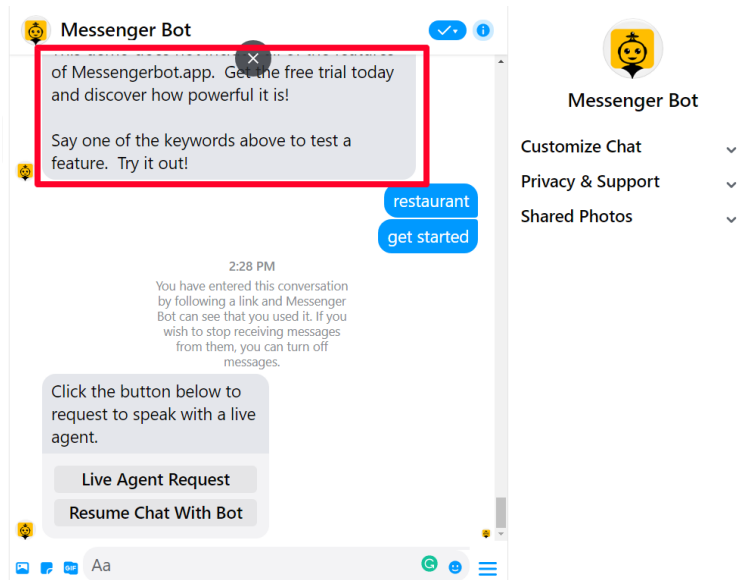


You will be directed to Messenger to login into your account. Fill in your **email/username/number and password**, then click **continue**.

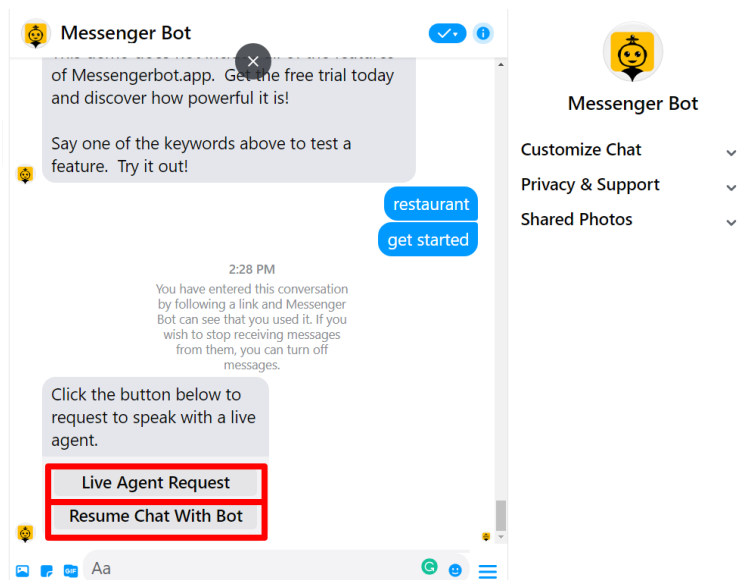
A screenshot of the Messenger login interface. At the top is the Messenger logo. Below it is the text 'Connect with your favorite people.' followed by two input fields: 'Email or phone number' and 'Password'. A blue 'Continue' button is positioned below the fields. At the bottom, there is a checkbox labeled 'Keep me signed in'. The footer contains links for 'Not on Facebook?', 'Forgot Password', 'Data Policy', 'Terms', 'Cookies Policy', and '© Facebook 2021'.

After that, you will go straight ahead to your **chat with our Messenger Bot chat support**. For you to start, use one of the **keywords** that the chatbot has shown.

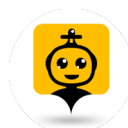


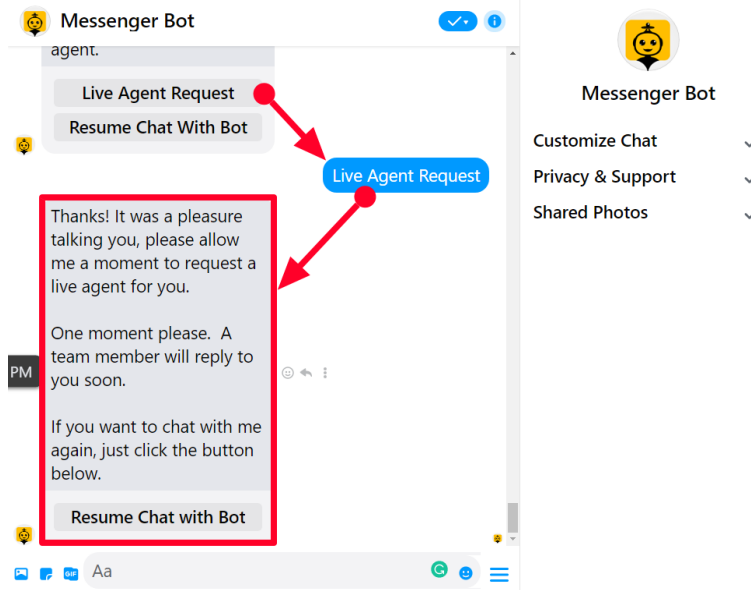


You will be asked next if you wanted a **Live Agent Request** or **Resume Chat With Bot**.

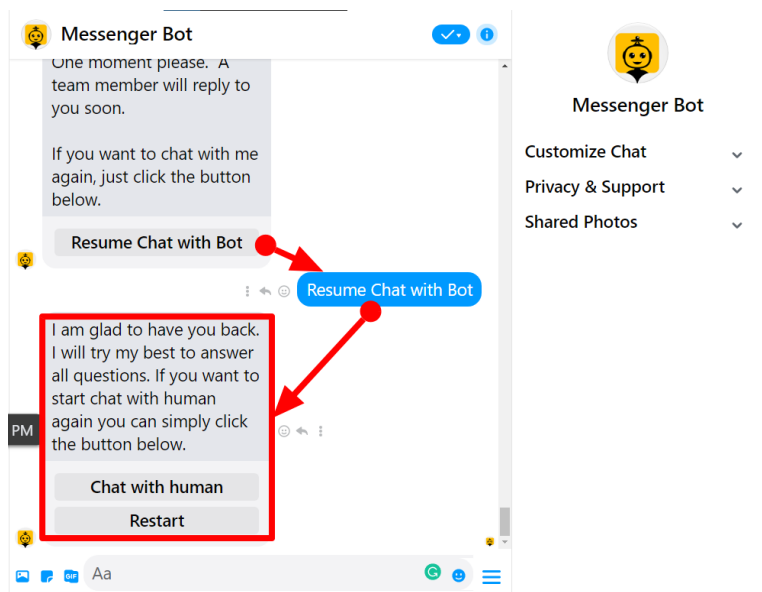


If you choose **Live Agent Request**, a reply response will be sent to you by our chatbot and he will get you a live agent **in a moment**.



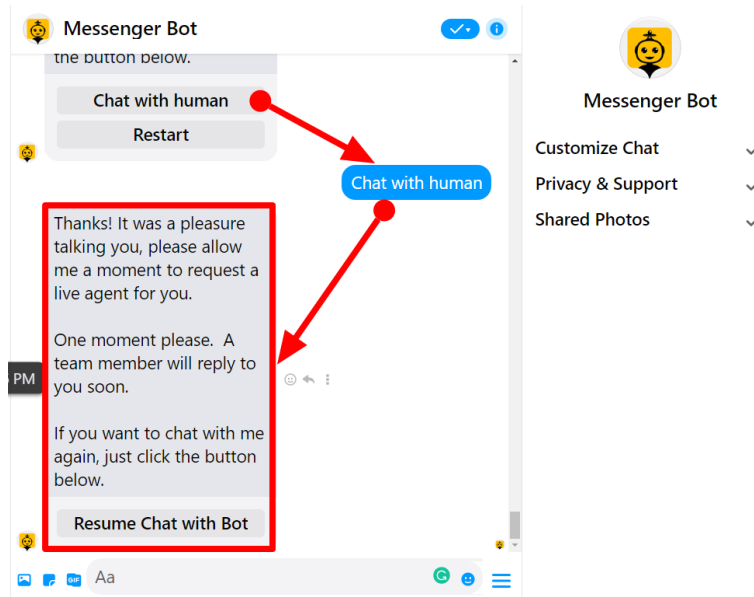


You can chat with the chatbot again by clicking **Resume Chat with Bot** then it will respond to you right away with choices you can reply, **Chat with human**, or **Restart**.



Here's what it will respond to. **Wait for the Live Agent to respond to you if you desire.**

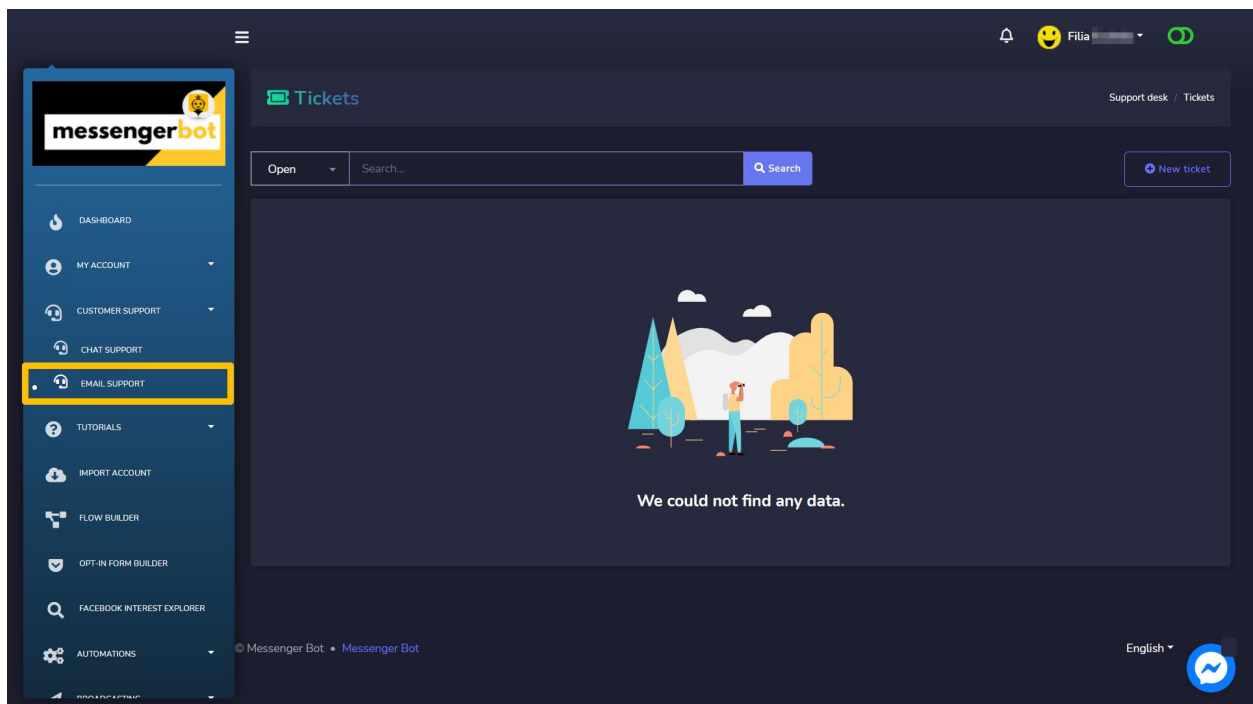




Email Support

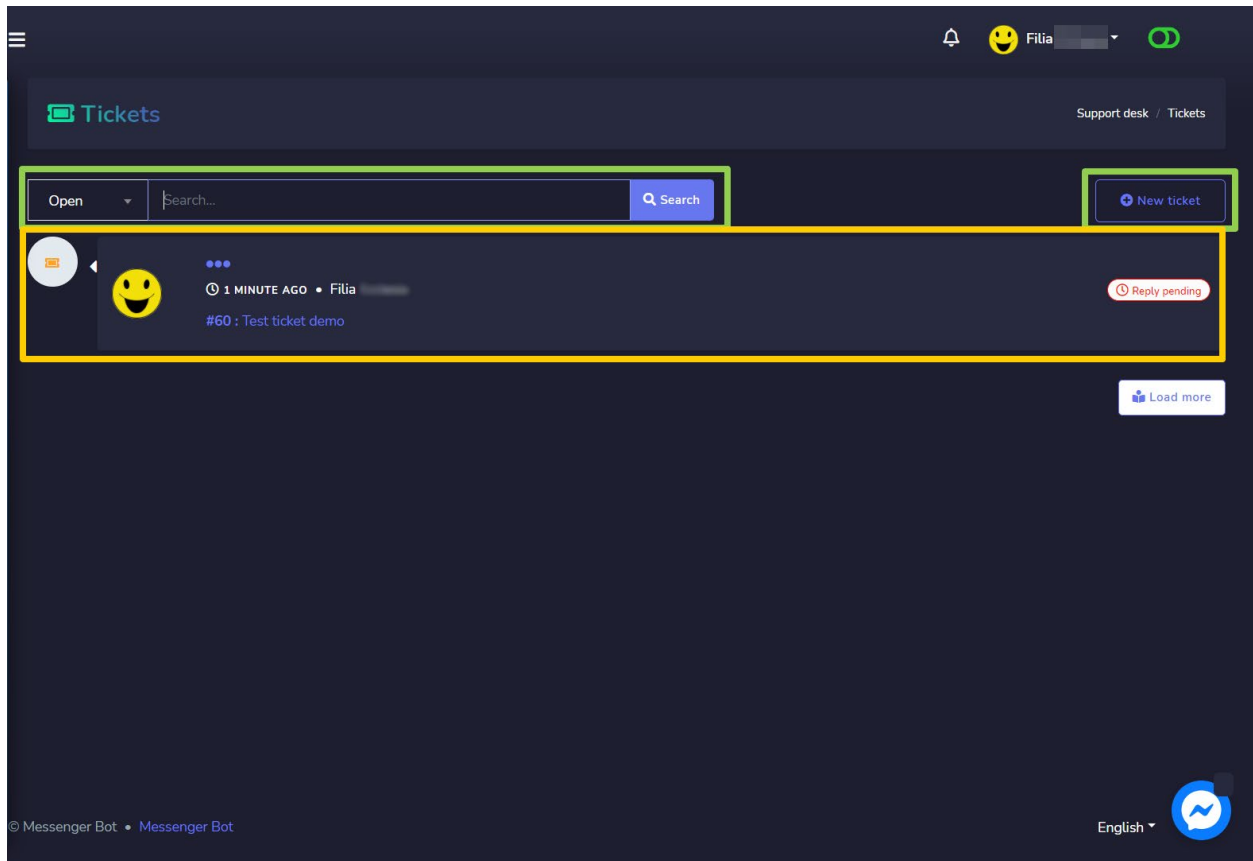
The Email Support feature allows you to manage all the **complaints** related to **billing, technical, or any query related**.

To view this section, navigate to **Customer Support** from the navigation menu located at the left and select **Email Support**.





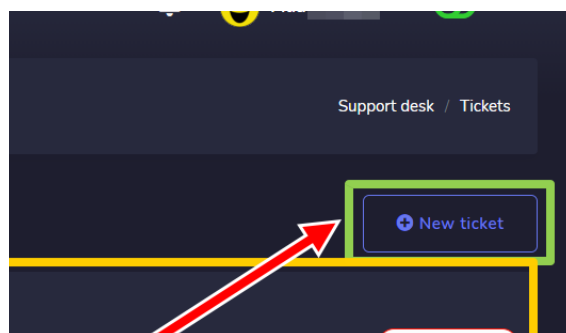
A **ticket screen** will appear. It **displays information** about the **time** when the **ticket was created**, the **person** who created the ticket, and the **status** of the ticket.



Create new ticket


To create the new ticket, follow the steps given below:






- 1) Select the **New ticket** option from the **Tickets** screen.



- 2) An **Open Ticket** will appear, you need to provide the ticket title.





 Filia 

Open ticket Support desk / Open ticket



Ticket title *

My test ticket

Ticket type *


Please select a category

Ticket description *


Open ticket


Cancel







3) Select the **type** of ticket from the dropdown menu.







 Filia 

Open ticket

Support desk / Open ticket

Ticket title *

My test ticket

Ticket type *

Please select a category


Please select a category

Billing

Technical


Query

Ticket description *



Open ticket

Cancel



- 4) Provide the **Ticket description**.
- 5) Select the **Open ticket** option.



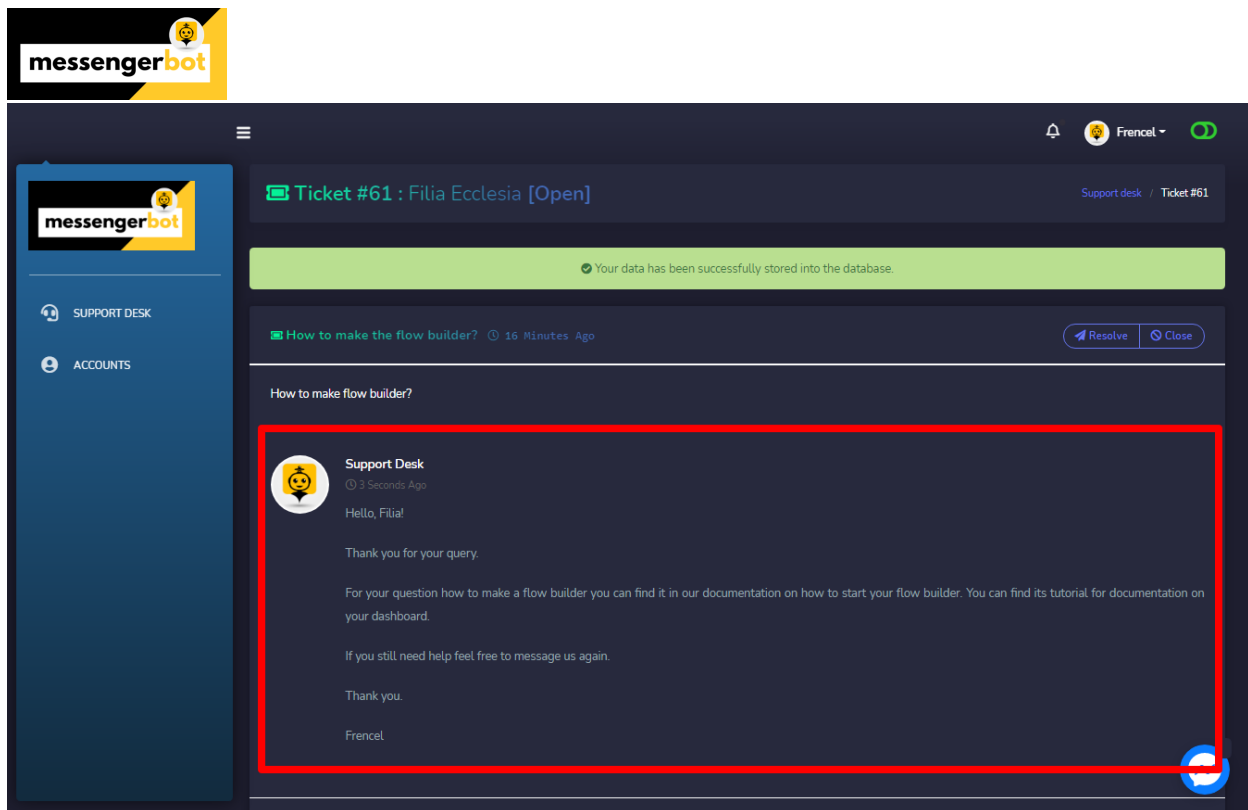
The screenshot shows the 'Open ticket' form in the Messenger Bot interface. The form has a dark blue background. At the top left is the 'messengerbot' logo. At the top right are icons for notifications, a user profile (Filip), and a status indicator. The form itself is titled 'Open ticket' and has a breadcrumb 'Support desk / Open ticket'. It contains three main input fields: 'Ticket title *' with the text 'My test ticket', 'Ticket type *' with a dropdown menu showing 'Technical', and 'Ticket description *' with a text area containing 'This is a test bug'. The text area has a rich text editor toolbar with various icons. At the bottom left is a blue 'Open ticket' button, and at the bottom right is a yellow 'Cancel' button. A green circular icon is visible in the bottom right corner of the text area.

Your ticket will be created and respective **personnel will be notified**. You can check out if there is a reply to your ticket by **clicking one of your tickets**.

The screenshot shows the 'Tickets' list in the Messenger Bot interface. At the top is a green banner with the message 'Your data has been successfully stored into the database.' Below this is a search bar with a dropdown menu set to 'Open' and a 'Search' button. To the right of the search bar is a 'New ticket' button. The list of tickets is shown below, with two tickets visible. The first ticket is titled '#62: My test ticket' and was received '6 SECONDS AGO' from 'Filip'. It has a 'Reply pending' button. The second ticket is titled '#61: How to make the flow builder?' and was received '16 MINUTES AGO' from 'Filip'. It also has a 'Reply pending' button. At the bottom right of the list is a 'Load more' button. The footer of the interface shows 'Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot' on the left and 'English' with a language icon on the right.

Here's an example of a **response** to your created ticket. if this resolves your issue, click **Resolve**.





Logout

You can logout by selecting the currently logged-in profile from the top right. A dropdown menu will appear on the screen. Now select **the Logout** option.

